Primitive-Skills-Group

About the primitive skills group

Group guidelines

Some of our members introduce themselves

How to become a member of the group

How to leave the group

READ THE ARCHIVES!

Webmaster for this site: Dr André-François Bourbeau E-Mail: bourbeau@videotron.ca
ABOUT THE PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP

Hello and thank you for your interest in the Primitive-Skills-Group!

The main purpose of this group is to provide a way by which all lovers of primitive skills can discuss various subjects related to wilderness ways.

We have chosen to call it the Primitive Skills Group because whether we are discussing primitive wilderness skills or modern survival skills, we still draw our inspiration and basic knowledge from primitive people who have survived for thousands of years using only what nature provided. Primitive literally means 'first' or 'earliest', therefore primitive and survival skills are our common heritage. The purpose of the group is to share knowledge about this common heritage which can inspire us and comfort us today.

The group was formed in December 1996 by Dr André-François Bourbeau, professor of outdoor pursuits at the University of Québec. Benjamin Pressley (Tribe), Ted E. Bailey (Boomerang list) and Matthew Rapaport (Thrower list) helped to spark the idea of the group and its initial orientation. Together with the first few dozen members who signed up (see the first introductions which were sent in), the actual group guidelines were developed and have served to orient the discussions since then.

We are currently approximately 200 members who share common interests in primitive skills. You will find it the ideal place to ask the question that's been begging for an answer for so long...

When you send a question to the group, all of the members receive it. Those that have an answer will reply, and the reply will also be sent to all of the members. Sometimes there will be replies to the replies, and the information gained on each subject is enormous.

Remember! The group is intended for fun, sharing and learning about primitive wilderness survival and living skills. All members are asked to refrain from discussing topics related to specific religious, political, persuasion or ethnic views.

Your participation in the discussions of the Primitive Skills Group is appreciated by all other members! If you are a new member, however, we respectfully request that you read the group guidelines before posting.

Thank you for sharing your own experience and skills with us. After
you observe for a while and decide to stay with us, it is suggested that you post a short auto-biographical intro about yourself. Also, you may wish to read some or all of our archives and previous introductions to obtain a better understanding of what the group is about.

WELCOME!

---------------------------------------------------------------
PRIMITIVE SKILLS GROUP GUIDELINES
=================================

ALL NEW MEMBERS ARE ASKED TO READ THE FOLLOWING GUIDELINES CAREFULLY!

To communicate with the group, send an E-mail with your message or question to:

Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

PURPOSE OF THE GROUP
---------------------

The main purpose of this group is to provide a way by which all lovers of primitive skills can discuss various subjects related to wilderness ways.

TOPICS TO BE DISCUSSED
----------------------

Topics which you are ENCOURAGED to discuss with other group members are:

1. All primitive wilderness living skills such as shelter, fire, cordage, primitive tanning, natural foods, primitive living, primitive rafts & boats, primitive direction finding, primitive trapping techniques, weapons for wilderness survival, primitive hygiene, protection from insects, primitive weather prediction, fighting cold, primitive medicine, traditional dog sledding etc.

2. Subjects related to modern realistic wilderness survival, such as surviving when lost in the wilderness, or surviving unexpected emergencies after airplane crashes, broken down snowmobiles etc., are also welcome.

Please note:

Discussions should be restricted to PRIMITIVE SKILLS only.

By SKILLS discussion, we mean sharing "How-to" information which help group members learn how to accomplish a particular physical task which is useful in a wilderness setting.

By PRIMITIVE discussion, we mean sharing info on skills which are possible in the short term using only materials found in nature, or at least available in the average recreational hiker's backpack.

Topics which you are DISCOURAGED from discussing with other group members are:

1. Topics dealing with religious, spiritual, persuasion, or belief-based concerns. For example, we do NOT wish to discuss subjects dealing with dowsing, natural apparitions, psychology, philosophy, gurus, prophets, spiritual leaders, or the particular styles or approaches of any particular survival expert.
2. Topics dealing with warfare. For example, we do NOT wish to discuss subjects dealing with explosives, survival fighting, revenge, combat methods, and so on.

3. Topics dealing with political or environmental issues. For example, we do NOT wish to discuss subjects dealing with whether it is right or wrong to kill animals, or whether a wilderness area should be protected, and so on.

All members are asked to help "enforce" the above guidelines with regards to topics of discussion.

ADVERTISING
----------

1. Unsolicited advertising of any kind by non-members will be severely frowned upon by all group members.

2. Unsolicited advertising of a service or product by members which is DIRECTLY RELATED to primitive skills may be acceptable as long as it is sent ONCE ONLY and for informational purposes only.

3. In direct answer to a question, reference to commercial sources of information, services or products is OK.

4. Personal opinion or judgment of members on a particular commercial product or service is much preferred to sending advertisement on same.

GROUP NETIQUETTE
-----------------

This is a high volume list, and current group members have asked that the following etiquette guidelines be followed whenever possible:

1. Please always rename subject headers when replying so that the header always matches the content of the message (helps store archives).

2. Please stick to one subject per message (helps store archives).

3. Please send "I agree with you", "Thank you", and "Bravo" messages which have no actual content through private E-mail (these are important, but clutter the list too much).

4. When replying, please quote only the passage which permits to follow the discussion, not the entire previous message (facilitates reading replies).

5. Note that there are two Reply-to addresses when you send a reply. One for the group, and one for the sender. Please delete one of the two (so the sender doesn't receive double messages).

6. Please keep signature files as small as possible (4-5 lines max).

7. Please avoid sending "funnies only" messages to the group. We all
appreciate a good joke, and even more so when it is part of a message which has content too (prevents list clutter).

8. Please read at least the primitive-skills archive headers so you don't ask a question which has already been answered.

9. It is a good idea to read the introductions archive so you have an idea of who's who in the group.

The archives can be found at the following location:

http://pages.infinit.net/afb/priskar1.htm

COMMANDS
----------

The following commands are available by sending an E-mail message to:

listserv@uqac.uquebec.ca

SUBSCRIBE Primitive-Skills-Group (to subscribe to mailing list)
SIGNOFF Primitive-Skills-Group (to remove yourself from mailing list)
REVIEW Primitive-Skills-Group (to get a list of subscribers)
QUERY Primitive-Skills-Group (to get the status of your list entry)
SET Primitive-Skills-Group NOMAIL (to remain a member but not get mail)
SET Primitive-Skills-Group MAIL (to reverse the NOMAIL setting)
SET Primitive-Skills-Group NOREPRO (to prevent receiving your own posts)
SET Primitive-Skills-Group REPRO (to reverse the NOREPRO setting)
HELP (to receive a help file)

Put the command in the body of the E-mail (nothing else). The subject header will be disregarded.

Digest-mode is NOT available yet, sorry.

UNSUBSCRIBING
-------------

Please save the following information!

To unsubscribe, you must send an E-mail with the following command in the body of the message (nothing else):

SIGNOFF Primitive-Skills-Group

The header will be ignored. Send the message to this address (NOT to the group):

listserv@uqac.uquebec.ca

QUESTIONS OR COMMENTS
Any questions or comments are welcome and can be addressed to the list manager:

mailto: bourbeau@videotron.ca

-------------------------------------------------------------

End of file
Thanks for reading...
This is a list of the introductions sent to the primitive skills group by some of the members. The introductions are listed in the order in which they were received. This file can help you feel at home by learning about some of the people which make up the group. If you would like your name added to this list (or removed) or if you would like to change the content, just let me know.

André-François Bourbeau
List manager
bourbeau@videotron.qc.ca

---------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------

André-François Bourbeau

Hi everyone, my name is André-François Bourbeau and I'm a professor at the University of Québec, Chicoutimi campus, where I teach outdoor pursuits in an adventure tourism bachelor's degree. This 3 year program is in french, so unfortunately much of the material I have developed will have to be translated before it is useful to many of you- sorry about that. I have been at the university for 15 years now, teaching courses such as winter camping, whitewater canoeing, wilderness survival, outdoor leadership, environmental awareness, philosophy of outdoor education and such. I also have research duties, and my field of interest is "coureur de bois" and primitive wilderness survival. I did my doctoral thesis on how to write clear instructions for primitive wilderness survival techniques in 1984. Since then, my research methods have been largely experiential: basically, I put myself in simulated situations in order to learn about old ways and develop new knowledge.

I conducted two major trips, one was a 31 day experiment in 1984 where I was dropped by helicopter on the 50th parallel without food, without fire, without tools, without shelter- just the light clothes on my back. That was a pretty rough trip, details of which are to be found in a book I wrote about the experience entitled "Surviethon au Gré de la Nature"- sorry, only available in french for now. The book is a day by day report on the trip, to which was added a scientific report on various subjects studied during the experiment.

The other major trip I did was in 1988, a 40 day reconstruction of a trip along the fur trade route in the year 1838. All the materials used were authentic reproductions of the period's gear, including real birchbark canoes and even handsewn underwear. This trip is documented in a film by KEG productions of Toronto called "Man of the Wilderness" which has been translated into many languages and has been shown on many television networks around the world.

My main interests are in developing wilderness survival techniques for someone lost or downed in the boreal type forest. All ideas I find from other parts of the world I try to adapt to materials found here.
For example, fire saws are possible with bamboo–I try to find materials to make it work here.

I am really looking forward to all the fine discussions I am certain will develop as the Primitive Skills Group grows. By the way, I am the list manager for the group, so any concerns you may have about the way the group functions can be addressed directly to me.

I'm looking forward to exchanging with all of you.

Thank you,

André-François Bourbeau
bourbeau@videotron.qc.ca

----

Benjamin Pressley

My name is Benjamin Pressley. I teach primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. I write for several magazines like American Survival Guide, Backwoodsman and Wilderness Way. I co-founded an organization called TRIBE that now has members in 46 states, Canada, New Guinea and Guam. I publish a newsletter for TRIBE also that many of you will find interesting, I'm sure. We are a network that operates non-profit to connect people interested in primitive skills with resources and other people. I am skilled in many areas of primitive skills. Shelter building, fire making, water sources, some edible and medicinal plant knowledge (enough to get by), tools from stone, shell, bone and wood, braintanning animal hides, traps and snares, fishing technologies, cordage making, lighting methods, cooking without aid of modern utensils, and much more. Hunting Weaponry is particularly an interest of mine. I teach classes year-round and do a lot of demonstrations for schools, museums, etc. The particular weapons that my research has been in are slings, bolas, atlatls, non-returning throwing sticks, blow guns. I will be glad to help out anyway I can with questions, etc. If you are interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills that I have please inquire. My skills are based on skills used by primitive people for thousands (more?) of years. If you want more information about our organization, TRIBE, check out: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html Ted Bailey does this homepage for me. As I get more Internet/Web page savvy I plan on putting out a
mini-newsletter for people interested. For now, check out that site and it will tell you more about what we have to offer. Well, enough for now. I'm looking forward to interacting with everyone in the Primitive Skills Group list. My thanks to Andre for getting it set up. ---Benjamin (benjamin@perigee.net or tribe@perigee.net)

---------------------------------------------------------------
----

Matthew Rapaport

Hello... Thank you to Andre for inviting me to participate. I am a classical arm-chair primitive! I enjoy a good camping adventure, and have had a fair number in my youth, but none for a decade or more now. Even these were not primitive living the likes of which our host has experienced, but rather late 20th century American style back-packing which means NOT that you use what is around you to make your way, but that you touch as little as possible! The object as much as possible is to leave the environment as untouched as possible while you pass through it.

I am not a hunter, though I have fished (mostly in salt water). I know how to prepare fish and other sea food, but would like to learn to dress game, even if I don't kill it. I do enjoy shooting with fire arms, and bows however, and could hunt if I had to do it, even with a slingshot. Better I round myself out gaining some experience with traps!

My real interest in bushcraft skills for now is not in wilderness living, but in living more or less comfortably though a period of normal infrastructure and service disruption in my semi-urban environment, typically as a result of some natural disaster like an earthquake! Here what is important is having stocked the right materials in the right quantities in places that survive the initial disaster. If the supermarkets are closed long enough, I may want to fall back on some food finding skills for a while...

I look forward to future conversations.

matthew rapaport     Philosopher/Programmer at large     KD6KVH
mjr@crl.com     In God we trust. All others we monitor!
Mark Bradner

Hello group...

I live in the Seattle, area, I've spent a large percentage of my 45 years backpacking and camping in the Pacific North West. So I guess primitive technologies have always interested me. This year I have taken up flintknapping, and I heard about your group from the knapper list server.

Mark Bradner

-----

Chris Smith

Hello Skills Group,

A very big pleasure and opportunity to learn from and share with you all. These introductory things are always very painful for me, so I hope you don't mind me torturing myself a bit.

My name's Chris Smith, I'm 48 and live in Coeur d'Alene (Core duh'Lane), Idaho, USA. That's near Canada and is a place of big lakes, rivers and forest woodland. I'm pretty happy, even when shoveling snow. I'd rather be in a hotspring than any other place on earth and that's why I live in Idaho. I still work irregardless, and have tended 'premie' babies, down to a 1/2 lb. that will fit in the palm of your hand. I'm a registered Respiratory Therapist with a perinatal/pediatric clinical specialty certification and have similar credentials for practice in Pulmonary Function Technology and Cardiopulmonary Technology. I've worked in the medical field for nearly 25 yrs, and I guess I've also worked with more knife and gunshot wound victims than most people. Not my cup of tea, anyway, my educational record is bizarre, with three 2 yr. Associate degrees and quite a few unrelated subjects. My transcripts read like: motorcycle repair, biochemistry, concrete, embryology, welding and mukluk making. If their was a degree program in Irreproducible Studies, I'd have my Masters. I've been politely and personally asked to immediately leave nice places by elk, moose, grizzly bear, rock slides, whizzing ball lightning and "the buzzing of the bee's" -- I'm not ashamed to tell you, I am trembling at the thought even now, which makes it all the harder to type. I can't rationally explain why I haven't died all the times I obviously should've, but whoever you are, I want to thank you personally - I recommend you highly to all.
I've been a 60's Haight-Ashbury hippie, an American Marine with an Intelligence occupational specialty (I can't say much about that), have lived in a Zen monastery and used to be a fair rock climber. I still love my old .45 and Ka-Bar Marine knife (well, it's true) and have a warm fuzzy feeling for shotguns, ancient cultures and the wrath of nature. I like handling bullwhips and throwing knives, tomahawks and axes. I'm a member of the Wild West Arts Club, a 600 member international stunt organization. I'm not all that good, but I do play. I've wanted to learn multi-strand braiding since I was a child and through the Thrower list have begun sling braiding which covers that nicely. Kind of a sportman's paradise where I live, so if you asked me to spear you a fish, I probably could handle it. I've been fortunate to meet and sometimes carea few celebrities, including Groucho Marx, Carole King and one large hawk in particular. I have the highest respect for people like yourselves (I know what I'm talking about here) and appreciate your company and experience, which is considerable. Thanks.

Chris

------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

-----

Ted E. Bailey

Hi Everybody. I just subscribed to the Primitive Skills Group today. I found Chris' introduction quite interesting. I was a Haight Ashbury hippie too and I just a year younger. Chris, did we meet in the Fillmore West over New Year's in 1968?

Anyway, I am quite straight now. I even have short hair and I am an Engineering Manager. Now you know what happened to all those hippies! My favorite hobby is boomerangs and throwsticks. I got into this primitive skills stuff as a young child growing up in Panama. The first toys I wanted my Mom and Dad to buy were the blow guns and shrunken heads that the Choco Indians sold at the border towns. I used to spend all my time in the jungle learning about the native animals and surviving on my own with minimal equipment. When I was 17, I left Panama and went to Arcata California to go to college. That was the beginning of my hippy days. 10 years later, I came out of the fog with a MS degree in Mechanical Engineering and I have been stuck in a middle class rut ever since. I throw boomerangs and put out a boomerang newsletter to keep me
busy. I belong to the boomerang rang_list and the thrower email subscription group as well. I look forward to hearing more about the other subscribers. Cheers. - Ted

Alexander J. Pirchl

About me: I live in Austria (Europ), particularly in Kitzbuehle in the Tyrolian mountains. I am 23 years old and married now for 1 1/2 years. I have always been fascinated by *primitiv* technology and weapons. Since I was very small I have been toying around with knives, spears, blowguns, slingshots and slings. I also like all aspects of shooting, and owe quite a number of firearms, but the power and accuracy one could get with weapons made from the simplest components have never ceased to amaze me. Survival is also a topic which I find very interesting, and the question of another member of this list stated in his introduction on what to stock up for a natural disaster would interest me very much.

Merv Martin

Hi

I'm Merv (Mervyn Martin). I was born in Red Bluff, California and lack the strip between Izmir, Turkey and Taipei, Taiwan of having been around the world.

I'm ex-Navy (14 years, that's how I got to travel) and now work, when I can find it, as an Electronics Engineer in Sacramento, CA. What else, oh, I'm 45 and have just taken on two more kids, a 15 year old boy and a 12 year old girl. What a glutton for punishment (that makes five kids)!!! Ah well, I'm half adopted too and I like my step dad!

I'm fascinated with anything I can do with my hands. In the past I've done well at surviving with a knife. I say well, I gained
I'm a pretty good trapper and only scruple at swallowing uncooked bones. They're a bit scratchy (in and out). I can't say that I've tried grubs, but Caddis Fly larvae and Helgramites aren't bad. I've fished with, but not eaten Stone Fly Larvae (Toebiters). Always wondered who'd get the most bites. Salmon eggs aren't bad either, haven't tried frog eggs.

I've info that may be of use. Like how to build a rope walk (a "machine" for the manufacture of rope). I'll need to dig out the text for that, it's an old Aussie book called "Bushcraft".

Wow! Primitive Skills! Anybody wanna go fishing? Hook, Spear or Trap???

BTW, the main reason I can gain weight on a survival test is that I know the area and trap! Spinning cordage would be most important to someone like me. I've used mostly grasses and 1/4 to 1/2 inch thick. This stuff usually will take a jack rabbit (1/2"").

Whew, I'd better close for now!

Ya'll Take Care. Looks like a _great_ bunch of crazys here.

Merv

eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com

----

Barent Parslow

Hello all,

I am very pleased to be a part of this group. I am a 23 1/2 year veteran of the US Army currently serving with the Virginia National Guard and will retire in about 2 1/2 years. I am wondering if we are seeing a pattern develop here of the personality types that are interested in this subject?

I was raised by both my own parents, Dad a forester and Mom a teacher and librarian, joined the Army out of high school, was a linguist working in intelligence, also served as a supply sergeant and in the infantry, was literate in Korean and Chinese, semi-literate in French, barely literate in English (especially after 5 years in Korea) and now the computer
guru
for my Brigade (if only they knew how little I really know).

My hobbies include (when I can find the time): archery, hunting, shooting (modern and blackpowder), reloading, running (occupational), swimming, biking, computers, reading (voraciously), history (was my Brigade's historian), and community service.

I am now starting to build primitive bows (an outgrowth of my interest in archery, I have been shooting since I was 10) which lead to an interest in flintknapping (led to this list by post on knappers list), which has led to interest in the subjects this list should be exploring.

Many thanks for starting this list. I hope to learn alot. Also, I would like to say that I don't believe that there is such a thing as a stupid question. No questions, no answers.

I should also let you know that I am a little blunt (not that blunt, did that get sent, if so I apologize) No anger, just a little too straightforward sometimes. Tactless or so some have said.

Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

parslowb@CFW.COM

---------------------------------------------------------------
----

James E. Burdine

I am an R.N. that works in a Surgical ICU, but I also have past experience in the E.R. I've been enterested in survival and primitive technology ever since I made my first bow from a cherry branch at the age of 5 and had the same bow broken over my backside after a shot went wrong.

On my mother's side of the family is Hessian German, and my mother still talks about the war years and things they did to survive hard times. On my father's side is Scott/Irish and Am. Indian (either Cherokee or Blackfoot depending on who you ask) So I am quite happily a mutt. My Dad tell stories about the big depression, and humorous experiences from his 30 years in the Army (but would not until recently talk about his experiences in the Korean war) I've rubbed elbows with some of the finest survivalists in the U.S. from the Rangers, Special Forces, and Force Recon (who talked to me
even though I was a leg army puke) I messed about with throwing knives, bows, firearms of various types and .38 cal blowguns. I learned to fish, and camped with the Boy scouts. I learned how to make a warm bed in nothing but a pile of leaves (pile them up, dive in gently, and wait until your body heat creates a pocket of warmth) What struck me as a disadvantage about survivalism is that most people separated from their kits would not be able to survive, because older methods of survival had been lost. I felt that one should be able to be dropped anywhere in the wilderness and be able to scrounge up materials needed to sustain life. Thus I started reading everything I could find about primitive technology, including what I call neo primitive technology. Neo-primitive technology is old techniques with non-traditional materials. For example slingshots use traditional bowhunting techniques with a high tech substance (vulcanized rubber) or using steel tubing to make a blowgun. Well that's enough hot wind for now.

JB

jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)

---------------------------------------------------------------

----

Russ Brownlow

Hey all,

I too came to this list from the KNAPPER list. My name is Russ Brownlow and I've lived in Texas my whole life. Just moved to Houston after being in Austin for 8 years. I'm pursuing a master's degree in archaeology, possibly a PhD after that.

I've been involved in wilderness survival pursuits since I was a kid in Scouts. I became an Eagle Scout at 16 and have been roaming the wilderness since. I'm not a hardcore militant survivalist, but I usually work deep in the woods, so I get along OK. I haven't had to eat any bugs to survive though. I'm an archaeologist for a company out of Austin, and we do surveys, testing, etc. across the country.

I wasn't around at any of the concerts you guys were talking about, but I might have been conceived at one of them early in '69. Although I'm not a true hippie, I like to think that I would've fit in well back in the day.
I work for an environmental firm out of Austin, TX. We do biological as well as cultural resource management type stuff. Whenever a pipeline, a transmission line, well pad, coal mine, etc. are planned, we go out and survey the area for any archaeological sites. If we find any "significant" ones, we test them. If testing proves that they are more than just the run of the mill scatters, we often excavate them. Yes I've found all sorts of Native artifacts, its pretty much a daily occurrence when we're out in the field. I also work in the lab were I do whatever has to be done. My main job in the lab though is the illustration of the artifacts for publication. I'm an archaeologist and an ARTaeologist I guess you could say. We find lithics and pottery, but no mummies down here. We do have the occasional burial, but rarely. No signs of weaving since this area of Texas has acidic sandy soil that pretty much dissolves everything that is not rock. As for my "time travels" as an archaeologist, those hopefully lay ahead of me. I've been doing this for a while now, but only for about the past four years professionally (that is, getting paid for it). That is why I'm pursuing higher degrees, otherwise I'm relegated to being a hired shovel bum. I have run several projects, but technically I don't get the credit since the law requires a Master's degree to do so. Soon that will be taken care of. I did go to the Middle East for a while. You can find artifacts there all over the place (just walking down the road). I was chasing a herd of camels in the desert once and found an area where the wind had deflated some dunes. I found several flint cores, some pottery (that dated to around 200 B.C. from Syria), mussel shells from the ocean, and two hearths with burned bone in them. People have lived there for thousands of years so I guess it is no surprise that there are artifacts everywhere. I even found an old net weight made of stone washed up on the beach. That is about as extensive as my travels go (oh yeah, I hung out in Amsterdam for a while :] ). Otherwise, I've just travelled all over Texas digging sites. As for the tribes, that is hard to say. Most of the stuff is Archaic or Paleo so we have no idea who the tribes were that far back. Of course some of the upper layers have artifacts usually associated with the Karankawa, Cherokee, Apache, depending where you're at in the state. Other than that, I'm just the young hippie type trying to make a living by having a good time out in the woods looking for stuff. It's a pretty "groovy" job.

PEACE,
Heya all,

First let me introduce myself a little. My name is Greg Biddle, I'm an archeologist, currently working in Juneau AK. I have worked all over quite a bit of the western and midwestern US. I have been flintknapping for about 7-8 years and have been interested in / practicing 'primitive' skills since my uncle taught me how to shoot a bow, bareback from a horse, and how to cure squirrel pelts with table salt (Sorry Mom!?!). I am really enjoying this group, although I was getting a little worried about the 'fish bombing' thread!!

---

Sherri Seer

Hi,

Just a brief note to introduce myself. My name is Sherri. I am a licensed emt, hypnotherapist, an ergonomist, scuba diver, licensed ham radio operator (kb8yxg) and am currently taking a course from the Wilderness Awareness School called the Kamana Correspondence Course which will give me a certificate as a Naturalist. Have all of Tom Brown Jr.'s tracker books, many herb books. I am interested in all of the old skills. I am attempting to teach myself to live in any environment, for any length of time, starting with no more than a knife and piece of plastic. I love the earth, animals, the wind in my hair, the wilderness, Native American teachings. I am greatly saddened by the mass distruction of the "modern" world ways. It causes a great burden to rest on my soul as I walk along and view it.

I am glad I have found this list and the trackers list in which I can learn & share information.

Many blessings upon us all,
Sherri
David McMullen,

Hello fellow primitives

My name is Dave McMullen and I hail from Montreal, Quebec. I am very interested in learning primitives skills of all types. I belong to a skills/craft group called earthlodge (affiliated with a college in the area). Some of the skills that the group has become active in recently have been: flintknapping, atlatl, bowmaking, fire by friction, cordage, native american spirituality.

I am very happy to have found a primitive skills group with roots so close to home. Am looking forward to learning as much as I can

Dave McMullen
mcmuullen@paprican.ca

Thomas J. Elpel

I am new to the primitive skills group.

We operate Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School (HOPS) in Pony, Montana. If you would like a brochure of our books and classes send your postal address to tomelpel@3rivers.net. Mailing lists are expensive to maintain, so please ask only if you are seriously interested.

Below is a promotional for one of my books:

Thomas J. Elpel's Field Guide to Primitive Living Skills

Primitive living is a way of learning about nature by participating in nature. Instead of merely camping in the wilderness or passing through it, you can become part of the process. You discover nature by using it to meet your needs for shelter, fire, water, and food.

Tom's guide will give you a direct, hands-on experience of the world around you. With this book you will have the opportunity to discover the thrill of staying warm and comfortable without even a blanket! Experience the magic of starting a fire by friction. Learn about the edible plants of the Rocky Mountain region and the techniques to process
them,
plus "primitive gourmet" cooking skills. Tan the hides from your fall hunting trip, and manufacture these into durable clothing. Also covered are: primitive bows & arrows, sinews, hide glue, backpacking, felting with wool, fishing by hand, stone knives, wooden containers, willow baskets, twig deer, cordage, stalking skills, trapping, and tire shoes.

Thomas J. Elpel's Field Guide to Primitive Living Skills includes dozens of innovative skills and 160 photographs, plus an encompassing philosophy. Tom does extensive research and development of primitive skills. He places an emphasis on publishing new information that is not found in any other source. The cost is $17 plus $3 priority postage. Send check or money order to HOPS, Box 691, Pony, MT 59747 or use your Visa or Master Card and call 406-685-3222.

Watch for more of Tom's writing in these publications:
The Bulletin of Primitive Technology - 2 issues per year, $25 - Box 905 - Rexburg, ID 83440. BackHome - 6 issues per year - Box 70 - Hendersonville, NC 28793. Wilderness Way - 4 issues per year, $18 - Box 203 - Lufkin, TX 75902-0203. The Mother Earth News - 6 issues per year - Box 56304 - Boulder, CO 80323-6304.

As for a personal history, here is a short chronology of my primitive skills background. I spent a great deal of time with my grandmother as a child (I live 2 blocks from her now). We took walks every day and studied plants and plant uses. She had Larry Olsen's book and I linked up with Boulder Outdoor Survival School from there. I went on the 26 day walk-about in 1984, at the age of 16. My Grandmother and I went to Tom Brown's Standard Course in 1985. My cousin Melvin Beattie taught me hide-tanning the same year (I've tanned 60 deer hides, plus elk, antelope, and furs). My fiance (Renee) and I walked 500 miles across Montana in '88, and married in '89. We worked with primitive skills programs for adolescents for a couple years.

I practiced primitive skills as often as I could, and finally reached a point where I had tried most of the general skills, and was still
far from comfortable. Since then I have been doing my own research and experimentation.

For example, I discovered that it was not enough to merely copy shelters from a book, because every shelter should be uniquely designed to fit the time and place and the individual's goals while staying there. I developed innovative new shelter ideas for my area, and more importantly, a thought model for building shelters in any environment.

Botany/herboloby is another area where I have conducted new research. Most people are not willing or able to spend decades learning plants and plant uses. The "plant patterns" approach I am using enables the beginning student to cut years off the learning process. Instead of me telling the students about each plant we come to, I give them some patterns to watch for--and ask them questions about the new plants we encounter.

Another innovation I helped develop is a "tire sandal", designed to be worn with moccasins. It is a modular system, so a person can wear just the moccasins for stalking or around camp, or just the tires for wading, or both for hiking and climbing. Moccasins wear out too quickly, and most weekend primitives do not walk barefoot enough to build up the callouses necessary to walk barefoot all the time. Tires may not be a natural resource in the conventional sense, but they are a resource found abundantly in nature. The tire sandals with moccasins make the best shoes I have ever worn, in or out of town.

Six months ago we adopted three children, so we have been putting our energy into becoming a family. The girls are ages 6 and 7, the boy is 2. We are gradually introducing them to the primitive skills. They like to camp in the 23 foot diameter "earthlodge" we built on our place. We are learning American sign language together. After focusing almost entirely on plants for the last two years, I plan to switch back to the "animal skills" this summer. I expect to do a lot of stalking with the kids (one of the reasons for learning sign language).

Always Peace,
Thomas J. Elpel
tomelpel@3rivers.net.
Wanita & Joel Sears

Hi, I'm Wanita Sears. Found out about this group from the knapper list. Sorry for the semi intro. It's hard to pin down my hubby, Joel for the computer other than to look at the messages. He is a knapper and spent much of his boyhood in the woods learning survival skills. The medicinal plant threads interest me on this list.

Wanita Sears

Kevin Reeve

I have seen a number of intros flying around and guess I should give a little background about myself. I am approaching my 40th birthday with trepidation. I live in San Jose California with my wife and children, and when I am not practising my skills, I am an organizational consultant. That may sound common, but what is unusual about my consulting is that I apply wilderness skills to organization with interesting and so-far, very positive results.

My interest in survival began as a very young man, continued through Scouting. I was at BYU when Larry Dean Olsen began the program that ultimately became Boulder Outdoor Survival School, and watched that program grow with great interest.

I have been taking classes from Tom Brown for the past 6 years, and for the past three years have edited his newsletter "True Tracks." In '96 I set up and ran his first Standard class (the beginning class) in California. (He came out and did a lot of the teaching.) I will be setting up another Standard and his basic Philosophy class in California in '97. I am also working on other new programs for the school that will be announced in 1997.

I love tracking, enjoy firemaking (hey Bob - I got a fire with a Cattail handdrill!) bow making, tanning, knapping (amatuer), and various other primitive skills. I know several of you who have been posting, and have seen some great stuff so far. I consider myself fortunate to read the postings of such experienced and talented outdoor people. Please keep it up.

Kevin
Bill Blohm

I'm basically a systems administrator/web-master-in-training at Hewlett-Packard, Boise, Idaho, USA. I grew up an AF brat, and my favorite times were in Alaska, where I could run in the woods as soon as my homework was done. I've done a fair bit of camping, although none of late. Among other hobbies, the pertinent ones would be: navigation (celestial and terrestrial), back country exploring, kayak-touring, canoeing, back country XC-skiing, slings, archery, knives, hunting, fishing, playing with whips (getting there, Chris!), walk-abouts, climbing, minimal-impact camping/hiking, astronomy, a general interest in primitive skills, snowshoeing, tracking, outdoor photography, stalking (animals and birds, not people! ;-), just shooting, boomerangs, crossbows. Like my wife says, I've got too many hobbies. If it's outdoors, I'm interested.

I'm a totally deaf lip-reader and a ham radio operator.

Bill B. (Bill Blohm)
bblohm@boi.hp.com

---------------------------------------------------------------

Karen Hood

Hello,

My name is Karen Hood, co-owner of Hoods Woods Wilderness Video Productions. My husband, Dr. Ron Hood and I have just joined your group. I have been a Survival student and instructor for the last 7 years. I'm also co-producer and cameraman for our Woodsmaster wilderness skills videotape series in which Ron teaches various wilderness skills. Ron and I also run private and summer survival trips in the Sierra through our company Hoods Woods. We are very much looking forward to sharing information with others and learning as well. Thank you for inviting us on!!

If you'd like to visit our site and find out about our videos&/or trips,
Hi Folks!

Thanks to Andre for inviting us to join you! Andre was kind enough to send us some bio information about the group. I guess that it's my turn to share.

Like many of you, I'm a veteran. I was in the U.S. Army Security Agency from 1963 to 1967. I served time (literally! ASA training and duty was NOT romantic or pleasant) in Turkey (11 months and ten days, I counted every minute) assigned to several Kurdish settlers with an occasional rest in Sinop, Turkey. We trekked over much of the country, I still have the scars. On the positive side I gained a respect for some really tough and skilled survivalists.

Not wanting to waste my tolerance for pain, the US Army assigned me to Vietnam. I spent just over 18 months in-country some in the central highlands with the Montegnard tribesmen learning their brand of survival. Trekking in Vietnam is (was) very different from what I'd learned during my stay in Turkey. At the end of my 18th month I was evacuated to Japan.

In Japan, I was given an opportunity to study Judo at the Kodokan in Fukuoka, Japan. An altogether enlightening experience. At this point I was 22 years old. Finally, after much wriggling and whining, the Army let me go.

When I arrived in the states I was a wreck. Three years of hardcore survival certified that I wasn't fit for polite society, no tolerance for quick movement or loud noises. I ran to the mountains. I lived off the land in the Napa, Sonoma, Mendecino counties of California, for six months. My judo training and meditation skills helped me to find sanity again (THAT'S relative!). I entered the job market.

I repossessioned cars for awhile. Rented out ski boats, and so on. Then I went back to school.

I got my AA in History

My BA in History

I went to work teaching survival at UCLA and CSUN in 1974

I got my MS in Outdoor recreation

I quit teaching at UCLA in 1982 and at CSUN in 1992. At that time I was head of the special outdoor programs at CSUN.

During the intervening time I brought the paint ball war games to Southern California, ran our Hoods Woods programs for special groups and private parties and acted as the Technical consultant for a passel of films and TV programs.

In 1991 I finally met someone who could put up with me ...... My wife
Karen.
We were married in our hearts, during a spirit quest, at dawn on top of Templeton Mountain in the Sierra. I've never been happier. Survival skills bring many feelings but this is something I never expected! I finally finished my Doctoral studies last year "A study of system operators in computer mediated electronic communication systems" Pepperdine University. Sorta bizarre considering my background.
Now we (my wife and partner, Karen) and I are producing a series of wilderness survival skills videos, the Woodsmaster series. We are at volume 3 now and working on number four. I've got all this STUFF from the Middle East and Southeast Asia to share. Though the setting for the videos is the Sierra of California, many of the weird techniques I learned will ultimately end up in the videos.
There's more but I don't want to over stay my welcome. There's an old saying "Fish and guests spoil after three days". We can also say that Email spoils after three pages........
If you have a chance, and the inclination, stop by and visit us!
Hoods Woods... http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
Peace,
Ron Hood
hood@survival.com
"Doc" Ron
http://www.survival.com/
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----
Mr and Mrs Veilleux

I was delighted to find a list closer to home on the subject. I have attended a couple of courses with my husband at the Tom Brown Jr. survival school in New Jersey and am subscribed to their list but often I seek information here in Canada and find it sometimes hard to track down. ( very good courses: we have taken basic, advanced and Philosophy I, friends of ours also have advanced Tracking )
My own personal area of interest is in primitive foods and medicine. I was wondering if anyone knows of any? ( french or english ) My husband and I, as well as some friends, are presently brain tanning some deer and beaver hides.

We are looking forward to sharing ideas and information with everyone.

veilleux@NETCOM.CA
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----
Wes Gietz
Time to introduce myself, as so many others have done with flair and impressive descriptions of experience.

I'm located in Victoria, BC (currently the snow capital of Canada), and have rediscovered the old ways after about 25 years of focusing on education, family, career, and competitive sports. I spent a lot of time in the bush around Kenora, ON when I was a kid, and it was back there on a winter camping trip with my brother that I was first introduced to Tom Brown Jr.'s books.

Since reading TBJ's books and attending some of his classes I have been practising the skills and following the philosophical path he teaches, and working with an Ojibwa medicine man who lives here. I now teach the ancient skills in workshops as well as occasionally teaching or speaking at conferences, and I conduct sweats.

Wes Gietz
Vancouver Island, BC Primitive skills workshops:
http://www.islandnet.com/~chriseh/earth.skills.html

---------------------------------------------------------------
----

Mark Zanoni

Hi everybody,

I found out about this group from the Tracker list serve and so far I am impressed by the quality of the discussion. I live and work in Northern Wisconsin and run an outdoor program for special ed. (behavior disorder primarily) kids that utilizes primitive skills as a major component. My vision is to develop an entire curriculum using nature awareness, tracking and primitive skills and other experiential approaches, to teach all areas of study across the board including social studies, science, English, math, art, phy. ed. etc. I'm already well on the way towards making that happen and, luckily I'm in a situation where I am able to experiment and work out different aspects of this project as I go.

In addition to my this work I teach wilderness skills workshops that include primitive skills, tracking and nature awareness as part of an organization in Milwaukee called Medicine Hawk wilderness skills. My own organization has given the go ahead for me to begin a series of classes at my Northern WI location also and so this spring I will be offering classes for the general public, family programs and teacher trainings.
My training and background include lots of time playing in the woods as a kid (maybe the most valuable part of my training), a college degree in Natural Resources/History, a secondary teaching certification and attendance at classes around the country including Tom Brown's standard course, classes with Charles Worsham in Virginia and everything Tom Hanratty at Medicine Hawk offered until he got tired of seeing my face in class and made me an instructor about 7 years ago. I also learn where I can and I am lucky to live in an area that has an abundance of skilled crafts and outdoors people. My main and most important teacher, however, remains nature itself. I am lucky to have a job that allows me to be in the woods everyday. In fact how many people on this list could say they have a job that requires that they spend time in the woods? I am very blessed I know.

I look forward to sharing with and learning from you all,

Many blessings,

Mark Zanoni

---------------------------------------------------------------

----

John Wiedenheft

Hi group! I just signed on; heard about you over in the Tracker list. My name is John Wiedenheft, I live in Norwich Connecticut USA. I have always been interested in primitive skills and wild edibles, ever since being introduced to this stuff by my mother on our family camping trips. She would walk through the woods and pick various plants and we would bring them home and have them for dinner!

I have been camping and hiking ever since (I'm now 40 years old), and picking up new skills wherever I can. Picking up new skills has been a difficult thing to do because I didn't know of any other sources of information. Then, about 5 years ago, I came across a book by Larry Dean Olsen. A year later I was telling someone about that book and he handed me "The Tracker" by Tom Brown. I have now read most of Tom's books and attended several of his classes. Then along came the _Tracker_ list and now the _Primitive_Skills_ list! Will wonders never cease!

Now I would like to start putting into practice some of the skills I have been learning. I would really like to do some of those "walk-abouts" someone posted about yesterday.
Thanks Dr. André, for setting up and running this list!

Great to be here,

John Wiedenheft
wiedenheftj@asme.WEB.AOL.COM

---------------------------------------------------------------

-----

Bo Gulledge

Hello,

I have been on the group for a few days and I am overwhelmed by the great quality of information and the great folks that are participating. Many of you will know me from the TRACKERS email list, but for those of you that do not know me, I will introduce myself.

I started on this adventure when I read THE TRACKER, by Tom Brown, Jr. I knew then that if I wanted to learn primitive skills that Tom would be a highly qualified teacher. I first attended a class at the Tracker School in 1984. I took a 4-day Vision Quest that same year personally led by Tom. From that point on I have had a deep commitment to learn, share and preserve these skills.

Just this year while attending the Advanced Scout class at the Tracker School I approached Tom's wife, Deb, about taking over the webmaster responsibilities for the Tracker School and she said OK. So, today, I am finishing my Masters in computer science while pursuing primitive skills on the Internet and in the woods. I am trying, in some small way, to help promote these skills via the Internet.

I am greatly inspired by the sharing spirit in this primitive skills community and I thank you all for your contributions. I am always happy to learn and practice new skills. I am quite busy these days working on my thesis but I am always happy to answer questions if my limited knowledge may be of some help.

As I said before, I have learned so much already from this group that I cannot say how pleased I am! Again, if I may provide some help to anyone let me know.

P.S. I live in Tampa, Florida. If there are any of you close by, let me know.
Best Regards,

Bo Gulledge

---------------------------------------------------------------

----

Mark L. Anderson

Hello,

A short intro. I am a project archaeologist involved with cultural resource management studies on Iowa Department of Transportation projects. Besides my interest in archaeology and my degrees in Anthropology I have been interested in primitive skills since I was quite young. I grew up in the Duluth, Minnesota area and have had extensive outdoor time throughout northeast and northcentral Minn., northern Wisconsin and the U.P. of Michigan, and central Ontario. Since leaving Minn. for other points I have lived in Oregon, South Dakota, and Indiana prior to moving to Iowa. I have tried to practice the skill I already knew and learn as many new ones as I came across. I am a flintknapper of some 10 years and am branching out into other experimental areas of prehistoric technology, it all helps me understand and analyze better the real archaeological stuff. This listserv is wonderful and I am glad to be a part. I'll contribute as I can and look forward to learning Lots of new stuff about living in the natural world.

To share a quick story....I was doing a flintknapping demonstration at the University of Northern Iowa one afternoon and had checked in with the director of the student union, who was the organizer of the Multicultural Week of which I was a participant. On walking outside to where I was to knap, the director said to me...."So, when the powers goes off for good, our computers all fail, and all of our industrial machinery grinds to a halt, we should come and find you if we want to continue to eat and such, right?" Needless to say I chuckled, agreed with her, and said that fortunately all can learn to knap and survive if the desire and (perhaps more so) the need were there. Thanks for the list Dr. Bourbeau!        Mark.
Hello!

I'm new to the list, and must say that I am VERY impressed with the quality of the posts and the caliber of the contributors! I'm sure I will learn a lot from everyone, and will try to contribute when I can.

I don't have years of bush experience -- my interest in primitive skills springs from my interest in archaeology and prehistoric hunter-gatherer groups, as well as a steadfast refusal to grow up. I was raised on a farm in southern Alberta and was always banging rocks together or cutting down mom's caragana hedge to make bows and arrows (it was the praries -- you do what you can in lieu of real trees :) Now I'm going to school in St. John's, Newfoundland working on my masters. (Predictive modelling of archaeological site locations on the south coast of Newfoundland using a GIS.)

This list and the skills discussed here are important to me for a number of reasons. Some are personal, but two relate to archaeology and archaeologists in general. First, the perspective gained by a student of prehistory when he or she makes a stone tool or drills a hole with a bow drill are invaluable. The weights and measures we make on artifacts can become abstract to the point where it is easy to forget why we are studying the materials in the first place. I think its essential to have some sort of hands on understanding of the tools and techniques we study as well as the properties, limits, and potential of the materials being worked. The second point is the fact that these skills are really cool and are one of the most effective means of educating the public about prehistory. Atlatls, stone tools, bow drills and the like are all pretty amazing the first time you see them. Sitting behind glass in a museum they are curiosities and the people who made them can seem very alien and distant. Its difficult to identify with them and its easy to judge them against our own culture. But when the hammerstone is in your hand and you begin to understand how these tools were made and used, you begin to identify with those past peoples on a very human level. Our connection with the past becomes meaningful.

Sorry for rambling on so long -- I do that sometimes.

Regards,
Greetings!

I am just getting around to my introduction, (I was swamped with working several deer hides and a bear hide before it got really cold up here in New England). I found out about this list from the Tracker email list and signed up a few weeks back when the mad droves of about 60 others also signed up. I have been backpacking/camping for 25+ years, and during this time got interested in primitive skills. I was looking for a way to reduce the load in the backpack so I could enjoy being out more, instead of being a slave to my hi-tech gear. During my hikes, I would use wild edibles for some of my meals, and learned some meager primitive skills after dropping out of boy scouts. Many years have passed since then and I have taken several courses with Tom Brown jr, and signed up for several more in '97, in addition to tracking courses with Paul Rezendes.

I live on several hundred acres of woods, in a geodesic dome I built, that is completely solar powered, and off the grid. I spend most of my free time out and about. Up until last week, I was happily unemployed, but due to things like mortgage, etc, I had to take a short computer contract to get the bills back in order before I can resume my favorite lifestyle of unemployment, playing in the woods and creating music. My camp outs now are mostly practicing to be the "happy wanderer" where I go out for 4 days or so with just the clothes on my back (and front) and a knife and see how far I get. Usually I turn into the dehydrated or starved wanderer:( but have been getting fairly successful in the last few outings where I'm able to get shelter, fire, water and food within the first 2-3 days. Each time out is an incredible teaching! I recently took up knapping and can now get good arrowheads/spear points and knife type items, so at some point I'll drop the knife and see how far I make it then. I teach primitive skills to kids and am in the process of switching my career focus from computers to primitive skills as my firsthand knowledge increases, and now that I can finally afford to not be a "slave" to some large corporation for my daily grub(s).
In Peace,

Bruce Carroll
Virtual Mountain
New Hampshire
Bruce

---------------------------------------------------------------
----
Grant Goltz

This post will serve as a partial intro (more later as time permits)...

I live in north-central Minnesota and conduct archaeological and paleoenvironmental research. Much of my time is spent on researching and replicating various technologies used by Native peoples of the region (primarily prior to European contact). My most significant speciality is indigenous ceramics. For the past 15 or so years, I have been researching and replicating these technologies. My goal has been to attempt to replicate the various technologies in as close a manner to that exhibited by the archaeological record as possible, using the same materials as would have been available.

In the process, I have made several hundred vessels of all sizes and styles, and have used many of them for cooking and processing. I can say that these ceramics are amazingly sturdy and functional.

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655
FAX 218-682-3358
Ggoltz@AOL.COM

---------------------------------------------------------------
---
Mark D. Ball

I have just joined the list, and so far it's great.

I am a plastic surgeon, living in Redding, CA. I got to this list because of a hunt that took place this past fall. I shot a bear with my bow and was unable to find him for 24 hours, though he had gone only 40 yds. into a large willow thicket. It became painfully clear to me that I had no business hunting if I could not track what I shot. I happened on the brother of a friend who had taken Tom Brown's standard course here in CA
That lead me to Tom's books, which lead me to the school, which lead me to the web page, which lead me to the Tracker list, which lead me here. This is great!

Mark D Ball
mball@mercy.org

---

Chuck Hudson

Hi all:

I have been subscribed to this list for about a month now and decided that it was time for me to introduce myself.

I am relatively new to the primative skills thing. In fact I had never heard of any of this until last spring when I became a volunteer at a living history park (Virginia's Explore Park) located just outside of Roanoke, VA.

The park consists of three sections:

The Blue Ridge Settlement, a reconstruction of western VA life in the mid-1800s. This area consists of a farmstead, blacksmith shop, one-room schoolhouse, and a large "bank barn". These are all original buildings which were disassembled at their original sites and the reassembled and restored at the Park. The farmstead grows crop varieties and raises animal breeds which were common during the early-mid 1800s. They also give demonstrarions of various 19th century life skills.

The second area is the 'Longhunter's Cabin" this is a reproduction of the cabins which were common in western Virginia during the late 1600s through the mid 1700s. Again, the period costumed staff here give lifeskills demonstrations appropriate for their period.

The third area, and the one where my wife and I both work as volunteers is the native american village. This village is a reconstruction of the lifestyle of the siouan speaking peoples who inhabited the Roanoke Valley before the coming of the europeans.

This village, based on archaelogical finds, journals of the earliest explorers of the area, and other sources, is being constructed using the tools and methods these people had available to them prior to white contact. Most notably this means that we do not have the luxury of metal tools, nails, etc.

Since working there I have learned to make fire, bark baskets, dogbane cordage, cattail mats and cattail mats. I have learned to select, and prepare saplings for building, build circular and oval domed structures (wigawa) and remove and prepare bark sheets for use as a covering for our buildings.
I have also begun to learn the skills necessary to manufacture stone tools such as celts, knives, scrapers, fleshers, and drawknives.

I look forward to learning much more from the obviously highly experienced members of this list in the coming months.

regards,

Chuck

"Charles E. Hudson"

---

Kelly Harlton

Wow, an impressive line up! (I almost feel inadequate giving my intro) Wont "clutter" this very busy list.

My name is Kelly Harlton, just a business owner in northern Alberta (Lesser Slave Lake). Done a fair amount of Survival Camping (lucky enough to have hundreds of miles of wilderness on all sides) I've been a Trapper, a Prospector, (these two just for a couple years), I've been snow caving, spelunking, Skied on a glacier, (these last 3 not extensively though), Most recent excursions include 10 days on the Clearwater river in northern Sask. in 95, 10 days on 3 rivers in BC/Alberta (Kananaskis, Kootenay, Red Deer) and Sea Kayaking/camping of the BAJA peninsula Oct 96. (these last 3 trips pretty "cushy" though). So another words, just gotten my whistle wet. Done some Fire making demonstrations for some schools. I Have not taken any formal training like the rest of you, Just all from my Library of 85+ outdoor books. I'm at that point in my life where I've been there done that as far as Workaholic, building a business thing (done OK so far too but there's gotta be more to life). I must confess doing the "demo" for the schools felt good! Is this how You all got your "start"? I am looking for a place to start, maybe I'll book a course from one of the "teachers" on this list (seems most of your have something on the go) Needless to say I will be posting more questions than
I am 34 (male), started getting into "the bush" when I was in grade 6. (first solo winter overnighter in grade 7!!)
Hobbies include; Camping, Back packing, Wilderness and white water Canoeing,
Hunting /Fishing, X-country (back county), Archery.

"Primitive" skills include; Fire by friction, Fire by spark, various shelters, Wild edibles, Cordage, and then feeble attempts at almost everything else (eg basket making, hide tanning, rock knapping (no flint here), slings, pottery, primitive traps, yes all the threads!, hence the value of this list to me!) Initial and most Inspiring authors from 10 to 20 years ago; Tom Brown (sorry Ron), Bradford Angier, Mors Kochanski, and of course many more in the following years.

Oops, I broke my promise already
End of Clutter

Glad to be a part of the Primitive Skills Research Team!
At Your Service;

Kelly
"Kelly Harlton"

David Weinstock

Hello! I am David Weinstock, in Middlebury, Vermont. The first "survival" book I read was Herter's Guide's Manual. I was a Scout for many years, back in the days before nylon backpacks and Polarfleece. I operate ham radio station WG1R, and prefer the now obsolete Morse Code to speech communications. I am a freelance commercial writer, and actually spent three years as a writer for the L.L. Bean catalog. I came to this group from the flintknapping list; as a knapper I'm without skills, but with a great wealth of theory. We live in Vermont, in sight of the Green Mountains. When my boys are older, we plan to resume an active outdoor life--

David Weinstock

Ferrell A. Peterson

Hi Everyone!

I've been reading all the input on the various subjects and have enjoyed the exchanges.
I have been involved in primitive survival and skills for the last 25+ years. My specialties have friction fires, cordage, atlatls, knapping, rabbit sticks (non-returning boomerangs), and any other skills or projects that have caught my fancy. I recently finished a hickory long bow at Rabbitstick (a primitive skills rendezvous held in Idaho each Fall by Boulder Outdoor Survival School). I've wanted to build a really nice one for years. I've tried to pass these skills on to whom ever would be interested and many of these have been Boy Scouts.

I found the recent exchange concerning two very prominent primitive practitioners very amusing and sad at the same time. Both have contributed greatly to the advancement of primitive skills. That's probably all that should be said. I know Mr. Brown only by his good reputation and that he has helped open the eyes of many to primitive skills and methods. This is wonderful! My eyes were opened by Larry Dean Olsen in 1969. We have been good friends ever since and I appreciate that he has been a mentor to me. This is also wonderful.

What has been the result? Thousands of people have been blessed with a new awareness. That's what's important. Let's drive on folks and share our knowledge.

I have enjoyed the sense of humor connected with body functions and with napalm marshmallows. More than that I enjoy the new perspectives on subjects that are near and dear to me.

Thanks, See you on the net. Ferrell Peterson, aka Fudsy.

---------------------------------------------------------------------
END OF LIST
JAN 15th, 97
To subscribe to the primitive skills discussion group, send an E-mail with the following command in the body of the message (nothing else):

SUBSCRIBE Primitive-Skills-Group

Leave the message header blank. Send the message to this address:

listserv@uqac.uquebec.ca

After a short while, you will receive a welcome message stating that you have been successfully subscribed, and you will start receiving messages from the group members.
To unsubscribe from the primitive skills discussion group, send an E-mail with the following command in the body of the message (nothing else):

SIGNOFF Primitive-Skills-Group

Leave the message header blank. Send the message to this address:

listserv@uqac.uquebec.ca

After a short while, you will receive a message confirming that you have been unsubscribed and you will no longer receive mail from the group.
Dr André-François Bourbeau

Home page (under construction)

**English:**

[Primitive-Skills-Group](http://pages.infinit.net/afb/home.htm)

Explo-Rations

At Nature's Will Inc.

**Français:**

Explo-Rations

Références Contrôle!

Université du Québec à Chicoutimi

Curriculum vitae

Au Gré de la Nature Inc.
Primitive-Skills-Group Archives

Primitive skills group

To view the archives as unformatted text, simply click on a category below.

To view the archives as originally formatted Netscape Mail (best choice), do this:

1. Click on a category below and wait until the file loads.

2. Save the file to your personal hard disk using the "Save as" option in the file menu.

3. Go to Netscape Mail by clicking on the envelope icon while in Netscape.

4. Under the file menu, use the "Open folder" option to open the file you just saved and then you can view all the messages the way they were originally sent.

Webmaster for this site: Dr André-François Bourbeau E-mail: bourbeau@videotron.ca

- Book reviews (80k)
- Chemistry (8k)
- Clothing (12k)
- Cold (20k)
- Comic relief (68k)
- Cooking (64k)
- Cordage (52k)
- Dangers (84k)
- Edible plants (72k)
- Fire carry (4k)
- Fire starting with bow drill (156k)
- Fire starting with flint (104k)
- Fire starting with guns (28k)
- Fire starting with hand drill (136k)
- Fire starting with magnesium (16k)
- Fire starting with piston (36k)
- Fire starting with plow (20k)
- Fire starting with saw (40k)
- Fire tinders (148k)
- Fishing by diving (12k)
- Fishing with explosives (52k)
- Fishing with poison (80k)
- Food preservation (140k)
- Footwear (28k)
- Group guidelines (40k)
- Hunting with atlatls (20k)
- Hunting with blowguns (76k)
- Hunting with bolas (72k)
- Hunting with bows (12k)
- Hunting with slings (92k)
- Hunting with spears (12k)
- Hunting with throwing sticks (16k)
- Hygiene (104k)
- Insects as food (72k)
- Insect repellants (120k)
- Introductions (84k)
- Knapping (36k)
- Lamps & stoves (12k)
- Medicinal burn relief (8k)
- Medicinal infection relief (20k)
- Medicinal lip balm (20k)
- Medicinal pain relief (24k)
- Medicinal rash relief (80k)
- Medicinal stomach relief (40k)
- Oil (24k)
- Opinions (407k)
- Orientation (48k)
- Pottery (116k)
- Ressources (176k)
- Shelters (236k)
- Survival kits (68k)
- Tanning hides (132k)
- Tools- knives (84k)
- Tools- glue (8k)
- Tools- needles (20k)
- Tracking (56k)
- Trapping (76k)
- Walkabouts (96k)
- Water (128k)

- ALL DECEMBER 96 (756k)

Back to primitive-skills-group
> With regards to Bradford Angier, I have studied his books extensively
> and my final judgment: to be taken with a grain of salt. I believe that
> he copied the majority of his information from other sources (I have
> documented many direct sources of plagiarism without reference) and I am
> convinced that he tried very little of what he speaks about. Therefore,
> it would be very possible that he misread or misinterpreted info he
> writes about.

When I first read Off Country I thought, "Wow, either this guy has spent
years living under every condition imaginable in every place in NA or he
is a total fake." I tend to lean toward the fake side. Seems like there
is too much info for one man to gather first hand. Thanks for letting me
know know what you you think of him.

I agree on the fresh seeds. Maybe this summer I'll do that.

Jeff

"But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts
is. A good part of her territory is already bare
and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her
villages generally are not so well shaded as ours."

-Thoreau

e-mail: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu
home page: http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens

--
Adam (in Australia),

You mentioned your bookshelf had a edition in Ron Edwards Bushcraft series. I've learned (here in the U.S.) that Edwards publishing company had filed for bankruptcy and that the excellent series was out of print and unavailable. I can get a copy Edward's "More Bush Leathercraft" through David Morgan a U.S. whipmaker but not the earlier book "Bush Leathercraft" or any of the series books. Myself, I'm looking for the particular volumes dealing with leather braiding and whipmaking. Would you mind giving out your books publication data (year published, ISBN number, publisher - anything that'll help me search through the used booksellers on the net). Also, I've heard a rumour that Ron Edwards publisher had possibly reorganized and may be publishing the series again in Australia. Heard anything on this and anyway of checking with a source at your end? I know 4 or 5 people here in North America that would like to order, not to mention David Morgan's company.

Thanks much,

Chris

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
You mentioned your bookshelf had an edition in Ron Edwards Bushcraft series.
Um, no. I have found these two books:

Collins gem published SAS Survival Guide in 1994 by Jon Wiseman

and

Wild food plants of Australia by Tim Low published by Angus and Robertson 1992

Sorry cy

From - Tue Dec 31 07:03:57 1996

> You mentioned your bookshelf had a edition in Ron Edwards Bushcraft series.
Um, no. I have found these two books:

Collins gem published SAS Survival Guide in 1994 by Jon Wiseman

and

Wild food plants of Australia by Tim Low published by Angus and Robertson 1992

Sorry cy

From - Tue Dec 31 07:03:57 1996
> In a message dated 96-12-28 11:39:37 EST, Andre' writes:
> 
> Also, do you have a reference to that Ishi book you are mentioning?
>
> Richard Burrill in Sacramento, California sells a book about ISHI. He sent
me a copy in exchange for a boomerang last Fall. He has a WWW page that
has videotapes about ISHI for sale. I didn't see the book for sale on the
web page, but you can send Richard email inquiries at:
RBurrill@WorldTouch.com or visit his WWW page at:

http://worldtouch.com/Anthro/supplements.html

Tell Richard "Hi" for me. Best, Ted

Ted Bailey | email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076 | Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 | Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970 | Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/
In a message dated 96-12-30 20:49:37 EST, tbailey writes:

<< Richard Burrill in Sacramento, California sells a book about ISHI. He sent
me a copy in exchange for a boomerang last Fall. He has a WWW page that
has videotapes about ISHI for sale. I didn't see the book for sale on the
web page, but you can send Richard email inquiries at:
RBurrill@WorldTouch.com or visit his WWW page at:

http://worldtouch.com/Anthro/supplements.html >>

Thanks for the scoop. I think I recall the book ISHI (posted previously by
others) had a picture of him working a hand drill. If the films show that
also, it would be a big help to anyone wanting to learn the technique. One of
the things that helped me after a couple of years of failed attempts was
watching a quick spot on aboriginal Africans working a hand spindle on a
special hosted by (I think) Charles Curalt.

John Waltz

From - Sun Jan 12 20:47:47 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA13070; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:54:38 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA16654; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:54:17 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:52:24 EST
Received: from cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu (cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.216])
by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA16651 for
; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:54:07
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [129.22.124.225] (rlc6-ra.F-REMOTE.CWRU.Edu [129.22.124.225]) by
cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu with ESMTP (8.7.6+cwru/CWRU-3.0) id NAA12732;
Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:58:12 -0500 (EST) (from rlc6@po.cwru.edu for
)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
INTO THE PRIMITIVE
1989;164 pages. Recommended

Chapter 1: Food (pretty good)
Fish gathering techniques
- hollow log trap
- crayfish trap
- bait
- shallow pool trap
- improvised spears and hooks
- fishing pole seine
- cloverleaf fish trap (requires wire)
- fish bomb
- trotlines
Animal-Trapping Techniques
- small snares
- small snare refinements
- box trap
- armadillo trap
- net capture

Chapter 2: Water and Fire (pretty weak)
- solar still
- water purification (does not mention iodine crystals, the best method going)
- lenses, matches, battery and steel wool
-fire drill

Chapter 3: Shelter (very weak)
- tarp shelters
- teepee

Chapter 4: Around Camp
- cooking fires and utensils
- furniture
- toys

Chapter 5: Path Guarders, Alarms, and Weapons (strong chapter; some very nasty stuff)

Overall, a book worth having. I'd say 7.5 on the scale.

Rob

Lots of good line drawings

Robert Chatburn, RRT
Director/Respiratory Care
University Hospitals of Cleveland
Instructor/Dept. of Pediatrics
Case Western Reserve University
(216) 844-7930
rlc6@po.cwru.edu
Howdy,

I just wanted you all to know that Benjamin has an incredible article in the January, February issue of the Backwoodsman Magazine. He covers primitive weapons in a way that would answer most of the questions we've been discussing recently. His illustrations are excellent and very descriptive. If you don't know where to get Backwoodsman you can call and talk to Lynne Richie at 719 783 9028 and get a copy. I know they are out of town for a couple of weeks (getting out of the Colorado snows!) but they'll be back.

Mention my name (if it doesn't pain you too much :>) or Benjamin's as they're friends of ours.

Happy reading!

and Way to go Benjamin!

Ron Hood
Get a giggle, Check us out!
Ron Hood Ed.D.
Organization: Au Grè de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: RE: Palladin press books
References:
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id MAA00630
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id MAA03261
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
MAA00630
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

James E. Burdine wrote:
>
Also Ragnar Benson's books SURVIVAL POACHING and LIVE OFF THE LAND IN THE CITY AND COUNTRY both published by Paladin press. Paladin press also publishes a book called INTO THE PRIMITIVE that is a guide to trapping for survival. I don't have a copy, and have never actually held one, but it is supposed to have primitive trap building. Paladin's catalog is available for $2 at P.O.Box 1307-7a1; Boulder, Co. 80306 or 1-800-392-2400 for the USA and Canada. They also have a web site at http://www.paladin-press.com and no I don't work for Paladin;-), but they do have some interesting selections.
>
I was very impressed by the list of survival books offered by Paladin Press, those of you who have not looked at the site Jim was mentioning should.

Request: Could anyone who has read any of these books send us a quick opinion so we can order the ones that are important?

Thanks!

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 10 21:34:06 1997
Received: from cypher.turbonet.com (CYPHER.TURBONET.COM [204.188.48.1]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id XAA03283 for ; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 23:18:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [204.188.48.239] by cypher.turbonet.com (NTMail 3.01.03) id ha204341; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 20:20:19 +0000
Message-Id: <1.5.4.32.199701110041657.00674c08@turbonet.com>
X-Sender: mcramer@turbonet.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Light Version 1.5.4 (32)
Mime-Version: 1.0
Date: Thu, 09 Jan 1997 20:16:57 -0800
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
X-UIDL: 852992560.034
From: Marc Cramer
Subject: RE: Palladin press books
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id XAA03283
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="iso-8859-1"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> I was very impressed by the list of survival books offered by Paladin
> Press, those of you who have not looked at the site Jim was mentioning
> should.
> Request: Could anyone who has read any of these books send us a quick
> opinion so we can order the ones that are important?
> Thanks!
>
> AndrÈ

I haven't read any of his books for a while. But I do remember that
"Survival Poaching" was a pretty good book. A lot of information on hunting
even if you don't want to use the methods (many are illegal).

....living in the same town as Ragnar....

Marc
mailto:mcramer@turbonet.com

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 10 05:00:32 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA04821; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:16:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA03480; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:14:28 -0500 (EST)
Received: from cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu (cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.216]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA03475 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:14:18 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [129.22.124.225] (rlc6-ra.F-REMOTE.CWRU.Edu [129.22.124.225]) by cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu with SMTP (8.7.6+cwrw/CWRU-3.0) id QAA26411;
Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:18:13 -0500 (EST) (from rlc6@po.cwru.edu)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: rlc6@pop.cwru.edu
>Request: Could anyone who has read any of these books send us a quick
>opinion so we can order the ones that are important?

I just read LIVE OFF THE LAND IN CITY AND COUNTRY by Ragnar Benson. The information is pretty good and seems to be reality based (ie, Benson has done the things he suggests). There are some great ideas for traps (including man traps) but not a very broad range of styles. Benson takes the stance of a survivor rather than a native arts recreationist. That is, he suggests ways of using what you find, even if it is modern. For example, he describes how to use and maintain steel traps. There is a great section on bee hunting, apparently a lost art. Benson has lived through the great depression and seems to know a lot about frugal living in hard times. His attitude seems to be that even harder times are just around the corner. I give the book an 8 on a scale of 1 to 10. I'm not at home right now or I would list the table of contents.

I also have INTO THE PRIMITIVE. I can give a quick review if anyone is interested.

Rob

Rob Chatburn, R.R.T
Director/Respiratory Care Dept.
Rainbow Babies & Childrens Hospital
11100 Euclid Ave.
Cleveland, OH 44106
(216) 844-7930
FAX: (216) 844-5246
OK, here it is:

INTO THE PRIMITIVE
1989;164 pages. Recommended

>From the Preface
"This book is centered around the concept of having ideas in mind about survival, just in case you actually have to use them at some point. This book is not a 'fight back' book. There are enough of those around. Eighty percent of this book deals with primitive techniques in the following areas: water gathering; food gathering; snaring; trapping; fishing and camping. The 20 percent of this book that does deal with primitive weapons and mantraps is presented to show you how to slow down and aggressor and escape, rather than how to be on the offensive."

Chapter 1: Food (pretty good)
Fish gathering techniques
-hollow log trap
-crabayfish trap
-bait
-shallow pool trap
-improved spears and hooks
-fishing pole seine
-cloverleaf fish trap (requires wire)
-fish bomb
-trottlines

Animal-Trapping Techniques
-small snares
-small snare refinements
-box trap
-armadillo trap
-net capture

Chapter 2: Water and Fire (pretty weak)
-solar still
-water purification (does not mention iodine crystals, the best method going)
-lenses, matches, battery and steel wool
-fire drill

Chapter 3: Shelter (very weak)
-tarp shelters
-teepee
Chapter 4: Around Camp
- cooking fires and utensils
- furniture
- toys

Chapter 5: Path Guarders, Alarms, and Weapons (strong chapter; some very nasty stuff)

Overall, a book worth having. I'd say 7.5 on the scale.

Rob

Lots of good line drawings

Robert Chatburn, RRT
Director/Respiratory Care
University Hospitals of Cleveland
Instructor/Dept. of Pediatrics
Case Western Reserve University
(216) 844-7930
rlc6@po.cwru.edu
At 08:37 PM 1/10/97-0800, you wrote:
>I have a copy of "Survival Poaching" by Ragnar Benson (I always wanted to
>know, is that his REAL name?) and have tried the legal methods (well not

No, it is not his real name. He lives in town here and his wife works for
the University of Idaho in town (Moscow). And, no, I am not going to tell
you his real name.

Marc
mailto:mcramer@turbonet.com

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Fri Jan 10 21:33:50 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA02338; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 20:37:47 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA06042; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 20:37:09 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 20:41:35 EST
Received: from milo.cfw.com (milo.cfw.com [205.219.240.6]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA06030 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 20:36:41
-0500 (EST)
Received: from stn26.cfw.com by milo.cfw.com; (5.65v3.2/1.1.8.2/12Dec95-0403PM)
id AA14609; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 20:45:27 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D718EE.4379@cfw.com>
Date: Fri, 10 Jan 1997 20:37:02 -0800
X-UIDL: 852992560.024
From: BKP
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, parslowb@CFW.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02E-KIT (Win16; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Review: Survival Poaching (Was Re: Palladin press books)
References: <32D594FC.3D85@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

I have a copy of "Survival Poaching" by Ragnar Benson (I always wanted to
know, is that his REAL name?) and have tried the legal methods (well not
so illegal methods, lets just say I kept to my legal limit). This book
has the quick lime in a bottle approach to fishing. That always reminds me about the joke where the old mountain man (hey, I was raised 9 years in West (by God) Virginia) hand the game warden a lit stick of dynamite and asks if he wants to talk or fish. OK, I don't tell it so well.

Anyway, I think that it is a rather good book. A good read, good information, accurate and helpful illustrations, and useful. I like Ragnar's writing style. Best that I can say is that if I lost this copy I would buy another.

--

Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

---

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu
Mark D. Ball wrote:

> Ben, thanks for responding to my question about brain tanning. I like the
> idea of stretching the hide with the knees. I am still uncertain, however,
> about how deep to dry-scrape on the hair side. When you have scrapped off
> the shiny epidermis, should the base of the hair follicles still be
> visible? I thought I had gotten the epidermis off, but I still had hair
> follicles visible in the hide. Should I have kept going? I've never seen
> it done, and it's hard to tell from the descriptions I've read.
>
> Mark D Ball

Mark: There's a book out on dry scrape brain tanning that I found to be an excellent resource. It's called Blue Mountain Buckskin by Jim Riggs. It Costs $12.00. Write him at 72501 Hiway 82, Wallowa, OR 97885 The Book is very well written and Jim has a great sense of humor. You'll find it answers a lot of questions. Even ones you haven't thought of yet!

There was a question of how do you get brains. Supposedly, each animal
comes with enough brains to tan its own hide, but friends of mine that do
a lot of brain tanning get pork brains out of the meat section at the
grocery store (you might have to hunt a bit. Not all stores may carry
it).

Keep on Truckin'

FP

From - Sun Jan 26 23:21:10 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA13981; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 13:36:25 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA09188; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 13:34:23 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 13:31:47 EST
Received: from cybersys.mercy.org (cybersys.mercy.org [205.225.34.178]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA09172 for
; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 13:33:30
-0500 (EST)
Received: from default by cybersys.mercy.org with smtp (Smail3.1.28.1 #2) id
m0voZSD-00002EC; Sun, 26 Jan 97 10:37 PST
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID:
X-UIDL: 854338570.006
From: "Mark D. Ball"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mball@MERCY.ORG
To:
Subject: Books of primitive skills
Date: Sun, 26 Jan 1997 10:14:34 -0800
X-MSMail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1155
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

On Jan. 25, Rob Chatburn wrote:

snip
> This is supported by Varro Tyler, PhD in his book HERBS OF CHOICE:
snip

Hi Rob. Reading your posts makes me think you have the most nearly compete
library of primitive skills books of anyone I know. If you have a readily
available list of your books, I would bet that this group would be
interested. I know I would.

-----

From - Fri Jan 31 20:05:46 1997
Subject: USDA Food Plants Of The North American Indians

Date: Thu, 30 Jan 1997 18:33:38 -0900

From: James Knox
To: trackers@segwun.muskoka.net

Fellow trackers
Thur afternoon

With all this talk of late on plant ID I was wondering if anybody knew about Elias Yanovsky's 1936 USDA misc. publication # 237 titled "Food Plants Of The North American Indians"? I have a copy of this publication. It was given to me long ago by a close friend who was a botanist. He said at the time that Elias (who was not a botanist) realized long ago that the incredible knowledge of medicinal and food properties that the various tribes possessed was quickly vanishing on the reservations from lack of use and poor living conditions (which were causing the people with this knowledge to vanish). He therefore set out to record as much as he could, visiting as many tribes as he could both in the US & Canada. And he did a very good job, for this publication contains 1,112 species belonging to 444 genera of plants distributed among 120 families.

But here is the drawback: to the method of plant ID and classification many of the species quoted in this document have been reclassified for a variety of
reasons: an earlier description was found so another name was honored, a species was later found to be merely a variation of a known species, etc. Therefore I was wondering if anyone knew of a revised version of this wealth of plant knowledge? Has a contemporary botanist ever gone through this publication and revamped it so the older plant classifications have been replaced by present day species? If not somebody should find a botanist who will or an 80 page summary of what knowledge on many types of plants was available back in 1936 will continue to be untapped.

I am not a botanist by any means, in fact in wilderness my plant knowledge is sadly lacking. My forte is animals. But if someone out there wants to work with this publication and can not locate it locally, post my site and I'll see what I can do.

James

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 30 21:06:57 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA12534 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 18:36:34 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA25846; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 17:46:42 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 17:44:47 EST
Received: from enaila.nidlink.com (enaila.nidlink.com [205.219.220.23]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id RAA25843 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 17:46:30 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.112 (pm6-15.nidlink.com [205.219.220.112]) by enaila.nidlink.com (8.8.5/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA28990; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 14:55:30 -0800 (PST)
Message-ID: <32F1185F.1119@nidlink.com>
Date: Thu, 30 Jan 1997 14:53:35 -0700
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@NIDLINK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Re: Book Titles
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Cross-posting this after my revenge on Rob (blame him) has been exacted. Don't usually save my deathless prose, so now it's gone forever with best wishes.

Whew! I can see I need to start building bookshelves and squirreling away more book money. Thanks. Have you seen Carla Emery's book, "An Old Fashioned Recipe Book - The Encyclopedia of Country Living"?

9th Edition, 858 pgs. paperback
$24.95 / $33.95 Canadian
Sasquatch Books
ISBN 0-912365-95-1

Published by:
Sasquatch Books
1008 Western Avenue
Seattle, WA 98104
(206) 467-4300

To contact the author, write or call:
Carla Emery
PO Box 209
Kendrick, Idaho 83537
(208) 289-5575

Started as a 3 holed multicolored mimeo'ed collection of pages with hand drawn illustrations, cardboard covers and wire electrical wire snippets to twist through the holes. My copy's with my sister-in-law. It changed her life from homecoming queen to tipi dwelling wilderness hunting & fishing lodge owner (scratch one point for me). Currently professionally published and finished, it has long been a standard of the Back to The Land bunch and has a large group of dedicated reader/contributors. The basic idea was and still is - a recipe book, but first find and buy the land, prepare the soil, plant and raise the food, harvest, butcher, can, pickle, dry and otherwise put the food by and finally cook it in recipes. Basically a complete treatment of what she was doing to raise a bunch of small children with her husband on a farm in rural Idaho. Raising rabbits, butchering goats, tanning hides, putting together a fruit and nut orchard, filleting fish, pulling calves, raising quail and pheasant, cooking snails, frying snakes...if it's not in here it probably hasn't happened yet. Scald a pig? OK, we'll make the equipment first and then catch that pig! It took off (the book, that is) and she included a School of Country Living, did radio and TV interviews, etc. Raise catfish in a barrel? Extracting oils? Felling trees? Foraging? Sugaring? Trimming hooves? Chopping chickens heads off? I want a wife like this! Really a fascinating woman with an engaging life story and her remarkable book of amassed country living skills that's just boggling in scope. Her kids grew up and moved and her marriage went by the wayside, but her book has taken on a life of it's own and taken a whole lot of people along with it, with world-wide contributors joining her mission. Lots of humor and a
Hello all. I just got in a seed catalog from Native Seeds/SEARCH. Lots of uncommon veggie varieties. Run by Native Americans. They also have some books for sale and this one sounds like it would be great for us. "BUFFALO BIRD WOMAN'S GARDEN" as told to Gilbert Wilson. This remarkable Hidatsa Indian woman shared her expert gardening abilities at the beginning of the century. She describes the entire years agricultural activities in the Northern Midwest in detail, including recipes for preparing the food, storage techniques, and implements. 127 pp. paperback
These folks can be contacted at: http://desert.net/seeds/home.htm

Adios,

Bob Cox

>Hi Rob. Reading your posts makes me think you have the most nearly compete
>library of primitive skills books of anyone I know. If you have a readily
>available list of your books, I would bet that this group would be
>interested. I know I would.

An astute observation Mark. A quick count shows about 190, not counting the
martial arts books or back issues of magazines. It would take a while to
list them all but if enough of you are really interested, I will do it.
Otherwise, Mark, I will have a list by the time I see you in May.

Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.3/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA05890 for ; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 11:37:37 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA26641; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 10:35:52 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 10:33:57 EST
Received: from brown.videotron.net (brown.videotron.net [205.151.222.70]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA26634 for ; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 10:35:41 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.52 (ppp052.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.52]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.3/8.8.2) with SMTP id KAA26715 for ; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 10:39:47 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32EDD7BA.349@videotron.ca>
Date: Tue, 28 Jan 1997 10:40:58 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@VIDEOTRON.CA
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Books of primitive skills
References:
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id KAA26635
X-UIDL: 87d978e3f0e55f6f30588a2eb9c7665c
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Rob Chatburn wrote:
>=20
> Hi Rob. Reading your posts makes me think you have the most nearly co= mpete
> library of primitive skills books of anyone I know. If you have a rea= dily
> available list of your books, I would bet that this group would be
> interested. I know I would.
>=20
> An astute observation Mark. A quick count shows about 190, not counting= the
martial arts books or back issues of magazines. It would take a while to list them all but if enough of you are really interested, I will do it.

Rob, PLEASE do send us a list of your books. That's exactly the type of information we like to see being circulated. Perhaps you can start by those you feel are most important. Also, any book reviews by any of our members on books they have which are a little uncommon would be very welcome by many I'm sure.

Also, if anyone has copies of back issues of magazines related to primitive skills you could dispense with at a moderate price, please E-mail me personally, I'm looking for many of them, and so are some of my students.

I would also like to know if there is a used-book market out there somewhere that you are aware of for books on primitive-skills.

Thanks for your help,

André

Surviving at nature's will... 0
=AF/
Dr André-François Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca =80\ /=80 \=80
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec /=AF=AF=AF=AF=
\=AF/=AF=AF=AF=AF\=AF=
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvvX______=

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Wed Jan 29 16:01:09 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from 207.96.219.31 (ppp031.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.31]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with SMTP id PAA16002 for ; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 15:40:31 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32EF6FB8.4F84@videotron.ca>
Date: Wed, 29 Jan 1997 15:41:44 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au Gré de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Subject: fwd from tracker's archives
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: 6e14c280cb7569510c324d9c418ea3ba
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

PS, regarding books:

"The Tree Indentification Book" by George W.D. Symonds and a companion
volume
on Shrubs are what I bought when I attended the Basic class years ago. They are large format paper bounds, but have lots and lots separate B&W photos of leaves, twigs, bark, flowers, etc, etc.

I've also used the Audobon book on trees quite a bit, it also has good pictures, in color even, of the bark, the leaves and flowers and sketches of the overall shape as well as more habitat info than the Identification book. But it's harder to use it for identification. On the other hand, it'll fit in a pocket.

Here in Missouri, the state puts out a guide for identifying trees in the winter. A lot of it requires measuring things to within a few millimeters and cutting twigs to examine the interior structure.

My wife found "Newcomb's Wildflower Guide" to be about the best for positively identifying something -- unfortunately you have to have a flower present. And nothing on trees. You also have to be willing to count the petals and go through a pretty rigorous classification to find your target -- but it works like a champ once you figure out racemes, spikes, panicles and so forth.

Peterson's has also just come out with a new volume on medicinal plants that seems to be pretty comprehensive.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
New Book: "Wet-Scrape Brain-Tanned Buckskin: A Practical Guide to its Manufacture and Use"

Stephen Edholm and Tamara Wilder, among our favorite and best instructors, are the authors of this new book. We know of nothing else on the subject which is anywhere near as extensive. Over 300 pages with more than 120 illustrations and photographs are included. Chapters will include History, Skin Structure, Why Make Buckskin, Why Wetscrape and What is Dryscrape, Health Concerns, Tools and Sharpening, Water and Work Area, What Kind of Skin to Tan, Acquiring Hides, Skinning Heads, Brains & So On, Care and Storage of Raw Hides, Scraping Basics, Fleshing, Soaking, Graining, Membraning, Braining, Softening or Breaking, Smoking and Sewing Holes, Troubleshooting Finished Buckskin, Using Buckskin, Buckskin Clothing, Care of Buckskin, Field Methods for Braintanning, Dyeing Buckskin, Braintanning Deer Hides with the Hair On, and Some Other Uses of the Deer. A bibliography and index are included.

You can get a copy at the prepublication price of $17.95 plus tax ($1.30 per book). No shipping will be charged on orders received before Nov. 1. Publication is expected before Dec. 1. Order from Paleotechnics, P.O. Box 870, Booneville, CA 95415.
I came across what I consider to be the best Plant Identification book ever printed recently and thought I'd share it with the Group. It is called Weeds of the West and is published by the University of Wyoming Press. The ISBN is 0-941570-13-4. It can be ordered through U of W, PO Box 3313, Laramie, WY 82071-3313 (307) 766-2115. This is an incredible guide to plant identification. It contains no information about uses of the plants. It was written to help range managers identify and control their rangeland. However, it has 630 pages with color plates showing the plant in maturity, with close ups of any leaf or flower detail that make IDing a breeze. It deals with all plants and grasses (the most extensive grass survey I have ever seen), but does not cover trees. (hence the title WEEDS of the West). It is designated a Western guide, but truly covers North America pretty comprehensively. Absolutely the best ID book out there, bar none! It costs between $16 and $30 depending on how many you purchase at a time.
And now for one of my favorite subjects. I will not mention the Peterson or Audubon guides as everyone knows about them.

PLANTS

Allan Hall
THE WILD FOOD TRAILGUIDE
All B&W line drawings.

Euell Gibbons
STALKING THE HEALTHFUL HERBS
A classic. Notable for recipes and personal stories.

Edward Knobel
FIELD GUIDE TO THE GRASSES AND RUSHES OF THE UNITED STATES
All B&W line drawings. Only about 80 pages.

Arthur Stupka
WILDFLOWERS IN COLOR
Very nice color plates.

Amchem Products Inc.
HAVE A WEED FREE LAWN
Supposed to be a guide to pest weeds so you can kill them with chemicals. About half of them are edible or medicinal. The best control measure is to eat them. They get intimidated. You can often get free booklets from pesticide companies. Check your hardware or garden store.

Ortho Books
CONTROLLING WEEDS
Great color photos and line drawings. $9.00

The O. M. Scott & Sons Co
SCOTTS GUIDE TO IDENTIFICATION OF DICOT TURF WEEDS
B&W line drawings. Small, sturdy fieldbook with wire spiral binding.

Christopher Nyerges
WILD GREENS AND SALADS
All B&W line drawings. Good recipes

Christopher Nyerges
GUIDE TO WILD FOODS
B&W line drawings. Some B&W photos. Includes medicinal uses.

Thomas K. Squier, ND
LIVING OFF THE LAND
Softbound but typewritten. Has a lot of unique stuff like "Growing your own mushrooms" and "Does herbal medicine work"

Barrie Kavasch
NATIVE HARVESTS. RECIPES AND BOTANICALS OF THE AMERICAN INDIANS

Peter Gail, PhD
-VOLUNTEER VEGETABLE SAMPLER. RECIPES FOR BACKYARD WEEDS
-ON THE TRAIL OF THE YELLOW FLOWERED EARTH NAIL (DADELION)
-THE GREAT DADELION COOKBOOK
-VIOLETS IN THE KITCHEN
-DADELION CELEBRATION

Peter is a friend of mine so I will give him a plug. He has other good books and a newsletter. For those of you who think dandelions are bitter, try Peter's dandelion pizza. Cover a pita bread with sauce, chopped 'lions, and cheese. Nuke in microwave till cheese melts. The acid of the sauce kills all trace of bitterness. Kids love them.

Goosfoot Acres Press
PO Box 18016
Cleveland, OH 44118-0016
(216) 932-2145

U. P. Hendrick
STURTEVANT'S EDIBLE PLANTS OF THE WORLD

Tom Squier
THE WILD AND FREE COOKBOOK
Giant hillbillie cookbook. Chapter on road kill.

E. Barrie Kavasch
GUIDE TO WILD EDIBLES
Only 60 pages but good color photos.

Eric Soothill, Michael J. Thomas
NATURE'S WILD HARVEST

Bradford Angier
=FIELD GUIDE TO EDIBLE WILD PLANTS
A classic. This book is unique in that it has the benefit of detail from line drawings but also the eye appeal of photos because the drawings are in color. Recommended.

Berndt Berglund, Clare E. Bolsby
THE EDIBLE WILD

Jim Meuninck
EDIBLE WILD PLANTS
A student of the great James A. Duke. Very small booklet good for the pack. Jim also has videos.

Jim Meuninck
THE BASIC ESSENTIALS OF EDIBLE WILD PLANTS AND USEFUL HERBS
I have an autographed copy. Does that impress you?

James A. Duke PhD
HANDBOOK OF EDIBLE WEEDS
More rigorously scientific than most books but still readable. Recommended

Pamela Forey Cecilia Fitzsimons
AN INSTANT GUIDE TO EDIBLE PLANTS
This book is unique in that it has the benefit of detail from line drawings but also the eye appeal of photos because the drawings are in color. Small, durable hardback for the backpack. Recommended.

Pamela Forey and Ruth Lindsay
AN INSTANT GUIDE TO MEDICINAL PLANTS
Same as above. Recommended.

L. H. Bailey
HOW PLANTS GET THEIR NAMES
A unique book on scientific nomenclature.

Frances Densmore
HOW INDIANS USE WILD PLANTS FOR FOOD, MEDICINE, AND CRAFTS

Edith Van Allen Murphey
INDIAN USES OF NATIVE PLANTS
Even has a section on venereal diseases. Recommended.

United States Department of Agriculture
COMMON WEEDS OF THE UNITED STATES
B&W line drawings. Good range maps. 600+ pages

Anne C. Hallowell, Barbara G. Hallowell
ERN FINDER
B&W line drawings. Very detailed little pocket guide. Recommended

May Watts, Tom Watts
WINTER TREE FINDER
B&W line drawings. Very detailed little pocket guide. Recommended

May Watts
LOWER FINDER
B&W line drawings. Very detailed little pocket guide. Recommended.

Alber Wilkinson
THE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF FRUITS, BERRIES, AND NUTS AND HOW TO GROW THEM
Probably out of print.

Deborah Lee
EXPLORING NATURES UNCULTIVATED GARDEN
Very unique book. Has the only description of signatures and similars I have seen in this type of book. Some mystical mumbo-jumbo. Recipes
Thomas S. Elias, Peter A. Dykeman
*FIELD GUIDE TO NORTH AMERICAN EDIBLE WILD PLANTS*
Very similar to Peterson's guide to edible wild plants. In some ways I like it better. Highly recommended.

Gary Paul Nabhan
*GATHERING THE DESERT*
A blend of history, scholarship and country yarns.

Ellen Elliot Weatherbee, James Garnett Bruce
*EDIBLE WILD PLANTS. A GUIDE TO COLLECTING AND COOKING*
Many B&W photos. Recommended.

Karen Shanberg and Stan Tekiela
*PLANTWORKS. FIELD GUIDE, RECIPES, ACTIVITIES*
A unique approach. Extensive info and activities regarding only 15 common plants. Good for teaching kids. Recommended.

Charles Francis Saunders
*EDIBLE AND USEFUL WILD PLANTS*
B&W line drawings. Some B&W photos.

John Lust
*THE HERB BOOK*
600+ page paperback

Mark Pederson
*NUTRITIONAL HERBOLOGY*
Extensive nutritional profiles on herbs. Chapters on each of the major bodily systems. Highly recommended.

Michael Castleman
*THE HEALING HERBS*
Unique in its documentation of scientific studies for many herbs. Each description has a "safety factor" section. Recommended.

Richard Mabey
*THE NEW AGE HERBALIST*
B&W line drawings. Beautiful layout and color photos. Recommended.

Penelope Ody
*THE COMPLETE MEDICINAL HERBAL*

Verro E. Tyler, PhD
*HERBS OF CHOICE*
Tyler has authored over 250 scientific and educational publications. The most completely referenced and believable herbal I have seen. Highly recommended.

Mannfried Pahlow
*LIVING MEDICINE*
Good mix of B&W line drawings and color photos. Recommended.

Joseph E. Meyer
*THE HERBALIST*
A classic first published in 1918.

Hans Flöck
MEDICINAL PLANTS
Some of the most beautiful colored line drawings I have seen. Recommended.

Michael Moore
MEDICINAL PLANTS OF THE DESERT AND CANYON WEST
Mostly B&W line drawings with a center section of color photos.

Booth Courtenay, James H. Zimmerman
WILDFLOWERS AND WEEDS. A FIELD GUIDE IN FULL COLOR
More of a visual than descriptive guide. Recommended.

Lawrence Newcomb
NEWCOMB'S WILDFLOWER GUIDE
Has a better plant identification system than Peterson's. A big help identifying edible and poisonous plants. Good companion to Peterson's Guide to Edible Plants. Must have.

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
OK people. You asked for it. I will be making posts of selected books from my personal library. There will be several categories:

- Survival,
- Camping
- Medicine
- Plants
- Cooking
- Crafts
- Misc (maybe)

Following is the SURVIVAL category. Books are listed by

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author(s) if applicable</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anonymous</td>
<td>The Chumash People, Materials for Teachers and Students</td>
<td>Published by Santa Barbara Museum of Natural History. Primitive skills of the Native Americans of Santa Barbara, California</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department of the Army</td>
<td>Survival. Army handbook FM-21-76 1992</td>
<td>If I could have only one general survival book, this would be it. Has great color photographs of plants and animals. Tom Brown helped edit this edition as evident in the shelter section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department of Army</td>
<td>Improvised Munitions Handbook TM-210</td>
<td>Simple, field expedient techniques for home brew destruction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Readers Digest</td>
<td>Back to Basics. How to learn and Enjoy Traditional American Skills</td>
<td>A virtual encyclopedia on damn near everything from building to gardening to metalworking to wilderness camping. Emphasis on semi-civilized skills such as the Amish use. Highly recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dept. of the Airforce</td>
<td>Aircrew Survival AF 64-5</td>
<td>Small, basic paperback suitable for inclusion in survival kits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department of the Army</td>
<td>Survival Evasion and Escape. Army Field Manual FM 21-76</td>
<td>Some unique info like an underground fireplace (sometimes called a Dakota hole). Prisoner of war info. All B&amp;W drawings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kenn Abaygo
Fugitive. How to Run, Hide, and Survive
Small paperback with military slant. No illustrations.

Bradford Angier
How to Stay Alive in the Woods
A classic. Good practical info but poor illustrations.

Ragnar Benson
Live Off the Land in the City and Country
More practical than primitive. Recommended.

Bart Blankenship
Earth Knack
One of the best for primitive living skills.

Tom Brown Jr, Jon Watkins
The Tracker
Highly readable biography of another famous teacher. Tom's first book.

Tom Brown Jr., William Owen
The Search
Tom's second book and continuing biography.

Tom Brown Jr
The Vision
Tom's continuing biography—starts into the spiritual/mystical.

Tom Brown Jr
The Journey
"A message of hope & harmony for our earth & our spirits. Continuing biography.

Tom Brown Jr
The Quest
"One man's search for peace, insight, and healing in an endangered world." Continuing biography.

Tom Brown Jr
Grandfather
"At last Tom tells the live story of his greatest spiritual teacher. A man who mastered and shared the skills of survival, who learned from the beauties of nature, and whose quest for inner peace can enlighten us all." Continuing biography.

Tom Brown Jr
Awakening Spirits
"For the first time, Tom...shares the unique meditation exercises used by (his students)." Continuing biography.

Tom Brown Jr
The Way of the Scout
"America's most acclaimed outdoorsman reveals the secret training methods of the scout by sharpening our powers of observation and unlocking the mysteries of our physical world." Continuing biography.

Tom Brown Jr
Tom Brown's Field Guide to Living with the Earth
Good coverage of long term survival skills. All B&W line drawings.
Tom Brown Jr
Tom Brown's Field Guide to City and Suburban Survival
All B&W line drawings. Not bad but probably the weakest of his field guides.

Tom Brown Jr
Tom Brown's Field Guide to Nature and Survival for Children
The best book geared for kids I have seen. All B&W line drawings.

Tom Brown Jr
Tom Brown's Guide to Wild Edible and Medicinal Plants
The unique thing about this book is that it is mostly personal stories of how Tom has used these plants. Sort of reminiscent of Euell Gibbons. All B&W line drawings.

Tom Brown Jr
Tom Brown's Guide to The Forgotten Wilderness
"Tom shows readers how to open their eyes to the surprising abundance of natural beauty that can be found in the urban and suburban landscapes and backyards, local parks, highway medians, and even windowsill flower boxes." All B&W line drawings.

Tom Brown Jr
Tom Brown's Guide to Wilderness Survival
Tom's first handbook. Excellent coverage of all the important basics of short term survival. Much unique info. All B&W line drawings. Highly recommended.

Tom Brown Jr
Tom Brown's Guide to Nature Observation and Tracking
The unique feature of this book is his detailed description of reading tracks by "pressure releases" or responses of dirt to the forces of movement. I have never seen this described anywhere else. All B&W line drawings. Highly recommended.

Frank C. Craighead, Jr. John J. Craighead
How to Survive on Land and Sea 4th ed
About the same size and scope as the Army handbook but no color photos.

Barry Davies, Phil Beynon
Survival Is a Dying Art
The basics. Nothing really unique.

Thomas Elpel
Field Guide to Primitive Living Skills 3rd ed
Practical skills presented in a writing style that makes you feel you are right there.

J. Wayne Fears
The Complete Book of Outdoor Survival
An Outdoor Life Book. Large hardcover, very professionally laid out. Covers everything. Highly recommended. (I think this guy is famous too)

Jeffrey A. Gottlieb
Teaching Primitive Living Skills/Survival to Children
Small, self published manual. Gives suggested times of activities and appropriate age groups.
W. Ben Hunt
American Indian Survival Skills
Emphasis on art as well as practical tools. Good photos as well as many line drawings.

Ellsworth Jaeger
Wildwood Wisdom
Large paperback (480+ pages). B&W line drawings. Emphasis on "mountain man" type skills.

Richard Jamison, Linda Jamison
Woodsmoke. Collected Writings on Ancient Living Skills
Another famous husband and wife team. They also have videos. Focus mainly on long term craft type skills. Includes unique stuff like fire piston.

Richard Jamison
Primitive Outdoor Skills
Reprints from Woodsmoke Journal. Detailed info about some unique topics.

Richard Jamison
The Best of Woodsmoke. A Manual of Primitive Outdoor Skills
Compiled from Woodsmoke Journal. Much unique material. Recommended.

Chris Janowsky, Gretchen Janowsky
Survival. A Manual That Could Save Your Life
A little of everything. Some unique tips. Mostly B&W line drawings, some photos.

Bjorn Kjellstrom
Be Expert With Map and Compass
A classic. Must have for basic and advanced orienteering.

James McKeever, Jean McKeever
Preparing for Emergencies

Hugh McManners
The Complete Wilderness Training Book
Fantastic color photographs. Very good for introductory text. I just like to look at this book.

John McPherson, Geri McPherson
Naked Into The Wilderness. Primitive Wilderness Living & Survival Skills

Raymond Mears
The Outdoor Survival Handbook
Nice mix of skills. Simple but effective line drawings.

Christopher Nyerges
Test Your Survival Skills
Unique self test format based on Nyerges' personally tested recommendations. Some reprints of his articles and newspaper articles. Recommended

Larry Dean Olsen
Outdoor Survival Skills
THE classic survival text. 1990 edition has forward by Robert Redford. Highly recommended.

Paladin Press
Never Say Die
Basic coverage of everything. All B&W line drawings.

Don Paul
The Green Beret's Compas Course
Very small paperback with very big info. This is where I first heard of telling time with your hand. All B&W line drawings. Recommended

Don Paul
The Green Beret's Guide to Outdoor Survival
Small paperback with unique info. Covers firearms. Mostly B&W line drawings some photos.

Don Paul
Great Livin' in Grubby Times.
Book II of The Green Beret's Guide to Outdoor Survival
Small paperback with unique info. Covers firearms. Mostly B&W line drawings some photos.

Don Paul
Everybody's Knife Bible. Green Berets' Methods and Knife Mannerisms
Very unique uses for knives. Plans for custom survival knife. Mostly B&W line drawings some photos. Recommended

Bernard Shanks
Wilderness Survival revised ed.
Basic coverage, some unique stuff. Good coverage of weather. Strong point is very detailed bibliography. All B&W line drawings.

Larry Wells Roger Giles
You Can Stay Alive
Small paperback good for survival kits. B&W line drawings and some photos.

Margaret M. Wheat
Survival Arts of the Primitive Paiutes
More B&W photos than text. Very good.

Willy Whitefeather
Willy Whitefeather's Outdoor Survival Handbook for Kids
Small self published manual. All text and drawings done by hand. Fairly good suggestions and it held my kids' attention.

C. Keith Wilbur
The New England Indians
An illustrated source book of authentic details about everyday Indian life. All B&W drawings.

John Wiseman
Survive Safely Anywhere. The SAS Survival Manual
Large size. Very broad scope. Covers all climates. Color drawings of plants. One of my favorites. Wiseman also has videos.
The Urban Survival Handbook
Unique info I have not seen elsewhere.

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
Some details on potassium nitrate manufacture:

MATERIALS
- about 3-1/2 gallons of nitrate bearing earth (from sources mentioned in the other postings; also soil containing decayed organic matter, old cellars or farm dirt floors, earth from burial grounds, totally burned whitish wood ash powder)

- fine wood ashes, about 1/2 cup
- bucket, about 5 gallons
- 2 pieces finely woven cloth, each slightly larger than bottom of bucket
- shallow pan or dish, at least as large as bottom of bucket
- shallow heat resistant container (ceramic, metal)
- water, 1-3/4 gallons
- awl, knofe, screwdriver or other tool for puncturing
- alcohol, about 1 gallon (ethanol or methanol)
- heat source
- paper
- tape

Note; yield can be altered by changing material amounts while keeping proportions the same
PROCEDURE
1. Punch holes in bottom of bucket. Spread piece of clogh over holes inside bucket.
2. Place wood ashes on cloth and spread to make a layer about the thickness of the cloth. Place second piece of cloth on top of ashes.
3. Place dirt in bucket.
4. Place bucket over shallow container. Bucket may be supported on sticks if necessary.
5. Boil water and pour it over earth in bucket a little at a time. Allow water to run through holes in bucket into shallow container. Be sure water goes through ALL of the earth. Allow drained liquid to cool and settle for about 2 hours.
6. Carefully drain off liquid into heat resistant container. Discard any sludge remaining in the bottom of the shallow container.
7. Boil mixture over hot fire for at least 2 hours. Small grains of salt will begin to appear in the solution. Scoop these out as they form, using any type of improvised strainer (eg, paper).
8. When liquid has boiled down to approximately half its original volume, remove from fire and let sit. After half an hour, add an equal volume of alcohol. When mixture is poured through paper, small white crystals will collect on top of it.
9. To purify the potassium nitrate, re-desolve the dry crystals in the smallest possible amount of boiled water. Remove any salt crystals that appear (step 7); pour through an improvised filter made of several pieces of paper and evaporate or gently heat the concentrated solution to dryness.
10. Spread crystals on flat surface and allow to dry. The potassium nitrate crystals are now ready for use.

Rob

Robert Chatburn, RRT
Director/Respiratory Care
University Hospitals of Cleveland
Instructor/Dept. of Pediatrics
Case Western Reserve University
(216) 844-7930
rlc6@po.cwru.edu

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA28482; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 22:51:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA25438; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 22:49:05 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 22:53:48 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by
Rob,

>Some details on potassium nitrate manufacture:
> MATERIALS

Excellent info! I don't remember all of those steps. We were probably just making some really polluted stuff. What I do remember is what we could use either a parachute or a pack bag to hold the dirt. We also used a military poncho to catch the fluids and "T" shirt filters (Mine already had crystals growing on them). Once the crystals had formed the ratio for the blackpowder was:

- Saltpeter... 7 parts
- Sulfur.... 5 parts
- Charcoal Powder 5 parts

These measures are by volume, use a measuring cup instead of a scale or balance.

Now we can really go get those marmots!

Benjamin..... can blackpowder be used to skin a turkey?

Ron Hood

Visit Hoods Woods at

http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/

It's good for a laugh......
> Does anyone know where I can get the latest information about the "Iceman".  
> This was the name given to the 5300 year old corpse found in the Alps 
> between Italy and Austria. Of particular interest to me was the report of 
> his grass jacket. Anyone have any idea about how it might have been 
> constructed?
>
> Rob Chatburn

It was probably woven much like the mats in BUSHCRAFT. It would be easy to 
cut grasses of a certain length, dry it, and make a poncho type flexible 
jacket. If woven correctly it should shed most if not all rain, and cut the 
wind rather well. It would also be natural camouflage.

Jim Burdine 
LV, Nv 
jburdine@pipeline.com
Hi Rob,

Of particular interest to me was the report of his grass jacket. Anyone have any idea about how it might have been constructed?

The Tubatlubal made jackets from Juniper bark. Long strips were peeled free from the tree and placed in layers, in a cape like fashion. The top ends, the ends nearest the neck, are held together with a heavy juniper bark rope. The rope is laid out flat, and the ends are pushed into the rope material, wrapped around the rope once, and reinserted. The rest of the cape just hangs free.

I've made several of these and they can be made in a couple of hours. They are quite warm and dry. Rain just runs off. The biggest problem with them is ticks. Since the rope "collar" is next to the skin ticks love to crawl out of the fibers and attack the neck, hair line and pits. Enough bites can lead to what is sometimes called "ascending paralysis" a result of either the neurotoxin used to deaden the pain at the site of the bite or anaphylaxis. My sources argue both.

Just a quick pointer. Soak the Juniper bark you are using for rope. It is much easier to counter twist.

Ron
"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"
Dr. Ron Hood
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"
From - Sun Jan 19 06:01:25 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA11176; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 13:50:27 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA29921; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 13:48:56 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 13:47:02 EST
Received: from termsrv.kitz.netwing.at (ns1.kitz.netwing.at [194.93.79.178]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA29906 for
; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 13:48:37
-0500 (EST)
Received: from kitz.netwing.at (dialin2.kitz.netwing.at [194.93.79.195]) by
termsrv.kitz.netwing.at (8.7.5/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA25590; Sun, 19
Jan 1997 19:52:53 +0100
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199701191852.TAA25590@termsrv.kitz.netwing.at>
From: "Alexander J. Pirchl"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, alex.p@netwing.at
To: ,
Subject: Re: Austro-Italian Mountain Man
Date: Sun, 19 Jan 1997 19:49:36 +0100
X-MSMail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1157
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> Does anyone know where I can get the latest information about the
"Iceman".
> This was the name given to the 5300 year old corpse found in the Alps
> between Italy and Austria. Of particular interest to me was the report of
> his grass jacket. Anyone have any idea about how it might have been
> constructed?

The mummyfied corps of the stone-age hunter, who is lovingly called "Oetzi"
(because he was found on a glacer in the Oetztal) was found not very far
from where I live (about 2 hours drive). There is much material avaliable
about him here in Austria because the local interest, but it's unfortunatly
all in german, but I'll do a little research about him and the numeros
tools found with him (especially his weapons) and post it to the group. If
you have any additional questions please contact me, and I'll see what I
can do!

Greetings,

Alexander J. Pirchl

Jochbergstr. 6
A-6370 Kitzbuehel
Rob Chatburn wrote:

> Does anyone know where I can get the latest information about the "Iceman".
> (snip) of
> his grass jacket. Anyone have any idea about how it might have been
> constructed?
> 
> Rob Chatburn

I don't have anything recent on the iceman, but I do have a file of articles on him, copies, if you're interested, I could copy you on them. Just send me $3 to cover mailing and copy costs. I have a friend named James Parker that made a cape like the iceman from raffia. He might could help you on the cape. The problem is getting him to find the time to return a call or mail, but I can give you his address if you like.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Hi

Ron Hood has an excellent writeup on hypothermia, including a body core temp chart and more symptoms.

It's at
http://www.av.qnet.com/~diogenes/Bookch4.htm

And I'd suggest looking over his and Karen's page at
http://www.av.qnet.com/~diogenes/

There's three more chapters of outdoor survival stuff there. All in all a very good read!

Thanks Ron and Karen

Merv
Hypothermia is stalking you!

How are you feeling? What's your name? What time of day is it? Just a couple of questions to establish your level of consciousness. (Hmmm, mumbling, can't seem to talk well, can't seem to concentrate.) Are you cold? Shivering? Got colder and you stopped shivering an hour ago? Here catch this flashlight. Oops, dropped it eh? Can you zip up your coat? No? Time to get warm buddy.

The stage of hypothermia that I've tried to portray above is about as serious as you ever want to see. At this stage, it's still curable.

The next stage, unconsciousness is lethal. In fact if you _do_ find someone in the unconscious stage, don't try to warm them. The ice crystals you release into their blood system (they may be partially frozen) act just like blood clots when they hit the heart and brain. Transport them cold to the emergency room.
Now, the one who's still communicating. This one's body (core) temperature has dropped. So, very slowly, increase the warmth around him. More cloths will probably not help. His core temp is so low that he's not doing well at generating enough heat. If you give him a hot liquid to drink, you may cause a system shock that will initiate a heart attack. Keep the warm stuff close to normal body temp. No hot fires...close. Out of the wind is good. Strip off cloths, pile them under and over the two of you and give the patient body heat is one of the best.

Milder forms can use more clothing, and/or exercise but once the coordination and concentration goes, you'll probably have to give them more heat.

There's a couple more people on this list that should be able to give more info (hint, hint! I think I remember a RN)

I can look up temperature charts for ya'll too if you'd like.

As a caver, I deal with cold quite a bit. As an EMT, I watch the effects closely. There's no sun underground to warm up with. We carry one time use heat packs, some carry emergency blankets, there's usually a balaclava or two along, and at least two trash bags per person (usually stowed above the web in your helmet).

You gotta watch conduction, sit on the trash bags. Watch convection, put something warm especially on your head.

Wind chill isn't usually a problem below ground, but there is the to and from above. The garbage bags strike again!

When we get them back to camp, if they're not too tore up, we save them for the next time. If they're past use for protection, a little bit of duct tape patches them for use as garbage bags.

The last thing to watch out for is persperation. If you sweat, you'll cool. Keep your exertions below the sweat producing level.

Anyow, nuff from me right now. Lets hear from some more folks

Oh, BTW, we might start a thread on Hyperthermia too!

Stay Warm
Merv

---Time flies like an arrow -------------------------------
| Merv Martin * * *
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * * *
| www.midtown.net/~merv * *
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages)

Fruit flies like a banana---
Hey Merv;
Actually you have more info on on site treatment of Hypothermia than I do. By the time they get to me in the ICU we are mainly giving them the next best thing to a couple of naked bodies under blankets. We use a combination of warmed I.V. fluids and slow warming with a K-thermia blanket or Bear hugger blown warm air blanket. When I was in the Army we were taught to take their clothes off and put them next to two other people under covers for slow gentle warming if medivac were delayed. At that point you would have little to loose, because they would die anyway if you didn't. If they are awake, keep them awake, offer warmed liquids(note I didn't say hot) and keep them or get them under the cover.
As a side note, I think that's why so many abo peoples in colder areas start a fire and put some kind of tea on the fire before they do anything else, even if it's only hot water.

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com
Signs of Hypothermia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signs</th>
<th>Degrees Body Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shivering--rapid breathing/pulse</td>
<td>99-96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin: possible red</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intense shivering, If conscious,</td>
<td>91-95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can barely speak. Skin: possibly red</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shivering decreases, replaced by strong</td>
<td>86-90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muscular rigidity. Erratic or jerky</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movements...thinking is dulled, possible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amnesia. Skin: Pale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person irrational, loses contact with</td>
<td>81-85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>environment...stuporous state. Pulse and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breathing slow. Skin: Pale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lose of Consciousness and no response</td>
<td>78-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to spoken words. Most reflexes cease.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heartbeat is erratic. Skin: Pale/cyanotic.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In extreme, body parts may be frozen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

People with injuries, chronic illness or the elderly will show effects of cold much sooner. A person laying on the cold ground or other surface is especially prone to rapid heat loss thru transference of cold (conduction).
Always consider the following: air temperature, wind chill, (or water chill) clothing person has on. How long exposed or how active during exposure.

RESPONSIVE PERSON:
If alert, Remove any wet clothing, and keep person dry., Wrap in warm blankets. Keep the person still and handle very gently. Do not allow person to walk and DO NOT massage OR warm legs and arms...A little at a time, reheat body with hot water bottles, warm air, or your own body. Use central rewarming...(middle of body, lateral chest, neck, armpits and groin). DO NOT REWARM QUICKLY. This will circulate stagnated cold blood and cool the central areas of the body and could cause cardiac arrest.

Provide care for shock...elevate feet. If person is ALERT...give warm liquids very very slowly. DO NOT allow person to eat or drink stimulants.

UNRESPONSIVE PERSON:
Severe Hypothermia. Provide passive rewarming. DO NOT try to actively rewarm. Remove from environment GENTLY to prevent farther heat loss, if possible off of any cold surface.
MAKE sure person can breathe..tilt head back slightly to open airway.
Wrap person in blankets...use insulating blankets if possible.
REMEMBER: in extreme hypothermia...heart rate can slow to 10 beats a minutes (normal is 60-100) and body will feel very cold to touch. THE PERSON MAY STILL BE ALIVE even if you can barely feel or cannot feel heartbeat. Place fingers on the artery in the neck (carotid) and try to find a pulse for 30-45 seconds. If no pulse...start CPR...if pulse, DO NOT USE CPR. It is possible, in extreme cases of hypothermia, for person not to reach biological death for 30 minutes or more.

Source: Brady Emergency Care...Seventh Edition. 1995
Meeting the D.O.T. 1994 Revised EMT National Standard
> that
> Stalking Wolf gets caught in
> the far north in the winter and comes close to dying.
> INTERESTING THAT this is mentioned.

On the way home this evening, I was listening to an NPR segment on HYPOThERMIA and effects of same, and different kinds of warm-up methods.

The presenter is publishing an article in the Jan. OUTSIDER, Peter Stark.

Might be of real value for some of the skills members to comment on how to survive in cold temps.

Here in the South, this is not usually a problem, cover the head, hands, layer clothing, keep dry, watch windchill, etc.

One thing that was brought out was improper warming of serious cases. Mention was made of 16 Danish fishermen who were taken from the cold Atlantic, given warm-up drinks, etc. and when they went below deck, into warmth, they all dropped dead.

Now, if I could only learn to "freeze" mosquitoes:

b-man, rich

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

--

From - Sun Jan  5 23:16:45 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id DAA25403; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 03:59:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id DAA04070; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 03:56:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 06 Jan 1997 03:57:28 EST
An earlier posting noted this treatment;

>UNRESPONSIVE PERSON:
>
>Severe Hypothermia. Provide passive rewarming. DO NOT try to actively
>rewarm. Remove from environment GENTLY to prevent farther heat loss, if
>possible off of any cold surface.
>MAKE sure person can breathe...tilt head back slightly to open airway.
>Wrap person in blankets...use insulating blankets if possible.
>REMEMBER: in extreme hypothermia...heart rate can slow to 10 beats a
>minutes (normal is 60-100) and body will feel very cold to touch. THE
>PERSON MAY STILL BE ALIVE even if you can barely feel or cannot feel
>heartbeat. Place fingers on the artery in the neck (carotid) and try to
>find a pulse for 30-45 seconds. If no pulse...start CPR...if pulse, DO
>NOT USE CPR. It is possible, in extreme cases of hypothermia, for person
>not to reach biological death for 30 minutes or more.

IT SHOULD BE NOTED;
Many fatalities from severe hypothermia occur when the victim is moved
suddenly or warmed suddenly. The best treatment is no treatment in the case
of an unresponsive person if the paramedics are on the way. A severely
hypothermic person can go into cardiac arrest pretty easily if they are picked
up, made to move (even to rolling over) and exert themselves, etc.

the most important thought;
CLEARLY HYPOTHERMIA SHOULD BE AVOIDED, NOT TREATED

never give up...
NO ONE IS COLD AND DEAD UNTIL THEY ARE WARM AND DEAD

The best reference I have seen on the subject is;
"Hypothermia, Frostbite and Cold Injuries"
The Mountaineers
306 Second Ave. West
Seattle, WA 98119

CAG
Hey Doc!

> Oh, this is TOO personal. Please keep it private Doc. You aren't going
to use one of those rubber gloves they been talking about, huh Doc?

No gloves for you Andre'...... No sireeee. Just my COLD hands groping your bottom.......

Kinda reminds me of the two fellas walking through a field. They spot a sheep with it's head caught in some barbwire. The one fella turns to the other, a brownie and says. "See that sheep, now we're gonna have some fun!" He walks up to the sheep, drops his pants and........ shortly, he pulls up his pants, smiles and says "Now it's your turn." The brownie looks at the sheep, drops his pants, and sticks his head in the fence........

BTW. The best technique for clingers that I know. Eat two pounds of beans, six ounces of spinach, two eggs and a chili dog. Wait two hours. When the urge hits, back up to the fire and let 'er rip. The flames will cauterize the resulting wound. There will be no hair, no clingers and no little field monkeys dropping from that cheeky speaker for some time.

Yer's

Ron

P.S. You can post this if you want...... Perhaps some would find it amusing.

Dr. Ron Hood
P.O. Box 383
Lake Hughes, CA, 93532
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"
Anyone know where I can get a copy of Benjamin Franklin's "Fart Proudly"?

BTW, talk about your primitive firestarters. Saw my Red-Neck (you might be a Red-Neck, if...) brother-in-law lean over after a family dinner, pull out a Bic lighter and announced, "Hark!" He let go and lit the flame and set his polyester pants on fire as the gas ignited in a big ball of flame diffusing through the weave of his clothing. Falling to the ground under the table to our amused and amazed view, he slapped at his butt frantically for seconds until the orange glow died. Fused the pants to his rear end and legs. Then he went out to sit in the snow and drink tequila.

Oh yeah, you might like this. Last summer I took my family on a lakeside camping trip. We had taken a bag of marshmallows for our 9 yr old son to roast around the campfire. We stripped the bark from some green sticks and loading up a couple I proceeded to transform them into perfectly browned beauties for my wife and son. Whoops! They caught on fire, so I quickly pulled them out on their little whippy stick to huff and puff on them. Molten liquid marshmallow napalm shot out of the side of the burning devils, catching fire as it flew in a stream toward my head. Instantly conforming to the contours of my face the marshmallow fuel flamed up my face towards my hair. Time slowed waaaayy down as I started slapping my own face, slowly at first, then furiously as it appeared to have absolutely no effect. My family's mouths started
dropping open, slow as opening doors on a barn - their eyes began slow
motion opening wide - SWOCK! - looked like two pair of twin umbrella's
opening. I could see everything with bright clarity, as my animated
self noted the flames climbing my head, millimeter by millimeter, like
the frame-by-frame video of an explosion. It dawned on me that my hair
was going to combust hair-by-hair next. Slapping my head with blurring
speed (as seen by my loved ones) I was just about to bury my head in the
ground and roll around at their feet when the fuel unexpectedly burned
itself out. Standing there charred, smoking and looking like I'd just
been struck by lightning (but first the dancing Wild Man Floor Show! --
where "he moves surprisingly fast for a fat man"). By then their mouths
were just about fully gaping, as I shakily patted my head ('just a
little bit slower now') feeling for my features. Unexpectedly finding I
had glasses, I pulled them off to see they were covered in white goo.
They must have saved my eyes. My nose and parts thereabout were another
story, as I walked through the next couple of weeks with my constantly
hurting pinkly burned 'above the shoulder' and deflated ego area. I
started drinking and didn't give a good God damn who saw. Even the
hangovers helped. People came to view me like a 'Shrine' and actually
fell down laughing at my feet, pointing up at me with tears running down
down their eyes, convulsed as they were with mirth. One guy wrote me on the
internet to thank me for my humiliating object lesson. He'd been
feeling depressed and stressed, but that passed like a cloud when he saw
what an asshole I was. Now in my bug-out bag sits a little bag of
emergency marshmallow firestarters...and a bigger first aid kit.

Believing he needs a beer,
Chris

From - Tue Jan  7 05:28:47 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA07877; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 15:34:58 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA11885; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 15:32:52 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 15:37:32 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA11881 for
; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 15:32:41
-0500 (EST)
Received: from Default (a168.ecom.net [207.13.224.168]) by ns2.qnet.com
(8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA03421; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 12:36:04 -0800
(PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852675708.139
From: diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Date: Tue, 7 Jan 1997 12:36:04 -0800 (PST)
Message-ID: <19970107123604.MAA03421@ns2.qnet.com>
X-Sender: diogenes@pop3.av.qnet.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.3
>So am I. It might be fun to try this with an animal head. I can see it now, >world's smallest elk trophy.... ;-)

>Bill B.

OK, OK......

I watched this..... in the Mato Grosso.It may work with an elk head. It does work with dog (No, I didn't do it to the dog! Dog's are too loyal)

Part the hair on the back of the skull to expose the scalp. Carefully cut a line from the base of the neck to the hairline above the forehead.

Pull the skin away from the skull. Put your fingers between the skull and skin to separate the skin of the face from the facial bones. When you encounter an opening, Eyes, nose mouth, follow the skin into the opening and cut inside the hole to seperate the tissue from the skin.

Break the nose at the union between cartilage (sp?) and the bone with a blunt tool like a stick.

Pull the face off.

Turn the skin inside out and scrape away the majority of the fat and muscle left on the skin. Be careful not to puncture the skin. A stone scraper is good. Turn the skin back inside right.

Sew the lips, eyes, nose and mouth shut. Close the opening in the back of the head.

Heat a big bucket of sand (about 100 pounds) 90% sand 5% wood ash 5% salt until the sand is too hot to handle. Do not burn the sand.

Partially fill the skin with the sand. Shake the skin to move the sand around inside the skin. This will take some doing but it is very important. The sand will begin to dry the skin and the skin will begin to shrink. When the sand cools, pour it out and refill, do it again, and again, and again until the head is much smaller. This will take many hours, even days. If you need to rest, hang the head by the hair, in smoke from the fire. You will need to plug the neck if you do this. Never overfill the head. That will stretch the skin, not what you want.

When the head is the size you want, it will feel like a leathery orange, and it won't smell. Pour out the sand and fill with dry grasses. Mold to shape. Repeat the sand routine if it starts to stink.

Peace

Ron Hood
> Incidentally, the sand trick is similar to the technique used to shrink heads... but that's another topic.

Not that I intend to shrink anyone's head, I am just curious, how exactly was this accomplished?

Greetings,

Alexander J. Pirchl

Jochbergstr. 6
A-6370 Kitzbuehel
> Not that I intend to shrink anyones head, I am just curios, how exactly was
> this
> ASK A BUREAUCRAT. OR am I confusing sticking-head-in sand with shrinking
> heads?  :)

b-man, rich

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG......sent anywhere!
**"Let the good times roll!"** Cajun French saying.

bmanrich@iamerica.net

http://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/comicre1.htm

http://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/comicre1.htm (6 of 27) [10/22/2003 6:58:01 PM]
Bill Blohm wrote:
>
> > Not that I intend to shrink anyones head, I am just curios, how exactly was
> > this
> > accomplished?
>
> > So am I. It might be fun to try this with an animal head. I can see it now,
> > world's smallest elk trophy.... ;-) 
>
> > Bill B.

I never thought my first contribution would be instructions for shrinking heads...

The following link describes the method for shrinking heads practiced by 
the Jivaro tribe of Bolivia. Further investigation will be required to 
identify the specific herbs to which the article refers. I will leave 
that to other more interested members. I think I'll pass up the 
opportunity to acquire this particular primitive skill.

http://www.museumpress.com/exhibit/jivaro1.html
Merv, I guess pinching steam is more involved than the simple process of elimination. I've now learned that my dog is a potential "ass-ett", that soaking the cob is an important prelude to that final stroke and when a grogan storms the doors, your anal art should not be decorated with a white butterfly. Fascinating.

To continue the train. In the Sierra we discovered that the steamer will be memorialized, something like a mummified Egyptian brown snake, if it is punched into the earth at above 8,000 feet. Food slag dropped into a hole is not digested by the butt log munching organisms normally associated with decomposition. We've learned this terrible truth as well as the axiom "One manís camp is another manís toilet" the hard way. After having had digital contact with the extraordinarily aromatic contents of another personís colon, I've resolved to avoid digging with my hands.
We've learned through experience that a brown steamer is best vented into a crack between rocks, to a resting spot on top of the ground. It will lay there unmolested for a few days and then the combined efforts of sun, cold, air and rain will erode your brown joy. Within a month there will be no sign. If we avoid corn cobs, bundled hay, cedar cones and other smudging instruments, we will leave no sign whatsoever. Which leaves us with an interesting thought. "How can we drop those little Saddamsis with the least possible damage to our skin?" The answer I think may come with the single cheek lift.

Long ago I had a spiritual revelation. As I lay in a mortar crater with my rifle, half way through a three hour firefight, the spirit rose at groganís door. In that moment I realized that some things are far more important than the abstract notion that I could be killed. I KNEW that a turd would emerge unbidden into a world filled with the acrid odor of rifle fire. Not only that, it would be in my pants.

They say that there are no atheists in a foxhole, it is true. I asked God for guidance. (God DOES have a sense of humor.. why else would he program the body to pinch steam during a life threatening event?)

In a moment I had the revelation. My spirit guide "knuckles" told me to "DropíemÖ.Lift itÖPinch with energy" I did. After lifting one cheek, and pushing HARD, an aromatic missile flew from my body at a speed that would have cracked a windshieldÖ. And landed six inches from me WHILE I LAY ON MY SIDE! Other than having a new companion in my mortar hole, things turned out fine. I did not sleep there that night.

Since that singular experience I’ve quizzed my spirit guide for guidance and I’ve had a learningÖÖ

While perched atop that sundered rock waiting for that turd to drop, lift your cheek with your right hand and on the ground it will land.

Nary a mark will it leave and only the air will it cleave.

(I’m waiting for the rest of the lesson)

Ron Hood

Get a giggle, Check us out!
Ron Hood Ed.D.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 10 21:34:32 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA04053; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 02:09:18 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA07698; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 02:08:04 -0500 (EST)
>While perched atop that sundered rock
>waiting for that turd to drop,
>lift your cheek with your right hand
>and on the ground it will land.
>
>Nary a mark will it leave
>and only the air will it cleave.
>
>(I'm waiting for the rest of the lesson)
>
>Ron Hood

Ron, I'd imagine that chocolate butt kisses in the snow could be a problem too. I think your alignment crack to crack with rock might be the best idea. That way the steamer dood wont last much past the thaw, if that.

Chris, there's thimbleberries down to the southern Sierra. I've seen (and eaten) thimbleberries in Mountain Home State Forest. That's due west of Sequoia National Park and about 7-8000 feet altitude.

Take Care

Merv
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 10 23:30:45 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA05894; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 11:09:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA09490; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 11:08:57 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 11:07:04 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA09487 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 11:08:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.119]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA77 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 11:05:02 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D7C9E2.5901@perigee.net>
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 1997 11:12:02 -0600
X-UIDL: 852999746.000
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Spiritual help and Turd Paper
References: <199701110052.QAA17766@ns2.qnet.com>
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id LAA09488
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id LAA05894
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
LAA09488
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0019
diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM wrote:

> Since that singular experience I’ve quizzed my spirit guide for guidance and
> I’ve had a learningÖÖ
> >While perched atop that sundered rock
> >waiting for that turd to drop,
> >lift your cheek with your right hand
> >and on the ground it will land.
Nary a mark will it leave
and only the air will it cleave.

(I'm waiting for the rest of the lesson)

Oh, enlightened one. Perhaps you will one day offer a "Spirit Krapping" course and will tell us that once you master Spirit Krapping you will not have to actually physically krap anymore.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Here is a way to tie several threads together. How about a sling with a
nice soft pouch that you can also use to wipe with, and while you are at it, hurl the fresh Steamer as far away as possible, preferably landing it between some very large rocks. This way you handle the delicate job of wiping, and sanitation at the same time. In fact, you could wear the thing and save your self the trouble of having to drop your pants. Just deficate, and throw! You can hunt with this sling in the traditional fashion, of course, and descenting won't be a problem because you and your rock projectile are going to smell like crap (which is pretty much how I throw with one). You should definitely put one of these multi-purpose babies in your survival kit. And as an added bonus, you can practice by hurling rocks at all your pottery shards and cracked pots! Is this great or what? Talk about conservation of effort! Thanks to all for all the great ideas. Are we not geniusses? Or is it geniasses? Geniuses? Whatever. Keep those cards and letters coming.

Kevin

Brilliant! The butt sling! Innovation is the corner stone of survival. As I
see it, it could even be used in primitive warfare re-enactments. A line of hairy folks aligned in ranks flinging grogans 100 meters at their fleeing enemies.

A contest for speed, the dump-wipe and sling, would be very popular among the "stoners" and "heads".

Environmentally it is possible that the passage of a brown steamer, at high speed, might ablate enough material that it could replace the ozone layer with the grogone layer. I'm fairly certain that the layer could not be penetrated by the Ultraviolet that causes so much trouble.

In fact, as the grogone layer settles to earth in successive waves one might expect that the vegetation would receive a much needed nutritional boost. Eventually this could result in a revitalization of our sorry planet.

I'm stunned. You are a genius. I sit at your feet.

Ron

>Here is a way to tie several threads together. How about a sling with a nice soft pouch that you can also use to wipe with, and while you are at it, hurl the fresh Steamer as far away as possible, preferably landing it between some very large rocks. This way you handle the delicate job of wiping, and sanitation at the same time. In fact, you could wear the thing and save yourself the trouble of having to drop your pants. Just defecate, and throw! You can hunt with this sling in the traditional fashion, of course, and descenting won't be a problem because you and your rock projectile are going to smell like crap (which is pretty much how I throw with one). You should definitely put one of these multi-purpose babies in your survival kit. And as an added bonus, you can practice by hurling rocks at all your pottery shards and cracked pots! Is this great or what? Talk about conservation of effort!

>Thanks to all for all the great ideas. Are we not geniusses? or is it geniasses? Geniuses? Whatever. Keep those cards and letters coming.

>Kevin


Get a giggle, Check us out!

Ron Hood Ed.D.
I guess that I owe someone an apology. I received an Email letter from some
courageous soul (whose return address is "Jesus Rules@Angry.God). I tried to
send a message to (.God) but Iím afraid there is no .God. hmmmmmÖ.

Anyway, this person objected to my use of the term "turd" when referring to
a feces or scat. OkÖ.. The intent of my language is to communicate
information and ideas in a way that is understandable to the largest number
of persons. I believe a "turd" is better known than a "scat", so I chose
that word.

However, in deference to the sensitive nature of my brave critic I will
herewith make the following changes whenever the word "turd" is required. I
will call a turd either "a brown steamer" if it is very fresh. A "steamer"
if it is reasonably new. A "Grogan" if it is largeÖ.. and "Old steamer" if
it may contain materials for making Potassium Nitrate (or ammonium nitrate).
(If you agree, oh fearless one, you need only write me another of your
wonderful letters.)

I hope that my complainer is aware that Jesus Christ was also a man. As such
he was most likely to have pinched a steamer or two in his lifetime (Now
that youíve got me thinking, I wonder what kind of fire accelerant THOSE
would have madeÖ. ).

If he did not, I understand the "Angry God" notion more completely.

Peace,

Ron Hood

> I donít like the way you yused the t--- word. Jesus Christ dide for our
> sins and he
> did not want us to use prfanity. The right way to talk about that subject
> if you must talk about it is you use the approprate word, scat. Or fece.
Dont you ever use that >word again or the Lord will smite you in his terrible wrath.
>God save you because he knows where you are.
Get a giggle, Check us out!
Ron Hood Ed.D.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Thu Jan  9 07:09:08 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA26384; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 18:37:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA23931; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 18:35:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 18:39:55 EST
Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id SAA23925 for
; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 18:35:03
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.154] (ip154.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net
[38.11.182.154]) by mule1.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id
SAA17936; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 18:38:51 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Thu, 9 Jan 1997 15:41:12 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
X-UIDL: 852854627.077
From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: Re: Turds
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0019

Sorry to take up more bandwidth with this subject, but someone out there obviously does not understand that God has a sense of humor other wise he wouldn't have let cousins to the chimp that merely walked upright, have dominion of his creation. Since he did, and taught one of the chimps to use a computer I must accept this as proof that God has a sense of humor. He also humbles man by making him excrete turds (excuse me brown steamers) as part of his existance. AS THE GOOD BOOK SAYS JUDGE NOT LEST YE BE JUDGED So if God is angry he will probably waste the unchristlike but very christian person that sent that post to our brother in primitive sciences. Perhaps you never took a dump in the outdoors, or had to clean fecal matter from your brother/sister man. If you had then perhaps you would have more appreciation for a simple harmless word such as turd. There are worse words, like cowardess. It is a matter of cowardess to not leave a proper
In the interests of clarity, I find myself needing to ask a question to clarify the intent of this terminology. Given that they are rare, it is known, however, that they do exist. Therefore, I need to know the proper terminology for paleo-turds. That is, which is more proper, to refer to Jurassic, Pleistocene, etc. turds as very, very, very, very, very, very, old steamers or as Stanley Steamers?

How about lithic steamers

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
In the interests of clarity, I find myself needing to ask a question to clarify the intent of this terminology. Given that they are rare, it is known, however, that they do exist. Therefore, I need to know the proper terminology for paleo-turds. That is, which is more proper, to refer to Juraissic, Pleistocene, etc. turds as very, very, very, very, very, very old steamers or as Stanley Steamers?

Bill B.
Bill,

> In the interests of clarity, I find myself needing to ask a question to
> clarify the intent of this terminology. Given that they are rare, it is
> known, however, that they do exist. Therefore, I need to know the proper
> terminology for paleo-turds. That is, which is more proper, to refer to
> Juraissic, Pleistocene, etc. turds as very, very, very, very, very, very
> old steamers or as Stanley Steamers?

Good question! I was under the impression that very large, petrified fecal
art, is called a "groganoid". I understand that they make a fine spear point
as they have conchoidal fractures that occur along the parallel inclusions
(i.e. hair etc.) naturally occuring in the deposits. Any Ideas?

Ron Hood
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Dr. Ron Hood
P.O. Box 383
Lake Hughes, CA, 93532
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan 14 03:43:06 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA00772; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 13:50:12 -
> Good question! I was under the impression that very large, petrified fecal art, is called a "groganoid". I understand that they make a fine spear point as they have conchoidal fractures that occur along the parallel inclusions (i.e. hair etc.) naturally occurring in the deposits. Any Ideas?

Interesting you should mention this. Airborne pungi stakes? Hmmm. Yech! Still, I think it would be difficult to keep a fine point on them, but it should be easy to track where they went. Also, if you did do this, I have a sneaking feeling that the first use for this spear would be to fend off the angry archaeologists!

Bill B.
> How about lithic steamers

Lithic thteamers? Nah, that's too technical.

Bill B.
In a message dated 97-01-14 12:44:53 EST, you write:

> Given that they are rare, it is
> known, however, that they do exist. Therefore, I need to know the proper
> terminology for paleo-turds.

coprolites

(now, who said I don't know s__t)

Grant Goltz

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Subject: Re: Turds...uh...grogans...uh steamers
Cops? Where? :-)

> (now, who said I don't know s__t)

Yah, you do know your s__t.

Either you're interested in archaeology, or you read the same National Geographic article I did! ;-)

Bill B.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Jan 15 00:39:10 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA05665; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 23:50:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA16996; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 23:50:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 23:48:23 EST
Received: from india.midtown.net (india.midtown.net [205.162.100.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id XAA16992 for ; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 23:50:04 -0500 (EST)
Received: from merv.midtown.net ([205.162.100.197]) by india.midtown.net with SMTP (IPAD 1.51) id 2790700 ; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 20:54:47 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: merv@midtown.net (Unverified)
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.4
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853348824.003
From: merv@MIDTOWN.NET (merv martin)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, merv@MIDTOWN.NET
Subject: Re: Turds...uh...grogans...uh steamers
Date: Tue, 14 Jan 1997 20:54:47 -0800
Message-ID: <199701150154.2790700@india.midtown.net>
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0019

>> > known, however, that they do exist. Therefore, I need to know the proper
>> > terminology for paleo-turds.
> 
>> coprolites
> 
>Cops? Where? :-) 
>
>> (now, who said I don't know s__t)
> 
>Yah, you do know your s__t.
Either you're interested in archaeology, or you read the same National Geographic article I did! ;-)  

My grandfather was a rockhound, and taught me to spit on a rock and rub a bit to see what it'd look like polished. I got lazy and just licked them. He broke me of the habit of licking rocks by handing me a piece of coprolite, letting me test it for polish (by licking of course) then telling me what it was. I swear, that stuff had a petrified stink with it when I knew what I'd licked!  

Also, while on coprolite, did you all know that dinosaurs were very advanced poopers? Yes, indeed. Their turds are even tapered at the end, just like ours. Yep, that way their assholes wouldn't slam shut. Can you imagine a herd of brachiosauri pinching squared off steamers? What a noise! They'd never hear the tyrannasaurus rex stomping down the trail!  

Hmmm, Maybe tapered turds are a survival trait! Hmmm.  

I need to go cogitate  
Merv  

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------  
| |  
| Merv Martin   |  
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com |  
| www.midtown.net/~merv |  
| www.rewards.net/omega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |  
------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---
In a message dated 97-01-16 23:21:54 EST, you write:

<< If rock is wet, it's raining
If rock is dry, it's not.
If rock has a shadow, it's sunny
If rock sticks to fingers, it's freezing

Is this the one you mean?
>>

That would be the rock I meant.
However, there are a couple more features.....

If rock is moving, it's windy.
If rock has snow on it it's snowing, or has snowed.
Here's a new one: If rock is vibrating, LOOK OUT!
You may be near an active earthquake fault!

But seriously, this weather rock is kind of a silly thread.
We should really be discussing what materials and
methods will be used for the tripod we lash together
to support the weather rock...........

ƒTreading Softlyƒ     MaxWarhawk@aol.com

From - Thu Feb 11 15:29:03 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
cicl1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA09776; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 20:25:33 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA05739; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 20:22:08 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com [204.180.128.166]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA05736 for
; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 20:21:56
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.12.224.212] (ip212.las-vegas2.nevada.pub-ip.psi.net
[38.12.224.212]) by mule0.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id
UAA24714; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 20:25:50 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
That's why nature is such a great teacher, and sometimes not a forgiving one. As a boy scouts we decided to show how salty we could be, by baking a cake in a dutch oven with coals. We didn't have a lid, and we remembered a method where we covered the batter with grape leaves and put coals on top of the leaves. Well we didn't have any grape leaves either. There was one tree that had big leaves that looked like it would work though so we used them. Well we managed about one bite a piece, and didn't swallow that one. That cake was so full of tannin it was awful. Never used oak leaves after that though. ;-) 

> JWaltz@AOL.COM wrote:
>>
>>> In a message dated 97-01-22 22:31:34 EST, Rob Chatburn wrote:
>>>
>>> << The tannin content acts as an
>>> astringent. >>
>>>
>>> That would include all Quercus.. Oak trees/acorns
>>>
>>> John Waltz
>>> Belle Mead, NJ
>
> Tannin is also extremely toxic, which is why eating untreated
>(leaching or boiling out the tannic acid) acorns is a big no no.
>I know that there are other astringents found naturally. Witch Hazel is
>a great topical astringent, but I have never heard of anyone using it
>internally. Some of my books list common plants such as Uva ursi,
>nettles, self heal, wood betony and wild geranium as all containing some
>astringent properties but I have no further information on actual
>content. Michael Moore suggests plantain, sage (Artemesia sp. certainly
>and not Salvia), self heal, amaranth, wormwood, bistort and a number of
>other plants I have not worked with as being diarrhea remedies. I have
>used all of these but wormwood internally myself both as food and as
>medicines. Sage was suggested to me for a number of ailments by an
>Ojibwa man I know. It is also a powerful diaphoretic (promotes sweating)
>so it sort of acts like your own internal sweat lodge too :-)
>
> Happy healing :-)
>
> Mark Zanoni

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com
Anyway, if anyone can help me out let me know, or at least where I can special order brains.

Thanks!

Joe Schilling

Joe, if I had any brains, I would send you some.

Steve Skinner
Our troop frequently does "Hobo Dinners" or "Tin-Dins". You put un-cooked meat (chicken, hamburgher, etc) in the center of about 1 ft.
sq. of HEAVY aluminum foil (double if not heavy duty). Add vegetables or other stuff (imagination is great - I've used apples/oranges w/pre-cooked ham) cut up into 1" pieces, season to taste, and seal. When sealing, fold two edges up and together and fold at least twice. Then fold the other two edges at least twice toward the center. This should result in a square pouch that is completely sealed. Throw on coals, turn over after about 15-20 min and cook another 5 or so. These can be prepared ahead of time, frozen, and used in place of ice to keep a drink cool. Pre-cook your meat for longer un-thawed life. Your troop could open up their pouch to add meat if earned. Our boys like the fact of no clean up after the meal.

--

RACCOON
^.....^
(==o=o==)
:::(  o  ):::
:::( o ):::

Mike Andreasen
mailto:mikea@maf.mobile.al.us

On beautiful Mobile Bay on the Alabama Gulf Coast
Subject: pots
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From: HOWARD BARKER
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, howard.n.barker@BOEING.COM
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca (Return requested)
there are a couple of routes you can take.

1 wrap a small roast or two separately in 3 or 4 layers of heavy duty tin foil.
    wire them close to the exhaust manifolds in you car.
    if going a ways to your camp-site these would cook quite well.

2 you could find or bring some clay with you and make a large pot and fire it
    at camp. presto a pot.

3 you can get a brain-tanned hide and suspend it over your fire with water
    and vittles.

4 set a rain-tanned hide with water and vittles beside a fire. heat non-river
    rocks in fire. heat rocks rince in water then put in hise till heat dissipates.
    then replace with new rocks till food is done.

in both 3 and 4. 4 sturdy posts should be set up to create a pocket in the
hide.

hope this helps, let me know ok. personally i would try one or two of
the methods in my back yard first and get some knowledge about how to
fire clay without a kiln.

BARUCH Attah Ba HaSHEM HaAdonai Y'shua HaMashiach
Howard N.V. Barker
B-YT51 266-2085
MAILSTOP 39-KM
Howard, have you tried any of these things that you have made note of?

HOWARD BARKER wrote:
> there are a couple of routes you can take.
> 
> > 1 wrap a small roast or two separately in 3 or 4 layers of heavy duty tin foil.
> > wire them close to the exhaust manifolds in you car.
> > if going a ways to your camp-site these would cook quite well.
> 2 you could find or bring some clay with you and make a large pot and fire it
>   at camp. presto a pot.
>
> There is a lot more to pottery firing than you mentioned. You might want to access the pottery thread for some really great info that has been shared on this subject.

> 3 you can get a brain-tanned hide and suspend it over your fire with water
>   and vittles.

A fresh rawhide will work this way but I don't recommend a braintanned hide. For one thing why go through all the trouble of the entire tanning process if your just going to cook in it. A fresh rawhide suspended and formed with an opening made from a willow hoop can actually be suspended over hot coals by a tripod and cooked in. It drips like crazy, though. If you hot rock cook in it it hardly drips at all though. It can also be used to line a hole in the ground if you are going to hot rock cook in it.

> 4 set a rain-tanned hide with water and vittles beside a fire. heat non-river
  I don't know what you mean by "rain-tanned hide".

> rocks in fire. heat rocks rince in water then put in hise till heat dissipates.
> then replace with new rocks till food is done.

> in both 3 and 4. 4 sturdy posts should be set up to create a pocket in the
> hide.

> hope this helps, let me know ok. personally i would try one or two of the methods in my back yard first and get some knowledge about how to
> fire clay without a kiln.

Finally, did I miss something I see no other thread to this note, what was it in reference to in the first place?
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Mike Jones wrote:
>
> Hi,
>
> I have recently subscribed to this list and think that there is a lot of
> We will be taking one big pot along
> > with us but I would like to do at least one day without using the pot.
>
> Here are a few things I have used for cooking methods. I'll just e-mail
> you my text-only version of my article that is presently in Wilderness
> Way magazine if you'd like to check it out. Outdoor cooking is
definitely a specialty for me. See article following sig.

________________________________________________________________________

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Tribe.html
________________________________________________________________________

WILDERNESS COOKING METHODS
By Benjamin Pressley
Copyright Benjamin Pressley 1997

Cooking in the wilderness...what visions of rapture it brings to
mind. Some of my richest experiences have been enjoying a meal cooked
over an 'open fire' stretched out by some mountain stream. Food just seems to taste better cooked and eaten outdoors, doesn't it?

There are some pretty decent light-weight systems on the market for cooking on the trail, if you have the money and you are willing to carry all that stuff. My quest for many years now, though, has been to simplify; Re-examine my philosophies and gear for lightweight travel and efficiency. In this process I have discovered or re-discovered some cooking methods that have been used by explorers and prehistoric people of the past for thousands of years that work just great and certainly lighten the load on my aching back!

These cooking methods are also a valuable survival skill. Each year many unprepared, unsuspecting, outdoor loving people are thrust into a survival situation with no modern gear. The number one killer, statistically, of a person thrown into this situation, is lack of knowledge. They get paranoid. They think only of what they don't have instead of what they do have and make all the wrong choices. Every person that enjoys the outdoors should take at least a basic survival skills course and a first aid course.

There are many methods of cooking in the wilderness, without aid of modern gear. Some require production of a simple tool or container and some use no kind of utensil at all, utilizing only the fire and the coals it produces. Cooking in the wilderness, even in a survival situation, without the aid of modern gear, can be accomplished very effectively if one will only use their head, look around them and use whatever materials they have on hand to produce whatever cooking implements are needed for the given task. After all, every pot, pan and spoon we are familiar with was manufactured from some raw material at one time or another.

In almost all cases, whatever you are cooking requires the coals of the fire and not the fire itself, unless you are toasting, browning or reflecting the fire's heat. Many people make the mistake of trying to cook over an open flame, which in most cases burns the outside of what they are cooking, leaving the inside uncooked. The reason for this is flames are hotter than coals and more inconsistent in heat distribution. Open flames register temperatures that are jumping anywhere in temperature from 200 degrees F to 1000+ degrees F constantly. Furthermore, all woods do not burn at the same rate. Hardwoods burn...
slower and hotter than soft woods. There is also a difference in the way evergreen trees burn and deciduous trees burn. Evergreen trees have a resin or 'gum' that causes 'hot spots' in the fire. Does this mean you should only use one kind of wood to cook? No, it just means that you need to be aware of the differences between woods. The chart included in the sidebar entitled Qualities of Various Woods will help you choose the right wood for the task at hand. Some of the methods described below require food have direct contact with the wood you are cooking on. Especially in cases like these you want to avoid evergreen coals because of the taste they will taint the food with. Whatever you are cooking you need to have enough coals to complete the cooking. For this reason it is a good idea to keep a fire going producing coals while you use another area of your fire ring or a separate fire ring or pit to cook in where you may constantly transfer coals as needed, thereby, keeping an adequate supply of hot coals on hand. You may avoid 'fishing' out coals and scorching your skin in the process by carefully 'flipping' the fire. To accomplish this you will need a large enough fire ring with fire built at one end. When there is a sufficient supply of coals burned down then carefully move the fire and any wood that is still burning to the other side of your fire rings, thus leaving a bed of coals behind. Add additional kindling or fuel if needed to stoke the fire up again. The fire can be 'flipped' as many times as needed back and forth within the fire ring. When done carefully with long sticks to aid in 'flipping' the fire, this is often safer than trying to 'fish' out coals from under a burning fire. A fire will also serve you better, if you plan the type of fire arrangement you will need in advance for the job you will need it to do. Never build a fire larger than you need it to be.

It is a good idea to know how hot the fire or coals are that you wish to cook on. Lynn Hopkins, an expert dutch oven cook, came up with this method for determining the temperature of the fire or coals. Try holding your hand about three inches above the spot you intend on cooking over. Count how long it takes for you to move your hand because it is too hot, in one second counts. Now, look at the table below to find the approximate temperature of the fire or coals based on your count:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COUNTS</th>
<th>HEAT</th>
<th>TEMPERATURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
...
6 to 8                     Slow                     250-350 Degrees F
(120-175C)
4 to 5                     Moderate                 350-400 Degrees F
(175-200C)
2 to 3                     Hot                      400-450 Degrees F
(200-230C)
1 or Less                  Very Hot                 450-500 Degrees F
(230-260C)

When using any cooking method keep normal cooking times in mind and
the temperatures you are working with based on the chart above. You
should also check the item you are cooking frequently and turn it
regularly, except in the cases mentioned below that require no checking.
Following the guidelines included and trying these methods out and
getting a 'feel' for them is the best way to be successful at them.

Let's look at a few cooking methods:

FLAT STONE COOKING
A flat stone either pre-heated in the fire or placed over two other
stones and hot coals raked beneath it will make a fine griddle for
cooking cakes, eggs, meat or just about any item you would normally cook
on a griddle. Soapstone is a particularly good choice for it retains
heat for a long period of time and heats evenly throughout. However, I
have cooked on a 'griddle' made of granite many times. I actually was
challenged on this once and accepted
the invitation to a contest between my rock and the challenger's frying
pan. We were given the same amount of coals from the same fire. We each
cooked pancakes from the same batter. I was still cooking pancakes long
after the challenger's frying pan and coals were cool!
ASH COOKING
This is kind of a misnomer, for to cook using this method you place
items to be cooked right on the bed of coals, not a layer of ash. Many
foods may be cooked by placing them right on top of the hot coals
themselves. If you use hardwood coals you will have very little to no
ash to stick to your food. A little ash will not hurt you anyway. A
dough prepared and flattened into cakes or rolled into balls and placed
directly on the coals will cook just fine. When the outside is thoroughly browned just remove from the coals and break open and eat the bread from inside or rake off the ashes and eat whole. The outside is usually too burned to eat by the time the inside is done, but the inside is very tasty. Steaks may be laid directly on the coals and turned frequently. Laying meat directly on the coals really sears and seals the meat's natural juices in and makes the juiciest steak you ever ate! Tubers, such as potatoes can be cooked this way. You should bury them in the coals. You can poke at them to see if they are tender. Don't let the hard feel of the outer layer deceive you, though. The longer they stay in the coals the thicker this outer layer will get, as it burns. Corn on the cob, open husked, soaked and placed back in the husk and laid on the coals steams corn very well. Turn frequently.

SPIT COOKING

A spit is a green stick used to skewer the items you wish cooked and then either held over the coals or supported by two forked sticks or allowed to dangle over the coals by jamming the other end under a stone or stuck into the ground. This method can be used like a shishkabob for chunks of meat and vegetables. Dough may be formed into a snake and spiraled around a stick and baked over the heat of the coals or near an open flame. Be sure to turn frequently, you only want it to brown. Eggs may be cooked by making a miniature arrangement of two forked sticks, carefully pecking a tiny hole in each end of the egg and skewering the egg and placing it across the two forked sticks near the fire. The holes give you a means of skewering the egg and also allow steam to escape to keep the egg from exploding.

When cooking a small animal like a duck, squirrel or rabbit the problem is often encountered of the meat not turning with the stick, as you turn it. This problem can be solved by drilling two holes in the middle of the stick you are using to skewer with. Whittle two smaller sticks that will fit through the diameter of the holes you just drilled snugly, pointing them on one end. Now, skewer the beast as before and pierce the body through with the two smaller sticks, through the drilled holes and through the other side of the meat you are cooking. Now, it will turn when you turn the skewer, rather like a rotisserie. You may also wish to bind up the meat with some sort of string to keep legs and such from dangling and falling into the fire as they cook.
DANGLING

A small animal such as described above may also be cooked by wrapping the body with string, securing all dangling parts and then allowing enough length to dangle it near the fire with a tripod or 'dingle' stick. This allows the meat to turn and cook evenly by giving it an occasional whirl. Just don't dangle close enough to the fire for it to scorch the meat and/or burn the string in two. It is a good idea to use a reflector in conjunction with dangling. You may also wish to catch the drippings in a container, if you have one, for cooking and flavoring other foods, such as gravy.

REFLECTOR COOKING

A reflector may be as simple as several short logs stacked on one another to the height of two to three feet and staked on each side to keep from tumbling down or it could be constructed to have three sides thus utilizing more heat. Slanting your reflector so it is farther out at the top than the bottom is also more efficient than a wall perpendicular to the ground. The reflector should be placed behind the item being cooked so the item being cooked is between the reflector and the fire, reflecting the heat of the fire and cooking the meat thoroughly. The reflector can be used in combination with many of the cooking methods described here, not to mention the warmth it can provide you by situating your shelter so you are between the shelter and the fire with the reflector to the other side of the fire reflecting the heat back to you.

CLAY COOKING

Cooking meat by covering it with clay and baking it in the coals has the effect of a clay oven and steams the meat until tender and juicy in its own juices. To use this method acquire some good sticky clay or mud, and smear it over the entire item you are cooking. Punch a hole with a small stick through the clay to the meat to allow a place for steam to escape. Place it near the fire to allow the clay to harden, then checking to make sure your steam hole is still clear, place it in the hot coals and cover it with more coals, being careful not to cover the steam hole, otherwise it can explode, then, cook until done. Fresh fish or fowl, cooks up particularly well using this method and you need not remove feathers or scales as these will pull off as you remove the clay. The entrails cook into a small ball in the body cavity that is easily
raked out after cooking and does not taint the flavor of the meat. In the case of any other animal, it should be eviscerated and skinned and covered with yucca or grape leaves, even brown paper, to prevent any grit from staying with the meat. You may also wish to place herbs and spices in the body cavity before covering it with leaves and clay.

STEAM PIT

The steam pit is a pit dug large enough to hold the items being cooked. It is then lined with stones and a fire is built in the pit heating the rocks around it. The fire and coals are then removed or some coals may remain provided they are covered with a layer of ash and wet grasses. Pile these wet grasses and perhaps some wild onions on the bottom of the pit and then place the meat and tubers or whatever you are cooking on the top of the grass and then pile more grasses over this. Grasses are not poisonous. The only caution here is in the case of grass seed. Grass seed is edible but only if they are not covered with a dark colored fungus known as ergot. Ergot is a toxic fungus. You may add some water, but, not enough to cool the rocks down, just enough to cause steam. Then, seal the opening of the pit with a flat rock and seal this over with dirt. This type of cooking is very good because it need not be constantly attended, in fact, the pit should not be opened until the food is done. You need not worry about food over cooking in the steam pit for it is cooling down as it is cooking. You can place items in it to cook and come back 6-8 hours later and have a hot meal waiting for you and since it is buried you need not worry about animals eating it before you. It is also very nutritious, for it steams in the flavor and vitamins.

HOT ROCK COOKING

For hot rock cooking you will need a container of some sort. A bowl may be produced by burn and scrape methods (See sidebar: Burn and Scrape Bowls) or a tightly woven basket that will hold water or a fresh rawhide staked to the sides of a pit or suspended by a tripod (rawhide may be suspended over a fire by a tripod for boiling but it does draw up and leak terribly, using the hot rock method, it does not hardly leak at all.) Liquid is then placed in the container for stew or for purifying and rocks are heated in the fire, several, about large egg size or a little larger. Be careful heating rocks. All rocks may explode when heated. Those found in the water should be particularly avoided as these
may hold water within them exploding when heated. There are many simple
methods of producing thongs. The one I like best was shown to me by Jeff
Gottlieb. You simply bind a green limb of suitable length at one end.
You then split the limb from the other end up to your binding. A small
stick may then be placed to wedge the thongs open and provide a fulcrum
for the thongs to bend against like a spring when being used. When the
rocks are hot place them one at a time in the water, with the thongs,
you may wish to brush them off a little, to keep ashes from getting in
the stew. The heat in the rock will be imparted to the water, gradually
causing it to boil. You then remove the rocks from the liquid and place
them back in another part of the fire, so you don't get them mixed up,
to heat again. You continue doing this for the length and temperature of
the liquid you desire. You may wish to manufacture a simple basket with
a handle to place the hot rocks in to lower them into the liquid with,
thus making them easier to remove. In prehistoric times soapstone was
shaped and a hole drilled in each rock to make them easy to 'hook' with
a stick for moving. If you have soapstone, it is still the best choice
and is less likely to explode. If purifying water, boil for at least
five minutes. Making a stew is one of the best ways to get the maximum
nutrition from several small items, if you drink the broth, after eating
all the vegetables and meats. Many find insects more palatable to eat
this way, in a survival situation. For they may be roasted and ground to
a powder and then added to the stew to thicken it.
PARCHING

Nuts, berries, seeds, tubers and such may be parched in a basket or
bowl by shaking them around in a container with some hot coals until
done. They may then be eaten or ground up and added to stews. In a
survival situation, insects may also be cooked in this manner. When
eating any insects, legs, wings and heads should be removed, as these
may get caught in your throat.
PLANK COOKING

Fish and small animals or slabs of meat may be cooked on a board or
plank by securing the meat to the board by tying it or pegging it in
some manner. The board with meat secured to it is then placed near the
fire, with the meat exposed to the heat until done. Do not use a treated
board or sappy pine. The treated board can impart toxic elements to the
meat and the pine can give the meat a funny taste. You may also wish to
use a reflector in conjunction with this method of cooking.

THE BAMBOO STEAMER

My friend, 'Mountain' Mel Deweese from Grand Junction, Colorado taught me this one. He learned it from the Negritos in the Philippine Islands. He tells me that several of these cylinders were made up and filled with rice and carried on the trail and not broken open until they were hungry enough to eat. You will probably need to refer to the drawing for constructing this item. A joint of bamboo is cut leaving the ends closed on each end by cutting on the other side of the two joints that will form the ends. A 'door' is then cut at acute angles and carefully removed for it will need to be placed back in place. The tube is then half filled with rice and half filled with water. You may also add herbs or bits of meat. The door is then placed back in place. You then sit the bamboo cooker on top of a bed of hot coals with the door facing up and just let it cook. The bamboo will scorch on the outside some but does not burn through due to the fact that the water inside is absorbing the heat faster. It's kind of like that old Boy Scout trick, boiling water in a paper cup. Occasionally check to see if the rice is cooked by shaking the tube enough to be able to tell if there is any more water inside. When there is not enough water to slosh around inside then the cooker should be removed and allowed to cool enough to touch before opening. When ready to eat, just split the entire length of the tube for two delicious, steamed trays of rice! This also works well with dehydrated foods.

SMOKING RACK

Tony Breda, a Wapanoag from Towson, Maryland showed me this method of cooking that I have used numerous times and with many kinds of meat since. Again, referring to the illustration when constructing this rack will help you. Lash together two tripods that will stand independently. Now lash as many horizontal poles across the front and back as you will need to cook on. There is no need to make this rack any larger or taller than you will need for the amount of meat you have to cook. Now lay strips of meat you wish to cook along the length of the poles draping down over either side of the pole. Fish cook really well on this rack too. Just cut fresh fish open, eviscerate, spread open and break the backbone in several places. Do not skin them for the skin will help to hold the meat together as it cooks. Lay the open fish over the rack with
meat side out and skin side down. The rack should be placed near your fire where the meat will catch the smoke coming off of the fire. As your fire burns down coals, place a layer of coals beneath the rack, also. This is a slow cooking process that smokes the meat and flavors it to perfection and the smoke keeps away insects while it is cooking. You may also cook the meat to the point that it dries into jerky, if you wish, so it is also a good way to preserve meat for later. Dried fish is not that tasty, however, but dried fish may be ground, bones and all, into a powder that can be added to stews later for the nourishment.

BEANHOLE COOKING

This is a little more modern a method of cooking, in that it requires you use a metal pot. It is similar to the steam pit though, in that a pit must be dug a little larger than the size of the pot. You may line the pit with rocks, if you wish. It is not necessary, but it is more efficient. A fire is built in the pit burning down to coals and drying out and imparting heat to the dirt around it. A bed of coals is left in the pit. You may even wish to throw some rocks in with the coals to absorb heat. The pot containing stew or whatever you are cooking is then placed in the pit and coals are built up around the covered pot and on the lid of it. The pit is then covered with dirt and allowed to cook until done. This method acts rather like a crock pot, so you may wish to familiarize yourself with some crock pot recipes for trying out this cooking method. Like the steam pit, once you get the pot buried, you can come back six to eight hours later to a hot meal you didn't have to attend. You may wish to leave the pit uncovered and place several pieces of kindling around the pot, one end down in the coals, the other sticking out. These will burn down gradually on their own and will keep you from having to attend the fire all the while, however you cannot just leave it totally unattended, as you did in burying it. When using this method it is also a good idea to rotate the pot frequently one quarter of a turn clockwise and the lid one quarter of a turn counter clockwise to assure even heat distribution, especially in the case of hot spots in evergreen coals.

CHIPPEWA KITCHEN

A very convenient item to build for a long term camp is the Chippewa kitchen. It is a large quadripod, as tall as you with a shelf extended to one side. This shelf is then covered with mud and allowed to dry
after forming two small, bowl shaped depressions in the clay. These depressions are used to place hot coals in and allow you the ease of standing as you cook on them, much like the burners on your stove at home. You may then place your pots right on the 'burners' as you cook. You can also place the entire assembly near your cook fire, thus allowing a string to dangle from the center for suspending cooking meat or a pot hook.

These are but some of many methods of outdoor cooking that are available to the innovative woodsman. I am sure as you practice these you will devise many others and improve upon these. They may also greatly lighten your pack load by keeping you from carrying so many pots and pans because you won't need as many. So, enjoy the wilderness!

CREDITS:
1. Instruction from Steven 'Snow Bear' Taylor, 'Mountain' Mel Deweese and Tony Breda.
2. Wilderness Cooking Methods by John McPherson
3. Dutch Oven Secrets by Lynn Hopkins
4. Qualities of Various Woods chart, Source unknown
When I was a boy scout we took a whole chicken (thawed), washed it out with water, then stuffed a fire heated rock into the body cavity. This was then stuffed into a couple of layers of newsprint and a plastic cooking bag, the whole package was then carried in your backpack. Then you went on a long hike, several hours later, you would have a cooked chicken. The problem was when you hadn't heated the rock hot enough, or cooked the chicken long enough. Banana leaves, grape leaves, or other similar material can take the place of the newsprint and plastic bag.

Jim Burdine
LV, NV
jburdine@pipeline.com
Tom Elpel's mention of chopsticks in the Nothing thread reminded me of an invention of mine which is so simple it always gets a laugh out of my students. But it works! Seems to me it's a good example of what Tom
was talking about.

Here it is folks, a world premiere:

AUTOMATIC CHOPSTICKS!!

Take a 1/4 inch green branch, as straight as possible and about a foot and a half long. Bend it in half, it will break but will stay attached. Cut the ends so they are even. There you have it. The chopsticks will close when you squeeze them, and will open automatically when the pressure is released because of the spring in the bend.

These are easier to use than real chopsticks! Don't forget the magic phrase when you use them: "fooin me tummi wiwood shoo tast goodi".

Have fun with your hinese flied lice!

AndrÈ

--

Surviving at nature's will...  o

/
\00000/\

Dr AndrÈ-FranÅois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca  / Ä\ /Ä \
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec /0000\0/0000\  
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvvX_______\
> When I was a boy scout we took a whole chicken (thawed), washed it out with
> water, then stuffed a fire heated rock into the body cavity. This was James,

I'll bet that was a fun experience for you as a Scout...but in real life, is this a practical survival method?

Considering just how much energy is needed to heat the rocks, for how long, etc. Then to have to lug a 2# bird, with 3# or more of rocks...more energy expended.

I would think that maybe the way, if camp site is to be used a day or few, would be to heat rocks during nite, etc., stuff meat with stones on the next day, leave a site, and while you are out and about, meat is cooking and ready for your return.

Tom's "do nothing" sounds a bit more practical.

It takes energy to get energy.
I recall an article where the author determined how many BTUs it took to cut his lawn... using a power mower and also a non-power mower. Until that article, I never really thought too much about "power balance".

So, in a primitive survival situation, smart conservation of resources would seem #1. IMHO, 'natch.

rich, b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

Perhaps slightly off the list subject, but one of the things being promoted in many of the third world countries is solar cookers. They are easy to cobble up out of available materials (saw an example of one made from straw) the only technical materials being glass plate, a dark metal pot, and aluminum foil. Highly polished metal plate could take the place of the aluminum foil. One of the things they will do is pasteurize water. The box type is bulky to carry, but the panel type would be good for travel, but you would have to add a oven type plastic bag (subtracting the glass) Temperatures up to 300 degrees, and they are good for baking bread, cooking meals, etc. as well. Mainly they are being promoted to prevent deforestation.

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com
James E. Burdine wrote:

> Perhaps slightly off the list subject, but one of the things being promoted
> in many of the third world countries is solar cookers. They are easy to
> cobble up out of available materials (saw an example of one made from
> straw) the only technical materials being glass plate, a dark metal pot,
> and aluminum foil. Highly polished metal plate could take the place of the
> aluminum foil. One of the things they will do is pasteurize water. The box
> type is bulky to carry, but the panel type would be good for travel, but
> you would have to add a oven type plastic bag (subtracting the glass)
> Temperatures up to 300 degrees, and they are good for baking bread, cooking
> meals, etc. as well. Mainly they are being promoted to prevent
> deforestation.
I'm all for that and I'll take a dozen. Have you seen the large collection of construction plans for these devices at the website for The Solar Cooking Archives? Serious project material for box, panel and parabolic cookers and pasteurizers.


Chris
To quote from "Solar cooking for Free" by Christopher Nyerges in the June/July 1994 issue of MOTHER EARTH NEWS
" In fact, solar cookers are practical in every state of the Union(except Alaska) for at least six to eight months every year. Even with snow on the ground, you'll be able to cook if the day is sunny." This article also has plans for a solar cooker made from cardboard. Solar cooker plans are also available on the net for a variety of types, box, parabolic, and panel. try the following url

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com
Hi everyone,

Sorry for the delay in posting this information on 25 basic food staples for walkabouts.

Dr AF Bourbeau

From: Dr AF Bourbeau

Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca

Organization: Au Gré de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.

To: Primitive Skills Group

Subject: 25 food staples for walkabouts

Hi everyone,
walkabouts which I had promised several days ago. I forgot that I had to translate it first, and also that I had to reformat the Exel file for this media. Anyhow, here it is, finally.

I will be pleased to answer any questions related to this. The data herein presented is based on research conducted over a period of 12 years where I was responsible for planning thousands of expeditions from 10 to 54 days in duration for summer camps in northern Ontario and QuÈbec.

A chef can prepare just about any modern recipe using the 25 ingredients listed below. Hope this makes your less than primitive walkabouts more enjoyable!

Cheers,

AndrÈ

Note: you may have to widen your Netscape window to view the table correctly, and you also have to use a monospaced font such as Monaco or Courier.

------------------------------------------------------------------------

Food staples for walkabouts (after first few days of fresh food)
© 1996  Dr A. F. Bourbeau

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight%</th>
<th>Gram/men/day</th>
<th>G/women/day</th>
<th>G/ado/day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Starches</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flour</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noodles</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rice</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oatmeal/other grains</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potato flakes</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beans</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total starches</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>405</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 3 Total veggies</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Calories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Dairy prod</td>
<td>Dried/fresh/frz eggs</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td>Milk powder</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fresh cheese</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cheese powder</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total dairy</td>
<td>products</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Meats</td>
<td>Dried/smoked meats</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td>Salted meats</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td>Canned/frozen meats</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total meats</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Nuts</td>
<td>Mixed nuts</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td>Peanut butter</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total nuts</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Fats</td>
<td>Butter/margarine</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lard or shortening</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total fats</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Sweets</td>
<td>Brown/white sugar</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jam/marmalade</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td>Semi-sweet chocolate</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td>Asstd juice powders</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total sweets</td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Mixed dried fruits</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total fruits</td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>GRAND TOTAL</strong></td>
<td><strong>100%</strong></td>
<td><strong>900</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Kilo calories</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>3600</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Condiments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coffee</th>
<th>Spices:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tea</td>
<td>Salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon juice</td>
<td>Pepper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baking powder</td>
<td>Cinnamon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dried yeast</td>
<td>Curry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornstarch</td>
<td>Chili</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soya sauce</td>
<td>Dried mustard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicken base</td>
<td>Assorted herbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beef base</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example of how to use this table:  10 day trip with two men, one woman

To calculate flour needs, add \((180 \times 2) + (140 \times 1)\) = 500 mult \(\times 10\) days = 5000 grams or 5kg (or \(5 \times 2.2 = 11.1\) lbs) of flour

### Notes:

The quantities suggested are sufficient for trips where no other food is available. The quantities can be reduced by the amount to be gathered in the wilds. However, the amount of food which it is possible to gather in the wilds is always overestimated. This can cut a trip short, so do not guess at your realistic food gathering capacity.

Do not mix fruits together before packaging. Instead, place in tall narrow bags in layers for variety as the trip progresses, starting with smaller items on bottom. Example, layer raisins, dates, apricots, pears, apples. That way you start the trip eating apples, then apples & pears, then pears, then pears & apricots, then apricots, then apricots & dates, then dates, then dates & raisins, to finish the trip eating raisins only. The same formula applies to juice powders, whole-wheat/white flour, nuts, herbs, and oatmeal/other grains.

Long and wide egg noodles will do for noodle dishes and will double for spaghetti or lasagna, and when broken into small pieces, for macaroni or soup noodles.

Fresh onions will last for months if left unwrapped in a mesh bag. Chefs will tell you that browned onion is the most important basic flavor in cooking, and dried onion
just doesn't work to give that homemade taste.

Fresh eggs will keep for months if left in the shell, even in summer.

Milk powder is very important for nutrition. You don't have to drink it. Add it to breads, bannock, cheese dishes, cakes etc.

Fresh cheese will keep for a long time if wrapped in cloth saturated with baking soda. Waxed cheese and old cheese also last a long time. Moldy cheese is still good if you cut off the mold.

Dried salami and pepperoni last a long time, as do some old fashioned cured hams and bacon. They will last even longer if wrapped in cloth saturated with vinegar. Pemmican and beef jerky are great.

Salted meat is either salt pork which makes great dishes when cut into small pieces and fried with onions as the start to various meals, or salted fish, which are added to rice or noodles.

Canned meat should be in oil, such as tuna fish, for maximum calories per weight.

Fat can be used for deep frying while there is a lot, for making donuts, fish batter, fruit fritters etc., as long as it is strained after each use. When there isn't enough left for deep frying, use for frying or add to cakes, breads, bannocks, oatmeal etc.

The proportions of the different items are the suggestions of the author and will work out if a typical outdoor menu is followed. Midway through the trip and again near the end, an evaluation of proportions consumed vs proportions at-the-start will permit the cook to modify his menu accordingly. To a certain extent, the user may wish to modify item proportions within one category or even within multiple categories by adding and subtracting identical amounts.

The advantages of this system as opposed to pre-packaging meal by meal are twofold:

1. You can pack food for the entire trip in a couple of hours and leave.
2. You have complete cooking liberty: "What do you feel like having tonight?"
Of course, you have to know how to cook when you use this system. But when you do, it feels so much more like living out there rather than bringing city food with you.

Happy wandering!

--

The above material is copyrighted. You can use it freely for your personal use. The reference source must be included when the text is cited or used for other purposes. Thank you.

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau  
Professor of outdoor pursuits  
University of QuÈbec  
Chicoutimi, (QC)  
G7H 2B1
I have some yucca plants in my backyard from which I understand some very good cordage can be made. Would I have to dry the leaves prior to attempting to separate the fibers?

Yucca fiber wadded up and dried is a _great_ wash cloth too! I bought one at an Indian village in Mexico (close to Tamilpas) and wish I'd bought a case!

Try it both ways, drying first and not. As I remember the leaves are pounded on a metate, (Read as pounded just enough to crush the leaf and separate the fibers, no jackhammers allowed!) Then the fibers are separated and dried. Of course they are hung on previously dried yucca fibers.

Now, save the sap for soap and shampoo (high saponin content), and if it starts to ferment, well save that too, for medicinal purposes only...of course!

The point at the end of the leaf can be bent and pulled 'till it seperates from the leaf except for a fiber that'll stay with it. Pull this fiber carefully back to the base of the leaf and you'll have a pretty good needle and a foot or two of thread. Saw this done in Mexico at a tequila factory tour and I don't remember whether to pull the point up, as the leaf grows, or down. I guess you'll just have to try this stuff. (I know, I know, tough assignment, but someone has to do it! :) :) :) ) You need to see the needle.
and thread to believe what the effect is.

Take Care
Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------
| Merv Martin       *              *               |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com    *     *            *   |
| www.midtown.net/~merv               *               *          |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |
------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 23 08:10:58 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id DAA13062; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 03:43:48 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id DAA12873; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 03:41:58 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 03:46:30 EST
Received: from rand.nidlink.com (rand.nidlink.com [205.219.220.136]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id DAA12870 for
; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 03:41:51
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.136 (pm7-5.nidlink.com [205.219.220.136]) by
rand.nidlink.com (8.8.4/8.6.9) with SMTP id AAA04963; Mon, 23 Dec
1996 00:49:02 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE3921.2D1@rand.nidlink.com>
Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 00:47:45 -0700
X-UIDL: 851389458.083
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, eaten_by_limestone@CLIFFHANGER.COM
Subject: Re: Cordage
References: <199612230459.XAA19040@butthead.globecomm.net>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

That first yucca fiber cordage post (sorry, I forgot who),

> > I have some yucca plants in my backyard from which I understand some
> > very good cordage can be made.

...and then merv martin wrote:
Yucca fiber wadded up and dried is a _great_ wash cloth too! I bought one
at an Indian village in Mexico (close to Tamlipas) and wish I'd bought a
package!

Try it both ways, drying first and not. As I remember the leaves are
pounded on a metate, (Read as pounded just enough to crush the leaf and
separate the fibers, no jackhammers allowed!)

Yucca stalks are practically all fiber, too. See if you can pound some
of that down, if you ever take one down.

Odd cactus handling story:

Friend of mine named John lives in a place called Millard Canyon in the
Southern Californian mountains (used to live right there, too). Place
is frequented by Christopher Nyerges (gratuitous plug here):

School for Self Reliance http://home.earthlink.net/~nyerges/

Anyway, John's a big wild man and takes his chainsaw to a whole hillside
of Maguey cactus at his cabin (big jade green - sometimes green and
yellow - 5 ft. long sword leafed pointy thing they make tequila with).
The cactus juice aerosolized all over the place until he went
anaphylactic and nearly died. OK, well...take the machete route, like
they do in Mexico. That's my advice. I've stripped off fiber strings
from the tip and this stuff is great, though I haven't used it for
needle and thread work - crossed my mind. Funny thing, I lived across
the creek and my other neighbor was an animal importer with a large
glassed rain forest habitat full of those tiny fluorescent-colored
poison Panamanian tree frogs you guys have been writing the Cuna Indians
rub on their blowgun darts. Guess you can buy them and breed them...
'course he had cobra's there and the rattler's lived loose in the yard.

Chris

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 23 08:11:43 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA16152; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 15:16:02 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA15004; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 15:14:32 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 15:19:06 EST
Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA15000 for
; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 15:14:25
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.197] (ip197.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net
[38.11.182.197]) by mule1.mindspring.com (8.8.2/8.7.3) with SMTP id
UAA42922; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 20:18:10 GMT
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
I have forgotten who first brought this up, but, cordage is probably one of the more important products being used for rope, traps, bow strings, lashings, clothing, etc... I have some yucca plants in my backyard from which I understand some very good cordage can be made. Would I have to dry the leaves prior to attempting to separate the fibers?

—

Sincerely,

Barent

Duty, Honor, Country

I had to look for a reference to find this, PRIMITIVE FIRE AND CORDAGE by John McPherson stated "The leaf of the yucca gives the strongest cordage of any of the plant fibers that I have worked. It is also easy to work. It has the added advantage of being usable when green or dried. With the yucca leaf, the fibers are in the inside. Take the dried leaf and beat it gently to separate the fibers some. This helps it to soften faster while soaking. Then soak the pounded leaves until they are supple. When like green, or if green, take a rounded knife blade (flint or other wise) and scrape the outer covering from both sides (the soaking makes this easier with dried leaves). Then work the fibers loose by rubbing back and forth with your fingers. Superb cordage material."

Touch of the Bear

JB
Barry Keegan is a good friend of mine that wrote an excellent article in our TRIBE newsletter. He is a very skilled survival and wilderness living skills instructor. He wrote the following excellent article on the subject of making strings for bow and drill firemaking sets. I think you all will find it extremely informative. Also if anyone is in the NY area, check out his excellent classes. Information on contacting him follows his article.

FAST, SURVIVAL BOW DRILL STRINGS

Why Spend Time Fiddling With Your Bow?
By Barry Keegan
©Barry Keegan 1996

WHY BOW DRILL?

The hand drill fire is the fastest means of making fire: if you must start from scratch. I found this to be true in arid environments or seasons of drought. New York State is far from being arid! After years of practicing the hand drill fire I have reached my physical limitations. I was finally able to make hand drill fires with a spindle and fire board of very dry Mockernut Hickory (our most dense native wood) but I still couldn't make fire with a damp Mullein stalk spindle on a willow fire board.

Using a bow drill to make fire is more reliable than a hand drill. Because of this climate, damp wood may be all that I have to work with. The problem, though, is finding a good bow drill string that won't take long to make or find! This was a lot of work and lead me to rediscover what can be used.

WHY PLANTS?

I limited my self to plant fibers because in a survival situation I can't always rely on animal products to be available for cordage material. For clarity's sake I will rank these bow drill strings in categories beginning with the most year-round available cordage and ending with the most specialized and seasonal ones. Tree bark, branch bark and root bark, roots, wood, stalk fibers, leaf fibers, vines and runners.
TREE BARKS

I will begin with tree barks because they are available when the ground is covered by even the deepest of snow. Tree barks also happen to make some of the strongest cords and most of the good ones can be peeled at any time of year. I list tree barks in two categories: Branch barks and Root barks, because each behaves differently and are often handled differently.

Branch Barks

"Branch Barks" is the category of bark that comes from any part of the tree that is not a root. However, certain parts of the tree provide far stronger bark than others. Select a shoot or branch that is somewhat straight, preferably with no branches, scars, dead spots or any such flaws that interrupt the bark fibers. The branch should be about three feet long and at least thumb thickness to obtain enough bark for a cord. Avoid very tapered branches. Do pick a healthy branch, dying trees have dying bark and work about as good as they look. Knot holes in bark strings may cause separations that tear out during use. What kind of tree you use is of major importance.

The strongest bow drill string of tree bark fiber in New York also happens to be one of the easiest to make. Mockernut and Pignut Hickory work better than other hickories and are my favorite choices!

Peeling Bark

As a general rule, May 1 through August 1 is peeling season: the time of year that bark peels easiest from trees! This is not a long season but farther south it may be longer. The Basswood tree has its own season which starts earlier and ends later than others. Basswood is the easiest to peel at any time of year. There are three methods that I know of to remove bark at any time of year. None of these methods are necessary during peeling season unless you have an unusually difficult branch.

To obtain bark out of "peeling season", you may use pounding, split-separation or if we weren't trying to make a fire, we could use the fire to carefully roast or steam the bark off.

I will begin by discussing the easiest of these methods and end with the most difficult. I will not discuss the roasting method for obvious reasons.

Peeling In Season

Cut or abrade off your branch of choice and remove any twigs or branchlets, if you have them. On the cut end try to peel the bark free, as if to begin peeling a banana. If it easily separates, and it should, examine the branch for knot holes or areas of removed twigs. You may want to use a sharp stone flake or knife to score the entire length of the branch to make two or three bark strips of even width and as little taper as possible. This is the best way if you did have branchlets on your branch because you can make the cuts align with the branch scars. Holes in your bark strips are less of a problem if they are on the edge of the strip instead of the center.

Careful peeling can produce good results without scoring if you peel both or all three sides at the same time. You need at least two feet of cord from this branch so go slowly and carefully. Watch for sticky spots! Knots can be very sticky. Pull the bark strip at a 35 degree angle or less from its branch to minimize the tapering tear. Pulling
straight up (90 degrees) or back on itself (180 degrees) will drastically increase the taper or tear out. Sometimes rocking the strip back and forth as you pull on it can free up the bark at a sticky knot area. If it still sticks, consult the pounding section of this article for another way.

Once in a while I find a branch that won't peel, even in peeling season! Trees can be as different as people are, so, if this happens, find another tree or at least a healthier branch. Peel your bark right away or store the branch completely under water until peeled. Elm bark may not peel the next day after it has been cut. Hickory may not peel after being cut three days before and is noted to stick in times of draught, especially on high hills. On the contrary, Basswood may still peel a month after being cut if it sat in a damp shady place.

As a general rule, the youngest branch or shoot that grew the longest length in the shortest amount of time produces the best bark! Some trees like Aspens will give strong bark only on its one year old growth. Good luck finding long straight Aspen twigs that are big enough to provide enough bark to make a sturdy bow drill string. I had to peel 25 ordinary sized twigs to make mine!

If a branch broke off about two years ago and a bunch of sprouts grew from that wound, there may be enough bark on one of these sprouts to make six bow drill strings. Arrow and basket makers purposely cut back Willows and other plants to force them to grow more suitable shoots for materials. This is called copusing! The deer or a storm may have done some copusing for you. If you know your trees well, i.e. Willows grow by water and deer go there a lot, you may find some choice sprouts growing from a broken "buck-rubbed" branch. Beaver love to eat Aspen!

**Pounding Bark "Out of Season"**

If the bark doesn't peel from your branch, find a smooth stone or smooth the bark off of a dead log, this will be your anvil. Then find a sturdy branch of wrist diameter for your pounding mallet. Break it to a one foot length. Scraper your anvil and mallet smooth of any protrusions that may injure the bark that you pound.

Lay the branch across the anvil and begin pounding at the thick end of your branch. Pound till the bark separates on all sides. You need to strike hard, but not so hard that the bark gets crushed. Work down about six inches of the branch's length, pounding every inch or so on at least two of its sides. The bark does separate from the mallet side as well as the anvil side of each blow, if the strike is well centered.

Once you get the feel for how much or little pounding is needed, you can pound the whole branch and then peel it, of course, going slowly to watch for sticky spots. Pound where it sticks till it pulls free easily. If you pull the bark hard past where it sticks you may leave the strongest part of your cord stuck to the branch as the bark tears out thinner.

If it is close to peeling season and the bark sticks, you may score the bark before pounding. Little pounding is needed at this time to remove the bark. In mid winter you will have to pound the bark so hard that it will split where it wants and you will have to choose from what you are left with. At times you may have to pound so hard that the branch becomes splinters! Hickory bark is very tough and can take a lot more beating than other "cordage grade" tree barks.

Hickory and Basswood are the easiest branch barks to remove by pounding because they don't crush easily under the mallet. Gentle mallet work can help remove the bark from Pawpaw, Elm (Slippery and American),
Tulip Poplar and Willow. These barks are more delicate! Try working with one to three inch diameter branches because the bark is thicker on bigger growth and can withstand more mallet work. However, pounding becomes ineffective on branches that are more than three inches thick. You should have no problem obtaining at least one, hopefully two or three, full length bark strips from your branch. Even if the worst happens and your bark as well as your branch are in splinters, save those splinters and keep reading, you can still make a string!

Split—Separation In or Out of "Peeling Season"

Once you have learned the split-separation peeling method you may never pound bark again! Now you can peel bark (if you haven't already). This method of peeling may require a lot more practice than pounding but you will be able to peel bark from nearly all of the cordage grade trees at any time of year! Take your thumb-thick branch from a tree or bush by abrading half way through its top side. Then pull down on the branch so it splits and make the split run about two inches down the desired end of the branch. Then abrade the branch off. You need to split the whole branch in half.

Any split-shoot basketry book or article will show you how to do this, but, basically you need to pull with equal pressure and angles on both halves of the split to guide the split down the stick. If one side becomes thicker, pull it at an increased angle to steer the split back to center. This is a faster way to make two equal sized strips without using a stone flake to score the branch. A branch that is thicker than a thumb may be split in three by splitting and pulling on all three splits at once or also split into four by halving the halves.

Remove bark by snapping the split stick near the center very slowly by bending it in both hands, pressing your thumbs on the bark side and bending away so it breaks down to the bark, revealing it. Next bend the break at a 35 degree angle so the wood that clings to the bark peels away from the bark. Then, if you're a righty, hold the branch at the crack, in your left hand so it lays along your left arm down to your elbow and with your right hand, lift and pull away the wood from the bark.

You want the bark to stay flat and taut. Just as if guiding a split, you need to pull on the wood part of the branch so it does all of the bending because it is much thicker than the bark. This should look like a backwards, small letter "y". If the branch cracks or breaks off, peel up the next section as you did the last, from where it broke off. Keep peeling it like this until all of the wood is removed from that half of the stick.

Then flip the branch around so you are holding the peeled bark in your left hand and the stick part lays along your left arm, as before, and remove the rest of the wood from the bark. With practice this can be done in two or three minutes.

You may lose some bark to splintering on its outer edges. This is less likely to happen if you split the branch into thirds or fourths because the flatter the bark lays on its branch, the easier it is to pull free. Imagine peeling masking tape from a wall compared to peeling it from a pencil which has been covered with a length-wise strip of tape and the edges wrap all of the way around.

Remove the splinters from your bark strips by pulling the bark splinter at a 180 degree angle (back over onto itself). This causes it to intentionally tear out without tearing far at all. Woods that are
flexible, like Willows (especially shrubs), will allow you to split a branch in half, third or fourth down along its growth ring(s) so the wood part of the branch is about as thick as the bark is. This makes it easier to separate the bark without breaking the wood part as much. Butternut or White Walnut are too fragile to be pounded but may give strong cordage when peeled in this manner. Even in January it provides a strip whose strength compares to some Hickories. Do remove the outer bark when using Butternut, Mulberry, Osage Orange, Aspen or any bark that won't twist without cracking the outer bark. Outer bark may be removed by scraping with a stone flake or by abrading it off on a gritty rock, but the fastest method leaves you with the strongest results: split-separation! Split the outer bark from the inner bark at one end by using a sharp edge or bend the bark so the outer part snaps away from you. Then peel up a section and split it in half as you would split a branch, by pulling with equal tension and angles on both halves.

Root Bark

I will discuss how to dig, find and select roots for cordage later in this article. How many branches are on your root is not as important for root bark as it is for root wood or branch bark strings. Hickory root bark is the strongest of the root barks. It is as strong, if not stronger, than its branch bark and is easier to remove.

Hickory, Walnut, Osage Orange, Red Cedar and some of the Elms and Cherries have root bark that is much stronger than the wood part of their roots. With Mulberry, Black Locust, Willow, American Elm and Hemlock, their root barks and root-wood fibers can be equally as strong. I have found some variations of strength within species and environments.

With the exception of Hickory, the root barks listed above share a unique characteristic unlike any other local plant fiber cordages: elasticity! A root bark bow drill string can stretch up to two inches when pulled tight. Because of its elasticity bow drill strings of root bark do not need to be as thick as those of branch bark. A thumb-thick root is overkill and a pinky-thick root is ideal. For an example of extreme strength I made a fire with a Hemlock tree's root bark string, taken from a root which was half as thick as a pencil. The string itself was as wide as a strand of spaghetti.

To remove root bark, first cut your root and remove its smaller branches. Hang the root over a branch and hold it by both ends as if you were using it to saw the branch. A branch with toothy bark is ideal but do remove any sharp protrusions that may cut the root or its bark. Buff through the root bark on one side by pulling the root in a back and forth sawing motion. As soon as you've exposed the wood core down the whole root's length, pry the inner root gently out of its bark sheath. Peel the bark from the root at the same 35 degree angle that you would to remove tree bark.

Root bark peels easiest in bark peeling season. It peels almost as easily when out of season! You do not need to pound roots to remove their bark. Split-separation does work on roots but it's not necessary. Walnut is one of the few root barks that needs to be separated from its brittle outer bark. Most of the root barks listed here may be used "as is" for bow drill strings. Root bark is a better choice than branch bark when it's available.

Barry Keegan and his partner Anthony Pollari operate a school in Elmsford, NY called PATHWAYS that teaches a variety of primitive,
survival and wilderness living skills. If you wish to contact Barry or would like a brochure of classes they have to offer, write or call:
Barry Keegan, 6 Heather Lane, Elmsford, NY 100523, Phone: (914) 592-8961.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
As a follow-up to Merv's Ropewalk page, I'd just like to mention that my students and I once made an 80 foot rope from grass using a made-on-the-spot rope machine and then dropped it down a cliff. After hanging 4 persons on the rope to test it's strength, we each took turns at primitive rappelling down the cliff with the rope. Made for some great primitive pictures, especially the half nude shots! Rough on the skin though...

That was a long time ago, and now I would not do this without a real climbing rope for protection. But in a pinch, I can vouch for the strength of such ropes!

André

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1
Hi

I promised this sooner, but partied too long this Christmas. Ah well, I hear that the Creator really didn't do it in seven days either. Nope, he partied six and pulled an all nighter. :) :) :)


And probably breaking copywrite by putting it here. Check this page out. It's how to build a rope walk. A rope building machine, some estimated breaking strengths and fun things to do with the rope you've made.

If anyone needs or just would like more info on rappel and ascent via rope, I'm a dedicated caver and know a little about it. There may be more info here on the list. I wouldn't doubt it from the intro's I've seen. Iffen you all had patches for your quals, you wouldn't need clothes!

Anyhow, here's the URL

http://www.midtown.net/~merv/mropwalk.htm

Take Good Care

Merv

p.s. This goes especially if you try any of the rappel or ascent techniques shown on this page. Talk to me first!!!!!!!!

m

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------
       Merv Martin       *              *               |
       eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com    *     *            *   |
       www.midtown.net/~merv     *               *          |
       www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages)     |
------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---
Just a question.....

I've made a few long bows over the years and I've always tried to use sinew strings on them. The strings work for a few months and then blow. I was wondering if anyone had any suggestions on the preparation of the sinew that might enhance it's longevity.

Of the techniques I've tried, this is what has been working best for me:

Use a tendon from a cow's neck or rear leg.
Scrape to clean it of loose material.
Urine soak for 24-48 hours.
Wash thoroughly with clear water, dry.
Set aside for months in a clean,dry dark place.

After the tendon looks translucent, I break it down to the fibers by pounding and/or stripping.

I double twist the fibers to make the string. Once the string is set, I soak it in my mouth for an hour or two. The saliva seems to bind the string.

I make the end loops for the bow limbs and serve these with more tendon.
Thats it.

Any suggestions?

Ron Hood

"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"

Ron Hood
diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM wrote:

> Just a question.....
>
> I've made a few long bows over the years and I've always tried to use sinew strings on them. The strings work for a few months and then blow. I was wondering if anyone had any suggestions on the preparation of the sinew that might enhance it's longevity.
>
> Of the techniques I've tried, this is what has been working best for me:
>
> Use a tendon from a cow's neck or rear leg.
> Scrape to clean it of loose material.
> Urine soak for 24-48 hours.
> Wash thoroughly with clear water, dry.
> Set aside for months in a clean, dry dark place.
>
> After the tendon looks translucent, I break it down to the fibers by pounding and/or stripping.
I double twist the fibers to make the string. Once the string is set, I soak it in my mouth for an hour or two. The saliva seems to bind the string.

I make the end loops for the bow limbs and serve these with more tendon. That's it.

Any suggestions?

Ron Hood

"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"


Ron Hood

I've had lots of problems with sinew as a bow string also. I don't use it for that purpose anymore. I use it for other bindings like on arrow points, hafting stone blades, etc. I prefer rawhide and you may want to try spiral cutting the neck hide of snapping turtle, makes a nice strong string. Just strip it off and clean it up with a knife or something and cord it. Don't cook it off. That probably doesn't answer your question on sinew, but I thought I'd comment.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Wed Jan 22 06:55:52 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA10519; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 16:28:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA04883; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 16:26:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 16:24:07 EST
Received: from emout18.mail.aol.com (emout18.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.44]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA04867 for
; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 16:25:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout18.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0) id QAA21861 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 16:29:33 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: Ggoltz@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Ggoltz@AOL.COM
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 16:29:33 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970122162400_2091067316@emout18.mail.aol.com>
A week or so back, someone in the group inquired about cordage. Haven't noticed any posts in response, so will to pass on some info.

As far as techniques, the information on the Native Tech web site is as good as any.

http://www.lib.uconn.edu/native tech

Follow their links to cordage. They do a good job on the technique, with step-by-step illustrations. Their info on fibers is less helpful, basically just a listing with illustrations of finished cord which all look about the same. There is a lot of other good stuff at this site.

I will try to give a bit more detailed information on fiber types.

I will avoid more technical terminology as much as possible and just say that fibers can be grouped into three general groups, animal fibers (sinew, rawhide, hair), tree bark fibers, and herbaceous plant fibers. I will only discuss the last two groups for now.

TREE BARK FIBERS
These generally consist of the inner bark portion. Two of the most useful tree bark fibers are cedar and basswood. Since I don't have much experience with cedar, I will only give detailed info on basswood fiber.

Basswood (Tilia americana) is found throughout most of eastern North America where hardwood forests are present. I believe other species of the genus are found in parts of Europe. Although, in a pinch it is possible to collect some basswood fiber most of the year (really tough when frozen), it is best gathered in early summer when the sap is flowing. The trees often grow in clumps, so I usually select a 4 to 6 inch tree from a clump and cut it down (don't be too concerned about this, since these clumps naturally thin out as they grow bigger anyway - you are just helping nature). I pry the bark off starting at the base in 2 to 4 inch wide strips. These easily peel up the tree. After the first strip, it is easier to get really long strips.

After the strips are gathered, bundle them up in a long bunch and soak them in a lake or stream for 2 to 3 weeks. After enough time you will notice that they get really slimy (mucilagous) and the inner layers of bark start to separate. When the inner bark gets really loose, strip it off and run through your hand to remove the slime. Keep all of the layers together, you can separate them when you get ready to use. You will notice that the innermost layers are the thinnest and smoothest. Roll into coils and dry. It will store indefinitely if kept dry. To use, just separate the layers and make into whatever width strips that you need. Before using, you can boil the strips for a half hour or so to strengthen them slightly.

HERBACEOUS PLANT FIBERS

These are typically the fibers in the outer "rind" of the plant stem. Some of the fibers in this group are incredibly strong. Common plants include milkweeds, dogbanes, and nettles. Of these, I favor the wood nettle,
Laportea canadensis, over all of the rest. It has the longest, strongest, and easiest to process fibers. It grows throughout most of eastern North America and perhaps other areas. Unlike stinging nettle, it is native to this part of the world.

Wood nettle favors moist environments and grows best in rather rich soils under hardwood stands. Around here the best nettles grow on the thick black "midden" soils on heavily used archaeological sites located along the shores of large lakes. This material can be gathered any time after the stems have died in the fall. At this time they don't sting any more and the fibers are mature. Just grab them and pull them up, the base of the stem weakens and they pull easily.

Although the fiber can be processed by crushing the dry stems and pulling off the fiber, more and longer fibers are obtained by soaking the stems and stripping off the outer rind. I usually soak bundles in warm water in an old bathtub for a few hours to overnight. After the rind is striped, it should be dried thoroughly and then "broken up" similar to processing backstrap sinew. You can carry the processing step as far as you wish, depending on how soft and fine of fibers you want.

Wood nettle can be gathered for about a six month season in this part of the country. Unlike many plant fibers, it does not deteriorate through the winter, only with warmer, wet weather in late winter and spring. In fact, I just gathered a big bunch Monday. Normally, I gather it in the fall after a good frost, but last fall got too busy. I began weaving a new fabric bag which I will be using for a pottery making demonstration in Saskatchewan in May (need to show the non-believers that the "cord" impressions found on pots are really impressions from fabric bags and not cord-wrapped paddles) and found I didn't have enough fiber to complete it. Since Monday was a nice day (sunny and 20 degrees (F)), we grabbed the snowshoes and took the three mile trek to gather nettle in three foot deep snow, great fun, I will for sure be out this fall. We managed to get 900 stems in about an hour, which will produce about 3 pounds of fiber. I have processed about 1/3 of it so far, and it is as good as gathered in the fall. I plan to use some of the longer fibers for a few bow strings. Most of this fiber is 5 feet long with some 6 feet, really nice stuff. BTW, I gathered some stinging nettle a few weeks back (I could drive to it) and it was unuseable. The fibers were weak and short and did not separate from the stem. I also tried some some dogbane from near the house, but I got a low yield of 1 1/2 to 2 foot fibers (I was trying to avoid the snowdrift venture).

The wood nettle fiber is very strong. You cannot break a less than 1/8 inch twisted cord. It can be processed readily and is suitable for small mammal snares if you can keep them from chewing through. Most of the other herbaceous plant fibers are similar, though in my opinion, less desireable.

I mentioned weaving bags from this stuff. If anyone is interested in this, let me know and I will try to post some details. This all comes from researching impressions on Indigenous ceramics from the area, and is unlike the normal weaving we are used to. It makes a flexible fabric suited to a variety of uses. Anyone for a nettle shirt or sleeping bag?

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Good post on cordage Grant.

In my neck of the woods dogbane (Apocynum androsaemifolium) makes the best cordage. Simply step on the dead stalks (collected in fall or winter), split, and peel off the inner wood and pith in small chunks leaving the long outer strands. There is a crusty scale on the outermost portion of the fibers that should be removed also, by rubbing between the fingers or hands. Watch out about licking your fingers when working with it as it is poisonous (contains glycosides capable of affecting the cardiovascular system).

Also, I have often found dead basswood trees with old bark that has been naturally retted. Long thin strips of inner bark are there for the picking, but I'm not sure it is as strong as when fresh bark is treated as you suggest. What do you think?

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
By the way, how many do we have in the group with knowledge of medicinal and edible plants? Please step forward, so we can pick your brains from time to time. I do OK with plants and know enough to survive, but there are so many I know that know so much more than me.

Got info and can dig up a few for ya. It'd be easiest to set up categories for treatment. Like burns, breaks, upset stomach, aches and pains...

_DO_ be careful, a plant called foxglove grows in North America. It's generic name is Digitalis (specifically Digitalis purpurea). Note the name Digitalis. Sounds like heart medicine doesn't it. It's the source of digitalis. That's just one.

One of the basics to carry with you is the bark especially the inner bark (cambium) of the willow. White willow seems to be the best, but all have a chemical called salicine. It's the natural form of aspirin (aceytln-salicilic acid). So whatever you use aspirin for you can substitute willow bark for. The leaves work too but are a different strength.

Now, be careful collecting the inner bark. If you cut away the cambium layer all the way around the tree (called girdling the tree), you'll kill...
it! That's it's blood system.

As far as dosage, I need to dig for some definitions and will post after Christmas.

Speaking of that Merry Christmas to all and to all a prosperous New Year.

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------

| Merv Martin      *              *               |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * *               |
| www.midtown.net/~merv               *               |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |

------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---

From - Fri Jan 10 04:09:51 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA04216; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:06:40 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA02402; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:03:43 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:08:18 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.178]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA02388 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:03:25
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.61 (srv3s27.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.178]) by
chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id PAA25545 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:06:51
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D5B2D9.2BF3@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Fri, 10 Jan 1997 03:09:13 +0000
X-UIDL: 852927577.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Beware of old bat steamers
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id
PAA02389
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id PAA04216
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
PAA02389
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
Hi everyone,

If you have been following the potassium nitrate thread and are now out to experiment with bat droppings, please be aware of the following disease which I personally contracted in bat caves in the Yucatan peninsula of Mexico on a caving expedition I did there in 1983.

"Hystoplasmosis" is contracted when coming into contact with old dried-up bat droppings (I was crawling in the stuff for miles underground). There are microscopic fungi on the scats, which you breathe in. You feel fine for about 2 weeks. Then, back in Canada, you catch a "cold" (or so you think at first). But it's the worst cold you have ever had in your life (wring out the pillows for 3 hours, freeze your nuts off for another 3 hours etc). Next day you feel fine for a while, then it starts over again. Doctors don't know what you've got and give you antibiotics that don't work. What's happening is that the mushrooms are incubating and start growing on your lungs. You feel like hell is in you for 18 days or so, then you are either immune for life (if you're healthy and make it through), or you die if you're old or weak.

Any other spelunker (or caver) will tell you that this disease is fairly common in bat caves. It is also common among pigeon growers, cause pigeon scat has the same problem. Be careful!

The guy with the nice white lungs on the X-Ray machine,

André

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0000

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 10 06:12:58 1997
Received: from babe.globecomm.net (babe.globecomm.net [207.51.48.8]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA01245 for ; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 18:06:26 -0500 (EST)
Received: from merv.midtown.net (merv.midtown.net [205.162.100.197]) by babe.globecomm.net (8.8.4/8.8.0) with SMTP id SAA15365; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 18:09:47 -0500 (EST)
Date: Fri, 10 Jan 1997 18:09:47 -0500 (EST)
Message-Id: <199701102309.SAA15365@babe.globecomm.net>
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.4
Mime-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
From: eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com (merv martin)
Subject: Re: Beware of old bat steamers
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Hi
I surfed the Center for Disease Control page at http://www.cdc.gov and found this on histoplasmosis. We don't do a lot of bat cave crawling out here in California. Not a lot of bat caves. Anyhow, here's the poop!

Merv

Histoplasmosis

What is histoplasmosis?

Histoplasmosis is an infection caused by the fungus Histoplasma capsulatum. The symptoms vary greatly but primarily affect the lungs. Occasionally the fungus invades other parts of the body; this form of the disease is called disseminated.

Who gets histoplasmosis?

Anyone can get histoplasmosis. Positive histoplasmin skin tests are seen in as many as 80% of persons living in areas where H. capsulatum is common, such as the eastern and central United States, although the majority of these persons may not have a history of symptomatic illness. The chronic, pulmonary form of histoplasmosis is more common in males than in females, and particularly in persons with chronic lung disease; acute, disseminated disease is more frequently seen in immunocompromised persons, such as those with cancer or AIDS.

How is this fungus spread?

The organism grows in soil that has been enriched with bat or bird droppings. It produces spores that can become airborne if the soil is disturbed. Inhalation of these spores may cause
infection. The disease is not acquired through person-to-person transmission.

What are the symptoms of histoplasmosis?

The majority of infected persons have no symptoms. When symptoms occur, they vary widely, depending on the form of disease. The acute, benign respiratory disease is characterized by respiratory symptoms, general malaise, fever, chest pains, and a dry or nonproductive cough. Distinct patterns are seen on chest x-rays. Chronic pulmonary disease resembles chronic pulmonary tuberculosis and progresses over months or years. The disseminated form is usually fatal unless treated.

How soon after exposure do symptoms appear?

If symptoms occur, they will usually appear within 5 to 18 days after exposure; the average is 10 days.

What is the treatment for histoplasmosis?

Specific antifungal medications are used to treat severe cases of acute histoplasmosis and all cases of chronic and disseminated disease. Mild disease usually resolves without treatment. Past infection results in increased, but not complete, resistance to reinfection.

Where is the fungus that causes histoplasmosis found?
Histoplasma capsulatum is found throughout the world and is endemic in certain areas of the United States. The organisms often grow in soil around old chicken houses, in caves and areas harboring bats, and around starling and blackbird roosts.

What can be done to prevent the spread of histoplasmosis?

It is not practical to test or decontaminate all sites that are confirmed or may possibly be contaminated with H. capsulatum, but the following steps can be taken to minimize exposure:

Avoid areas that may harbor the fungus, i.e., areas with accumulations of bird or bat droppings.

Minimize exposure to dust by spraying with a mist of water before stirring up potentially contaminated sites.

If possible, restrict work in high-risk areas to persons with a positive histoplasmin skin test. When working in such areas, all persons, and in particular persons with negative skin tests, should wear disposable clothing and a face mask capable of filtering out particulate matter above 1 millimicron in diameter.

Sites known to be contaminated can be treated with a formalin solution.

NCID Page

Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases Homepage

The Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases
National Center for Infectious Diseases
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
Nitro is a sexy explosive, but not a good one.

It's very dangerous to make. In the late nineteenth century there were nitro-manufacturing plants all over the western US, to make explosives to tame the wilds. Most of these plants eventually exploded, despite their experience and safety precautions.

It's unstable even if you make it successfully.

I have not tried making explosives, but I understand there are more powerful...
and safer varieties that can be made more easily.

More importantly,
I don't think this list should be about how to make nitroglycerin.

Phil

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sat Jan 11 08:18:01 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMT id NAA06630; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 13:18:48 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA10342; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 13:18:29 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 13:16:36 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA10339 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 13:17:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from Quantum.qnet.com (lanc02-29.ca.qnet.com [207.155.34.119]) by ns2.qnet.com (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA12771; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 10:21:49 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853031663.011
From: diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Message-ID: <2.2.32.19970111182331.0072e258@pop3.av.qnet.com>
X-Sender: diogenes@pop3.av.qnet.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Pro Version 2.2 (32)
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 1997 10:23:31 -0800
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Subject: Re: Just say no to nitro
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

At 12:43 PM 1/11/97 -0500, you wrote:
> Nitro is a sexy explosive, but not a good one. It's very dangerous to make.

> I don't think this list should be about how to make nitroglycerin.

I agree. There are good sources on the web..... go hunt them down.

Ron
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

Visit Hoods Woods at

http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/
It's good for a laugh......
From - Sat Jan 11 08:18:52 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
cichi.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMT id QAA07832; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 16:31:20 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA11447; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 16:30:07 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 16:28:14 EST
Received: from enaila.nidlink.com (enaila.nidlink.com [205.219.220.23]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMT id QAA11439 for
; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 16:29:54
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.91 (pm2-28.nidlink.com [205.219.220.91]) by
enaila.nidlink.com (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA27609; Sat, 11 Jan
1997 13:36:16 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D7F9CE.AC6@nidlink.com>
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 1997 13:36:31 -0700
X-UIDL: 853031663.030
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@NIDLINK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Subject: Re: Just say no to nitro
References: <2.2.32.19970111182331.0072e258@ pop3.av.qnet.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM wrote:
> At 12:43 PM 1/11/97 -0500, you wrote:
> >Nitro is a sexy explosive, but not a good one. It's very dangerous to make.
> >
> >I don't think this list should be about how to make nitroglycerin.
> >
> >I agree. There are good sources on the web..... go hunt them down.
> >
> >Ron

Me 2 or 3 - just like how the word rings. Agreed. Bombing and arson
are my pet peeves. Take it from a guy who had his bedroom torched with
a Molotov Cocktail through his window in the 70's and has noted three
pipebomb confiscations within a couple miles in the last year...

Chris
Nitro is a sexy explosive, but not a good one.
We had a nitro plant here, Blew up several years ago. Co had changed
names over the past several years...but under COMMERCIAL SOLVENTS name, I
believe they were one of the main suppliers of nitro for fuels, ect.

I have friends who are employed by the current name (which escapes me...KOCH...that's it.

Loved using high nitro in my model planes, and dragster....

rich, b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.
>>>>>> bmanrich@iamerica.net<<<<<
Nitro is a sexy explosive, but not a good one.

Yeah, explosives can be fun, but be careful out there, even real pros have blown themselves up often enough. Anyway for those who are really curious I recommend companies like Paladin Press or Loompanics who carry a wide selection of books on this topic. I especially recommend the Improvised Munitions Black Book I + II.

But don't do anything I wouldn't do too ;-)
Hey folks!

About this boomer. While I was at Bragg we took a series of classes in improvised munitions. This material was one of the topics. Because of my experience with it I NEED to issue a word of warning.

Explosives are rated on a number of scales; Volume of gas produced for a given weight of material, The heat of the gas, The speed at which the gas (shockwave) travels through air, The sensitivity to shock and heat (Detonation impetus). There are other issues as well but these are the primary elements.

The material we are talking about is made from household chemicals. DO NOT under any circumstances, make it. Why?

It is illegal
It has a very high gas production ratio. It will cause damage.
It has an extremely high shock speed (@18kfps to 25kfps)
It is extremely sensitive to detonation and may even self-detonate.

In our course we made drop sized volumes. These become crystals. The crystals blow. One drop of the liquid, crystallized, shredded a sheet of...
paper. A fly detonated it. Had that drop been on a hand it would have blown the metacarpels into the ground. Reconstruction would only be possible in a computer.

It's uses? very few commercial ones. For counter insurgency (or insurgency) purposes it makes a classic self detonating booby trap/land mine/room cleaner etc. etc. It is made and transported as a liquid. It is set up and then abandoned. It cannot be disarmed. It is avoided at almost all costs. Initiator explosions are much safer.

Just thought you should know. I suggest we avoid discussing explosives. Sam is soooo paranoid.

Ron Hood

>KMN04 is used in the Medical field to cure Athalete Foot and other fungal infections. I have also been told when mixed with other Chemicals, it will also make things go BOOM! I found all this out yesterday from a friend of mine. Hope it will be of some help to all of you.


Ron Hood
Par, Merv

Thank you! I completely spaced! I was thinking of Iodine... I guess that it was the post describing it's use to purify water, wash your hands and turn your hands purple. I didn't even look at the header (self defense, with all this brown stuff flying around) If I had I would have noticed that you were talking about something like potassium magnesium nitrate. I get the stupid dick award for that one. Please accept my apologies. As my penance I will now go eat a steamer. Not a new experience....... Brown toothed and apologetic......

Ron Hood

Dr. Ron Hood
P.O. Box 383
Lake Hughes, CA, 93532
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA13991; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 21:24:29 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA27219; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 21:18:44 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 21:16:47 EST
Received: from ns2.iamerica.net (ns2.iamerica.net [205.173.248.33]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA27216 for ; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 21:18:26 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [205.173.251.63] (ias-ppp0854.iamerica.net [205.173.251.63]) by ns2.iamerica.net (8.6.13/950817.04ccg) with SMTP id UAA12570 for ; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 20:23:27 -0600
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199701160223.UAA12570@ns2.iamerica.net>
Subject: Re: KMn04 an apology
Date: Wed, 15 Jan 97 20:22:29 -0600
X-UIDL: 853429967.004
From: bmanrich
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bmanrich@IAMERICA.NET
To: "dr. A.F. BOURBEAU"
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="US-ASCII"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>
Thank you! I completely spaced! I was thinking of Iodine...
Gee, I had forgotten about mixing iodine and liquid ammonia cleaner, filtering the stuff, then letting it dry. Very unstable, good for pranks, and corroding locks...let's not get into basement booming.:)

rich,b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"*Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

From - Fri Jan  3 02:50:16 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA07870; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 14:19:38 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA24289; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 14:18:27 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 14:23:04 EST
Received: from emout04.mail.aol.com (emout04.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.95]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA24286 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 14:18:17
-0500 (EST)
Received: by emout04.mail.aol.com (8.6.12/8.6.12) id OAA16964 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 14:22:10 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852319448.000
From: JWither240@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWither240@AOL.COM
Date: Fri, 3 Jan 1997 14:22:10 -0500
Message-ID: <970103142209_643758785@emout04.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: poisonous plants
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

I've found an interesting web site focusing on poisonous plants. The site is hosted by Cornell University and the address is:

Peace,
JW
> As for poison oak, the potency of the plant varies
As a youth, very affected by poison oak, ivy, sumac, I was given drops to
eat on bread. Can't say I noticed any improvement...but I do remember
having to dose the various skin outbreaks I had:
tick and chigger bites,
p-oak, p-ivy rashes,
"indian fire" infection....had a diff. treatment for each of these...I
got pretty good at telling which sore was what:).

These days, first thing I do is look for the p-ivy/oak...pull it up or
just keep away.

My Dad was a red-head and he was never affected. He said that red/blond
hair people were seldom bothered...what do you guys have to say on this?

Yes, I also learned that the sap was carried on my clothes, gear, dogs,
or brush smoke.

b-man, rich

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

bmanrich@iamerica.net
Peter Bigfoot (Reevis Mountain School, Roosevelt, Arizona) claims to build an immunity to poison ivy (Rhus radicans—I think we're talking about the same plant) by eating the green leaves in the spring before they are too potent.

Tom, interesting to see Peter's name on here. I've been taking classes from Tim Corcoran (Headwaters Outdoor School in Santa Cruz, CA), and was bummed that I couldn't get the time off work to do his first Desert Skills class this year, which he's running with Peter Bigfoot. I've heard good things about Peter's knowledge of plants. That business of eating the poison oak sounds a little bit like walking the coals, though.... I'm glad I'm already immune. (Poison oak, by the way, has gone through some name changes. I liked it when it was Toxicodendron radicans, but I think it's currently Rhus diversiloba.)

--John
bmanrich wrote:
>
> My Dad was a red-head and he was never affected. He said that red/blond
> hair people were seldom bothered...what do you guys have to say on this?

I was a reddish haired, freckled, pale skinned boy. My reaction to
poison ivy/oak/sumac was severe. I don't believe red hair offers much
protection.

One year sumac caused both my legs to swell to twice their normal
diameter. I spent three weeks in bed under a sheet tent with my legs
suspended above towels. The towels needed to be changed each hour as
they became saturated with liquid.

My worst encounter was at age sixteen after necking in the woods. We
were wearing bathing suits (no, really) and nearly every inch of my skin
was affected. Those few square inches spared from direct contact were
infected later when I used the bathroom.

After two days I looked like the elephant man! Eyes swollen shut, each
finger was a single huge blister with a nail indented at the end. Using
the bathroom during the next week was a terrifying adventure.
But how might this story relate to primitive skill? Well, for those of us who react severely to poison ivy/oak/sumac the first skill to master is that of identification of the offending plants.

I spend many days each year hiking in the mountains yet it has been many years since I have had a reaction. I attribute my success to the caution I exercise while in the forest. I know the plants and I avoid contact with them. While this may restrict my freedom somewhat it does enable me to enjoy an environment that might otherwise be too dangerous to explore.

BTW, in the 1950's our family doctor suggested to my mother that I chew several poison ivy leaves each spring to decrease my sensitivity. She declined and I was never inclined to try it. I wonder if it really works...?

Bob Jones
writer@perigee.net
> declined and I was never inclined to try it. I wonder if it really
> works...?
>
> Bob Jones
> writer@perigee.net

I have also never been able to steel myself to try what's said to be an
Indian desensitizing routine for poison oak (which has my number).
Supposedly you can eat the smallest of the new season P.O.'s green
"berries." Gradually increase the size or quantity ingested. Scares
the heck out me with out a backup of I.V. or intramuscular Solucortef
(cortisone based steroid) with a chaser of I.M. epinephrine (adrenaline
shot). I don't want to die. Anyone tried eating shoots leaves or
berries of these poisonous plants? One hears these stories, but never
hear of any takers. Probably a good example to follow as "dead men tell
no tales."

Chris

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Feb 10 08:33:40 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA29798; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 14:23:51 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA24660; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 14:20:52 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 14:18:57 EST
Received: from pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU (pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU [128.205.35.2]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA24656 for
; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 14:20:36
-0500 (EST)
Received: (goetz@localhost) by pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU (8.7.5/8.6.4) id OAA18418;
Fri, 24 Jan 1997 14:24:40 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 854135966.023
From: Phil Goetz
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Message-ID: <199701241924.OAA18418@pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, writer@PERIGEE.NET
Date: Fri, 24 Jan 1997 14:24:40 -0500 (EST)
In-Reply-To: <32E92A28.7338@perigee.net> from "Bob Jones" at Jan 24, 97
01:31:20 pm
X-Mailer: ELM [version 2.4 PL25]
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
BTW, in the 1950's our family doctor suggested to my mother that I chew several poison ivy leaves each spring to decrease my sensitivity. She declined and I was never inclined to try it. I wonder if it really works...?

Bob Jones
writer@perigee.net

This is an old lumberjack trick that I read about in a Euell Gibbons book. I asked the plant-woman at Tom Brown's school about it (forgot her name), and she said that it might work sometimes but she knew one person who tried it and got a terrible internal reaction and lifelong sensitivity.

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

I would not try this if I were you with all the back up medical stuff you talk about having with you.

I have also never been able to steel myself to try what's said to be an Indian desensitizing routine for poison oak (which has my number). Supposedly you can eat the smallest of the new season P.O.'s green
"berries." Gradually increase the size or quantity ingested. Scares
the heck out me with out a backup of I.V. or intramuscular Solucortef
(cortisone based steroid) with a chaser of I.M. epinephrine (adrenaline
shot). I don't want to die. Anyone tried eating shoots leaves or
berries of these poisonous plants? One hears these stories, but never
hear of any takers. Probably a good example to follow as "dead men tell
no tales."
>
> Chris
>
> As I was saying before I hit the wrong button while writing my reply. I
would not try this even with all the medical stuff you talked about.
Remember even in a hosp, people have died right there in ER from taking meds
and other stuff that does not agree with them. My MD has said he thinks I'm
allergic to Penicillin because I once got a rash after taking the drug. I
have always taken it and I really don't thing I have a problem with
Penicillin, but I won't take the risk to find out. I would not want to die
trying to prove I was right and the doc was wrong. Same goes for the plants.
If you don't know for sure, don't risk it, it is just not worth dying over.
After all, the name of the game is survival.

Gary

>I have also never been able to steel myself to try what's said to be an
>Indian desensitizing routine for poison oak (which has my number).
>Supposedly you can eat the smallest of the new season P.O.'s green
>"berries." Gradually increase the size or quantity ingested. Scares
>the heck out me with out a backup of I.V. or intramuscular Solucortef
>(cortisone based steroid) with a chaser of I.M. epinephrine (adrenaline
>shot). I don't want to die. Anyone tried eating shoots leaves or
>berries of these poisonous plants? One hears these stories, but never
>hear of any takers. Probably a good example to follow as "dead men tell
>no tales."
>
>Chris

From - Wed Feb 10 10:24:59 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA00890; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 16:14:28 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA26199; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 16:12:34 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 16:10:40 EST
Received: from mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com [204.180.128.166]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA26192 for
; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 16:12:20
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.12.224.74] (ip74.las-vegas2.nevada.pub-ip.psi.net
[38.12.224.74]) by mule0.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id
QAA53190; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 16:16:10 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Fri, 24 Jan 1997 13:19:06 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, writer@PERIGEE.NET
X-UIDL: 854141225.000
From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
With your level of sensitivity I wouldn't advise it. I've never had a case of poison Ivy even though it grew rampant in the area of Oklahoma I grew up in. I know I must have come in contact at some time. My sis on the other hand could just walk along a path near it without actually touching it and would get a case. Go figure.

I was a reddish haired, freckled, pale skinned boy. My reaction to poison ivy/oak/sumac was severe. I don't believe red hair offers much protection.

One year sumac caused both my legs to swell to twice their normal diameter. I spent three weeks in bed under a sheet tent with my legs suspended above towels. The towels needed to be changed each hour as they became saturated with liquid.

My worst encounter was at age sixteen after necking in the woods. We were wearing bathing suits (no, really) and nearly every inch of my skin was affected. Those few square inches spared from direct contact were infected later when I used the bathroom.

After two days I looked like the elephant man! Eyes swollen shut, each finger was a single huge blister with a nail indented at the end. Using the bathroom during the next week was a terrifying adventure.

But how might this story relate to primitive skill? Well, for those of us who react severely to poison ivy/oak/sumac the first skill to master is that of identification of the offending plants.

I spend many days each year hiking in the mountains yet it has been many years since I have had a reaction. I attribute my success to the caution I exercise while in the forest. I know the plants and I avoid contact with them. While this may restrict my freedom somewhat it does enable me to enjoy an environment that might otherwise be too dangerous to explore.

BTW, in the 1950's our family doctor suggested to my mother that I chew several poison ivy leaves each spring to decrease my sensitivity. She declined and I was never inclined to try it. I wonder if it really works...?

Bob Jones
writer@perigee.net

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com

From - Wed Feb 10 10:25:04 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA01221; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 16:37:44 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
Hi all,

I am a blond and I am not affected by these nasty plants but I have never believed that it was because of my hair color or ethnic background, just lucky I guess.

I agree, identification is the best place to start in order to avoid bad reactions.

DO NOT try to desensitize yourself by chewing a few leaves!!! From my understanding your mouth and tongue and throat and whatever else internal is just as susceptible as the external.

At 01:31 PM 1/24/97 -0800, you wrote:
>bmanrich wrote:
>>
>> My Dad was a red-head and he was never affected. He said that red/blond
>> hair people were seldom bothered...what do you guys have to say on this?
>>
>>BTW, in the 1950's our family doctor suggested to my mother that I chew
>>several poison ivy leaves each spring to decrease my sensitivity. She
>>declined and I was never inclined to try it. I wonder if it really
>>works...?
>>
>>Bob Jones
>>writer@perigee.net
Bob Jones wrote:

> BTW, in the 1950's our family doctor suggested to my mother that I chew
> several poison ivy leaves each spring to decrease my sensitivity. She
> declined and I was never inclined to try it. I wonder if it really
> works...?
>
> I have read that eating poison ivy and/or poison oak can be extremely
dangerous! I would definitely recommend against it. Apparently those
that have done this successfully are individuals who would not get the infection from plants anyway (strong natural immune systems). Seems that those who are apt normally to get skin infections can also get very bad mouth infections as well. I am not speaking from experience or from medical knowledge here, just what I read I-forgot-where.

BTW, my sympathies for your horrible ordeals. Makes us aware of some of nature's dangers. Thanks for sharing. We'll all be more careful from now on...

André

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau  
mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca

Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Quèbec

555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Quèbec), Canada G7H2B1

From - Thu Feb 11 13:54:51 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by 
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA01462; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 16:56:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by 
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA26829; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 16:55:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) 
with SMTP; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 16:53:07 EST
Received: from vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil (vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil [128.160.52.117]) by 
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA26820 for 
; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 16:54:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from lsis-ii.nrlssc.navy.mil (isis-ii [128.160.63.118]) by 
vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil (8.7.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA18218; Fri, 24 
Jan 1997 15:59:43 -0600 (CST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: hmesick@GOLDINC.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, hmesick@GOLDINC.COM
Date: Fri, 24 Jan 97 15:48:08 CST
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Mark-L-Anderson@UIOWA.EDU
X-Mailer: Chameleon V0.05, TCP/IP for Windows, NetManage Inc.
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; CHARSET=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

well, that brings up the questions:

Is it possible to be desensitized to substances that cause an allergic reactions? If so, how? What are the folks getting that go in for allergy shots? Immune suppressants?

Seems like one of the old homeopathic medicines was poison ivy, but
My sis on the other hand could just walk along a path near it without actually touching it and would get a case.

Forgive me if you were only joking, but I'm told you *do* actually have to come in contact with the plant's oils to come down with a case.

--John
Chris Smith wrote: Probably a good example to follow as "dead men tell > no tales."

> Chris

As I heard someone say once about mushrooms, "All mushrooms are edible.........but some of them only once."!!!!

--

There are thousands hacking at the branches of evil to one who is striking at the root.

Henry David Thoreau
My understanding of how these poisons work is the opposite of what's being assumed here. Allergies, you know, are immune responses gone amok. Some people have never been sensitized to poison ivy in the first place, and so seem immune. But a big dose can create a sensitivity that reveals itself on further exposure. My father was once immune, so he was given the task of cleaning out a big patch of poison ivy. His next exposure caused very severe illness.

"Leaflets three, let it be."--Boy Scout wisdom
My understanding of how these poisons work is the opposite of what's being assumed here. Allergies, you know, are immune responses gone amok. Some people have never been sensitized to poison ivy in the first place, and so seem immune. But a big dose can create a sensitivity that reveals itself on further exposure.

My father was once immune, so he was given the task of cleaning out a big patch of poison ivy. His next exposure caused very severe illness.

"Leaflets three, let it be."--Boy Scout wisdom

Well, time to jump in. I'm immune. Have always been. To the point that I can walk through poison oak in shorts when it's 90 degrees in the shade and cut up fallen oak limbs with a chainsaw. I can also slash the poison oak back at the same time. The aerosol os pretty thick a,d i wouldn't advise anyone not _very_ immune to get close.

OK enough brag.

Poison oak reaction, as I understand is is more than an allergic reaction, it's a reaction to the oils in the plant. Kinda like reacting to mustard gas. Now, these oils exist in the pollen and on any dust that drifts off of the plant so some very sensitive folks can contract the problem from just standing downwind.

Most folks can be around it and not get affected if they wash with cool to cold water within one half hour of contact. NEVER HOT!!! (Opens the pores and lets in the poison oak oils.) It _is_ an oil also so soap don't hurt. Lye or saponin in a survival situation.

The drops are still around and I think they work kinda like eating a bit of the plant. the difference is that the drops are always at the same concentration. Nice to know if you need them.

I can find the manufacture if anyone wants the info. Also, for partially primitive camping and hiking, I would suggest a liquid soap known as "Tecnu" Put it on before contact if possible. My sensitive friends swear by it.

(Boy, there's a bunch of straight lines in this post. Don't everyone hit me at once :) :) )

Eating the young leaves (berries wont be there in the spring for poison oak.) may be a solution, though I'd be kinda chary about trying this if I were sensitive to the stuff. The effects can be internal, I believe that
the oils invade the lymphatic system, and it takes steroids to stop it. Not real fun to break out wherever the oils feel like it. Lived with a lady that did this once, her first case and she thought she was immune until we were chopping it back one day...

BTW poison oak makes a wonderful black dye for your woven baskets. The northern california indians used it quite a bit..

Merv
---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------
| Merv Martin                        | * |                  |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com | * | *                 |
| www.midtown.net/~merv             | * |                   |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) | * |                   |
------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA04865; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 00:48:06 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA01091; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 00:46:56 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 00:45:04 EST
Received: from mailgate22 (mailgate22-hme0.a001.sprintmail.com [205.137.196.54]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA01086 for ; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 00:46:45 -0500 (EST)
Received: by mailgate22 (SMI-8.6/SMI-SVR4) id VAA18641; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 21:50:50 -0800
Received: from sdn-ts-058mdrelrp14.dialsprint.net(206.133.8.81) by mailfep1-hme1 via smap (KC5.24) id Q_10.1.1.4/Q_22526_1_32e99eef; Fri Jan 24 21:49:35 1997
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E99FA6.6CAA@sprintmail.com>
Date: Sat, 25 Jan 1997 00:52:38 -0500
From: ROBERT COX
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, robertlcox@sprintmail.com
Organization: Nuisance Wildlife Control Service & Express Private Process Service
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, dweinsto@PANTHER.MIDDLEBURY.EDU
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
References:
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

David Weinstock wrote:
>
My understanding of how these poisons work is the opposite of what's being assumed here. Allergies, you know, are immune responses gone amok. Some people have never been sensitized to poison ivy in the first place, and so seem immune. But a big dose can create a sensitivity that reveals itself on further exposure.

My father was once immune, so he was given the task of cleaning out a big patch of poison ivy. His next exposure caused very severe illness.

"Leaflets three, let it be."--Boy Scout wisdom

Yeah, when i was in scouts I made a fire and was burning some brush that unbeknownst to me had poison something or another in it. The smoke blowing in my face gave me a massive rash/blistering/eyes swelled shut. I was a mess!! Our ministers boy also got it really bad - we were both out of it for about a week. The lesson is - smoke can carry the poisonous oils.

--
Robert L. Cox, Jr.  - President
Nuisance Wildlife Control Services
Express Private Process Service
P.O. Box 5582, Towson, MD 21285
Email: robertlcox@sprintmail.com

From - Thu Feb 11 13:56:24 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA07633; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 13:40:43 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA03624; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 13:39:28 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 13:37:35 EST
Received: from april.dnaco.net (april.dnaco.net [206.150.232.9]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMDT id NAA03621 for ; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 13:39:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from kirk.dnaco.net (root@kirk.dnaco.net [206.150.232.3]) by april.dnaco.net (8.8.4/8.8.4) with ESMDT id NAA03561; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 13:43:29 -0500 (EST)
Received: from sherri (uhura-18.dnaco.net [206.150.232.118]) by kirk.dnaco.net (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id NAA22449; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 13:43:25 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32EA54AB.7457@dnaco.net>
Date: Sat, 25 Jan 1997 13:44:59 -0500
From: Sherri
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, seer7@DNACO.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0Gold (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, robertlcox@SPRINTMAIL.COM
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
References: <199701231639.KAA16830@ns2.iamerica.net> <32E92A28.7338@perigee.net> <32E999C1.5E31@sprintmail.com>
Hello guys,

I am hyper sensitive to the poisons...both oak and ivy. And strange as it may seem...you can also get it in the winter from the roots. I dug up some roots in a flower bed on a warm winter day and it was all over me. My doctor was amazed that I had gotten poison ivy in the winter.

Sherri
seer7          "We are the Witnesses to the Rape of the World"

As long as there is sap, the poison is going to be active. As I may have mentioned before: shoes, clothes, tools, pets, anything that has come into contact and gets sap can be your source for infection.

I just finished some early-spring yard work, pulled a few roots, but used gloves I can toss, when finished.

And for certain, NEVER BURN THE STUFF. The smoke is active, too! BTDT.
b-man, rich

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

bmanrich@iamerica.net
I snipped out a section of my Herbal Field Guide to Plant Families (and added some notes) to answer some of the group's questions about lichens, including Usnea. (Lichens are not my strong suit, but I included
the information in my book to help define the difference between lichens and true plants.) The asterisk marks by some of the lichens below indicates that I recognise at least some members of the genus. Any input from the group on these or other lichens would be greatly appreciated.

Lichens are a symbiotic association between algae and fungus. The algae is a layer of single-celled plants on the surface, just below a gelatinized layer of fungal hyphae. The algae captures nutrients that land on its surface and provide energy through photosynthesis, while the fungus absorbs moisture, and provides a protective structure for the algae. These are otherwise independent organisms, capable of surviving without each other. Lichens can insert threads a half inch into solid rock. These threads are not true roots, but anchors. The fungus produces a potent acid, which is combined with an alcohol from the algae to form acid crystals. The varied and often bright colors of the lichens come from these acid crystals. The acid is used to etch holes in the rock, and threads are inserted for anchors (Platt). Most of the so-called "mosses", especially those found in trees, are actually lichens. The true mosses are distinctively green like other true plants.

Lichens gather most of their nutrients through their surfaces, directly from the air and rain. This habit gives the lichens an adaptability to live almost anywhere, even on rocks, trees, or buildings. On the other hand, lichens are highly susceptible to air-borne pollutants, which they absorb in toxic concentrations. It is challenging to identify the many lichen families and genera. Much of the identification is done using high-powered microscopes or chemical tests, using calcium hypochlorite (like bleaching powder), potassium hydroxite (like "Liquid Plumber"), aqueous potassium iodide (iodine tincture), and paraphenylenediamine (highly toxic). For specific identification of the Lichens, I recommend How to Know the Lichens by Mason Hale, or Mosses, Lichens, & Ferns of Northwest North America by Dale Vitt, Janet Marsh and Robin Bovey. These books have technical keys, but they also have lots of photographs. For the purposes of this book I have chosen to lump the lichens together to see what patterns are revealed across the division.

The Lichen Division is comprised of at least 8 orders, 45 families, and 6,000 species. Information on the edible and medicinal uses of the lichens is scattered. Many lichens are known to have potent antibiotic
properties, and many are edible. However, some lichens do contain toxic substances, so you should not graze randomly on them. Some lichens can be used to produce brilliant dyes. Litmus was originally derived from several species of Roccella found in Africa. Litmus is a purple substance that turns red in acid and blue in alkali.

(The suffix -ACEAE indicates a family. Family members are listed by genus only, not species.)

**PARMELIALES ORDER**

**GYROPHORACEAE**

Gyrophora-Rock Tripe: The lichen is edible, especially when boiled with meat (Sturtevant).

Umbiliceria-Rock Tripe: This lichen is edible cooked. Soaking in a couple changes of cold water will help to remove the bitterness. They are said to be mucilaginous, great for thickening stews (Angier). It also has antibiotic properties (Angier).

**LECANORACEAE**

Lecanora-Cup Moss, Manna: The plants are edible (Sturtevant). One species, growing in the middle-east is the "manna lichen". During drought years the plant may be broken apart by the wind and blown across the land. This lichen became immortalized in the Bible when it showered down on the starving Israelis as the "manna rain".

**PARMELIACEAE**

Cetraria-Reindeer Moss: Reindeer moss is bitter, antibiotic, and edible. The lichen is used as an expectorant to stimulate the release of phlegm, apparently due to the bitterness. This bitterness needs to be removed to make the plant edible. The lichen should be soaked over-night and for most of a day, in two changes of cold water to remove the acids, then strained and eaten (Angier). It is a source of gelatin (Asch).

Parmelia-The lichen is boiled for use as a dye (Gilmore).

**USNEACEAE**

Alectoria-Black Tree Lichen* The black tree lichen is stringy and "moss" like. Montana Indians washed and soaked the lichen, then cooked it for one
to two days in a steam pit. The cooked lichen was eaten or dried and powdered and used as a mush or thickener later. It is reported that Flathead Indian families ate 25 pounds of the lichen each year (Hart). Evernia— The plant is edible (Sturtevant). A thick tea is used on running sores (Murphey).

Letharia-Wolf Lichen* This bright yellow tree lichen contains a highly toxic acid. It was once combined with animal fat and nails and used in Europe to kill wolves (Vitt). It is also used as a dye plant.

Usnea-Old Man's Beard* The lichen is boiled for use as a dye (Gilmore). It is used medicinally as an antibiotic (Klein). (Usnea is a light grey color. Use the "rubberband" test for positive identification: break the stems and inside you will find a white, rubbery core that stretches a little like a rubberband.)

PELTIGERALES ORDER

STICTACEAE

Sticta  The lichen is edible (Sturtevant).

CLADONIALES ORDER

CLADONIACEAE

Claydonia-Pixie Cup Lichen* The Cladonias contain didymic acid, used as an antibiotic against tuberculosis (Mabey). It is reported to be edible (Sturtevant).

Cladina-Reindeer Lichen Some species were boiled and the tea was taken for colds or as a laxativ

Interested in seeing information on my 3 books? Send your postal address to me at tomelpel@3rivers.net.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Pony, Montana
From - Fri Jan 17 23:54:05 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMT id JAA25888; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 09:25:36 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA13067; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 09:23:56 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 09:21:59 EST
Received: from ki.se (mbox.ki.se [130.237.207.77]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca
(8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA13063 for
; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 09:23:41
-0500 (EST)
Received: by ki.se id AA21303 (5.67a/IDA-1.5 for
primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca); Fri, 17 Jan 1997 15:28:57
+0100
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Fri, 17 Jan 1997 15:28:55 +0200 (METDST)
X-UIDL: 853606174.037
From: Par Leijonhufvud
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
        Par.Leijonhufvud@LABTEK.KI.SE
Subject: Re: moss
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
In-Reply-To:
"ZIP+970117055144:970117055144:AC*/c=us/admd=attmail/prmd=boeing/o=OV/s=Barker/g=Howard/i=N/"@MHS>
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
On 17 Jan 1997, HOWARD BARKER wrote:

> Usnea or Alectoria, I don't know Par. I've never even heard of them.

I'll quote a post from a few days ago to this list:

On Tue, 14 Jan 1997, Tom Elpel wrote:

# USNEACEAE
# Alectoria-Black Tree Lichen* The black tree lichen is stringy and "moss"
# like. Montana Indians washed and soaked the lichen, then cooked it for one
# to two days in a steam pit. The cooked lichen was eaten or dried and
# powdered and used as a mush or thickener later. It is reported that
# Flathead Indian families ate 25 pounds of the lichen each year (Hart).
# Evernia- The plant is edible (Sturtevant). A thick tea is used on running
# sores (Murphey).
# Letharia-Wolf Lichen* This bright yellow tree lichen contains a highly
# toxic acid. It was once combined with animal fat and nails and used in
# Europe to kill wolves (Vitt). It is also used as a dye plant.
# Usnea-Old Man's Beard* The lichen is boiled for use as a dye (Gilmore).
# It is used medicinally as an antibiotic (Klein). (Usnea is a light grey
# color. Use the "rubberband" test for positive identification: break the
# stems and inside you will find a white, rubbery core that stretches a
# little like a rubberband.)

> I live in Western WASHington, USA  some plases around are like swamps.
> The moss I'm refering to usually grow on tree limbs near streams and
> other bodys of water, and is somewhat stringy, would probably make good
> tinder for fires, and is green with a little yellow.

> Please advice me on this, although it was very necc. to use this moss
> when i did, I don't want to wipe with some poisonous moss stuff.:)

Hard to tell from your description, but I doubt it's sphagnum, which is
the bogforming moss of the northern forrests. The color fits, though.
Anyone familiar with the area and can help out on the possible ID?

/Par

--
Par Leijonhufvud       par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
Disclaimer => Everything above is a true statement,
    for sufficiently false values of true.
Hi,

I have recently subscribed to this list and think that there is a lot of good information that is passed around. I have been serious about learning wilderness survival skills for the last three years and because of that interest, I have my scout troop working towards a week long wilderness survival high adventure this summer. We are based in Longmont which is just northeast of Boulder 15 miles.

One of the areas that we need the most help on is with wild edibles. I have Peterson's guide and a Rocky Mountain guide but am interested in still more sources of information. If anyone would be willing to do a field trip or know of someone that would like to do a field trip with either my whole troop or just myself and the other scoutmasters I would really appreciate it. Sometime in may or June would probably be best for a field trip as our trip is currently planned for the third week in July. I am also interested in any other field guides that are skewed towards identification and uses for this area.

We are planning on about 50% of our food coming from foraging. Part of the equipment list for each boy is going to a sock full of whole grains and legumes. We hope to catch fish and also setup non-lethal snares. As leaders we will have a small supply of spices, meat, flour and honey to supplement the food. For example if the boys set up a snare or deadfall on a run and an animal triggers it (the snares will be designed so that the loop will break as it tightens and the deadfalls will have a
stopper stick) then they will get some meat to throw in their evening stew. A few of the boys have caught trout by hand and all of them have at least touched a trout and made an attempt at catching one.

Also if anyone has good methods for cooking without pots, I would be interested in seeing some posts about them. I have done ashcakes, tortillas on hot rocks and roasting on a stick but have not tried any pit steaming or things like that. We will be taking one big pot along with us but I would like to do at least one day without using the pot.

Thanks.

Mike Jones
jonesm@vnet.ibm.com

From - Fri Jan 17 23:54:21 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA27382; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:28:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA14872; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:27:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:25:09 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id MAA14863 for ; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:26:50 -0500
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.124]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA109; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:22:51 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DFC51D.76A6@perigee.net>
Date: Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:29:49 -0600
X-UIDL: 853606174.043
Mike Jones wrote:

> I have recently subscribed to this list and think that there is a lot of
> good information that is passed around. I have been serious about
> learning wilderness survival skills for the last three years and because
> of that interest, I have my scout troop working towards a week long
> wilderness survival high adventure this summer. We are based in
> Longmont which is just northeast of Boulder 15 miles.
> >
> > One of the areas that we need the most help on is with wild edibles. I
> > have Peterson's guide and a Rocky Mountain guide but am interested in
> > still more sources of information. If anyone would be willing to do a
> > field trip or know of someone that would like to do a field trip with
> > either my whole troop or just myself and the other scoutmasters I would
> > really appreciate it. Sometime in may or June would probably be best
> > for a field trip as our trip is currently planned for the third week (snip)

I'm sending you a rather lengthy list. I hope you find someone near you. I have marked the ones that are a little higher priced with a $ sign. They are worthwhile, though. Most of them have plant knowledge, some as
indicated, specialize in plant knowledge. Also check out the publication below, Wild Foods Forum. Vickie Shufer is editor and can help you find someone also. I would also contact Christopher Nyerges at Survival Services below. He is one of the best out your way on plants. Let me know how else I can help!

PRIMITIVE, SURVIVAL AND WILDERNESS LIVING SKILLS TEACHERS:

Barry Keegan, Pathways School, 6 Heather Lane, Elmsford, NY 10523, Phone: (914) 592-8961
  He and his partner, Anthony Follari are two of the most skilled people I have met. They communicate well and their experience in the field is apparent. Write for a full schedule of their classes.

Bear Thistle, Jim & Gloria Robbins, P.O. Box 429, Dudley GA 31022, Phone: (912) 676-4120
  Jim and Gloria teach many primitive skills. Primitive drilling techniques, stone carving, basket making, bag weaving and much more. They also sell custom made jewelry.

Boulder Outdoor Survival School, Inc., P.O. Box 1590, Boulder, CO 80306, Phone: (303) 444-9779
  B.O.S.S. has much to offer In primitive and survival skills workshops from a week to 27 day long hands-on training. Write for a schedule of classes and products they have available. They are also a good resource to connect you with some particular craftsman, book or resource you may be having trouble locating. Dave Wescott is director and is well known for his contributions and and skills in primitive and survival technologies. He organizes Rabbit Stick Rendezvous and is editor of the Bulletin of Primitive Technology.

Camp Antiquity, Ken Sherron, 131 Ranch Dr., Ponca City, OK 74601, Phone: (405) 765-3722
  Training camps in primitive skills. Regular courses include 5 day intensives in brain tanning, flint knapping, friction fire making and cordage. Classes usually run Monday through Friday. Weekend classes by appointment. Family oriented. Drugs and alcohol prohibited.
Errett Callahan, Piltdown Productions, 2 Fredonia Ave., Lynchburg, VA 24503

Errett Callahan specializes in and conducts workshops in flintknapping, primitive skills, archery, etc. and sells stone knives, flintknapping supplies and a starter set for the beginning flintknapper, complete with instructional flashcards. Catalog available. He is very renowned worldwide as an exceptional experimental archaeologist. He is founder of the Society of Primitive Technology.

Eustace Conway, Turtle Island Preserve, Rt.1, Box 249B, Triplet, NC 28686, Phone: (704) 872-7972

Native American Culturalist. School programs, teacher workshops and Museum presentations available on various Native American skills. Braintan hides for sale. Brochure available.

Flintworks, Scott K. Silsby. 6604 Placid St., Falls Church, VA 22043, Phone: (703) 533-0056

Scott is the best teacher and tool maker, when it comes to greenstone tools. He also teaches workshops in flintknapping, bow and arrow making and sells greenstone and greenstone tools.

Hawk Hurst, E.A.R.T.H. Programs, Silver Water Retreat, Hawk's Hoops, 2511 Bald Fork Rd., Todd, NC 28684, Phone: (910) 385-1401

Rainsticks, Bamboo, Gourds and instruments, such as, drums, rattles and flutes, for sale. Hawk Hurst has workshops to offer that allow you to create and build your own drum, flute, rattle and rainstick. They also have E.A.R.T.H. Programs (Earth Awareness programs/Re-experiencing Tribal Heritage), Primitive Skills Summer Camps for-ages 7-12, Wilderness Weekend Survival Treks and Family Camp Weekends. Hawk and his wife Ayal now conduct classes at beautiful Silver Water Retreat A 214 acre site with waterfalls, a refuge for all plant and animal life. Silver Water Retreat offers examples of low Impact, environmentally appropriate technology', environmental skills and many programs through the educational center. It is also a place of seclusion for peaceful retreats and encounters while one explores their own personal creativity. Plans also include a replicated village of primitive shelters from around the world and a community of people to live on site.
permanently as part of the program and goals they envision.

HOFUNEE Southeastern Indian Programs, Scott Jones, P.O. Box 2446, Athens, GA 30612, Phone: (706) 743-5144

Scott has some very good workshops in various primitive skills. He has appeared on TV on such programs as Earthmatters and Earthnet. He is very skilled and very entertaining. He also sells rivercane for blowguns and arrows.

Jeff Holshouser, 8535 Bringleferry Rd., Salisbury, NC 28146, Phone: (704) 639-9082

Jeff teaches some excellent workshops on flintknapping, especially for those just starting out in flintknapping. He also collects artifacts and sells casts of originals and will do other replication.

Jim Lowery, Earth Skills/dirt times, 1113 Cougar Court, HC 2, Box 8132, Frazier Park, CA 93225, Phone: (805) 245-0318

Jim directs a variety of primitive skills classes and tracking. Also ask about their great little newsletter that focuses on tracking, wilderness skills and nature awareness. It comes out quarterly and focuses on the Southern California area, but has some good information that would be good for any area. Not only do they have articles on tracking, they also have articles on many primitive technologies. Back issues are available and a catalog. Subscription Price is $12.50 ($15.00 International)

Jim Riggs, Contact: Lucille Housley, Malheur Field Station, HC72, Box 260, Princeton, OR 97721, Phone: (503) 493-2629

Specializing in primitive technologies and living skills. Workshops available, write for schedule and locations.

Jim Roberts, 111 W. Trinity Ave., Durham, NC 27701, Phone: (919) 688-1430

Cross cultural percussionist, hand drum teacher, drum maker, instructional tapes for sale.

John C. Campbell Folk School, Brasstown, NC 28902, Phone: 1-800-FOLKSCH
School specializing in various folk and ancient skills and crafts.
Catalog available.

John McPherson, Prairie Wolf P.O. Box 96, Randolph, KS 66554, Phone: (913) 293-5310
Workshops available in various primitive living skills. Books and videos for sale.

John White, Ancient Lifeways Institute, Michael Hollow Rd., Michael IL 62065, Phone: (618) 576-9255
Educational center specializing in Midwestern Native American life and skills 300 years ago.

Keith Grenoble, 1012 Madison Lane, Falls Church VA 22046
Keith is very skilled in many different primitive living skills. He is an excellent, good natured patient teacher.

Linda Runyon, Wild Foods Co., Inc., 13239 W. Shadow Hills Dr., Sun City West, AZ 35375, Phone: (602) 933-8675
Linda Runyon knows edible and medicinal wild plants. Linda learned from the Iroquois people while living in the Adirondack wilderness for 13 years. She was once on Ripley's Believe It or Not TV show for feeding 200 people a banquet from harvesting a 10 foot square of yard for 15 minutes a day for three weeks! Wild Foods Classes every Wednesday, 7-9 p.m.

Living History Workshops, The Berkeley Museum, 950 Story Landing Rd., Moncks Corner, SC 29461, Phone: (803) 899-5101, Contact: Mark Butler
Mark Butler is the program director and has classes in many different primitive skills to offer.

'Mountain' Mel Deweese, Learn To Return/Survival Experience Reaction Education/Nature Knowledge, 1825 Linden St., Grand Junction, CO 81503, Phone: (303) 242-8507
Mel is very highly skilled in many primitive and survival skills. He knows more ways to start a fire without matches than anyone I know. He has trained Navy SEAL's and various military personnel in tropic,
desert, arctic, mountain and woodland conditions. He is featured on one of the Woodsmoke videos, Fire III. He is not only a good teacher, but is also very entertaining.

Musselshell Traders. Paul & Snowbird Dinsmore, HCR 67, Box 11, Mosby. MT 59058, Phone: (406) 429-7828
Teaches Northwest Coastal Native American (Colville, Kootenai, Blackfoot, Cree) tanning method. wet scrape, smokes, then brains hides. Also sells finished hides and trades 7 scraped hides to 1 finished hide.

Nature & Vision Tracking School, Charles Worsham, RFD 4, Box 446 Thomas Rd., Madison Heights, VA 24572, Phone: (804) 846-1987
If you're looking for classes in tracking Charles Worsham is one of the best. He teaches animal and man tracking. Write for brochure.

Kathleen & Preston Roberts, Rt. 1, Box 200-A, Hays, NC 28635, Phone: (910) 957-3459
Two very skilled and gifted teachers of primitive skills. Preston is also a fine braintanner and makes buckskin clothing.

Steve Watts, Schiele Museum of Natural History, P.O. Box 953, Gastonia, NC 28053, Phone: (704) 866-6912
Director of Southeastern Native American and Aboriginal Studies Program at Schiele Museum. Write for schedule of workshops available in various aboriginal skills with emphasis on the Southeastern Native American. Replicator of Southeastern pottery, points, etc.

Steven 'Snow Bear' Taylor, Yonah Earthskills, Rt. 5, Box 396, Hayesville, NC 28904, Phone: (704) 389-9336
Specializing in primitive and pioneer living skills, edible, utilitarian and medicinal wild plants, tracking, stalking, nature awareness, storytelling, music and primitive cooking. Available for contract work. Brochure available. Co-organizer and founder of annual Earthskills Workshop/Rivercane/ Falling Leaves Rendezvous in Unicoi State Park, Helen, Georgia.

Survival Services, Christopher Nyerges, P.O. Box 41834, Los Angeles, CA 90041, Phone: (213) 255-9502
Wild food outings. Classes in survival. Products.

TACACHALE Programs, Sam Lawson & Ann Gill-Lawson, 871 Willis Lane, Dublin, GA 31021, Phone: (912) 274-9008

"Tacachaleí means "eto light a new fireí. They teach ancient principles and practices through material culture, primitive skills, legends, stories and southeastern ethnohistory in order to bring new understandings in environmental and cultural studies.

The Chapman Log House Building School, Don & Bonnie Chapman, Rt. 8, Box 739, Mooresville, NC 28115, Phone: (704) 663-5080

Don Chapman is a log home builder, artist and historian. He teaches traditional Appalachian log home construction techniques.

Tony Breda, The Swimming Turtle, 1322 Dalton Rd., Towson, MD 21234, Phone: (410) 882-9339

Tony offers classes in edible wild foods, aboriginal daily skills (primitive cooking, hide tanning, shelter construction, etc.), primitive tool making, native fishing techniques (spears, nets, traps, etc.) modern wilderness survival, primitive pottery and basket making, Living with the Earth (survival campouts). Classes at various locations in Maryland, Virginia, Yukon and Great Britain. Also makes and sells great dugout canoes suitable for museums or for using.

TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, Phone: Benjamin Pressley (704) 827-0723, E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

Visit us on the Internet: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

TRIBE is an organization dedicated to bringing together people interested in primitive technologies on a regional basis and providing a medium whereby knowledge and resources may be shared with one another. This is accomplished through the regional newsletter, TRIBE, the annual primitive skills event, TRIBE GATHERING and co-operating with, co-operating with and promoting primitive skills teachers and practitioners of primitive technologies.

TRIBE has a year long schedule of workshops and classes in many primitive, outdoor and survival skills and crafts. We handle some of the best primitive skill instructors in the country. To find out about our
exciting schedule request free TRIBE Information Packet or check out a sample of the newsletter only $2.50.

TRIBE also offers a service to any primitive, outdoor or survival skill teacher or practitioner that wishes to teach. TRIBE offers their service as a staff, provides promotional literature, advertising, provides students and collects all fees. The guest instructor receives their required fee and TRIBE charges 20% over the guest instructor's required fee. This money pays for expenses of this service and the rest goes back into the organization for future expenses to benefit primitive skill practitioners everywhere who know of and benefit from TRIBE.

Willow Winds, Jim Miller, Director, 962 F-30 West, Mikado, MI 48745, Phone: (517) 736-3487
Jim is an experienced braintanner and offers workshops in braintan and many other primitive skills. He has replicated items for the movies, such as Dances With Wolves, Thunderheart and others. He has braintan buffalo and elk hides available for sell.

Workshops In Primitive Living Skills For Children And Educators, Jeff Gottlieb, 57 Westgate Rd., Massapequa, NY 11762, Phone: (516) 232-2903
Abo Replicas: Shelters, Tools, Games and Toys/ Natural Creations: "Wild' Baskets, Rattles, Fiber Art Jeff has many programs to offer adults and children and is very qualified. Here are some of his offerings: Life Zones of Planet Earth/ Primitive Technology/ The Deer People/ Wilderness Survival/Ancient Days and Native Ways/ Stories From the Earth Write for price list. "I look at survival and aboriginal living skills as a way to get closer to the Earth, which supports us all as a mother cares for her children. I teach in order to help people reconnect with the web of all life." --Jeff Gottlieb.

THESE MAGAZINES, NEWSLETTERS AND ORGANIZATIONS ARE ALSO A GOOD RESOURCE WITH A LOT OF GOOD INFORMATION TO OFFER AS WELL AS WHERE PEOPLE ADVERTISE CLASSES:

Backwoodsman Magazine, P.O. Box 627, Westcliffe, CO 81252, Phone: (719) 783-9028
"The Magazine for the 20th Century Frontiersman Specializing In
Trapping, Woodslore, Survival, Gardening, Muzzleloading and Homesteading". A great all around magazine! $15.00 per year. $28.00 for 2 years.

Backwoods Home Magazine, 1257 Siskiyou Blvd., #213, Ashland, OR 97520, Phone: (805) 647-9341

A really great magazine on all aspects of self reliant living; home building, alternative energy sources, farming/gardening, health, environment, etc.

Boomerang News, Ted E. Bailey, P.O. Box 6076, Ann Arbor, MI 48106
News on Boomerangs, Rabbit sticks from around the world. $10.00 per year ($12.00, Canada. $20.00 Overseas).

Bulletin of Primitive Technology, Society of Primitive Technology, P.O. Box 905, Rexburg, ID 83440, Phone Voice/FAX: (208) 359-2400

More than a magazine, the official bulletin of the Society of Primitive Technology. The most highly technical, yet understandable, magazine on various primitive technologies I have ever read. Contains articles by all the big names in these technologies. Join the Society and order their back issues while you can at $10 per issue. Free classifieds for members. $25.00 year. Subscription price includes annual PrimitiveTechnology Newsletter.

Coltsfoot, Rt. 2, Box 313A, Shipman, VA 22971

A bi-monthly newsletter published in appreciation of wild plants. Contents include articles on edible and medicinal plants. Subscription Rate: $10.00 per year (Sample Issue: $2.00)

dirt times, Published by Earth Skills, 1113 Cougar Court, HC 2, Box 8132, Frazier Park, CA 93225,
Phone: (805) 245-0318, Editor: Jim Lowery

Great little newsletter that focuses on tracking, wilderness skills and nature awareness. It comes out quarterly and focuses on the Southern California area, but has some good information that would be good for any area. Not only do they have articles on tracking, they also have articles on many primitive technologies. Back issues are available and a catalog. Subscription Price is $12.50 ($15.00 International)
Herbal Voices, 3936 Mt. Bliss Rd., East Jordan, MI 49727
A quarterly newsletter for plant crafters. It has articles on medicinal plants, edible plants and many other plant related topics. They are also forming a network for people who use herbs. Subscription Rate: $12.00 per year

Journal of the Great Lakes Primitives, George Hedgepeth, Editor, G-3450 South Linden Rd., Suite 119, Flint, MI 48507
Newsletter on various primitive skills and activity focusing on activity in the Great Lakes area. $10.00 per year

Michigan Flintknapperís Newsletter, Robert Love, 8185 Kiowah Trail, Pinckney, MI 48169
The newsletter of the Michigan Flintknappers about flintknapping. $10.00 per year.

Pathways, The Newsletter of the National Association of Therapeutic Wilderness Camps, NATWC, 174 Underwood Farm Rd., Cleveland, GA 30528
This an organization that is a network of camps that uses wilderness living skills as a tool to reach troubled youth with a therapeutically sound, non-punitive approach. They hold an annual conference and have such distinguished members on their board, such as Larry Dean Olsen (ANASAZI Foundation, Outdoor Survival Skills). $25.00 per year or join their organization with full benefits for $40.00 (Individual), $30.00 (Full-time student).

Pow-Wow Listing, John Blackfeather and/or Lynette C. Jeffries, 511 Latimer St, Hillsborough, NC 27278,
Phone: (919) 732-8512
A one page newsletter that lists Pow-wows going on all over.
Subscription price is three self addressed stamped envelopes. send to address indicated,

Pow-Wow Trails, P.O. Box 1188, Long wood, FL 32752-1188
Extensive listings of Pow-Wows and articles. Subscription Price: $12.00 year--I 2 issues
Prehistoric Antiquities & Archaeological News Quarterly, Dept. 301, Box 53. N. Lewisburg, OH 43060

Prehistoric artifacts for sale and trade, articles on current archaeological findings and research, calendar of events for meeting, auctions and shows, books and supplies. To Subscribe: Sample, $5. 1 Year Subscription (4 issues). $20 (Canada $4. Sample, $6)

Primitive Archer, P.O. Box 209, Lufkin, TX 75902-0203, Phone: (409) 632-8746.
This magazine is dedicated to the primitive bowyer, hunter and archer. They deal strictly with wooden bows, not compounds, not artificially laminated. Articles on choosing bow woods, flintknapping, constructing bows, tales of hunting and hunting how-to with primitive bows, romance of the bow and primitive hunt, arrow making, resources... just about anything having to do with primitive bow and arrow making, hunting or archery. They also have a bowyer's help line, network exchange of tips and information and opportunities to trade hunts. Subscription price is $16 per year. Canada $24, Foreign $31. Published quarterly.

The Caretaker Gazette, 1845 NW Deane St., Pullman, WA 99163-3509, Phone/FAX: (509) 332-0806, E-mail: garydunn@pullman.com Here is an idea worth considering. How would you like to have your housing provided by a landowner and live rent-free with no mortgage obligations? It is possible as a property caretaker. There is an increased demand for property caretakers across the U.S. watching over someone's property in their absence and in some cases on nature retreats, ecological preserves, camps, national and state forests. Thea Dunn is doing a great service and has researched this field and has began a publication called The Caretaker Gazette. If you are interested, this newsletter is worth receiving. Subscription Price: $15.00 (6 months, 3 issues), $24.00 (1 year, 6 issues), $44.00 2 years, 12 issues).

The Cast, 7273 Hamburg Rd., Brighton, MI 48116, Phone: (810) 231-2314

Recently, Lou Becker, Ron Rappaport, George Hedgepeth and Jim Gilligan organized a group called the Michigan Atlatl Association. They have a great newsletter to offer that will keep you informed about the many atlatl and primitive skills events going on in the Great Lakes area. Lou
Becker had the idea of starting an atlatl association in Michigan and they already are planning a boar hunt and some patches with their great looking logo on them. They will be networking with many other groups like TRIBE. It's great to see people getting together and networking, so we can support one another. If you're Interested in joining send $10.00 dues to: Lou Becker, President, 5940 Urban Dr., East China, MI 48054, Phone: (810) 765-4623.

The C.R.O.W. Call, P.O. Box 187, Bogota, NJ 07603, Phone: (201) 486-0446
The quarterly newsletter for Children Respecting Our World, A fine newsletter that deals with many environmental issues and just general respect for the earth. They are also an organization that teaches primitive skills and holds an annual rendezvous. Well written and entertaining. Subscription Price is $10.00 per year.

The Food Insects Newsletter, Florence V. Dunkel, Ph.D., Associate Professor, Editor, Dept. of Entomology, Room 324, Leon Johnson Hall, Montana State University, Bozeman, MT 59717-0302, U.S.A. Phone: (406) 994-5065. FAX: (406) 994-6029. E-mail: UEYFD@MSU.OSCS.MONTANA.EDU
This is the first newsletter I've ever seen dedicated to eating insects! That's right, I said, eating insects. Great newsletter that contains recipes on preparing insects as food like Hot Mealworm Appetizers, Mealworm Cookies, Mealworm Canapes, Marinated Termite Queens, Bee Larvae Dip, Chocolate Covered Crickets, Locust Brochettes. Makes me hungry! They actually sponsor insect tasting feasts for the public. The newsletter comes out March, July and November and costs $5.00 per year (Back issues: $1.50).

The Flintknapperis Exchange, 278 W. 8th St., Peru, IN 46970
A clearinghouse for knappers. Bi-monthly newsletter. Subscription Rate: $12.00 per year.

The Wild Foods Forum, P.O. Box 61413, Virginia Beach, VA 23462
Wonderful bi-monthly newsletter dealing with wild, edible and medicinal plants. Articles, recipes, resources and reviews. Vickie Shufer is the Editor and she and her staff do a great job. You will
definitely want to check this one out. Sample copy: $2.00. Annual Subscription: $15.00. International: $16.50.

TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, Phone: (704) 827-0723, E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
Visit us on the Internet: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Founded by Benjamin Pressley and Robert Likas. A newsletter for anyone who is interested in what is going on in primitive technologies on a regional basis. Free classifieds to members. Presently only $10.00 per year for 4 Issues ($14.00 for countries other than U.S.), a minimum, non-profit cost to cover printing and postage. $3.00 for a sample issue. Also allows members to print biographies of themselves, wishes to contact others of like interests in their area, needs for raw materials, workshops, products for sale or trade, anything of interest to the practicing primitive may be printed, primitive skills schools and events, articles, humor and much more.

TRIBE also handles many primitive skills instructors and has a year long schedule of classes and workshops in a variety of skills and crafts for anyone interested in primitive, outdoor, aboriginal, Native American and survival skills and crafts. For a complete listing of these workshops request the FREE INFORMATION PACKET.

The annual TRIBE Gathering is a weekend of learning primitive skills with some of the best instructors in the country. Held annually every year on the second weekend of June. A hands-on, family oriented learning experience for the serious primitive technologist as well as anyone interested in primitive skills.

Wilderness Way, P.O. Box 209, Lufkin, TX 75902-0203, Phone: (409) 632-8746
Internet Home Page: http://www.pioneerpc.com/wildernessway/

Steve started Primitive Archer magazine, and now also publishes this magazine with articles on many primitive skills. He is also attempting to support it with subscriptions alone so that display ads will not dominate article space and offer free advertising in back to subscribers. Subscription Price: $18.00 (U.S., Domestic), $39.00 (Canada), $49.00 (Foreign)

CLUBS/ORGANIZATIONS:
American Knife Throwers Alliance, c/o Bobby Branton, 4976 Seewee Rd.,
Awendaw, SC 29429,
Phone: (803) 928-3624
Competitive knife throwing and newsletter. Membership: $25.

Great Lakes Primitives, George Hedgepeth, Editor, G-3450 South Linden Rd., Suite 119, Flint, MI 48507. Internet Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/ tbpriml/GLP.html
Newsletter on various primitive skills and activity focusing on activity in the Great Lakes area. $10.00 per year.

Michigan Atlatl Association, 7273 Hamburg Rd., Brighton, MI 48116,
Phone: (810) 231-2314
Internet Homepage: http://ic.net/~tbailey/Primitive/MAA.html
Recently, Lou Becker, Ron Rappaport, George Hedgepeth and Jim Gilligan organized a group called the Michigan Atlatl Association, They have a great newsletter to offer that will keep you informed about the many atlatl and primitive skills events going on in the Great Lakes area. Lou Becker had the idea of starting an atlatl association in Michigan and they already are planning a boar hunt and some patches with their great looking logo on them. They will be networking with many other groups like TRlBE. It's great to see people getting together and networking, so we can support one another. If you're interested in joining send $10.00 dues to: Lou Becker, President, 5940 Urban Dr., East China, MI 48054, Phone: (810) 765-4623.

Michigan Flintknappers, Robert Love, 8185 Kiowa Trail, Pinckney, MI 48169
A group of flintknappers and primitive technologists that meet regularly and hold annual events. They are donation supported. To maintain membership you must be actively contributing to the group in some way or by contributions, suggested, $10.00. They have a fine newsletter for all members and contributors to their group.

The National Association For Interpretation, P.O. Box 1892, Fort Collins, CO 80522, Phone: (970) 484-8283, FAX: (970) 484-8179
If you are an educator and/or prehistoric/historic interpreter, NAI
is an organization you may want to be a part of. An organization that provides a medium of communication for American Indian interpretation, environmental education, resource-heritage tourism, Africa-American experience and many others. They also provide services such as a newsletter (NAI News), Annual National Interpreter's Workshop, jobs in interpretation, a guide to suppliers of services and resources, training opportunities, membership directory and much more.

Society of Primitive Technology, P.O. Box 905, Rexburg, ID 83440, Phone Voice/FAX: (208) 359-2400

A network and magazine that is more than a magazine, the Bulletin of Primitive Technology. The most highly technical, yet understandable, magazine on various primitive technologies I have ever read. Contains articles by all the big names in these technologies. Join the Society and order their back issues while you can at $10 per issue. Free classifieds for members. ($25.00 year). Subscription price includes Primitive Technology Newsletter.

The World Atlatl Association, Inc., Leni Clubb, P.O. Box 56, Ocotillo, CA 92259
Internet Homepage: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/WAA.html

The World Atlatl Association organizes many events and keeps records of atlatl use, such as distance of spear thrown by atlatl (now over 848 feet!). They also publish a newsletter with archaeological data and modern day accounts of hunts and contests with the atlatl A great organization and resource for the modern day mammoth hunter. Annual membership dues are $10.00.

United States Boomerang Association, USBA Membership, c/o Tom Tuckerman, 55 Barrett Rd. #333, Berea, OH 44017

The USBA is a non-profit corporation dedicated to fostering all aspects of the sport of boomeranging: competition, science, art. You are invited to become a part of a growing international sport, to accept the physical and intellectual challenge of the returning boomerang. The boomerang, a stone age tool, with its complex aerodynamics remains relevant in modern times. Membership in the USBA is only $10 per year and entitles you to 4 issues of Many Happy Returns, the Informative USBA
newsletter, with up-to-date information on competitions, technology, design, personalities, resources, collectibles and more. Also, qualify for entry into tournament thrower rating system. Send checks and money orders made out to USBA.

 presently
-----------------------------
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Fri Jan 17 23:56:10 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saqlac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA28617; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 14:54:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA17199; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 14:54:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 14:52:21 EST
Received: from spot.Colorado.EDU (spot.Colorado.EDU [128.138.129.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id OAA17191 for ; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 14:54:04 -0500 (EST)
Received: from cdss19.colorado.edu (cdss15.Colorado.EDU [128.138.238.19]) by spot.Colorado.EDU (8.8.4/8.8.4/CNS-4.1p) with SMTP id MAA28545; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:58:02 -0700 (MST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:58:02 -0700 (MST)
Mike

Hi neighbor! (I live in Longmont, too)

You could try Cattail Bob Seebeck from Drake, CO for edibles. He did lot of workshops around Boulder County as well as Larmier co. and his fees are very reasonable. His address is:

    Cattail Bob
    PO Box 236
    Drake, CO 80515

Sorry, I cant find his phone number.

Tom Riggs

At 09:29 AM 1/17/97 -0700, you wrote:
> Hi,
> I have recently sbuscribed to this list and think that there is a lot of good information that is passed around. I have been serious about learning wilderness survival skills for the last three years and because of that interest, I have my scout troop working towards a week long wilderness survival high adventure this summer. We are based in Longmont which is just northeast of Boulder 15 miles.
One of the areas that we need the most help on is with wild edibles. I have Peterson's guide and a Rocky Mountain guide but am interested in still more sources of information. If anyone would be willing to do a field trip or know of someone that would like to do a field trip with either my whole troop or just myself and the other scoutmasters I would really appreciate it. Sometime in May or June would probably be best for a field trip as our trip is currently planned for the third week in July. I am also interested in any other field guides that are skewed towards identification and uses for this area.

We are planning on about 50% of our food coming from foraging. Part of the equipment list for each boy is going to be a sock full of whole grains and legumes. We hope to catch fish and also setup non-lethal snares. As leaders we will have a small supply of spices, meat, flour and honey to supplement the food. For example if the boys set up a snare or deadfall on a run and an animal triggers it (the snares will be designed so that the loop will break as it tightens and the deadfalls will have a stopper stick) then they will get some meat to throw in their evening stew. A few of the boys have caught trout by hand and all of them have at least touched a trout and made an attempt at catching one.

Also if anyone has good methods for cooking without pots, I would be interested in seeing some posts about them. I have done ashcakes, tortillas on hot rocks and roasting on a stick but have not tried any pit steaming or things like that. We will be taking one big pot along with us but I would like to do at least one day without using the pot.

Thanks.

Mike Jones
jonesm@vnet.ibm.com
We are based in Longmont which is just northeast of Boulder 15 miles.

One of the areas that we need the most help on is with wild edibles. I
have Peterson's guide and a Rocky Mountain guide but am interested in
still more sources of information. If anyone would be willing to do a
field trip or know of someone that would like to do a field trip with
either my whole troop or just myself and the other scoutmasters I would
really appreciate it. Sometime in May or June would probably be best
for a field trip as our trip is currently planned for the third week in
July. I am also interested in any other field guides that are skewed
towards identification and uses for this area.

Mike,

Bart and Robin Blankenship know their edible plants and are located
near you. Contact them at Earth Knack, Box 19693, Boulder, CO 80308.

I also recommend H.D. Harrington's Edible Native Plants of the

I've done many timed studies on edible plants. You can contact me
directly for information on my own plant book.

Another great resource in your area is the Museum of Natural
History in Denver. Make careful notes in the field about the plants you
cannot identify. Draw simple sketches and take notes as to the number of
sepals, petals, etc., then check out the dioramas at the museum there.

Finally, learn the most poisonous plants first. Be sure you can
flawlessly identify water hemlock (Cicuta spp.), hemlock (conium), and
Death Camas (Zy gunenus spp.) before you start grazing on anything. It is
too easy to make plants match a picture in a book if you are wanting to be
right. It is a similar to making the landscape fit a topographic map when
you are really miles off course. Perspective helps. Often when I identify
a plant I wait a day or a week before trying it, then ask myself if I am
still sure on the identification.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
E-mail your postal address for info on our 3 books.
Hi all,

From - Wed Jan 22 00:33:19 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA02794; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:47:53 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA23948; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:47:29 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:45:33 EST
Received: from sun.3rivers.net (sun.3rivers.net [208.136.177.1]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA23931 for
; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:47:15
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [208.136.181.38] (3s38.3rivers.net [208.136.181.38]) by
sun.3rivers.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id SAA02090 for
; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 18:50:45
-0700 (MST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Tue, 21 Jan 1997 18:50:45 -0700 (MST)
X-Sender: tomelpel@mail.3rivers.net
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: tomelpel3RIVERS.NET (Tom Elpel)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tomelpel@3RIVERS.NET
Subject: Growing Wild Rice
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Hi all,
Wild rice is not native to Montana, but I have heard of it being grown in ponds here. I have purchased wild rice at the store in the past and thrown it in ponds with no success (a rather expensive experiment!). I am wondering if the seed at the store is viable or not? Would anyone have tips to get me started? Thanks.

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Pony, Montana

From - Wed Jan 22 00:33:37 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA03616; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 22:34:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA25081; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 22:33:43 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 22:31:50 EST
Received: from ns1.maf.mobile.al.us (ns1.maf.mobile.al.us [206.202.0.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA25078 for ; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 22:33:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from LOCALNAME (ppp37 [206.202.0.37]) by ns1.maf.mobile.al.us (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id VAA12200; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 21:35:06 -0600 (CST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E5B024.3ED5@maf.mobile.al.us>
Date: Tue, 21 Jan 1997 22:13:56 -0800
From: Mike Andreasen
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mikea@MAF.MOBILE.AL.US
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.01Gold (Win16; U)
Most seeds purchased for consumption will not germinate. The seed companies have hybridized their varieties until only their farms can plant and harvest germinating seeds. If you buy seed corn and plant it, the corn you harvest will not germinate. There are some natural seed companies that may be able to help you. Try herbnet:

http://www.herbnet.com/university.html

Maybe others will know more of this.

--

RACCOON
^.....^
(==o=o==)
:::(  o  ):::

Mike Andreasen
mailto:mikeya@maf.mobile.al.us

On beautiful Mobile Bay on the Alabama Gulf Coast
Hi all,

Wild rice is not native to Montana, but I have heard of it being grown in ponds here. I have purchased wild rice at the store in the past and thrown it in ponds with no success (a rather expensive experiment!). I am wondering if the seed at the store is viable or not? Would anyone have tips to get me started? Thanks.

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Pony, Montana
Thomas,

I can't imagine why it won't work out your way. You certainly don't have temps or winters more extreme than my neck of the woods in Northern WI. One thing I know is that it is very tempermental preferring shallow slow moving streams or shallow lakes or ponds. On a lake north of me where the local Native folks are trying a re-seed project, they needed to drop the artificially high water level (kept that way by a constructed dam), to get it to grow. I have never seen rice growing in water deeper than a foot, and in fact I've never seen it in very small ponds. The rice lakes tend to be fairly good sized, shallow bodies of water. The only source I can think of for information might be the Great Lakes Indian Fish and Wildlife Service. I'll try to get you an address.

It is great stuff! "The food that grows on water" as the Indians say, and the only grass I know of that a war was fought over (the Lakota and the Ojibwa- the Ojibwa won and therefor controled the rice area of WI, MI and MN until European invasion.

Mark

From - Wed Jan 22 00:36:26 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id IAA06416; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 08:22:47 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id IAA28153; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 08:20:00 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from maildeliver0.tiac.net (maildeliver0.tiac.net [199.0.65.19]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id IAA28150 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 08:19:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mailnfs0.tiac.net (mailnfs0.tiac.net [199.0.65.17]) by maildeliver0.tiac.net (8.8.0/8.8) with ESMTP id IAA08364; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 08:23:56 -0500 (EST)
Looked into growing wild rice a few years ago in a shallow pond here. Can't put my hand on the exact information I found. What I remember is the seed must be kept wet at all times from seed harvest through shipping to planting. We won't have to go through that process. Found it growing at back of pond this year.

For information on a possible seed source try Native American Food, Nutrition, and Health link to the Lovesick Lake Ladies Cookbook on the Woodland Farm page of our website. This is an Ojibwa reservation and they speak of the wild rice grown there. If they don't sell seed they should be able to guide you to a source.

Wanita

At 10:13 PM 1/21/97, you wrote:
> Most seeds purchased for consumption will not germinate. The seed companies have hybridized their varieties until only their farms can plant and harvest germinating seeds. If you buy seed corn and plant it,
the corn you harvest will not germinate. There are some natural seed companies that may be able to help you. Try herbnet:

http://www.herbnet.com/university.html

Maybe others will know more of this.

--
    RACCOON
    ^.....^    
    (==o=o==)
    :::(  o  ):::

Mike Andreasen
to:mikea@maf.mobile.al.us

On beautiful Mobile Bay on the Alabama Gulf Coast

BEAR MOUNTAIN TRADERS
"In the Spirit of Woodland Ways"

Traditional Stone Tool Making
Natural Herbal Heating Pads

Three Sisters Messageboard

http://www.tiac.net/users/wsears/bearmountaintraders.html

From - Wed Jan 22 00:36:41 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA08078; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:11:25 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA00832; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:07:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
In a message dated 97-01-21 22:41:54 EST, you write:

> Most seeds purchased for consumption will not germinate. The seed
> companies have hybridized their varieties until only their farms can
> plant and harvest germinating seeds. If you buy seed corn and plant it,
> the corn you harvest will not germinate. There are some natural seed
> companies that may be able to help you. Try herbnet:

While the above comment has nothing to do with growing wild rice, it still
needs major correction. Hybrid seed from seed companies (or anywhere else)
can obviously be planted and grown, and you can plant and grow the seeds that
you harvest from it. You will not, however, get the same thing since hybrid
seed is the result of crossing specific strains to get certain
characteristics, and these crosses have to be done each year to get the seed.
(If you had the parents, you could potentially do this yourself, but it
would be a chore).
Open pollinated seeds, on the other hand, breed true and can be saved year to year if not accidently crossed with another variety. Open pollinated seeds are available from most seed companies.

Please check your facts before posting or take biology 101. (sorry to be so blunt, but that's how I am, nothing personal).

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655
In a message dated 97-01-21 21:16:25 EST, you write:

> I have purchased wild rice at the store in the past
> and thrown it in ponds with no success (a rather expensive experiment!).
> I
> am wondering if the seed at the store is viable or not? Would anyone have
> tips to get me started?

Tom, Being in northern Minnesota, I am surrounded by wild rice, so will offer some help. The product that you buy for eating has been processed specifically to kill the seed embryo so that the grain will store well. You could probably compare it to dry roasted peanuts.

Wild rice is an aquatic plant. It grows in water from one to three feet deep and forms dense stands resembling tall grass. It is an annual and naturally reseeds itself. Upon ripening, the grains fall into the water and a portion of them sprout the following spring. Seed can stay viable under water for up to seven years, thus ensuring a crop even after a bad year.

It can be readily seeded, but you must start with green seed that has not been allowed to dry out. This is usually only available in the fall, during harvest time. There are commercial sources. Check in the classifieds in hunting magazines. There are usually ads on the order of "Attract ducks, plant our natural wildlife foods" or something similar. There are many strains of wild rice, which differ in height, and more importantly, grain size. Here in Minnesota, each lake or river has slightly different rice. Experienced people can tell what lake it came from just by looking at it, and rice from some lakes is highly prized.

A bit of other info on wild rice. It is a highly nutritious food, having a high protein content. After it is harvested, it is usually dried. Then it is parched to further dry the grain and help loosen the hulls (this also kills the seed embryo). Finally it is threshed to remove the hulls. Much
"wild" rice is now commercially grown (mostly in California!). This uses selected strains which tend to ripen more uniformly, the real stuff ripens gradually and the ripe grains fall off of the heads into the water. We generally call the commercial stuff "paddy rice" and don't eat it. (it is better suited to making paste, etc.) If the rice you are purchasing to eat is shiny and black, don't bother. Good natural lake rice that has been properly processed is varying shades of gray to greenish gray to brownish gray. It cooks up fast and fluffy. It is one of my camping staples which cooks up really well in clay pots (like people did it for 2000 years).

If you can't find a source for viable seed rice, or don't want to risk the quality that you might get, I could probably get you some, but not until about the end of August when it ripens. There is an excellent stand of long grain rice about 500 feet from my house which I harvest occasionally. If you are interested in a source for good rice for eating, let me know and I can supply names of some local Native people who have very good rice at reasonable prices (around 5 to 6 bucks or so a pound). This is rice that has been hand harvested and properly processed. Good processing is essential, since much of the commercially available rice has not been done very well (such as the black stuff you usually see).

Hope this helps. If anyone wants more info on wild rice let me know. It is excellent food and stores almost forever. I eat it at least 3 or 4 times a week and always have 100 pounds or so in the pantry.

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655
merv martin wrote:
>
> A fire horn was used to transport a coal. That'd be a horn that was hollow,
> like a cow or buffalo horn. Filled with punk and/or moss and/or cattail
> fluff, and/or anything else you can find that would burn slowly in a low
> oxygen atmosphere. The horn was sealed, but not tightly.
> 
> Now... can anyone verify this info?

The best way I know of to carry fire is with mushrooms, the best of
which are Fomes, Ganoderma and Inonotus, otherwise known as polypores
or shelf fungi. I've carried fire for days and days using Fomes mushrooms
to hold the fire. With mushrooms, it doesn't matter if you use a
container to carry the fire, or just hold on to the mushroom with a
forked stick. It's easy. Gets a lot tougher when you don't have the
mushrooms, though, trying to maintain just the right amount of oxygen in
a bundle of various materials wrapped tightly. Ben has documented fire
bundles and knows more about them than I do, as many others I'm sure.

Have fun,

André

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1
Barry Keegan is a good friend of mine that wrote an excellent article in our TRIBE newsletter. He is a very skilled survival and wilderness living skills instructor. He wrote the following excellent article on the subject of making strings for bow and drill firemaking sets. I think you all will find it extremely informative. Also if anyone is in the NY area, check out his excellent classes. Information on contacting him follows his article.

------------------------------------------------------------------------

FAST, SURVIVAL BOW DRILL STRINGS

Why Spend Time Fiddling With Your Bow?

By Barry Keegan
©Barry Keegan 1996

WHY BOW DRILL?

The hand drill fire is the fastest means of making fire: if you must start from scratch. I found this to be true in arid environments or seasons of drought. New York State is far from being arid! After years of practicing the hand drill fire I have reached my physical limitations. I was finally able to make hand drill fires with a spindle and fire board of very dry Mockernut Hickory (our most dense native
wood) but I still couldn't make fire with a damp Mullein stalk spindle on a willow fire board.

Using a bow drill to make fire is more reliable than a hand drill. Because of this climate, damp wood may be all that I have to work with. The problem, though, is finding a good bow drill string that won't take long to make or find! This was a lot of work and lead me to rediscover what can be used.

WHY PLANTS?
I limited my self to plant fibers because in a survival situation I can't always rely on animal products to be available for cordage material. For clarityís sake I will rank these bow drill strings in categories beginning with the most year-round available cordage and ending with the most specialized and seasonal ones. Tree bark, branch bark and root bark, roots, wood, stalk fibers, leaf fibers, vines and runners.

TREE BARKS
 I will begin with tree barks because they are available when the ground is covered by even the deepest of snow. Tree barks also happen to make some of the strongest cords and most of the good ones can be peeled at any time of year. I list tree barks in two categories: Branch barks and Root barks, because each behaves differently and are often handled differently.

Branch Barks
"Branch Barks" is the category of bark that comes from any part of the tree that is not a root. However, certain parts of the tree provide far stronger bark than others. Select a shoot or branch that is somewhat straight, preferably with no branches, scars, dead spots or any such flaws that interrupt the bark fibers. The branch should be about three feet long and at least thumb thickness to obtain enough bark for a cord. Avoid very tapered branches. Do pick a healthy branch, dying trees have dying bark and work about as good as they look. Knot holes in bark strings may cause separations that tear out during use. What kind of tree you use is of major importance.

The strongest bow drill string of tree bark fiber in New York also happens to be one of the easiest to make. Mockernut and Pignut Hickory work better than other hickories and are my favorite choices!

Peeling Bark
As a general rule, May 1 through August 1 is peeling season: the time of year that bark peels easiest from trees! This is not a long season but farther south it may be longer. The Basswood tree has its own season which starts earlier and ends later than others. Basswood is the easiest to peel at any time of year. There are three methods that I know of to remove bark at any time of year. None of these methods are necessary during peeling season unless you have an unusually difficult branch.

To obtain bark out of "peeling season", you may use pounding, split-separation or if we weren't trying to make a fire, we could use the fire to carefully roast or steam the bark off.

I will begin by discussing the easiest of these methods and end with the most difficult. I will not discuss the roasting method for obvious reasons.
Peeling In Season

Cut or abrade off your branch of choice and remove any twigs or branchlets, if you have them. On the cut end try to peel the bark free, as if to begin peeling a banana. If it easily separates, and it should, examine the branch for knot holes or areas of removed twigs. You may want to use a sharp stone flake or knife to score the entire length of the branch to make two or three bark strips of even width and as little taper as possible. This is the best way if you did have branchlets on your branch because you can make the cuts align with the branch scars. Holes in your bark strips are less of a problem if they are on the edge of the strip instead of the center.

Careful peeling can produce good results without scoring if you peel both or all three sides at the same time. You need at least two feet of cord from this branch so go slowly and carefully. Watch for sticky spots! Knots can be very sticky. Pull the bark strip at a 35 degree angle or less from its branch to minimize the tapering tear. Pulling straight up (90 degrees) or back on itself (180 degrees) will drastically increase the taper or tear out. Sometimes rocking the strip back and forth as you pull on it can free up the bark at a sticky knot area. If it still sticks, consult the pounding section of this article for another way.

Once in a while I find a branch that won't peel, even in peeling season! Trees can be as different as people are, so, if this happens, find another tree or at least a healthier branch. Peel your bark right away or store the branch completely under water until peeled. Elm bark may not peel the next day after it has been cut. Hickory may not peel after being cut three days before and is noted to stick in times of draught, especially on high hills. On the contrary, Basswood may still peel a month after being cut if it sat in a damp shady place.

As a general rule, the youngest branch or shoot that grew the longest length in the shortest amount of time produces the best bark! Some trees like Aspens will give strong bark only on its one year old growth. Good luck finding long straight Aspen twigs that are big enough to provide enough bark to make a sturdy bow drill string. I had to peel 25 ordinary sized twigs to make mine!

If a branch broke off about two years ago and a bunch of sprouts grew from that wound, there may be enough bark on one of these sprouts to make six bow drill strings. Arrow and basket makers purposely cut back Willows and other plants to force them to grow more suitable shoots for materials. This is called copusing! The deer or a storm may have done some copusing for you. If you know your trees well, i.e. Willows grow by water and deer go there a lot, you may find some choice sprouts growing from a broken "buck-rubbed" branch. Beaver love to eat Aspen!

Pounding Bark "Out of Season"

If the bark doesn't peel from your branch, find a smooth stone or smooth the bark off of a dead log, this will be your anvil. Then find a sturdy branch of wrist diameter for your pounding mallet. Break it to a one foot length. Scrape your anvil and mallet smooth of any protrusions that may injure the bark that you pound.

Lay the branch across the anvil and begin pounding at the thick end of your branch. Pound till the bark separates on all sides. You need to strike hard, but not so hard that the bark gets crushed. Work down about six inches of the branch's length, pounding every inch or so on at least two of its sides. The bark does separate from the mallet side as well as the anvil side of each blow, if the strike is well centered.
Once you get the feel for how much or little pounding is needed, you can pound the whole branch and then peel it, of course, going slowly to watch for sticky spots. Pound where it sticks till it pulls free easily. If you pull the bark hard past where it sticks you may leave the strongest part of your cord stuck to the branch as the bark tears out thinner.

If it is close to peeling season and the bark sticks, you may score the bark before pounding. Little pounding is needed at this time to remove the bark. In mid winter you will have to pound the bark so hard that it will split where it wants and you will have to choose from what you are left with. At times you may have to pound so hard that the branch becomes splinters! Hickory bark is very tough and can take a lot more beating than other "cordage grade" tree barks.

Hickory and Basswood are the easiest branch barks to remove by pounding because they don't crush easily under the mallet. Gentle mallet work can help remove the bark from Pawpaw, Elm (Slippery and American), Tulip Poplar and Willow. These barks are more delicate! Try working with one to three inch diameter branches because the bark is thicker on bigger growth and can withstand more mallet work. However, pounding becomes ineffective on branches that are more than three inches thick.

You should have no problem obtaining at least one, hopefully two or three, full length bark strips from your branch. Even if the worst happens and your bark as well as your branch are in splinters, save those splinters and keep reading, you can still make a string!

Split – Separation In or Out of "Peeling Season"

Once you have learned the split-separation peeling method you may never pound bark again! Now you can peel bark (if you haven't already). This method of peeling may require a lot more practice than pounding but you will be able to peel bark from nearly all of the cordage grade trees at any time of year! Take your thumb-thick branch from a tree or bush by abrading half way through its top side. Then pull down on the branch so it splits and make the split run about two inches down the desired end of the branch. Then abrade the branch off. You need to split the whole branch in half.

Any split-shoot basketry book or article will show you how to do this, but, basically you need to pull with equal pressure and angles on both halves of the split to guide the split down the stick. If one side becomes thicker, pull it at an increased angle to steer the split back to center. This is a faster way to make two equal sized strips without using a stone flake to score the branch. A branch that is thicker than a thumb may be split in three by splitting and pulling on all three splits at once or also split into four by halving the halves.

Remove bark by snapping the split stick near the center very slowly by bending it in both hands, pressing your thumbs on the bark side and bending away so it breaks down to the bark, revealing it. Next bend the break at a 35 degree angle so the wood that clings to the bark peels away from the bark. Then, if you're a righty, hold the branch at the crack, in your left hand so it lays along your left arm down to your elbow and with your right hand, lift and pull away the wood from the bark.

You want the bark to stay flat and taut. Just as if guiding a split, you need to pull on the wood part of the branch so it does all of the bending because it is much thicker than the bark. This should look like a backwards, small letter "y". If the branch cracks or breaks off, peel
up the next section as you did the last, from where it broke off. Keep peeling it like this until all of the wood is removed from that half of the stick.

Then flip the branch around so you are holding the peeled bark in your left hand and the stick part lays along your left arm, as before, and remove the rest of the wood from the bark. With practice this can be done in two or three minutes.

You may lose some bark to splintering on its outer edges. This is less likely to happen if you split the branch into thirds or fourths because the flatter the bark lays on its branch, the easier it is to pull free. Imagine peeling masking tape from a wall compared to peeling it from a pencil which has been covered with a length-wise strip of tape and the edges wrap all of the way around.

Remove the splinters from your bark strips by pulling the bark splinter at a 180 degree angle (back over onto itself). This causes it to intentionally tear out without tearing far at all. Woods that are flexible, like Willows (especially shrubs), will allow you to split a branch in half, third or fourth down along its growth ring(s) so the wood part of the branch is about as thick as the bark is. This makes it easier to separate the bark without breaking the wood part as much. Butternut or White Walnut are too fragile to be pounded but may give strong cordage when peeled in this manner. Even in January it provides a strip whose strength compares to some Hickories. Do remove the outer bark when using Butternut, Mulberry, Osage Orange, Aspen or any bark that won't twist without cracking the outer bark. Outer bark may be removed by scraping with a stone flake or by abrading it off on a gritty rock, but the fastest method leaves you with the strongest results: split-separation! Split the outer bark from the inner bark at one end by using a sharp edge or bend the bark so the outer part snaps away from you. Then peel up a section and split it in half as you would split a branch, by pulling with equal tension and angles on both halves.

Root Bark

I will discuss how to dig, find and select roots for cordage later in this article. How many branches are on your root is not as important for root bark as it is for root wood or branch bark strings. Hickory root bark is the strongest of the root barks. It is as strong, if not stronger, than its branch bark and is easier to remove.

Hickory, Walnut, Osage Orange, Red Cedar and some of the Elms and Cherries have root bark that is much stronger than the wood part of their roots. With Mulberry, Black Locust, Willow, American Elm and Hemlock, their root barks and root-wood fibers can be equally as strong. I have found some variations of strength within species and environments.

With the exception of Hickory, the root barks listed above share a unique characteristic unlike any other local plant fiber cordages: elasticity! A root bark bow drill string can stretch up to two inches when pulled tight. Because of its elasticity bow drill strings of root bark do not need to be as thick as those of branch bark. A thumb-thick root is overkill and a pinky-thick root is ideal. For an example of extreme strength I made a fire with a Hemlock tree's root bark string, taken from a root which was half as thick as a pencil. The string itself was as wide as a strand of spaghetti.

To remove root bark, first cut your root and remove its smaller branches. Hang the root over a branch and hold it by both ends as if you were using it to saw the branch. A branch with toothy bark is ideal but
do remove any sharp protrusions that may cut the root or its bark. Buff through the root bark on one side by pulling the root in a back and forth sawing motion. As soon as you've exposed the wood core down the whole root's length, pry the inner root gently out of its bark sheath. Peel the bark from the root at the same 35 degree angle that you would to remove tree bark.

Root bark peels easiest in bark peeling season. It peels almost as easily when out of season! You do not need to pound roots to remove their bark. Split-separation does work on roots but it's not necessary. Walnut is one of the few root barks that needs to be separated from its brittle outer bark. Most of the root barks listed here may be used "as is" for bow drill strings. Root bark is a better choice than branch bark when it's available.

------------------------------------------------------------------------

Barry Keegan and his partner Anthony Pollari operate a school in Elmsford, NY called PATHWAYS that teaches a variety of primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. If you wish to contact Barry or would like a brochure of classes they have to offer, write or call: Barry Keegan, 6 Heather Lane, Elmsford, NY 100523, Phone: (914) 592-8961.

------------------------------------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

From - Sun Jan 12 00:26:23 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA12320; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 11:28:33 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA16018; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 11:27:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 11:25:57 EST
Received: from cybersys.mercy.org (cybersys.mercy.org [205.225.34.178]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA16014 for
Ok, ok. I'll let the Tom Brown thing drop.

Having had no instruction but having read a description of fire making with a bow drill, I decided to try it. Pine (I had read) was not a good choice, but it was handy so I used it. I used maple for the hand piece. To my astonishment, I had a fire going in 5 minutes (after spending 1 1/2 hr. making the thing). I decided I had an uncanny natural ability, and gathered the neighbor kids to demonstrate my skills. With the same apparatus, I went to work, and after 15 minutes was soaked with sweat, and had only smoke and light brown crumbs. The kids got bored and drifted away one-by-one shaking their heads.

I think the end of the spindle and the fire board became fire hardened in the process and prevented a coal from forming. The thing screamed something awful too while it was spinning. I'm going to try other woods, but I wonder if anyone else has had similar problems.

Mark D Ball
mball@mercy.org
In a message dated 97-01-12 15:12:51 EST, Ron Hood wrote:

>Other good bearings are antler, bone ...<

A buddy of mine brought a bunch of rocks back from the beach that had once housed bi-valves that had dug perfect holes to fit the end of a bow drill. They look like they were drilled! Boy do they work great. They fit into my hand and add a lot of heft and stability and best of all need no lubricant at all. Next time you are near a tidal pool, check it out.

Kevin
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853163066.018
From: diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Message-ID: <2.2.32.19970112200814.006c3060@pop3.av.qnet.com>
X-Sender: diogenes@pop3.av.qnet.com (Unverified)
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Pro Version 2.2 (32)
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 12:08:14 -0800
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mball@MERCY.ORG
Subject: Re: Bow drills
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Mark,

Good work with the firebow! Getting a fire started the first time is often the biggest challenge...... failing on the second try is the master bummer and from our experience, quite common.

There are a lot of possible reasons for.....

> The thing screamed
>something awful too while it was spinning. I'm going to try other woods,
>but I wonder if anyone else has had similar problems.

The most probable in my opinion is that the drill and the fire board were binding. We suggest that after each attempt at starting the fire, you abrade or carve facets into the tip of the drill. At the same time sharpen the bearing end of the drill to reduce friction in your hand bearing. We lubricate the bearing end of the drill with oil from around the nose area (just rub the tip into the crease around your nose) or the hair. My favorite is ear wax harvested for the purpose of lubricating the drill. Do not use water, water will cause the drill to expand and bind.

As a bearing, for folks learning the technique, a well taped (use duct tape and LOTs of it, on the outside of the glass, natch) shot glass is great. The drill spins with very little effort. The glass could break and that is why it is taped. My favorite bearing is a flattish, pecked hole, stream stone. I've been using it for years. Other good bearings are antler, bone (vertebrae work nicely) and if you have access to it, Manzanita works fairly well. There are lots of other things that work but reducing friction in the bearing is of great importance.

The drill can be made of many woods. We recommend "Squaring" the drill to make flat areas that will engage the cord like a gear. The cord works best if it is "double twisted" as in cordage construction. This results in a "Bumpy" cord that will engage the flat areas and high points of the drill. The drill will spin even under heavy pressure. A double twisted cord will last much longer, this is particularly true if you use parachute cord or shoe laces.

At the fire board end of the apparatus, if your drill penetrates too deeply into the board, start a new hole or reduce the diameter of the drill to eliminate binding between the drill and board.
After teaching the technique to several thousand folks, I've noticed that the rhythm of the arm is one of the most important learned skills. The drill should be fairly stationary when you move the bow. Take long smooth strokes with the bow so you use as much of the cord as possible with each stroke.

When you are practicing the skill, try using four zero (0000) steel wool to catch your spark. When you get the spark you can blow it into flame easily.

There's much more to add and there are lots of experienced folks here to add it.

Good luck and happy strokin'

Ron Hood

Dr. Ron Hood
P.O. Box 383
Lake Hughes, CA, 93532
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"
Mark D. Ball wrote:

> with a bow drill, I decided to try it. Pine (I had read) was not a
> good choice, but it was handy so I used it. I used maple for the hand
> piece. To my astonishment, I had a fire going in 5 minutes

Mark, I also have gotten fire with pine, although, what I used was punky
lodgpole and not the white or red that grows heavily in my area. The
pitch content was problematic as it caused several problems:

- glazing (accounting for the screeching sound you encountered)
- continuous binding that could not be easily eliviated by
  methods I normally use
- a powder that tended to clump up necessitating a redesign of
  the notch.

While the experience taught me that I could indeed use pine in a pinch,
given a choice I would use much harder woods like birch or maple before
I would try pine in an emergency.

> I'm going to try other woods,

I would recommend it. Pine is not a good wood to learn on. I'm not sure
where you live but try alder, cottonwood, willow or Eastern White Cedar
first and get good with those before tackling the rougher stuff.

Mark Zanoni

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sun Jan 12 20:49:46 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA15224; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 20:21:13 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA19377; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 20:20:43 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 20:18:50 EST
Received: from emout01.mail.aol.com (emout01.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.92]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA19370 for
; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 20:20:30
-0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout01.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0)
  id UAA04796 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Sun, 12 Jan
1997 20:24:37 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853163066.071
From: Ggoltz@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Ggoltz@AOL.COM
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 20:24:37 -0500 (EST)
In a message dated 97-01-12 15:12:51 EST, Ron Hood wrote:

> Other good bearings are antler, bone
> (vertebrae work nicely) and if you have access to it, Manzanita works fairly
> well. There are lots of other things that work but reducing friction in the
> bearing is of great importance.

My favorite is the astragalus bone (from the rear ankle, or hock) of a deer. It fits nicely in the hand, has a good socket, and comes with its own grease (if you don't over-clean it).

Grant Goltz

---

From - Sun Jan 12 20:50:47 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA16972; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 00:44:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA21223; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 00:43:53 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 00:41:22 EST
Received: from priv-sys05-le0.agt.net (clgrps05.agt.net [198.161.156.16]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AAA21194 for ; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 00:43:01
-0500 (EST)
Received: from Bad.EHLO.Input ([204.209.203.214]) by mail.telusplanet.net with ESMTP id <460986-22443>; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 22:47:03 -0700
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853163066.110
From: "Kelly Harlton"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, kharlton@AGT.NET
To:
Subject: Re: Bow drills
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 22:07:16 -0700
X-MSMail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1155
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Message-ID: <97Jan12.224703-0700_mst.460986-22443+14180@mail.telusplanet.net>
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
Grant Goltz wrote;

> My favorite is the astragalus bone (from the rear ankle, or hock) of a deer.
> It fits nicely in the hand, has a good socket, and comes with its own grease
> (if you don't over-clean it).

Sound great! I'm going to keep my eyes peeled for a deer carcass! (might give me the excuse to 'brave' some maggots at the same time)

What I'm using for "a quick" socket

> From Mor Kochanski's book he suggests the thick bark from Balsam Poplar (I believe down east they call them "Bamagillian" (sp?) or something).

Anyway that's just about all I use (I know bad habit, incase there is none around when I find myself in a "situation") But it's readily available, and you can fabricate a socket in 30 seconds! The secret is in the woods (barks) softness. It has the consistency of balsa wood and when your spindle starts to "drill" the resulting powder is like graphite! Granted it wears out fast, but one hand size chunk can make several fires, and supposedly this same dry bark thinly shaved into "wool" will actually suffice as tinder for the ember (I will try this) Is anyone else out there using this also?

Kelly Harlton
Mark D. Ball wrote:

> Ok, ok. I'll let the Tom Brown thing drop.
> Having had no instruction but having read a description of fire making
> with a bow drill, I decided to try it. Pine (I had read) was not a good
> choice, but it was handy so I used it. I used maple for the hand piece.
> To my astonishment, I had a fire going in 5 minutes (after spending 1 1/2
> hr. making the thing). I decided I had an uncanny natural ability, and
> gathered the neighbor kids to demonstrate my skills. With the same
> apparatus, I went to work, and after 15 minutes was soaked with sweat, and
> had only smoke and light brown crumbs. The kids got bored and drifted away
> one-by-one shaking their heads.
>
> I think the end of the spindle and the fire board became fire hardened in
> the process and prevented a coal from forming. The thing screamed
> something awful too while it was spinning. I'm going to try other woods,
> but I wonder if anyone else has had similar problems.
>
> Mark D Ball
> mball@mercy.org

I think you've run into the "didn't hold your mouth right" problem. This
seems to be not an uncommon experience. Keep practicing and it will
become second nature.

My favorite woods are aspen or cottonwood for a base board and yucca
flower stalk, aspen or cottonwood (in that order) for a spindle.
Years ago I found a "knuckle" bone from a old dead cow that has proved to
be a great hand socket. It has a hole in one side that fits the size of
spindles that I use (1/2" to 5/8") very well.

I find that pine has to much pitch in it. It will work, but boy, do you
have to work.

There have been some excellent articles on friction fires (bow drill &
hand drill) in the Bulletin of Primitive Technology that is published by
the Society of Primitive Technology (SPT). Cost is $25 yr for two
issues. $25 may seem like a lot, but the info on all aspects of the
subject are more than worth it. Contact the SPT at P.O. Box 905, Rexburg,
ID 83440. phone is 208-359-2400.

I apologise for the commercial, but I think you'll find a gold mine of
ideas.

Keep on makin' smoke!  FP
Whether fire by friction is by bowdrill, handdrill, fire saw or fire thong, the theoretical principle of what makes this work is very useful to know. I will try to put words on something that anyone who has practised these skills for a long time tends to know by "feeling".

When wood is rubbed against wood, one of the materials is harder than the other. Even when the wood for fireboard and spindle are of the same wood, the spindle is harder than the fireboard in the sense that the fibers are cross grain rather than with the grain. Thus, basic theoretical principle #1, the harder wood grinds wood dust from the softer wood. Of course, some wood is ground from the harder of the two wood pieces too, but much more from the softer of the two, in this case the fireboard. Principle #2, is that when wood grinds hard enough, wood dust is created in the form of sawdust. Principle #3, when wood grinds hard enough and/or fast enough, heat is generated and the sawdust starts smoking and charring.

Now, the following is very important. Usually, sawdust is light, and when you rub wood, the sawdust moves away from the friction area and
thus cools off, and new wood is rubbed which creates new sawdust which is cooler. This means that theoretically, you can do this forever and never obtain a coal or a fire.

Principle #4, then, is that to obtain a coal, YOU MUST RUB WOOD OVER AND OVER ON THE SAME SAWDUST. This is why you cut a notch in the fireboard, for instance. The hot sawdust gets wedged in the notch, preventing it from moving away from the friction area, and you are then rubbing over and over on the same sawdust and a coal will get created at that exact spot.

The coal then spreads to the remaining sawdust, making it grow, creating sufficient heat to flame tinder.

Principle #5, weight. Usually it is not sufficient to have the burnt sawdust wedged in between a crack. There is also a weight consideration. The pile of sawdust must be big enough and therefore heavy enough to prevent the newly formed sawdust from moving it and cooling it off.

The 6th principle deals with the fact that for fire to occur, there must be sufficient combustible material. If there is not enough wood sawdust around the forming coal, it will not gather the momentum necessary to grow to usable size. Just like a fire can't be built with a match and a single stick, a coal cannot form if there isn't enough burnt sawdust around it.

Finally, 7th principle, a fire needs air to complete the heat-combustible material-oxygen trio necessary for ignition. This is much less important in practice because the small wood sawdust balls under a microscope reveal plenty of air space between them.

Now we can look at practical questions. Can a bowdrill fire be made without a notch? Yes, it makes sense now, doesn't it? Just keep drilling long enough and hard enough so that the burnt wood sawdust pile around the friction area gets big and heavy enough not to move as you keep drilling. I have obtained up to 5 coals at once all around the drilling area this way.

What about the fire saw. Well, as the saw traverses the bamboo half round board, burnt wood dust accumulates underneath and you are rubbing back and forth on the same pile of wood dust which can't move because it's stuck underneath the board! As in bow drill and hand drill, it is now obvious (or should be) that filling the notch with tinder will prevent a coal from forming...

Fire thong works on exactly the same principle. The thong goes underneath a piece of wood which is split open about 1/4 inch, and burnt wood sawdust accumulates above the thong and gets wedged in that split and can't move. Once the crack is full, the thong rubs back and forth against the same wood powder and the coal ignites there.

The fireplow technique is harder to understand and doesn't work every time because it relies on brute strength to generate sufficient heat in the pile of wood dust to ignite a coal at a random spot in the pile. Since this technique cannot be duplicated precisely the same way every time, it is hard to come to a conclusion about what is happening
but I think it is this. As the pile of wood dust at the bottom of the plow gets heavy enough and cannot move, the heat transfer from the friction area ignites a coal on the bottom edge of the pile, which usually manifests itself as a coal on top of the pile when it is accidentally hit by the grinding stick. Note that I have tried making artificial fireplows by tying sticks to my jigsaw blade and was not able to produce fire! The principles are not respected accurately in this technique, and probably a random crack between the dust pile and the plow board must permit the formation of the coal. Scratch me!

As for the new "fire hole" technique, there must be a crack in one of the pieces of wood in which burnt wood dust can accumulate. It will most probably look like an upside down fire saw. Can't get away from the principles if it is to work. Looking forward to Ben's post on this.

Hope this helps...

André le pyromane

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

From - Fri Jan 10 05:47:40 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA00914; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 17:39:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA04425; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 17:38:48 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 17:43:29 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id RAA04422 for ; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 17:38:36 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.58 (srv1s7.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.58]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id RAA01314 for ; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 17:41:53 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D5D72F.6EFB@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Fri, 10 Jan 1997 05:44:15 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au Gré de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: [Fwd: Bow drill fire- types of woods]
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau  
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Qu=E9bec  
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec), Canada G7H 2B1

I live in near the Seattle area and as you have probably heard it rains allot here. Finding dry wood in the wilderness can be some what of a chore at times. I have found that gathering different types of wood require different techniques. Some of the woods listed are good in an immediate
survival situation others require preparation and aging. As you probably already know the native inhabitants use to spend the summer months curing and building their fire making tools. So not all of the wood types I use to make my fire board and spindles out of can be utilized in an emergency survival situation. The following two list of techniques I use to gather my wood during the wet season which around here is about nine months a year.

Requires Aging:

Birch and Willow:
Birch and Willow make good bow-drill materials but I live high up in the mountains and these trees generally grow in the lower wetlands and around permanent water sources. They are very rare where I live but I can find them about 30 kilometers away from me. I have only used them with a single fire board and spindle set and got good results from them. But I have not used them enough to gain any expertise in there use. Some other people on the Trackers alias have used these wood types quite often and could probably provide more information about them. I happen to be very fond of the Paper Birch because its flaking bark is the best natural fire starter I have ever found. When I come across one of these trees I always collect the outer bark for future use.

Cedar, White and Red:
I have never found any cedar that I could just pick up and use. Cedar tends to be either rotten or has absorbed lots of water so I have always had to cure this wood before I use it. I like Cedar because for me it has always proved to make good fire boards. In my experience Cedar fire boards can be used with various other spindle wood types with good results. Somebody once told me not to mix fire board and spindle wood types. I did not listen to them and tried it out for myself. I have had many successes and many failures, the key is to figure out which combinations work well together.

A Cedar fire board will work with almost any other spindle wood type. This is where the value of this wood type comes in, you cannot always be guaranteed to have the same wood types for your fire board and spindle.

Gather and Use:

Alder:
Alder could be in either category but around here during late fall we get high winds that help me in the wood gathering process. Alder trees around here tend to split down the trunk or large branches brake off during the high winds. Sometimes these branches become large snags and can be collected during the summer months a year or two later when the wood has sufficiently cured. Gathering these snags require some climbing and as yo
probably know climbing a mature Alder is not that easy. This is where I get all of my Alder from. The pieces that hit the ground get collected cut up and cured for a year and used for practice pieces. I found second growth forest's about thirty to fifty years old are good places for gathering Alder.

Douglas Fir and Grand Fir:
Finding Douglas Fir and Grand Fir are the some of the easier dry wood types to find. Douglas Fir and Grand Fir are very abundant around here and due to the natural aging of the tree the lower branches die and become very dry inside after a year or two, assuming the bark has remained on the branch. To retrieve the branches you can climb the trunk and break them off. The way I prefer is to take a large throwing stick one with sufficient mass, and throw them at the old dead branches until they break off. These two types of wood make good spindles, but they don't last very long due to the loose grain of the wood. This loose grain makes them great for generating generous amounts of coal dust with minimal effort.

Hemlock:
Finding Hemlock in my area is also quite easy, but this wood is very unusual and requires lots of practice to use as bow-drill material. The best result I have had gathering Hemlock is to collect fallen branches on rocky hillsides. This keeps the wood off the wet ground and allows it to dry out quicker. This wood makes very long lasting spindles due to the dense grain. Carving a straight branch into a spindle is quite a chore due to the unusual characteristics of this wood. I have at many times picked up a Hemlock branch which has been laying on the forest floor for at least a year, just shave the bark off carve the ends and use it right then and there as a spindle. Using both spindle and fire board made out of Hemlock is futile. You will twist your arm off and get nothing but brown dust. I only recommend using this wood as a spindle and always use a softer wood such as Cedar or Douglas Fir for your fire board.

Do you have any information about using Mountain Ash for bow-drill materials. These trees can be found every so often where I live. I have never tried them due to my belief in only using dead wood in non-survival situations. I personally prize these trees due to their berries which tend to stay on the tree throughout the winter providing a nice trail side snack. Although they don't taste very good in the summer after the first freeze of winter they tend to be transformed into a fairly palatable food source.

I have sent the following GIF and JPG image file attachments so you can make sense of the notch types.

Notch 1: Mediocre
Notch 2: Fair
Notch 3: Good
Notch 4: Exceptional

All Good Medicine,
Marc Besse
mbesse@accessone.com

------=_NextPart_000_01BBFEF5.4A58D940
Content-Type: application/octet-stream; name="notch.gif"
Content-Description: notch (GIF Image)
Content-Disposition: attachment; filename="notch.gif"
Content-Transfer-Encoding: base64
R0lGODlhPwFjAPcAAAAAAIAAAACAAICAAAAAgIAAgACAgMDAwICAgP8AAAD/AP//AAAA//8A/wD//////wAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAACwAAAAAPwFjAAAI/gABCBxIsKBBgw8SKlzIsKHDhxAJhpwcmKlFxgdUtx4MKHNIbxdIlIu4EIkxwPqFzJsqVLlgBKypz5MDML
mzFp6rO86bPlj13euz5s6jR1UFpEj3KFOfSpi+TCP2a8G1RqVSFWoWqEmtWhlu5QvWawMazYowLP
Rv2a1S0t1lrAox701k1cnQ2x2r3Mr1lfpHR17u0bWnfroUVJd4M2Dboj34P500M8uxkymAfX566
WLpQ5a708VCVU5mzKJHF07N+HRR1ncjSyata2RtiaAPu44+/u+hB3VYyv2m2fs49zI6Ybn909
xcpe/DiEPLn61Wj6wc7c/Ljc7l7yn/1cHdp66dFvnmwTPX5SU9+XP2afjnw++q+c2LZffmjy5Y/ffLz
xRfxEgLi5t5+v3Y138FUmVf9g8pcGFmpCkqXYIVI+dfDfblNWJqE+GFe4Yc1eqahh7x1SJuGa3FW
I17tvSjebBzc7q5rKLIXyxowlzmbSYkJ9JeMA754n4Eyi6ihkbdota2R0RrpJ2E06SdgdcVU6CR2R
O1W515VS+vijJQRyF+FzNuh5ZmZFjjrkaik1K1aCY11G5t1kbnbnCfGGGA1cY0UBHJhjqk4aG
KKeAbVYoEAfKQ2gkpAo1q5SuWhFDrg4KHK7thdpntw02liEolK6J5YzucoAJrQ2WqG/q0+lysn8Ja
qqwg3Vqre5W0Z6aEuyHPK4a0irpbscM6gmuwG10kba+oJoZqXN65uxy47rbot1sUtqRMySqm
4wabaL83dprncy6S6wz46BXLrW5fthvu/eO55s+yI12L7co/cvgtwDxy+3AB1KVsLDhkgkYfOJ
q5m9nth788knWv+QswveXXF4HFr7s1LwzFuzh7zzc/HBEmKMcys9n9xkV/mipW7j6YwclKvSazg
ygwHCLLCwH99Ms1t36wtzbz+GzvTIoeFcs7ODU10TvaHLBN8PK71G16xV1bFZLXtBZWS399+de+
co12dXZHTapuy8tmtmx8o132/sjP3YxvDXXhxedbc9cnep94521zliysude/WMGrv6sEqSL5z4miX
7pXjV8+uuWKMN+zcgzsL1r0n+8n70Womucy8u36snjXwptGeunfPR36pcbjf/tagMfO+JFR962
zk1lXrDTtrbsOH021Qw9YuUj1irz0MVVfWxCzz2U4sxPH5T2EoePejYXw/801lz73Tsvu/fnF
G/+7+OwIF/55JcvXPdG5P2RNM/khWwXzbD3WF1OD+TS967PLZ6jXWmuSxFMXcB0HOghdmow
Kh7MAd2e5H4fHRsug5uHCWhudOHepcBFTKwhi+80f7mp82+/Wk+/jDEYQDQmIcAg/GPCq
CiMUSEi1U8SoTGISsdfe6USxiEySmvqIgsUpa6LS/Ri2sDoQyhuCs8BwtEJxhGZmpRi5U
YhtwmWMgygyuINIqujh+Yxj3KYdxzcgMf79JHEtpjPAHJ14SCug/MhJ8asTljzE3X1b8PwG7Fw
M9kky9wS5k52SjQg16chRP6upzdyDWyZO3r5WdqUsrwCwykycjQfTectN2nnKXHr1FRyU
TAizsP4LCLt2Y+6jMYOWY17BM2jGLUX8r17NdvGNIen2S50G5IVP577rnovGLJOme6Cju5i687K
/Tjz5HnrN85u5z/K0571/qglbD0TYyF0vObj7wxcO97dcfvyNcucwZUHfadb2tSh6+yQQB+0eQ/
06KfcNJCzFntALwotBk5NGafVN/VjZsllKIpvmk2sop1KMrNeTqFGopArk0pdjE2i1r+kgGlaun
5gQjkgqyangC9KETb6mF5d9jUnF5lqefSP10JRVwpoTtwNBQXsVYIKOFskuPqiFYQusWQkvQa5
YDBbdlZGAe9Ub4agMVi0B1AvLx27upd7QsMKULH11gq1+1Bdja6nWw2Cgys1I12L6E1aPmyV
KLCZyU6knjzCCTnitoEoavuoAUKONLz2KflTan1qV8tatXrwX0d223bYGTx2JTsoo17UFY
u9WvS6zY5nQwrXEF1N+SNJLGP5e5iw7r5YI20MuV0Iwnbora5JmQtaFUL3eCpDYDxfqFso
7WYotcX1rzm1z2Cg85eWeh+H73BRqylDpamxv2z0dd3o9vZ9rnnp+8yG7GCA/TXkfFL4P5c
dsAXlxeEC8zeCdcYPTc0dggjlyu7wWdkjzei8s3cSWM7LS9H7xiEyl4x4BiGsch622LGhpjD
From - Sat Jan 18 22:16:34 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id JAA09749; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 09:31:40 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA28483; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 09:29:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 09:27:46 EST
Received: from chicl.saglac.qc.ca (chicl.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id JAA28480 for
; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 09:29:28
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.43 (ppp043.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.43])
by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id JAA18863 for
; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 09:32:56
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E1421D.475@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Sat, 18 Jan 1997 21:35:25 +0000
X-UIDL: 853685063.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: [Fwd: Re: Bow drill fires]
Content-Disposition: inline
Content-Type: message/rfc822
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Received: from pulm1.accessone.com (root@pulm1.accessone.com [198.68.191.10]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id BAA08623 for ; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 01:48:33 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mbesse.accessone.com (annex5-31.accessone.com) by pulm1.accessone.com (4.1/SMI-4.1)
 id AA28615; Sat, 18 Jan 97 22:53:12 PST
Message-ID: <9701190653.AA28615@pulm1.accessone.com>
X-UIDL: 853680812.013

From Dr AF Bourbeau

Subject: [Fwd: Re: Bow drill fires]  

Received: from pulm1.accessone.com (root@pulm1.accessone.com [198.68.191.10]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id BAA08623 for ; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 01:48:33 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mbesse.accessone.com (annex5-31.accessone.com) by pulm1.accessone.com (4.1/SMI-4.1)
 id AA28615; Sat, 18 Jan 97 22:53:12 PST
Message-ID: <9701190653.AA28615@pulm1.accessone.com>
X-UIDL: 853680812.013

From Dr AF Bourbeau

Subject: [Fwd: Re: Bow drill fires]  

Received: from pulm1.accessone.com (root@pulm1.accessone.com [198.68.191.10]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id BAA08623 for ; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 01:48:33 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mbesse.accessone.com (annex5-31.accessone.com) by pulm1.accessone.com (4.1/SMI-4.1)
 id AA28615; Sat, 18 Jan 97 22:53:12 PST
Message-ID: <9701190653.AA28615@pulm1.accessone.com>
X-UIDL: 853680812.013

From Dr AF Bourbeau

Subject: [Fwd: Re: Bow drill fires]  

Received: from pulm1.accessone.com (root@pulm1.accessone.com [198.68.191.10]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id BAA08623 for ; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 01:48:33 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mbesse.accessone.com (annex5-31.accessone.com) by pulm1.accessone.com (4.1/SMI-4.1)
 id AA28615; Sat, 18 Jan 97 22:53:12 PST
Message-ID: <9701190653.AA28615@pulm1.accessone.com>
X-UIDL: 853680812.013

From Dr AF Bourbeau

Subject: [Fwd: Re: Bow drill fires]  

Received: from pulm1.accessone.com (root@pulm1.accessone.com [198.68.191.10]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id BAA08623 for ; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 01:48:33 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mbesse.accessone.com (annex5-31.accessone.com) by pulm1.accessone.com (4.1/SMI-4.1)
 id AA28615; Sat, 18 Jan 97 22:53:12 PST
Message-ID: <9701190653.AA28615@pulm1.accessone.com>
X-UIDL: 853680812.013
André,
Sorry I have not written back promptly I have distracted for the last week.
I tried getting signed-up on the Primitive-Skills-Group from your webpage but I have never received any mail yet. Well your where asking what my preference of wood types for immediate survival use. First I must add that preferences are based on my geographic location in the Pacific North West and are particular to the amount of moisture this area receives. The main reason I choose these types of wood they can be readily found already curved by nature.

1. Douglas Fir
I like Douglas Fir the most because I can always find dry dead branches on the trees. The wood is soft enough to carve or split quickly in a need it now survival situation. I can always find this wood type in my area no matter where I go.

2. Alder
I like Alder a little better than Douglas Fir for making a fire but it comes in second due to the difficulties finding dry non-green materials during the wet season.

3. Grand Fir
Grand Fir can have allot of pitch in it at times. This can be a major problem collecting the right piece of wood for your set. It is not one of my favorites but I have used it before.

4. Hemlock
Hemlock I use but would not recommend unless it is all you have to use. The way the hemlock grows around here the rings are usually too dense inside the branches to make good spindles out of. This wood type requires a well practiced technique to use this type wood. Hemlock is not very suitable for fireboards.
Cedar is my hands down favorite for making fireboards but I have never found any pieces I could collect and use right on the spot. Cedar for me at least has always required curing and that won't help you out in a survival situation. The problem with making a list like this is there is no one perfect material. It always depends on the geographic location, weather patterns. I have found the same species of trees growing in different parts of the continent have totally different growth patterns and characteristics. This makes it hard to nail wood types down into a science for what would work the best. There is also the issue of an individuals skill and technique using the bow-drill. I have seen people the can start a fire with Oak. I don't imagine they would be able to do it with natural cordage strung to their bow.

All Good Medicine,
Marc Besse
mbesse@accessone.com
This post is from Mark Besse who has now joined our group (WELCOME MARK!), thought some of you might like it—André

Well due to some requests I will try to explain the different notch types with words. I don't know if I can explain the different notch types with the same impact that a picture would, but I will try.

Notch 1: The notch type is a 1/8 pie V-wedge. This is the basic notch type taught in Tom's Standard Class.

Notch 2: The notch type is a 1/6 pie V-wedge. This is basic notch just widened a little bit.

Notch 3: The notch type is a 1/6 pie V-wedge. This one differs from the previous two due to the placement of the spindle groove. The spindle groove is placed further from the edge of the fire board. This allows more dust to collect in the notch without any spill over, thus generating a bigger coal.

Notch 4: The notch type is a 1/6 pie lobed U-wedge. This shares it's spindle groove placement with notch #3. The only way I can describe this notch is it really looks like the shape of a "U". You start creating this notch by creating the standard V-wedge. Then you start straightening the sides and rounding the bottom off. Like the V-wedge don't cut all the way to the center point of the spindle groove. That's it!!!

The reason I believe this notch works better are listed below.

1. The notch has sufficiently more surface area than the V-wedge.
2. The notch allows more dust to collect closest to the source friction.
3. The notch allows more oxygen to feed the dust during coal generation.
4. The natural curve at the base of the notch is less traumatic on the new born coal when removing the fireboard.

They say that "Necessity is the Mother of all Invention", so here is a little story. I live in Washington state and during the wet months which is pretty much all of the time finding good tinder around here is pretty
dammed difficult at times. So I experimented with the idea of starting
fires without a tinder. I had been saving extra coal dust after each
fire and I decided to use it somehow. I found once you generate a coal
and you keep adding new dust to it slowly, you can grow a coal into the
size of a golfball. By adding new kindling to this huge coal you can
easily start a fire without a tinder. This notch configuration came from
my desire to make really big coals.

Here are some embedded image files for those who's e-mail can deal with
it.

All Good Medicine,
Marc Besse
mbesse@accessone.com

From - Wed Jan 22 00:35:04 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA04537; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:13:41 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA26532; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:13:06 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:10:30 EST
Received: from arthur.INS.CWRU.Edu (arthur.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.215]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA26519 for
; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:12:13
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [129.22.220.95] (dialin095.REMOTE.CWRU.Edu [129.22.220.95]) by
arthur.INS.CWRU.Edu with ESMTP (8.7.6+cwru/CWRU-3.0) id BAA16561;
Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:16:16 -0500 (EST) (from rlc6@po.cwru.edu)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: rlc6@pop.cwru.edu
Message-ID:
In-Reply-To: <32E43CDD.3733@saglac.qc.ca>
References:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:06:58 -0400
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
From: Rob Chatburn
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU
Subject: Re: Hand Drill
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id BAA04537
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="iso-8859-1"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
André wrote:

> Questions:

> 4. Since the drill is so much smaller in diameter, do you cut the notch any differently so there is as much air access and as much room for the coal to grow?

I have found that notch geometry is critical. I have developed a system that automatically scales the notch to the board and drill (Don't laugh, I have an engineering background and the method seems overly technical. But once you try it, it works itself.) All marking can be done with your knife. For simplicity, let's assume the fireboard is rectangular with rather short ends and rather long sides, but the technique works with other shapes.

1. I like to use a drill that is approximately the diameter of my little finger and a board the thickness equal to the width of the nail of my little finger.

2. Start by placing the prepared drill end at the edge of the fireboard somewhere along its length. Place a mark on the other side of the drill so that the mark is one drill diameter from the side edge. This distance will probably be shorter than from the mark to the other edge of the board. All subsequent marks and notch cuts will be made in this shorter area.

Note: when using mullen or teasel it is a good idea to scrape the crusty outer skin off the end that contacts the board.

3. Press the drill into the board to make a circular imprint (the fireboard wood should be soft enough to indent when pressed with your fingernail, I like willow or basswood). Use your knife to dig a shallow disk shaped impression.

4. Place the drill in the impression and twirl to burn in a ring shaped hole no more than 1/8 inch deep. This assumes you have a hollow type drill material, but I have used the technique successfully with a solid willow hand drill.

5. With your knife, scribe a line all the way around the board, tangent to the burn ring and parallel to the short ends of the board. This is line 1. (Later, once you see how this all works, you will only have to go half way around)

6. Scribe another line the same way on the other side of the ring. You now have two parallel lines on each side of the ring. This is line 2.

7. Scribe a third line around the board, passing through the center of the ring. You now have three parallel lines. This is line 3.

8. Use your knife blade to measure the distance from the nearest side edge of the board to the center of the ring. Turn the board over and place a mark this distance from the same edge on the bottom of the board. This mark is now under the center of the ring on the other side, and intersects the middle scribed line. Let's call this point A.

9. Scribe a line from point A to the intersection of line 1 and the bottom edge of the board. This intersection is point B.

10. Scribe a line from point B, up the thickness of the board to the top of the board and on to the intersection of line 3 and the nearest edge of the ring. This intersection is point C. The line should be the shortest distance from point B to point C. If you look from the edge of the board toward the ring, the line will look diagonal about 45 degrees as it runs from B to C.

11. Scribe a line from point A to the intersection of line 2 and the bottom edge of the board. This is point D.

12. Scribe a line from point D, up the thickness of the board to the top of
the board and on to point C. If you look at the board from the edge, you will see that you have now scribed a diamond shaped figure wrapping from the bottom to the top of the board. The first time it may help you to visualize this by coloring in the diamond with a pencil.

13. With your knife, chop out a small wedge of wood from the bottom edge of the board into the center of the diamond (just two straight v-cuts). Make the wedge bigger until it expands to the form of the diamond. You will now have a notch that flares down and out as described in some books but scaled precisely for your materials. Make the notch extend into the burn ring at point C until you hit the inner, unburned diameter of the ring.

Now the notch is complete and you can insert the drill and try for the coal. As the drill burns into the board, an ever widening hole forms into the notched out area. The geometry of the notch compacts the dust and reflects the heat toward the center of the dust pile.

This explanation will seem hopelessly complicated unless you do it as you read. Even then it may be confusing without a drawing. Let me know. I have been very successful teaching others to do it by example but this is my first attempt at a description. I would like to hear your comments.

Rob Chatburn
From - Sat Feb 8 17:49:36 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA18707 for ; Sat, 8 Feb 1997 17:14:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA09284; Sat, 8 Feb 1997 16:46:18 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sat, 08 Feb 1997 16:50:11 EST
Received: from brown.videotron.net (brown.videotron.net [205.151.222.70]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA09281 for ; Sat, 8 Feb 1997 16:46:05
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.154 (ppp154.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.154]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with SMTP id QAA14410 for ; Sat, 8 Feb 1997 16:50:04
-0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32FCAF15.6D94@videotron.ca>
Date: Sat, 08 Feb 1997 16:51:33 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@VIDEOTRON.CA
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Bow drill shape discovery
References: <199702081615.LAA16286@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Phil Goetz wrote:

> use a rounder bow which permits squeezing the string more.
> What does this mean?

Now we're getting into bowdrill biomechanics which are a little hard to explain through this medium. I'll try to give you an idea, but I will be publishing an article on this shortly and will let you know more details.

Basically, the standard way of making a bow is with a fairly straight piece of wood. When the string starts slipping, your only choice is either to retighten the string or to push away with your thumb to tighten the string somewhat. Biomechanically, this is quite inefficient.

I developed a bow drill method using a saw shaped bow which is straight on the handle and then curves back. Like this, only rounder:

```
________ 
| _ _ o _ _ \
```

This is made in the forest in several ways.

1. Find a natural curved one like this, usually at the base of alders (Alnus spp.) on the edge of creeks.

2. Find an L-shaped branch and use it, usually from poplar (Populus spp.) trees which have a tendency to this shape.

3. Use a straight branch and shave it beyond the handle so it bends to the correct shape.

When you use this bow, which is best if it is quite rigid, you can then start with a loose string, and pull on it using three fingers for perfect control of tension. This is also useful once you have the coal because by simply releasing the string, you can remove the spindle without it jumping out because of the lack of tension on the bow.

Pulling with three fingers is infinitely stronger than pushing away with one thumb, but more importantly, you can also biomechanically generate much more global force with this method because you are using the biceps instead of the shoulder muscle, which is much stronger. Another reason this is more efficient is because of the shape of the bow permits maintaining your wrist in a straight position which means again more biomechanical strength.

To give you an idea of the way to hold the bow, pretend it was a saw
where the string is the blade, and when in position, "saw off" your left ankle as you drill with the right arm.

I hope this is clear enough so you can try it. Let me know what you think of this. Please note that I developed this myself because I had no teacher while I was learning this skill, and maybe my judgment of its efficacy is overestimated. I would love to have your opinion after you have given it a fair chance.

Good luck,

André

Dr André-François Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Fri Feb 7 22:26:10 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA26312 for ; Fri, 7 Feb 1997 22:07:55 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA06101; Fri, 7 Feb 1997 21:48:22 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 07 Feb 1997 21:46:27 EST
Received: from brown.videotron.net (brown.videotron.net [205.151.222.70]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA06098 for ; Fri, 7 Feb 1997 21:48:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.40 (ppp040.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.40]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with SMTP id VAA23173 for ; Fri, 7 Feb 1997 21:52:22 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32FBA46E.11EA@videotron.ca>
Date: Fri, 07 Feb 1997 21:53:50 +0000
From: AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@VIDEOTRON.CA
Organization: Au Gré de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Bow drill spindle diameter
Eugene F. Monaco wrote:
> A technique employing mechanical efficiency would be to use a larger
> spindle for the softer woods but shave the spindle diameter down in the
> center of the spindle where the cord makes contact. This gets you speed
> from applying the force of rotation nearer to the centerline of the
> spindle, but keeps the spindle rotating faster at the edge (the edge is
> where the action is). Every unit of radius differential changes the
> outside edge by a factor of pi (3.1415927...).

Mark Zanoni wrote:
> I've tried this and was not impressed with the results. I was much
> happier with simply a smaller diameter spindle. If I keep the end flat,
> this also helps to keep it from burning through the board quickly. I'm
> convinced that sometimes all the best scientific calculations fall apart
> when put into real practice. What works is simply what works not what
> your calculations tell you should work.

On this one I have to agree in part with both of you. In my experience, Eugene's idea works - you do get more speed by narrowing the spindle diameter while leaving the bottom larger. However, in practice Mark is right - this advantage is often offset by the new problems of slipping strings, weaker spindles, and more bottom-end friction. But if these disadvantages can be solved, then the advantages are all that remain.

For me, scientific theory is always the basis for practical experimentation. I have never had it fail me. It's just that sometimes other factors which the theory did not account for have not yet been considered.

Ways I have found to offset the slipping string problem are: wrapping the string twice around the spindle, use a rougher string (double-twisted), make the spindle octagonal in cross-section instead of round, and use a rounder bow which permits squeezing the string more. When this is done, the advantages of speed of a smaller diameter spindle do make a difference with difficult woods.

Peace,

André
> What was the diameter of the first spindle you used before the 1 1/8 then 5/8"? Also, what cordage are you using, nylon?

The first (damp) one was only about 1/2" in diameter. My cordage is synthetic (braided nylon), and I reverse twisted it so it would be a little bumpy, as Ron Hood suggested.

Mark D Ball
From - Tue Feb 4 17:23:49 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA19790 for ; Tue, 4 Feb 1997 17:18:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA27108; Tue, 4 Feb 1997 16:34:58 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 04 Feb 1997 16:32:17 EST
Received: from pulml.accesstone.com (pulml.accesstone.com [198.68.191.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA27087 for ; Tue, 4 Feb 1997 16:33:55 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mbesse.accesstone.com (annex5-40.accesstone.com) by pulml.accesstone.com (4.1/SMI-4.1) id AA22677; Tue, 4 Feb 97 13:39:03 PST
Message-ID: <9702042139.AA22677@pulml.accesstone.com>
From: "Marc Besse"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mbesse@ACCESSONE.COM
To:
Subject: Re: Fire making
Date: Sat, 1 Feb 1997 13:24:42 -0800
X-Msmail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1155
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: 253102bd0283197954455f7ed294d881
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> From: Mark D. Ball
> To: Primitive Skills Group
> Subject: Fire making
> Date: Tuesday, February 04, 1997 10:26 AM

> I have never yet been able to let the coal sit in the notch for 1 to 1
> 1/2
> minutes and fan it until it glows red as I have seen suggested.  The best
> I
> have done is get it to smoke for few seconds, and if I don't then
> transfer
> it to the tinder bundle, it goes out.  Maybe I need to spin the drill a
> little longer to get more heat, but by that time, I'm usually out of gas.
Mark I hope this helps I will try to explain the technique for generating a good coal. There are two basic stokes involved to generating a good coal.

The dust building stroke:
The concept of the dust building stroke is to generate enough dust to build a coal out of. Start out with mild downward pressure on the bearing block. Make slow and even stokes with the bow so that spindle ends up bottoming out at the far ends of the bow. Many times when teaching others I have found they tend to make very short strokes, make your stoke long and smooth. This is a very casual stroke so take your time and try to conserve your energy. Don't try to generate smoke with this stroke at first you are more interested in generating dust. At the end of this stroke you should start to increase the pressure on the bearing block and smoke should be coming from the notch. Now you should transition to the next stroke.

The coal building stroke:
The concept of the coal building stroke is to generate enough heat to build a coal. Start increasing the bow speed and then downward pressure on the bearing block in a linear fashion. The is the most important stroke for generating a stable and viable coal. The more speed and pressure you can apply the better. It is very important to remember that there is linear relationship to this speed and pressure. The speed of the bow dictates the pressure you can apply to the bearing block. If you apply to much pressure and not enough speed the spindle becomes unstable. On average for me this stroke lasts only about fifteen seconds. I have found the when teaching my friends that they tend to use their arm strength to apply the downward pressure on the bearing block, this drastically effects their endurance. It is very important to use proper technique, let your own upper body weight do the work. This is hard to explain but I will give it a go. The arm that is holding the bearing block should be locked firmly against the leg that is securing the fireboard. To apply more pressure to the bearing block simply shift more upper body weight over the spindle. Transfer your upper body weight though the arm holding the bearing block. The only strength required on this side of the body is being used to stabilize the bearing block against the leg. The downward pressure should only be coming from your own upper body weight.

One of the hardest parts of this task is knowing when you have generated a sufficient coal and you can stop. I have my own personal technique I use, and it is really difficult to explain without seeing it first hand. I will try the best I can at explaining this one. During the coal building stroke watch the smoke carefully there are different types of smoke plumes that come out of the notch. The early smoke plumes tend to stream straight up. When the coal is ripe and ready for picking I have noticed the multiple smoke plumes tend to bulge out from the base of the notch in a circular fashion. It is almost like miniature mushroom clouds chasing each other out of the notch. I know this is a difficult description but I tried, if you watch the smoke carefully you might see what I am talking about.

> Rummaging through my garage, I found an old piece of Redwood (I think) for
> a spindle and fir for the fireboard. The spindle was very soft wood, and I
> was impressed that it produced dust and lots of smoke quickly, but seemed
> slow to get hot enough to get a coal. I finally did get fire, but I was
> pretty worn out.

Redwood does not work well for a spindle and fireboard it has natural fire
inhibiting properties to the wood. It sounds like it might have been Red
Cedar
which is very fibrous and tends to get chewed up pretty quick. A special
technique is required to use Red Cedar.

All Good Medicine,
Marc Besse
mbesse@accessone.com

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Tue Feb  4 17:23:42 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA11875 for ; Tue, 4 Feb 1997
14:03:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA25233; Tue, 4 Feb 1997 13:23:33 -
0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 04 Feb 1997 13:21:31 EST
Received: from cybersys.mercy.org (cybersys.mercy.org [205.225.34.178]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA25225 for
; Tue, 4 Feb 1997 13:23:13
-0500 (EST)
Received: from default by cybersys.mercy.org with smtp (Smail3.1.28.1 #2) id
m0vrpaE-00008XC; Tue, 4 Feb 97 10:27 PST
Message-ID:
From: "Mark D. Ball"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mball@MERCY.ORG
To: "Primitive Skills Group"
Subject: Fire making
Date: Tue, 4 Feb 1997 10:26:17 -0800
X-MSMail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1155
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: 65bcaf05bb0bc4bb808b309295557c51
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Well, I don't know whether I got unsubscribed, or there really has been a
steep drop-off in posts, so I thought I'd send in an up-date on my personal
attempts at bowdrill fire making to see if anyone is listening.

I posted previously about using pine with initial success and subsequent
failure. I got some good advice from this group, and located some downed
White Birch from my neighbor's brush pile. I made both the fire board and
spindle from this wood. The first spindle was a bit damp, and all I got
for my trouble was some smoke. I read from someone's post that it is
possible to dry the wood enough to get fire just by heating it in use.
Maybe I was too easily discouraged, but I could not get a coal with this
wood.

I then made a spindle from dry Birch about 1 1/8 " in diameter. With this
I was able to get a coal pretty quickly, which I dropped into a nest of 4-0
steel wool blew into a flame. (I get so excited every time this happens.)
I then made the spindle 5/8" in diameter and repeated the process. I think
it went even quicker with this smaller spindle. The Birch seemed pretty
hard, and I was surprised that it worked so well.

Rummaging through my garage, I found an old piece of Redwood (I think) for
a spindle and fir for the fireboard. The spindle was very soft wood, and I
was impressed that it produced dust and lots of smoke quickly, but seemed
slow to get hot enough to get a coal. I finally did get fire, but I was
pretty worn out.

I looked at Marc Besse's post about the shape of the notch, and
experimented with the shapes he described. I found (as he suggested) that
the U-shaped notch was the most efficient. I have found that I have to cut
the apex of the notch quite short of the center of the depression in the
fire board or the drill migrates toward the notch too far.

I have never yet been able to let the coal sit in the notch for 1 to 1 1/2
minutes and fan it until it glows red as I have seen suggested. The best I
have done is get it to smoke for few seconds, and if I don't then transfer
it to the tinder bundle, it goes out. Maybe I need to spin the drill a
little longer to get more heat, but by that time, I'm usually out of gas.

Just trying to stay in the conversation.

Mark D Ball
Plastic Surgeon
Redding, CA
mball@mercy.org

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Marc Besse wrote:

> > From: Mark D. Ball
> > To: Primitive Skills Group
> > Subject: Fire making
> > Date: Tuesday, February 04, 1997 10:26 AM
> >
> > I have never yet been able to let the coal sit in the notch for 1 to 1
> > 1/2
> > minutes and fan it until it glows red as I have seen suggested. The best
> > I
> > have done is get it to smoke for few seconds, and if I don't then
> > transfer
> > it to the tinder bundle, it goes out. Maybe I need to spin the drill a
> > little longer to get more heat, but by that time, I'm usually out of gas.
> >
> > Mark I hope this helps I will try to explain the technique for generating a
> > good coal. There are two basic stokes involved to generating a good coal.
> >
> > The dust building stroke:
> > The concept of the dust building stroke is to generate enough dust to
> > build a coal out of. Start out with mild downward pressure on the
> > bearing block. Make slow and even stokes with the bow so that spindle
> > ends up bottoming out at the far ends of the bow. Many times when
> > teaching others I have found they tend to make very short strokes, make
> > your stoke long and smooth. This is a very casual stroke so take your
> > time and try to conserve your energy.

I agree with this very much. This does not need to be a struggle. Use
the whole bow, and I have also found that pointing the tip at the ground
can help beginners maintain the string in the center of the spindle and
thus avoid the see-saw motion that causes the string to ride up and
down.

> The coal building stroke:
The concept of the coal building stroke is to generate enough heat to build a coal. Start increasing the bow speed and then downward pressure on the bearing block in a linear fashion. This is the most important stroke for generating a stable and viable coal. The more speed and pressure you can apply the better.

I'm not sure I necessarily agree with the whole concept of speed being important. Like I mentioned earlier, a thinner spindle allows you greater speed with less effort. I simply do not crank away like crazy anymore. There just isn't a need. I believe that downward pressure, though, is critical and the body position you describe is important. Technique, is the single most important factor in fire making aside from correct construction and the notch.

As to when you know whether you have a coal or not, this is a bit more difficult. I was first taught to wait until the smoke swirled around the spindle and then add 10-20 more hard strokes. This doesn't seem to apply, and I just don't do the "hard stroke" thing anymore. Charles Worsham speaks of building the powder to the bottom of the depression in the fire board and waiting till smoke comes out the back of the coal in the notch. This actually seems to have more merit. Sometimes I simply just know that I'm there. The more you work with the tool, the more this will happen. However it happens, a good coal will sit and burn on its own for a good 10 or 15 minutes and I usually have fairly big coals.

It is very important to remember that there is linear relationship to this speed and pressure. The speed of the bow dictates the pressure you can apply to the bearing block. If you apply too much pressure and not enough speed the spindle becomes unstable.

I'm not sure I agree with this either. Technique and body position, again, are the key things. I can add a lot of downward pressure and still maintain a nice even, slow stroke with the bow. I don't think it has to be a fight. I'm sure my spindle diameter has something to do with this.

I have found that when teaching my friends that they tend to use their arm strength to apply the downward pressure on the bearing block, this drastically effects their endurance.

This is certainly true. The whole upper body needs be used to get good downward pressure. It also helps to make sure that the alignment is correct. The front shin should be perpendicular to the ground and the center of the chest should line up with the center of the hand locked around the shin, which in turn lines up with a point about an inch away from the center of your instep (the hole in your board should be at this point). This allows you to keep everything locked in tight and still have the spindle straight up and down. Physical strength is not necessarily a crucial factor here. Good technique can make up for a lot of things. I like to relate this to martial arts in this sense. A powerful karate technique does not depend on muscle power, in fact muscle power can get in the way often. The key to a powerful punch is technique and connection, balance and relaxation with controled tension. Starting a fire with a bowdrill is very similar :-).

Mark Zanoni
Mark D. Ball wrote:

> Well, I don't know whether I got unsubscribed, or there really has
> been a steep drop-off in posts,

I noticed that too. Maybe talking about eating scat was a bit much of everybody. I know it was for me.

> I got some good advice from this group, and located some downed
> White Birch from my neighbor's brush pile. I made both the fire board
> and spindle from this wood. The first spindle was a bit damp, and all
> I got for my trouble was some smoke. I read from someone's post that
> it is possible to dry the wood enough to get fire just by heating it in
> use.

My success with damp wood has been by reheating the powder until it dries and ignites.
I then made a spindle from dry Birch about 1 1/8 " in diameter. With this I was able to get a coal pretty quickly, which I dropped into a nest of 4-0 steel wool blew into a flame. (I get so excited every time this happens.) I then made the spindle 5/8" in diameter and repeated the process. I think it went even quicker with this smaller spindle.

Well, you seem to be discovering things by trial and error. 5/8-1 1/8" spindles are awful big. No wonder you are winded afterwards! It is easier with smaller diameter spindles (smaller diameter increases the rpms). According to Charles Worsham, the harder your wood is, the smaller the spindle diameter too, but I would argue that with softer woods like cedar, basswood, alder etc. there is a point at which small diameter can become a problem. Right now my cedar spindles are about 1/2". That seems to work well for me. If I go much smaller than that I seem to burn through the board before I get a coal, any larger than that means that I do more work than I need to. Birch is definitely harder than most woods I prefer. Try a 3/8" or smaller birch spindle and see what happens.

Rummaging through my garage, I found an old piece of Redwood (I think) for a spindle and fir for the fireboard. The spindle was very soft wood, and I was impressed that it produced dust and lots of smoke quickly, but seemed slow to get hot enough to get a coal. I finally did get fire, but I was pretty worn out.

I've never tried this combination. What did the coal look like? Fiberous? Plate like? Dark, fine powder?

One thing that I am working on now is perfecting my form and kits to the point where making a fire is a slow, almost leisurly activity. It does not have to be a struggle that leaves you out of breath etc. The key is adjusting spindle diameter, fireboard thickness etc. to fit the different woods and positioning and using your body in a way that uses maximum efficiency for both downward pressure and bow manipulation. I like the idea of looking at this stuff as an art rather than just a form of exercise. If got enough of those :-)
> Redding, CA
> mball@mercy.org

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Feb 6 19:18:39 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA11554 for ; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 16:46:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA20052; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 16:10:14 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Thu, 06 Feb 1997 16:08:13 EST
Received: from dub-img-4.compuserve.com (dub-img-4.compuserve.com [149.174.206.134]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA20044 for ; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 16:09:53 -0500 (EST)
Received: by dub-img-4.compuserve.com (8.6.10/5.950515) id PAA13287; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 15:49:24 -0500
Date: Thu, 6 Feb 1997 15:49:10 -0500
From: "Eugene F. Monaco"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, EFMonaco@COMPUSERVE.COM
Subject: Re: Fire making
CC: Primitive Skills List
Message-ID: <199702061549_MC2-107A-C19E@compuserve.com>
X-UIDL: a53d8f94b5fca39bcceb574f199cad10
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>It is easier with smaller diameter spindles (smaller diameter increases
the rpms).

This is true but the tradeoff is the speed of the spindle rotation which
increases towards the edge of the spindle (see follow up below).

>According to Charles Worsham, the harder your wood is, the
>smaller the spindle diameter too, but I would argue that with softer
>woods like cedar, basswood, alder etc. there is a point at which small
>diameter can become a problem. Right now my cedar spindles are about
>1/2". That seems to work well for me. If I go much smaller than that I
>seem to burn through the board before I get a coal, any larger than that
>means that I do more work than I need to.

A technique employing mechanical efficiency would be to to use a larger
spindle for the softer woods but shave the spindle diameter down in the
center of the spindle where the cord makes contact. This gets you speed
from applying the force of rotation nearer to the centerline of the
spindle, but keeps the spindle rotating faster at the edge (the edge is
where the action is). Every unit of radius differential changes the
outside edge by a factor of pi (3.1415927...). And remember.....
techniques don't make you work, you make the techniques work.

-EFM

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Feb 4 20:05:24 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA24033 for ; Tue, 4 Feb 1997 17:37:41 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA27626 for ; Tue, 4 Feb 1997 17:04:46 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 04 Feb 1997 17:02:43 EST
Received: from emout13.mail.aol.com (emout13.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.39]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id RAA27619 for ; Tue, 4 Feb 1997 17:04:25 -0500 (EST)
From: JWaltz@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWaltz@AOL.COM
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout13.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0) id RAA19838 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Tue, 4 Feb 1997 17:08:14 -0500 (EST)
Date: Tue, 4 Feb 1997 17:08:14 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970204161800_2059313735@emout13.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Fire making-oops prev. mail
X-UIDL: 3351a44b56687f9701eb3a6535b7544f
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Mark:
In a message dated 97-02-04 13:34:25 EST, you write:

<< I then made a spindle from dry Birch about 1 1/8 " in diameter. With this
I was able to get a coal pretty quickly, which I dropped into a nest of 4-0
steel wool blew into a flame. (I get so excited every time this happens.)
I then made the spindle 5/8" in diameter and repeated the process. I think it went even quicker with this smaller spindle. The Birch seemed pretty hard, and I was surprised that it worked so well.
>>

Yes the server is still workng. Must be a lot more off-server corresp going on. Thanks for keeping it up.

What was the diameter of the first spindle you used before the 1 1/8 then 5/8"? Also, what cordage are you using, nylon?

John Waltz
Belle Mead, NJ
"One's ideas must be as broad as Nature if they are to interpret Nature"
Sherlock Holmes
A Study in Scarlet

i agree on the yucca, i've gotten a bunch of fires out of my BSA set. I did however, replace the bow and string with one of my own making.

Name: H. Carter Mesick
E-mail: hmesick@goldinc.com
Date: 02/05/97
Time: 10:36:13
This is my first post so I'll introduce myself. My name is Bill Qualls. I am an assistant professor of mathematics at Waubonsee Community College in Sugar Grove, Illinois. My survival experience includes three 3-week course at BYU in 1976 (once as a student, twice as instructor), a lecture course with "Rabid Ron Hood" at UCLA in 1978, and Boulder Outdoor Survival School's two-week field course in 1995.

There's been some discussion about teaching fire by friction.... I have taught fire-by-friction to probably 100+ scouts. And I don't mean demonstrating it: I mean each of them getting a fire. When it comes to teaching fire by friction, I don't think you can beat the official BSA fire by friction set. The materials - yucca - are perfect. Sure, they should learn to make their own set, but for getting the "feel" of making the fire, and for the confidence in their abilities to do so, you can't beat this set. It's pricey (approx $8??) but before I knew how to do it, I would gladly paid that much to know how. I usually find that 3-4 kids can get their first fire from one set.

Also, had an old time scouter recommend to me once that for the socket, try using an old glass coffee percolator top. No friction at all!

Bill Qualls
Ben Pressley suggested I "clean-up" my original post on the above subject for publication in the Tribe newsletter. I went a little overboard and produced the following document. Hope you enjoy it.

André

PS Ben, hope you don't mind that the members of the group get to see it first... it's all in the family!

---------------------------------------
FIRE BY FRICTION THEORY
---------------------------------------

INTRODUCTION:

Whether you wish to obtain fire-by-friction by bowdrill, handdrill, fire saw, fire thong or fire plow, it is most useful to study the theoretical principles underlying the processes involved. In this brief and informal article, I will address the issue of how the coal actually forms. I will attempt to put into words something which anyone who has practised these skills for a long time tends to know by "feeling".

THEORY:

GENERAL THEORETICAL PRINCIPLE- FIRE IS OBTAINED WHEN THERE IS ENOUGH HEAT (IN THE PRESENCE OF OXYGEN) TO BRING FUEL TEMPERATURE TO IT'S IGNITION POINT.

Let us examine each of the three well-known fire elements (heat-fuel-oxygen) in the context of fire-by-friction. Basically, heat will come from the friction of wood (or woody plants), fuel to be ignited will be wood dust, and oxygen will usually be made available by the use of some kind of notch. Now we can elaborate on specific principles for each of the three elements, starting with heat.

PRINCIPLE #1- WHEN WOOD IS RUBBED AGAINST WOOD, FRICTION OCCURS, AND THIS FRICTION IS WHAT GENERATES HEAT. The idea in fire-by-friction is thus to increase the heat-generating friction to a point where the heat created is sufficient to ignite the fuel (which in this case is combustible material in the form of wood dust). To increase friction, there are three factors involved, which leads us to principle #2.

PRINCIPLE #2- FRICTION HEAT IS DETERMINED BY THREE FACTORS: SPEED, PRESSURE AND COARSENESS OF MATERIALS. These three factors have implications when trying to improve fire-by-friction practice. For example, speed can be increased by making the spindle center smaller in diameter and the burning end larger in diameter (gearing); pressure needs to be increased to the maximum possible just prior to the formation of the coal; and coarser-grained soft woods will create more friction (under same pressure and speed) than finer-grained hardwoods, which is one of the reasons why cedar, basswood and willow are all-time favorites.

Of course, in practice, it is not so easy to increase friction.
bow-drill, for instance, making the spindle thinner makes it easier for the rope to slip and also for primitive strings to break; adding pressure causes speed to decrease because of limits in one's physical strength; and wood choice is not always easy in a natural setting. However, the idea is to maximize the heat generated according to the specific fire-making situation.

Assuming that everything possible has been done to ensure maximum speed and pressure, (good bearing for the bow-drill spindle, proper bio-mechanics, good technique etc.) and assuming choice of materials is coarser than finer, we can now look at the quality of the fuel.

PRINCIPLE #3- THE TINDER TO BE IGNITED IS THE WOOD DUST FORMED BY FRICTION OF TWO SURFACES. When friction occurs, the result is wood dust. If there is no wood dust, it is because there is no friction. An example of this occurs when one tries to start a friction fire with very resinous wood, such as burned pine roots (pitch pine), and a slippery glaze forms preventing the formation of wood dust.

PRINCIPLE #4- VARIOUS WOODS AND WOODY PLANTS HAVE DIFFERENT IGNITION POINTS AND SO WILL THEIR WOOD DUSTS. Various woods and plants will ignite at different heat levels, which means that the amount of friction heat required to form a coal is different for each. Generally, soft woods need less heat to ignite than hard woods, but individual species have to be studied to be more precise. The reason this is true is that the greater porosity of the soft woods permits the wood to dry more quickly when subject to heat, thus causing quicker ignition.

PRINCIPLE #5- THE WOOD DUST WILL BE FORMED MOSTLY OF THE SOFTER OF THE TWO SURFACES BEING RUBBED, BUT WOOD GRAIN DIRECTION MUST BE CONSIDERED. This is very important, because it directly affects the amount of heat required to ignite the wood dust. When the wood for fireboard and spindle are of the same wood, the spindle is harder than the fireboard in the sense that the fibers are cross-grain rather than with the grain. This means that more wood dust will come from the board than from the spindle. For the same reason, in the fire saw technique, more wood dust will come from the saw than from the board.

Suppose we are using a maple spindle on a cedar board. Since the maple is harder, and in addition, because the spindle fibers are cross-grain, most of the wood dust will come from the cedar board, and so the wood dust fuel will have the igniting properties of cedar. Now, suppose the reverse, that you are using a cedar spindle on a maple board. The maple board is harder, but the fact that the cedar spindle is rubbing cross-grain will offset that hardness somewhat, and the wood dust fuel will in large part be composed of maple, with much higher temperature needed for ignition.

PRINCIPLE #6- WHEN THERE IS ENOUGH FRICTION HEAT, MOISTURE IS DRIVEN OFF FROM THE WOOD DUST AS IT FORMS, CREATING SMOKE. At this point, the wood dust is drying, creating smoke, and it's temperature is rising close to the ignition point. When at this point, if fire-by-friction is unsuccessful, you will notice that the wood dust has started to char and turn blackish.
PRINCIPLE #7- TO OBTAIN A COAL, WOOD MUST BE RUBBED OVER AND OVER ON THE SAME WOOD DUST. The following is very important to understanding fire-by-friction theory. Usually, wood dust is light, and when you rub wood, the dust moves away from the friction area and thus cools off, and new wood is rubbed which creates new dust which is cooler. This means that theoretically, you can do this forever and never obtain a coal or a fire. Here is the main reason why you cut a notch in the fireboard: the hot dust gets wedged in the notch, preventing it from moving away from the friction area, and you are then rubbing over and over on the same wood dust and a coal will get created at that exact spot. The coal then spreads to the remaining wood dust, making it grow, creating sufficient heat to ignite other tinder.

Usually it is not sufficient to have the burnt wood dust wedged in a crack. There is also a weight consideration. The pile of wood dust must be big enough and therefore heavy enough to prevent the newly formed dust from moving it and cooling it off.

PRINCIPLE #7- THE COAL IS INITIALLY THE SIZE OF A SINGLE WOOD DUST PARTICLE, AND TO GROW, THERE MUST BE COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL AROUND IT. Heat rises, and there must be sufficient wood dust particles above and around the coal so that they will also ignite from the initial heat. If there is not enough wood dust around the forming coal, it will not gather the momentum necessary to grow to usable size. Just like a fire can't be built with a match and a single stick, a coal cannot form if there isn't enough burnt wood dust immediately around it.

Now that we have looked at the heat and fuel parts of the fire-by-friction theory, lets examine the oxygen aspect.

PRINCIPLE #8- A FIRE NEEDS OXYGEN, BUT NOT AT THE EXPENSE OF REMOVING FUEL. This is the most important and at the same time the most difficult to understand aspect of fire-making. When building fires, you must force air between tightly packed fuel, not remove fuel to let air in at it. That's why you blow and fan a fire. If you remove fuel to let air in, then there is nothing left to burn, and the fire goes out!

Now in fire by friction, a microscope reveals that a mound of wood dust resembles a pile of minuscule wooden boulders, with plenty of air space in between them. In fact, when a coal goes out, it is practically never because of lack of air, but almost always because of lack of fuel. In practice, this means that there is not enough quantity of accumulated wood dust, or that the wood dust was not left to stand still (shaking fireboard, rough drill movement), leaving too much air between particles. This is equivalent to a regular fire with sticks spaced too far apart. The flame from one stick does not reach the other stick, and the fire goes out. This means that theoretically, the notch is not necessary for air intake!

PRINCIPLE #9- AIR SPACES BETWEEN WOOD DUST PARTICLES DEPEND ON THE TYPE OF WOOD USED. When analyzing various wood dusts, several authors have noted the quality of wood dust as being fundamental to the success of fire-by-friction. Some woods yield round and "sticky" dust particles which bind together and are good for forming coals. Other woods yield long, thin and fibrous particles which are very poor for forming coals. The problem with this type of wood dust is not the inflammability.
characteristics of the dust. It is simply that there is too much air between particles, so that sufficient heat transfer does not occur from one particle to the next for further ignition to take place. Again, this is like a regular fire with sticks spaced too far apart. One solution to this problem is to force the wood dust into an enclosed area which will compress it, using a wider-at-the-bottom notch, for instance. Another solution is to add a little fine sand to the hole in the fireboard, which tends to break the long pieces into smaller ones which will pack the notch more tightly. However, too much sand takes the place of fuel in the notch, with negative results.

Now that we have looked at the principles which affect the heat, fuel and oxygen necessary for forming a coal, we can answer a few frequently asked questions related to the above theory.

------------------------------------------
CAN A BOW DRILL FIRE BE MADE WITHOUT A NOTCH?

Yes, it is certainly possible. Just keep drilling long enough and hard enough so that the burnt wood dust pile around the friction area gets big and heavy enough not to move as you keep drilling. Then you will be rubbing over and over on the same wood dust and a coal will form. I have obtained up to 5 coals at once all around the drilling area this way.

CAN I SAVE TIME BY FILLING THE NOTCH WITH TINDER BEFORE I START?

No, this will not work. Filling the notch with tinder will prevent a coal from forming, because there will be no space for the wood dust to accumulate. Even if some wood dust does accumulate and form a coal, the added tinder will not be fine enough to ignite from the little bit of heat produced by the miniature coal.

ARE THERE WOODS WHICH WILL NOT WORK FOR FIRE-BY-FRICTION?

Theoretically, no, all sound dry woods will work if sufficient speed and pressure are used, and if the notch is cut in such a way as to condense the wood dust into a tight enough pile. In practice, with the mechanical advantage of a perfect bow drill setup, in ideal conditions, I have yet to find a wood that will not generate a coal.

WHAT'S THE THEORY BEHIND THE FIRE SAW?

Well, as the saw traverses the bamboo half round board, burnt wood dust accumulates underneath and you are rubbing back and forth on the same pile of wood dust which can't move because it's stuck underneath the board!

As for the new "10 second upside down fire saw" technique, this was derived from the fire thong technique where the knife-edge of the hardwood replaces the thong.

ACCORDING TO THEORY, HOW DOES THE FIRE THONG WORK?

Fire thong works on exactly the same principle. The thong goes underneath a piece of wood which is split open about 1/4 inch, and burnt
wood dust accumulates above the thong and gets wedged in that split and can't move. Once the crack is full, the thong rubs back and forth against the same wood powder and the coal ignites there.

WHAT ABOUT THE FIREPLOW?

The fireplow technique is harder to understand and doesn't work everytime because it relies on brute strength to generate sufficient heat in the pile of wood dust to ignite a coal at a random spot in the pile. Since this technique cannot be duplicated precisely the same way everytime, it is hard to come to a conclusion about what is happening but I think it is this. As the pile of wood dust at the bottom of the plow gets heavy enough and cannot move, the heat transfer from the friction area ignites a coal on the bottom edge of the pile, which usually manifests itself as a coal on top of the pile when it is accidentally hit by the grinding stick. Note that I have tried making artificial fireplows by tying sticks to my jigsaw blade and was not able to produce fire! The principles are not respected accurately in this technique, and probably a random crack between the dust pile and the plow board must permit the formation of the coal.

IF THE COAL IS FORMED BY RUBBING OVER AND OVER ON THE SAME WOOD DUST, WHY DOES THE COAL USUALLY APPEAR SOME DISTANCE AWAY FROM THE BOARD AND NOTCH?

The explanation is that even when the wood dust pile is not quite heavy enough to hold in place, but partly so, sufficient friction occurs to form the small coal anyway before the new dust forces the pile over. You don't notice this because of all the smoke from the grinding of the wood. If the coal appears far away from the center, you are probably drilling too much for nothing - your coal was already formed several seconds ago. When you go for speed records on bow drill you learn precisely when the coal has formed, and that is always where the wood rubs against wood dust. Theoretically, you would think that the coal should form at the edge of the drill where the speed is fastest. But in reality it forms a little lower, where the wood dust is heavy enough not to move. That's why you don't see it right away and why it seems to catch further away in the wood dust pile. Another demonstration that the coal forms next to the spot being rubbed is when you don't quite achieve a coal. You will notice the black char which almost made a coal right near the edge.

HOW FAST CAN A COAL BE MADE?

I'm not really sure what the ultimate limit could be. According to theory, there has to be enough time to fill the notch so that the dust will no longer move before a coal will form. Under laboratory conditions, using an ideal bow drill set and starting with an empty notch, I have made coals in under 4 seconds.

SHOULD I FAN A COAL RIGHT AWAY AS SOON AS I STOP THE FRICTION?

Usually yes, but this depends on the dust pile. Theoretically, just like in regular fire starting, you blow when the fuel is piled tightly. If the dust pile is tight and the notch is wider at the bottom, I usually fan the coal very quickly with my hand. I do not blow on it at first because of the moisture on my breath. Sometimes, when the wood
dust is somewhat loose, I do not fan it at all.

CONCLUSION:

This article is an effort to outline various theories and principles of fire-by-friction based on informal observations made during considerable experimentation of the various techniques in the past 23 years. The information is offered solely as a starting point for further scientific investigation, which might reveal errors in the above theories and principles. The reader should keep this in mind.

--

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Blvd
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
Canada
G7H 2B1

bourbeau@videotron.ca

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sat Feb 8 16:08:35 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from longbeach.goldinc.com (root@longbeach.goldinc.com [206.185.32.2]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA11535 for ; Sat, 8 Feb 1997 10:53:03 -0500 (EST)
Received: from ppp-010.goldinc.com (ppp-010.goldinc.com [206.185.32.110]) by longbeach.goldinc.com (8.8.3/8.8.0) with SMTP id JAA04671; Sat, 8 Feb 1997 09:49:57 -0600
Message-ID: <32FCAD70.253A@goldinc.com>
Date: Sat, 08 Feb 1997 08:44:32 -0800
From: "h. carter mesick"
Organization: EarthDance
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.0 (Win16; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@VIDEOTRON.CA
Subject: Re: [Fwd: Fire by friction theory revisited]
References: <32F908F6.1A7C@videotron.ca>
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: d9eb94342a64691305d4b9c8a6e346ba
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

andre good post,
in your post you have placed emphasis on heat generation.

another angle of approach is to also think about heat retention and concentration. this brings into play the thermal conductivity, and specific heat of the material, as well as the geometry of
the "oven" or heat store volume.

from this approach it's easy to see the action of moisture and water vapor as the big heat thief, and some of the other factors involved in fire by friction.

you can generate a lot of heat, but if you cant concentrate and store it, your just burning calories.
Upon further reflection we are talking about finely shredded bark as
>FIREFISTON tinder aren't we? My experiments were with flint and steel
>methods of firemaking & I've had no success with uncharred material.

I can't remember where I read it, but the best tinder for fire starting is
shredded wasp nest. - Ted Bailey

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970  || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:  http://ic.net/~tbailey/
Upon further reflection we are talking about finely shredded bark as FIREPISTON tinder aren't we? My experiments were with flint and steel methods of firemaking & I've had no success with uncharred material.

I can't remember where I read it, but the best tinder for fire starting is shredded wasp nest. – Ted Bailey

Ted Bailey
P. O. Box 6076
Ann Arbor, MI 48106
Ph: (313)-971-2970
Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Ted E. Bailey wrote:

> Upon further reflection we are talking about finely shredded bark as
> FIREPISTON tinder aren't we? My experiments were with flint and steel
> >methods of firemaking & I've had no success with uncharred material.
> >
> I can't remember where I read it, but the best tinder for fire starting is
> shredded wasp nest. - Ted Bailey

For fire piston, "mountain' Mel Deweese is the only expert I know and he
says he has only had success with tinder derived from a certain palm. I
know that's a vague reference, I'll try to find out the xact name of the
palm. In the meantime anyone who wishes to contact Mel, can contact him
at: Nature Knowledge, 1825 Linden St., Grand Junction, CO 81503, Phone:
970-242-8507.

As far as flint & steel, I have only had success with charred material
and an uncharred fungus from up in Canada that a friend of mine brought
me at TRIBE Gathering. Amazing stuff. A small sliver catches a spark and
it glows and glows. Maybe Andre remembers the name of the fungus I'm
talking about. George Hedgepeth brought it with him that year you came
to TRIBE Gathering.

---------------------------------------------------------------
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE
Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for
June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over,
camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival
and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more
information.
I received a very important post in french from Pascal Chauvaux of France who is a member of our group. For those who don't read french, I have translated the essential at the end of this:

>AndrÈ,
Merci de m'avoir indiquÈ le PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP !
J'ai rencontrÈ quelques difficultÈs pour m'abonner, mais tout est bien maintenant.
J'ai reçu déjà plus de 80 messages, et cela semble bien intéressant. Un des domaines qui m'attire le plus est la production de feu. Nous avons, avec quelques amis d'une association archéologique de la région de Liège en Belgique, beaucoup travaillé la production (prédhistorique) du feu. Si cela t'intéresse, je peux t'envoyer la copie d'un article que nous avons publié (en Français):


On y parle notamment des initiateurs (champignons) testés.

J'ai de bons contacts avec des archéologues suisses, et j'ai reçu un article indiquant les champignons utilisés (une quinzaine) par les néolithiques du lac de Neufchâtel en Suisse. Quelques-uns étaient des initiateurs pour le feu.

En ce qui concerne le feu par friction et percussion, je connais un bon spécialiste français : Jacques Collina-Girard. Il a publié quelques articles intéressants, et je peux t'en faire parvenir une copie si cela t'intéresse.

Nous nous sommes spécialisés dans les briquets en fer, et j'en ai d'ailleurs forgé une quarantaine la semaine dernière. Il faut dire que nous avons fait des recherches récemment, et que la plus vieille occurrence d'un briquet en fer remonte à 400 BC. Il s'agit de 3 briquets en fer provenant d'une sépulture collective de l'âge du fer (La Tène), dans la grotte Ambre, à Eprave en Belgique. Ils ont une forme très différente des briquets en fer connus. J'en ai quelques copies, et si tu es intéressé, je peux t'en faire parvenir un (avec les dessins des pièces originales). Je voudrais d'ailleurs le faire savoir au PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP. Peux-tu leur transmettre un message leur proposant gracieusement un briquet en fer. Je m'engage à envoyer gratuitement un briquet et quelques explications à ceux qui m'en feront la demande.

Comme chaque année, le premier jour de l'an, je vais me promener au Cap Blanc Nez, au bord de la mer entre la France et l'Angleterre, où ils ont creusé le tunnel sous la Manche. On y trouve du silex dans la craie, mais aussi Énormément de marcassite, le fameux bisulfure de fer qui est attesté comme le plus ancien procédé de production de feu (tant que l'on ne retrouve pas une drille en bois). J'ai toutes les références des sites où on a retrouvé de la marcassite (paléo supérieur). Je peux également t'envoyer un kit complet : marcassite, briquet en silex, amadou.
Ok, here's the gist of the post:

Pascal and others in France in archeological circles have worked severely hard for a long time on flint & steel tinder. They found references to 15 types of fungi which were used for flint & steel tinder and tested them. He has offered to send me scientific articles on all of these experiments conducted in Europe and Switzerland especially, but they are in french.

His group has specialized in making striking bats based on a very old one they discovered which is dated 400 BC. These bats are apparently quite different from the ones we know about.

Pascal has offered to send a replica and drawings of the original to those of the group who want one free of charge! (I'm not sure that he will be able to do this when he finds out how many of us will be interested!)

He says that in the undersea tunnel which was dug years ago between England and France, that they have discovered Marcassite and other evidence of primitive fire making ways.

Wow, thanks for such a great post, Pascal, and in the name of the group, thanks for such a generous offer.

Please, everyone, send your requests directly to Pascal by private E-mail, not to the group.

AndrÈ
I have found that the dried top of the cattail that has been broken up and fluffed up will catch a spark from flint and steel very easily. In fact, if you do not watch out, the explosion of the initial flame will burn your hands before you can get out of the way.

Jim W.
JWither240@AOL.COM wrote:

> I was using a simple flint striker that fit into the side of a knife handle
> that I had ordered from the Sportsmans Guide Magazine. I just raked the
> knife blade along the length of the flint piece (about 2.5in. long X 1/8in
> wide), and got a large swoosh of sparks that when done close to the little
> pile of cattail fluff, resulted in an explosion of flame. The fluff burns
> out rather quickly, but with some dry leaves or other tinder next to it,
> results in a nice warm camp fire.
>
> J.W.

Ok Jim, you had me fooled there for a while! What you are referring to
is a commercial flint striker which is made of magnesium with a striking
insert made of (what's the name I'm searching for?) ium. This magnesium
match puts off a very very hot spark that will make just about any kind
of good tinder flame up.

However, when we talk about flint and steel here, we are talking of
natural flint pieces struck with a piece of steel. I don't know of
anyone who has found any natural tinder fine enough to catch that kind
of spark other than the fungus Inonotus obliquus. That's why I was so
surprised by the cattail story.

Just goes to show how simple details can mislead one's thinking and get some authors writing down things which do not work.

Thanks for helping us clear this up.

André

----------------------------------------------
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

----------------------------------------------

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Dec 31 07:07:02 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA01844; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 17:13:28 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA08122; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 17:11:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: from emout16.mail.aol.com (emout16.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.42]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA08119 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 17:11:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: by emout16.mail.aol.com (8.6.12/8.6.12) id RAA29361 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 17:15:06 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852076858.106
From: JWither240@AOL.COM
I was using a simple flint striker that fit into the side of a knife handle that I had ordered from the Sportsmans Guide Magazine. I just raked the knife blade along the length of the flint piece (about 2.5in. long X 1/8in wide), and got a large swoosh of sparks that when done close to the little pile of cattail fluff, resulted in an explosion of flame. The fluff burns out rather quickly, but with some dry leaves or other tinder next to it, results in a nice warm camp fire.

J.W.
I received a very important post in french from Pascal Chauvaux of France who is a member of our group. For those who don't read french, I have translated the essential at the end of this:

>AndrÈ,
Merci de m'avoir indiquÈ le PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP !
J'ai rencontrÈ quelques difficultÈs pour m'abonner, mais tout est bien maintenant.
J'ai reÅu dÈjÈ plus de 80 messages, et cela semble bien intÈressant.
Un des domaines qui m'attire le plus est la production de feu. Nous avons, avec quelques amis d'une
association archÈologique de la rÈgion de LiÈge en Belgique, beaucoup travaillé la production
(prÈhistorique) du feu. Si cela t'intÈresse, je peux t'envoyer la copie
d'un article que nous avons
publiÈ (en FranÃais) :
L'obtention du feu par percussion : approche expÈrimentale et tracÈologique, in Bulletin des
On y parle notamment des initiateurs (champignons) testÈs.

J'ai de bons contacts avec des archÈologues suisses, et j'ai reÅu un
article indiquant les
champignons utilisÈs (une quinzaine) par les nÈolithiques du lac de NeufchTEL en Suisse.
Quelques-uns Ètaient des initiateurs pour le feu.

En ce qui concerne le feu par friction et percussion, je connais un bon
spÈcialiste franÃais : Jacques
Collina-Girard. Il a publiÈ quelques articles intÈressants, et je peux
t'en faire parvenir une copie
si cela t'intÈresse.

Nous nous sommes spÈcialisÈs dans les briquets en fer, et j'en ai
d'ailleurs forgÈ une quarantaine la
semaine derniÈre. Il faut dire que nous avons fait des recherches
rÈcemment, et que la plus vieille
occurrence d'un briquet en fer remonte ý 400 BC. Il s'agit de 3 briquets
en fer provenant d'une
sÈpulture collective de l'ge du fer (La tÈne), dans la grotte Ambre, ý
Eprave en Belgique. Ils ont
une forme trËs diffÈrente des briquets en fer connus. J'en ai quelques
copies, et si tu es intÈressÈ,
je peux t'en faire parvenir un (avec les dessins des piÈces originales).
Je voudrais d'ailleurs le
faire savoir au PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP. Peux-tu leur transmettre un
message leur proposant
gracieusement un briquet en fer. Je m'engage ý envoyer gratuitement un
briquet et quelques
explications ý ceux qui m'en feront la demande.

Comme chaque annÈe, le premier jour de l'an, je vais me promener au Cap
Blanc Nez, au bord de la
mer entre la France et l'Angleterre, où ils ont creusÈ le tunnel sous la
manche. On y trouve du silex
dans la craie, mais aussi ÈnormÈment de marcassite, le fameux bisulfure
de fer qui est attesté comme le plus ancien procédé de production de feu (tant que l'on ne retrouve pas une drille en bois). J'ai toutes les références des sites où on a retrouvée de la marcassite (paléo supérieur). Je peux également t'envoyer un kit complet : marcassite, briquet en silex, amadou.

Voilà, j'espère que si des renseignements que je te fournirai sont intéressants, tu auras le courage d'en faire une traduction sommaire pour le faire savoir aux membres du PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP. Mon anglais n'est pas assez bon pour le faire moi-même.

Merci pour ton obligeance.
Meilleurs voeux de santé et de prospérité à l'occasion de l'année nouvelle, à toi et aux membres de ta famille.

Pascal Chauvaux
Pascal.Chauvaux@gate71.be

Ok, here's the gist of the post:

Pascal and others in France in archeological circles have worked severely hard for a long time on flint & steel tinder. They found references to 15 types of fungi which were used for flint & steel tinder and tested them. He has offered to send me scientific articles on all of these experiments conducted in Europe and Switzerland especially, but they are in french.

His group has specialized in making striking bats based on a very old one they discovered which is dated 400 BC. These bats are apparently quite different from the ones we know about.

Pascal has offered to send a replica and drawings of the original to those of the group who want one free of charge! (I'm not sure that he will be able to do this when he finds out how many of us will be interested!)

He says that in the undersea tunnel which was dug years ago between England and France, that they have discovered Marcassite and other evidence of primitive fire making ways.

Wow, thanks for such a great post, Pascal, and in the name of the group, thanks for such a generous offer.

Please, everyone, send your requests directly to Pascal by private E-mail, not to the group.

André

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
I have found that the dried top of the cattail that has been broken up and fluffed up will catch a spark from flint and steel very easily. In fact, if you do not watch out, the explosion of the initial flame will burn your hands before you can get out of the way.

Jim W.
Ok Jim, you had me fooled there for a while! What you are referring to is a commercial flint striker which is made of magnesium with a striking
insert made of (what's the name I'm searching for?) ium. This magnesium match puts off a very very hot spark that will make just about any kind of good tinder flame up.

However, when we talk about flint and steel here, we are talking of natural flint pieces struck with a piece of steel. I don't know of anyone who has found any natural tinder fine enough to catch that kind of spark other than the fungus Inonotus obliquus. That's why I was so surprised by the cattail story.

Just goes to show how simple details can mislead one's thinking and get some authors writing down things which do not work.

Thanks for helping us clear this up.

AndrÉ
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÉ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA     G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888
bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Dec 31 07:07:02 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA01844; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 17:13:28 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA01844; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 17:13:28 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 17:15:51 EST
Received: from emout16.mail.aol.com (emout16.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.42]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA08119 for
; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 17:11:06
-0500 (EST)
Received: by emout16.mail.aol.com (8.6.12/8.6.12) id RAA29361 for
I was using a simple flint striker that fit into the side of a knife handle that I had ordered from the Sportsmans Guide Magazine. I just raked the knife blade along the length of the flint piece (about 2.5in. long X 1/8in wide), and got a large swoosh of sparks that when done close to the little pile of cattail fluff, resulted in an explosion of flame. The fluff burns out rather quickly, but with some dry leaves or other tinder next to it, results in a nice warm camp fire.

J.W.
I have been communicating with Wyatt Earl who wrote the article on fire piston and was asking him about tinder other than charred cloth. Our communications might interest some of you... here goes.

Howdy AndrÈ!

First, thank you so much for your generous and kind appraisal of my fire piston article. It was a lot of work but very fun.

I am glad that you brought up the question of the shredded bark tinder that was mentioned in the article. I was reporting what John Rowlands said he used but in all my years of experimentation on the subject of catching sparks I have never had any succes with the dry, finely shredded bark. In addition, no one who is into primitive tech. that I have talked to has indicated success either. Ditto for mouse or birdnests. I have only had success with charred material. The only thing I have seen that is uncharred that will catch and nurture a spark is a type of fungus that is sometimes found in birches or cherry trees and it is amazing to see.

Because of your question I am going to edit my article to indicate the above observations. I appreciate you input and look forward to further conversations as well. It sure would be fun to make a living writing things like that firepiston article.

Happy Holidays, Andre

Hi Wyatt,

You might like to know that I have finally identified that birch fungus you are talking about. It is sometimes called Chatoquin or Bearshit but the scientific name is Innonotus obliquus. It is indeed a fungus (at first I thought it was a disease) but it is a white rot fungus rather than a brown rot like most rots we usually see. This white rot attacks the wood lignum and cellulose differently than brown rot and is responsible for forming a material which is similar in many ways to charred cloth. I am still looking into this and trying to find other fungi or material botanically related to Innonotus to try them out. Maybe this will help you with the tinder issue and maybe you and others can help pursue this research further.

Innonotus was also used medicinally in Russia, one source mentioned that (can't remember off hand, but I did write it down somewhere).

For tinder, this stuff is indeed amazing. One very fine spark into it and you can't put it out! However, I've noticed that if it dries out too dry, it no longer works. Much testing still to be done...

Best regards,

AndrÈ
PS We've got a great primitive skills group with many very knowledgeable leaders, you are very invited to join us!

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

André,
Merci de m'avoir indiqué le PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP !
J'ai rencontré quelques difficultés pour m'abonner, mais tout est bien maintenant.
J'ai reçu déjà plus de 80 messages, et cela semble bien intéressant.
Un des domaines qui m'attire le plus est la production de feu. Nous avons, avec quelques amis d'une
association archéologique de la région de Liège en Belgique, beaucoup travaillé la production
(préhistorique) du feu. Si cela t'intéresse, je peux t'envoyer la copie d'un article
que nous avons
publié (en Françaïs) :
On y parle notamment des initiateurs (champignons) testés.

J'ai de bons contacts avec des archéologues suisses, et j'ai reçu un article indiquant les champignons utilisés (une quinzaine) par les néolithiques du lac de Neufchâtel en Suisse. Quelques-uns étaient des initiateurs pour le feu.

En ce qui concerne le feu par friction et percussion, je connais un bon spécialiste françaïs : Jacques Collina-Girard. Il a publié quelques articles intéressants, et je peux t'en faire parvenir une copie si cela t'intéresse.

Nous nous sommes spécialisés dans les briquets en fer, et j'en ai d'ailleurs forgé une quarantaine la semaine dernière. Il faut dire que nous avons fait des recherches récemment, et que la plus vieille occurrence d'un briquet en fer remonte à 400 BC. Il s'agit de 3 briquets en fer provenant d'une sépulture collective de l'âge du fer (La Tène), dans la grotte Ambre, à Eprave en Belgique. Ils ont une forme très différente des briquets en fer connus. J'en ai quelques copies, et si tu es intéressé, je peux t'en faire parvenir un (avec les dessins des pièces originales). Je voudrais d'ailleurs le faire savoir au PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP. Peux-tu leur transmettre un message leur proposant gracieusement un briquet en fer. Je m'engage à envoyer gratuitement un briquet et quelques explications y ceux qui m'en feront la demande.

Comme chaque année, le premier jour de l'an, je vais me promener au Cap Blanc Nez, au bord de la mer entre la France et l'Angleterre, où ils ont creusé le tunnel sous la manche. On y trouve du silex dans la craie, mais aussi Énormément de marcassite, le fameux bisulfure de fer qui est attesté comme le plus ancien procédé de production de feu (tant que l'on ne retrouve pas une drille en bois). J'ai toutes les références des sites où on a retrouvé de la marcassite (paléo supérieur). Je peux également t'envoyer un kit complet : marcassite, briquet en silex, amadou.

Voilà, j'espère que si des renseignements que je te fournirai sont intéressants, tu auras le courage d'en faire une traduction sommaire pour le faire savoir aux membres du PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP. Mon anglais n'est pas assez bon pour le faire moi-même.

Merci pour ton obligeance.
Meilleurs voeux de santé et de prospérité l'occasion de l'année nouvelle, ý toi et aux membres de
ta famille.

Pascal Chauvaux
Pascal.Chauvaux@gate71.be

From - Wed Jan  8 10:04:54 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA18808; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 21:21:03 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA02345; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 21:18:18 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 08 Jan 1997 21:23:00 EST
Received: from arthur.computer-services.com (arthur.computer-services.com
[206.101.249.129]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP
id VAA02339 for ; Wed, 8 Jan
1997 21:17:55 -0500 (EST)
Received: from computer.computer-services.com (pml_17.computer-services.com
[207.49.196.209]) by arthur.computer-services.com (8.7.4/8.7.1) with
SMTP id UAA28381 for ; Wed, 8
Jan 1997 20:19:05 -0600
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Wed, 8 Jan 1997 20:19:05 -0600
Message-ID: <199701090219.UAA28381@arthur.computer-services.com>
X-Sender: boldrjak@computer-services.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Light Version 1.5.2
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852778721.070
From: Stephen Passwater
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
boldrjak@COMPUTER-SERVICES.COM
Subject: flint
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

OK, I'm like brand new here. As if the question I'm about to ask won't tip
you off.

Where is the best place to find flint? And is there anyplace that
commercially sells it?(In chunks that is, not in a fire starter kit or
anything like that).

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 10 00:09:38 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA02666; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 11:39:28 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
Stephen Passwater wrote:
>
> OK, I'm like brand new here. As if the question I'm about to ask won't tip
> you off.
>
> Where is the best place to find flint? And is there anyplace that
> commercially sells it? (In chunks that is, not in a fire starter kit or
> anything like that).

If you are using it for flint & steel fire making you don't necessarily have to use genuine flint. Any stone that is volcanically produced and high in silica will work. Here are a list of suppliers, I know about, though, for flint and other knappable material. I also have some pieces if you just want to make flint & steel fire with them for $3 a piece (ppd):

Billy Joe Sheldon, 133 E. 4th Ave., Springfield, CO 81073, Phone: (719) 523-4434
  Sells allBates flint.
Dan Stueber, 5009 N. Girard, Portland, OR 97203
  Sells scribes (For signing work).
Flintworks, Scott K. Silsby, 6604 Placid St., Falls Church, VA 22043,
  Phone: (703) 533-0056
  Scott is the best teacher and tool maker when it comes to greenstone tools. He also teaches workshops in flintknapping, bow and arrow making and sells greenstone and greenstone tools. Greenstone sells for $2.00
lb. ($30.00 min. order), axe and adze blanks for $10.00 each (prices do not include UPS).
Jim Regan, 23 107 Erskin St., NE, Bethel, MN 55005, Phone: (612) 462-5568
Sells Brazilian agate slabs, percussion and flaking tools.

Native Way, P.O. Box 159, Washington, Mississippi 39190
Sells stone, tools and more.

Nemec Stone Co., Box 178A, Jarrell, TX 76536, Phone: (512) 746-5221 (evenIngs)
Sells several varieties of Texas flints.

Neolithics, Carl Ratzt, 1530 B St., Springfield, OR 97477
Sells obsidian and dacite.

Richardsonís Rec. Ranch, Ltd., Gateway Rt. Box 440, Madras, OR 97741
Sells stone.

T&J Copper Supplies, 1411 Blue Smoke, San Antonio, TX 78231
Copper supplies
Vision Maker Co., 116 Mt. Carmel Dr., Natchez Mississippi 39120
Sells tools, stone, reproductions.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Fri Jan 10 21:34:15 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA03540; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 00:22:21 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA07115; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 00:14:12 -0500 (EST)
Received: from sun.3rivers.net (sun.3rivers.net [208.136.181.46]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA07112 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 00:14:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by sun.3rivers.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id WAA04840; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 22:18:00 -0700 (MST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Fri, 10 Jan 1997 22:18:00 -0700 (MST)
X-Sender: tomelpel@mail.3rivers.net
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Stephen Passwater wrote:
>
> OK, I'm like brand new here. As if the question I'm about to ask won't tip you off.
>
> Where is the best place to find flint? And is there anyplace that commercially sells it? (In chunks that is, not in a fire starter kit or anything like that).

Stephen,

I teach about fifty kids each year to start flint & steel fires. My favorite steel striker is the edge of a common file. I collect a couple dozen ski files from the local ski shops every winter and break them into 3-4 inch pieces with a hammer so I can give each child their own set. All files work, but the best ones have smooth edges. You can grind the edge ribs off with a grinder if you want.

Once you have a steel striker it is easy to find workable "flint" rocks. Just pick up rocks everywhere you go and strike the steel against a sharp edge and watch for sparks. You will be surprised at what all will work. Any rocks with a high silica content will work, *except glass* (natural and artificial) which is too brittle. The edge of the rock has to be sharp to shear off little bits of metal from the file. The sparks are globs of burning metal.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
E-mail your postal address for a brochure of our books.
Benjamin Pressley wrote:

> Have you tried Iron Pyrite and quartz? If you have tell me more. I have
> not had any luck with it. My guess is that the Iron Pyrite is not hard
> enough to produce hot enough sparks.
>
> Someone correct me if I'm wrong on this, but my understanding of the
theory behind flint and steel sparks is that the flint cuts off a piece
of metal quickly which generates heat and sends a piece of hot metal
flying which is the spark. Different flints are harder and sharper and
will send a larger piece of metal flying, ie bigger spark.

If all this theory is true (my unverified assumption), then the reason
iron pyrite will be so hard to use is that the metal pieces in the
pyrite are too small, and the strike with flint or quartz cannot pull
off a large enough piece of metal to cause a good spark.

Anyone know more about this or care to comment about this theory?

Thanks for sharing,

AndrÈ

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1
Benjamin Pressley wrote:

> Have you tried Iron Pyrite and quartz? If you have tell me more.

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

Different flints are harder and sharper and
> will send a larger piece of metal flying, ie bigger spark.

> If all this theory is true (my unverified assumption), then the reason
> iron pyrite will be so hard to use is that the metal pieces in the
> pyrite are too small, and the strike with flint or quartz cannot pull
> off a large enough piece of metal to cause a good spark.

> Anyone know more about this or care to comment about this theory?

> Thanks for sharing,

> André

I'm not too sure about the size of the sparks being the key factor here,
although you are right about it being the flint's job to shear off pieces of steel. I'm not sure of all the science on this, but I do look for orange sparks when testing a fire steel. Yellow sparks indicate too soft of a steel and usually are not hot enough to do the job. On the other hand, you may have worked with some 'cooler' sparks for firemaking in other techniques. So, correct me if I'm wrong.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Wed Jan  8 10:50:07 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA19192; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 22:12:30 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA02692; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 22:10:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 08 Jan 1997 22:15:25 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA02689 for ; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 22:10:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.23 (srv4s3.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.23]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id WAA25329 for ; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 22:13:59 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D36941.3711@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Wed, 08 Jan 1997 09:30:41 +0000
X-UIDL: 852779923.002
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Iron pyrites and flint or quartz
References: <199701071820.NAA01649@major.globecomm.net> <32D322EA.7414@perigee.net> <32D22A1B.4335@saglac.qc.ca> <32D32FC2.3775@perigee.net>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chicl.saglac.qc.ca id WAA19192
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
> Different flints are harder and sharper and
> will send a larger piece of metal flying, ie bigger spark.
>
> If all this theory is true (my unverified assumption), then the reason
> iron pyrite will be so hard to use is that the metal pieces in the
> pyrite are too small, and the strike with flint or quartz cannot pull
> off a large enough piece of metal to cause a good spark.

Benjamin Pressley wrote:
> I'm not too sure about the size of the sparks being the key factor here,
> although you are right about it being the flint's job to shear off
> pieces of steel. I'm not sure of all the science on this, but I do look
> for orange sparks when testing a fire steel. Yellow sparks indicate too
> soft of a steel and usually are not hot enough to do the job. On the
> other hand, you may have worked with some 'cooler' sparks for firemaking
> in other techniques. So, correct me if I'm wrong.

HI Ben,

I'm convinced that size of sparks is an important factor! For example,
although ferrorarium (sp.) is probably the best steel from which you can
scrape a spark, the small sparks caused by rubbing the ferrorarium of a
Bic lighter are not sufficient to start a fire.

Are not the orange vs yellow sparks caused by the quality of the flint
rather than the quality of the steel? Or partly so?

I may be dead wrong on this one, and I'd sure like a metalurgist or
someone else to clear this up. I'll do more research, meanwhile if
anyone has any ideas...

André

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1
Your theory is supported by actual use. Early firearms developed with the wheellock. I have not read any evaluation of this but, the constantly rotating wheel ensures that a sufficient quantity of hot sparks are produced using the cutting material at that time... not flint but iron pyrite. The effect of the wheel is to provide a loooong striking surface for the pyrite and plenty of sparks to ignite the priming charge.

--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country
From: eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com (merv martin)
Subject: Re: Iron pyrites and flint or quartz
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id QAA16847
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="iso-8859-1"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> If all this theory is true (my unverified assumption), then the reason
> iron pyrite will be so hard to use is that the metal pieces in the
> pyrite are too small, and the strike with flint or quartz cannot pull
> off a large enough piece of metal to cause a good spark.
> Anyone know more about this or care to comment about this theory?
> Thanks for sharing,
> André

Well, I said in reply to Benjamin that I thought that the smaller crystals
in a large mass were better than the larger crystals in fewer numbers. I
think this may be because you get more individual sparks, even though
they're smaller. I don't remember questioning spark size.

This should hold your theory true, Andre, smaller sparks, but more of them

Hmm another one for experiment. How can I keep strike pressure the same so
as to make meaningful the outcome of using several different materials
together.

Take Care
Merv

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Jan  8 10:04:23 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA18330; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 20:07:52 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA01951; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 20:04:51 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 08 Jan 1997 20:09:32 EST
Received: from mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com [204.180.128.166]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA01945 for
; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 20:04:39
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.247] (ip247.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net
[38.11.182.247]) by mule0.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id
UAA162094; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 20:08:31 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
I may be off the mark here, but I have yet to find any reference for the
use of flint and steel in the Americas before the coming of the Europeans.
I believe that hand and bow drills figured in the lion's share of fire
making implements, with fire bundles and fire conservation also being
important. The only other report of firemaking that didn't use a bow drill
was a vague reference to the use of what might have been a crystal lens in
a ritual from the Andes in which the sun started the first fire of the year
or some other such ritual.

Jim Burdine
LV, NV
jburdine@pipeline.com
James E. Burdine wrote:
>
> I may be off the mark here, but I have yet to find any reference for the
> use of flint and steel in the Americas before the coming of the Europeans.
> I believe that hand and bow drills figured in the lion's share of fire
>
>You are probably right, when you say the 'lion's share' but there *are*
> a few examples of percussion fire starting. Diamond Jenness, in
> _Material Culture of the Copper Eskimo_ (1946:5,55) reports observing
> Iron pyrites used for fire starting. I don't have the original handy,
> but the source citing Jenness says that the pyrites were struck
> together. The same technique -- pyrite on pyrite was also used by the
> Beothuk in Newfoundland and Ingeborg Marshall, in _A History and
> Ethnography of the Beothuk_ (1996:302) says:
>
> "The Beothuk lit fires by striking two pieces of iron pyrite together
to produce sparks that would ignite bird down or other inflammable
> matter. Five Beothuk burials contained iron pyrites among the grave
> goods; fragments of pyrites were also recovered from several housepits
> on archaeological sites. The use of metallic crystals for percussion
> striking was the main method of producing fire among Algonkquian
> speakers north of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Le Jeune, who described
> this procedure from the Montagnais in Labrador in 1634, said that they
> used the down-covered skin of an eagle's thigh to catch the sparks."

We found Iron Pyrite nodules in prehistoric Dorset sites in the central
High Arctic and they have been identified as far starters. We
experimented with them a bit in the lab and couldn't get very good
results banging them together. They had been lying more or less exposed
on the surface for 800-1000 years, (not much soil formation in the high
arctic) so perhaps the 'rind' suggested in another post was too thick?
Our experiments may also have been somewhat half-hearted as they *were*
artifacts. We did try them against a Hudson Bay steel and got showers
of sparks. There were lots of meteoric iron tools found in the same
site (as well as quartz crystals) so maybe the pyrite was stuck against
this iron? It makes sense, though, that in the far north where the only
wood is driftwood to use a fire starting technology that isn't dependant
on plant fibers.

cheers,

Tim
Dr. AF Bourbeau wrote:

> Are not the orange vs yellow sparks caused by the quality of the flint rather than the quality of the steel? Or partly so?

I'm convinced it is the quality of steel. Hard, hi-carbon steel throws good 'hot' orange sparks. I can use the same good firesteel on many different 'flints' (I use that term loosely) and get tyhe same orange sparks. I have used quartz, rhyollite, various cherts and lots of other stones. In fact I take a piece of rhyollite with me to the flea market
and test old worn out files for their hardness. If they throw good
orange sparks, I buy them, bring them home, brek them in shorter pieces,
grind one edge smooth and have plenty of fire steels to pass around.

------------------------------------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:  TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 10 05:00:35 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA04911; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:23:47 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA03606; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:23:18 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:28:01 EST
Received: from server00.gate71.be ([194.119.229.33]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca
(8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA03597 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:22:31
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [194.119.229.106] (194.119.229.106) by server00.gate71.be (EMWAC
SMTPRS 0.80) with SMTP id ; Fri, 10
Jan 1997 22:25:00 +0100
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
X-Mailer: Eudora F1.5.4b5
Date: Fri, 10 Jan 1997 22:26:35 +0200
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWither240@AOL.COM
X-UIDL: 852931790.001
From: Pascal.Chauvaux@server00.gate71.be (Pascal Chauvaux)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
Pascal.Chauvaux@server00.gate71.be
Subject: Re: Iron pyrites and flint or quartz
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>What is the most common source of the optimal quality of steel used in the
>typical flint/steel fire starting method?

The most common is the steel from a file.
I must wear sunglasses when I strike a light with my file steel striker...
If you are interested in, will send to you a typical European Iron Age
striker (a free gift).
Salutations de Belgique
Pascal Chauvaux

From - Tue Jan 7 05:26:36 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA03293; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 01:50:27 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA06794; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 01:47:39 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 01:47:39 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from [194.119.229.73] by server00.gate71.be (EMWAC SMTPRS 0.80) with SMTP id ; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 07:50:07 +0100
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: 
MIME-Version: 1.0
X-Mailer: Eudora F1.5.4b5
Date: Tue, 7 Jan 1997 07:51:42 +0200
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
X-UIDL: 852675708.063
From: Pascal.Chauvaux@server00.gate71.be (Pascal Chauvaux)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
Pascal.Chauvaux@server00.gate71.be
Subject: Native Americans flint and steel firemaking tools
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Hello,

Who knows what kind (shape) of steel striker Native Americans used?
In page 144 and 145 of a book of Jim Hamm (Bows and Arrows of the Native Americans), I can see quivers with bags for flint and steel firemaking tools, but not the shape of the tools.
Thank you for sharing your knowledge.

Pascal Chauvaux

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan 7 08:36:46 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA09435; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 18:53:41 -
Hi Pascal,

All of the ones I've seen sold in museums and forts in Canada, (I've toured extensively) look like a fairly square C the size of 4 fingers with a 1/4 inch circle recurve at the top for a better grip for the thumb. They are about 1/4 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1
> Hello,

> Who knows what kind (shape) of steel striker Native Americans used?
> In page 144 and 145 of a book of Jim Hamm (Bows and Arrows of the Native
> Americans), I can see quivers with bags for flint and steel firemaking
> tools, but not the shape of the tools.
> Thank you for sharing your knowledge.

> Pascal Chauvaux

Substitute Iron Pyrite and Iron Ore for the steel we use. The shape is
whatever you find. The points on the Iron Pyrite are nice. Quartz works
almost as well as flint. (In flintlocks too!) I don't know of any special
shaping done to firemaking tools.

I don't remember when I read or heard this.

A fire horn was used to transport a coal. That'd be a horn that was hollow,
like a cow or buffalo horn. Filled with punk and/or moss and/or cattail fluff, and/or anything else you can find that would burn slowly in a low oxygen atmosphere. The horn was sealed, but not tightly.

Now... can anyone verify this info?

Merv

---

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan  7 10:16:57 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA10498; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 21:23:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA14826; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 21:21:15 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 21:25:55 EST
Received: from mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com [204.180.128.166]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA14815 for ; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 21:20:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.29] (ip29.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.29]) by mule0.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id VAA173728; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 21:24:54 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Tue, 7 Jan 1997 18:27:06 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, eaten_by_limestone@CLIFFHANGER.COM
X-UIDL: 852690704.001
From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: Re: Native Americans flint and steel firemaking tools
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

A fire horn was used to transport a coal. That'd be a horn that was hollow, like a cow or buffalo horn. Filled with punk and/or moss and/or cattail fluff, and/or anything else you can find that would burn slowly in a low oxygen atmosphere. The horn was sealed, but not tightly.

Now... can anyone verify this info?
Merv,
That special last week on Discovery spoke about the forest people of the Congo, apparently they have no traditional knowledge of how to start fire, they rely on carefully preserved coals carried in a similar manner to restart fire even while on long journeys. So each and every fire is a link to long dead ancestors that managed the continuance of the original spark. Some one asked if I felt that it was possible to be dropped naked into a survival situation and survive. I believe it is possible or I wouldn't be involved in the study of primitive skills. I've been interested in survival since I was very young. After making several survival kits of various sizes, I recognised the weakness of modern survivalism. It was too gadget oriented. What do you do if you don't have the Rambo wonder knife, or designer load carrying gear, with G.I. Joe popup tent. I realized that the only survival kit I really needed was my head and what ever knowledge I could retain. A flake tool can take the place of a knife (or an easily made wooden stiletto depending on the need), a debris lean to can take the place of the pontent. The concept of becoming native to a place can be a goal as well. Learning what foods to gather, where to find water, how to stay cool or warm (in the desert both are important)

Jim Burdine
LV, NV
jburdine@pipeline.com
merv martin wrote:
>
> Substitute Iron Pyrite and Iron Ore for the steel we use. The shape is
> whatever you find. The points on the Iron Pyrite are nice. Quartz works
> almost as well as flint. (In flintlocks too!) I don't know of any special
> shaping done to firemaking tools.

Have you tried Iron Pyrite and quartz? If you have tell me more. I have
not had any luck with it. My guess is that the Iron Pyrite is not hard
enough to produce hot enough sparks.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Tue Jan 7 21:19:01 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA12103; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 02:00:08 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA17250; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 01:58:31 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 08 Jan 1997 02:03:11 EST
Received: from emout20.mail.aol.com (emout20.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.46]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA17247 for
; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 01:58:22
-0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout20.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0)
id CAA15745 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Wed, 8 Jan
1997 02:02:27 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852732822.037
From: CAGrean@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, CAGrean@AOL.COM
Date: Wed, 8 Jan 1997 02:02:27 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970108003242_1257988298@emout20.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Native Americans flint and steel firemaking tools
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

In a message dated 97-01-07 01:55:41 EST, you write:

>Who knows what kind (shape) of steel striker Native Americans used?

Steel strikers were introduced to the Native Americans by European Colonists so they used those received in trade. Steel strikers were a common trade item and are mentioned in many early documents that list trading inventories of expeditions. Pre-contact Native Americans naturally had no steel implements, however it would be interesting to know at what point blacksmithing and metalworking was developed among the Native Americans and if, indeed they developed any improvements or adaptations. I do not know of any but it would be an interesting line of inquiry.

Where there any pre-contact methods used to light fires by sparking such as iorn pyrite or other minerals? And what impact did the introduction of easier or different fire lighting methods have on pre-steel cultures?

Here are a couple of places that may be able to answer your questions with more authority than I

AMERICAN PEOPLES/ REGIONS RESOURCES
http://www.netgate.net/~jsd/susque.html

Native American Indian -- Art, Culture, Education, History. Science,
http://www.fdl.cc.mn.us/~isk

Native America
http://www.mstm.okstate.edu/students/jjohnson2/ok-native.htm

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Jan  8 10:03:47 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA16872; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 16:27:30 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA00354; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 16:26:16 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 08 Jan 1997 16:29:39 EST
Received: from beavis.globecomm.net (beavis.globecomm.net [207.51.48.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA00330 for ; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 16:24:47 -0500 (EST)
Received: from merv.midtown.net (merv.midtown.net [205.162.100.197]) by beavis.globecomm.net (8.8.4/8.8.0) with SMTP id QAA29475; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 16:28:11 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Have you tried Iron Pyrite and quartz? If you have tell me more. I have not had any luck with it. My guess is that the Iron Pyrite is not hard enough to produce hot enough sparks.

Whew, you're stirring up some good memories there. Cutting rocks with my grandfather in his rock shop and just playing.

Yes I have tried quartz and iron pyrite. It gave good sparks on the bench. (read as, not in a survival situation, but in a nice safe shop.) Iron pyrite does seem to have a "rind" of weathered material on the outside. The inner stuff works better, at least for me.

Now, the best result I had with pyrite was with a large mass of small crystals, rather than one or two large crystals. It seemed to help if the quartz face was fresh too. (I dropped my striker and it broke!) Oh, I did strike the iron pyrite with the quartz, not the other way around. Don't know why, just did.

I'll see it I can get the materials to try again.

take Care

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow -------------------------------------


> Ben wrote (after the post from Pascal Chauvaux),
>
> Well, they say no question is a stupid one, so I'll ask. "Striking Bats"
> is not a term I'm familiar with. Please define. As soon as I know what
> they are I'm sure I'll be interested in your friend Pascal's offer.
>
> In flint & steel fire, it's the steel part! What's the english name?
>
> AndrÈ
>
> The striker.

Bat would work now that we have a definition...

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow -------------------------------------
| Merv Martin      * * * * *                                 |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * * * * *                |
| www.midtown.net/~merv * * *                               |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages)       |
-------------------------------------------------------------
Fruit flies like a banana---

From - Sun Jan 19 20:26:22 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from majordomo.iastate.edu (majordomo.iastate.edu [129.186.1.10]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.3/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA27963 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 00:49:44 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from majordom@localhost) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) id XAA27492 for knapper-outgoing; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 23:18:43 -0600
X-Authentication-Warning: majordomo.iastate.edu: Processed from queue /var/spool/majordomo/knapper
Received: from pop-2.iastate.edu (pop-2.iastate.edu [129.186.6.62]) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA27487 for ; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 23:18:39 -0600
Received: from bbs.disknet.com ([206.246.165.9]) by pop-2.iastate.edu (8.7.3/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA04852 for ; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 23:18:36 -0600 (CST)
From: rockman@disknet.com
Received: from MHS by bbs.disknet.com with MHS
   id AABDBGFC ; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 00:19:44 -0500
Date: Sun, 19 Jan 1997 00:19:22 -0500
Message-ID:
Subject: update on material
To: knapper@iastate.edu
Sender: owner-knapper@iastate.edu
Precedence: bulk
Reply-To: knapper@iastate.edu

Greetings from Eric's Rocks and such!!!!!!!

I thought i give you all a update on materials.

BRANDON FLINT ENGLAND $2.65 LBS NODULES 10LBS TO 100LBS.

INDIANA HORNSTONE I JUST HAVE 40LBS LEFT TELL THE GROUND DRY UP . $2.00 A POUND PLUS SHIPPING & HANDLING.

AGATE FROM RHODE ISLAND $4.00 A LBS PLUS SHIPPING AND HANDLING.

BEGINNING IN THE SUMMER OF 97 WE HOPE TO HAVE LARGE SUPPLY OF SLABS OF BRANDON FLINT AND HORNSTONE.

CARVING STONE
Arcadian Butterstone from south africa $2.50 a pound plus shipping and handling.

Soapstone $2.00 a pound plus shipping and handling.

Indiana slate sheet gray and red plus shipping and handling.
11 5/8 x 8 3/4 , 3/8 thick $7.00 each.
11 5/8 x 5 5/8 , 3/8 thick $6.00 each.
8 5/8 x 5 5/8 ,3/8 thick $5.00 each.
7 1/4 x 4 5/8 ,1/4 thick $4.00 each.
5 5/8 x 5 5/8 , 3/8 thick $3.00

ARROWHEAD OCARINA MUSICAL FLUTE INSTRUMENT $35.00

FIRST SOUTHEN INDIANA FLINT KNAP-N JUNE 20-22 1997

VISA , MASTERCARD AND DISCOVER WELCOME

CONTACT
ERIC'S ROCKS AND SUCH
PO BOX 133
LEAVENWORTH INDIANA 47137
PHONE 812-739-2358
ROCKMAN@DISKNET.COM

DISK Net, Inc. Visit us at WWW.DISKNET.COM
Hi John, to answer your question (which is quite valid), I refer you to the following excerpt from the primitive skills group welcome page:

"The main purpose of this group is to provide a way by which all lovers of primitive skills can discuss various subjects related to wilderness ways."
Topics which you are encouraged to discuss with other group members are:

1. All primitive wilderness living skills such as shelter, fire, cordage, primitive tanning, natural foods, primitive living, primitive rafts & boats, primitive direction finding, primitive trapping techniques, weapons for wilderness survival, primitive hygiene, protection from insects, primitive weather prediction, fighting cold, primitive medicine, traditional dog sledding, edible plants etc.

2. Subjects related to modern realistic wilderness survival, such as surviving unexpected emergencies after airplane crashes, broken down snowmobiles etc.

3. Discussions about environmental concerns related to the practice of primitive skills are also welcome.

Remember! This group is intended for fun, sharing and learning about primitive wilderness survival and living skills. All members will be asked to refrain from discussing topics related to specific religious, political or ethnic views."

In number 2 above, learning how to make a fire with a gun might save a hunter's life when he gets lost in the wilderness. That's why the subject is welcome on this list.

Hope this answers your question.

AndrÈ

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA     G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA  G7H 5A7
418-543-2888
bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Fri Dec 27 05:37:12 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA15468; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 15:43:03 -
I have made fire with my flintlock musket by plugging the touchhole, blowing out the priming, and then placing a piece of charcloth into the pan. When you close the frizzen and the spark the piece the charcloth is lit by the resultant shower of sparks and can be blown into a flame. BTW i am going to try to make a fire piston out of a cut off piece of my musket barrel - would this be considered fire with guns? (ha-ha) -ketil
James E. Burdine wrote:

> > [Have you tried this? Is it practical? Anybody got an airgun and some
> > tinder? Maybe a tinder holder for an airgun's business-end might be a
> >]
> > The airguns they are talking about are springpiston type airguns in which a
> > large spring drives a piston in a cylinder with a small hole in it. That
> > hole is directly in line with the barrel. I've noticed smoke in the barrel
> > after firing many of them as they burn off piston lubrication.
> > I'm not sure where or how one would place tender where it wouldn't be fired
> > out of the barrel.
> > JB

I've made fire with normal shotguns by placing tinder material in a heap
enclosed by a fence of sticks driven into the ground or in a hole under
a root (to prevent tinder pile from blowing away). Maybe this would
work with airguns too?

André

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA    G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA    G7H 5A7
418-543-2888
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> James E. Burdine wrote:
> >
> > > [Have you tried this? Is it practical? Anybody got an airgun and some
tinder? Maybe a tinder holder for an airgun's business-end might be a
> >>
> > The airguns they are talking about are springpiston type airguns in which a
> > large spring drives a piston in a cylinder with a small hole in it. That
> > hole is directly in line with the barrel. I've noticed smoke in the barrel
> > after firing many of them as they burn off piston lubrication.
> > I'm not sure where or how one would place tender where it wouldn't be fired
> > out of the barrel.
> >
> >
> I've made fire with normal shotguns by placing tinder material in a heap
> enclosed by a fence of sticks driven into the ground or in a hole under
> a root (to prevent tinder pile from blowing away). Maybe this would
> work with airguns too?
> 
> AndrÈ

Thanks to AndrÈ and all the other list member that have given feed back on this question of mine. I think, that if barrel lube can produce muzzle flash with an airgun (as seen after dark) than a little barrel lubing may be a way to get some contained tinder started. I reason that the gas compression from an airgun's cylinder may be greater than that produced from manual operation of a fire piston. I figure the muzzle
flash might be either attributed to electrostatic discharge, ignition of the device's petroleum based lubrication or simple ignition of airborne dust particles. As for a muzzle-end tinder containment add-on, I agree that a captive plug with a blind-end would be best for gas compression, but would likely blow off like a pop-the-cork toy gun. Radial (small side ports) venting (screened possibly) might be sufficient for enough compression to ignite tinder. However, putting an air gun up to a socket on a fire piston should also work.

Thanks, this has been fun.

Chris

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 23 12:17:54 1996
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA19389 for ; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 23:33:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.134]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA96; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 23:30:59 -0500
Message-ID: <32BF6BD1.891@perigee.net>
Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 23:36:17 -0600
X-UIDL: 851403821.010
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire with guns
References: <32BE63B2.687D@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> James E. Burdine wrote:
> >
> > > [Have you tried this? Is it practical? Anybody got an airgun and some
tinder? Maybe a tinder holder for an airgun's business-end might be a
> >
> > The airguns they are talking about are springpiston type airguns in which a
> large spring drives a piston in a cylinder with a small hole in it. That
> hole is directly in line with the barrel. I've noticed smoke in the barrel
> after firing many of them as they burn off piston lubrication.
> I'm not sure where or how one would place tender where it wouldn't be fired
> out of the barrel.
> JB
>
> I've made fire with normal shotguns by placing tinder material in a heap
> enclosed by a fence of sticks driven into the ground or in a hole under
> a root (to prevent tinder pile from blowing away). Maybe this would
> work with airguns too?
>
I have made fire with a muzzle loading rifle by placing cloth or some other tinder in the barrel loosely and then firing it into the air. Sometimes it takes a couple of attempts, but it gradually comes down flaming. I have heard this could be done with a shotgun also if one carefully removes the shot in the shells down to the wadding and then firing it into the air.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. Check out our home page for more information.
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Mon Dec 23 22:41:19 1996
Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA00787 for ; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 10:32:48 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.4] (ip4.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.4]) by mule1.mindspring.com (8.8.2/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA36862; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 15:36:41 GMT
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-Id:
Mime-Version: 1.0
The main problem with springpiston airguns is that while being simple in operation they can be easily damaged by dieseling. That causes damage to the springs and the piston seal. Also it would take a very special tender to be small enough to pass down an airgun barrel and still hold together long enough to be found and then used for firestarting. I've tried the felt cleaning pellets without success, and trust me DO NOT SHOOT TOWARD YOUR HAND AND TRUST THAT ANY PAD WILL STOP THE FORCE OF, OR PENETRATION OF THE FELT PELLET. Forgive me for shouting, but benefit by one of my moments of supidity. Air rifles can be good, quiet foraging tools for small game, but if you rely on it for small game hunting don't risk it for fire making. You will be encouraging conditions that shorten the life of your tool.

JB
The main problem with springpiston airguns is that while being simple in operation they can be easily damaged by dieseling. That causes damage to the springs and the piston seal. Also it would take a very special tender to be small enough to pass down an airgun barrel and still hold together long enough to be found and then used for firestarting. I've tried the felt cleaning pellets without success, and trust me DO NOT SHOOT TOWARD YOUR HAND AND TRUST THAT ANY PAD WILL STOP THE FORCE OF, OR PENETRATION OF THE FELT PELLET. Forgive me for shouting, but benefit by one of my moments of supidity. Air rifles can be good, quiet foraging tools for small game, but if you rely on it for small game hunting don't risk it for fire making. You will be encouraging conditions that shorten the life of your tool.

JB

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Dec 31 07:05:12 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA05162; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 01:15:05 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA05551; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 01:12:18 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 01:16:55 EST
Received: from hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU [128.205.32.11]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA05548 for ; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 01:12:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: (goetz@localhost) by hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (8.7.5/8.6.4) id BAA12142; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 01:15:35 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852076858.044
From: Phil Goetz
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Message-ID: <199612310615.BAA12142@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Subject: Re: Fire with guns
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM
Date: Tue, 31 Dec 1996 01:15:34 -0500 (EST)
In-Reply-To: <32BF4EA3.31CC@rand.nidlink.com> from "Chris Smith" at Dec 23, 96 08:31:47 pm
X-Mailer: ELM [version 2.4 PL25]
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

I wonder if you would have more luck trying to light a fire with a rifle if you put a flash suppressor on it. These hexagonal devices, which you find on the end of every M16, channel the flame that comes out of the
rifle into six narrow channels out to the side.

You can also get flash suppressors with only 4 of the 6 channels open; I believe this is so you can counter the rifle's upward kick by pointing the closed channels down. It also provides a more intense flash out of the 4 remaining channels and should work better.

Problem is that threaded barrels are generally illegal in the US.

Phil

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Dec 31 07:06:12 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA08105; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 12:29:18 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA07112; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 12:26:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 12:31:00 EST
Received: from milo.cfw.com (milo.cfw.com [205.219.240.6]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA07109 for ; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 12:26:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from stn15.cfw.com by milo.cfw.com; (5.65v3.2/1.1.8.2/12Dec95-0403PM) id AA28687; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 12:34:39 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32C97826.329@cfw.com>
Date: Tue, 31 Dec 1996 12:31:34 -0800
X-UIDL: 852076858.078
From: BKP
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, parslowb@CFW.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02E-KIT (Win16; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Fire with guns
References: <199612310615.BAA12142@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Phil Goetz wrote:

> Problem is that threaded barrels are generally illegal in the US.

They are? Please explain. I can think of several examples which are widely marketed (AR-15, Swedish M-96 & M-38, Winchester and Browning rifles equipped with B.O.S.S. device). This doesn't mean you are wrong, you might be ahead of the feds on this. TIA.

--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Dec 31 08:17:50 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA02892; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 20:07:01 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA08953; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 20:05:10 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 20:09:47 EST
Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA08950 for
; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 20:05:02
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.86] (ip86.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.86])
by mule1.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id UAA14082; Tue, 31
Dec 1996 20:08:54 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Tue, 31 Dec 1996 17:10:48 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, parslowb@CFW.COM
X-UIDL: 852081049.002
From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: Re: Fire with guns
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>Phil Goetz wrote:
>
>> Problem is that threaded barrels are generally illegal in the US.
>
>They are? Please explain. I can think of several examples which are
>widely marketed (AR-15, Swedish M-96 & M-38, Winchester and Browning
>rifles equiped with B.O.S.S. device). This doesn't mean you are wrong,
>you might be ahead of the feds on this. TIA.
>
>--
>Sincerely,
>Barent
>Duty, Honor, Country

This might be a regional thing. As far as I know there is no problem owning
a weapon with screw threads cut onto the barrel end. What is regulated is
the possession of a silencer. This isn't illegal to own but heavily taxed,
and severely regulated. As long as it isn't illegal to own locally, you can work through your local sheriff's office and Class 3 dealer to obtain a class 3 tax stamp to own either a fully automatic weapon or a silencer. I fired enough full auto while in the army, and the only ones I thought were any good were tripod mounted, you could really reach out and touch someone, otherwise they were a waste of ammo. Silenced weapons on the other hand, well lets say I like them, but for a $300 tax stamp and all of the trouble you have while you own them(you must notify the BATF and all law enforcement agencies ahead of time before you are going through their areas when you are moving the weapon. If you are relocated by your company you bettered hope that silenced weapons are not illegal in that area, or you will have to find someone to store your weapon with) they may not be worth the trouble. Besides that, they really don't cut down the sound much more than you would experience with a rifle barrel and CB caps. My apologies for straying into non-primitive weapons as far as I have.

JB

From - Fri Jan  3 22:21:09 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA11830; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 22:04:15 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA26833; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 22:02:47 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 22:07:23 EST
Received: from premier1.premier.net (premier1.premier.net [204.178.176.23]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA26830 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 22:02:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 206.124.197.63 (ts6063.dialup.premier.net [206.124.197.63]) by premier1.premier.net (8.7.5/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA17938; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 21:06:35 -0600
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CDC912.754D@premier.net>
Date: Fri, 03 Jan 1997 21:05:53 -0600
X-UIDL: 852391024.024
From: keith craig
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, ketil@PREMIER.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; U; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWaltz@AOL.COM
Subject: Re: Fire with (Primitive?) guns
References: <961231141435_405535786@emout18.mail.aol.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

i believe we might all take "primitive" to mean different things - I do consider my flintlock musket to be primitive. I do use other methods of
firemaking but i find using my gun is easiest to use when I'm in the woods, ketil
This was "Ishi's" favorite hand spindle material for fire making. I take it that it is a good as Mullein. Do you use it regularly? Are you able to collect straight, dry shoots or do you collect green ones and dry them?

I didn't know it was Ishi's favorite, but now I'm even more excited about buckeye. :-)

I have yet to collect any mullein, so I can't compare them. I've seen mullein down around Santa Barbara, but not up here in the SF Bay Area. I suspect it's out there; I just haven't noticed it. I've only been into primitive skills since last May. Buckeye is a tree, by the way, not a little plant like mullein. Did Ishi use very young saplings, or branches? I suppose it would have been easy to collect the seeds and grow saplings especially for this use??

I collected all the buckeye I've ever used from a single tree situated between a creek and a road. It suffered winter storm damage and I cut some logs from a large-diameter downed branch. I then cut the logs into spindles and fireboards, and have quite a
large stockpile. I've also used alder since it's a common wood, but alder's tougher to get a coal with. The buckeye that I have is great -- the coals come quick and fat and long-lasting.

--John

In a message dated 96-12-27 15:27:26 EST, John Wall writes:

<< Buckeye does make great fire
sticks, though, and it's a feast for the eyes as well. >>

This was "Ishi's" favorite hand spindle material for fire making. I take it that it is a good as Mullein. Do you use it regularly? Are you able to collect straight, dry shoots or do you collect green ones and dry them?

John Waltz
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> Does anyone know the scientific name for Buckeye that everyone is
> talking about? We don't have it up here in northern QuÈbec, and I'd
> sure like to look it up.
>
> Thanks
>
> AndrÈ
>
> ------------
> John Wall wrote:
> >
> > This was "Ishi's" favorite hand spindle material for fire making. I
> > take it that it is a good as Mullein. Do you use it regularly? Are
> > you able to collect straight, dry shoots or do you collect green
> > ones and dry them?
> >
> > I didn't know it was Ishi's favorite, but now I'm even more excited
> > about buckeye. :-)
> >
> > I have yet to collect any mullein, so I can't compare them. I've
> > seen mullein down around Santa Barbara, but not up here in the SF
> > Bay Area. I suspect it's out there; I just haven't noticed it.
> > I've only been into primitive skills since last May. Buckeye is a
> > tree, by the way, not a little plant like mullein. Did Ishi use
very young saplings, or branches? I suppose it would have been easy
to collect the seeds and grow saplings especially for this use??

I collected all the buckeye I've ever used from a single tree
situated between a creek and a road. It suffered winter storm
damage and I cut some logs from a large-diameter downed branch. I
then cut the logs into spindles and fireboards, and have quite a
large stockpile. I've also used alder since it's a common wood, but
alder's tougher to get a coal with. The buckeye that I have is
great -- the coals come quick and fat and long-lasting.

--John

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÉ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

Horse Chestnut and Buckeye are both the same thing: Buckeye, the Ohio
state tree, and there is also a California buckeye. The genus is
Aesculus, referring to the glycoside esculin.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE
Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for
June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over,
camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival
and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more
information.

TRIBE Homepage:
In a message dated 96-12-27 18:50:34 EST, W6@woodruff-sawyer.com writes:

<<
I have yet to collect any mullein, so I can't compare them. I've seen mullein down around Santa Barbara, but not up here in the SF Bay Area. I suspect it's out there; I just haven't noticed it. >

Once you begin looking for it you can recognize it many places, along roadsides, etc. Being so tall, it's hard to miss.

< I've only been into primitive skills since last May. Buckeye is a tree, by the way, not a little plant like mullein.

Understood
I don't know, but I would rather assume that he collected saplings which typically need little preparation of shaving, are of the right diameter and may grow straight for about 2 ft. length. There is a brief description in ISHI, The Last Indian, or Yahi (?). As I recall, it only mentions the use of buckeye. I think there is also a picture of him using a long (3 ft. or so) spindle. Too bad there is none here in the east, i'd like to try it.

I have had great success with dry mullein collected in the fall, splitting larger and thicker wall stalk bases for fire board. It took me about 3 years to get all the pieces right.

John Waltz

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 30 05:49:19 1996
Received: from rand.nidlink.com (root@rand.nidlink.com [205.219.220.1]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA20033 for ; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 12:20:04 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.49 (pm1-20.nidlink.com [205.219.220.49]) by rand.nidlink.com (8.8.4/8.6.9) with SMTP id JAA24688; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 09:28:16 -0800 (PST)
Message-ID: <32C54A1D.77A1@rand.nidlink.com>
Date: Sat, 28 Dec 1996 09:26:04 -0700
X-UIDL: 851985941.008
From: Chris Smith
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Buckeye
References: <32C3840E.3733@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> Does anyone know the scientific name for Buckeye that everyone is talking about? We don't have it up here in northern QuÈbec, and I'd sure like to look it up.
>
> Thanks
>
> AndrÈ

AndrÈ,

I believe naturalist Christopher Nyerges gave common names for some Buckeye varieties as California Chestnut and Horse Chestnut. Benjamin Pressley pointed out that their scientific names could be found on the "Ethnobotany Cafe" website's databases. I checked and under Native American Medicinal Plants, found the following. Here's three listings  -- the first for California Buckeye and the second and third
for the horse chestnut. Notice the specific mention of Native American Indian usages for food, medicine and as a talisman. I can tell you that it looks like large nut with a smooth hard brown shell. Kind of like a giant Filbert in appearance. Hope this helps.

Chris Smith

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Taxon : Aesculus californica
Genus Aesculus
Species californica
Author (Spach) Nutt.
Family Hippocastanaceae
Common_name California buckeye

Use
'Nuts consumed in large quantities in California. To remove the disagreeable taste, the nuts are boiled with large amount of water, the water being changed several times the resulting gruel valued as good food nuts sometimes roasted before lea...

.................................................................

Specific_use : Aesculus hippocastanum: Iroquois Analgesic

Family Hippocastanaceae
Genus Aesculus
Species hippocastanum
Taxon Aesculus hippocastanum
Common_name Horse chestnut, common
Tribe Iroquois
Use Analgesic
Note
Compound of powdered roots used for pains in the chest. No preparation given.

Reference Author Herrick, James William
Last_name Herrick
First_name James William
Year 1977
Title Iroquois Medical Botany
Publication University Microfilms International, Ann Arbor
Page 379

.................................................................

Family Hippocastanaceae
Genus Aesculus
Species hippocastanum
Taxon Aesculus hippocastanum
Common_name Horse chestnut
Tribe Mohegan
This reply kind of covers an earlier thread about fish poison and concerns the California Buckeye, Aesculus californica. Local natives did use the buckeye as a backup to acorn, preparing it in much the same way. So California buckeye is reputed to be edible when leached, though I will let you know after the ones I have gathered have dried and I prepare some. It is supposed to have needed more leaching than acorn and did not taste as good. Another use of the buckeye by the locals was...
as a fish poison. They would either make a dam or use a natural deep hole where fish were likely to be, and dump in a basket of ground buckeye. This was supposed to have knocked them out and they floated to the surface for easier gathering. BTW, in my area, the California buckeye produces an enormous fruit compared to the eastern variety, perhaps 2-3 in diameter. I have also heard that the nectar from the flower is poisonous to bees. Again, I cannot personally vouch for this. Hope this is new information.

Kevin

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Dec 31 08:17:45 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA02813; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 19:54:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA08798; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 19:52:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 19:56:59 EST
Received: from zen.dayton.net (zen.dayton.net [199.218.243.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA08794 for ; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 19:52:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from bmonagh@localhost) by zen.dayton.net (8.7.1/8.7.1) id TAA19436; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 19:59:48 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852080449.002
From: bmonagh@zen.dayton.net
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bmonagh@zen.dayton.net
Date: Tue, 31 Dec 1996 19:59:47 -0500 (EST)
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Buckeye
In-Reply-To: <32C3840E.3733@saglac.qc.ca>
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from QUOTED-PRINTABLE to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id TAA02813
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> Does anyone know the scientific name for Buckeye that everyone is
> talking about? We don't have it up here in northern QuÈbec, and I'd
> sure like to look it up.
Hey, I can help on this one, finally (living currently in Dayton, Ohio)!
Buckeye, Aesculus glabra, a medium-size tree with a range from the
Alleghenies to central Texas. Produces a foul-smelling odor when its
leaves, bark or twigs are crushed, hence the nickname "fetid buckeye."
Oh, and the chestnut-like seed is poisonous, so don't eat 'em. Wood is
fairly light and easy to carve, but fairly scarce these days.

-glen monaghan

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> JWaltz@AOL.COM wrote:
> > > In a message dated 96-12-27 18:50:34 EST, W6@woodruff-sawyer.com writes:
> > > > <<
> > > I have yet to collect any mullein, so I can't compare them. I've
> > > seen mullein down around Santa Barbara, but not up here in the SF
> > > Bay Area. I suspect it's out there; I just haven't noticed it. >
> > > > Once you begin looking for it you can recognize it many places, along
> > > roadsides, etc. Being so tall, it's hard to miss.
> > > > < I've only been into primitive skills since last May. Buckeye is a
> > > tree, by the way, not a little plant like mullein.
> > > > >
> > > > > Understood
> > > > > > been easy
> > > > > > to collect the seeds and grow saplings especially for this use??
> > > > > > >>
> > > > > > I don't know, but I would rather assume that he collected saplings which
> > > > > typically need little preparation of shaving, are of the right diameter and
> > > > > may grow straight for about 2 ft. length. There is a brief description in
> > > > > ISHI, The Last Indian, or Yahi (?). As I recall, it only mentions the use of
> > > > > buckeye. I think there is also a picture of him using a long (3 ft. or so)
> > > > > spindle. Too bad there is none here in the east, i'd like to try it.
I have had great success with dry mullein collected in the fall, splitting larger and thicker wall stalk bases for fire board. It took me about 3 years to get all the pieces right.

John Waltz

Hi John, sure like to know your conclusions on the dimensions of the pieces and other details. I have a hard time finding straight Mullein (Verbascum spp) here in the north.

Also, do you have a reference to that Ishi book you are mentioning?

Thanks for sharing, great stuff!

André

---

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA  G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA  G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

---

Mullein is pretty abundant here in the southeastern U.S. I could mail you a couple of straight stalks, I have that are well seasoned for you to play around with, if you like.

Also, Here are some references to the Ishi books I know about. Sorry, I don't have an ISBN:
Ishi, In Two Worlds by Theodora Kroeber
Ishi, Last of His Tribe by Theodora Kroeber
Ishi, The Last Yahi by Theodora Kroeber
They can be ordered from: B.O.S.S., P.O. Box 1590, Boulder, CO 80306, Phone: (303) 444-9779

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

Also Check Out Ted Baileyís Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html

In a message dated 96-12-28 11:39:37 EST, Andre' writes:

<< Hi John, sure like to know your conclusions on the dimensions of the pies and other details. I have a hard time finding straight Mullein...
(Verbascum spp) here in the north.

Also, do you have a reference to that Ishi book you are mentioning?

Thanks for sharing, great stuff! >>

I use Mullein fire board and stalk. Suitable spindle pieces are about 10 to 20 % of all stalks from what I have found, so keep looking. The business end (bottom end of stalk) of the spindle is 3/8" to 7/16" in dia. and the stalk is 20 to 28 inches long. Often you will find a suitably straight piece somewhere along a longer stalk so don't just look for 20 to 30 inch stalks, you'll be looking forever. I have been successful with stalks 18" long, but the longer, the better (easier). Split mullein stalks as fire board can be any diameter larger than at least 1.25 to 1.5 times the diameter of the spindle. The thicker the wall of the stalk you use for the fire board, the better. There is more "meat" in the material and therefore less chance of pushing or burning through before you get a coal going. Sometimes you can find one stalk which is tall enough to get both parts from but more often you need to use two separate stalks. Larger stalks serve best as boards, thinner (but not too thin) and straight stalks serve as spindles. The pith should be left in the board as it helps condition the spindle and I think helps produce a good powder reservoir to heat up to ignition (smouldering coal) temperature. Start the spindle circle in it nearer one side or the other then cut the notch. Successive "holes" can be formed down in a row spaced every 3/4 inch or so. A used stalk board looks like a spent cap-gun roll of caps. Lastly, I use a piece of flattened wood (a wood fire board would work fine) to place the mullein fire board on top of and which the powder coal forms on. No tinder is necessary. Actually, tinder at the face of the notch packs and suffocates the coal powder. Too much pressure and too slow twirling of the spindle are two common errors which will defeat success. Take your time in developing calluses on your hands as well. You will no doubt get blisters and have to lance them, let them heal a bit and start again when they dry. Keep on trying. Good luck. Glad to help out.
> Some one posted a success with a cattail stalk (for fire making that
> is) a day or two ago. I'm having some difficulty with this technique.
> Could some one post some info.
>
> I would second this request. My experience with cattail is that it just
> is not strong enough to withstand use for friction fire making
> (handdrill).

I suppose I mentioned that I had just gotten my first fire with a cattail in my intro, so I'll take a poke at this.

The key seems to be speed rather than downward pressure. Cattail doesn't have great strength, and power is my typical MO (Doesn't fit? get a bigger hammer!) I probably broke three shafts before I figured it out. Learning on cattail is a great way to perfect form. I was surprised at how fast it drills through a fireboard of cedar though, and recommend a little bit thicker board than usual. Apparently that outer layer is quite hard. I wish you luck, and would love to hear of any successes and frustrations as you go. I practiced this for a long time before I got a fire – probably 10 - 15 tries. Usually I decide that whoever told me a particular weed would light up an ember was crazy after about three or four unsuccessful tries.

See you in a week or two,
Kevin

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Sun Jan 12 20:50:46 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA16963; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 00:44:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA21217; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 00:43:43 -0500 (EST)
Received: from priv-sys05-le0.agt.net (clgrps05.agt.net [198.161.156.16]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AAA21198 for
; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 00:43:06
Some one posted a success with a cattail stalk (for fire making that is) a day or two ago.
I'm having some difficulty with this technique. Could some one post some info.

What some tried and proven fire boards (woods) that work with these stalks?

Even when dry, the stalks seem awfully flimsy to me. (sort of like a straw, and as soon as your stalk gets a kink in it, it folds over.) There is more than one species so maybe the flower stalks of one species are more "woody" than the other?

What diameter works best?

Kelly Harlton

PS
The Idea of making fire with cattails excites me because there are not a lot of woody stemmed weeds to use for a hand drill in my area. recently I had a buddy (he lurks on this list also), send me mullein which works great! Now I'm jealous that we dont have any of this wonderful plant in my area.

Kelly Harlton
> Some one posted a success with a cattail stalk (for fire making that is) a
> day or two ago.
> I'm having some difficulty with this technique. Could some one post some
> info.
> >
> > What's some tried and proven fire boards (woods) that work with these
> stalks?
> 
> I've seen a video of Ron Jamison using a cattail stalk on a clematis
> fireboard. In my part of the country, teasel stalks are abundant and work
> better than mullein. I like to use a Basswood (Linden) fireboard.
> 
> Here's another neat trick suggested by McPherson; put a small notch at the
> top of your handdrill. Then take a small piece of cordage, say 10", and put
> a small loop in each end. Lay the middle of the cordage in the notch with
> the two loops hanging down alongside the drill. Place your thumbs in the
> loops and position your hands as usual for rotating the drill. The loops
> provide a means of constant downward pressure so you do not have to worry
> about stopping at the end of a downward stroke and repositioning your
> hands. This is a great way to get your first fire with a handdrill and also
> helps in a survival situation if you can only find a short drill. The
> strength and quantity demands are much more modest than for a bow drill
> set.
> 
> Rob

Rob Chatburn, R.R.T
Director/Respiratory Care Dept.
Rainbow Babies & Childrens Hospital
11100 Euclid Ave.
Cleveland, OH 44106
(216) 844-7930
FAX: (216) 844-5246

Kelly Harlton wrote:
>
> Some one posted a success with a cattail stalk (for fire making that
> is) a day or two ago. I'm having some difficulty with this technique.
> Could some one post some info.
>
> I would second this request. My experience with cattail is that it just
> is not strong enough to withstand use for friction fire making
> (handdrill). I've heard of goldenrod being used also but have much the
> same problem around here with that. Essentially as soon as downward
pressure is applied it either a) disintegrates or b) bends and falls apart. I know mullien that is more than a year old will do this also but this stuff is fresh and dried from the previous summer. I'm also using the largest stalks I can find (around 3/8 to 1/2 inch at the base). A friend in Virginia has told me that mullien out there is to "thin walled" to work which has been contrary to my experience with good ol' Wisconsin Mullien. Maybe this is just a regional difference.

Mark

> What's some tried and proven fire boards (woods) that work with these stalks?
> Even when dry, the stalks seem awfully flimsy to me. (sort of like a straw, and as soon as your stalk gets a kink in it, it folds over.) There is more than one species so maybe the flower stalks of one species are more "woody" than the other?
> What diameter works best?
> Kelly Harlton
> PS
> The idea of making fire with cattails excites me because there are not a lot of woody stemmed weeds to use for a hand drill in my area. recently I had a buddy (he lurks on this list also), send me mulllein which works great! Now I'm jealous that we don't have any of this wonderful plant in my area.

From - Thu Jan 2 09:36:16 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA02317; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:13:35 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA20266; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:12:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 21:16:42 EST
Received: from chicl.saglac.qc.ca (chicl.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA20262 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:11:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.68 (srv1s19.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.70]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id VAA18869 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:15:12 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CB7D2A.412F@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Thu, 02 Jan 1997 09:17:30 +0000
X-UIDL: 852258075.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Whether fire by friction is by bowdrill, handdrill, fire saw or fire thong, the theoretical principle of what makes this work is very useful to know. I will try to put words on something that anyone who has practised these skills for a long time tends to know by "feeling".

When wood is rubbed against wood, one of the materials is harder than the other. Even when the wood for fireboard and spindle are of the same wood, the spindle is harder than the fireboard in the sense that the fibers are cross grain rather than with the grain. Thus, basic theoretical principle #1, the harder wood grinds wood dust from the softer wood. Of course, some wood is ground from the harder of the two wood pieces too, but much more from the softer of the two, in this case the fireboard. Principle #2, is that when wood grinds hard enough, wood dust is created in the form of sawdust. Principle #3, when wood grinds hard enough and/or fast enough, heat is generated and the sawdust starts smoking and charring.

Now, the following is very important. Usually, sawdust is light, and when you rub wood, the sawdust moves away from the friction area and thus cools off, and new wood is rubbed which creates new sawdust which is cooler. This means that theoretically, you can do this forever and never obtain a coal or a fire.

Principle #4, then, is that to obtain a coal, YOU MUST RUB WOOD OVER AND OVER ON THE SAME SAWDUST. This is why you cut a notch in the fireboard, for instance. The hot sawdust gets wedged in the notch, preventing it from moving away from the friction area, and you are then rubbing over and over on the same sawdust and a coal will get created at that exact spot.

The coal then spreads to the remaining sawdust, making it grow, creating sufficient heat to flame tinder.

Principle #5, weight. Usually it is not sufficient to have the burnt sawdust wedged in between a crack. There is also a weight consideration. The pile of sawdust must be big enough and therefore heavy enough to prevent the newly formed sawdust from moving it and cooling it off.

The 6th principle deals with the fact that for fire to occur, there must be sufficient combustible material. If there is not enough wood sawdust around the forming coal, it will not gather the momentum necessary to grow to usable size. Just like a fire can't be built with a match and a single stick, a coal cannot form if there isn't enough burnt sawdust around it.
Finally, 7th principle, a fire needs air to complete the heat-combustible material-oxygen trio necessary for ignition. This is much less important in practice because the small wood sawdust balls under a microscope reveal plenty of air space between them.

Now we can look at practical questions. Can a bowdrill fire be made without a notch? Yes, it makes sense now, doesn't it? Just keep drilling long enough and hard enough so that the burnt wood sawdust pile around the friction area gets big and heavy enough not to move as you keep drilling. I have obtained up to 5 coals at once all around the drilling area this way.

What about the fire saw. Well, as the saw traverses the bamboo half round board, burnt wood dust accumulates underneath and you are rubbing back and forth on the same pile of wood dust which can't move because it's stuck underneath the board! As in bow drill and hand drill, it is now obvious (or should be) that filling the notch with tinder will prevent a coal from forming...

Fire thong works on exactly the same principle. The thong goes underneath a piece of wood which is split open about 1/4 inch, and burnt wood sawdust accumulates above the thong and gets wedged in that split and can't move. Once the crack is full, the thong rubs back and forth against the same wood powder and the coal ignites there.

The fireplow technique is harder to understand and doesn't work everytime because it relies on brute strength to generate sufficient heat in the pile of wood dust to ignite a coal at a random spot in the pile. Since this technique cannot be duplicated precisely the same way everytime, it is hard to come to a conclusion about what is happening but I think it is this. As the pile of wood dust at the bottom of the plow gets heavy enough and cannot move, the heat transfer from the friction area ignites a coal on the bottom edge of the pile, which usually manifests itself as a coal on top of the pile when it is accidentally hit by the grinding stick. Note that I have tried making artifical fireplows by tying sticks to my jigsaw blade and was not able to produce fire! The principles are not respected accurately in this technique, and probably a random crack between the dust pile and the plow board must permit the formation of the coal. Scratch me!

As for the new "fire hole" technique, there must be a crack in one of the pieces of wood in which burnt wood dust can accumulate. It will most probably look like an upside down fire saw. Can't get away from the principles if it is to work. Looking forward to Ben's post on this.

Hope this helps...

André le pyromane

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

From - Mon Jan 6  00:41:14 1997
JWaltz@AOL.COM wrote:

> Dear Andre' & PSG's:
> 
> Great post on Fire by friction theory as well as Benjamin Pressley's on the
> fire saw! I am anxious to try it.
> 
> 1) I imagine that finding cattail which is dry and ready to start fire
> immediately after picking might be difficult. I would think that the plant
> would have to be in a spot which is dried up, otherwise the stalk will be
> wicking up water and will require a couple days drying time (provided you can
> find a dry place to dry it in, like your living room). Any comment?

Barry Keagan commented in his article on bow drill strings that even if he was
successful at
a hand drill fire with hickory (which means he has practiced a hell of a lot) "I
reached MY
physical limitations when trying with a damp mullein stalk". I reached MY physical
limitations much earlier than Barry, and I agree with him: very rarely are conditions
so
perfect as to make a hand drill fire in nature (here in the boreal forest at least). Bow
drill is much easier, and success is always guaranteed: I have done it at -40
degrees and
also in pouring rain. However, like Barry says: the hand drill fire is the fastest way to
obtain fire, and it's good to know for those occasions where it will save you the
time to
go make bow etc. Now this comment might not apply in the south where it is warm and
dry.
> 2) Your description of repeated friction over the same charred sawdust makes
> sense, but do you have an explanation for why the coal (most) often appears
> some distance away from the board and notch?

The explanation is that even when the wood dust pile is not quite heavy enough to
hold in
place, but partly so, sufficient friction occurs to form the small coal anyway before the
new dust forces the pile (including the coal) over. You don't notice this because of all
the smoke from the grinding of the hard surface on the soft surface. If your coal appears
far away from the center, you are probably drilling too much for nothing- your coal was
already formed several seconds ago. When you go for speed records on bow drill you learn
precisely when the coal has formed, and that is always where the rub is. Also, when you
don't quite achieve a coal, you notice the black char which almost made a coal right next
to the rubbing spot. Try a thinner board so the notch fills up faster and making the coal
as fast as possible- under 10 seconds is fairly easy with cedar- under 4 seconds is possible. This will teach you exactly when the coal forms faster than any instructions.
> It seems to me that the notch
> also helps direct the heat, and/or perhaps the spindle creates a bit of air
> current to help the coal breath to life.

Both of these assumptions are logical and are certainly true to a certain extent.

> 3) On another technique which I thought was the fire hole, Tom Brown gives
> the following description on using burdock or mullein: "Just twirl the
> spindle until it burns down to the pith, then carve the pith out at an angle
> just beneath the hole. The hot dust then falls down inside and collects in
> the hollowed receptacle near one end. Finally, the stalk is turned upside
> down and the coal tapped onto the tinder."
>
> Well, I understand the last sentence, but the setup of the rest of the board
> escapes me. Any better explanations?

Sorry, this description makes no sense to me either. Maybe one of us can contact Tom and
ask him to clarify this.

> 5) Other hand spindle materials include evening primrose stalk, ornamental honeysuckle (shrub) shoots though they tend to split, and elderberry (limited success due to thin wall on the specimens I have.

I too have tried evening primrose (Oenetherus spp.) and have also had success with burdock (Arctium spp.) on cedar, which is fairly easy. Never tried elderberry, but I've got lots here so I'll let you know. Maybe others could complete the list of hand drill materials.

Another question? Anybody else notice that friction fire sometimes does not work because the wood is TOO DRY? And does anybody know why the wood sometimes squeaks like a tormented pig?

Hope this helps,

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Sun Jan  5 00:49:55 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA15991; Sat, 4 Jan 1997 15:11:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA29359; Sat, 4 Jan 1997 15:09:18 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 04 Jan 1997 15:13:54 EST
Received: from emout14.mail.aol.com (emout14.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.40]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA29356 for Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Sat, 4 Jan 1997 15:09:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: by emout14.mail.aol.com (8.6.12/8.6.12) id PAA14721 for Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Sat, 4 Jan 1997 15:13:04 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852486386.005
From: JWaltz@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWaltz@AOL.COM
Date: Sat, 4 Jan 1997 15:13:04 -0500
Message-ID: <970104151303_2088231046@emout14.mail.aol.com>
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Hand drill fire
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Dear Andre' & PSG's:

Great post on Fire by friction theory as well as Benjamin Pressley's on the fire saw! I am anxious to try it.

By the way, I tried cattail spindle (7/16", 11.2mm) & willow board based on someone's recent post. Works great! I have a few questions and comments on the subject though.

1) I imagine that finding cattail which is dry and ready to start fire immediately after picking might be difficult. I would think that the plant would have to be in a spot which is dried up, otherwise the stalk will be wicking up water and will require a couple days drying time (provided you can find a dry place to dry it in, like your living room). Any comment?

2) Your description of repeated friction over the same charred sawdust makes sense, but do you have an explanation for why the coal (most) often appears some distance away from the board and notch? It seems to me that the notch also helps direct the heat, and/or perhaps the spindle creates a bit of air current to help the coal breath to life.

3) On another technique which I thought was the fire hole, Tom Brown gives the following description on using burdock or mullein: "Just twirl the spindle until it burns down to the pith, then carve the pith out at an angle just beneath the hole. The hot dust then falls down inside and collects in the hollowed recepticle near one end. Finally, the stalk is turned upside down and the coal tapped onto the tinder."

Well, I understand the last sentence, but the setup of the rest of the board escapes me. Any better explanations?

4) I have also found split sumac branches to be a good fire board material or a split mullein stalk (with pith, as posted previously). Drilling from the split (flat) side leaves the rounded side down, curving away toward the center of the spindle and allows sawdust to seek its own density conducive to good heat gain and air entrainment. This could also require more sawdust to build up and make a coal, so depending on the diameter and type of material (how fast is wears) you can build up the bottom of notch with just a bit of tinder.

5) Other hand spindle materials include evening primrose stalk, ornamental honeysuckle (shrub) shoots though they tend to split, and elderberry (limited success due to thin wall on the specimens I have.

John Waltz
Belle Mead, NJ

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA05640; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 23:47:54 -0500 (EST)
Charles E. Hudson wrote:

> Hi all:
> 
> I have been subscribed to this list for about a month now and decided that it was time for me to introduce myself.

> I am relatively new to the primitive skills thing. In fact I had never heard of any of this until last spring when I became a volunteer at a living history park (Virginia's Explore Park) located just outside of Roanoke, VA.

Hi Charles,

   Good to have you aboard. Please say hi to Fire Hawk for me. For anyone interested Fire Hawk is one person who has definitely mastered the cattail hand drill. Possibly Charles can relay some info from Fire Hawk about cattail hand drill.

   Walk in Balance,

   Bob Barr
Hand drill question... I was wondering if anyone had any tips for learning
the hand drill. Other than just start trying?? I think it's one of those

Awhile back there was a discussion about putting a notch in the top of the
hand drill and draping a string over it with a thumb loop at each end.
You do the normal spinning with the hands, but the string looped over the
top keeps your hands at the same spot on the spindle and allows you to
still get good downward pressure. I use this technique when my hand drill
set is less than optimal. The added aid of the string gives me just
enough help, usually, to get a coal.

It is an excellent technique to prepare for learning the hand drill. It
gives you confidence that you can get a coal by spinning with your hands.
Once you get consistent with this, take away the string and you should be
able to get a real hand drill going with no trouble.

BTW, My hand drills are typically pencil sized in diameter, and about 2+
feet long. Here is a tip for success: spin to fill up the notch with
dust. Take a break and rest. Now all you need to do is ignite the dust
by dedicating yourself to spin as fast as you can for about 15 to 20
seconds. A word of warning to first timers, as soon as you stop spinning,
remove the spindle and start waving your hand back and forth over the coal in the notch while you catch your breath. I have seen the tiniest, wispiest coals survive and grow, as long as you start fanning them immediately. Be patient, keep fanning, stop for a second and check for wisps of smoke. If your still see smoke after fanning those, first few seconds after removing the spindle, you have a coal and you just need to keep feeding it with air.

Once I catch my breath, I prefer to start blowing a long gentle stream of air on the coal. If you see dust flying out of the notch you are blowing too hard, otherwise blow long and steady. I never remove a coal from the notch until I see the red glow of the coal spreading strongly throughout the coal.

Again, I find the key to success is to fan the coal immediately upon removal of the spindle. Many times in the past I would remove the spindle and still see smoke but would stare dumbly at it for a second before feeding it with air. I probably lost quite a few potential coals while I was learning because of the time delay. Now that I know better, I give it lots of air first, before I try and decide if I really have a coal or not.

The beauty of this string enhancement is that the string does not have to be very strong. Natural materials are quite adequate, even when they are but twine thickness. Plus, the cordage needed is only about 12-14" long. I have a much easier time getting a fire going with this technique during "naked survival". The strength demands for a bow drill string, or less than perfect hand drill materials use to keep me from getting a fire quickly under, "no knife, no cordage" conditions. Now, this technique solves a lot of the problems by eliminating the trouble spots of the other techniques.

P.S. It is not as hard or as difficult as you think, for you first timers. Get dust in the notch, catch your breath, then spin as fast as you can for a slow count to 20. I think you will surprise yourself.

--------------

Best Regards,

Bo Gulledge
Graduate Student in Computer Science, University of South Florida
WebMaster for the following home pages:
  Tom Brown, Jr's Tracker School
  Official Home Page: http://members.aol.com/trackerinc/
  Unofficial Page: http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/tracker.html
  Earth-Heart http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/earth-heart.html
  EarthWalk NW, Inc. Frank and Karen Sherwood's Skills Classes
  http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/earthwalknw/
Bo Gulledge wrote:
>
an excellent post on hand drill tricks.

We want more, more, MORE! Thanks Bo!

Believe it or not, I don't have much experience with hand drill. Wood and plants here are always so wet that they just don't seem to work for me in real situations. Also, since I'm into realistic survival I'm always sure that I can get bowdrill fire with a piece of string made from laces, belts, etc. so it got me disinterested in the hand drill a long time ago. But now you've got me interested, because obviously a hand drill is faster, so I'm all ears and ready to learn more.
Questions:

1. I often find that mullein stalks and cattail stalks have the problem of falling apart as I spin. They develop a small crack in the end and then split open. Any ideas?

2. The wood dust which falls into the notch is often not dark like in the bow drill because of lack of speed. Any ideas?

3. Is it ever possible to find a dry cattail stalk and use it "as is"? I haven't been able to.

4. Since the drill is so much smaller in diameter, do you cut the notch any differently so there is as much air access and as much room for the coal to grow?

5. What materials will work other than mullein, cattail, evening primrose (Oenothera spp.), and burdock (Arctium spp.)? What about for fireboard (I've only tried cedar with above)? Could you give us the easiest choices in order of importance?

> A word of warning to first timers, as soon as you stop spinning,
> remove the spindle and start waving your hand back and forth over the coal
> in the notch while you catch your breath.

That's a great trick, I use it all the time too! It's very very important to do this.

I have seen the tiniest,
> wispiest coals survive and grow, as long as you start fanning them
> immediately.

Me too, I've seen coals where I was sure there couldn't be.

> Once I catch my breath, I prefer to start blowing a long gentle stream of
> air on the coal. If you see dust flying out of the notch you are blowing
> too hard, otherwise blow long and steady. I never remove a coal from the
> notch until I see the red glow of the coal spreading strongly throughout
> the coal.

More tricks:

1. Once the coal is fairly big, the wood dust pile seems to stick together. Tap the fireboard slightly on the side opposite the coal, to loosen it from the board before moving it to the tinder nest. If you don't do this, the coal will sometimes break apart into two or many smaller coals and you can lose the fire.

2. Dump the extra powder which is all around the drill hole on top of the coal pile at this point. This gives you just that little wee extra edge in getting the tinder to light.

3. Once you catch your breath and stop shaking like a leaf, move the coal (which is on a piece of bark) to a position above your head, and blow from below it at an angle. That way you avoid breathing smoke and this prevents coughing at the coal and losing it.
Again, thanks Bo for a great post, and looking forward to hearing more about this from you or others. Let's not forget that fire is by far the most useful skill to master.

André

__

Surviving at nature's will... o

Dr André-François Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca /
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec /ØØØØØ/
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvx

From - Tue Jan 21 05:26:26 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca (poste.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA00405; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 16:50:26 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA20915; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 16:50:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 16:48:08 EST
Received: from paprican.ca (paprican.ca [198.168.7.11]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA20911 for ; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 16:49:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from charon.paprican.ca by paprican.ca (4.1/SMI-4.1) id AA04833; Tue, 21 Jan 97 21:52:25 GMT
Received: From PAP386/MAILQUEUE by charon.paprican.ca via Charon-4.0-VROOM with IPX id 100.970121165315.736; 21 Jan 97 16:53:17 +500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Message-ID:
X-UIDL: 853884127.001
From: "MCMULLEN David"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca, MCMULLEN@PAPRICAN.CA
Organization: Paprican
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Date: Tue, 21 Jan 1997 16:53:13 EST5EDT
Subject: Re: Hand Drill
Priority: normal
X-Mailer: PMail v3.0 (R1a)
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Andre

Here are some basic answers to your post. I do not have extensive knowledge, but have had to make do with a lot of substandard handdrills. It has been my experience also that most items are too wet to use, but I have been able to start handdrill fires with wet parts on a misty day.
1. I have found that if you wrap (using sinew or cordage) the length of the handdrill (always leaving 2" free as a burning surface) it will help to prevent some cracking and splitting.

2. I normally heat up the board by spinning quickly with not a lot of downward pressure. In this way the board will produce dark dust. This also has the added advantage of partially drying up the board and shaft.

3. Have not had much experience with cattail, always too wet to work with right away.

4. The notch I normally cut in the board is about 60 degrees. If it is too large, then the dust does not seem to be able to ignite. If it is too small the dust produced will actually smother the coal.

5. This has been an area of work with some of the earthlodge group. some of the items we have tried are: reed grass, staghorn sumac, willow, and milkweed.

Dave Mcmullen
mcmullen@paprican.ca

An old boy scout trick is to place the ember in a a tinder bundle and wave
the tinder bundle slowly up and down. This works well for me, and prevfents inhaling smoke b/c you can hold the tinder bundle away from you.

Matt Schoeffler
Nature&Nurture
Even more impressive is to do the same thing but move your arm vigorously in a large full circle. I have done this at dusk in front of hundreds of people in large council rings, and it is very impressive, because at first you see a bit of smoke, then lots of smoke, and because of the dark, you see a few sparks, a ring of sparks, and eventually a ring of fire which you maintain as long as you can before throwing it on the awaiting gas drenched bondfire which blows up into flame.

Theatrics!

André

--

Surviving at nature's will...  

/on0000/on

Dr André-François Bourbeau  mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca  
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec  
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H2B1  

From - Wed Jan 22 00:32:55 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA01924; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 19:15:30 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA22747; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 19:13:36 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 19:11:42 EST
Received: from babbage.csee.usf.edu (babbage.csee.usf.edu [131.247.1.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA22741 for ; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 19:13:24 -0500 (EST)
Received: from grad (gulledge@grad [131.247.1.1]) by babbage.csee.usf.edu (8.8.3/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA06619; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 19:17:27 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Tue, 21 Jan 1997 19:17:24 -0500 (EST)
From: Bo Gulledge
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, gulledge@GRAD.CSEE.USF.EDU
X-Sender: gulledge@grad
To: Primitive Skills Group
CC: Trackers
Subject: Re: Hand Drill (Floating Technique)
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; charset=US-ASCII
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Following is a cross post from the trackers list. I would like to see what experiences anyone on this list has with the floating technique for the hand drill. I can get dust with it but I cannot ignite the coal with it.

On Tue, 10 Sep 1996, Terry Morse wrote:
> This is a technique to spin and apply downward pressure as your hands 
> stay at one spot on the drill, or even walk your hands *up* the 
> drill. I use floating to generate the dust in the notch 
> and then do vigorous downward passes to ignite the dust. 
> 
> Bo Gulledge 
> 
> Bo: 
> 
> Did I miss your description of how to "float," or are you preparing to 
> post it? :-) 
> 
> I knew some inquiring mind was going to ask me this so I guess I will 
give it a shot. :-) 

Picture a bowl that has a radius equal to the distance from the tip of 
your fingers to the heel of your palm with your hand held stiff and flat. 
Now, picture a hole in the center of the bowl through which you insert the 
spindle of your hand drill. 

Your hands are at about a 90 degree angle to one another. The fingers 
of one hand point down 45 degrees and the fingers of the other hand point 
up 45 degrees: (be gentle with me, this is one of my first attempts at 
ascii art ;-) )

```
/ \  
/   
/ ___ ___ 
/  /    / /
/ /    / / /
/ /    / / / 
/ /    / / / / 
/ /    / / / / / 
/ /____/ / / / / / / 
| |  | | | | | | | | | | | |
| |  | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| |  | | | | | | | | | | | | |
```

The motion is one of having your hands exchange their orientation to one 
another as though the knife edge side of your hand is following the curve 
of that imaginary bowl I was talking about. 

What makes this work is at least one hand is always pushing down as it 
spins. The action of the up motion of the hands even allows you to work 
your hands up the spindle while still generating downward pressure. Or, 
you can "float" with your hands moving neither up nor down the spindle. 

Play with just doing it lightly and then figure 
out the dynamics of how to add more downward pressure. 

Ask me questions if this whole description makes no sense! 
Please give some feedback on this description so we can generate a 
workable description for future generations ;-)
Since we're reminiscing here. I once did a demo with a bunch of Girl Scouts. I transferred the ember to the tinder bundle and had doubters in the audience. It was a breezy day. I helped the tinder bundle high over my head and the bundle suddenly burst into flames. Then it was total silence as they thought surely I was magic! Fun moments!
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> NatnNurt@AOL.COM wrote:
> 
> An old boy scout trick is to place the ember in a tinder bundle and wave
> the tinder bundle slowly up and down. This works well for me, and prevfents
> inhaling smoke b/c you can hold the tinder bundle away from you.
> 
> Matt Schoeffler
> Nature&Nurture
> 
> Even more impressive is to do the same thing but move your arm
> vigorously in a large full circle. I have done this at dusk in front of
> hundreds of people in large council rings, and it is very impressive,
> because at first you see a bit of smoke, then lots of smoke, and because
> of the dark, you see a few sparks, a ring of sparks, and eventually a
> ring of fire which you maintain as long as you can before throwing it on
> the awaiting gas drenched bondfire which blows up into flame.
> Theatrics!
>
From - Wed Jan 22 00:33:49 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA03978; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:32:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA25637; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:32:18 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:30:25 EST
Received: from unix.newnorth.net (unix.newnorth.net [205.212.60.10]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id XAA25631 for
; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:32:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from marknq.newnorth.net (rhin-cs7-1.newnorth.net [205.212.60.201])
by unix.newnorth.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id XAA26890; Tue, 21
Jan 1997 23:47:14 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E596CE.39AA@unix.newnorth.net>
Date: Tue, 21 Jan 1997 22:25:50 -0600
From: Mark Zanoni
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MarkNQ@UNIX.NEWNORTH.NET
Bo Gulledge wrote:

> Following is a cross post from the trackers list. I would like to see
> what experiences anyone on this list has with the floating technique
> for the hand drill. I can get dust with it but I cannot ignite the coal
> with
>
I saw Charles Worsham light the easiest fire I have ever seen made using a floating technique with a cottonwood fire board and horseweed spindle. He made to runs down the stalk however— a pressure run and final speed run to ignite the coal. So far I am only working on developing the technique with a little training kit I made with a dowel and a chunk of oak. There is great potential here!

Mark

From - Wed Jan 22 00:35:04 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA04537; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:13:41 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA26532; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:13:06 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:10:30 EST
Received: from arthur.INS.CWRU.Edu (arthur.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.215]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA26519 for
; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:12:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [129.22.220.95] (dialin095.REMOTE.CWRU.Edu [129.22.220.95]) by arthur.INS.CWRU.Edu with ESMTP (8.7.6+cwru/CWRU-3.0) id BAA16561;
Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:16:16 -0500 (EST) (from rlc6@po.cwru.edu)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: rlc6@pop.cwru.edu
Message-ID:
In-Reply-To: <32E43CDD.3733@saglac.qc.ca>
References:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:06:58 -0400
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
From: Rob Chatburn
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@FO.CWRU.EDU
Subject: Re: Hand Drill
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
André wrote:

>Questions:

>4. Since the drill is so much smaller in diameter, do you cut the notch
>any differently so there is as much air access and as much room for the
>coal to grow?
>

I have found that notch geometry is critical. I have developed a system that automatically scales the notch to the board and drill (Don't laugh, I have an engineering background and the method seems overly technical. But once you try it, it works itself.) All marking can be done with your knife. For simplicity, let's assume the fireboard is rectangular with rather short ends and rather long sides, but the technique works with other shapes.

1. I like to use a drill that is approximately the diameter of my little finger and a board the thickness equal to the width of the nail of my little finger.
2. Start by placing the prepared drill end at the edge of the fireboard somewhere along its length. Place a mark on the other side of the drill so that the mark is one drill diameter from the side edge. This distance will probably be shorter than from the mark to the other edge of the board. All subsequent marks and notch cuts will be made in this shorter area.
Note: when using mullien or teasel it is a good idea to scrape the crusty outer skin off the end that contacts the board.
3. Press the drill into the board to make a circular imprint (the fireboard wood should be soft enough to indent when pressed with your fingernail, I like willow or basswood). Use your knife to dig a shallow disk shaped impression.
4. Place the drill in the impression and twirl to burn in a ring shaped hole no more than 1/8 inch deep. This assumes you have a hollow type drill material, but I have used the technique successfully with a solid willow hand drill.
5. With your knife, scribe a line all the way around the board, tangent to the burn ring and parallel to the short ends of the board. This is line 1. (later, once you see how this all works, you will only have to go half way around)
6. Scribe another line the same way on the other side of the ring. You now have two parallel lines on each side of the ring. This is line 2.
7. Scribe a third line around the board, passing through the center of the ring. You now have three parallel lines. This is line 3.
8. Use your knife blade to measure the distance from the nearest side edge of the board to the center of the ring. Turn the board over and place a mark this distance from the same edge on the bottom of the board. This mark is now under the center of the ring on the other side, and intersects the middle scribed line. Let's call this point A.
9. Scribe a line from point A to the intersection of line 1 and the bottom edge of the board. This intersection is point B.
10. Scribe a line from point B, up the thickness of the board to the top of the board and on to the intersection of line 3 and the nearest edge of the ring. This intersection is point C. The line should be the shortest distance from point B to point C. If you look from the edge of the board toward the ring, the line will look diagonal about 45 degrees as it runs
11. Scribe a line from point A to the intersection of line 2 and the bottom edge of the board. This is point D.
12. Scribe a line from point D, up the thickness of the board to the top of the board and on to point C. If you look at the board from the edge, you will see that you have now scribed a diamond shaped figure wrapping from the bottom to the top of the board. The first time it may help you to visualize this by coloring in the diamond with a pencil.
13. With your knife, chop out a small wedge of wood from the bottom edge of the board into the center of the diamond (just two straight v-cuts). Make the wedge bigger until it expands to the form of the diamond. You will now have a notch that flares down and out as described in some books but scaled precisely for your materials. Make the notch extend into the burn ring at point C until you hit the inner, unburned diameter of the ring.

Now the notch is complete and you can insert the drill and try for the coal. As the drill burns into the board, an ever widening hole forms into the notched out area. The geometry of the notch compacts the dust and reflects the heat toward the center of the dust pile.

This explanation will seem hopelessly complicated unless you do it as you read. Even then it may be confusing without a drawing. Let me know. I have been very successful teaching others to do it by example but this is my first attempt at a description. I would like to hear your comments.

Rob Chatburn
Rob Chatburn wrote:

> I have found that notch geometry is critical. I have developed a system
> that automatically scales the notch to the board and drill (Don't >laugh, I
> have an engineering background and the method seems overly technical. >But
> once you try it, it works itself.) All marking can be done with your >knife.

> I have
> been very successful teaching others to do it by example but this is my
> first attempt at a description. I would like to hear your comments.

Rob, you are absolutely brilliant! Your way of calculating the notch size proportionally to the size of the drill and thickness of the board, is the best I have ever seen anywhere. I wish I had thought of that! I can no longer imagine teaching it in any other way, and I've been trying for years to devise a system to explain my notch which is "by feeling" exactly as you describe. I've tried drawing proportions, pie wedges and everything else, but you've just described it in a way which has only one word to describe it: brilliant. Thanks so much for sharing this with us.

Maybe I can help with the description which is a bit hard to follow, since I did my doctorate on how to write clear instructions for survival skills. If you accept my interference, I would be honored to write up the instructions for your use and for publication purposes. Let me know if you accept this offer.

AndrÈ

---
Surviving at nature's will...                                       o
/\00000/\  
Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca / Ä\ /Ä \  
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec /0000\0/0000\ 
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvvX______\
Mark Zanoni wrote:

> I saw Charles Worsham light the easiest fire I have ever seen made using
> a floating technique with a cottonwood fire board and horseweed spindle.

I think cottowood is (Populus spp.), but what species is "horseweed"?
Never heard of a plant by that name...

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...  

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau  mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca  /
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec  /Ä\  /Ä \ 
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvvX_____

From - Wed Jan 22 06:56:08 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by 
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA11156; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 17:20:20 -
0500 (EST)
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id OAA09471
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
  OAA03370
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
In a message dated 97-01-21 16:03:10 EST, Andre wrote:

<<
  1. I often find that mullein stalks and cattail stalks have the problem of falling apart as I spin. They develop a small crack in the end and then split open. Any ideas?

  I find most times it's because the stalks are too old. That is, collected too late in the season. Try collecting as soon as they die & brown.

  2. The wood dust which falls into the notch is often not dark like in the bow drill because of lack of speed. Any ideas?

  I often get a horizontal dark streak in the dust mound. I don't believe you will ever get a completely dark dust mound. As you have said, it takes repeated heating passes over the same dust to char and coal. What do you get when you stop short of a coal using a bow drill? It could also have to do with material hardness, in producing dust more readily and not forming a coal as opposed to "wood" branches which need more energy (and therefore more heat) to form dust. So with bow drilling, your are further along with more energy in producing a coal.

  3. Is it ever possible to find a dry cattail stalk and use it "as is"? I haven't been able to.

  I asked this Q a couple of weeks ago. I think the answer is yes but only if the cattail roots are dry with no water to wick. But when are you going to find that?!

  4. Since the drill is so much smaller in diameter, do you cut the notch any differently so there is as much air access and as much room for the coal to grow?
No, the notch is cut the same width/pie segment as for bow dirll. However, because your movement requires your body to travel downward, I find that the drill is may be difficult to keep centered in the notch. It might help if the notch is cut a bit to the left or right of center when viewed facing the notch, depending on how your body naturally "curves" on the downward travel.

5. What materials will work other than mullein, cattail, evening primrose (Oenothera spp.), and burdock (Arctium spp.)? What about for fireboard (I've only tried cedar with above)? Could you give us the easiest choices in order of importance?

I believe that mullein is the best. Someone recently posted that teasel was easier than mullein. I've yet to get some & try.

I have had repeated easy success with cattail using willow fire board. Not so good using mullein. Some success with Staghorn Sumac & mullein & primrose.

Another technique I have found useful is to breath in as you spin down the drill. Exhale as you return to the top and repeat. No getting out-of-breath, only burning arms or hands!

I always use the one-kneeling position as opposed to sitting, although sitting has worked a couple of times that I've tried.

Primitively,
John Waltz
Belle Mead, NJ
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

Mark Zanoni wrote:

I think cottowood is (Populus spp.), but what species is "horseweed"?
Never heard of a plant by that name...

Sorry Andre',

Cottonwood probably is not a common tree in your area. I know it doesn't
grow here in northern WI. Scientific name Populus deltoides.

Horseweed is mystery. I don't know much about it. It doesn't grow in the
north. Scientific name Erigeron canadensis (with a name like that one
would think it might be in your back yard :-)). It is a tall stalk with
a bushy top. Tends to grow in "waste areas". Works well from what I've
seen. I found something around here that was similar and I was excited
but it turned out to have a hollow stalk.

That's about all I know,

Mark

From - Wed Jan 22 06:56:16 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA11283; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 17:31:41 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA05870; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 17:30:13 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 17:28:19 EST
Received: from emout06.mail.aol.com (emout06.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.97]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id RAA05866 for
; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 17:29:59
-0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout06.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0)
id RAA15524 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Wed, 22 Jan
1997 17:34:00 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: JWaltz@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWaltz@AOL.COM
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 17:34:00 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970122171207_913671485@emout06.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Hand Drill (Floating Technique)
Content-Type: text
In a message dated 97-01-21 19:32:23 EST, Bo Gulledge writes:

<<
What makes this work is at least one hand is always pushing down as it spins. The action of the up motion of the hands even allows you to work your hands up the spindle while still generating downward pressure. Or, you can "float" with your hands moving neither up nor down the spindle.
>>

Could it be that it is better using a string so that there is no need to stop and re-start a pass at the top of the stalk? Constant pressure while continuously spinning sounds very effective. I am anxious to try it... could someone just email me about 48 hours of free time?

Primitively,
John Waltz
Belle Mead, NJ

The best fireboard for mullein is another split mullein stalk. Just start the "hole" on the flat inner half, carve the notch and finish it off in dust and a coal!

The stalk should be the lower part of the same stalk or a different stalk of a larger diam.

John Waltz
Return-Path:
Received: from unix.newnorth.net (root@unix.newnorth.net [205.212.60.10]) by
brown.videotron.net (8.8.3/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA22655 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997
16:51:43 -0500 (EST)
Received: from markng.newnorth.net (rhin-cs2-10.newnorth.net [205.212.60.180]) by
unix.newnorth.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id RAA02551; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 17:02:44 -
0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32E6897E.5239@unix.newnorth.net>
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 15:41:18 -0600
From: Mark Zanoni
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
Subject: Re: Hand Drill (Floating Technique)
References:
<32E596CE.39AA@unix.newnorth.net> <32E583DC.2A03@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: b9ed3fd2b05449dfc5f9750b5d49200b
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:  
> 
> > Mark Zanoni wrote:  
> 
>
> > I think cottowood is (Populus spp.), but what species is "horseweed"?  
> > Never heard of a plant by that name...
>
> Sorry Andre',

Cottowood probably is not a common tree in your area. I know it doesn't
grow here in northern WI. Scientific name Populus deltoides.

Horseweed is mystery. I don't know much about it. It doesn't grow in the
north. Scientific name Erigeron canadensis (with a name like that one
would think it might be in your back yard :-)). It is a tall stalk with
a bushy top. Tends to grow in "waste areas". Works well from what I've
seen. I found something around here that was similar and I was excited
but it turned out to have a hollow stalk.

That's about all I know,

Mark

From - Thu Jan 23 11:34:04 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA12577; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 20:11:42 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA07424; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 20:09:40 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 20:07:46 EST
Received: from emout02.mail.aol.com (emout02.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.93]) by

Horseweed is a tall aster with small nondescript green flowers. It is often found growing in disturbed urban lots.
Would your Notch Calculations work for bow drill notches also? 

Steve Skinner

Yes, but I have only done it once or twice so I cannot say if some modifications might apply. None are obvious to me at this time. And I have seen others recommend this type of flared-out notch for bow drills so scaling it as I describe seems to make sense. I have made dozens of hand drill fires with this technique and since mastering it, have not practiced much with the bow drill. This is probably a mistake as the proper materials for a hand drill may not always be available.

Maybe you could experiment and let us know.

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
The best fireboard for mullein is another split mullein stalk. Just start the "hole" on the flat inner half, carve the notch and finish it off in dust and a coal!

The stalk should be the lower part of the same stalk or a different stalk of a larger diam.

John Waltz

This is fascinating! I have seen a fireboard made by lashing two unsplit pieces of mullein together, but I could not see exactly where the dust would go as there was no notch (perhaps through the crack between the two stalks). I have not had any success with this. Can you give us more details?

Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

---

From - Thu Jan 23 11:34:37 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA13888; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:53:25 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA09041; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:52:03 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:50:10 EST
Received: from cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu (cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.216]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA09035 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:51:52 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [129.22.220.4] (dialin004.REMOTE.CWRU.Edu [129.22.220.4]) by cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu with ESMTP (8.7.6+cwru/CWRU-3.0) id WAA19753; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:55:59 -0500 (EST) (from rlc6@po.cwru.edu)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: rlc6@pop.cwru.edu
Message-ID:
In-Reply-To: <970122165317_135108875@emout04.mail.aol.com>
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:47:11 -0400
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWaltz@AOL.COM
From: Rob Chatburn
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU
Subject: Re: Hand Drill
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> I have had repeated easy success with cattail using willow fire board. Not so
> good using mullein. Some success with Staghorn Sumac & mullein & primrose.
> 
> Another technique I have found useful is to breath in as you spin down the
> drill. Exhale as you return to the top and repeat. No getting out-of-breath,
> only burning arms or hands!
> 
> Primitively,
> John Waltz
> Belle Mead, NJ

I have been told that a basswood drill in a paw paw fireboard works like rubbing a match against a rock! Can't find much paw paw around here so cannot verify. Also, I think breathing is very important (not just because I'm a respiratory therapist ;-). Most people tend to hold their breath unconsciously when applying muscular effort. I like to breathe out as I work down the drill and try to exhale through slightly pursed lips along the drill. I am not sure but it seems to feed the coal after it starts smoking a lot.

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
merv martin wrote:

> AndrÈ
> > I think cottomwood is (Populus spp.), but what species is "horseweed"?
> > Never heard of a plant by that name...
> >
> If it's horsetail (Equisetum spp) it should work. Good pot scrubber too!
>
> Sorry, Merv, for the record it cannot be Equisetum spp if it is used for
> starting fires. I know Equisetum and it is much too soft for fire
> drills. You're right about pot scrubbing. Equisetum has a substance
called Silica in it which acts as a good polishing agent. Equisetum also makes a great fingernail file for all you gentlemen and ladies who like to keep their hand and feet ends neat and trim.

AndrÈ
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca / Ä\ /Ä\
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec /ØØØØ\Ø/ØØØØ\ 
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvvX_______\

From - Thu Feb 11 13:55:00 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA01665; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 17:14:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA27195; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 17:13:21 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 17:11:23 EST
Received: from emout06.mail.aol.com (emout06.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.97]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id RAA27187 for ; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 17:13:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout06.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0) id RAA19110; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 17:16:28 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: JWaltz@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWaltz@AOL.COM
Date: Fri, 24 Jan 1997 17:16:28 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970124165002_1726044835@emout06.mail.aol.com>
To: rlc@PO.CWRU.EDU
CC: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Hand Drill
Content-Type: text
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

In a message dated 97-01-22 23:05:06 EST, you write:

<< I like to breathe out as I work down the drill and try to exhale through slightly pursed lips along the drill. I am not sure but it seems to feed the coal after it starts smoking a lot.

>>

Rob:

I find that breathing in on the downstroke helps make me more rigid by inflating my lungs. I am a lean 130 lbs, 5''-7'' and need all the help I can get in using muscle efficiently. Breathing out on the downstroke lessens my internal pressure and therefore stability which doesn't help my drilling.
But as you point out, breathing is so important. It is easy to forget that every breath, or every one lost is beneficial or missed, especially when additional work is required of muscles. A fire won't burn without O2, and neither will our glycogen. I am amazed at how fast our biochemical reactions take place.

John Waltz

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA02803; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 19:50:45 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA28951; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 19:49:05 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 19:47:10 EST
Received: from emout18.mail.aol.com (emout18.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.44]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA28948 for ; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 19:48:54 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout18.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0) id TAA26682 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 19:53:01 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: JWaltz@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWaltz@AOL.COM
Date: Fri, 24 Jan 1997 19:53:01 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970124163946_-2079968622@emout18.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Hand Drill..One more fireboard
Content-Type: text
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

In a message dated 97-01-22 22:44:55 EST, Rob Chatburn wrote regarding my post on mullein fire board:

<<
> The best fireboard for mullein is another split mullein stalk. Just start the
> "hole" on the flat inner half, carve the notch and finish it off in dust and
> a coal!
>
> The stalk should be the lower part of the same stalk or a different stalk of
> a larger diam.
>
> John Waltz

This is fascinating! I have seen a fireboard made by lashing two unsplit pieces of mullein together, but I could not see exactly where the dust would go as there was no notch (perhaps through the crack between the two
I have no knowledge of using two stalks lashed together. But in any patch of mullein, pick some straight stalks of 3/8 to 7/16" diam (Business end, bottom of stalk) and pick any other with a larger diam. Usually near the bottom, or possibly the base portion of the drill stalk, farther down. Using a short segment of this lower stalk (anything long enough so you can get your foot and spindle onto) Split it in half to make a Board. The inner split portion must be the width of the business end of the stalk/hand drill with at least 1/4" to spare. Start an indentation by spinning lightly with the drill into the pith (curved side down). Carve a "typical" notch, and finish it off by spinning the hand drill again and get your coal. NO TINDER NECESSARY! the drilling creates a large cache of sawdust which grows the coal. Transfer the heafty coal to tinder/grass for easy fire.

A well-used fire board can have notches/drill burn discs quite closely spaced. Making a notch, the mullein cuts well under a thin sharp knife.

The first few times I got a fcoal using a mullein fireboard, I didn't cut a notch. It was very happenstance that in burning down through the pith the spindle burned through at just the right time and temperature to kindle cattail down. That was not a reliable technique at all.

If the end of the drill stalk should burnish into a burn glaze, simply pop out the glaze disc to reveal a fresh friction surface.

John Waltz
Belle Mead, NJ
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: Rob Chatburn
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU
Subject: Re: Hand Drill
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>I find that breathing in on the downstroke helps make me more rigid by
>inflating my lungs. I am a lean 130 lbs, 5''-7" and need all the help I can
>get in using muscle efficiently. Breathing out on the downstroke lessens my
>internal pressure and therefore stability which doesn't help my drilling.

>John Waltz

Good tip John. And it makes physiologic sense because you use your
intercostal muscles when you breathe in, while exhalation is usually
passive, requiring no muscular tension. I'll see if it helps the next time
I try to teach people with smaller thoraxes, like maybe kids. When I
breathe out through pursed lips, my exhalation requires muscular effort
too, so maybe I'm getting the same effect you describe.

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

From - Sun Jan 26 23:20:34 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA10605; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 23:43:48 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA06443; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 23:42:40 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 23:40:44 EST
Received: from celeste.INS.CWRU.Edu (celeste.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.214]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id XAA06437 for
; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 23:42:28
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [129.22.220.16] (dialin016.REMOTE.CWRU.Edu [129.22.220.16]) by
celeste.INS.CWRU.Edu with ESMTP (8.7.6+cwru/CWRU-3.0) id XAA19644;
Sat, 25 Jan 1997 23:46:32 -0500 (EST) (from rlc6@po.cwru.edu)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: rlc6@pop.cwru.edu
Message-ID:
In-Reply-To: <970124163946_-2079968622@email.aol.com>
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Sat, 25 Jan 1997 11:29:03 -0500
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWaltz@AOL.COM
X-UIDL: 854288643.003
From: Rob Chatburn
John Waltz described a great technique for using mullein stalks as both hand drill and fireboard. This is great! Saves time and energy. And a stalk would be much easier to notch with an expedient stone implement than even the softest tree wood. Has anyone tried this with teasel? Wonder why none of the major textbooks on survival mention this? (Tom Elpel's book does mention yucca as both drill and fireboard)

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
André,
Dans un message récent, tu disais ne pas connaître le nom de la matière qui produit les étincelles d'un briquet au magnésium : il s'agit de ferrocérium (ce qui compose la pierre à briquet dans les briquets jetables modernes). Tu recevras plus d'explications dans les articles que je t'enverrai dès que je pourrai en faire des copies.
A bientôt.

Salut.

Pascal Chauvaux

PS: Je n'ai reçu que 3 demandes de briquet ... rien de bien difficile à satisfaire.
Bill's mention of scrounged modern materials for fire starters he found out about as a kid, caught me at a similar point in my remembrances. I had been raised in and around the aluminum and magnesium foundary business. My Dad always had machine shops at these and I learned to located magnesium turnings under the lathes whenever he'd been doing a run of magnesium castings. 0000 Steel wool tinder on massive steroids. Light (pun intended) to pack in a pouch. While you're out gleaning the dental labs for epoxy firestarter putty Bill, you might keep an eye out for metal foundaries. Serious fun (I'm thinking of your son Hans here, not for us old guys...yeah...that could happen...sure).

Chris
Pascal Chauvaux of France sent me a message in french stating the name of the material which makes up the flint side of the magnesium striker. It's called ferrocerium and it's the same material which is in modern lighters. Thanks Pascal!

Now all of you pyromaniacs out there get to find out what kind of a tease I can be! If anyone can start a fire by striking a knife against the small piece of ferrocerium inside an empty BIC lighter and a paper tissue (it can be done!), then I will post how to do it much, much more easily!

Good luck,

André

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1
JWither240@AOL.COM wrote:
>
> Andre, Just goes to show what a tender feets I'm is. Thanks for the list
> and the opportunity for this learning experience. After all, this IS the
> Primitive skills list, not the store bought magnesium striker list - right?
> ha
> >
> > JW

Just so you won't forget that this is ALSO the magnesium striker list, (our guidelines permit modern survival subjects too) I'll post the following information I've discovered over the years on this subject.

A magnesium striker is as far as I'm concerned the most fantastic emergency fire lighting device in existence. I have a small piece about 1 inch long by 1/4 inch wide which is an integral part of my key chain. Helluvalot luckier than a rabbit's foot in a survival situation, that's for sure!

Now for using it- the instructions that come on the package suck. Try these instead:

1. SCRAPE A PILE OF MAGNESIUM SHAVINGS onto a dry and solid surface. Use the base (so you won't ruin your blade) of your knife blade at a 90 degree angle to the magnesium. The size of the pile depends on the quality of the tinder; with the best, you can even skip this step. If your striker does not have a magnesium side, slowly scrape a pile of shavings directly from the flint side.

2. PLACE FINE TINDER in a semi-circle around and especially on top of the pile of magnesium shavings.

3. HOLD THE STRIKER VERY FIRMLY SO IT TOUCHES YOUR WORKING SURFACE right next to the other side of the semi-circle where there is no tinder. The base of the striker must touch the pile of magnesium.

4. HOLD THE KNIFE BLADE AT A 90 DEGREE ANGLE TO THE STRIKER and as close to its top as possible. Press the striker downward very hard.

5. SCRAPE HARD DOWNWARD WITH THE KNIFE ONCE ONLY, pressing the knife
blade hard into the striking surface.

This procedure throws the largest spark possible directly into the tinder pile for instantaneous combustion. I have started thousands of fires in the most miserable rainy conditions using this technique. It works. However, you must practice with your striker until you can light a kleenex on a table with one strike every time. Then, and only then, will your striker become a very valuable addition to your pocket gear.

The magnesium striker works when soaking wet, and never misfunctions.

Other tips I can share which I have developped over the years:

Tying a large object to the striker, such as many keys on a keyring or a good stout stick on a cord helps to hold the striker tightly while scraping with the knife.

I have sharpened the square base of my swiss army knife blade at an acute angle for the sole purpose of magnesium fire starting, so I don't ruin my actual blade when scraping.

If you have no knife, some types of sharpened keys, zipper tabs, belt buckles, metal plates from boot soles or other hard metal sometimes work.

Sharp hard rock flakes (such as produced when flintknapping) also work instead of a knife!

Make the size of the pile of magnesium shavings twice as large as you think you need. To light fine wood shavings directly in a rainstorm, you need at least a tablespoon of magnesium shavings.

The magnesium burns very very hot but for a very very short time. Make sure you have a lot of very fine tinder extremely close to the striking area.

Don't forget: practice this until your family and friends nickname you "Pyro". It is, in my opinion, one of the most important realistic survival skills.

Cheers to all you fellow pyromaniacs,

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan  2 09:18:24 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA01908; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 20:10:25 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
In a message dated 97-01-02 14:09:47 EST, you write:

<<
Just so you won't forget that this is ALSO the magnesium striker list,
(our guidelines permit modern survival subjects too)  >>

Your right....When I get hungry or thirsty enough, I'll knapp glass, use
plastic for a solar still, a tin can to drink out of or cook in, and as
someone said.....use old tires for shoes.

Happy survin'

JW
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> Mark Bradner wrote:
>
> > I recently ran into an interesting site called the "History and Primitive
> > Technology Page". They have a page about making fire with a tool called
> > a
> > "Fire Piston". I tried to make one, but so far have not been successful
> > in
> > making fire. Does anyone know about this technology?
> > >
> > Hi Mark,
>
> Welcome to the group and what a great question to start off with.
>
> I ran into some good documentation on this subject recently, I think it
> was in the Great Lakes Primitives newsletter on this subject. I've also
> been wanting to try this, but haven't gotten around to it yet. I've
> spoken to people who have done it, so it works, and apparently is quite
> simple to use once you've got one that works.
>
> I'll try to get my hands on the info and get back to you. Meanwhile,
> anyone that is succesful, let us know!!
>
> I'm pretty sure Ben Pressley knows about this more than I do.
>
> Andri

Read something about the fire piston somewhere else but I checked the web site to be sure. I am not sure if it was in American Survival Magazine or somewhere else, looked but couldn't find it right off. One of the things that I remember is that the tinder was "picked" out and that it was now used to light cigarettes! I think that the author had traded for one made of palm. Actually it works like a diesel engine and similiar principles apply. You would need tight fitting to create the pressure needed to heat the air, also a sharp, quick stroke would probably be most
successful. I think that I might try this after the holidays, might have time then.

--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 23 08:09:19 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA12064; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:46:16 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA12152; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:46:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:50:38 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id XAA12142 for ; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:45:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.104]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA92; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:43:26 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.696B@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
X-UIDL: 851389458.045
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire piston
References: <32BB9646.5AD2@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id XAA12064
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> Mark Bradner wrote:
> >
> > I recently ran into an interesting site called the "History and Primitive Technology Page". They have a page about making fire with a tool called a "Fire Piston". I tried to make one, but so far have not been successful in making fire. Does anyone know about this technology?
> >
> >
Hi Mark,

Welcome to the group and what a great question to start off with.

I ran into some good documentation on this subject recently, I think it was in the Great Lakes Primitives newsletter on this subject. I've also been wanting to try this, but haven't gotten around to it yet. I've spoken to people who have done it, so it works, and apparently is quite simple to use once you've got one that works.

I'll try to get my hands on the info and get back to you. Meanwhile, anyone that is succesful, let us know!!

I'm pretty sure Ben Pressley knows about this more than I do.

André
THE MAN to talk to on fire piston is my friend 'Mountain' Mel Deweese. He is pictured in the Woodsmoke videos doing this and I have personally seen him do it many times at our annual event, TRIBE Gathering. If you wish to contact 'Montain' Mel: Mel T. Deweese, 1825 Linden St., Grand Junction, CO 81503, Phone: 970-242-8507. If you want to see the Woodsmoke video you can order it from: WOODSMOKE, Richard & Linda Jamison, 11401 Willow Hill Dr., Sandy, UT 84092, Phone: 801-571-1790. The video is entitled "Fire III" and also covers fire saw, fire thong and fire plow, price is $34.95+$3.50 S&H. They also have a book that discusses it entitled "WOODSMOKE: Collected Writings on Ancient Living Skills" for $15.95+$1.50 S&H.

Fire piston requires a very title piston with a handle that is quickly inserted into and removed from a chamber that contains it that also hold a tiny bit of tinder (Usually a type of palm frond tendrils). Done correctly the forcing of the air molecules are caused to compress so rapidly that you virtually achieve spontaneous combustion or at least a glowing ember. Japanese commonly use brass cylinders of this type for lighting cigarettes. Mel used one carved from Buffalo horn.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 23 08:10:38 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA12651; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 02:06:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA12673; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 02:05:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 02:09:51 EST
In a message dated 96-12-22 21:17:19 EST, you write:

>>> I recently ran into an interesting site called the "History and Primitive
>>> Technology Page". They have a page about making fire with a tool called
>>> a
>>> "Fire Piston". I tried to make one, but so far have not been successful
>>> in
>>> making fire. Does anyone know ab

Try Ellsworth Yeager's books, (most libraries) and it may help to know that
they were used in polynesia for your research.

CAG
> [Have you tried this? Is it practical? Anybody got an airgun and some 
> tinder? Maybe a tinder holder for an airgun's business-end might be a 

The airguns they are talking about are springpiston type airguns in which a 
large spring drives a piston in a cylinder with a small hole in it. That 
hole is directly in line with the barrel. I've noticed smoke in the barrel 
after firing many of them as they burn off piston lubrication. 
I'm not sure where or how one would place tender where it wouldn't be fired 
out of the barrel. 
JB
> Upon further reflection we are talking about finely shredded bark as
> FIREPISTON tinder aren't we? My experiments were with flint and steel
> methods of firemaking & I've had no success with uncharred material.

I can't remember where I read it, but the best tinder for fire starting is
shredded wasp nest. - Ted Bailey
Ted E. Bailey wrote:

> Upon further reflection we are talking about finely shredded bark as
> FIREFISTON tinder aren't we? My experiments were with flint and steel
> methods of firemaking & I've had no success with uncharred material.
> I can't remember where I read it, but the best tinder for fire starting is
> shredded wasp nest. - Ted Bailey

For fire piston, "mountain" Mel Deweese is the only expert I know and he
says he has only had success with tinder derived from a certain palm. I
know that's a vague reference, I'll try to find out the exact name of the
palm. In the meantime anyone who wishes to contact Mel, can contact him
As far as flint & steel, I have only had success with charred material and an uncharred fungus from up in Canada that a friend of mine brought me at TRIBE Gathering. Amazing stuff. A small sliver catches a spark and it glows and glows. Maybe Andre remembers the name of the fungus I'm talking about. George Hedgepeth brought it with him that year you came to TRIBE Gathering.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

Also Check Out Ted Baileyís Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html
Hi Wyatt,

You might like to know that I have finally identified that birch fungus you are talking about. It is sometimes called Chatoquin or Bearshit but the scientific name is Innonotus obliquus. It is indeed a fungus (at first I thought it was a disease) but it is a white rot fungus rather than a brown rot like most rots we usually see. This white rot attacks the wood lignum and cellulose differently than brown rot and is responsible for forming a material which is similar in many ways to charred cloth. I am still looking into this and trying to find other fungi or material botanically related to Innonotus to try them out. Maybe this will help you with the tinder issue and maybe you and others can help pursue this research further.
Innonotus was also used medicinally in Russia, one source mentioned that (can't remember off hand, but I did write it down somewhere).

For tinder, this stuff is indeed amazing. One very fine spark into it and you can't put it out! However, I've noticed that if it dries out too dry, it no longer works. Much testing still to be done...

Best regards,

André

PS We've got a great primitive skills group with many very knowledgeable leaders, you are very invited to join us!

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA   G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA   G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Mon Dec 23 11:35:45 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA19227; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 23:15:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA17316; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 23:14:47 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA17312; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 23:14:47 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 23:19:19 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id XAA17312 for
; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 23:14:40
-0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.134]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA114 for
; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 23:12:19
-0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Chris Smith wrote:

> On this list I've been reading the fire piston thread and was clued here to Wyatt Knapp's "The History and Primitive Technology Page" fire piston article (referenced):

> http://www.geocities.com/CollegePark/4201/piston.html

> In that article, Wyatt Knapp writes:

> "The European version was discovered in the early 1800's in connection with the manufacture of air guns in France. It was noticed that when they were discharged in the dark the air guns gave off a light. Later tinder was ignited using the heat generated by charging the airgun."

> [Have you tried this? Is it practical? Anybody got an airgun and some tinder? Maybe a tinder holder for an airgun's business-end might be a clever add on. Direct the gas flow through a small inline turbine to fan the flame, maybe ramp up the flow with a narrowed exit outlet (auto needle valve if there's not too much flow resistance) -- hehe... somebody stop me!]

> The article summarizes the literature, adds more to Mel Deweese's fire piston story, shows plans, gives the Woodsmoke/Video contact info, tells where to get a ready-built fire piston from Bob Perkins at BPS Engineering, etc.

> Mention is also made of the fire plow and fire saw. If this isn't too far off-topic, what are those?

> Sorry about writing about you in the 3rd person, Wyatt. Nice site, great page.

> Chris

I haven't tried the air gun, but the fire piston goes back farther than that. Fire plow is basically a board that is rubbed vigorously with a stick digging a trough into the board (hearth). The friction builds up heat and grinds hot wood particles that gather and form into an ember. I personally have not used this method yet though. I have used the fire saw, though. There are many variations of the fire saw. The most well
known is splitting a 4 foot length of bamboo lengthwise. Tinder is held in one half. The other half is driven into the ground and held against the chest or abdomen. The half holding the tinder is rubbed vigorously across the other until the wall breaks through with heated particles that are basically your ember that can be blown into a flame. It is really difficult to explain thoroughly in this medium. Also I must depart for now and I will address other variations soon.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. Check out our home page for more information.
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Sat Jan 18 00:02:06 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA00994; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 19:54:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA20541; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 19:53:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 19:52:06 EST
Received: from bort.mv.net (bort.mv.net [192.80.84.6]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA20538 for ; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 19:53:43 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.22.5.21 (knh-1-01.mv.com [207.22.5.21]) by bort.mv.net (8.8.3/mem-951016) with SMTP id TAA07049 for ; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 19:42:04 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DFE655.1018@virtualmountain.mv.com>
Date: Fri, 17 Jan 1997 20:51:33 +0000
X-UIDL: 853606174.101
From: Bruce
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bc@VIRTUALMOUNTAIN.MV.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: fire piston
References: <32DEE4EA.1A19@nemonet.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
I've been tinkering with making fire pistons, and still haven't got one to build up enough pressure yet. I made 2 so far, one out of oak, and one out of bambo. The bambo was oval, so I can't get the gasket on the piston to perfectly match. The oak one was drilled, and aside from being a little rough on the sides, still doesn't build up enuff pressure.

Do the walls have to be smooth, and completely greased? I'm using thread wrapped around the piston, and heavily greased with deer fat. I didn't grease the walls, just what it picked up from the piston. Next I'm going to try leather as the gasket, and will try greasing the walls.

Any one played with this? I've seen a web site with info on it

http://www.geocities.com/collegepark/4201/piston.html

and have come to the conclusion that it needs to be precision made (not just whipped up in a few minutes as I have done so far). Any other info is appreciated!

Bruce Carroll
Virtual Mountain
New Hampshire
Bruce wrote:
>
> I've been tinkering with making fire pistons, and still haven't got one
> to build up enough pressure yet. I made 2 so far, one out of oak, and
> (snip)
>
> Call up 'Mountain' Mel Deweese. He's the man on fire pistons. He is the
guy featured in the WOODSMOKE videos demonstrating it. Write 1825 Linden
St., Grand Junction, CO 81503, Phone: (970) 242-8507.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Hi Bruce,

>I've been tinkering with making fire pistons, and still haven't got one
>to build up enough pressure yet. I made 2 so far, one out of oak, and
>one out of bambo. The bambo was oval, so I can't get the gasket on the
>piston to perfectly match.

I used to watch the 'Yards use the things. It blew my mind how fast they were able to get a fire started. I never made one but I do remember a few things about how they did it.

The bamboo was large, as I remember something like 3" in diameter. The interior of the tubes were almost polished. They didn't even look like bamboo. The hole was just above the segment line and the segment distances (as I remember) were around two feet. I can't remember if they had cut through one segment or not. I do remember that the tubes were long, as long as my rifle.

The piston appeared to be another piece of bamboo that had been shaved and fitted with a flapper valve on the bottom of the segment. The valve looked like an innertube rubber. When the piston was withdrawn, the valve would open, when the tube was shoved against a tree or post (to start the fire), the valve would close, sealing in the air.

When I first saw the thing work I thought that they had a blue diamond match hidden in the bottom of the piston...... nothing could work like that. I was wrong.

One of the team picked the thing up and showed me the parts. I wish I had gotten one of them to take home but I had other things on my mind at the time....... Oh well. Good luck!

Ron

>Do the walls have to be smooth, and completely greased? I'm using thread
>wrapped around the piston, and heavily greased with deer fat. I didn't
>grease the walls, just what it picked up from the piston. Next I'm going
>to try leather as the gasket, and will try greasing the walls.
>
>Any one played with this? I've seen a web site with info on it
>
>http://www.geocities.com/collegepark/4201/piston.html
>
>and have come to the conclusion that it needs to be precision made (not
>just whipped up in a few minutes as I have done so far). Any other info
>is appreciated!
>
>
>Bruce Carroll
>Virtual Mountain
>New Hampshire
"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"
Dr. Ron Hood
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"
Chris Smith wrote:

>Mention is also made of the fire plow and fire saw. If this isn't too far off-topic, what are those?

A fire plow is basically the old boy scouts rub two sticks trick. A soft board, a v-shaped trench, and with a stick you rub up and down the trench. I've only done this a couple of times, with Barry Keagan and Mike Fairbanks. To do this alone, you have to be built like a Brick S-house and rub like a maniac. Very inefficient and very very hard to do.

A fire saw is much easier. You use a piece of split bamboo as a board, use shredded bamboo as tinder underneath, and saw another piece of split bamboo at a 90 degree angle to the first. Once you saw right through the bamboo, a coal forms on the under side. Steve Watts of the Schiele museum in NC showed me this technique.

That's the briefs, it would take a long time to explain it properly
here, maybe Ben has instructions already written down about this.

These are all things which can be learned at the great TRIBE gathering which Ben holds each year.

AndrÈ

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

From - Thu Jan  2 09:36:16 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA02317; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:13:35 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA20266; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:12:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 21:16:42 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA20262 for
; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:11:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.68 (srv1s19.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.70]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id VAA18869 for
; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:15:12 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CB7D2A.412F@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Thu, 02 Jan 1997 09:17:30 +0000
X-UIDL: 852258075.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
Whether fire by friction is by bowdrill, handdrill, fire saw or fire thong, the theoretical principle of what makes this work is very useful to know. I will try to put words on something that anyone who has practised these skills for a long time tends to know by "feeling".

When wood is rubbed against wood, one of the materials is harder than the other. Even when the wood for fireboard and spindle are of the same wood, the spindle is harder than the fireboard in the sense that the fibers are cross grain rather than with the grain. Thus, basic theoretical principle #1, the harder wood grinds wood dust from the softer wood. Of course, some wood is ground from the harder of the two wood pieces too, but much more from the softer of the two, in this case the fireboard. Principle #2, is that when wood grinds hard enough, wood dust is created in the form of sawdust. Principle #3, when wood grinds hard enough and/or fast enough, heat is generated and the sawdust starts smoking and charring.

Now, the following is very important. Usually, sawdust is light, and when you rub wood, the sawdust moves away from the friction area and thus cools off, and new wood is rubbed which creates new sawdust which is cooler. This means that theoretically, you can do this forever and never obtain a coal or a fire.

Principle #4, then, is that to obtain a coal, YOU MUST RUB WOOD OVER AND OVER ON THE SAME SAWDUST. This is why you cut a notch in the fireboard, for instance. The hot sawdust gets wedged in the notch, preventing it from moving away from the friction area, and you are then rubbing over and over on the same sawdust and a coal will get created at that exact spot.

The coal then spreads to the remaining sawdust, making it grow, creating sufficient heat to flame tinder.

Principle #5, weight. Usually it is not sufficient to have the burnt sawdust wedged in between a crack. There is also a weight consideration. The pile of sawdust must be big enough and therefore heavy enough to prevent the newly formed sawdust from moving it and cooling it off.

The 6th principle deals with the fact that for fire to occur, there must be sufficient combustible material. If there is not enough wood sawdust around the forming coal, it will not gather the momentum necessary to grow to usable size. Just like a fire can't be built with a match and a single stick, a coal cannot form if there isn't enough burnt sawdust around it.

Finally, 7th principle, a fire needs air to complete the heat-combustible material-oxygen trio necessary for ignition. This is much less important in practice because the small wood sawdust balls
under a microscope reveal plenty of air space between them.

Now we can look at practical questions. Can a bowdrill fire be made without a notch? Yes, it makes sense now, doesn't it? Just keep drilling long enough and hard enough so that the burnt wood sawdust pile around the friction area gets big and heavy enough not to move as you keep drilling. I have obtained up to 5 coals at once all around the drilling area this way.

What about the fire saw. Well, as the saw traverses the bamboo half round board, burnt wood dust accumulates underneath and you are rubbing back and forth on the same pile of wood dust which can't move because it's stuck underneath the board! As in bow drill and hand drill, it is now obvious (or should be) that filling the notch with tinder will prevent a coal from forming...

Fire thong works on exactly the same principle. The thong goes underneath a piece of wood which is split open about 1/4 inch, and burnt wood sawdust accumulates above the thong and gets wedged in that split and can't move. Once the crack is full, the thong rubs back and forth against the same wood powder and the coal ignites there.

The fireplow technique is harder to understand and doesn't work everytime because it relies on brute strength to generate sufficient heat in the pile of wood dust to ignite a coal at a random spot in the pile. Since this technique cannot be duplicated precisely the same way everytime, it is hard to come to a conclusion about what is happening but I think it is this. As the pile of wood dust at the bottom of the plow gets heavy enough and cannot move, the heat transfer from the friction area ignites a coal on the bottom edge of the pile, which usually manifests itself as a coal on top of the pile when it is accidentally hit by the grinding stick. Note that I have tried making artificial fireplows by tying sticks to my jigsaw blade and was not able to produce fire! The principles are not respected accurately in this technique, and probably a random crack between the dust pile and the plow board must permit the formation of the coal. Scratch me!

As for the new "fire hole" technique, there must be a crack in one of the pieces of wood in which burnt wood dust can accumulate. It will most probably look like an upside down fire saw. Can't get away from the principles if it is to work. Looking forward to Ben's post on this.

Hope this helps...

AndrÈ le pyromane

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÅois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

From - Tue Jan 14 08:17:05 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTT id UAA04043; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 20:05:19 - 0500 (EST)
> Anyone have any insights or information on the fire plow?  I have
> heard of this, but have not seen any drawings, instructions etc. I
> have become proficient (read more successes than failures) at the bow
> drill, hand drill, fire saw etc. and would like to learn this
> technique.
> >
> thanks,
> > eddie
>
>Eddie,

I first saw the fire plow demonstrated at the Polynesian Cultural Center in
Hawaii...there are some awesome fire-making materials in the tropics.

    Here in the states, Bart Blankenship is quite proficient with the
fireplow; I watched him demonstrate it at Rabbitstick Rendezvous. In their
cottonwood and sotol (a desert plant similar to yucca or agave).  I cannot
tell if they are using those materials together or in independent sets.
    Bart and Robin are wonderful people.  For information on their
school write to EarthKnack, Box 19693, Boulder, CO 80308. They host the
EarthKnack Gathering in Colorado in June.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Anyone have any insights or information on the fire plow? I have heard of this, but have not seen any drawings, instructions etc. I have become proficient (read more successes than failures) at the bow drill, hand drill, fire saw etc. and would like to learn this technique.

thanks,
eddie

From - Tue Jan 14 08:40:47 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA04300; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 20:30:59 -0500 (EST)
On Tue, 14 Jan 1997 EDDIE.STARNATER@REHAB.STATE.TX.US wrote:

> Anyone have any insights or information on the fire plow?

I learned the fire plow while in Hawaii. It was demonstrated at the Polynesian Cultural Center by a Samoan. The apparatus is one 4-6 foot long wrist thick pole that is flattened on two sides. This flattened portion is only about the last two feet of the pole. You sit kind of side saddle on the unflattened part of the pole with the flattened part extending out in front of you. (Although, it really helps to have the whole thing flat to learn it!) The plow is 12-18 inches long and about 3 inches wide. It is pointed at one end to about a 45 degree angle. Looks about like the top of a picket fence.

Fingers of both hands are interwoven and the plow is held point down against the fireboard. The thumbs are at the back of the plow. Start out slowly and smoothly with nice long strokes to work a groove in the fireboard. It will depend upon the wood and your skill as to how deep you want your groove. It is kind of like burning in the holes of a bow drill before you notch it.

Rest a second after you get the groove in. To produce the coal, it is like the bow drill: use nice long strokes, gradually increase pressure and speed. After about twenty or thirty fast strong strokes you should get a coal at the end of your groove if you selected good wood.
Be as relaxed as possible. Use your weight more than your muscles. Give it everything you have got those last fifteen strokes or so.

Have fun!

---------------
Best Regards,

Bo Gulledge
Graduate Student in Computer Science, University of South Florida
WebMaster for the following home pages:
  Tom Brown, Jr's Tracker School
  Official Home Page: http://members.aol.com/trackerinc/
  Unofficial Page:http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/tracker.html
  Earth-Heart http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/earth-heart.html
  EarthWalk NW, Inc. Frank and Karen Sherwood's Skills Classes
  http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/earthwalknw/
Hey everyone, here's something new and exciting. I just about had an orgasm when I read about this!

Thanks to Ben Pressley for bringing it to my attention. Folks, please try this one for me! (I can't because I broke my spine a couple of weeks ago playing hockey. I'm well on my way to full recovery now, there will be no permanent damage, the doc confirmed this yesterday, but I have to wait at least two more months without doing any strenous activity whatsoever. Thanks to all who have shown concern...)

BEN PRESSLEY WROTE:

Andre, I'm just sending this to you, you can send it to the rest of the group, if you want. I noticed in your intro to the primitive skills group that you mentioned you had not found any firesaw material successful where you live. Try this, Barry Keegan and Mike Fairbanks came up with this one. Remember the New Guinea fire saw we played with at TRIBE Gathering with the bamboo strip and basswood hearth? Remember
you came up with the idea to elongate the strip by using two other attached bamboo sections for handles? Well, Mike Fairbanks was one of the guys there that successfully made an ember, well later on he came up with the idea of taking the split open, wedged open hearth, made from any soft, dry wood in hand...stuff it full of tinder, loosely...make a pinky sized impression in the tinder to receive the ember...take this hearth in hand and rub it up and down on a wedge of any hardwood jammed into the ground vigorously...and if you are good as Mike or Barry, you'll have an ember in 10 seconds lodged in the opening you made in the tinder bundle! I may have sent you a copy of Barry's drawing on this in the stuff I sent you, if not let me know. It will also be in the next TRIBE newsletter in March. Barry is ready to give up hand drill and bow drill for this method, he says it is so easy!

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

BEN,  let's find a name for this technique!  How about the fire hole?
What does Barry Keagan or Mike Fairbanks call it?

Cheers,

AndrÈ

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA     G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA     G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> Hey everyone, here's something new and exciting. I just about had an orgasm when I read about this!
>
> Thanks to Ben Pressley for bringing it to my attention. Folks, please try this one for me! (I can't because I broke my spine a couple of weeks ago playing hockey. I'm well on my way to full recovery now, there will be no permanent damage, the doc confirmed this yesterday, but I have to wait at least two more months without doing any strenuous activity whatsoever. Thanks to all who have shown concern...)
>
> BEN PRESSLEY WROTE:

> Andre, I'm just sending this to you, you can send it to the rest of the group, if you want. I noticed in your intro to the primitive skills group that you mentioned you had not found any firesaw material successful where you live. Try this, Barry Keegan and Mike Fairbanks came up with this one. Remember the New Guinea fire saw we played with at TRIBE Gathering with the bamboo strip and basswood hearth? Remember you came up with the idea to elongate the strip by using two other attached bamboo sections for handles? Well, Mike Fairbanks was one of the guys there that successfully made an ember, well later on he came up with the idea of taking the split open, wedged open hearth, made from any soft, dry wood in hand...stuff it full of tinder, loosely...make a pinky sized impression in the tinder to receive the ember...take this hearth in hand and rub it up and down on a wedge of any hardwood jammed into the ground vigorously...and if you are good as Mike or Barry, you'll have an ember in 10 seconds lodged in the opening you made in the tinder bundle! I may have sent you a copy of Barry's drawing on this in the stuff I sent you, if not let me know. It will also be in the next TRIBE newsletter in March. Barry is ready to give up hand drill and bow drill for this method, he says it is so easy!

> ----------------------------------------------------------
> Benjamin Pressley
> benjamin@perigee.net
> 
> BEN, let's find a name for this technique! How about the fire hole? What does Barry Keagan or Mike Fairbanks call it?
>
> Cheers,
>
> AndrÈ

> --
> Surviving at nature's will...
As far as I know they call it another fire saw technique. It is technically a fire saw, when you think about it.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. Check out our home page for more information.
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Chris Smith wrote:

>Mention is also made of the fire plow and fire saw. If this isn't too far off-topic, what are those?

A fire plow is basically the old boy scouts rub two sticks trick. A soft board, a v-shaped trench, and with a stick you rub up and down the trench. I've only done this a couple of times, with Barry Keagan and Mike Fairbanks. To do this alone, you have to be built like a Brick S-house and rub like a maniac. Very inefficient and very very hard to do.

A fire saw is much easier. You use a piece of split bamboo as a board, use shredded bamboo as tinder underneath, and saw another piece of split bamboo at a 90 degree angle to the first. Once you saw right through the bamboo, a coal forms on the under side. Steve Watts of the Schiele museum in NC showed me this technique.

That's the briefs, it would take a long time to explain it properly here, maybe Ben has instructions already written down about this.

These are all things which can be learned at the great TRIBE gathering which Ben holds each year.

André

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Quèbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Quèbec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Quèbec)
Andre, I'm just sending this to you, you can send it to the rest of the group, if you want. I noticed in your intro to the primitive skills group that you mentioned you had not found any firesaw material successful where you live. Try this, Barry Keegan and Mike Fairbanks came up with this one. Remember the New Guinea fire saw we played with at TRIBE Gathering with the bamboo strip and basswood hearth? Remember you came up with the idea to elongate the strip by using two other attached bamboo sections for handles? Well, Mike Fairbanks was one of the guys there that successfully made an ember, well later on he came up with the idea of taking the split open, wedged open hearth, made from any soft, dry wood in hand...stuff it full of tinder, loosely...make a pinky sized impression in the tinder to receive the ember...take this hearth in hand and rub it up and down on a wedge of any hardwood jammed into the ground vigorously...and if you are good as Mike or Barry, you'll have an ember in 10 seconds lodged in the opening you made in the tinder bundle! I may have sent you a copy of Barry's drawing on this in the stuff I sent you, if not let me know. It will also be in the next TRIBE newsletter in March. Barry is ready to give up hand drill and bow drill for this method, he says it is so easy!

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
Whether fire by friction is by bowdrill, handdrill, fire saw or fire thong, the theoretical principle of what makes this work is very useful to know. I will try to put words on something that anyone who has practised these skills for a long time tends to know by "feeling".

When wood is rubbed against wood, one of the materials is harder than the other. Even when the wood for fireboard and spindle are of the same wood, the spindle is harder than the fireboard in the sense that the fibers are cross grain rather than with the grain. Thus, basic theoretical principle #1, the harder wood grinds wood dust from the softer wood. Of course, some wood is ground from the harder of the two wood pieces too, but much more from the softer of the two, in this case the fireboard. Principle #2, is that when wood grinds hard enough, wood dust is created in the form of sawdust. Principle #3, when wood grinds hard enough and/or fast enough, heat is generated and the sawdust starts smoking and charring.

Now, the following is very important. Usually, sawdust is light, and when you rub wood, the sawdust moves away from the friction area and
thus cools off, and new wood is rubbed which creates new sawdust which is cooler. This means that theoretically, you can do this forever and never obtain a coal or a fire.

Principle #4, then, is that to obtain a coal, YOU MUST RUB WOOD OVER AND OVER ON THE SAME SAWDUST. This is why you cut a notch in the fireboard, for instance. The hot sawdust gets wedged in the notch, preventing it from moving away from the friction area, and you are then rubbing over and over on the same sawdust and a coal will get created at that exact spot.

The coal then spreads to the remaining sawdust, making it grow, creating sufficient heat to flame tinder.

Principle #5, weight. Usually it is not sufficient to have the burnt sawdust wedged in between a crack. There is also a weight consideration. The pile of sawdust must be big enough and therefore heavy enough to prevent the newly formed sawdust from moving it and cooling it off.

The 6th principle deals with the fact that for fire to occur, there must be sufficient combustible material. If there is not enough wood sawdust around the forming coal, it will not gather the momentum necessary to grow to usable size. Just like a fire can't be built with a match and a single stick, a coal cannot form if there isn't enough burnt sawdust around it.

Finally, 7th principle, a fire needs air to complete the heat-combustible material-oxygen trio necessary for ignition. This is much less important in practice because the small wood sawdust balls under a microscope reveal plenty of air space between them.

Now we can look at practical questions. Can a bowdrill fire be made without a notch? Yes, it makes sense now, doesn't it? Just keep drilling long enough and hard enough so that the burnt wood sawdust pile around the friction area gets big and heavy enough not to move as you keep drilling. I have obtained up to 5 coals at once all around the drilling area this way.

What about the fire saw. Well, as the saw traverses the bamboo half round board, burnt wood dust accumulates underneath and you are rubbing back and forth on the same pile of wood dust which can't move because it's stuck underneath the board! As in bow drill and hand drill, it is now obvious (or should be) that filling the notch with tinder will prevent a coal from forming...

Fire thong works on exactly the same principle. The thong goes underneath a piece of wood which is split open about 1/4 inch, and burnt wood sawdust accumulates above the thong and gets wedged in that split and can't move. Once the crack is full, the thong rubs back and forth against the same wood powder and the coal ignites there.

The fireplow technique is harder to understand and doesn't work every time because it relies on brute strength to generate sufficient heat in the pile of wood dust to ignite a coal at a random spot in the pile. Since this technique cannot be duplicated precisely the same way everytime, it is hard to come to a conclusion about what is happening.
but I think it is this. As the pile of wooddust at the bottom of the plow gets heavy enough and cannot move, the heat transfer from the friction area ignites a coal on the bottom edge of the pile, which usually manifests itself as a coal on top of the pile when it is accidentally hit by the grinding stick. Note that I have tried making artificial fireplows by tying sticks to my jigsaw blade and was not able to produce fire! The principles are not respected accurately in this technique, and probably a random crack between the dust pile and the plow board must permit the formation of the coal. Scratch me!

As for the new "fire hole" technique, there must be a crack in one of the pieces of wood in which burnt wood dust can accumulate. It will most probably look like an upside down fire saw. Can't get away from the principles if it is to work. Looking forward to Ben's post on this.

Hope this helps...

André le pyromane

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

From - Sun Jan 12 20:50:44 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chloris.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA16958; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 00:43:58 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA21212; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 00:43:36 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 00:41:31 EST
Received: from priv-sys05-le0.agt.net (clgrps05.agt.net [198.161.156.16]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AAA21200 for ; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 00:43:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from Bad.EHLO.Input ([204.209.203.214]) by mail.telusplanet.net with ESMTP id <461022-22443>; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 22:47:03 -0700
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853163066.108
From: "Kelly Harlton"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, kharlton@AGT.NET
To:
Subject: Fire Saw
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 22:46:31 -0700
X-MSMail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1155
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
I just caught the tail end of this thread. I still am having a hard time visualizing the fire saw as described. Can some one take a stab (one more time) at explaining this to me, as I'd like to try it. A book reference would be good too. Or maybe one of the survival/computer guru's could build a gif file for our viewing pleasure.

No need to clutter list with this old thread. (If you dont think it will be of general interest, then just send to me)

Thanks
Kelly Harlton

From - Thu Jan 2 09:18:42 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA01963; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 20:19:20 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA19838; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 20:18:00 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 20:22:37 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA19829 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 20:17:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.68 (srv1s19.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.70]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id UAA17893; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 20:21:08 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CB707E.7263@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Thu, 02 Jan 1997 08:23:26 +0000
X-UIDL: 852255080.001
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, STORMBRINGER@PRODIGY.NET
Subject: Re: The fire hole!
References: <32CC1284.4701@prodigy.net>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id UAA01963
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

STORMBRINGER wrote:
> Is this an accurate summary?
>
> You take stick A (a softwood) and hollow out a portion of it. Fill the
> hollowed out portion with tinder.
>
> Then rub stick A against stick B (a hardwood). You rub the hollowed end
> with the tinder in it against stick B. Then the coal will fall into the
> tinner and you coax it into flame?
>
> It seems, well, too easy.... Any clarification would be appreciated.

Well, Mr. Stormbringer, theoretically this description could not work because there is no way that the wood dust can accumulate and build up enough heat to create a coal. Please look at my next post on fire by friction theory and you will understand why. Ben will be posting more details on this actual technique later.

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Thu Jan 2 05:44:34 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA13695; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:59:31 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA17241; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:56:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mail1y-int.prodigy.net (mail1y-ext.prodigy.net [198.83.19.113]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA17211 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:52:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from yugo (port90.popi.prodigy.net [204.237.109.90]) by mail1y-int.prodigy.net (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA21406 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:54:48 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CC1284.4701@prodigy.net>
Date: Thu, 02 Jan 1997 14:54:44 -0500
From: STORMBRINGER
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, STORMBRINGER@PRODIGY.NET
Organization: STORMBRINGER
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
I am sorry for being so thick headed, but the "fire hole" idea caught my eye while I was catching up on my mail.

Is this an accurate summary:

You take stick A (a softwood) and hollow out a portion of it. Fill the hollowed out portion with tinder.

Then rub stick A against stick B (a hardwood). You rub the hollowed end with the tinder in it against stick B. Then the coal will fall into the tinner and you coax it into flame?

It seems, well, too easy.... Any clarification would be appreciated.

Thanks for your understanding and help.
I was speaking with Barry Keagan about this new technique yesterday. He gives 90% credit to our friend Mike Fairbanks on this one. Still trying to reach Mike...

He says he was successful with a tinder hole about the size of a small thimble, using a hickory upright and a basswood crosspiece with a crack of about 1/4 inch.

The theory of this makes sense: the friction fills up the thimble size hole surrounded by tinder with charred wood dust (which moves upward just as in the fire thong technique) and once the thimble is full, quick short strokes just over the hole make the crosspiece move back and forth over the same charred dust and a coal is created there.

Lots of elbow grease...

AndrÈ
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1
STORMBRINGER wrote:
>
> I am sorry for being so thick headed, but the "fire hole" idea caught my
> eye while I was catching up on my mail.
>
> Is this an accurate summary:....
> ...It seems, well, too easy.... Any clarification would be appreciated.
> >
> Thanks for your understanding and help.

No. Here is how it is done. Take a soft, dead dry wood (Anything you can
press a thumbnail into that is not resinous. i.e. basswood, willow,
cottonwood, etc.). Split, but not all the way down, just enough to prop
open with a rock or wooden wedge. Fill with loosely fitted tinder and
poke a pinky-sized hole in the tinder. Drive another piece of wood,
hardwood (hickory, oak, etc.) into the ground that is sharpened to a
long edge and driven in the ground at an angle so you can hold it
against your midsection. Rub the split and wedged piece vigorously over
the edge of the hardwood. In about 10 seconds you will have an ember
lodged in the split. You can tell when you have one for it will continue
to smoke when you stop. Let it sit and build in size and become more
solid. Then transfer it to a more substantial tinder bundle and blow
into a flame.

If you would like a drawing that explains it real well, just write my
snail mail below and send me $2 to cover copy and shipping costs.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From Tue Jan 7 08:36:34 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA09301; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 18:36:34 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA13364; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 18:34:58 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 18:39:37 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id SAA13361 for
; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 18:34:48
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> Ben, have you tried this yourself yet?

Yes. It is a new technique, that I was only recently introduced to. My explanation was a combination of Barry Keegan's experience and mine. He has tried it and been more successful consistently than me. He is the 10 second man. It has taken me a little longer, when I have been successful. Maybe his 10 second time did not include slow moving long strokes for pre-heating before really pressuring down. I hope I didn't mislead, like I've mastered it or something. I am speaking excitedly.
about this technique because I see its potential in the times I have had success with it. It is as easy as the Bamboo and more versatile, because of the variety of materials you can use. I think you will probably have no problem with it. I'm still working on mastering this one. Fire Saws wear me out!

> Please include precise dimensions if you can of the width of the crack
> where the rubbing takes place, the width and depth of the pinky size
> hole, the tinder used, and especially the width of the ridge on the
> bottom piece. Wish I could try this!!!

H-mm. Precise dimensions. I don't really have any precise dimensions to offer you. I have had success with Black Willow, mostly. Cottonwood shows promise. For some reason I can't get an ember with this technique using yucca.

The opening where the ember forms, where your applying friction, can be 1/8 to 1/4 inch. Tinder should be placed very loosely sort of forming a tiny bird nest (maybe this acts like the notch in bow & drill and allows a build up of heat as well as containing the ember?). You can poke this out with a stick to form this pocket. I have used dry hornet nest for tinder.

As far as diameter of hand held hearth. I don't think its that important. I've used 3/4 inch to 1-1/2 inch diameter.

The width of the ridge of the bottom piece is like a knife edge, sharp.

> I wish we could get Barry Keagan on this list, and John McPherson, and
> Steve Watts, and etc... I've been working on George Hedgepeth, he
> should be getting his computer soon. Can you work on some of the others?
> Barry hasn't got a computer. I'm trying to get him to get one. John
> McPherson has a homepage but he may have got someone to do this for him
> for advertising. I'll have to ask him. I have asked Steve Watts. He just
> says he never would get anything done if he connected to the Internet.
> And, George, it's just a matter of time. He is headed in that direction.
> John McPherson did send me a copy of his new book, though. Excellent!
> He is a super guy. He also mailed TRIBE a $50 donation.
I received a very important post in french from Pascal Chauvaux of France who is a member of our group. For those who don't read french, I have translated the essential at the end of this:

>AndrÈ,
Merci de m'avoir indiquÈ le PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP !
J'ai rencontrÈ quelques difficultÈs pour m'abonner, mais tout est bien maintenant.
J'ai reÅu dÈjy plus de 80 messages, et cela semble bien intÈressant.
Un des domaines qui m'attire le plus est la production de feu. Nous avons, avec quelques amis d'une association archÈologique de la rÈgion de LiÈge en Belgique, beaucoup travaillÈ la production (prÈhistorique) du feu. Si cela t'intÈresse, je peux t'envoyer la copie d'un article que nous avons publiÈ (en FranÅais) :
On y parle notamment des initiateurs (champignons) testés.

J'ai de bons contacts avec des archéologues suisses, et j'ai reçu un article indiquant les champignons utilisés (une quinzaine) par les néolithiques du lac de Neufchâtel en Suisse. Quelques-uns étaient des initiateurs pour le feu.

En ce qui concerne le feu par friction et percussion, je connais un bon spécialiste français : Jacques Collina-Girard. Il a publié quelques articles intéressants, et je peux t'en faire parvenir une copie si cela t'intéresse.

Nous nous sommes spécialisés dans les briquets en fer, et j'en ai d'ailleurs forgé une quarantaine la semaine dernière. Il faut dire que nous avons fait des recherches récemment, et que la plus vieille occurrence d'un briquet en fer remonte à 400 BC. Il s'agit de 3 briquets en fer provenant d'une sépulture collective de l'âge du fer (La Tène), dans la grotte Ambre, à Eprave en Belgique. Ils ont une forme très différente des briquets en fer connus. J'en ai quelques copies, et si tu es intéressé, je peux t'en faire parvenir un (avec les dessins des pièces originales). Je voudrais d'ailleurs le faire savoir au PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP. Peux-tu leur transmettre un message leur proposant gracieusement un briquet en fer. Je m'engage à envoyer gratuitement un briquet et quelques explications à ceux qui m'en feront la demande.

Comme chaque année, le premier jour de l'an, je vais me promener au Cap Blanc Nez, au bord de la mer entre la France et l'Angleterre, où ils ont creusé le tunnel sous la manche. On y trouve du silex dans la craie, mais aussi Énormément de marcassite, le fameux bisulfure de fer qui est attesté comme le plus ancien procédé de production de feu (tant que l'on ne retrouve pas une drille en bois). J'ai toutes les références des sites où on a retrouvé de la marcassite (paléo supérieur). Je peux également t'envoyer un kit complet : marcassite, briquet en silex, amadou.

Voilà, j'espère que si des renseignements que je te fournirai sont intéressants, tu auras le courage d'en faire une traduction sommaire pour le faire savoir aux membres du PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP. Mon anglais n'est pas assez bon pour le faire moi-même.

Merci pour ton obligeance.
Meilleurs voeux de santé et de prospérité à l'occasion de l'année nouvelle, à toi et aux membres de ta famille.

Pascal Chauvaux
Pascal.Chauvaux@gate71.be

Ok, here's the gist of the post:

Pascal and others in France in archeological circles have worked severely hard for a long time on flint & steel tinder. They found references to 15 types of fungi which were used for flint & steel tinder and tested them. He has offered to send me scientific articles on all of these experiments conducted in Europe and Switzerland especially, but they are in French.

His group has specialized in making striking bats based on a very old one they discovered which is dated 400 BC. These bats are apparently quite different from the ones we know about.

Pascal has offered to send a replica and drawings of the original to those of the group who want one free of charge! (I'm not sure that he will be able to do this when he finds out how many of us will be interested!)

He says that in the undersea tunnel which was dug years ago between England and France, that they have discovered Marcassite and other evidence of primitive fire making ways.

Wow, thanks for such a great post, Pascal, and in the name of the group, thanks for such a generous offer.

Please, everyone, send your requests directly to Pascal by private E-mail, not to the group.

AndrÈ

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA  G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA  G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 30 05:49:54 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA20521; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 14:05:07 -0500 (EST)
I have found that the dried top of the cattail that has been broken up and fluffed up will catch a spark from flint and steel very easily. In fact, if you do not watch out, the explosion of the initial flame will burn your hands before you can get out of the way.

Jim W.
JWither240@AOL.COM wrote:

> I was using a simple flint striker that fit into the side of a knife handle
> that I had ordered from the Sportsmans Guide Magazine. I just raked the
> knife blade along the length of the flint piece (about 2.5in. long X 1/8in
> wide), and got a large swoosh of sparks that when done close to the little
> pile of cattail fluff, resulted in an explosion of flame. The fluff burns
> out rather quickly, but with some dry leaves or other tinder next to it,
> results in a nice warm camp fire.
> 
> J.W.

Ok Jim, you had me fooled there for a while! What you are referring to
is a commercial flint striker which is made of magnesium with a striking
insert made of (what's the name I'm searching for?) ium. This magnesium
match puts off a very very hot spark that will make just about any kind
of good tinder flame up.

However, when we talk about flint and steel here, we are talking of
natural flint pieces struck with a piece of steel. I don't know of
anyone who has found any natural tinder fine enough to catch that kind
of spark other than the fungus Inonotus obliquus. That's why I was so
surprised by the cattail story.

Just goes to show how simple details can mislead one's thinking and get
some authors writing down things which do not work.

Thanks for helping us clear this up.

 AndrÈ
I was using a simple flint striker that fit into the side of a knife handle that I had ordered from the Sportsmans Guide Magazine. I just raked the knife blade along the length of the flint piece (about 2.5in. long x 1/8in wide), and got a large swoosh of sparks that when done close to the little pile of cattail fluff, resulted in an explosion of flame. The fluff burns out rather quickly, but with some dry leaves or other tinder next to it, results in a nice warm camp fire.

J.W.
Howdy!

First, thank you so much for your generous and kind appraisal of my fire piston article. It was a lot of work but very fun.

I am glad that you brought up the question of the shredded bark tinder that was mentioned in the article. I was reporting what John Rowlands said he used but in all my years of experimentation on the subject of catching sparks I have never had any success with the dry, finely shredded bark. In addition, no one who is into primitive tech. that I have talked to has indicated success either. Ditto for mouse or birdnests. I have only had success with charred material. The only thing I have seen that is uncharred that will catch and nurture a spark is a type of fungus that is sometimes found in birches or cherry trees and it is amazing to see.

Because of your question I am going to edit my article to indicate the above observations. I appreciate you input and look forward to further conversations as well. It sure would be fun to make a living writing things like that firepiston article.

Happy Holidays, Andre

Wyatt earp@grnet.com
I have been communicating with Wyatt Earl who wrote the article on fire piston and was asking him about tinder other than charred cloth. Our communications might interest some of you... here goes.

Howdy André!

First, thank you so much for your generous and kind appraisal of my fire piston article. It was a lot of work but very fun.

I am glad that you brought up the question of the shredded bark tinder that was mentioned in the article. I was reporting what John Rowlands said he used but in all my years of experimentation on the subject of catching sparks I have never had any success with the dry, finely shredded bark. In addition, no one who is into primitive tech. that I have talked to has indicated success either. Ditto for mouse or birdnests. I have only had success with charred material. The only thing I have seen that is uncharred that will catch and nurture a spark is a type of fungus that is sometimes found in birches or cherry trees and it is amazing to see.

Because of your question I am going to edit my article to indicate the above observations. I appreciate you input and look forward to further conversations as well. It sure would be fun to make a living writing things like that firepiston article.

Happy Holidays, Andre

Hi Wyatt,
You might like to know that I have finally identified that birch fungus you are talking about. It is sometimes called Chatoquin or Bearshit but the scientific name is Innonotus obliquus. It is indeed a fungus (at first I thought it was a disease) but it is a white rot fungus rather than a brown rot like most rots we usually see. This white rot attacks the wood lignum and cellulose differently than brown rot and is responsible for forming a material which is similar in many ways to charred cloth. I am still looking into this and trying to find other fungi or material botanically related to Innonotus to try them out. Maybe this will help you with the tinder issue and maybe you and others can help pursue this research further.

Innonotus was also used medicinally in Russia, one source mentioned that (can't remember off hand, but I did write it down somewhere).

For tinder, this stuff is indeed amazing. One very fine spark into it and you can't put it out! However, I've noticed that if it dries out too dry, it no longer works. Much testing still to be done...

Best regards,

AndrÈ

PS We've got a great primitive skills group with many very knowledgeable leaders, you are very invited to join us!

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA  G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA  G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From – Mon Dec 30 05:54:14 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA26833; Sun, 29 Dec 1996 21:50:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA00362; Sun, 29 Dec 1996 21:48:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
I have only had success with charred material
and an uncharred fungus from up in Canada that a friend of mine brought
me at TRIBE Gathering. Amazing stuff. A small sliver catches a spark and
it glows and glows.

I think you may be referring to Tinder Fungus. It's now a permanent fixture in my camping sack (along with Birch Bark) because it work so well.

Regards

KB
Upon further reflection we are talking about finely shredded bark as FIREPISTON tinder aren't we? My experiments were with flint and steel methods of firemaking & I've had no success with uncharred material.

I can't remember where I read it, but the best tinder for fire starting is shredded wasp nest. - Ted Bailey

Ted Bailey
P. O. Box 6076
Ann Arbor, MI 48106
Ph: (313)-971-2970
Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/
Upon further reflection we are talking about finely shredded bark as FIREPISTON tinder aren't we? My experiments were with flint and steel methods of firemaking & I've had no success with uncharred material.

I can't remember where I read it, but the best tinder for fire starting is shredded wasp nest. - Ted Bailey

Ted Bailey  || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076  || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106  || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970  || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Dec 27 22:45:03 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicli.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA17705; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:34:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA10169; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:33:43 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:38:18 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA10166 for ; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:33:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.166]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA109; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:31:05 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32C495C2.6118@perigee.net>
Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:36:34 -0600
X-UIDL: 851787496.010
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET
Subject: Re: Fire piston and flint & steel tinder
References:
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id VAA17705
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Ted E. Bailey wrote:
>
> Upon further reflection we are talking about finely shredded bark as
> >FIREPISTON tinder aren't we? My experiments were with flint and steel
> >methods of firemaking & I've had no success with uncharred material.
> >
> >I can't remember where I read it, but the best tinder for fire starting is
> >shredded wasp nest. - Ted Bailey
> >
> >Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
> >P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
> >Ann Arbor, MI 48106  || Boom Sales & Info Services
> >Ph: (313)-971-2970   || Fax: (313)-761-3632
> >Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/

For fire piston, "mountain' Mel Deweese is the only expert I know and he
says he has only had success with tinder derived from a certain palm. I
know that's a vague reference, I'll try to find out the xact name of the
palm. In the meantime anyone who wishes to contact Mel, can contact him
at: Nature Knowledge, 1825 Linden St., Grand Junction, CO 81503, Phone:
970-242-8507.

As far as flint & steel, I have only had success with charred material
and an uncharred fungus from up in Canada that a friend of mine brought
me at TRIBE Gathering. Amazing stuff. A small sliver catches a spark and
it glows and glows. Maybe Andre remembers the name of the fungus I'm
talking about. George Hedgepeth brought it with him that year you came
to TRIBE Gathering.

------------------------------------------------------------------------
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE
Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for
June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over,
camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival
and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more
information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

Also Check Out Ted Baileyís Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills
Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html

From - Wed Dec 25 23:35:42 1996
Received: from mailbox.syr.edu (root@mailbox.syr.edu [128.230.1.5]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id JAA08554 for ; Thu, 26 Dec 1996
09:17:25 -0500 (EST)
Inonotus obliquus is a common fungus and there is a great deal of information published about it. You can find some in forest pathology books and some in books on systematics of polypores.

I am surprised that it catches a spark so well. It is not the fungus known as "tinder fungus," which is Fomes fomentarius.

Jim Worrall

Inonotus obliquus:
The imperfect form of the fungus occurs parasitically on trunks usually of Betula (birch) more rarely on Alnus (alder) and other hardwoods. The fruiting bodies of the imperfect form are conspicuous in that they are black lumps which are always found on the trunk 1-4 m above the ground. Only after the tree dies does the perfect stage develop under the bark and is often overlooked. Fruiting is annual throughout the year, found in Europe, North America and Asia.

Ref. Fungi of Switzerland, Volume 2 (non gilled fungi), eds J Breitenbach & F Kranzlin, Verlag Mykologia, CH-6000 Lucerne 9, Switzerland.
Hope this helps

Paul F Hamlyn

From - Thu Jan  2 07:43:00 1997
Received: from noc.tc.umn.edu (0@noc.tc.umn.edu [128.101.131.1]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id RAA00833 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 17:42:15
-0500 (EST)
Received: from puccini.crl.umn.edu by noc.tc.umn.edu; Thu, 2 Jan 97 16:46:17 -0600
Received: from robertb.umn.edu by puccini.crl.umn.edu (SMI-8.6/SMI-SVR4)
   id QAA00557; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 16:50:52 -0600
Message-Id: <1.5.4.32.19970102223955.0068165c@puccini.crl.umn.edu>
X-Sender: robertb@puccini.crl.umn.edu
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Light Version 1.5.4 (32)
Mime-Version: 1.0
Date: Thu, 02 Jan 1997 16:39:55 -0600
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
X-UIDL: 852245500.000
From: "Robert A. Blanchette"
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Your letter to Mary Palm was forward to me. Inonotus obliquus was used
frequently as a tinder and there are a number of "mushroom" identification
books with information. Do you want references? There are also several
other fungi that were used for tinder and appear to be superior to I.
obliquus. Fomes fomentarius has been used in Europe as well as the US and
Canada - and used by Native Americans. In the pacific northwest, Native
Americans used other fungi such as Phaeolus schweinitzii. Let me know what
kind of information you need.

Sincerely,
Robert A. Blanchette
Professor
Department of Plant Pathology
495 Borlaug Hall, 1991 Upper Buford Circle
University of Minnesota
St. Paul, Minnesota 55108-6030
Phone 612-625-0202
Fax 612-625-9728
e-mail robertb@puccini.crl.umn.edu

From - Wed Jan  8 13:04:45 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA19901; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 00:26:29 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA03522; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 00:24:14 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
   with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 00:28:55 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AAA03515 for
   ; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 00:24:02
Tim Rast wrote:

> "The Beothuk lit fires by striking two pieces of iron pyrite together to produce sparks that would ignite bird down or other inflammable matter. Five Beothuk burials contained iron pyrites among the grave goods; fragments of pyrites were also recovered from several housepits on archaeological sites. The use of metallic crystals for percussion striking was the main method of producing fire among Algonkquian speakers north of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Le Jeune, who described this procedure from the Montagnais in Labrador in 1634, said that they used the down-covered skin of an eagle's thigh to catch the sparks."

Wow Tim, what a terrific post! First time I've ever heard of bird down being used as tinder. Quick, someone in the south run out and try this! No birds here right now, but maybe I'll sacrifice my old down jacket!

I'd appreciate anyone who knows more about this to please speak up...

Thanks, this is exciting!

AndrÈ

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 9 07:07:20 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA23374; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 12:37:31 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA17377; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 12:36:12 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 12:40:54 EST
Received: from slip-3.slip.net ([207.171.193.17]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA17373 for ; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 12:35:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from woodruff-sawyer.com [204.162.170.22] by slip-3.slip.net with smtp (Exim 0.57 #1) id OviOSM-0000Fq-00; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 09:39:58 -0800
Received: from pc67 by woodruff-sawyer.com (AIX 3.2/UCB 5.64/4.03) id AA65115; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 09:37:54 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Thu, 9 Jan 97 09:37:18
X-UIDL: 852854627.021
From: John Wall
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, w6@WOODRUFF-SAWYER.COM
Subject: Re: Bird down as tinder
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Priority: 3 (Normal)
X-Mailer: Chameleon 5.0.1, TCP/IP for Windows, NetManage Inc.
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; CHARSET=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>He uses the spongy, brown part of the "true Tinder Fungus

Mark, I'd like the scientific name. Andre has posted a name or two, and I'm waiting to hear from a friend whether I can find them around here. The polypores I'm familiar with are pretty tough customers and won't just crumble in your hands; so do you just cut 'em up and mash 'em with rocks until you get a powder, or what?

--John

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 9 07:07:08 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA23201; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 12:08:53 -0500 (EST)
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
> Quick, someone in the south run out and try this!
> No birds here right now, but maybe I'll sacrifice my old down jacket!
> I'd appreciate anyone who knows more about this to please speak up...
>
This is a new one for me also. It sort of boggles the mind to imagine running around in the words looking for said bird down, but I have no doubt it was used in special instances for ceremonies etc.

My experience with flint and steel is limited personally, however I have a Native friend in this area who lights all his ceremonial fires using flint and steel (although he is very secretive about his materials. I get the sense in talking to him that he uses some kind of flint/iron pyrite combo. I will hopefully have an opportunity to talk to him more about the details in the future and you can be sure I will post what I can here at that time). What I am sure about is what he uses for tinder and I have since found references to the same material in books by Mors Kochanski and others. He uses the spongy, brown part of the "true Tinder Fungus which is the strange looking growths on the sides of live birch trees. He has been very firm in his insistence that it needs to come from a live birch tree. The fungus looks kind of like a "burned growth" and differs significantly from false tinder fungus which has a more uniform and shelf-like appearance. If anyone is interested I can get
scientific names etc. and more information on these fungi.

Bird down, huh? :-)

Mark

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan  9 07:08:01 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA24111; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 14:14:54 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA20520; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 14:13:30 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 14:18:11 EST
Received: from unix.newnorth.net (unix.newnorth.net [205.212.60.10]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id OAA20497 for
; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 14:13:18
-0500 (EST)
Received: from marknq.newnorth.net (rhin-cs2-3.newnorth.net [205.212.60.173])
by unix.newnorth.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id MAA24190; Thu, 9 Jan
1997 12:35:33 -0600 (CST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D53866.50E4@unix.newnorth.net>
Date: Thu, 09 Jan 1997 12:26:46 -0600
X-UIDL: 852854627.042
From: Mark Zanoni
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MarkNQ@UNIX.NEWNORTH.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, w6@WOODRUFF-SAWYER.COM
Subject: Re: Bird down as tinder
References:
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

John Wall wrote:
> 
> >He uses the spongy, brown part of the "true Tinder Fungus
> >Mark, I'd like the scientific name. Andre has posted a name or two,
> >and I'm waiting to hear from a friend whether I can find them around
> >here. The polypores I'm familiar with are pretty tough customers
> >and won't just crumble in your hands; so do you just cut 'em up and
> >mash 'em with rocks until you get a powder, or what?
> >
> >--John

Actually John I've been looking books trying to find the scientific
name for these things and haven't had any luck yet. Maybe someone else out there can help. Have you tried the fungus I call "true tinder fungus" yet to see if it will crumble? (it is a very strange looking glob on the side of live birch). I know the "false tinder" fungus is not easy at all to crumble. It sort of has the consistancy of dry hardwood. Maybe that's why it needs to be soaked in lye first. Any other folks tried this?

Mark

From - Thu Jan  9 07:07:41 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA23828; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 13:39:37 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA19734; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 13:37:03 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 13:41:45 EST
Received: from piva.ucs.mun.ca (piva.ucs.mun.ca [134.153.2.63]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA19731 for ; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 13:36:52 -0500 (EST)
Received: from plato.ucs.mun.ca (t64tr@plato.ucs.mun.ca [134.153.2.151]) by piva.ucs.mun.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA30181; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 15:10:52 -0330 (NST)
Received: (from t64tr@localhost) by plato.ucs.mun.ca (8.8.3/8.8.3) id PAA14031; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 15:10:51 -0330 (NST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852854627.032
From: Tim Rast
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, t64tr@MORGAN.UCS.MUN.CA
Message-ID: <199701091840.PAA14031@plato.ucs.mun.ca>
Subject: Re: Bird down as tinder
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MarkNQ@UNIX.NEWNORTH.NET
Date: Thu, 9 Jan 1997 15:10:51 -0330 (NST)
In-Reply-To: <32D5245B.36A3@unix.newnorth.net> from "Mark Zanoni" at Jan 9, 97
  11:01:15 am
X-Mailer: ELM [version 2.4 PL23]
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id NAA23828
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

This is a new one for me also. It sort of boggles the mind to imagine running around in the words looking for said bird down, but I have no doubt it was used in special instances for ceremonies etc.
I think that the reference to eagle down in the original quote may have been somewhat misleading. The source that was cited was from the 1600s and the down may have been romanticised a little -- or perhaps they were using the good stuff for a guest. The Montagnais and Beothuk were coastal groups. They spent much of the year on the coast fishing, sealing, collecting shellfish, and raiding bird islands for birds, eggs, and down. Fluffy down from water fowl, such as the eider duck could be found in abundance, at the right time of year, at migratory bird colonies. I suppose that if eagle down burns they would have used it when available, but I think for the most part they would have relied on down from these nesting colonies.

cheers,
Tim

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Thu Jan  9 08:04:29 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA26599; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 19:00:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA24090; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 18:58:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 19:03:33 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA24087 for ; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 18:58:40 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.130]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA131 for ; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 18:55:36 -0500
X-UIDL: 852855229.000
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D59502.870@perigee.net>
Date: Thu, 09 Jan 1997 19:01:54 -0600
X-UIDL: 852855229.000
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Bird down as tinder
References: <199701091840.PAA14031@plato.ucs.mun.ca>
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id SAA24088
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id TAA26599
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
SAA24088
This is a new one for me also. It sort of boggles the mind to imagine running around in the words looking for said bird down, but I have no (snip)

cheers,
Tim

I haven't experimented extensively with bird down, but the times I have tried I used Turkey and (don't tell anyone) snowy white egret (I didn't kill it, some animal did). They just melted. They didn't catch up flame. I'd be interested if anyone has had success with this, too.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
The article submitted by Dr. Bourbeau was top notch. I was wondering if anyone has tried using charred pith as a coal enhancer tinder. I have had good luck using the charred center pith of mullein in demonstrations with flint and steel. The actual charring process is a little more tricky than it is when dealing with cotton, but it seems to work nonetheless. Any thoughts?

Jon Harshbarger
jharsh@dreamscape.com

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 16 11:06:52 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA20192; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:32:47 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA06512; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:31:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:29:07 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA06507 for ; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:30:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.96]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA113 for ; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:26:57 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DEACDA.431E@perigee.net>
Date: Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:34:02 -0600
X-UIDL: 853456086.009
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Ember enhancers
References: <199701151503.KAA11924@ultra1.dreamscape.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Jon Harshbarger wrote:
The article submitted by Dr. Bourbeau was top notch. I was wondering if anyone has tried using charred pith as a coal enhancer tinder. I have had good luck using the charred center pith of mullein in demonstrations with flint and steel. The actual charring process is a little more tricky than it is when dealing with cotton, but it seems to work nonetheless. Any thoughts?

Jon Harshbarger
jharsh@dreamscape.com

I have also charred and used the pith of mullein as well as red sumac. They do char and work very well. They are also difficult to keep together in a pile. I usually make a birdnest of fluffy tinder and poke a finger sized hole to hold it as tightly together as possible and it works very well.

And I also add my praise for Andre's excellent article on ember enhancers. This is the kind of posts I like to see.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Sun Jan 12 20:47:45 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA13039; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:48:57 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA16597; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:48:18 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:46:25 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA16591 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:48:08 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.157]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA135 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:44:33 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D940B7.2526@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:51:19 -0600
X-UIDL: 853163066.003
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
I would like to hear some discussion from the group from anyone with experience on what, if any, ember enhancers you use. By ember enhancer I mean, is there anything you have found successful that helps to increase the size of your ember that you transfer an ember to (usually produced by friction methods) prior to transferring it to a tinder bundle?

Some people, for example, will actually place cattail fluff beneath the notch and between the fireboard and ember transfer plate for the purpose of 'holding' an ember and allowing it to grow a little bigger. I, for one, do not like cattail fluff. I have had too many embers smother out doing this. One ember enhancer I like is rotten, corky, punky wood. It will not catch up into flame, but given time that piece of rotten wood will become one big, glowing ember.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Benjamin

The best way I have found to enhance an ember was to leave it in the notch for 1.5-2 minutes occasionally waving my hand over the ember. After 2 minutes the ember will have grown larger and more stable and then using a knife, I carefully separate the ember from the notch and place the ember in the tinder. In my experience this has been the best method.

Dave McMullen
mcmullen@paprican.ca
MCMULLEN David wrote:
>
> Benjamin
>
>     The best way I have found to enhance an ember was to leave it in
> the notch for 1.5-2 minutes (snip)

Yes, that is essential even with ember enhancers. I started this thread
to see what if any additional things anyone does to help assure the
growth of an ember, a little extra insurance, if you would. I hope this
clarifies my query. I'm just curious what other people use.

------------------------------------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Benjamin Pressley wrote:

> I would like to hear some discussion from the group from anyone with
> experience on what, if any, ember enhancers you use. By ember enhancer I
> mean, is there anything you have found successful that helps to increase
> the size of your ember that you transfer an ember to (usually produced
> by friction methods) prior to transferring it to a tinder bundle?
> 
> Some people, for example, will actually place cattail fluff beneath
> the notch and between the fireboard and ember transfer plate for the
> purpose of 'holding' an ember and allowing it to grow a little bigger.
> I, for one, do not like cattail fluff. I have had too many embers
> smother out doing this. One ember enhancer I like is rotten, corky,
> punky wood. It will not catch up into flame, but given time that piece
> of rotten wood will become one big, glowing ember.

Benjamin Pressley

benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Ben: I have found that if I make a large
enough notch in the board and
flare the bottom of it that enough char powder from the spindle and base
board will collect to make a good sized ember. Sometimes I've even gotten
more than one. (How that has happened, I have no idea) I then transfer
it to my tinder bundle and blow. Hope this helps, FP

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 16 01:55:42 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA18795; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 13:39:48 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA04117 for
; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 13:38:31 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 13:36:48 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA04117 for
; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 13:38:31 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.96]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail
Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA107 for
Ferrell A. Peterson wrote:

Ben: I have found that if I make a large enough notch in the board and 
flare the bottom of it that enough char powder from the spindle and base 
board will collect to make a good sized ember. Sometimes I've even gotten 
more than one. (How that has happened, I have no idea) I then transfer 
it to my tinder bundle and blow. Hope this helps, FP

Yes, I've did that, too. I think it is also important to wait and let 
the ember grow and fuse together more solid. My query, though, is out of 
curiosity if anyone uses anything extra to enhance the size of the ember, once it is produced. Some people use cattail fluff, some rotten 
punky wood, as I mentioned.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
> I not yet convinced that its a fungus at all. I believe it is more
> like a "burel" or "Conk"

A burl is part of the tree or shrub. I don't remember my botany all
that well, but I think burl is all meristematic tissue, which means
you can grow a new tree from it. A lot of woody plants that grow in
areas of frequent fires sport underground burls that allow them to
rise like the proverbial phoenix after a blaze. A "conk" is just a
common name for any big ole polypore fungus stuck to the side of a
tree. It's a lot harder than your average mushroom, but it's still
a fungus.

--John

X-Mailer: Chameleon 5.0.1, TCP/IP for Windows, NetManage Inc.
Hey great list gang! I've made numerous fires from both the tinder fungus and the false tinder fungus mentioned in Mors Kochanski's book.

You may have fun finding scientific name for the "true tinder fungus" as I not yet convinced that it's a fungus at all. I believe it is more like a "burel" or "Conk" (sp?) not unlike you would find on an aspen. The consistancy from the inner portion looks, feels, and crumbles exactly the way that cork does. Its great stuff and has many uses. for firestarting it makes a great long lasting ember. The false tinder fungus if pressed I could dig up the scientific name no prob. I definitly will not crumble, in fact you have to slice thin pieces off the layer found just under the outer shell, and then process by boiling in a hard wood ash slurry, and drying. Both these work well with sparks from my axehead or knife.

Regarding thread on carrying an ember, The only thing I've tried is "Funky wood from a stump". I had read(cant remember where) that some Indians use to spit a piece of punky wood, sandwich the ember in the middle (making sure it starts to smolder) and then wrap in a piece of leather and tie so you and carry it on your peson. What I found is this worked OK but was subject to moisture content in wood. (that is, if the woods too wet, the ember will extinguish, and if the woods too dry, the ember grows too quickly, and it becomes too hot to handle)

Hope this information is of some value

Kelly

----------
From: Mark Zanoni[SMTP:MarkNQ@UNIX.NEWNORTH.NET]
Sent: Thursday, January 09, 1997 11:26 AM
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; w6@WOODRUFF-SAWYER.COM
Subject: Re: Bird down as tinder

John Wall wrote:
>
> He uses the spongy, brown part of the "true Tinder Fungus"
Mark, I'd like the scientific name. Andre has posted a name or two, and I'm waiting to hear from a friend whether I can find them around here. The polypores I'm familiar with are pretty tough customers and won't just crumble in your hands; so do you just cut 'em up and mash 'em with rocks until you get a powder, or what?

--John

Actually John I've been looking books trying to find the scientific name for these things and haven't had any luck yet. Maybe someone else out there can help. Have you tried the fungus I call "true tinder fungus" yet to see if it will crumble? (it is a very strange looking glob on the side of live birch). I know the "false tinder" fungus is not easy at all to crumble. It sort of has the consistency of dry hardwood. Maybe that's why it needs to be soaked in lye first. Any other folks tried this?

Mark
Hi folks,

Pascal Chauvaux of Belgium just sent me a message in French which might interest you. In essence it translates as follows:

For flint & steel fire, cattail fluff does not work. However, you can "improve it" by washing it in a solution of 5 parts warm water to 1 part of potassium nitrate. After drying, it will now work.

Question for all you chemists: what's potassium nitrate, and is it possible to manufacture it or find it in the wilderness somehow?

Thanks to Pascal for sharing this.

André

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

Hi Ya'all

I'll try to give you a place to look on this one.

> However, you can "improve it" by washing it in a solution of 5 parts warm water to 1 part of potassium nitrate. After drying, it will now work.
> > Question for all you chemists: what's potassium nitrate, and is it possible to manufacture it or find it in the wilderness somehow?

During my military training we were taught how to make explosives with common chemicals and in some cases, how to make the chemicals themselves.
Potassium Nitrate is also known as "saltpeter (Saltpetre)" and is the oxidizing agent in black powder.

It is formed ..... or precipitated from...... feces. Turds lying in a field will, after some time, develop a whitish crystalline powder which is part uric acid and part potassium nitrate. This substance, the crystals, not the turds, are collected and washed to separate the chemicals. I will try to remember the exact process we used and post that later. I do remember that the crystals with the highest concentration of Potassium nitrate were found on the underside of the turd, next to the ground.

This powder was mixed in the classic proportions with either charcoal and sulphur, or charcoal and sugar, to make a stinky explosive. The sugar mix smelled like a candied turd. Do NOT try this in your rifle! It is OK in Bamboo nail guns.

I'll look in my notes for more info on the process. It is simple and the saltpeter is useful in a number of ways to enhance ignition etc. It is not effective in curbing sexual drive as some legends will have us believe.

Ron Hood

Visit Hoods Woods at

http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/

It's good for a laugh......
Hi Ya'all

I'll try to give you a place to look on this one.

> However, you can "improve it" by washing it in a solution of 5 parts warm water to 1 part of potassium nitrate. After drying, it will now work.
>
> Question for all you chemists: what's potassium nitrate, and is it possible to manufacture it or find it in the wilderness somehow?

During my military training we were taught how to make explosives with common chemicals and in some cases, how to make the chemicals themselves. Potassium Nitrate is also known as "saltpeter (Saltpetre)" and is the oxidizing agent in black powder.

It is formed ..... or precipitated from ..... feces. Turds lying in a field will, after some time, develop a whitish crystalline powder which is part uric acid and part potassium nitrate. This substance, the crystals, not the turds, are collected and washed to separate the chemicals. I will try to remember the exact process we used and post that later. I do remember that the crystals with the highest concentration of Potassium nitrate were found on the underside of the turd, next to the ground.

This powder was mixed in the classic proportions with either charcoal and sulphur, or charcoal and sugar, to make a stinky explosive. The sugar mix smelled like a candied turd. Do NOT try this in your rifle! It is OK in Bamboo nail guns.

I'll look in my notes for more info on the process. It is simple and the saltpeter is useful in a number of ways to enhance ignition etc. It is not effective in curbing sexual drive as some legends will have us believe.

Ron Hood

Visit Hoods Woods at

http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/
It's good for a laugh......
Hello,

Potassium nitrate is a chemical compound, KNO₃, which is produced by nitrification in soils used in gunpowders, fertilizers and preservatives (i.e., saltpeter). I would imagine that a good knowledge of your local natural resources would point you to a geologic source otherwise I'm not sure how one might manufacture it.

A short intro. I am a project archaeologist involved with cultural resource management studies on Iowa Department of Transportation projects. Besides my interest in archaeology and my degrees in Anthropology I have been interested in primitive skills since I was quite young. I grew up in the Duluth, Minnesota area and have had extensive outdoor time throughout northeast and northcentral Minn., northern Wisconsin and the U.P. of Michigan, and central Ontario. Since leaving Minn. for other points I have lived in Oregon, South Dakota, and Indiana prior to moving to Iowa. I have tried to practice the skill I already knew and learn as many new ones as I came across. I am a flintknapper of some 10 years and am branching out into other experimental areas of prehistoric technology, it all helps me understand and analyze better the real archaeological stuff. This listserv is wonderful and I am glad to be a part. I'll contribute as I can and look forward to learning Lots of new stuff about living in the natural world.

To share a quick story....I was doing a flintknapping demonstration at the University of Northern Iowa one afternoon and had checked in with the director of the student union, who was the organizer of the Multicultural Week of which I was a participant. On walking outside to where I was to
knap, the director said to me...."So, when the powers goes off for good, our computers all fail, and all of our industrial machinery grinds to a halt, we should come and find you if we want to continue to eat and such, right?"
Needless to say I chuckled, agreed with her, and said that fortunately all can learn to knap and survive if the desire and (perhaps more so) the need were there. Thanks for the list Dr. Bourbeau! Mark.

At 10:11 PM 1/8/97 +0000, you wrote:

>Hi folks,
>
> Pascal Chauvaux of Belgium just sent me a message in French which might
>interest you. In essence it translates as follows:
>
>For flint & steel fire, cattail fluff does not work. However, you can
>"improve it" by washing it in a solution of 5 parts warm water to 1 part
>of potassium nitrate. After drying, it will now work.
>
>Question for all you chemists: what's potassium nitrate, and is it
>possible to manufacture it or find it in the wilderness somehow?
>
>Thanks to Pascal for sharing this.
>
>AndrÈ
>---
>
>Surviving at nature's will...
>
>Dr AndrÈ-FranÅois Bourbeau
>Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
>555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1
>
>Mark L. Anderson, Project Archaeologist
Office of the State Archaeologist, 306 Eastlawn, Iowa City, IA 52242-1411.
Ph. 319-335-2403
Fax 319-335-2776

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan  9 07:08:28 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA24761; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 15:31:18 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA22178; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 15:26:09 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 15:30:47 EST
Received: from beavis.globecomm.net (beavis.globecomm.net [207.51.48.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA22174 for
; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 15:25:48
Andre wrote

> Question for all you chemists: what's potassium nitrate, and is it possible to manufacture it or find it in the wilderness somehow?

Sure, it can be "manurefactured". The best source is a bat cave that's been used for a while. Potassium nitrate is one of the salts that's expelled from the bodies of mammals, I think in urine, but it could be both. Bat Guano, used to be mined for this. Chicken poop should be good too and if you're close to an old outhouse, human waste is high in nitrates (potassium nitrate) too. If it's poop and good fertilizer, then it's probably a good source of potassium nitrate. The best stuff is the well aged stuff. In bat caves, it's the stuff that looks like dirt, not the fresh.

BTW, potassium nitrate is also known as nitre. (That's right, it grows on the walls of catacombs).

Now, to get the stuff out... It's a leaching and drying process like extracting lye from ashes. Water is poured through a pile of ... (be nice merv!) preprocessed potassium nitrate ore, the liquid coming through it is captured and dried in the sun. The resulting crystals are pretty pure potassium nitrate.

The easiest way, if you have the materials is to build a hopper to hold the ore and a catchment below it for the liquid that comes through.

Any hydro-carbon soaked in potassium nitrate solution and dried should make a good tinder. Now if we only had some sulfur and some charcoal, we'd be on our way to fun stuff! This combination should make good timber too!

Sticking his foot in it again...

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow------------------------------------------
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> Question for all you chemists: what's potassium nitrate, and is it possible to manufacture it or find it in the wilderness somehow?
>
> Hey Ya'll

I'm not a chemist but I may have part of the answer. Potassium Nitrate aka salt peter was used by Mt. Men in making black powder. The chemical can be found where animal urine has evaporated(Around barnyards or outhouses). White crystals form which are collected and ground into a powder. Add equal amounts of powdered sulphur and charcoal and you have basic black powder. I have collected and processed the ingredients but have not made any powder.

Grizz aka Terry Hayhurst
(New to the Group will intro self later)
with SMTP; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 00:54:54 EST
Received: from hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU [128.205.32.11]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AAA26102 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 00:49:55
-0500 (EST)
Received: (goetz@localhost) by hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (8.7.5/8.6.4) id AAA27069;
Fri, 10 Jan 1997 00:53:57 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852907215.036
From: Phil Goetz
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Message-ID: <199701100553.AAA27069@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Subject: Re: Improving cattail tinder
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tah1319@MAIL.IDT.NET
Date: Fri, 10 Jan 1997 00:53:57 -0500 (EST)
In-Reply-To: <32D58B04.3578@mail.idt.net> from "Terry Hayhurst" at Jan 9, 97
04:19:16 pm
X-Mailer: ELM [version 2.4 PL25]
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> I'm not a chemist but I may have part of the answer. Potassium Nitrate
> aka salt peter was used by Mt. Men in making black powder. The chemical
> can be found where animal urine has evaporated(Around barnyards or
> outhouses). White cristals form which are collected and ground into a
> powder.

How about the concentrated urine dropped/squirited by owls
and hawks? Would that stuff be better?

Phil

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 10 00:09:42 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA02711; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 11:44:47 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA29496; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 11:43:06 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id LAA29481 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 11:42:43
-0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.99]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail
Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA102 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 11:38:47
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> Hi folks,
>
> Pascal Chauvaux of Belgium just sent me a message in French which might interest you. In essence it translates as follows:
>
> For flint & steel fire, cattail fluff does not work. However, you can "improve it" by washing it in a solution of 5 parts warm water to 1 part of potassium nitrate. After drying, it will now work.

> Question for all you chemists: what's potassium nitrate, and is it possible to manufacture it or find it in the wilderness somehow?

> Thanks to Pascal for sharing this.

> AndrÈ

----

Surviving at nature's will...

> Dr AndrÈ-FranÃois Bourbeau
> Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÃ©bec
> 555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÃ©bec), Canada G7H 2B1

Cool! As far as Potassium Nitrate, it is one of the key elements in gun powder. Gunpowder= Potassium Nitrate+Sulfur+Charcoal. It is also known as saltpeter. I do not think it is that abundant in the wild. I know it is mined out of caves. If I'm not mistaken water was ran through it in the U.S. Civil War and the run-off was nitro glycerin. You can buy it at a drug store, though.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
merv martin wrote:

> > Andre wrote
> >
> > Question for all you chemists: what's potassium nitrate, and is it possible to manufacture it or find it in the wilderness somehow?
> >
> > Sure, it can be "manurefactured". The best source is a bat cave that's been used for a while. Potassium nitrate is one of the salts that's expelled from the bodies of mammals, I think in urine, but it could be both. Bat Guano, used to be mined for this. Chicken poop should be (snip)

That's what it was! I knew it came out of a cave. It isn't mined it comes from bat guano. Duh! I remember hearing that on a tour of the Lost
Sea cave in Sweetwater, TN. There was a potassium nitrate operation going on there during the Civil War.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Benjamin wrote;
> Cool! As far as Potassium Nitrate, it is one of the key elements in gun powder. Gunpowder = Potassium Nitrate + Sulfur + Charcoal. It is also known as saltpeter. I do not think it is that abundant in the wild. I know it is mined out of caves. If I'm not mistaken water was ran through it in the U.S. Civil War and the run-off was nitro glycerin. You can buy it at

http://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/fireti1.htm
>a drug store, though.

Making nitro is considerably more complex than running water through potassium nitrate. I can supply the instructions if there are any real pyro maniacs out there.

Rob

Rob Chatburn, R.R.T
Director/Respiratory Care Dept.
Rainbow Babies & Childrens Hospital
11100 Euclid Ave.
Cleveland, OH 44106
(216) 844-7930
FAX: (216) 844-5246

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
From: Fri Jan  3 04:42:36 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic.i.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA08077; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 14:43:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA24448; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 14:42:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 14:46:54 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id OAA24443 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 14:42:08 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.63 (srvls12.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.63]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id OAA28552 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 14:45:21 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CC734B.2328@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Fri, 03 Jan 1997 02:47:39 +0000
X-UIDL: 852321243.0001
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Inonotus and other fungus as tinder
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
Hi everyone, I am forwarding this letter I received about tinders from professor Robert Paquette of Minnesota.

Dear Dr. Bourbeau,

An interesting book that discusses tinder from fungi is "Northern Bushcraft" by Mors Kochanski, published by Lone Pine Publishing. If you take the basidiocarps of Fomes fomentarius and pick apart the very top fibrous material, dry it and pull apart the fibers it will light with one spark very easily. This fibrous fungal mycelium seems to catch the spark easily and will then smoulder for some time. Its only this very top portion of the fruiting body that works. The Inonotus also burns well. There are references about its use for tinder but I do not think I have seen information on its chemical properties.

There is another fungus used by the plains indians, used as a smudge. Once this is lighted it will continue to burn completely for a long time - the same is true for large puff balls. It may be the fine fibrous characteristics of the mycelium allow it to burn so well. In the pacific northwest, Inonotus and Fomes fomentarius are not common and this other fungus, Phaeolus, was used. It probably has the same texture as cotton when dried and after the mycelium is pulled apart.

I will check some of my references and send you those that may apply to answer your questions.

Best regards,

Bob Blanchette

Robert A. Blanchette
Professor
Department of Plant Pathology
495 Borlaug Hall, 1991 Upper Buford Circle
University of Minnesota
St. Paul, Minnesota 55108-6030

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan  3 04:42:42 1997
Received: from ncr2.ncr.forestry.ca (NCR2.NCR.Forestry.CA [192.197.81.2]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id PAA08241 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 15:05:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: with SMTP-MR; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 14:51:41 EST
MR-Received: by mta NCR2.MUAS; Relayed; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 14:51:41 -0500 (EST)
MR-Received: by mta NCR2; Relayed; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 14:51:41 -0500 (EST)
Disclose-recipients: prohibited
Date: Fri, 3 Jan 1997 14:51:41 EST
Dear Dr. Bourbeau

Here's a list of references I pulled off the net ... you probably have them already. I have the new "Checklist of Canadian Mosses" list somewhere (might have some new Canadian info) but I lent it to one of our editors and can't lay my hands on it just now.

We have an expert mycologist in the office here (who worked on the above list). I'll check with him on Monday to see if he has any obscure or recent references that might interest you. I'll poke around myself as well.

Best,

Ken Farr

HOBBS, Christopher 1995 Medicinal Mushrooms an exploration of Tradition, Healing and Culture.
121-124
Kahlos, K. 1989 Antitumor Activity of Some Extracts and Compounds from Inonotus Radiatus; Fitoterapia Vol.60 No.2.
Tu as écrit :
> Peux-tu d'écrire davantage le processus de lavage. Comment fais-tu pour
> empêcher que le tout s'envole au vent?
>
André-François,

C'est simple, tu prépares la solution aqueuse (5 parts d'eau pour 1 part de
nitrate de potassium) dans une petite poterie remplie à moitié. Pas de
problème, le nitrate est la substance chimique la plus soluble dans l'eau !
À ce moment, juste au-dessus du pot, tu écrases avec les doigts la tête du
roseaux où se trouvent les graines et tu recueilles ainsi des milliers de
graines avec leur aigrette (qui facilite la dissémination par le vent). Tu
en perdras quelques dizaines, mais il en restera toujours des milliers.
À ce stade, il est impossible de les enfoncer dans la solution aqueuse :
les aigrettes sont hydro-répulsives ! Il faut mettre la poterie à chauffer
sur le bord d'un feu de bois. Avant l'ébullition de la solution, il sera
facile d'enfin enfoncer les graines de roseaux dans la solution avec une
petite branche.
Je veux te rassurer : le nitrate de potassium entre dans la composition de
la poudre noire, mais il restera inoffensif tant qu'il sera dans une
solution aqueuse !
Quand le mélange a refroidi, on prend une poignée de "fibres brunes" et on
l'essore en l'écrasant dans la paume de la main. Les graines de roseaux
sècheront facilement à l'air, car elles sont plus compactes maintenant. Le
bain chaud a enlevé (dissous) la substance qui faisait que l'aigrette était
hydro-répulsive (cqfd).

c'est intéressant d'apprendre que le nitrate de potassium se trouve
naturellement dans les matières fécales ! Je suis impatient d'en apprendre
plus ça sujet.

NB : quand je ne trouve pas de nitrate de potassium, j'utilise du nitrate
de sodium (même résultat).

Salut.

Pascal Chauvaux
My experience with flint and steel is limited personally, however I have
a Native friend in this area who lights all his ceremonial fires using
flint and steel (although he is very secretive about his materials. I
get the sense in talking to him that he uses some kind of flint/iron
pyrite combo. I will hopefully have an opportunity to talk to him more
about the details in the future and you can be sure I will post what I
can here at that time). What I am sure about is what he uses for tinder
and I have since found references to the same material in books by Mors
Kochanski and others. He uses the spongy, brown part of the "true Tinder
Fungus which is the strange looking growths on the sides of live birch
trees. He has been very firm in his insistence that it needs to come
from a live birch tree. The fungus looks kind of like a "burned growth"
and differs significantly from false tinder fungus which has a more
uniform and shelf like appearance. If anyone is interested I can get
scientific names etc. and more information on these fungi.

The names of the birch tinder fungus you are referring to is Inonotus
obliquus. It can grow on live trees, but also on trees which have been
dead up to 7 years. I am currently researching this subject intensively
and will post something soon. The other fungus is called Fomes
fomentarius, but needs preparation before using to get it to work.

As soon as the archives are ready, you will be able to read the Inonotus
thread which has been thus far discussed.

Regards,

AndrÈ

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Tue Jan 14 04:29:15 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESPMT id QAA01934; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 16:22:33 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA12219; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 16:21:07 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 16:19:13 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESPMT id QAA12211 for
; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 16:20:56
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.27 (ppp027.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.27])
by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id QAA19931 for
; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 16:24:19
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DAE47C.4D1@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Tue, 14 Jan 1997 01:42:20 +0000
X-UIDL: 853277160.001
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Tinders and Ember Enhancers
References: <32D94087.2526@perigee.net>
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id
QAA12212
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id QAA01934
Benjamin Pressley wrote:

> I would like to hear some discussion from the group from anyone with
> experience on what, if any, ember enhancers you use. By ember enhancer I
> mean, is there anything you have found successful that helps to increase
> the size of your ember that you transfer an ember to (usually produced
> by friction methods) prior to transferring it to a tinder bundle?
>   Some people, for example, will actually place cattail fluff beneath
> the notch and between the fireboard and ember transfer plate for the
> purpose of 'holding' an ember and allowing it to grow a little bigger.
> I, for one, do not like cattail fluff. I have had too many embers
> smother out doing this. One ember enhancer I like is rotten, corky,
> punky wood. It will not catch up into flame, but given time that piece
> of rotten wood will become one big, glowing ember.

Hi Ben and other ember enhancer enthusiasts,

Here's my 4 cents worth on this very important subject. Ben, as
promised, this is another article for your newsletter on fire which you
can copy and use.

AndrÈ

TINDERS AND COAL ENHANCERS

In a survival situation, fire can mean the difference between life and
death. Warmth, smoke against insects, removal of psychological fear,
purified water or melted snow, cooked food, building tools, etc., all of
these fundamental concerns can be addressed by the survivalist through
the use of fire.

There are many ways of obtaining primitive fire: by friction (bow and
drill, hand drill, pump drill, fire saw, fire thong, fire hole) by
compression (fire piston), by flint & steel, and by the use of the sun
(magnifying lenses of ice and maybe even animal bladders).

All of these methods produce only a very small coal to start a fire
with, and often obtaining that initial minuscule coal is only half of
getting the job done. Without appropriate tinders to transform that
small coal to a flame, there will be no fire. That is why knowledge of
tinders is so very essential!

Tinder can be classified into 4 categories:

1. Coal enhancer tinders (make a coal grow into a bigger coal)
2. Coal-to-flame tinders (make a coal become a flame)
3. Combination coal enhancer and coal-to-flame tinders (both of above)
4. Flame-to-flame tinders (quickly make small flame grow to big flame)

1. Coal enhancer tinders are materials into which you put a very small
ember to make that ember grow in size.
For example, if you take a 2 inch square piece of the fungus Inonotus obliquus, and place a small ember on it, the ember will transfer to the fungus, and after blowing a little, you will have a 2 inch square ember. A better known coal enhancer tinder is charred cotton cloth.

Obviously, tinder enhancers are very important, because they give you the possibility, from a very small fire-by-friction or fire-by-flint-and-steel coal, to produce a much bigger coal, which can generate sufficient heat to light up less-than-perfect tinder, such as wet birchbark or fine damp twigs. (In ideal situations, a bigger coal might not be necessary, a standard size coal from a bow drill fire being sufficient to light finely shredded dry birchbark, grass or other easily inflammable tinders.) But when it's soaking wet out, or -30 degrees, or when your bow drill equipment is poor and the initial pile of dust is small, you need coal enhancers. Coal enhancers are also absolutely necessary when starting a fire with a magnifying glass, especially when it is made of poor materials, such as ice.

2. Coal-to-flame tinders are materials you can use to make the coal blow up into a flame. A common coal-to-flame tinder is shredded birchbark. When you put a coal into a pile of coal-to-flame tinder and blow, the heat from the coal is sufficient to raise the flammable gas in this type of tinder to ignition levels. Many coal enhancer tinders, such as fungus, do not flame up, and you need to use a coal-to-flame tinder for this purpose.

3. Combination coal enhancer and coal-to-flame tinders are very special in that they can act either as a coal enhancer tinder and as a coal-to-flame tinder. A good example of this is scraped and shredded outside bark from cedar trees (Thuja spp.). When you drop a coal in a nest of this type of tinder, you can make your small coal grow, and with enough blowing, transform that large coal into a flame without having to resort to anything else.

4. Flame-to-flame tinders are those which need a heat source hotter than a coal can provide to flame up, but which give up an immense amount of heat very quickly once lit. All coal-to-flame tinders are also flame-to-flame tinders, but the reverse is not true. For example, set a match to a mature milkweed (Asclepias spp.) pod. There is nothing primer than this, the stuff almost explodes into flame. However, sparks or small coals will not ignite milkweed pods. Flame-to-flame tinders are usually found in abundance and will be useful once the initial flame has been produced.

Now for the actual down-to-earth materials:

1. Coal enhancer tinders

The best coal enhancer is charred wood dust! You already know this, because when a fire-by-friction coal forms, you can watch it grow to the same size as your charred wood dust pile. Therefore, if you drill a couple of extra holes without a notch with long smooth strokes (without tiring yourself) and keep that dust, you can then add it to the dust in the notch after the coal forms to make the coal bigger. Obviously, you are not going to bother making a bow and drill set to get the wood dust needed for starting a fire with other means. In that case, you can use
a simpler approach to get the dust, for instance by rubbing a stick in a V shaped trench cut into another stick (as in the fire plow fire-starting method).

There are, of course, easier ways to obtain ember enhancers, and that is to use natural ones found throughout nature.

Here in the northeast, here are some examples of the better ones:

1.1 Charred wood dust
1.2 Inonotus spp. fungus
1.3 Fomes spp. fungus
1.4 Ganoderma spp. fungus
1.5 Polyporus spp. fungus
1.6 Poplar (populus spp.) inner bark, shredded
1.7 Cedar (Thuja spp.) outer bark, scraped
1.8 Juniper (Juniperus spp.) outer bark, scraped
1.9 Cattail (Typha spp.) heads, must be unfluffed!
1.10 Fireweed (Epilobium spp.) down
1.11 Goldenrod (Solidago spp.) down
1.12 Asteraceae family, down from many species
1.13 Charcoal from a previous fire
1.14 Some rotten woods, must have dried out first
1.15 Soft wood scraped with sharp blade

Of all of these, only a few will actually work in rainy weather. Forget about all the plants, they will be soaking wet. The mushrooms won't be dry enough, and the charcoal and rotten woods will be drenched. If you're lucky, you can find some dry tree barks, even in rain, under some very dense conifers and under overturned trees. If you're not lucky, that limits you to a single lonely source, but one which always, always works, no matter what, and that is wood scraped with a sharp blade. In the worst forest conditions which nature has to offer, there is always dry wood inside an arm sized piece. By splitting and/or breaking and/or wedging it open, there is the coal enhancer tinder for you to take. But not without the effort of scraping, plus all preliminary shelter building etc.

2. Coal-to-flame tinders

Here are the most common coal-to-flame tinders in the north-east:

2.1 Charred wood dust, lots of it
2.2 Poplar (Populus spp.) inner bark, shredded
2.3 Cedar (Thuja spp.) outer bark, scraped
2.4 Juniper (Juniperus spp.) outer bark, scraped
2.5 Fireweed (Epilobium spp.) down
2.6 Goldenrod (Solidago spp.) down
2.7 Thistle (Cirsium spp.) down
2.8 Soft wood scraped with sharp blade
2.9 Shredded birch (Betula spp.) bark

Of these, thistle down is by far the best! It is so incredible a material that it is the only source found thus far which will permit lighting a fire from the sparks of an empty Bic lighter.

Birch bark is also an incredible material in this category. When
everything else is soaking, the inner layers of the birch bark will be perfectly dry and useable.

In very wet weather, other than birch bark, only scraped wood will work.

3. Combination coal enhancer and coal-to-flame tinders.

Materials in this category are more limited. In the northeast, here are the main ones found thus far:

3.1 Charred wood dust, lots of it
3.2 Poplar (Populus spp.) inner bark, shredded
3.3 Cedar (Thuja spp.) outer bark, scraped
3.4 Juniper (Juniperus spp.) outer bark, scraped
3.5 Fireweed (Epilobium spp.) down
3.6 Goldenrod (Solidago spp.) down
3.7 Soft wood scraped with sharp blade

Of these, cedar bark is the favorite, if available. Scraped wood is just about the only choice in very wet weather. Favorite choices for scraped wood here in the northeast, in order of importance, are: cedar (Thuja occidentalis), juniper (Juniperus spp.), tamarack (Larix laricina), fir (Abies balsamea), pine (Pinus spp.), and in the non-conifers, basswood (Tilia americana), willow (Salix spp.), poplar (Populus spp.), and soft maples (Acer spp.).

4. Flame-to-flame tinders

In this category, some of the best in the northeast are:

4.1 Birch bark (Betula spp.)
4.2 Milkweed (Asclepias spp.)
4.3 Thistle (Cirsium spp.)
4.4 Fir sap (Abies balsamea) collected by piercing bubbles
4.5 Fine wood shavings
4.6 Fine conifer twigs
4.7 Grasses
4.8 Red conifer needles
4.9 Dry leaves

In wet weather, birch bark is by far the best. The only other choices are fir sap, which is very good, or fine wood shavings. You can make small fir sap torches by piercing many bubbles with a stick which has been shredded at the end (by hitting between two rocks).

A very good way to determine the quality of coal enhancer or coal-to-flame tinders, is to use a car cigarette lighter as a testing device. If it keeps going after one touch from the lighter, it's a great coal enhancer. To test flame tinders, touch them with a quick flick of a Bic lighter.

With this, you will be able to discover many more tinders in your area. The subject of man-made tinders has not been discussed here, and the reader is invited to find them. Tobacco is the best coal enhancer around! The only plus for smokers...

Don't forget to carry your matches! It's easier.
Dear Dr. Bourbeau,

An interesting book that discusses tinder from fungi is "Northern Bushcraft" by Mors Kochanski, published by Lone Pine Publishing. If you take the basidiocarps of Fomes fomentarius and pick apart the very top fibrous material, dry it and pull apart the fibers it will light with one spark very easily. This fibrous fungal mycelium seems to catch the spark easily and will then smoulder for some time. Its only this very top portion of the fruiting body that works. The Inonotus also burns well. There are references about its use for tinder but I do not think I have seen information on its chemical properties.

There is another fungus used by the plains indians, used as a smudge. Once this is lighted it will continue to burn completely for a long time - the same is true for large puff balls. It may be the fine fibrous characteristics of the mycelium allow it to burn so well. In the pacific northwest, Inonotus and Fomes fomentarius are not common and this other fungus, Phaeolus, was used. It probably has the same texture as cotton when dried and after the mycelium is pulled apart.

I will check some of my references and send you those that may apply to answer your questions.

Best regards,
Bob Blanchette
Robert A. Blanchette
Professor
Department of Plant Pathology
495 Borlaug Hall, 1991 Upper Buford Circle
University of Minnesota
St. Paul, Minnesota 55108-6030
Phone 612-625-0202
Fax 612-625-9728
e-mail robertb@puccini.crl.umn.edu

From - Thu Jan  9 07:08:34 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA25067; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 16:07:39 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA22582; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 16:05:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 16:10:32 EST
Received: from piva.ucs.mun.ca (piva.ucs.mun.ca [134.153.2.63]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA22579 for ; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 16:05:39 -0500 (EST)
Received: from plato.remote.mun.ca (n098h036.remote.mun.ca [134.153.98.36]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA22592; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 16:10:32 EST
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.01Gold (Win95; I; 16bit)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Organization: Archaeology Unit, Memorial University of Newfoundland
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.01Gold (Win95; I; 16bit)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: True Tinder Fungus
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.01Gold (Win95; I; 16bit)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: True Tinder Fungus
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Mark Zanoni wrote:
>
> John Wall wrote:
> 
> He uses the spongy, brown part of the "true Tinder Fungus
Mark, I'd like the scientific name. Andre has posted a name or two,

True tinder fungus – *Fomes fomentarius*

The book I got that out of, Adrian Morgan's _Toads and Toadstools_ (1995:108) also says that *Fomes fomentarius* and perhaps *Piptoporus betulinus* were used in a form of medicine called 'moxibustion' by the Lapps and the Kamchadal of Lopatka. Moxibustion is the burning of a herb (or fungus) over an afflicted spot.

cheers,
Tim

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
The book I got that out of, Adrian Morgan's _Toads and Toadstools_ (1995:108) also says that *Fomes fomentarius* and perhaps *Piptoporus betulinus* were used in a form of medicine called 'moxibustion' by the Lapps and the Kamchadal of Lopatka. Moxibustion is the burning of a herb (or fungus) over an afflicted spot.

Must be the same stuff used by the Koreans and Chinese (probably Japanese also) as they also practice moxibustion in traditional medicine. Form the stuff into cones or put on acupuncture needles. Had it done once, not all that bad, and I did feel some better.

--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Thu Jan 9 21:43:42 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA28114; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 22:04:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA25184; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 21:59:57 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 22:04:39 EST
Received: from unix.newnorth.net (unix.newnorth.net [205.212.60.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA25181 for ; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 21:59:45 -0500 (EST)
Received: from marknq.newnorth.net (rhin-cs2-11.newnorth.net [205.212.60.181]) by unix.newnorth.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id VAA24077; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 21:02:12 -0600 (CST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D5AF24.30E4@unix.newnorth.net>
Date: Thu, 09 Jan 1997 20:53:24 -0600
X-UIDL: 852907215.018
From: Mark Zanoni
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MarkNQ@UNIX.NEWNORTH.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, t64tr@MORGAN.UCS.MUN.CA
Subject: Re: True Tinder Fungus
References: <32D53866.50E4@unix.newnorth.net> <32D59A67.67D3@morgan.ucs.mun.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Tim Rast wrote:
Mark Zanoni wrote:

John Wall wrote:

He uses the spongy, brown part of the "true Tinder Fungus"

Mark, I'd like the scientific name. Andre has posted a name or two,

True tinder fungus - *Fomes fomentarius*

The book I got that out of, Adrian Morgan's *Toads and Toadstools* (1995:108) also says that *Fomes fomentarius* and perhaps *Piptoporus betulinus* were used in a form of medicine called 'moxibustion' by the Lapps and the Kamchadal of Lopatka. Moxibustion is the burning of a herb (or fungus) over an afflicted spot.

cheers,

Tim

Thanks for the info., Tim. On a side note the Chinese use moxibustion also, however they use a relative of our sage or mugwort plants (Artemesia sp.) for the process and burn it over acupuncture point or even on top of inserted acupuncture needles.

It would seem then that if this fungus burned like sage, and was easily reduced to powder, it might indeed make a dandy flint and steel tinder and/or a material to keep a coal burning for transport. I'll gather some and dry it and report back on my results.

Mark

Received: from sr1.srnet.com (root@srl.srnet.com [206.148.68.2]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA14996 for ; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 00:05:40 -0500 (EST)
Received: from ppp31.srnet.com (ppp31.srnet.com [206.148.68.31]) by sr1.srnet.com (8.7.4/8.6.9) with SMTP id AAA12104 for ; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 00:06:08 -0500 (EST)
X-UIDL: 853429967.021
From: jsf Flynn@srnet.com
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
Subject: Re: Innotus obliquus
Date: Thu, 16 Jan 1997 05:13:26 GMT
Message-ID: <32e0b48e.18815938@srnet.com>
References: <32ce732a.24850446@srnet.com> <32cc92a0.5e80@saglac.qc.ca> <32d4ce6c.889547@srnet.com> <32cd8d44.27ff@saglac.qc.ca>
In-Reply-To: <32cd8d44.27ff@saglac.qc.ca>
X-Mailer: Forte Agent .99g/32.339
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id AAA14996
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Hi again Andre:

My system crashed so I have been "off the air" for awhile.

> It is logical that other species of Inonotus would have the same characteristics also. Do you happen to have descriptions of other Inonotus species with their range?

There are other Inonotus that I am familiar with, I. radiatus, I. glomerata (I think) but no other Inonotus with similar features, they are very different appearing much like the more ordinary looking polypores.

> Fomes has been mentioned as tinder, but no success by me with flint & steel. It does hold a coal though. All mushrooms which hold coals are interesting for survival because they permit one to move about while maintaining their fire. Inonotus is very special because it permits to START the fire!

Ah, I see now. I have borrowed a flint and steel from my wife's father who thought little of the mushroom theory. He believes that, perhaps in this area, the inner bark of the cedar makes the best tinder to start a fire. I have not tried to start one yet though. Btw, how did ancient indians get steel? The flint I understand.

> Maybe you can toss them in an envelope or in a box marked "gift", this sometimes works. Where are you located? Maybe I can get a survival friend from your area to experiment for us... Otherwise, I can sureley obtain permission from agriculture Canada. You mentioned New Brunswick. If that's where you are, no problem, I'm in Quebec.

I wouldn't be comfortable trying to pull something over customs. They were very good to me when I transported between NB and Maine. I live in New Hampshire, just prospected in NB for a while.

>> Good luck, and btw, the guy that they found in the alps had some mushrooms, maybe they were not medicinal at all but were for tinder?
>>
>> I'm am convinced that this would be the case! Maybe we should write an article together to them, telling why we think so.

First I'll have to try starting some fires! I. Obliquus, boy it doesn't look to me that it'd start, do you treat it any special way? During WWII they salvaged nitrates from urine, I wonder if tinder could be treated that way, the nitrates would act as an oxidizer.

Professor of outdoor pursuits...eh?
Sounds like what I used to think about doing at the Girl Scout Camp near where I lived ;-) 

You might want to try contacting these people:

Cercle Des Mycologues Du Quebec;
2000 Boul Montmorency
Quebec, Canada G1J 5E7

Yves Lamoureux
Staff Mycologist
Cercle des Mycologues de Montreal
(he's curator of the myco herbarium)

"He recently published a report on their nearly 2800 collections, representing some 1600 species, more than 100 of which are reported from the Province of Quebec for the first time."

See ya,
Stephen

From - Wed Jan 22 00:36:24 1997
Received: from outmail.zdv.uni-tuebingen.de (x400link.zdv.uni-tuebingen.de [134.2.2.23]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id GAA06018 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 06:58:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from by outmail.zdv.uni-tuebingen.de (4.1/ZDV-Uni-Tuebingen-1.0) id AB23397; Wed, 22 Jan 97 13:01:21 +0100
Received: from [134.2.96.134] (actually mycology3.bot.biologie.uni-tuebingen.de) by mailserv.uni-tuebingen.de with SMTP (PP);
Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:37:32 +0100
Message-Id: <9701221201.AB23397@outmail.zdv.uni-tuebingen.de>
X-Sender: bbmla01@mailserv.uni-tuebingen.de
Mime-Version: 1.0
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:42:24 +0100
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
From: ewald.langer@uni-tuebingen.de (Dr. Ewald Langer)
Subject: Re: Fomes fomentarius flint and steel
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dear Dr. Bourbeau,

today I found a webpage devoted to Fomes fomentarius and the primitive flint and steel technique. It is maintained by the german society for mycology. I remembered that you are looking for information about that. So here is the URL:

http://ix.urz.uni-heidelberg.de/~tstein1/pdj_95.html

your, Ewald Langer

-----------------------------

Dr. Ewald Langer
University of Tuebingen
Spezielle Botanik/Mykologie
Auf der Morgenstelle 15
D-72076 Tuebingen
Germany

Tel.  +49 (0) 7071 2978820 or +49 (0) 7071 2972974
Fax.  +49 (0) 7071 295344
e-mail: ewald.langer@uni-tuebingen.de
http://www.uni-tuebingen.de/uni/bbm/
I received this letter today from Germany and I can't read the page which is in German. Knowing Dr Langer, this might be important. Anyone speak enough german to translate this web page for us?

Thanks,
AndrÉ

Dear Dr. Bourbeau,

today I found a webpage devoted to Fomes fomentarius and the primitive flint and steel technique. It is maintained by the german society for mycology. I remembered that you are looking for information about that.
So
here is the URL:

http://ix.urz.uni-heidelberg.de/~tstein1/pdj_95.html

your, Ewald Langer
From - Fri Dec 27 07:29:35 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA17038; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:16:29 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA09178; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:15:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com [204.180.128.166]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA09173 for [38.11.182.129] (ip129.las-vegas nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.129]) by mule0.mindspring.com (8.8.2/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA47258; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 00:19:05 GMT
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 16:20:48 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET
From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: Swim fishing
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Hi Ted;
I've heard about that sort of thing, and also heard of guys that still do dive in the old fashion going to great depths by holding onto a stone ballast until they get to the depth they want then letting go of the stone. That reminds me of another subject in a wierd sort of way that says more about the way my mind works than I'd like to admit.
In THE LAST WHOLE EARTH CATALOG a guy by the name of Ben Masselink had a letter published on hand line fishing and a new twist he put on it he called swim fishing. He was using a Dos Equis reel(an empty Dos Equis beer bottle with fishing line on it) and a white feather jig. It was a hot day so he started swimming and dancing that jig along the bottom of the beach and started catching fish. Apparently he uses fins, mask and snorkel and is able to see the effect of the lure and where to put same in his words "The beauty of swim fishing is that you swim the water the boats can't work. You also work ten times the water that a surf fisherman can because you present the lure parallel to the shore, fishing it all the way." He also comments at the beginning of his article "As you know, spin fishing (where the fishing line pays off the face of the reel) is a very old way of fishing. Even before the invention of the bottle or can, Indians fished in the spin off style using a kind of spin off shuttle. People throughout the world spin fish off bottles and cans." He recomends an Australian plastic reel that I've seen sold in the Into the Wind Kite catalog. My own experience with hand line fishing has been much tamer and without emersion. I've fished for trout, crabs, and crayfish at various times of my life. The biggest fish I've caught was a 15lb carp with a length of line and a piece
of corn (and released it)
Touch of the Bear
JB

From - Fri Dec 27 07:28:23 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA16796; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 18:28:39 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA08760; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 18:27:32 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 18:32:10 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id SAA08754 for ; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 18:27:24 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.167 (srv1s13.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.64]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id SAA12892 for ; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 18:30:42 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32C36D99.1CDA@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 06:32:57 +0000
X-UIDL: 851731366.003
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Diving for fish
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chicl.saglac.qc.ca id SAA16796
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Ted Bailey wrote:

>I prefer to fish with rod & reel. I was a great skin diver as well.
Although I used a rubber powered spear gun, I never used SCUBA gear. I
would dive over 100 feet down and shoot fish up to 200 pounds and then
drag them to the surface. I learned to hold my breath for 2-3 minutes and
special free diving techniques by reading the book "The Pearl Lagoon"
That
was a story about 2 California youths who traveled to Polynesia with
their
Uncle. They learned to dive using instructions from Pearl divers. The
instructions in the book were in fine detail and they worked. In three
months, I went from holding my breath for 30 seconds and diving 20 feet
to holding my breath for 90 seconds and diving 60 feet. Over the next several years, I extended that significantly with practice. There is a whole new world under the sea and a great place to gather food and useful materials.

>Are there any other divers in this group?

I was out last summer with my good friend Majella Morin who is also a member of this group. Majella showed me how to dive for suckers using a lasso made from snare wire. He would catch a dozen before I could even get one. He used to feed his dog team with this impressive technique.

I think that the holding your breath techniques might help someone fish for survival, and I certainly would like to hear more about it.

André
> AndrÈ wrote:
>
> I think that the holding your breath techniques might help someone fish
> for survival, and I certainly would like to hear more about it.
>
> Not too much to it except for practice. For a 2+ minute dive, you need to
spend about 5 minutes of slow deep breathing on the surface saturating your
body with oxygen. You will know when you are ready. When you start the
dive, take a full deep breath and then let a little bit of air out. Do
not start the dive completely full. Go down slow. Keep your energy
expenditure to a minimum. As you descend and need to clear your ears, hold
your nostrils and blow. You must rotate your head into an "up" position
when doing so. When you reach the bottom, don't chase fish. Stay still
and they will come to you out of curiosity. After about 60-75 seconds, you
will start to feel pain in your lungs. This is not because of a lack of
oxygen. Instead, there is a build up in the partial pressure of carbon
dioxide. Let a few bubbles out and the pain will go away for about 10-15
seconds. You can repeat this about 4-5 times, each with diminishing
effects. The ascent should be as slow as the descent. Plan your time
appropriately. With practice, you should be able to do 2+ minutes. Hope
this helps.

All of the above I did in tropical waters. You will never get me into the
frigid waters of Michigan or Canada. - Ted

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970   || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:  http://ic.net/~tbailey/
Don't mean to jump out of line here Ted, but I've exploded a few M-80's myself. AndrÈ, M-80's are usually illegal fireworks, like firecrackers - well they can be bought some places (where I live) with out a blasting license, but they're not considered "Safe & Sane." All of mine have been barrel shaped and had waterproof fuse placement at the center of it's length. Gun-powder filled, it's basically close to a quarter stick of dynamite in effect. Another story (Groan): When I was a kid, our anti-social next door neighbor brought his dog to my yard to do his business everday (sometimes twice), which I had to clean up after (for years). One day after the deed was done, the pair continued on past my house...until my brother and I tossed an M-80 after them. The shock wave was visible and knocked them both off their feet. I was impressed. They gave us a wider berth thereafter. I also must admit to throwing a perf'ed can of powdered metallic sodium into the city pool, soon after. The depth charge-like explosion (higher than the high dive - it went KaWhuumph!) was impressive and I'm sure could have brought up quite a few fish if tossed in the right place. Chemical supply house's should be possible to find, up your way. Any chemists out there with the correct chemical name for this? Not too primitive, but it'll fit in a expedition pack.
Ted Bailey wrote:

> I found that M-80s and hand grenades were more effective
> means to catch fish and were probably more environmentally friendly as well.
> 
> Ted. what's an M-80?

I read that somewhere in Asia, again can't remember where, homemade bombs made from corked bottles are used in the same way to catch fish. Anyone know anything about this?  I know it's highly illegal and would never do it, just want to know for survival purposes.

AndrÈ
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau  
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits  
University of Québec  
555 University Boulevard  
Chicoutimi, (Québec)  
CANADA  G7H 2B1  
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.  
3801 Rang St-Martin  
Chicoutimi, (Québec)  
CANADA  G7H 5A7  
418-543-2888  
bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

---

Ted Bailey wrote:
>
>>I found that M-80s and hand grenades were more effective>> means to catch fish and were probably more environmentally friendly as well.>>

Ted. what's an M-80?

An M-80 is a very large firecracker. They float, so you have to weigh them down. We never used them in small streams, just the large rivers. They would kill or stun fish at a range of about 10 feet. Great way to get bait for shark fishing. I really don't want to encourage this. I just wanted to make a statement that it is an option if you are desperate for food and have small explosive devices.
When I was a teenager, I lived in Panama and used to work on merchant ships during the summer. In 1968, I took a trip on a Victory ship to Viet Nam. At the mouth of the Saigon River there is a port called Cape JacquEs (sp?). Ships would anchor there overnight before making the trip up the river to Saigon. It was imperative that you did not go up the river at night. The entire time we were waiting at the mouth of the river, small U.S. Army boats would circle the ship and throw a hand grenade into the water every 10 - 20 minutes at random locations and intervals. This was done to stun any Viet Cong divers that would approach ships to place explosives. That's all I know about fishing with explosives in S.E. Asia. - Ted Bailey

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970    || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:  http://ic.net/~tbailey/

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Dec 25 06:47:06 1996
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic [204.19.37.2]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA00566 for ; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 13:14:54 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA09206 for ; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 16:24:53 GMT
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-Id:
Mime-Version: 1.0
Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 08:26:27 -0700
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
X-UIDL: 851557464.002
From: jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine)
Subject: Re: Fishing with bombs
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

—I can't get over it! Where the heck do you come up with all these references I have never seen?!
:-)I've just been interested in the same subjects for quite some time. I've been looking for the old knowledge for some time. ;-)
SURVIVAL POACHING is by Ragnar Benson and was published in 1980 by Paladin Press 303-443-7250

CaO is quick lime and can cause horrible caustic burns if spilled on wet flesh and not cleaned up immediately. When CaO is combined with water it reacts and becomes Ca(OH)4 or calcium hydroxide. When mixed with water it expands about three times in volume and gives off a great deal of heat.

"Collect a number of clean one gallon glass jugs. These must be glass and similar to those used for vinegar, wine or apple cider with a small neck
and secure cap. Clean the jugs thoroughly and then dry them out till they are absolutely bone dry. No moisture can remain in the jug.
You must have about five pounds of clean pea gravel for each jug. Five pounds is about two #6 pecans full. Dry this gravel over a low fire, and then pour it lukewarm into the gallon jugs. There should be a good healthy inch of gravel in the bottom of the jug. At first it is advisable to test the gravel to see if it is heavy enough to sink the jug. Cork the glass up tightly and float it in a barrel or tub. There must be enough gravel in the jug to sink it without hesitation.
Having done this, dry the jug again and carefully pour in one #6 pecan full of CaO in each of the prepared jugs. Replace the cap making sure the jug is sealed airtight. The explosive jug can now be stored safely until used.
I usually take two or three of the jugs with me in the boat. They will arouse no suspicion until used.
To prepare a jug for use, uncork it and hold its mouth just below the surface of the water. Allow about one quart of water to pour in cap the jug quickly and let it sink to the bottom. Properly done, the jug will go off with a very nice blast in about one minute. The blast will kill fish just about on par with a one stick dynamite charge. Quickly collect the fish as they float to the top with a spear or net.
I don't believe it is advisable to use these lime bombs in less than five feet of water."

There is a bit more mostly that the lime bombs will work at great depths where dynamite won't.
Touch of the Bear
JB

Andre;
I didn't post it to the group, mainly because I wasn't sure it was appropriate on a primitive skills group, even though people barely out of the stone age are using it in SE asia. Also, even though I think most people are honest, and the information is available in print, why should I make it any easier for people that want to break the law, to do so? Most of the primitive skills limit the chances of taking game on a level that is nearly equal for the game in question. Modern guns, explosives, and techniques require very little knowledge on the part of the user to take game and if broken require specialized knowledge to repair or replecate. Primitive tools, on the other hand require more knowledge both of the materials themselves and the game they are to take. Generally they are quieter as well. Not that mass destruction was not practiced by our ancestors. Game drives either into a fenced off killing area or over a cliff was known to have been practiced nearly everywhere in the world in ancient times. The difference is that every part of the animal was used in the hunters community, surplus was dried and stored, and shared with other villages of the same people. I apologise for preaching.

To answer your other question. Calcium carbonate CaCO3 is limestone same as simple lime you might add to your garden. Common limestone is heated to produce quick lime. or unslacked lime CaO. Once water is added to that it is slaked lime or calcium hydroxide Ca(OH)4. Quick lime is hard to find but not impossible, it is used in some capacity to clean outdoor toilets. I understand that it has been used by criminals to dispose of bodies. All of this info is from Ragnar Benson's book SURVIVAL POACHING. Biological poisons are the primitive man's form of explosive. A fish trap or tidal pool with small amount of effective toxin that stuns the fish makes sense for a community or even a single person that will dry and smoke the surplus.

For more info on preserving fish in primitive methods among other arts see SURVIVAL ARTS OF THE PRIMITIVE PAIUTES by Margaret M. Wheat University of Nevada prss; Reno, Nevada 1967 ISBN 0-87417-048-6 It's a paperback approx. 11x14 inches and ran about $10 (U.S.) when I bought it. If you want to post the excerpt from Ragnar Benson's book along with this post to the group be my guest. I just wasn't sure it was appropriate.

JB
I just have a question about these methods of fishing. Why on earth would you do it? I don't doubt the effectiveness or ease of the methods, but there are many drawbacks which I think outweigh the advantages. One, for the use of bombs/grenades/explosives, most of the fish stay on the bottom of the water formation (lake, sea, stream, etc.), so you are getting a relatively low yield percentage-wise. Around 5-10% usually. Second, and I believe this applies to all mass-killing methods, it does a great deal of harm to the ecosystem that you use it in. What is the point of killing 1000 fish at once, having half of them spoil, and then having none left for next spring or whatever. Not to mention that none of these are really a primitive skill :), but that's beside the point.

--

Neal McSpadden  mcspadde@clark.net
http://www.clark.net/pub/ngami

Nga Mi Son Phat Gia Quyen  http://www.clark.net/pub/ngami/kf

Director of Research @
the Han Wei HomePage  http://www.hanwei.com
I just have a question about these methods of fishing. Why on earth would you do it? I don't doubt the effectiveness or ease of the methods, but there are many drawbacks which I think outweigh the advantages. One, for the use of bombs/grenades/explosives, most of the fish stay on the bottom of the water formation (lake, sea, stream, etc.), so you are getting a relatively low yield percentage-wise. Around 5-10% usually. Second, and I believe this applies to all mass-killing methods, it does a great deal of harm to the ecosystem that you use it in. What is the point of killing 1000 fish at once, having half of them spoil, and then having none left for next spring or whatever. Not to mention that none of these are really a primitive skill :), but that's beside the point.

There is only one good reason for large scale killing of any creature, and that is if you have the facilities for drying and placing into storage the fish for your community. They also did this if the animal population could bear it. It was considered inappropriate to kill on such a large scale for just one person. Remember a hunter in a primitive community didn't just hunt for himself. he hunted for his village and family as well. No one went away hungry. It's funny isn't it that we call them primitive.

JB
Ben Pressley wrote:

>Good point! Primitive people were surviving and feeding their families
>and sometimes other peoples' families. Some have the tendency to over
>romanticize primitive peoples hunting practices. But there are accounts
>of Native American tribes burning down entire forests in a circle just
>to chase the animals to the center of the forest so they could be
>slaughtered. There are also accounts of running entire herds of buffalo
>over a cliffside.

In Southern Alberta, there is an Archaeological site (+ museum) called "Smashed-in-head-buffalo-jump" where the Native Americans (Native Canadians?) drove the Buffalo off of a 100 metre cliff in mass. Below, the cliff, the ground is solid broken bone fragments. I believe they did this at the onset of cold weather each year so that they had a plentiful supply of meat with natural refrigeration. It's a neat place to visit, but I wouldn't want to jump there.

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970  || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:  http://ic.net/~tbailey/
James E. Burdine wrote:

> I just have a question about these methods of fishing. Why on earth
> would you do it? I don't doubt the effectiveness or ease of the
> methods, but there are many drawbacks which I think outweigh the
> advantages. One, for the use of bombs/grenades/explosives, most of the
> fish stay on the bottom of the water formation (lake, sea, stream,
> etc.), so you are getting a relatively low yield percentage-wise.
> Around 5-10% usually. Second, and I believe this applies to all
> mass-killing methods, it does a great deal of harm to the ecosystem that
> you use it in. What is the point of killing 1000 fish at once, having
> half of them spoil, and then having none left for next spring or
> whatever. Not to mention that none of these are really a primitive
> skill :), but that's beside the point.
> --
> There is only one good reason for large scale killing of any creature, and
> that is if you have the facilities for drying and placing into storage the
> fish for your community. They also did this if the animal population could
> bear it. It was considered inappropriate to kill on such a large scale for
> just one person. Remember a hunter in a primitive community didn't just
> hunt for himself. he hunted for his village and family as well. No one,
> went away hungry. It's funny isn't it that we call them primitive.
> JB

Good point! Primitive people were surviving and feeding their families and
sometimes other peoples' families. Some have the tendency to over
romanticize primitive peoples hunting practices. But there are accounts
of Native American tribes burning down entire forests in a circle just
to chase the animals to the center of the forest so they could be
slaughtered. There are also accounts of running entire herds of buffalo
over a cliffside. So, if one were in a survival situation and had
multiple mouths to feed, it would not be unlike the first peoples if we
used an explosive of some sort. On the other hand it would be a shame
and disgrace to use them for any other purpose. Even if one felt the
need to test the effectiveness of this technique, they should plan a
group feast of some sort or feed some poor community.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

Also Check Out Ted Baileyís Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 23 13:29:58 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA19984; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 01:18:38 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA18511; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 01:18:18 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 01:22:49 EST
Received: from rand.nidlink.com (rand.nidlink.com [205.219.220.35]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA18508 for
; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 01:18:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from rand.nidlink.com (rand.nidlink.com [205.219.220.1]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA18511; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 01:18:18 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.1 (pm1-6.nidlink.com [205.219.220.35]) by
rand.nidlink.com (8.8.4/8.6.9) with SMTP id WAA12348; Mon, 23 Dec
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BF68F6.1B84@rand.nidlink.com>
Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 22:24:06 -0700
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM
Hi Neal, I see you got on the list. Welcome!

I believe the fishing with explosives thread started when Ralph (I think) mentioned that a couple M-80's might not be a bad idea to include in a survival kit for last ditch fishing. Small and with a high likelihood of obtaining significant calories. They are relatively small as explosive charges go and damage to the ecosystem would be limited. Fishing with dynamite is practiced sometimes in Mexico, I can tell you ("Special Mexican Bait" it was called). I think, chemically speaking, a small metallic Sodium canister might be the most environmentally "friendly" type of explosive reaction. The water would get slightly saltier temporarily and hundred of fish kills would be unlikely, up and down a waterway (which no one here wants - hunters have a big interest in Conservation as a lifestyle). On the downside, DO NOT get metallic Sodium wet, until you're really ready.

Not Primitive, but I believe the topic can stray to modern survival items that at least can be thrown into a backpack to edge one's bet. However, there ARE backpack carried tactical nukes...I can see your point about drawing the line somewhere. I admit, I'm addicted to technology, as a recent widespread prolonged power outagte taught me recently with a couple days of 20 below (F) temperatures and lights out. I'm here to learn from these luminaries. I'm filling up my hard disk rapidly with all these topics I'm saving.

-- Chris

From - Fri Dec 27 05:38:12 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA15839; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 16:10:12 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA07951; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 16:09:05 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 16:13:23 EST
Received: from relay.ic.net (relay1a.ic.net [152.160.72.5]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA00216 for
; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 09:09:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: (qmail 7650 invoked from network); 24 Dec 1996 13:31:59 -0000
Received: from falcon.ic.net (HELO ic.net) (root@152.160.101.1) by relay.ic.net
; Fri, 24 Dec 1996 13:31:59 -0000
Received: from [152.160.99.7] by ic.net with smtp (Smail3.1.28.1 #6) id
m0vcWxU-003EnDC; Tue, 24 Dec 96 08:31 WET
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Neal McSpadden wrote:

>> I just have a question about these methods of fishing. Why on earth
>> would you do it? I don't doubt the effectiveness or ease of the
>> methods, but there are many drawbacks which I think outweigh the
>> advantages. One, for the use of bombs/grenades/explosives, most of the
>> fish stay on the bottom of the water formation (lake, sea, stream,
>> etc.), so you are getting a relatively low yield percentage-wise.
>> Around 5-10% usually. Second, and I believe this applies to all
>> mass-killing methods, it does a great deal of harm to the ecosystem that
>> you use it in. What is the point of killing 1000 fish at once, having
>> half of them spoil, and then having none left for next spring or
>> whatever. Not to mention that none of these are really a primitive
>> skill :), but that's beside the point.
>> --
>
>You are quite right Neal, these are highly illegal practices which we
>would never do unless in a true survival situation. You are also right
>that we are off topic with the explosives and grenades. I was trying to
>gain information on ways, if there are any, to make primitive bombs
>using just a bottle one might have and primitive materials. This my
>very well be impossible, but maybe not because of the pressure which
>builds up when the bottle which is attached to a rock sinks. That's
>what we are trying to research.
>
>I know that ecologically this is absolutely unacceptable, unless we are
>in a life or death situation. Drying and smoking the 1000 fish might
>save your life during the winter.
>
>Please take no offense to many of the issues which we discuss on this
>group which are unacceptable in real life. We are just trying to learn.
>Some survival techniques we can only discuss and never try.
>
>I do agree with the above comments. I originated the explosives issue, but
>I do not promote it. I was just comparing this method to fishing with
>oxygen inhibitors. I'm not proud of everything I ever did. I was a
>teenager when I did these things and I didn't do it very often. I was more
>repulsed by watching the indians poison streams.

I prefer to fish with rod & reel. I was a great skin diver as well.
Although I used a rubber powered spear gun, I never used SCUBA gear. I
would dive over 100 feet down and shoot fish up to 200 pounds and then drag
them to the surface. I learned to hold my breath for 2-3 minutes and
special free diving techniques by reading the book "The Pearl Lagoon" That
was a story about 2 California youths who traveled to Polynesia with their
Uncle. They learned to dive using instructions from Pearl divers. The
instructions in the book were in fine detail and they worked. In three
months, I went from holding my breath for 30 seconds and diving 20 feet to
holding my breath for 90 seconds and diving 60 feet. Over the next several
years, I extended that significantly with practice. There is a whole new
world under the sea and a great place to gather food and useful materials.
Are there any other divers in this group?

Ted Bailey                   || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076              || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106         || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970          || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/

From - Fri Dec 27 07:29:29 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA16990; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:08:39 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA09088; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:07:35 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:12:09 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA09082 for
; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:07:25
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.167 (srv1s13.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.64]) by
chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id TAA13741 for
; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:10:40
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32C376F6.2190@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 07:12:54 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: [Fwd: Re: Fishing with bombs]
Content-Disposition: inline
Content-Type: message/rfc822
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic [204.19.37.2]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca
(8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA00566 for ; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 13:14:54 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by
chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA03150 for ; Tue, 24 Dec 1996
11:25:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.4] (ip36.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.36]) by
I can't get over it! Where the heck do you come up with all these references I have never seen?!

:-) I've just been interested in the same subjects for quite some time. I've been looking for the old knowledge for some time. ;-) SURVIVAL POACHING is by Ragnar Benson and was published in 1980 by Paladin Press 303-443-7250

CaO is quick lime and can cause horrible caustic burns if spilled on wet flesh and not cleaned up immediately. When CaO is combined with water it reacts and becomes Ca(OH)\(_2\) or calcium hydroxide. When mixed with water it expands about three times in volume and gives off a great deal of heat.

"Collect a number of clean one gallon glass jugs. These must be glass and similar to those used for vinegar, wine or apple cider with a small neck and secure cap. Clean the jugs thoroughly and then dry them out till they are absolutely bone dry. No moisture can remain in the jug.

You must have about five pounds of clean pea gravel for each jug. Five pounds is about two \#6 pecans full. Dry this gravel over a low fire, and then pour it lukewarm into the gallon jugs. There should be a good healthy inch of gravel in the bottom of the jug. At first it is advisable to test the gravel to see if it is heavy enough to sink the jug. Cork the glass up tightly and float it in a barrel or tub. There must be enough gravel in the jug to sink it without hesitation.

Having done this, dry the jug again and carefully pour in one \#6 pecan full of CaO in each of the prepared jugs. Replace the cap making sure the jug is sealed airtight. The explosive jug can now be stored safely until used.

I usually take two or three of the jugs with me in the boat. They will arouse no suspicion until used.

To prepare a jug for use, uncork it and hold its mouth just below the surface of the water. Allow about one quart of water to pour in cap the jug quickly and let it sink to the bottom. Properly done, the jug will go off with a very nice blast in about one minute. The blast will kill fish just about on par with a one stick dynamite charge. Quickly collect the fish as they float to the top with a spear or net.

I don't believe it is advisable to use these lime bombs in less than five feet of water."

There is a bit more mostly that the lime bombs will work at great depths where dynamite won't.

I like Ragnar Benson's other book LIVE OFF THE LAND IN THE CITY AND COUNTRY
1982 also published by Paladin press.
Touch of the Bear
JB

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
From - Fri Dec 27 07:29:32 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA17016; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:10:20 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA09106; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:09:15 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:13:51 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.167]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA09101 for ; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:09:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.167 (srv1s13.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.64]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id TAA13767 for ; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 19:12:23 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32C3775E.1BF6@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 07:14:38 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: [Fwd: Re: Fishing with bombs]
Content-Disposition: inline
Content-Type: message/rfc822
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA09172 for ; Thu, 26 Dec 1996 12:06:15 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.10] (ip10.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.10]) by mule1.mindspring.com (8.8.2/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA18226 for ; Thu, 26 Dec 1996 17:10:10 GMT
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-Id:
Mime-Version: 1.0
Date: Thu, 26 Dec 1996 09:11:50 -0700
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
X-UIDL: 851631854.003
From: jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine)
André;
I didn't post it to the group, mainly because I wasn't sure it was appropriate on a primitive skills group, even though people barely out of the stone age are using it in SE asia. Also, even though I think most people are honest, and the information is available in print, why should I make it any easier for people that want to break the law, to do so? Most of the primitive skills limit the chances of taking game on a level that is nearly equal for the game in question. Modern guns, explosives, and techniques require very little knowledge on the part of the user to take game and if broken require specialized knowledge to repair or replecate. Primitive tools, on the other hand require more knowledge both of the materials themselves and the game they are to take. Generally they are quieter as well. Not that mass destruction was not practiced by our ancestors. Game drives either into a fenced off killing area or over a cliff was known to have been practiced nearly everywhere in the world in ancient times. The difference is that every part of the animal was used in the hunters community, surplus was dried and stored, and shared with other villages of the same people. I apologise for preaching.

To answer your other question. Calcium carbonate CaCO3 is limestone same as simple lime you might add to your garden. Common limestone is heated to produce quick lime or unslacked lime CaO. Once water is added to that it is slaked lime or calcium hydroxide Ca(OH)4. Quick lime is hard to find but not impossible, it is used in some capacity to clean outdoor toilets. I understand that it has been used by criminals to dispose of bodies. All of this info is from Ragnar Benson's book SURVIVAL POACHING. Biological poisons are the primitive man's form of explosive. A fish trap or tidal pool with small amount of effective toxin that stuns the fish makes sense for a community or even a single person that will dry and smoke the surplus.

For more info on preserving fish in primitive methods among other arts see SURVIVAL ARTS OF THE PRIMITIVE PAIUTES by Margaret M. Wheat University of Nevada press; Reno, Nevada 1967 ISBN 0-87417-048-6 It's a paperback approx. 11x14 inches and ran about $10 (U.S.) when I bought it. If you want to post the excerpt from Ragnar Benson's book along with this post to the group be my guest. I just wasn't sure it was appropriate.

JB
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> James E. Burdine wrote:
>
> >I can't get over it! Where the heck do you come up with all these
> >references I have never seen?!
> >:-)I've just been interested in the same subjects for quite some time. I've
> >been looking for the old knowledge for some time. ;-)
> >SURVIVAL POACHING is by Ragnar Benson and was published in 1980 by Paladin
> >Press 303-443-7250
>>
> CaO is quick lime and can cause horrible caustic burns if spilled on wet
> flesh and not cleaned up immediately. When CaO is combined with water it
> reacts and becomes Ca(OH)4 or calcium hydroxide. When mixed with water it
> expands about three times in volume and gives off a great deal of heat.
>
> "Collect a number of clean one gallon glass jugs. These must be glass and
> similar to those used for vinegar, wine or apple cider with a small neck
> and secure cap. Clean the jugs thoroughly and then dry them out till they
> are absolutely bone dry. No moisture can remain in the jug.
> You must have about five pounds of clean pea gravel for each jug. Five
> pounds is about two #6 pecans full. Dry this gravel over a low fire, and
> then pour it luke warm into the gallon jugs. There should be a good healthy
> inch of gravel in the bottom of the jug. At first it is advisable to test
> the gravel to see if it is heavy enough to sink the jug. Cork the glass up
> tightly and float it in a barrel or tub. There must be enough gravel in the
> jug to sink it without hesitaiton.
> Having done this, dry the jug again and carefully pour in one #6 pecan
> full of CaO in each of the prepared jugs. Replace the cap making sure the
> jug is sealed airtight. The explosive jug can now be stored safely until
> used.
> I usually take two or three of the jugs with me in the boat. They will
> arouse no suspicion until used.
> To prepare a jug for use, uncork it and hold its mouth just below the
> surface of the water. Allow about one quart of water to pour in cap the jug
> quickly and let it sink to the bottom.
> Properly done, the jug will go off with a very nice blast in about one
> minute. The blast will kill fish just about on par with a one stick dynamite
> charge. Quickly collect the fish as they float to the top with a spear or
> net.
> I don't believe it is advisable to use these lime bombs in less than five
> feet of water."
>

> There is a bit more mostly that the lime bombs will work at great depths
> where dynamite won't.
> I like Ragnar Benson's other book LIVE OFF THE LAND IN THE CITY AND COUNTRY
> 1982 also published by Paladin press.
> Touch of the Bear
> JBA
> An old neighbor of mine used the same technique of quick lime. I never saw
> it but him and several of his old cronies used to talk of it. One time
> when we were ditching along the river flats there was a small hole at
> the upper end of the ditch. The method of dirt removal was dynamite. What
> a show when a half mile of ditch through the tagalders goes all at once,
> the reward nearly two bushels of fish from the fifteen foot wide pool.
Ben, thanks for such a great post on fish poisons. I'd sure like to have the scientific names of all the plants you mention though, if you have them. In different parts of the world, as you know, there can be so many different names for the same plant or a same name for so many different plants as to make things very confusing.

Again, thanks. Looking forward to see if any of the plants you mention or botanical relatives of them could be applicable here in the north.

AndrÈ

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÃois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÃ©bec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÃ©bec)
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> Ben, thanks for such a great post on fish poisons. I'd sure like to
> have the scientific names of all the plants you mention though, if you
> have them. In different parts of the world, as you know, there can be
> so many different names for the same plant or a same name for so many
> different plants as to make things very confusing.
> Again, thanks. Looking forward to see if any of the plants you mention
> or botanical relatives of them could be applicable here in the north.
> 
> AndrÈ
> --
> Surviving at nature's will...
> 
> Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
> Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
> University of QuÈbec
> 555 University Boulevard
> Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
> CANADA     G7H 2B1
> 418-545-5011 Ext 5259
> 
> At Nature's Will Inc.
> 3801 Rang St-Martin
> Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
> CANADA     G7H 5A7
> 418-543-2888
> 
> bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
> 
> Good point. Common names can be misleading. I wish I were more
> knowledgeable on scientific names. I'll do the best I can. Maybe I'll
> run these plant names past my friend Christopher Nyerges. He is the
> plant expert and see if he knows the scientific names. I need to contact
> him anyway and twist his arm to join our group. We're going to need a
> good plant person sooner or later. By the way, how many do we have in
> the group with knowledge of medicinal and edible plants? Please step
> forward, so we can pick your brains from time to time. I do OK with
> plants and know enough to survive, but there are so many I know that
> know so much more than me.
> 
> Benjamin Pressley
> benjamin@perigee.net
> Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
> 
> Snail Mail:
> TRIBE
> P.O. Box 20015
> Charlotte, NC 28202
> USA
> E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
> TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE
> Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. Check out our home page for more
> information.
> TRIBE Homepage:
> http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
> 
> X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
> 
> X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Hi all,

I just joined the list and have been reading the thread on fish poisons. I once met a guy who claimed he fished this way with crushed mullien (Verbascum ??) seeds. Has anyone else ever heard of such a thing?

-Jeff

Jeff Stevens

email: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu
home page: http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens
I was just collecting some California buckeye seeds to roast them, having heard they were edible, and I also read that they are full of saponins which can be used to stun fish. I haven't tried it myself, and the seeds are still in the fridge. Buckeye does make great fire sticks, though, and it's a feast for the eyes as well.

Aloha,

--John
I was just collecting some California buckeye seeds to roast them, having heard they were edible, and I also read that they are full of saponins which can be used to stun fish. I haven't tried it myself, and the seeds are still in the fridge. Buckeye does make great fire sticks, though, and it's a feast for the eyes as well.

Aloha,

--John
merv martin wrote:

> You mention fish poisons in your response. this is another fascinating
> subject. If anyone is interested, let me know, I'll pass on a few
> things.

Benjamin Pressley

Okay Benjamin, Spill it!!!  :)

I'd hate to be accused of using carbide bombs on a primitive skills list so
I _really_ need some info on natural fish poisons.

Also do you have anything on the white camas lily (Camas zigadenus)?

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------
| Merv Martin       *              *               |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * * *            |
| www.midtown.net/~merv                       |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |
------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---

I don't have anything on the white camas lily. Let me know how bad you
want to know something on this plant and I'll look into it. As far as
fish poisons go:

Fish poisoned by natural poisons apparently are not killed by the
poison but only inebriated. By experiments, when they are speedily moved
into good water, they revive in a few minutes. Different poisons were
used by Native Americans. The Catawba, Cherokee and Delaware used the
ground Black Walnut bark. The Yuchi and Creek used the roots of the
Devil's Shoestring, the fruit, twigs and buds of the Horse Chestnut in
Spring and the fruit of the Buckeye. The Rappahannock made their poison
by putting cornmeal into a tub and mixing it with fish brine and
allowing it to stand awhile. The poison in all cases was mixed into the
water in still places that were often still from damming up certain
parts of a stream. Men usually stood ready with bow and arrow, in case
the poison was not strong enough to thoroughly stupefy the fish, as
often happened. They were then gathered in baskets or speared as they
came to the surface. The Cherokee also used the berries of polk sallet.

My experience has been with ground up black walnut hull and the
berries of polk sallet, though not extensive. I have a friend who uses
polk sallet berries extensively by mixing them in the water upstream of
a slow moving stream. As it washes downstream there are fish that
surface and float on top as if dead. I have another friend, Christopher
Nyerges, in California that uses the nuts of buckeye, the fresh leaves
of the turkey mullein plant (mostly a Southwestern U.S. plant), the
crushed fruits of the wild cucumber or manroot (gourd family) and the
entire wooly blue curl plant (Trichostema lanatum).

Fish that has been poisoned is safe to eat, as I said earlier it only
knocks them out. Fish poisons work best in a still area of a stream
> where fish are. You can also dam up an area.
> -----------------------------------------------
> Benjamin Pressley
> benjamin@perigee.net
> Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
> >
> Snail Mail:
> TRIBE
> P.O. Box 20015
> Charlotte, NC 28202
> USA
> > E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
> TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE
> Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. Check out our home page for more
> information.
> TRIBE Homepage:
> > http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Fri Dec 27 05:38:18 1996
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic [204.19.37.2]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca
(8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA15897; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 16:15:53 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA10145; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 15:30:31 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA06529; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 15:26:44 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 15:30:57 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA03006 for
; Wed, 25 Dec 1996 22:04:07
-0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.155]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail
Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA125 for
; Wed, 25 Dec 1996 22:01:19
-0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32C1F9EB.20DA@perigee.net>
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Fish Poisons
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
Hello group! I e-mailed Christopher Nyerges at the School of Self Reliance in the City of Angels and asked him to help us out on the scientific names of the fish poisons I gave out the other day. He not only supplied me with some of the names but gave me some other info I thought I'd pass on. Here are portions of his note in quotes below and some additional info I have found out since then:

"Hi Benjamin.

As to your plants poisons: A few I will need to look up. I would be happy to provide you with an article about poisons and how to use them.

White Camus Lily -- I have to look up, but I don't think we're dealing with anything rare here. In Calif. anyway, you're probably referring to Death Camas, Zygadenus sps. Otherwise, you'd need to tell me range so I know what area of the country you've found this in. I am unfamiliar with that common name.

Devil's Shoestring: Again, this is a common name that I am not familiar with, and it could be a local common name. I suspect you might be referring to Hedera helix, common English ivy, whose leaves and berries contain glycoside hederagenin, which could cause death. A related plant-- probably in your neck of the woods, is Aralia spinosa, sometimes known as Devil's walkingstick, has berries that could kill if eaten in quantities. Could you be referring to that?

[As far as Devil's Shoestring I found out it is actually Tephrosia virginia, a perennial herb and legume commonly used among the Catawba people to treat rheumatism. It is also known as Goat's Rue. It grows in NC and SC from the mountains to the coast. The correct reference was found in Frank G. Speck's book, Catawba Medical and Curative Practices (1937). ---Benjamin]

Horse Chestnut and Buckeye are both the same thing: Buckeye, the Ohio state tree, and there is also a California buckeye. The genus is Aesculus, referring to the glycoside esculin. Its a good fish stupefier, and the nuts can actually be leached like acorns. I have done so. However, esculin is not noticeable like tannin (bitter), so it's difficult to know when the leaching is done. Most folks just leave it alone.

Polk Sallet: It's a poisonous plant alright, but everyone from before slavery days ate it. The poison -- I don't seem to have its exact name at my fingertips -- is water soluble meaning you cook the greens, pour off the water, and cook again and then you can safely eat it. We're speaking of ordinary Pokeweed (Phytolacca americana and realted sps.). Some folks see the word Sallet and they think it means Salad. Wrong! Sallet is, if my memory is right here, from an Old English word and it refers to cooked greens. Anyway, death can occur if you try to eat this and don't do it right.

Turkey mullein is restricted to the Southwest, I believe. I don't have the Latin name handy, but it is in the spurge family, and it grows in low, mounds. The leaves resemble mullein leaves, but are toxic. I have used it, thrown in pools, to stun fish.

Wild Cucumber is also known as Manroot, and it is the Marah genus. There is a chapter on this in my Wild Food book. Do you have a copy of the book? If not, I'll send you one. Though my book doesn't say this, you can mash the root and throw into pools to stun fish. I have not done this.
I hope this helps.
Christopher Nyerges
nyerges@earthlink.net
http://home.earthlink.net/~nyerges/

Expect ONLY the very best
and also
Prepare for the very worst"

Thanks to Christopher for the help. He does have some excellent books on plants and a workbook on survival skills. Just check out his homepage for details. There are also some nice links there. And if you're in his neighborhood he conducts some fine classes. I've been twisting his arm to get him to join us. He would be great to have for his plant knowledge alone. He is also skilled in many other ways.

-----------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive living skills. Check out our home page for more information.
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

From - Mon Dec 23 10:10:47 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA18082; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 20:23:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA16142; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 20:23:44 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 20:28:16 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA16135 for ; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 20:23:37 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.44 (srv4s24.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.44]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id UAA24693 for ; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 20:26:51 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Ted Bailey wrote:

> The natives in Panama also boil a vine that grows at the edge of the rivers
> and dump the "tea" into a slow stream. For some reason, the "tea" is a
> toxin that prevents the fish from getting oxygen to their gills and they
> float belly up.

I have also heard of this and can't ever remember what plants would be toxic enough for this. Anyone know?

AndrÈ

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÅois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

X-Mozilla-Status: 0000
Well, I just did a little test. Neither mullein seeds nor leaves seem to have any effect on fish.

Jeff

"But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts is. A good part of her territory is already bare and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her villages generally are not so well shaded as ours."

-Thoreau

e-mail: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu
home page: http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
Jeff Stevens wrote:

> Hi all,
>
> I just joined the list and have been reading the thread on fish poisons.
> I once met a guy who claimed he fished this way with crushed mullien
> (Verbascum ???) seeds. Has anyone else ever heard of such a thing?

> -Jeff

That's a new one for me, Jeff. Thanks for the post, hope someone else can answer this one or help us research it further. To help the research, the scientific name of the Mullein plant is Verbascum thapsii. This is a very common plant and it would be very useful to find out more about this.

AndrÈ

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> Jeff Stevens wrote:
> >
> > Hi all,
> >
>
I just joined the list and have been reading the thread on fish poisons. I once met a guy who claimed he fished this way with crushed mullien (Verbascum ???) seeds. Has anyone else ever heard of such a thing?

~Jeff

That's a new one for me, Jeff. Thanks for the post, hope someone else can answer this one or help us research it further. To help the research, the scientific name of the Mullein plant is Verbascum thapsii. This is a very common plant and it would be very useful to find out more about this.

André

----------------------------------------------------------
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

You may be talking about the turkey mullein plant. It is in the gourd family and grows in the Southwestern U.S. Christopher Nyerges uses this entire plant for fish poisoning. The scientific name is Eremocarpus setigerus. Hey, even I can come up with scientific names thanks to Chris's great reference to the Ethnobotany Cafe!

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive living skills. Check out our home page for more information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
> 
> Jeff Stevens wrote:
> > 
> > Hi all,
> > 
> > I just joined the list and have been reading the thread on fish poisons.
> > I once met a guy who claimed he fished this way with crushed mullein
> (Verbascum ???) seeds. Has anyone else ever heard of such a thing?
> > 
> > ~Jeff
> > 
> That's a new one for me, Jeff. Thanks for the post, hope someone else
> can answer this one or help us research it further. To help the
> research, the scientific name of the Mullein plant is Verbascum thapsii.
> This is a very common plant and it would be very useful to find out more
> about this.
> 
> AndrÈ
You may be talking about the turkey mullein plant. It is in the gourd family and grows in the Southwestern U.S. Christopher Nyerges uses this entire plant for fish poisoning. The scientific name is Eremocarpus setigerus. Hey, even I can come up with scientific names thanks to Chris's great reference to the Ethnobotany Cafe!

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive living skills. Check out our home page for more information.
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

---

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Dec 27 07:28:03 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA16591; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 17:44:29 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA08494; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 17:42:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from amber.ccs.neu.edu (amber.ccs.neu.edu [129.10.111.100]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA08491 for; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 17:42:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [206.139.116.27] (dialup-p-7.mint.net [206.139.116.27]) by amber.ccs.neu.edu (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA06531 for; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 17:46:33 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
>> Jeff Stevens wrote:
>> 
>> > Hi all,
>> 
>> > I just joined the list and have been reading the thread on fish poisons.
>> > I once met a guy who claimed he fished this way with crushed mullien
>> > (Verbascum ???) seeds. Has anyone else ever heard of such a thing?
>> 
>> > -Jeff
>
> You may be talking about the turkey mullein plant. It is in the gourd
> family and grows in the Southwestern U.S. Christopher Nyerges uses this
> entire plant for fish poisoning. The scientific name is Eremocarpus
> setigerus. Hey, even I can come up with scientific names thanks to
> Chris's great reference to the Ethnobotany Cafe!

That is very possible though the guy who told me about using mullein was
discussing the mullein that grows around here (Maine) when he talked
about it. He said you just crush up some seeds and throw 'em in. I am
trying an experiment with leaves as its darn hard to find mullein seeds
this time of year. Leaves don't seem to work. I have a few seeds and
may try them. The guy also said the seeds only stun the fish. They are
paralyzed for a while. He cautioned that if I were to try it I should
not do it on a sunny day or all the fish would die of exposure as they
floated to the surface.

Jeff

"But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts
is. A good part of her territory is already bare
and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her
villages generally are not so well shaded as ours."

-Thoreau

email: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu
home page: http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens

--
Jeff Stevens wrote:
> 
> >> Jeff Stevens wrote:
> >
> >> > Hi all,
> >> >
> >> > I just joined the list and have been reading the thread on fish poisons.
> >> > I once met a guy who claimed he fished this way with crushed mullien
> >> > (Verbascum ???) seeds. Has anyone else ever heard of such a thing?
> >> >
> >> > -Jeff
> >>
> You may be talking about the turkey mullein plant. It is in the gourd
> family and grows in the Southwestern U.S. Christopher Nyerges uses this
> entire plant for fish poisoning. The scientific name is Eremocarpus
> setigerus. Hey, even I can come up with scientific names thanks to
> Chris's great reference to the Ethnobotany Cafe!
>
> That is very possible though the guy who told me about using mullein was
discussing the mullein that grows around here (Maine) when he talked
about it. He said you just crush up some seeds and throw 'em in. I am
trying an experiment with leaves as its darn hard to find mullein seeds
this time of year. Leaves don't seem to work. I have a few seeds and
may try them. The guy also said the seeds only stun the fish. They are
paralyzed for a while. He cautioned that if I were to try it I should
not do it on a sunny day or all the fish would die of exposure as they
floated to the surface.

Jeff

"But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts
is. A good part of her territory is already bare
and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her
villages generally are not so well shaded as ours."

- Thoreau

email: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu
home page: http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens

Please keep me posted on your success. I have used common mullein in
many applications (Inhaling burning leaves for congestion relief,
placing fresh leaves in shoes for soothing the feet, dried stalks for
friction fire making, seed heads dipped in bee's wax for torches, etc.),
but not as a poison.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE
Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for
June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over,
camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival
and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more
information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

Also Check Out Ted Bailey's Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills
Classes and Events:
Jeff Stevens wrote:

>> Well, I just did a little test. Neither mullein seeds nor leaves seem to
>> have any effect on fish.

HI JEFF,

Please explain how you conducted your experiment.

This makes me think that we could go to a fish farm, put a couple of
tROUT in a large bucket, then try the seeds to see if they work. Is
this what you did?

By the way, please confirm you were using Verbascum thapsii seeds and
>leaves.
>
>Thanks,
>
>AndrÈ


I placed several of the first year leaves (still green even after the cold) in a tea ball. I was sure to tear them up well. I placed them in a fifteen gallon aquarium with two Silver Dollars (dunno their scientific name. Related to piranah though. Can be bought in any pet store), two Red Tailed Bleck Sharks (ditto on the scientific name), and several snails both tropical and MAine natives. No effects were observed after 40 minutes.

Then I crushed up all the seeds I could get and placed them in the water directly. Ended up being about 15 and mullein seeds are small. I crushed up the seed hulls and any remaining seeds I didn't notice into the tea ball too. Nothing happened after another 40 minutes.

The guy who told me he fished with mullein seeds said he uses a teaspoon of crushed seeds in a small frog pond size pond. With that concentration it seems this should have done it. I will try and contact him and get further info but no promises.

Right now I am going with Verbascum tapsus doesn't work well for catching fish.

But.....

To complicate things a bit more I have an old book that has a paragraph about fish poisons. The book was published in 1956. It is "Living off the Country" by Bradford Angier. No ISBN but it was published by Stackpole Books and has a Lib of Congress Card Catalog number of 56-11267.

This book quotes another book by the same author called "How to Build Your Home in the Woods". It says refering to capturing fish:

    One procedure is to crush the leaves and stalks of the mullein or fish weed, croton setigerus... The fish therein, momentarily narcotized, will float to the surface...."

It also mentions the soap plant (Chlorogalum pomdeidianum) and southern buckeye (Aesculuc pavia).

Now, turkey mullein is Eremocarpus setigerus yet the mullein refered to in this book is Croton setigerus. Anyone know if there was taxonomical change between 1956 and present in regard to this plant or what?

Dunno...Just thoughts...

Jeff

--

"But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts
is. A good part of her territory is already bare and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her villages generally are not so well shaded as ours."

-Thoreau

email: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu
home page: http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens

--

From - Mon Dec 30 05:50:12 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA21306; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 17:48:25 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA13065; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 17:47:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 17:51:59 EST
Received: from nhj.nlc.net.au (nhj.nlc.net.au [203.24.133.1]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA13062 for ; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 17:47:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: (qmail 4077 invoked from network); 28 Dec 1996 22:51:11 -0000
Received: from dialine17.nlc.net.au (HELO mills) (203.24.133.104) by nhj.nlc.net.au with SMTP; 28 Dec 1996 22:51:11 -0000
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <1.5.4.32.19961228225050.00688c40@nlc.net.au>
X-Sender: mills@nlc.net.au
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Light Version 1.5.4 (32)
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Sun, 29 Dec 1996 09:50:50 +1100
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 851985941.027
From: Adam
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mills@NLC.NET.AU
Subject: Plants for fish poisions
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Here are some fish narcotics straight from a book (SAS survival),

Derris: Occur in se asia to australia. N/a to everyone but powder the roots and chuck it in

soap plant: occurs in the usa in dry open scrubland. it ois a narrow grass like leaves with white star like flowers. crush the bulbous root and chuck in the water.

I guess these are not the sci. names but its all i got.
Adam wrote:
  >
  > Here are some fish narcotics straight from a book (SAS survival),
  >
  > Derris: Occur in se asia to australia. N/a to everyone but powder the roots
  > and chuck it in
  >
  > soap plant: occurs in the usa in dry open scrubland. it ois a narrow grass
  > like leaves with white star like flowers. crush the bulbous root and chuck
  > in the water.
  >
  > I guess these are not the sci. names but its all i got.
  >
  > Cya
  >
Adam
I wonder what plant they mean? That's what I hate about some survival books. When they don't give any more details than that it makes me wonder if they have even tried it. I mean, there are many plants you can get "soap" from. More properly said, many plants contain saponins. Plants that contain saponins for cleansing would be a good subject. If anyone is interested, let it be known and I'll post a few notes on the subject.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Tribe_Gathering.html

Also Check Out Ted Baileyís Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Prim_cal_events.html

--------------------

From - Tue Dec 31 07:06:54 1996
Received: from andorra.it.earthlink.net (andorra-c.it.earthlink.net [204.119.177.97]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA01249 for ; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 16:51:20 -0500 (EST)
Received: from nyerges.earthlink.net ([207.217.4.37]) by andorra.it.earthlink.net (8.7.5/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA12599 for ; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 13:55:16 -0800 (PST)
Received: from delivery.hotmail.com ([207.82.250.65]) by italy.it.earthlink.net (8.7.5/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA05708 for ; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 10:35:03 -0800 (PST)
Received: (http://www.hotmail.com 14439 invoked by uid 0); 31 Dec 1996 18:34:12 -0000
Received: from 206.86.127.204 by www.hotmail.com with HTTP; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 10:34:11 PST
Resent-From: nyerges@norway-c.it.earthlink.net
Resent-Message-Id: <199612312155.NAA12599@andorra.it.earthlink.net>
Comments: Authenticated sender is
Resent-to: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
Resent-date: Tue, 31 Dec 1996 13:59:04 +0000
Date: 31 Dec 1996 18:34:11 -0000
Message-ID: <19961231183411.14438.qmail@hotmail.com>
X-Originating-IP: [206.149.198.127]
Hi -- today is Tues. 12/31. I'm talking to Dr. Borbeau, correct? Benjamin passed along some data of mine and I'm glad it has been useful to you.

I have to apologize about the slowness of my responses, since I'm still in the stone age of writing letters and talking on phone. And my computer is so slow that I could do my laundry with a rock while I'm waiting for things to come up. Anyway, I have quite a bit of practical knowledge on fish poisons that I could share. Should I write it up and mail it? It would be lengthy to e-mail it all. Plus, if I take the time, I can make a chart and compare the various poisons. You should know, of course, that the use of fish poisons is illegal everywhere in U.S and prod probably in Canada too. Still, it is good to know for emergencies. Though it has been a few years since I have actually tried some of these, I keep good notes. Also, I have read what other authors say on this subject. Bradford Angier, for example, makes major mistakes when he writes on this subject, probably because he was just inaccurately copying from some other books. I actually wrote to his publisher and told them, but they simply said that Angier sells a lot of books, and that was good enough for them. Anyway... Let me hear from you. Honestly, it would be quicker if you sent me a postcard or letter at Box 41834, Eagle Rock, CA 90041, since I generally answer my mail quicker than these e-mail messages. Thank you for contacting me. If I can be of more help, I will do the best I can. Give my regards to Benjamin. Christopher Nyerges.

Hi Chris,

Thank you for sending Ben that wonderful information on fish poisons.
which he passed on to us with your permission.

You know that we have just started a primitive skills discussion group on the net, and I am trying to orient it so that the information is as scientifically accurate as possible. The info you sent will help us sort this out.

I would certainly appreciate receiving the information you mentioned about how to use these fish poisons, as would many others in the group.

Can I encourage you to join our group? I offer you my personal invitation. As a researcher in wilderness ways, I can just tell you that I have learned more in the few days since the group started than I had in the last year.

If you like, you could read the introductions of some of the members of the group which I have enclosed as a text file.

Thank you for your time and for sharing your knowledge.

Much appreciated!

Andr=E9

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Qu=E9bec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec)
CANADA     G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec)
CANADA     G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

Dolores L. Nyerges
nyerges@earthlink.net
http://home.earthlink.net/~nyerges/

Expect ONLY the very best
and also
Prepare for the very worst
Sorry to beat this topic do death still further but...

Looking at the plants we have discussed I do not believe any grow in Maine. Does anyone know about any plants that grow in Maine that can be used to stupify fish?

Jeff

--

"But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts is. A good part of her territory is already bare and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her villages generally are not so well shaded as ours."

-Thoreau

email: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu
home page: http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens
From - Fri Jan  3 02:48:19 1997
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic [204.19.37.2]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca
(8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA07045 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 12:40:12 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.63 (srv1s12.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.63]) by
chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id MAA27011 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 12:43:27 -
0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32CC56B8.3769@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Fri, 03 Jan 1997 00:45:44 +0000
X-UIDL: 852313453.001
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
Subject: Fish poisons- Saponins
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
Forwarded-  Text from Thomas E. Elpel

It appears that the fish poison discussion started long before I
joined the group. However, I beleive I have some new information, so
here
goes:

I have done extensive studies of patterns in plant properties
and
uses. One pattern I noticed is that plants that are used as a poison to
stun fish almost always contain a substance called "saponin". The
following three paragraphs are adapted from my Herbal Field Guide to
Plant
Families:

Saponin is a glucoside poison, but it must enter the bloodstream
to
be toxic. (A glycoside is a sugar combined with an non-sugar
(a-glycone)
compound. It is called a glucoside when the sugar is glucose.)
Saponin normally breaks down in the digestive system, making it
harmless. Fish, however, directly assimilate the saponin into the blood
stream through their gills. Adding a significant quantity of an herb
with
saponin to a small, still pond may effectively stun or kill the fish (I
haven't tried it yet), without harming the fisherman who eats them.
Plants that contain saponin can usually be worked into a
"lather",
and are typically used as soap substitutes. Specific plants that
contain
saponin include: yucca root (Yucca spp.), buckbrush flowers and berries
(Ceanothus spp.), snowberries (Symphoricarpus spp.), bouncing bet
(Saponaria officinalis.)

I could not find any material on the properties of buckeye (Aesculus), except that the fruit is used as a fish poison and many species are known to be edible after leaching to remove the bitterness. This bitterness also suggests the presence of saponin. If you looked through enough sources there is a high probability you would find one that lists saponin as a substance in buckeye.

Contact me if you are interested in my Herbal Field Guide to Plant Families. I am closing out the remaining copies of the first edition for $15 (rather than $20). The book focuses on the common patterns of identification and constituents within plant families. It is a way of studying plants as whole groups, rather than as individual species. The book covers 100 of the approximately 300 families found in North America, which includes the majority of the families in the frost belt. It is only minimally useful in the southern states where hard freezes never occur.

I am working on a key for the second edition, due out in the spring. I will make the key available separately for anyone who has bought the first edition.

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, MT 59747-0691
tomelpel@3rivers.net

Visa/Mastercard, call: 1-406-685-3222
I am following up my last letter where I wrote:

> I could not find any material on the properties of buckeye (Aesculus), except that the fruit is used as a fish poison and many species are known to be edible after leaching to remove the bitterness. This bitterness also suggests the presence of saponin. If you looked through enough sources there is a high probability you would find one that lists saponin as a substance in buckeye.

Today I found a database on the web (http://www.axis-net.com/pfaf/plants.html) that mentioned saponins in buckeye. I only checked one of the several species covered there, but I expect that most of the others contain saponin as well.

Noticing patterns in plants will help you predict the properties of other new plants you encounter.

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, MT 59747-0691
tomelpel@3rivers.net
Hi. I have heard of the use of rotenone (a biodegradable natural pesticide) to stun fish for collecting them. This was done by (I believe) the Yanomamo tribe, and possibly other South American natives by crushing a certain liana and throwing it in the water.

I have also read in a book that the Indians in the southeast US used a plant for this purpose – however, the book did not specify the plant. Someone suggested that it may have been the corm of the Jack in the Pulpit – Anyone with knowledge on this please respond.

Also – I read that there is no effect on humans from eating fish harvested in this way – but I gotta wonder if that’s true.

--
Robert L. Cox, Jr. – President
Nuisance Wildlife Control Services
Express Private Process Service
P.O. Box 5582, Towson, MD 21285
Email: robertlcox@sprintmail.com

Jan 24 22:09:03 1997
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E9A436.17C6@sprintmail.com>
Date: Sat, 25 Jan 1997 01:12:06 -0500
From: ROBERT COX
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, robertlcox@sprintmail.com
Organization: Nuisance Wildlife Control Service & Express Private Process Service
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: PRIMITIVE SKILLS GROUP
Subject: Rotenone and other Fish Stunning Agents
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA05145; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 02:16:27 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA01497; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 02:14:15 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA01494 for
; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 02:13:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from Quantum.qnet.com (lanc01-09.ca.qnet.com [207.155.34.69]) by
ns2.qnet.com (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA24662; Fri, 24 Jan 1997
23:18:04 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Howdy!

>Hi. I have heard of the use of rotenone (a biodegradable natural
>pesticide) to stun fish for collecting them. This was done by (I
>believe) the Yanomamo tribe, and possibly other South American natives
>by crushing a certain liana and throwing it in the water.

I don't know about the Yanomamo, but the practice is fairly common. The material I saw came from the pounded root of a Plant I never had an identification for. It was a vine. The pulped material was tossed into a very slow moving stream or a pond and the fish would surface down stream or be washed into a net set in place by the fishermen. I saw this done by Brazilians at one of the gold mining villages I visited and by native peoples I met in various areas.

Rotenone is available in some gardening stores as a natural insecticide.

>I have also read in a book that the indians in the southeast US used a
>plant for this purpose - however, the book did not specify the plant.
>I have read that the indians in the southeast US used a plant for this purpose - however, the book did not specify the plant.
>Someone suggested that it may have been the corm of the Jack in the
>Pulpit - Anyone with knowledge on this please respond.

We use a plant that is locally known as Wild Cucumber. The root is large, often 6"-10" in diameter and may be hundreds of feet long. The vine it kicks out has grape like leaves and round, spiny fruits. I'm sorry but I don't have my notes up here so I can't tell you the real name, it is sometimes called "Manroot" (not "Mandrake").

It is crushed, and the crushed material is tossed into a stream much as I described above. It seems to cause the fish to suffocate. If they aren't harvested, or wash out into faster water, they recover and swim away.

I've heard of dogwood being used this way but I have no experience with it.

>Also - I read that there is no effect on humans from eating fish
>harvested in this way - but I gotta wonder if that's true.

I dunno, I've eaten lots of fish taken in this way. Never had a problem. I've never heard of anyone having a reaction. But this numbness in my tongue............ hmmm.

Ron Hood
"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"
Dr. Ron Hood
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

From - Thu Feb 11 13:56:25 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA07901; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 14:34:39 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA03904; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 14:32:32 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 14:30:38 EST
Received: from ns2.iamerica.net (ns2.iamerica.net [205.173.248.33]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA03901 for
; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 14:32:22
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [205.173.249.53] (ias_ppp0144.iamerica.net [205.173.249.53]) by
ns2.iamerica.net (8.6.13/950817.04ccg) with SMTP id NAA14115 for
; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 13:37:14 -0600
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199701251937.NAA14115@ns2.iamerica.net>
Subject: Re: Rotenone and other Fish Stunning Agents
Date: Sat, 25 Jan 97 13:36:17 -0600
From: bmanrich
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bmanrich@IAMERICA.NET
To: "dr. A.F. BOURBEAU"
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="US-ASCII"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> >Rotenone is available in some gardening stores as a natural insecticide.
We had a lake in E. Tx. and Dad decided (from expert advice) to rotenone
the lake, to clear out the excess fish, ect.
We enjoyed a wonderful fish fry. Don't recall if fishing improved. We
later fertilized the lake and then had to harvest the excess muskweed
that began choking the lake.

What about the technique of dropping a tree in a water way(weeping
willow comes to mind). Does the tree kill the fish, or is the obsorption
of 0-2 the reason one could then harvest fish?

b-man, rich

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"*
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.
>>>>>>>> bmanrich@iamerica.net<<<<<<
Hi. I have heard of the use of rotenone (a biodegradable natural pesticide) to stun fish for collecting them. I have also read in a book that the indians in the southeast US used a plant for this purpose - however, the book did not specify the plant. Someone suggested that it may have been the corm of the Jack in the Pulpit - Anyone with knowledge on this please respond.

> Robert L. Cox, Jr.

I have read of crushed buckeyes or crushed black walnut hulls. Never tried it though. Seems like it would take a lot of work to get enough Jack-in-the-Pulpit corms to do any good.

Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
Hi all, Here's another paper bomb! :)) :)

To start with I'd like to throw out something that may be debateable. I'd like to see a lot of comments on this. Especially if someone knows different.

As far as I can determine the flesh of all mammals, all reptiles, and all birds is free from any poisonous content and safe to eat. But NOT the flesh of any fish! I believe that the flesh of any North American fresh water fish is safe, but again, please, let's check this one! At the Jungle Operations Training Center in Panama, they told us that if it looks like a fish, it's safe, if it don't, don't touch it.

By poisonous, I mean actually toxic, that is, containing a poison.

Now, "safe to eat" doesn't mean that the meat may be eaten with no ill effects. It merely means that the flesh itself contains nothing which will be poisonous to a normal adult human being.

Many animals are hosts to parasites which can be fatal to man if they are introduced into his body. The best example I can think of here is Trichinosis, which is probably the reason for the Jewish ban on eating pork.
Consequently, no flesh is absolutely safe to eat raw, even in an emergency. However most parasites and their eggs are killed by heat, so cook it first!!! I say most here, because there are some spores that can't be killed outside of pressure cooking. (I remember being told this, but am drawing a blank trying to remember what ones. Anyone got the names and distribution?)

We all know about rotten meat. It's not very good to eat. Either tasting or health wise, so now, how to preserve.

The preservation of meats for long periods can be accomplished by smoking and sun drying, and by brining and cooking in fats. If the climate permits, you can freeze it too, though I hope you aren't in a survival situation in that kind of climate. Not fun!

Smoke/Sun Drying

The meat to be used in this process must be freshly killed. Cut off the fatty parts (they'll get rancid, save them for rendering), and then slice the meat into strips no thicker than 1/2 inch and no wider than an inch. I'd suggest no thicker than a 1/4 inch. The thick stuff takes longer to dry and if it isn't completely dry when you store it, it'll rot! Yuk!

Now, thread it on a wire or fresh cut cane, or willow stick with the bitter bark stripped off and washed. (save the bark for the headache later. :) ) Hang the canes or whatever else you've used over a low, slow fire that's making thin blue smoke. Don't let it get in the fire, you're only trying to dry the outside right now, not cook it. This might take from an hour to a day.

You can let the meat dry completely in the smoke and fire and that may be a good idea in the winter. The other way is to hang your meat in the sun to finish. The reason you need to dry the surface is to protect the meat from blowflies that'll lay their eggs on the meat if it's wet.

Now, if your intention is a good plate of maggots...

When the meat is thoroughly dry, it needs to be stored on a bag with an open weave to keep condensation (and therefore mold) down.

The above works for just about everything except fish. If the fish is known to be safe to eat, fillet it (the big ones), or hang it by the tail (the small ones) with a small stick stuck just behind the gills to spread the body cavity.

Fillets may be flakey and not hang well if so, use a hot clean rock. Same reasoning as with meat. Dry the surface to stop blowflies. Fish does need to be dried quicker than most other meats as it spoils quicker.

With all of these processes you're working against putrification. Best to get it done as soon as possible.

BTW don't try to build a smokey fire, especially by adding green wood or leaves. What you'll get is meat with all the essential oils from the green wood or leaves cooked into it. Doesn't taste so good. All you need is the thin blue smoke from a normal fire.
Brining

Meat, cut into small pieces of about half a pound each and put into a strong solution of salt and water (brine) will keep almost indefinitely. My grandfather's brine used to be strong enough to float a fresh chicken egg. Remember to keep the meat BELOW the surface of the brine. We used to float a piece of wood on top of our brined olives to keep them below. I'll post or email that process too if someone wants it. It uses lye, so it's not _really_ primitive.

Cooking in Fat

Meat can be preserved five to six days in summer by preliminary cooking in fat, and then allowing the meat to remain in the fat in which it was cooked. The heat of cooking sterilizes the meat and the fat seals the meat safely away from bacterial infection.

I've heard of preserving things longer in fat, but don't know the how and why of it.

Now...Iffen ya got some hick'ry and some salt and some sugar, 1/2 Cup of salt, 1/2 cup of sugar and 1 quart of water make a brining solution. Brine meats (not fish) 6 hours to overnight. Rinse, pat dry with a paper towel, and allow to air dry for an hour. It should have a kind of glazey surface now (the pellicle). Smoke it for three to fours in hickory (or fruitwood ...) smoke and let it dry in the sun or your oven. This recipe is basic and is provided so that you can get used to smoked foods before you have to live on them. :) :) :) 

Fruits and Vegetables

These don't need the smoke, but _do_ need to be rinsed. Sun dry just about any fruit or vegetable. Maybe even use the hot flat rock method, but watch out for smoke. A lot of fruits and veges just don't take to smoking. They taste terrible. Besides any that taste good when you smoke them will give you lung cancer. They also _do_ need to be screened if at all possible to stop blowflies. If not, at least keep the dried food in a loosly woven container for good air circulation and check it often for undesirable additions.

Fancier Stuff

Now that you have dried fruit and veges and meat, it's time to make pemmican. Grind the dried meat and anything else you'd like with it and mix it with fat to bind it. The fat is good for producing heat in the winter and I'm reading that it's the fats in stuff like sausage that binds the meat and stuff together when you heat the mix again. Haven't tried making sausage yet, but if someone has please tell us so we know whether or not to smoke our pemican.

If you have the time. Dig a pit for your fire. Dig a trench from the pit to the place you'll build your smokehouse. Cover the trench with bark, stones, dirt, etc. so the smoke and heat don't leak out. The trench needs to be slightly uphill toward the smokehouse end. Now, over the smoke house end of the trench build a thatch hut with a shelf for meat.

Oh, don't know how to build a thatch hut? Sounds like a nice topic for a post.
Merv Martin wrote:

> As far as I can determine the flesh of all mammals, all reptiles, and all
> birds is free from any poisonous content and safe to eat. But NOT the flesh
> of any fish! I believe that the flesh of any North American fresh water
> fish is safe, but again, please, let's check this one! At the Jungle
> Operations Training Center in Panama, they told us that if it looks like a
> fish, it's safe, if it don't, don't touch it.
By poisonous, I mean actually toxic, that is, containing a poison.

There are indeed several species of fish that contain poison. I'm surprised they told you that at JOTC. I lived in Panama (in Gatun, just a few miles from JOTC) as a boy and fished almost every minute of my free time. On the Pacific side of the isthmus, you can catch a small fish that looks like a Snapper, but it has a soapy film over its outer skin. It is slippery to hold and the natives will tell you not to eat it. On the Atlantic side of the isthmus, you have to be careful eating large Dogtooth snapper and Barracuda because both of these fish eat smaller reef fish which have eaten a poisonous coral of some kind. There are multiple guidelines I heard to avoid these toxins. One is to avoid eating barracuda longer than 36 inches. The other is to let the fish lay on the dock for 30 minutes and if the flies don't show interest on the fish, then it is safe to eat. A similar situation holds true in the waters of Florida. I can't remember the name of the toxin, but it is fairly well known in the tropical Atlantic and causes paralysis.

By the way, in the Panama Canal, the sun rises in the Pacific and sets in the Atlantic. Boy was I confused when I moved to the USA.

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970   || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/
We all know about rotten meat. It's not very good to eat. Either tasting or health wise, so now, how to preserve.

True, for City Guts....but fetid meats were eaten by various native peoples.

Come Spring thaw and the indians were pulling buffalo meat from melting ice, eating it on-the-spot ."Aged" salmon was highly regarded by indians of Northwest Pacific coast (Nez Perces).

Spices were used to help mask the flavor/odor of meat gone bad...but still needed eating.

I recall my Dad telling me of his merchant sailing days, when a storm at sea forced the cooks to slaughter all the injured, live stock, and for several days the crew enjoyed meat, and lots of it.

But after a few days, meat began turning. Mold, maggots, ect. Crew would not eat at first....but once they realized that that was all they were going to get, they began picking out the "stuff". To his dying day, Dad never minded scrapping food off floor and eating.

Controlled aging is what makes good beef, hams, ect. Of course, proper cooking keeps you from getting sick(most of the time).

rich, b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975 !
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"*
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"*Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975 !
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"*Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

>>> bmanrich@iamerica.net <<<
"Aged" salmon was highly regarded by indians of Northwest Pacific coast (Nez Perces).

B-MAN Rich,

Just a small point (except I'm wordy). Sorry to digress. The Nez Perce are a hell of a tribe (the only tribe to have their own breed of horse - the Appaloosa, they prospered during the gold rush by selling supplies to the Sourdough's, they saved Lewis & Clark's lives when they found them starving (they contemptuously threw the puppies they were reduced to eating at them, hitting one man in the chest - then they fed them). I could go on for quite some time. One thing though, they aren't coastal Indians (as far as fish goes, they eat salmon, both 'kokanee' sockeye and big chinook - as well as a varied assortment of other salmonids, like "Steelhead" which they harvest from great rivers like the Lochsa, Selway and Clearwater in Idaho). Their ancestral "summer home" was in the Blue Mountains of Northeastern Oregon near present day Enterprise, OR (they were removed, placed on reservation but as of late have been asked to please return, because they're money-makers and would improve the economy). The rest of the year they lived near me, in Idaho in the Bitteroot Mtn.s, where I live. I summer in their homelands and the scenery looks like Yellowstone Park, including plenty of primitive hotsprings. You're welcome out anytime, I can be convinced to give the grand tour at the drop of a hat (meet some Nez Perce) and it's a beaut! Sportman's Paradise. I'm aware of one coastal NW tribe, the Haida that maybe the ones you mean. They were quite the seafarers. Impressive you know about the Nez Perce down on the Gulf Coast. That's worth a beer.
out here and a place to stay. Right now it's all snow shoveling though (I just did my roof)...

Chris

-------------
Oops, I just thought of something. On the pit fire smoker, I forgot to cover the pit with the fire in it. I'd make the pit deep and small in diameter so the rocks I could find in the area would cover it. Seal not too tightly with dirt. You might want a low hole to feed wood and for draft.

The Tripods Benjamin mentioned are _great_ too. I forgot about them, though they're one of the best for fish. Just watch that you don't heat the wood enough that you drive the essential oils out of it into the meat. (Unless you like the taste.)

Peeling the sticks where the meat is resting is a good thing to do too. Also Benjamin mentioned hanging which is probably the best method. Just be sure that the meat is _dry_ before you pack it away. (Thicker meat takes longer.)

Happy smoking.

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------
| Merv Martin       *      *                          |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com    *     *            *   |
Good post, Merv! I like making a tripod with horizontal sticks lashed at different heights and placing near a fire and hanging strips of meat on the horizontals. If I have a lot of meat I make two tripods and lash poles between them. I love doing fresh trout this way. Just cut them open, gut them, leave the head on, break the back and hang them meat side outward toward the fire. I prefer smoking as opposed to sun drying. It's quicker and it keeps insects away from your food.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
Ketchup was invented during World War I to cover up the taste of rotten meat.

Bob Barr
More on the tripods I mentioned. Merv caused me to remember. Fish smoked this way is tasty if cooked enough and eaten then. You do need to dry it more for long time preservation. It then becomes pretty awful to the taste, but is still very nutritious. You can grind dried fish to a powder and preserve it this way and add it to stews. This makes it more palatable.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
This is how I smoke my bacon, hams, fish and beef jerky.

I've got a tent about 6 feet high by 6 feet wide by 8 feet long which is closed on all sides except for a small closeable door at the bottom front and a crack at the top back. I suspend my meat from a rack at the back top of the tent (rack size is 5feet by 3 feet), about 5 feet from the ground. When I'm in the bush I make a tent from a tarp or from natural materials (rotten logs, sod, moss, bark etc) of about the same dimensions (sometimes a bit smaller), but always 6 feet high with meat 5 feet high.

Then I start a small fire at the front of the tent. Above the fire there is no meat: it's further back. I throw a few dry sticks on the fire to get it going, but never more than 1 foot high. Then I throw finely split green wood on the fire and watch the tent from afar. If smoke spills out the top back, everything is fine! If not, I go adjust the fire, which is about every half hour or so. Sawdust instead of wood works better, but is less primitive, so to practice I do it the hard way. Usually I just have to move the half burnt pieces to center, add a couple of small pieces of dry wood, and a few pieces of green wood.

For beef jerky less than 1/2 inch wide, it is ready in about 12 to 14 hours. The meat is dry and smoked and delicious. If it does not crack when it bends, it is not ready and will mold. I ate today the last of beef jerky I had smoked last summer. It was stored on a shelf in the kitchen, simply wrapped in a brown paper bag, nothing else, and was still delicious, so it works.

VERY IMPORTANT! Not all woods will work for this technique! Some woods (especially conifers) give up very nasty fumes that will ruin your meat. Woods I know for sure that work well are the following, in order of
preference:

1. Apple and other woods from the Rosaceae family (hawthorn etc.)
2. Hickory
3. Maple
4. Alder

This process both dries and smokes the meat. It's called heat smoking. This is my favorite way of drying meat, cause around here the sun never seems to shine long enough to dry meat, and also there are so many flies- once a squirrel I had hung up without smoke was full of fly larvae when I came back with firewood in my arms 5 minutes later.

I hate worms in my grub!!

Hope this is useful.

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1
Bill Blohm wrote:
>
> And while I'm at it asking for specifics,
>
> Does anyone have any recipes for smoking game, fish, and especially turkey?

Hi Bill,

There are as many recipes for smoking as there are chefs.

Here's mine. Sorry, I'm a chef and chefs don't measure!

Enough mixture of oil, soya sauce, red wine, and brandy to cover the meat (just about any proportion will work).
Salt and pepper to bring out the flavor of the sauce.
Tabasco, chili pepper, or cayenne pepper for desired strength.
Dry mustard for beef.
Garlic for pork.
Herbs for poultry.
Maple sugar or pineapple juice for hams.
Sometimes some curry powder or a little bit of cinnamon for variety.

Soak the meat in the mixture and put it in the fridge. Leave until ready (usually overnight). You can test for flavor by frying up a small piece and tasting. That's close to what it will taste later. If it's not strong enough, leave it longer.

Now drain on paper towels and smoke it... then send me a piece by snail mail!

Enjoy!

André

--
Surviving at nature's will... o 

Dr André-François Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca / Ä 
/Ä 
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
/000\0/0000 /
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvX_____

From - Fri Jan 17 23:53:36 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id HAA25207; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 07:48:03 -0500 (EST)
At 01:56 PM 1/15/97 -0700, you wrote:

>Does anyone have any recipes for smoking game, fish, and especially turkey?
>My dad asks.
>
>Bill B.
>bblohm@boi.hp.com
>
>Friends of mine gave me this recipe some years ago: cover salmon filets
with rock salt and brown sugar overnight, in the morning wash off the salt
and sugar, let dry in the air for a few hours, then smoke for 2-4 hours. We
use hickory chips when we can as that is an excellent flavour. I use a
little chief electric smoker. This is a hot smoke method. We prefer that to
a cold smoke. Sometimes the salmon is a little too moist after smoking, just
put it in the oven on low heat for 10 minutes or so.

Good luck,
RED
At 01:56 PM 1/15/97 -0700, you wrote:

>Does anyone have any recipes for smoking game, fish, and especially turkey?

I've used juniper (use fresh juniper twigs) for beef when hot smoking, it should work fine for other red meat as well.

/Par

--
Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se

Disclaimer ==> Everything above is a true statement, for sufficiently false values of true.
Another innovation I helped develop is a "tire sandal", designed to be worn with moccasins. It is a modular system, so a person can wear just the moccasins for stalking or around camp, or just the tires for wading, or both for hiking and climbing. Moccasins wear out too quickly, and most weekend primitives do not walk barefoot enough to build up the callouses necessary to walk barefoot all the time. Tires may not be a natural resource in the conventional sense, but they are a resource found abundantly in nature. The tire sandals with moccasins make the best shoes I have ever worn, in or out of town.

Thomas J. Elpel

tomelpel@3rivers.net

There's an article at

- [100-mile footrace](http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/footwea1.htm)

about a group of 3 American Indians who came to America from South America for a 100-mile footrace, placing 1st, 2nd, and 5th. Sneaker companies tried to get them to wear their sneakers for the race, but they threw them out and wore sandals made from tires during the race.
Some excerpts:

"Ken Chlouber was laboring up a dusty dirt road about 25 miles into the Leadville Trail 100 ultramarathon last weekend when he was passed by two other runners.

Chlouber looked over at the pair and then down at their feet, which were bare except for sandals made out of used tires, leather thongs and nails.

... 

The Leadville Trail 100 is considered one of the most grueling in the country because nearly all of the race is run at elevations higher than 10,000 feet and twice goes over 12,600-foot Hope Pass. Only 138 of the 294 runners who started the 11th annual race at 4 a.m. Saturday finished the course.

... 

This year's winner, Victoriano Churro, wanted to be on the team badly enough that he apparently lied about is age, fearing they would think he was too old. He had told them he was 38, the same age as his running mate, Chacarito.

"When he finished the race, he came to the medical tent and I heard the doctor asking him his age," race director Merilee O'Neal said.

"I heard him tell the doctor he was 55." Churro then admitted his lie to Williams and Fisher.

Churro and Chacarito, who ran in tandem nearly all the race, started out wearing running shoes they had been given.

They discarded the shoes at the May Queen aid station 13 1/2 miles into the race, opting for their sandals instead. They declined offers of rain ponchos despite periodic showers. "

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

From - Fri Jan  3 02:48:47 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA07328; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 13:18:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA23796; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 13:17:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 13:20:14 EST
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 13:20:14 EST
JWither240@AOL.COM wrote:
> Can you give us instructions for making these tire sandals through this
> medium?
> I'd like to whip out a pair or two for these New Mexico summers.
>
> I think this message was addressed to Thomas, but I too have designed a
> unique way of making sandals with tires (different from his), but cannot
> describe it on this medium. Perhaps I will publish it somewhere... any
> suggestions where?

André

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

From - Fri Jan  3 00:34:23 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id DAA04293; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 03:15:47 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id DAA21895; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 03:14:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 03:18:53 EST
Received: from emout20.mail.aol.com (emout20.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.46]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id DAA21892 for
; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 03:14:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: by emout20.mail.aol.com (8.6.12/8.6.12) id DAA05409 for
Can you give us instructions for making these tire sandals through this medium? I'd like to whip out a pair or two for these New Mexico summers.

Peace,

JW

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
As requested, here is the article on making tire sandals. Some details of the pattern may be a little difficult to grasp without the pictures, but most of it should be clear. To see the illustrations check out the Summer 1995 issue of BackHome magazine, or contact me directly at tomelpel@3rivers.net for information on my Field Guide to Primitive Living Skills.

I am concerned about the length of this document (2800+ words, 12,000+ characters); if anyone has trouble downloading it, or doesn't want to receive such large pieces of mail, then write to the group and we can discuss an appropriate size for future documents.

Tire Sandals
Soles for Primitive Footwear
By Thomas J. Elpel

I'm hard on shoes. It's not uncommon for me to go through half a dozen pairs of shoes, or more, each year. I maintain an active lifestyle, hiking, playing, camping, and working. Water wears out a shoe quicker than anything else. A few trips in and out of the creeks, puddles, and swamps, and they just come unglued.

If I do not happen to dissolve my shoes in water, then I wear out the soles on gravel. It has always amazed me that tire companies can manufacture a tire and warranty the tread for some 50,000 miles, yet I can wear out the sole on any ordinary shoe in less than a year. How come we cannot buy a shoe with a 50,000 mile warranty?

Really, I have never been quite satisfied with conventional shoes, and it's not just because I wear them out so easily. Mostly it is because I do a lot of camping, and ordinary shoes have a lot of drawbacks for this type of lifestyle. For one thing, I tend to rot my feet out each summer. Shoes are like incubators, holding in the dirt and sweat at warm temperatures, and culturing all kinds of fungus and bacteria. Walking through a little bit of water once or twice a day just compounds the problem, making it nearly impossible to dry out the shoes. My feet even rot when I take care of them, washing and drying my crusty socks each day.

While I am at it, I have other complaints too. You see, I do a lot of primitive camping, building my own shelters, starting fires without matches, gathering wild foods--that sort of thing. To me this type of camping is a way of getting close to nature by participating in nature, instead of merely camping in it. I like to touch nature, and I feel so removed in a pair of ordinary shoes.

I go barefoot as much as I can, but like most people, I have tender feet--because I don't go bare foot all the time. Moccasins are ideal for camping—at least to a point. I can really feel the earth through them, and it has a profound psychological effect on me, making me feel so much more in tune with my surroundings. The trouble with moccasins is they wear out—fast. It takes me about eight hours of physical labor to tan a deer hide, several more hours to stitch a pair of moccasins, and generally one or two days of hiking to wear the first hole in them. The holes always start at the toughest points on your foot, so they are not initially a
problem. You can get several more days of hiking in before you have to stitch in a new sole. Still, that is not a very long time at all. I have heard that some Native Americans carried multiple pairs of moccasins on journeys and spent each evening around the campfire fixing them.

I may practice primitive camping, but I also have to face the modern realities of the clock. My camping trips are typically short and full. I always have a lot of things I want to do while I am out. Fixing my moccasins every day is not one of them.

To solve that problem, I have tried over the years many marriages between buckskin and rubber to make lasting soles on my moccasins. The "paint-on" sole, a mixture of ground up tires and Barge Cement glue, does not work all that well. It helps, but even that wears through quite quickly under harsh conditions, and the rubber coating makes it difficult to dry out the leather of the moccasins. More so, they are not very patchable once a hole gets started.

I have also tried working with the "crepe soles", a thick sheet of rubber cement that you can buy, cut, and glue to the bottoms of shoes. The problem I had with these is that my foot no longer stayed in the right place on my moccasins. My foot was always sliding off the back edge of the sole.

After all these life-long problems with shoes, I was ecstatic to learn of something that actually did work. My friend Jack Fee and I were preparing to go out on a three-week expedition in the mountains. He made a new backpack for the trip, and I made some new moccasins. The best idea I had left to try for protecting the soles was a mixture of pine pitch, charcoal, and dried manure. I figured I could easily dope a little fresh material on the soles each night at camp to keep them from wearing out. I thought I was on to something, and the finished sole even looked good. Unfortunately, I wore completely through the pitch in two short city blocks, on a test run. I was out of a plan before we had even begun our expedition.

Jack then told me a story about Indians from Mexico coming to the United States and winning foot races in shoes cut from tires. I've been interested in using tire soles before, but it seemed like I would have to glue or stitch the tire to the moccasins. I had reason to doubt that it would work. I also once had a pair of tire sandals, made in Mexico, where the leather lacing was nailed to the tire soles. Those came apart within a couple of days.

Jack had never seen the tire sandals that were reportedly used by the Mexican Indians, but decided to see what he could do anyway. I have to say I was quite impressed with the final product, a sort of Teva-style sandal.

I was most impressed with the fact that there was no glue, and no stitching or strapping on the bottom of the sole where they would be exposed to the ground. Instead he cut the sole with some side tabs out of the tire as one contiguous piece. The first model was a little crude in appearance, but was amazingly comfortable. I too had to make a pair for the expedition.

The field tests of our shoes were quite exciting. The tire shoe and moccasin combination meant we had "modular" shoes. We wore both the moccasins and the soles when hiking, and then just one or the other around camp. We could use just the moccasins for stalking, or just the tires for walking in water. We climbed 10,000 foot peaks twice and really just put
on the miles. I did not wear socks, and never washed my moccasins, but my feet were in healthy condition for the duration of the trip—a first for me!

We did find that we would get blisters if we wore just the tires for any significant hiking, but we seemed to have no problems when the tires were worn in combination with moccasins, or with a couple pairs of heavy socks. I was amazed at how comfortable these shoes were, particularly because I once wore conventional hiking boots on a 500 mile walk across Montana, with severe blistering for the first 250 miles of the trip. Our new type of footwear gave me a freedom and comfort I had been searching for for a decade.

Our prototype shoes were crude, but effective. Since then, I have developed the idea some more, into the tire shoes shown in these pictures. The most significant modification was the addition of the tab at the very back of the shoes. That tab is not necessary, except in water. Without it your feet tend to slide forward off the front of the soles when the tires are wet. That back tab holds your foot securely in place. I also added the rubber buckles, and did away with the rope and buckskin ties of our early models.

Also for our prototypes we just traced around a pair of conventional Tevas onto a tire, and started from there. I have since developed a system for creating a pattern to match your own foot. Plan on spending most of an entire day making your first pair. You will get faster as you make more.

Making Your Tire Shoes

First, place either foot in the center of a large piece of paper, at least an 8 1/2 x 14. Trace around your foot, being careful at all times to keep the pencil straight up and down. Next make a mark on each side, directly down from the point on your ankles (A) (see pattern). Also make a mark at the point along the inside of your foot, directly back from your big toe (B).

Remove your foot from the pattern. Now sketch a bigger outline around the tracing of your foot. Add about 3/8 inch for the toes and sides, but not to the back. Then use a ruler and bisect the pattern lengthwise, extending the line three inches past the heel. This serves as a guide to help you sketch the rear tab accurately. Now connect the marks you made by your ankles (A), extending a line three inches beyond each side of the pattern. These tabs will be sketched in front of this line. Also draw a line for the front tabs, extending from the single mark (B) across the pattern, perpendicular to the line that bisects the foot lengthwise.

The positioning of all these tabs is quite variable, and you can choose to move them forward or back, or at angles to one another, and all usually work, although the arrangement I have suggested may work more consistently. Problems usually arise with the front set of tabs. When at angles across the pattern they can twist a little and dig into your foot. If the tabs are moved forward or back then the edges can dig into that point (B) on the inside of your foot. That point is more pronounced on some people's feet than on others.

Now sketch in the five tabs, as shown on the pattern. These tabs are sized width-wise for 3/4 inch wide strapping, and should be made according to the approximate dimensions I've written in on the pattern, regardless of how big or small the foot. If anything you might make some adjustments length-wise, adjusting for particularly large or small feet. Finally, sketch in the holes that you will cut out to thread the strapping
through. This just helps you remember to cut them the right direction when you get to that stage. Cut the pattern out, and it can be used for both shoes, assuming your feet are fairly similar to one another.

As for tires, I would recommend truck tires, rather than car tires. The "corner" of any tire, where the sidewalls and tread come together, is always much thicker than the rest. You can work with that thickness in the tabs of the shoes, but not in the sole itself. Pickup tires are typically wide enough to work with, and you can make about three pair of shoes from one tire.

Most importantly, always use tires that do not have steel cables running through them. All tires have some kind of fibrous reinforcement in them, typically nylon or rayon threads. Most of the newer tires also have a layer of steel cables, which is not workable at all. Still, there are a few billion of the older tires around without steel cables, so you should not have to look too far to find some. Just look on the sidewalls of the tire and it will be printed there how many plies of nylon, rayon, or steel are imbedded in the rubber.

We used simple utility knives to cut out our first shoes. Doing it this way you can trace around the pattern on the outside of the tire and start cutting. However, I must say this is very laborious and not much fun. It is hard work, and you could easily slip and cut yourself with the utility knife. Along the way I have discovered that it is much easier and more enjoyable to cut tires using sharp wood chisels or a bandsaw.

To do the chisel or bandsaw method you must first remove a section of tire. This allows you to run the piece through the bandsaw, or to put it on a wooden block, where you can chisel from the inside out.

A circular saw works fairly well for cutting tires, except that it creates a lot of blue-black smoke, and binds frequently. Cut out a piece that is at least a half inch longer than your pattern, and save as much of the sidewalls as you reasonably can. These are useful later for making the buckles. Do not try cutting through the inner edge of the tire, which has an imbedded steel band to fit the tire snug against the rim.

Now, trace the pattern on the inside of the tire, being certain that the pattern is centered and straight on the tire. Even a slight 1/2 inch angle along the length of a shoe can cause problems when you wear it.

I've done separate tests, cutting out the shoes with chisels and with a bandsaw, and the bandsaw method is only a little faster. A good set of wood chisels works just fine if you do not have the bandsaw.

I would suggest making only one shoe at a time, and completing it. Finish the one and try it on; you might think of some modifications to improve the next one. Few of my pairs of shoes are exactly identical, as I usually find some new idea to try on that second shoe.

The next step, after cutting out the shoe, is to thin the four side tabs. The tabs are generally cut from that "corner" on the tire, where there is a thick lump of tread. These are easiest to thin on a bandsaw. You can, however, do a crude but adequate job by cutting the lump down with some careful chiseling or with a sharp knife. Thin down as close as you can to the nylon/rayon plies, without actually cutting any of them. This step is not easy by any method I have found, and I typically leave 1/8 to 1/4 inch of rubber covering the plies, for a total thickness of up to half an inch. That is still quite thick, but thin enough to work.
Now, to make the tabs flex upward, take a razor blade and slice straight into the tread of the tire at the joint where the tab attaches. Slice in all the way until the plies inside are exposed. Be careful not to cut into those fibers.

Chisel out each of the eyelets, where the strapping will be threaded through. For this I use a 1 inch chisel and a 1/4 inch chisel. Be careful not to cut too close to the edge. If you break out the side of a tab, then you generally have to start all over. Also cut a set of buckles from the sidewalls of the tire. These are easy to do.

For strapping, I use a sort of a nylon harness strapping, available at farm and ranch supply stores. 3/4 inch wide strapping works well with the one inch slots. Cut pieces that are extra long, you can trim them off after you thread them through. Use a match, and melt the end of the nylon strap to secure the threads. To do the back strap, thread through the hole marked point (C) on the pattern and stitch an inch or so of the strap back on itself. Thread around through the other eyelets, through the buckle, through the other hole on the first tab, and once again through the buckle. The front strap should be threaded through the buckle, through both eyelets, and back through the buckle again. This system is a little hard to adjust, but once set, I find I can slip my foot in and out, without having to tighten or loosen them.

The finished shoes should be comfortable to wear, although you may need to do some fine-tuning to get them right. For any serious hiking you should wear a couple heavy pairs of socks, or moccasins, or bring along some moleskin.

Tom and Renee Elpel operate Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School (HOPS) in Pony, Montana. Tom can be reached at tomelpel@3rivers.net.
To follow up with Greg's worry about the fish bombing thread, I would like to address the issue of environmental ethics which has also been aired by a couple of others since that subject has been discussed.

Please note that one of the purposes of this group is to conduct research on wilderness survival techniques, and obviously any of the primitive techniques relative to the taking of animals are highly illegal and often ecologically disastrous. We all know this! At the same time, it is these very techniques that are some of the most important to know in case of natural disasters or real survival situations where you must obtain food to survive. These subjects also have historical significance, and as such merit to be studied.

I say that knowledge of any of these techniques does not at all mean that people are going to use them. After reading some of the torture stories of the Iroquois prisoners, one does not go out and try them on their neighbors. I have no intention of going to blow up fish just because I now know how. However, Alcan aluminium has horrible lakes of toxic wastes which are all red in color a few miles south of Chicoutimi.
where they have been dropping their mess for the last dozens of years. I just might obtain permission and go and try a few bombs there!

Another example: I learnt lockpicking many years ago and could now walk into most peoples homes just as fast as if I had their key. That doesn't mean I'm going to go and steal TV sets over the weekend! But how many times has that knowledge saved me and others who had misplaced keys...

Here in Québec a bunch of 90 poachers were apprehended this last fall. They were taking moose illegally with all kinds of ingenious traps and snares of their own design. These guys obtain their information from various places, but mostly from their own underground sources. Knowledge of their ways will not turn an honest citizen to a poacher. But it may give you food in an emergency.

My point is that bad guys will be bad guys, and will get their info somehow no matter what. No amount of knowledge of bad ways will turn a good guy bad.

The purpose of our group is not to feed info to bad guys. We are all here because of our desire for learning and sharing primitive skills, and some of these skills are definitely out of line for realistic use outside an emergency. That doesn't mean we should not discuss them here.

Last month I caught 7 mice at the cottage with a figure 4 deadfall made from 3 pieces of firewood and a cookbook. Nobody's going to beat me up for doing that, and it helps me learn details of trapping. There are always honest ways to practice primitive skills.

All this to say that I think that poaching ways and fish bombing can be discussed freely in this group. To me these should not be taboo subjects. As long as subjects concerning the taking of animals continue to be treated in the same respectful way it has been thusfar (information regarding techniques), I do not have any problem whatsoever.

At the same time, I agree wholeheartedly with the essence of Greg's concerns. I too would be concerned with statements of joy and pleasure regarding bunny bashing and blowing fish guts to smithereens. I don't think any of us here are stupid enough to crawl that low, and I'm sure that if ever anyone would try that kind of behavior, they would be strongly reprimanded by the rest of the group.

Thank you everyone for reading this and feel free to respond if you wish. Just trying the best I can to provide a possible orientation on this difficult topic.

Sincerely,

André

----------------------------------------------------------

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Neal McSpadden wrote:

> I believe that I started this thread, and I apologize. I read much of
I think that there are many people who have incidental experience with the methods described. My father, a forester, mentioned incidents he had experienced or his friends had experienced in the course of their duties. This would provide me with information albeit 2nd hand, that is reliable and reportable, but, I didn't have to break any laws or abuse the environment to acquire the knowledge. I just can't see any harm in passing along that knowledge and in fact I think that it is good that we understand the results because we can identify such activity when we see the effects of it which, otherwise, we might not recognize.

I do not support poaching or abuse of the environment, but, I also do not support the PETA or Earth First approach.

--

Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country
Neal McSpadden wrote:

>> I believe that I started this thread, and I apologize...

> But...Neal, I rather like the thread. I'm learning some
> anthropology.

> Chris Smith

Neal, ME TOO!!! :):) Don't apologise for this thread, it's a great one. I agree with you and others that these methods shouldn't be used outside of an emergency situation. And then should only be used with groups or extreme conditions. Someone mentioned the responsibility that we all have to the earth and its people (critters too!) there's a word for what we should be doing. It's "Husbandry!"

I don't agree with extremists on either side. All too often I've seen statements that would reflect little or no knowlege of the topic expressed. Sure, lets save all the cougars, until someone in Marin county runs between a mama cougar and her kits and gets mauled. Then we go on a cougar hunt that kills mama and starves the kits.

Ok I'll get off my soapbox now as it's off topic and boring! What you need to know is that I enjoy hearing from people, even those as contrary as you! :):) :)

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ----------------------------------
| Merv Martin                       *             *
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com *             *
| www.midtown.net/~merv             *             *
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |

------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---

From - Fri Jan  3 00:27:16 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA02514; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:40:37 -
There have been no problems with advertising on this list since it has started, but in order to prevent future concerns, here are some guidelines which I may suggest:

1. Unsolicited advertising of any kind by non-members will be severely frowned upon.

2. Unsolicited advertising of a service or product by members which is DIRECTLY RELATED to primitive skills may be acceptable as long as it is sent ONLY ONCE and for informational purposes only.

3. In direct answer to a question, reference to commercial sources of information, services or products is OK.

4. Personal opinion or judgment of members on a particular commercial product or service is much preferred to sending advertisement on same.

Hope this helps orient future postings, and thank you for reading. If you have comments about this, please respond.

AndrÈ
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

>Hope this helps orient future postings, and thank you for reading. If you have comments about this, please respond.

Thanks for posting this. I've had some concerns about the advertisements I've seen. I now understand the groups guidelines, and will be more tollerent of those posts. If these guidelines were prompted by my complaint to the author of the "updated boomerang software" post, please understand that we have come to a mutual understanding and have cleared the air regarding my interpretation of his posting. I'm not used to seeing a list that tolerates advertising however your guidelines, if abided by, are very reasonable and fair. Thanks again.

"Touch the Earth, Love the Earth, Honour the Earth...Rest Your Spirit In Her Solitary Places." -Henry Beston

Jack Paul   email: jack@ckd.berks.pa.us
PGP Key ID: 0xB783577D  The PGP key can be found on these sites:
Chickadee Home Page:  http://www.kd3bj.ampr.org/~jack/ckd.html
Hi everyone, please read this post!

I have been very carefully monitoring the Tom Brown discussions and have learned a great deal about the nature of the controversy surrounding this colorful individual. I thank each and every one of you for holding back your flames as much as you did, and for respecting the group guidelines as much as you possibly could under the circumstances. I also thank all of those who acted on behalf of the group to suggest a re-focus of the discussions towards primitive skills subjects.

You certainly noticed that I did not intervene during the Tom Brown discussions. I want all of you to know that I WILL NOT ACT AS POLICE for this list. I want this group to be as much yours as mine, and I would like it very much if everyone could participate in it's orientation.

However, several of you noted your desire for me to intervene somehow, and in reaction to that wish, and simply in an effort to keep the group focused, I have written the following guidelines which I intend to post every couple of weeks for the benefit of new members. I also intend to
include these guidelines as part of the "Welcome message" new members get when they first join the list.

I WANT YOU TO CRITICIZE these guidelines now, if you wish, before I post them repeatedly. I consider that these guidelines reflect the thoughts of all of us who were around when we first started this list, and also reflect the thoughts of those of you who have recently transmitted your ideas on group orientation.

Please, if at all possible, take the time to read the guidelines carefully and send your comments if all is not to your liking.

Many thanks to everyone for sharing their incredible knowledge. Personally, I am very proud of the quality of this group, and I'm sure you will all agree that it is a very worthwhile venture.

Keep up the good work, and thanks for reading this.

André-François

--

PRIMITIVE SKILLS GROUP GUIDELINES
=================================

ALL NEW MEMBERS ARE ASKED TO READ THE FOLLOWING GUIDELINES CAREFULLY.

To communicate with the group, send an E-mail with your message or question to:

Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

PURPOSE OF THE GROUP
---------------------

The main purpose of this group is to provide a way by which all lovers of primitive skills can discuss various subjects related to wilderness ways.

TOPICS TO BE DISCUSSED
----------------------

Topics which you are ENCOURAGED to discuss with other group members are:

1. All primitive wilderness living skills such as shelter, fire, cordage, primitive tanning, natural foods, primitive living, primitive rafts & boats, primitive direction finding, primitive trapping techniques, weapons for wilderness survival, primitive hygiene, protection from insects, primitive weather prediction, fighting cold, primitive medecine, traditional dog sledding etc.

2. Subjects related to modern realistic wilderness survival, such as surviving when lost in the wilderness, or surviving unexpected emergencies after airplane crashes, broken down snowmobiles etc., are also welcome.

Please note:

Discussions should be restricted to PRIMITIVE SKILLS only.
By SKILLS discussion, we mean sharing "How-to" information which help

group members learn how to accomplish a particular physical task which

is useful in a wilderness setting.

By PRIMITIVE discussion, we mean sharing info on skills which are

possible in the short term using only materials found in nature, or at

least available in the average recreational hiker's backpack.

Topics which you are DISCOURAGED from discussing with other group

members are:

1. Topics dealing with religious, spiritual, or belief-based concerns. For example, we do NOT wish to discuss subjects dealing with dousing, natural apparitions, psychology, philosophy, gurus, prophets, spiritual leaders, or the particular styles or approaches of any particular survival expert.

2. Topics dealing with warfare or survival after man-made disasters. For example, we do NOT wish to discuss subjects dealing with explosives, survival fighting, nuclear war preparedness, and so on.

3. Topics dealing with political or environmental issues. For example, we do NOT wish to discuss subjects dealing with whether it is right or wrong to kill animals, or whether a wilderness area should be protected, and so on.

All members are asked to help "enforce" the above guidelines with

regards to topics of discussion.

ADVERTISING

-------------

1. Unsolicited advertising of any kind by non-members will be severely frowned upon by all group members.

2. Unsolicited advertising of a service or product by members which is DIRECTLY RELATED to primitive skills may be acceptable as long as it is sent ONCE ONLY and for informational purposes only.

3. In direct answer to a question, reference to commercial sources of information, services or products is OK.

4. Personal opinion or judgment of members on a particular commercial product or service is much preferred to sending advertisement on same.

GROUP NETIQUETTE

-------------

This is a high volume list, and current group members have asked that the following etiquette guidelines be followed whenever possible:

1. Please always rename subject headers when replying so that the header always matches the content of the message (helps store archives).

2. Please stick to one subject per message (helps store archives).

3. Please send "I agree with you", "Thank you", and "Bravo" messages
which have no actual content through private E-mail (these are important, but clutter the list too much).

4. When replying, please quote only the passage which permits to follow the discussion, not the entire previous message (facilitates reading replies).

5. Note that there are two Reply-to addresses when you send a reply. One for the group, and one for the sender. Please delete one of the two (so the sender doesn't receive double messages).

6. Please keep signature files as small as possible (4-5 lines).

7. Please read at least the primitive-skills archive headers so you don't ask a question which has already been answered.

8. Please read the list-of-introductions archive so you have an idea of who's who in the group.

9. Please avoid sending "funnies only" messages to the group. We all appreciate a good joke, and even more so when it is part of a message which has content too (prevents list clutter).

COMMANDS
----------

The following commands are available by sending an E-mail message to:

listserv@uqac.uquebec.ca

SUBSCRIBE Primitive-Skills-Group (subscribe to the mailing list)
SIGNOFF Primitive-Skills-Group (remove yourself from the mailing list)
REVIEW Primitive-Skills-Group (get a list of subscribers)
QUERY Primitive-Skills-Group (get the status of your list entry)
SET Primitive-Skills-Group NOMAIL (remain listed but receive no mail)
SET Primitive-Skills-Group MAIL (to reverse the NOMAIL setting)
SET Primitive-Skills-Group NOREPRO (prevent sending you your own posts)
SET Primitive-Skills-Group REPRO (to reverse the NOREPRO setting)
HELP (to receive this help file)

Put the command in the body of the E-mail (nothing else). The subject header will be disregarded.

UNSUBSCRIBING
------------

Please save the following information!

To unsubscribe, you must send an E-mail with the following command in the body of the message (nothing else):

SIGNOFF Primitive-Skills-Group

The header will be ignored. Send the message to this address (NOT to the group):

listserv@uqac.uquebec.ca

--------------------------------------------------------------
I'd just like to throw in my $.02 that it seems odd to worry about "policing" the list. Although there was talk of flames going back and forth, I don't think anyone actively involved with the discussion felt flamed. I've only seen one flame on any list I've been on, and it looked a whole lot different than our "heated discussion." A flame goes more like this: Why, you #$&%Q#&*$(&!!!

I thought the discussion that brought all this up was interesting, and I hated to see it go underground into the land of private e-mails. If a discussion takes on life, it ought to be allowed to live -- to be born, learn and grow, and then die a natural death. No cops, no capital punishment. I think everybody on the list is capable of hitting the "flush" button on anything they're not interested in.

Aloha,
--John

Received: from ki.se (mbox.ki.se [130.237.207.77]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id BAA15396 for ; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 01:46:30 -0500 (EST)
Received: by ki.se id AA10254
 (5.67a/IDA-1.5 for Dr AF Bourbeau ); Thu, 16 Jan 1997 07:51:46 +0100
Date: Thu, 16 Jan 1997 07:51:46 +0200 (METDST)
X-UIDL: 853429967.026
From: Par Leijonhufvud
Subject: Re: GUIDELINES- PLEASE READ!!!
To: Dr AF Bourbeau
In-Reply-To: <32DC91E6.400E@saglac.qc.ca>
Message-Id:
Mime-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

On Wed, 15 Jan 1997, Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> You certainly noticed that I did not intervene during the Tom Brown
> discussions. I want all of you to know that I WILL NOT ACT AS POLICE for
> this list. I want this group to be as much yours as mine, and I would
> like it very much if everyone could participate in it's orientation.

I approve of this philosophy; moderated groups are much to slow for good
exchange of information and opinion. What you might consider is to
privately point out to anyone who severely breaches the guidelines that he
or she might want to reconsider continuing the topic or please refrain
from doing so again. Your word as listowner does carry a bit more weight.

> primitive medecine, traditional dog sledding etc.
     ^^^^^^^^^
lmedicine?

> For example, we do NOT wish to discuss subjects dealing with dousing,
     ^^^^^^^^^
   dowsing?

> 7. Please read at least the primitive-skills archive headers so you
> don't ask a question which has already been answered.
>
> 8. Please read the list-of-introductions archive so you have an idea of
> who's who in the group.

This is when the archive comes up? You should the include some
information on how to access the archive. Is it on WWW or by mail?

> SIGNOFF Primitive-Skills-Group (remove yourself from the mailing list)

In order to (a) get it done, and (b) save the poor lost soul the
embaressment of being instructed in basics in public you might want to
include a sentence somewhere that you will personally send instructions to
those who send "unsubscribe" to the list, and noone else needs to do
anything about them.
Everything above is a true statement, for sufficiently false values of true.

>TOPICS TO BE DISCUSSED

"Topics dealing with special needs involved with survival after man-made disasters excluding subjects dealing with explosives, survival fighting, nuclear war preparedness, and so on."

This is the only topic that I can think of that your guidelines don't allow for. I believe it shouldn't be shut out of this list. There's special rules after a nuclear incident and most likely they would have to be followed in a primitive manner. I'm not interested in how to fight, etc., but am interested in how to find safe water.

I'd imagine there's knowledge on this list that would help me. If you don't
want it in open discussion, I'd be glad to entertain private email, as I said, I _am_ interested in this. If it works for a nuclear incident, it'll work for other "problems" too.

-----snip-----

>Topics which you are DISCOURAGED from discussing with other group
>members are:

-----snip-----

2. Topics dealing with warfare.

This adaption would cut one of the disallowed topics to the above.

Thanks Andre. This set of guidelines is _Great!!!_

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ---------------

Merv Martin * * *
en eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * * * * * *
www.midtown.net/~merv * * * * *
www.rewards.net/omega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages)

--------------Fruit flies like a banana---

From - Sat Jan 18 06:48:52 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA06624; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 17:41:12 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA25846; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 17:38:16 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 17:36:24 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id RAA25843 for ; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 17:38:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.53 (ppp048.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.48]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id RAA07455 for ; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 17:41:35 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E06322.6B78@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Sat, 18 Jan 1997 05:44:02 +0000
X-UIDL: 853627765.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Re: Let's be honest
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id RAA25844
PLEASE DO NOT RESPOND TO MARK ZANONI'S POST!

This subject is no longer acceptable for discussion on this list! If you must respond, please do so by personal E-mail.

Sorry Mark, nothing personal... but our guidelines are quite clear on this:

"No topics should be discussed which deal with with religious, spiritual, or belief-based concerns. For example, we do NOT wish to discuss subjects dealing with dowsing, natural apparitions, psychology, philosophy, gurus, prophets, spiritual leaders, or the particular styles or approaches of any particular survival expert."

Thank you for understanding, and again, nothing personal.

AndrÈ

--

Surviving at nature's will... o

/\00000/\

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca / Ä 
/Ä 
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec /0000\0/0000\
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvvX________\
Last Saturday Ben Pressley of Tribe conducted a day-long seminar on construction of atlatls of the type used by the Native Americans indigenous to North Carolina. The workshop was held about 20 miles from my hometown of Gastonia, North Carolina but I would never have heard about it had it not been for the Primitive Technologies page maintained by Thrower list member Ted Bailey. Ted's Primitive Technologies page, which contains information on other upcoming Tribe workshops, may be found at http://ic.net/~tbailey/Primitive.html

The instructors, wearing homemade buckskin shirts, were Ben Pressley and Robert Didn'tCatchTheLastName. Of the three students making atlatls that day, two of us found out about the seminar via the Internet, myself and Matt, a college student from Virginia who came down for the seminar with his girlfriend Rayna. The other student was Sam, a fellow who had attended several previous primitive technologies seminars with Mr. Pressley.

We spent the morning shaping our atlatls out of pieces of seasoned bow wood. My choice was osage. Using machete, cane knife and bowie knife, we set upon the chunks of wood with various levels of woodworking skill. We were making authentic atlatls of the Basketmaker Period with integral hooks. After lunch, we began on the darts. First fire-straightening lengths of bamboo or more authentic rivercane, then whittling harwood foreshafts with firehardened points. We fletched with turkey feathers, using sinew, dogbane cordage or (my choice) synthetic sinew to attach the feathers to the dart. The cordage was
glued with a mixture of pine pitch and charcoal from our fire with hardened to a glassy finish similar to jet.

Leather finger loops completed the atlatls and we were ready for the most exciting phase, casting them. First, we were encouraged to throw the darts by hand. The results were dismal; we were no threat to the local fauna. Then we tried the atlatls. I'm a poor judge of distance but if my first cast didn't go 100 yards, I'll eat my dart feathers first! Ben and Robert cast their darts nearly twice that far without seeming to expend any effort at all.

I asked Ben about the Sling and Bola workshop scheduled for the 16th. He said that it had been cancelled due to lack of interest but he happened to have a couple of slings with him and offered to give me some pointers. The first thing I noticed about his slings was that he didn't use a finger loop on the anchor line. Instead, the line passed through a hole in the center of a one inch square plaque of slate on which he had carved an Indian design. When I commented on the carving he said that there weren't many ways to decorate a sling. He was obviously a believer in the Church of the Decorated Weapon. The next thing I noticed that all but one of the slings that he and Robert used were the same length; with both cords held in the throwing hand held out to the side of the body, the pouch came to the center of the chest.

I was most surprised, however, by their technique. Ben suggested that I twirl the sling in a horizontal plane over my head, like a lasso. I was skeptical, having tried this before and having no accuracy at all. But he went on to say that when you were ready to fire, you accelerate the sling for one fast turn and when the stone is behind you, change to an overhand throwing motion. Now I was really skeptical -- changing motions in the middle of the throw? But I tried it and nearly fainted at the result. That was the best sling throw I had made in my life. The stone went straight where I aimed it and faster than I had ever made my wildest pitch.

Then out came the big gun. Robert pulled out his mega-sling. Holding the cords in his hand straight out in front of him, the pouch came down to his ankles. He put in a large stone and walked several yards away from our group. He began swinging the sling in slow lazy circles, vertical, horizontal, diagonal, changing from one side of his body to the other while moving around in a manner which reminded me of stylists of Tai Chi Chuan. After this meditative warm-up, he brought the sling overhead, picked a target and let fly with the overhand throwing motion that Ben had taught to me. I didn't believe what happened next, even as I saw it. The sling whooshed through the air, making a noise like a whip. The stone shot out of the pouch too fast to follow with the eye, making a high-pitched buzz which faded quickly into the distance. About a full second
later there was a sound like a pistol shot from deep in the woods across the train tracks as the stone encountered a tree. Every tall tale I've heard about slings I now believe. Goliath never stood a chance against David. Alexander's men could easily have bombarded the enemy from 500 yards away. I wouldn't go against Robert with a rifle if he had that sling in his hand.

I asked Robert and Ben if they knew about the Andean braided slings. Robert opened his pouch and pulled out about a half-dozen slings of various designs and materials, finally coming across his alpaca-hair braided sling. It was as soft as rabbit fur and the split pouch was large enough to accommodate a baseball. Now I *have* to order that book. Anybody know where I can get some alpaca hair?

As well as materials and instruction for making our own atlatls and darts, we were also given a class handout. Forty-four pages long, it contains detailed instructions for making the type of atlatl and dart we made at the workshop, popular and scholarly articles on many varieties of atlatl from around the world, and on the types and purpose of bannerstones. There is also an article on thong-thrown arrows from which I must quote the following:

...Gallwey reports distance of up to 372 yards!
To put this in perspective, a 70lb bow is about the comfortable draw-weight limit for a typical archer. Such a bow can be expected to cast a normal weight hunting arrow about 250 yards...But 370 yards! And by hand?!

Gallwey had to be wrong. And there was a simple way to prove it. [...
The arrow was thrown toward a pile of hay at the end of my driveway. Then two unexpected things happened: 1. a surprisingly heavy tug as the arrow was released... 2. the arrow disappeared.

Then there was silence in the neighborhood. A long uncomfortable silence, followed in time by the distant but unmistakeable sound of a 125-grain steel field point imbedding in wood siding. Gallwey was on to something.

The handout is filled with photographs, diagrams and drawings. You could easily reverse-engineer about a dozen different types of atlatl and darts from the information contained within. It has discussion of materials, construction techniques, tips for correct throwing and trouble-shooting advice. The physics as well as the history of this venerable weapon are discussed. I asked Mr. Pressley if he would mind if I distributed copies of the handout to members of the Thrower list, asking only to be reimbursed for my costs for copying and postage. He readily agreed.

Instead of a group order for atlatls, the plan has changed. Please let me know if you would be interested in having a copy of this handout. The copies will cost me $2.20 per handout.
I'll run by the store and the post office in the afternoon to see how much the envelopes and postage will cost but we're probably looking at under $5 if you are within the States.

--

Ralph Craig  PGP public key available by e-mail or public server
104-9 Horne St.  WILL PROVE THEOREMS FOR FOOD.
Raleigh, NC 27607  Send me a postcard, I'll send you one.
USA

For thrower, send a HELP command to:

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Nov 19 11:06:08 1996
Received: from dfw.net (root@dfw.dfw.net [198.175.15.10]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id PAA09528 for ; Mon, 18 Nov 1996 15:20:21 -0500 (EST)
Received: by dfw.net (4.1/SIM-4.1)
    id AA18813; Mon, 18 Nov 96 11:55:32 CST
Received: from itchy.mindspring.com by dfw.net (4.1/SIM-4.1)
    id AA18684; Mon, 18 Nov 96 11:53:23 CST
Received: from [38.11.182.38] (ip109.las-vegas2.nevada.interramp.com [38.12.224.109]) by itchy.mindspring.com (8.7.5/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA07278 for ; Mon, 18 Nov 1996 12:53:17 -0500 (EST)
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-Id:
Mime-Version: 1.0
Date: Mon, 18 Nov 1996 09:53:17 -0700
To: thrower@dfw.net
X-UIDL: 848376039.009
From: jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine)
Subject: Re: Atlatl Workshop Review and Special Offer!
X-Loop: thrower-Request@dfw.net
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Reply-To: thrower@dfw.net
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> Ralph R. Craig,
> > That's just the most amazing and complete seminar report I've ever read. Atlatl's AND Slings. Way to go. My $5.00 is being held in one hand, while I type one fingered with the other. I'm positive I'm not the only one that would like to see your report on thrower's website. Matter of fact, it would make a darn fine newspaper article. Could you, Ralph (or anyone out there) repost the sling braiding book acquisition info again?
> >
> > Thanks very much.
> >
> Chris

>
SLING BRAIDING OF THE ANDES $12.95 and $4 in postage from Unicorn Books and Crafts, inc.; 1338 Ross St.; Petaluma, Ca. 94954-6502. Don't be surprised if it starts you on a few other fiber arts as well.

Good throwing

JB

---

Touch of the Bear. Already into cord wrapping and braiding (whip interests). I wonder if you've read this article yet ("A Rock For A Rock"): http://www.ucalgary.ca/~elsegal/Shokel/880527_Rock4Rock.html

Thanks James (from an NICU RT). Taken my whips and knives indoor for the season, so I need the project material.

Chris
Bill wrote about Ralph's seminar reportage:

> ...Atlatls and slings. And that overhead switch! I'm very glad indeed
> that you took the time to describe this seminar as well as you did.
> 
> One thing... You mention a split pouch. Could you describe it in more
detail? That is, is it one with two strips of hide making up the pouch,
> a regular pouch that is split at the bottom of the pocket, or what?

Can't resist being a buttinski here...there's nifty alpaca and llama
split pouch sling scans at Ted Bailey's World Class Primitve Technology
website,
specifically at:

    http://www.crl.com/~mjr/tbailey/Sling.html

............... 

Chris
With all the interest in Ben Pressley's atlatl workshop handout, many of you may have an interest in finding out more about Ben Pressley's Tribe organization. The WWW Page for Tribe is:

http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Tribe has a rather nice newsletter at a really good price. The group holds a primitive technology gathering in the Spring or early Summer, each year. If you want to find out more, there is a link to Ben's email address on his WWW Page. - Ted

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970  || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:   http://ic.net/~tbailey/

For thrower, send a HELP command to:
> Hey Chris,
> ... I read the article on the Bullwhip FAQ on braiding a rope whip. I've
> been thinking about trying that as well.
> JB

Thrower Marlo Brown's 4-strand macramed rope whip construction article
was an original work for Thrower list subscribers and resides on
Thrower's whip page:

http://www.crl.com/~mjr/whip.refs.html

A number of Thrower contributions throughout it's website have been
noteworthy enough for other sites to co-opt them, sometimes without
attribution.

"Imitation is the sincerest form of flattery."

Chris
From - Sun Dec 22 02:45:06 1996
Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by chicicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA08642 for; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 13:34:29 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.15] (ip15.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.15]) by mule1.mindspring.com (8.8.2/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA16638; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 18:38:23 GMT
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-Id:
Mime-Version: 1.0
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 10:39:52 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
From: jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine)
Subject: Re: Blowgun poisons
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> Do you or anyone know what poisons were used by primitive people and how
> the heck it was
> manufactured?

Andre;
I've read about various poisons used by aboriginal peoples for various
purposes, such as the strychnos toxifera plant that is the source for
curare, and using certain plants as fish toxins in fairly sluggish pools of
water( ibeleive it was walnut hulls), but as for having actual experience
in using them I have to say no. If I were to use a poison for hunting
larger game I would probably turn to the most readily available vegetable
toxins or nicotine sulfate from aconcentrated tobacco slurry. Nicotine
attacks the nervous system of the animal and would cause death after a
short time from a fairly minor wound. I would have to really work on my
tracking skills though. I would also cut out the meat immediatly around the
dart wound to reduce the amount of toxin ingested

JB

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 23 08:07:40 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA11466; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 21:58:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA11555; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 21:58:36 -0500 (EST)
Received: from relay.ic.net (HELO ic.net) (root@152.160.101.1) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA11552 for
; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 21:58:22
-0500 (EST)
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Do you or anyone know what poisons were used by primitive people and how
the heck it was manufactured?

In Panama, we have many species of small brightly colored frogs called:
"Dedrobates" (sp?). They are also called "Poison Arrow Frogs". They exude
poisons from their skin when they get upset. You can play with them in
your hands if you do not crush them or eat them. The natives put them on a
hot stone to make them mad, then, they rub their darts on the skin to make
real potent darts.

The natives in Panama also boil a vine that grows at the edge of the rivers
and dump the "tea" into a slow stream. For some reason, the "tea" is a
poison that prevents the fish from getting oxygen to their gills and they
float belly up. I found that M-80s and hand grenades were more effective
means to catch fish and were probably more environmentally friendly as well.

Ted Bailey
P. O. Box 6076
Ann Arbor, MI 48106
Ph: (313)–971-2970
Fax: (313)–761-3632
Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/
Just a reminder to those who get this in time. Today (Dec. 29, 1996) on the Discovery Channel are two programs dealing with traditional cultures in the rainforest of South America. There is discussion of blowguns, poisons for the darts, edible and medicinal plants, and other topics some on this list will find interesting.

Good Luck (or is it good blessings),
Jim W.
Just a reminder to those who get this in time. Today (Dec. 29, 1999 at 3:30 eastern, Survival Spirit – 4:00 People of the Great Sandface – 5:00 Endangered Civilizations – 6:00 Shadows of the Forest) on the Discovery Channel are two programs dealing with traditional cultures in the rainforest of South America. There is discussion of blowguns, poisons for the darts, edible and medicinal plants, and other topics some on this list will find interesting.

Good Luck (or is it good blessings),
Jim W.
To continue the discussion from the thrower list, I've used blowguns for some time. My favorite blowgun is a short 4 feet long and .625 interior diameter. After reading Laubin's book and reading a few other sources I tried to recreate the Cherokee darts. I don't quite have the wind to send a two foot dart enough distance to be useful, but a 10 to 12 inch dart works out just fine. I also like paper cones as a bore seal. Mostly, other than target work I have little use for the sharp darts, I do use stun darts to chase cats in heat from beneath my window, and stray dogs from my yard.

Touch of the Bear

JB

The .625 blowgun is sold by J.W. Mcfarlin Co.; P.O.Box 209; Lake Havasu City, Az 96405-0209. It is supplied with nail and fairly thick wire darts with plastic cones and injection molded stun darts that work very well to chase pests and can be very interesting for games of bug tag. They hit hard enough to create an inch wide welt, or stun/kill birds up to the size of a starling. For those not of the techno-primitive bent it would be fairly easy to cobble up darts of dogwood shoots, dowling, or splits from suitable wood (with a froe or other similar tool) Birchbark would indeed make an adequate replacement for paper with pitch for glue. Still if I were to turn to gathered materials, I would probably make them much as the Cherokee, and Creek Indians did with thistle down tied on with sinew or fiber cordage. If you are lucky enough to live in the Southeast there is river cane. Elsewhere you might turn to a straight sapling of another type of about one
inch or so in diameter at its narrowest point. With the cane you bore your
way through or grave and split then scrape out the sections, and then glue
and bind together. With the sapling you will have to split lengthwise
through the center and then scrape out your channel through the center in
whatever diameter you want. I would advise about .50 inch inner diameter or
perhaps slightly bigger.
I have no local sources of cane, and so rely on neo-primitive sources such
as the hardware shop for sources of hard copper, steel, or aluminum tubing.
For a mouthpiece I use either cane tips or stool legg tips and hot glue
them into place. I rely on dowling or bamboo skewers in about 1/8 inch in
diameter and either tied on cotton or acrylic yarn to fletch the dart. The
tips are scraped to a point, and will penetrate card board or other fairly
soft targets.
My sources of information for my blowgun studies are
A SPORTING CHANCE by Daniel P Mannix (1967)
AMERICAN INDIAN ARCHERY by Reginald and Gladys Laubin(1980)
AIRGUN DIGEST both the first and second editions
WOODSMOKE compiled by Richard and Linda Jamison(1994) has an article by
Steve Watts titled "The Ultimate Weapon-The Southeastern Indian Rivercane
Blowgun" They also have an article on the fire piston.
BLOWGUNS THE BREATH OF DEATH by Michael D. Janich(1993 Paladin press) with
a dramatic title but actually has a pretty solid description for the
neo-primitive that wants to make a blowgun.
I've seen Laubin's book at local bookstores as a new release paper back.
Neo-primitive is my own label for people using primitive techniques today
but not necessarily with traditional materials.

JB
A short passage on Amazon blowgun construction from a travel diary-like book by a college professor from Ohio ("Don't Drink The Water," by Ida May Sonntag - 1980). She details her experiences during vacations and sabattical leaves:

"The people along the river are largely of Indian descent. I was able to barter for a Zarabatana (blowgun) with a member of the Maku tribe. This weapon is a simple yet precise hunting instrument. Only small game is hunted and contrary to popular belief is not used for warfare. The shaft is made of pachuiba (palmwood) while the mouthpiece is made of Brazilwood attached with a tree resin. Dart cases are made of woven palm strips and the darts are made of palmwood with wild kapok cotton stabilizers. With practice the Indians can hit small birds at 100 ft."

Note: The site, about 11 mi. from the Amazon, along the Rio Negro river, near Manaus, Brazil. From the books cover jacket photo: Three Indians wearing long red-orange and yellow feathered headdresses. A man and boy shoot at some target with their blowguns, while a second man sits with his blowgun over his shoulder, watching them and the photographer. The blowguns are blackened, of large caliber and appear to be approx. 6-7 feet in length. Each has a cylindrical woven dart case, appearing much like an archers quiver and hung around each's neck by a tripped section of medium weight cordage. The dart cases hang down in front to their waists. The darts are approx. 18-24 inches in length and are about as thick as pencils. The darts extend above the top of their cases about half their length exposed. Each appear to have about 10 or 12 darts. They are gathered in a rain forest village in a forest clearing with a thatched open air long-hut (with hammocks hung inside) behind them, next to a stand of banana trees.

Chris Smith
Ted E. Bailey wrote:

> In Panama, we have many species of small brightly colored flogs called:
> "Dedrobates" (sp?). They are also called "Poison Arrow Frogs". They exude
> toxins from their skin when they get upset. You can play with them in
> your hands if you do not crush them or eat them. The natives put them on a
> hot stone to make them mad, then, they rub their darts on the skin to make
> really potent darts.

Last time I was in Costa Rica doing research, an old Indian from Tortueguero village showed me that same frog, and told me about the poison. Very potent apparently. Glad to know this extra information, thanks Ted.

I know that the common northern toad, Bufo americanus, also has poison glands on it's back, although much less toxic. Does anyone know about this poison and how potent it is? I don't think it's strong enough for blowdarts, but I would like this confirmed.

AndrÈ
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
Harmon Seaver said
> You have to use poison, that's what the indigs use.
>
Not true. The South American Indians used a combination of poisons with the main ingredient being curare. The natives of Southeast Asia, like the Dayaks used Antarias toxicara or Strychnos tieute. The Cherokee and the other peoples of North America that used blowguns used no poison on their darts relying instead on penetration and shock, or at least there is no recorded information of poison use on blowgun darts. Poisons have been used on arrows for warfare as recorded by Laubin and mainly consist of snake venom in putrid meat. Since their recorded use was for small game, there was no need for poisons on blowgun darts in N.Am. Also there are few plants that such venoms can be extracted. I suppose nicotine poisons could have been extracted from tobacco and milkweed, but I've not seen any recorded proof. The few Cherokee sources I've heard from say no such venoms were used or necessary.

Touch of the Bear

JB
For thrower, send a HELP command to:

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 23 08:08:48 1996
Received: from majordomo.iastate.edu (majordomo.iastate.edu [129.186.1.10]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA11806 for ; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:05:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from majordom@localhost) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) id VAA00660 for knapper-outgoing; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 21:51:05 -0600
Received: from pop-2.iastate.edu (pop-2.iastate.edu [129.186.6.62]) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA00655 for ; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 21:51:01 -0600
Received: from butthead.globecomm.net (butthead.globecomm.net [207.51.48.13]) by pop-2.iastate.edu (8.7.3/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA18577 for ; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 21:50:55 -0600 (CST)
X-Authentication-Warning: majordomo.iastate.edu: Processed from queue
/var/spool/majordomo/knapper
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 22:50:55 -0500 (EST)
Message-Id: <199612230350.WAA15842@butthead.globecomm.net>
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.4
Mime-Version: 1.0
To: knapper@iastate.edu
X-UIDL: 851389458.034
From: eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com (merv martin)
Subject: Re: Hunting w/ a blowgun
Sender: owner-knapper@iastate.edu
Precedence: bulk
Reply-To: knapper@iastate.edu
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>> Go to your friendly neighborhood hardware store and
>> buy a 5 foot length of aluminum electrical conduit with an inner
>> diameter of 3/4 inch (I use 1/2 inch and it works just fine.)

-----snip some great stuff!-----

That was one of my favourite diversions while on mid watches. You know,
with a 1/2" piece of conduit 8 feet long, I can curl a seven inch piece of
10 guage copper wire into a tight spiral by blowing it into a piece of sheet
steel!

The darts were made as above except for copper wire insteed of steel. I
did use a piece of tool steel once, just too damn dangerous for play. It
penetrated 1/8" particle board backed by 1/16" copper, and travelled on into
a 2x4 behind that. (The penetration depth was 3/8" with an 8' tube and 20'
of flight beyond the tube.)

>> There's not much to technique, point and blow. One variation is
to push the dart a few inches into the tube, block the tube with your tongue and build up pressure by blowing with the tube blocked.

For the blow, it's almost a cough. Dump every bit of air on your lungs before the dart leaves the tube.

I would practice indoors by putting an empty coke can in one room of my apartment and shooting at it from another room, as far as I could get away from it in my small apartment.

Heh, use a warm full coke can...outside...much more satisfying. Fun to roll down the road and shoot on the roll too! I'd still use copper wire darts though as the steel just ricochets too good.

Happy Huffing
Merv

---Time flies like an arrow
|-----------------------------------------|
Merv Martin
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com |
| www.midtown.net/~merv |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |
-----------------------------------------

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 23 08:08:14 1996
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA11716 for; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 22:49:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.104]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA76; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 22:46:42 -0500
Message-ID: <32BE0FFB.6FF9@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 22:52:11 -0600
X-UIDL: 851389458.026
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
CC: thrower@dfw.net, Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Hunting w/ a blowgun
References: <961220155312_68620631@emout15.mail.aol.com>
<9612201840.ZM14593@eos.ncsu.edu> <32BA60C3.1EBF@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr. A. F. Bourbeau wrote:
>
> Ralph Ray Craig wrote:
> >
> > On Dec 20, 3:53pm, SamWilJoe@aol.com wrote:
> > > Subject: Hunting w/ a blowgun
> > > Greetings!
> > >
I know this has nothing to do with knives, but, I was wondering how would you hunt (or would you) with a blowgun? It seems to me that the darts are too small to kill anything unless you put a butload of them into the animal.

Depends on what you're hunting, doesn't it? I used mine to kill rats before the local McDonald's went out of business. One shot did the trick. Amazon Indians poisoned their darts and one dart usually delivers enough of the toxin to make a monkey let go of his branch and make a rapid descent. I doubt anyone is going to hunt deer with a blowgun though.

OK, since blowguns have been ruled acceptable as a topic, here is my blowgun recipe. Go to your friendly neighborhood hardware store and buy a 5 foot length of aluminum electrical conduit with an inner diameter of 3/4 inch (I use 1/2 inch and it works just fine.) File the ends smooth so you don't cut your mouth. A mouthpiece isn't necessary but feel free to improvise. For darts, I use music wire (thin steel rods) from the hobby shop, although finishing nails will work too. Cut 4 inch lengths and sharpen. For fletching, wrap a piece of paper into a 45 degree cone and tape. Stick the dart through the apex of the cone and tape in place so that the cone is at the back of the dart. Drop the dart point first into the tube and mark with a pencil where the tube meets the paper cone. Remove the dart and cut off the excess paper so that the dart just barely fills the tube. The paper fletching will tear apart after a few shots. Try using a disc or cone made of nylon or some other sturdy yet flexible material.

There's not much to technique, point and blow. One variation is to push the dart a few inches into the tube, block the tube with your tongue and build up pressure by blowing with the tube blocked. Use your chest muscles to pressurize the air in your lungs then quickly pull back your tongue, releasing the trapped air at once. I haven't had much luck with that technique. It causes a jump which spoils my aim although it does seem to increase power if you can manage to pull back your tongue quickly enough.

With little practice, you will be amazed at how accurate this primitive weapon is. I would practice indoors by putting an empty coke can in one room of my apartment and shooting at it from another room, as far as I could get away from it in my small apartment. I rarely missed and my shots usually penetrated both walls of the can, being stopped only by the paper cone being dragged into the entrance wound.

Feel free to edit this and stick it on a webpage.

On a camping trip, I once made a blowgun from an old ski pole I found in an abandoned hunting camp, with a wooden mouthpiece fixed in place with melted spruce gum and lard. Darts were made from the wooden skewers I was carrying for shish-kabobs, the ends being wrapped with cotton swabbing from the first aid kit which I dipped in flour/water glue from the bannock bag. Worked great!
I have also made one shot darts with cotton balls by only licking the dart shaft and then wrapping the cotton around the dart shaft. Many types of wood slivers will work as darts. And if you have cordage, even lightweight cotton string, then there are many fletching materials you can use. I have used many plant fluffs, small bird feathers (fluffs or tiny feathers that have to be spiral tied in layering each row from the bottom up where they lay over each other tied at the top and loose and overlapping toward the bottom of the dart. My favorites are thistle down and turkey leg feathers.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Dr. A. F. Bourbeau wrote:

> Ralph Ray Craig wrote:
> 
> > On Dec 20, 3:53pm, SamWilJoe@aol.com wrote:
> > > Subject: Hunting w/ a blowgun
> > > Greetings!
> > >
> > > > I know this has nothing to do with knives, but, I was wondering how would you
> > > > hunt (or would you) with a blowgun? It seems to me that the darts are too
> > > > small to kill anything unless you put a butload of them into the animal.
> > >
> > > > Depends on what you're hunting, doesn't it? I used mine to kill rats
> > > before the local McDonald's went out of business. One shot did the
> > > trick. Amazon indians poisoned their darts and one dart usually
> > > delivers enough of the toxin to make a monkey let go of his branch
> > > and make a rapid descent. I doubt anyone is going to hunt deer with
> > > a blowgun though.
> > 
> > OK, since blowguns have been ruled acceptable as a topic, here is my
> > blowgun recipe. Go to your friendly neighborhood hardware store and
> > buy a 5 foot length of aluminum electrical conduit with an inner
> > diameter of 3/4 inch (I use 1/2 inch and it works just fine.) File
> > the ends smooth so you don't cut your mouth. A mouthpiece isn't
> > necessary but feel free to improvise. For darts, I use music wire
> > (thin steel rods) from the hobby shop, although finishing nails
> > will work too. Cut 4 inch lengths and sharpen. For fletching,
wrap a piece of paper into a 45 degree cone and tape. Stick the dart through the apex of the cone and tape in place so that the cone is at the back of the dart. Drop the dart point first into the tube and mark with a pencil where the tube meets the paper cone. Remove the dart and cut off the excess paper so that the dart just barely fills the tube. The paper fletching will tear apart after a few shots. Try using a disc or cone made of nylon or some other sturdy yet flexible material.

There's not much to technique, point and blow. One variation is to push the dart a few inches into the tube, block the tube with your tongue and build up pressure by blowing with the tube blocked. Use your chest muscles to pressurize the air in your lungs then quickly pull back your tongue, releasing the trapped air at once. I haven't had much luck with that technique. It causes a jump which spoils my aim although it does seem to increase power if you can manage to pull back your tongue quickly enough.

With little practice, you will be amazed at how accurate this primitive weapon is. I would practice indoors by putting an empty coke can in one room of my apartment and shooting at it from another room, as far as I could get away from it in my small apartment. I rarely missed and my shots usually penetrated both walls of the can, being stopped only by the paper cone being dragged into the entrance wound.

Feel free to edit this and stick it on a webpage.

Thanks Ralph, for such a great post. Perhaps others could continue on the same subject?

On a camping trip, I once made a blowgun from an old ski pole I found in an abandoned hunting camp, with a wooden mouthpiece fixed in place with melted spruce gum and lard. Darts were made from the wooden skewers I was carrying for shish-kabobs, the ends being wrapped with cotton swabbing from the first aid kit which I dipped in flour/water glue from the bannock bag. Worked great!

AndrÈ-FranÃois Bourbeau

Ralph Craig | PGP public key available by e-mail or public server
104-9 Horne St.
Raleigh, NC 27607 | WILL PROVE THEOREMS FOR FOOD.
USA | Send me a postcard, I'll send you one.

For thrower, send a HELP command to:

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÃois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
I have also made one shot darts with cotton balls by only licking the dart shaft and then wrapping the cotton around the dart shaft. Many types of wood slivers will work as darts. And if you have cordage, even lightweight cotton string, then there are many fletching materials you can use. I have used many plant fluffs, small bird feathers (fluffs or tiny feathers that have to be spiral tied in layering each row from the bottom up where they lay over each other tied at the top and loose and overlapping toward the bottom of the dart. My favorites are thistle down and turkey leg feathers.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202

For thrower, send a HELP command to:
>SamWilJoe@aol.com wrote:
>> Greetings!
>>
>> I know this has nothing to do with knives, but, I was wondering how
>> would you
>> hunt (or would you) with a blowgun? It seems to me that the darts are too
>> small to kill anything unless you put a butload of them into the animal.
>>
>I bought what I thought was an old South American blowgun two years ago.
The blowgun was only 5 foot long and the central hole was quite large
compared to other blowguns in my collection. It came with a beautiful
primitive woven bag that was full of clay pellets about the size of a
large pea. I guess the South American Indians must have shot and stunned
small birds with the clay pellets to obtain feathers for their arrows,
headress, etc.

Ted Bailey          | email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      | Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 | Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970   | Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:   | http://ic.net/~tbailey/

For thrower, send a HELP command to:
I bought what I thought was an old South American blowgun two years ago.
The blowgun was only 5 foot long and the central hole was quite large
compared to other blowguns in my collection. It came with a beautiful
primitive woven bag that was full of clay pellets about the size of a
pea. I guess the South American Indians must have shot and stunned
small birds with the clay pellets to obtain feathers for their arrows,
headress,
etc.

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970   || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:   http://ic.net/~tbailey/

For thrower, send a HELP command to:

That's true, I've done it with a plastic stun dart that is essentially a
ball ended dart. It will knock a bird the size of a stqarling or Black bird
out a tree, and stun it enough to allow you to pick it up. "four and
twenty blackbirds singing in the pie"

JB
Welp, the Latin American natives use curare (sp?) as a poison on their darts. I think that like boomerangs, blowguns have much too much fable attached to their effective uses. No, I'm not a user or expert with blowguns...but I do watch DISCOVERY and other such science TV shows.

Details fail me, but not too long ago, I watched S.American natives hunt tree monkeys, using bamboo material BGs. Length: perhaps 6 to 8 ft. Dia. might have been 3/4" ID. Darts were dipped in poison, that attacked the monkey's breathing muscles.

Native tracked animal as it swung thru trees, high above, and when the game stopped, hunter, pegged the bloke. I recall that the breath-power came from using the diaphragm to help propell the dart.

On this same show (or one very similar) natives would use a very long, thin blowgun, 12 or more feet long, and they would "snake" the BG thru the branches, getting right up to the bird they wish to kill, and then they pop the dart into the bird.

Finally, cure' (this spelled correctly?) was not used against humans as salt was the antidote, so very easy to twart the effects...I read somewhere.

Looking forward to this new list. Thanks, Andre'.

rich harrison, b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"*Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Welp, the Latin American natives use curare (sp?) as a poison on their darts. I think that like boomerangs, blowguns have much too much fable attached to their effective uses. No, I'm not a user or expert with blowguns...but I do watch DISCOVERY and other such science TV shows.

Details fail me, but not too long ago, I watched S.American natives hunt tree monkeys, using bamboo material BGs. Length: perhaps 6 to 8 ft. Dia. might have been 3/4" ID. Darts were dipped in poison, that attacked the money's breathing muscles.

Native tracked animal as it swung thru trees, high above , and when the game stopped, hunter, pegged the bloke. I recall that the breath-power came from using the diaphragm to help propell the dart.

On this same show (or one very similar) natives would use a very long, thin blowgun, 12 or more feet long, and they would "snake" the BG thru the branches, getting right up to the bird they wish to kill, and then they pop the dart into the bird.

Finally, cure' (this spelled correctly?) was not used against humans as salt was the antidote, so very easy to twart the effects...I read somewhere.

Looking forward to this new list. Thanks, Andre'.

rich harrison, b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!

"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"

Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!

"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.
I saw the same program. My understanding of why toxins are not used against men is because it's not done, bad juju, dishonorable. Pick one of the above. I use medications derived from curare fairly frequently and they are often given to people via Sterile saline (salt) I.V. drip. We wouldn't do that if it slat deactivated it. Curare attacks the stuff that carries neural transmissions across synapses. Neural transmission is interrupted and the animal can't breathe. Works on men the same way it does animals, and get this, you are fully awake, and feel everything as you smother to death on your own weight. That's why we put people on ventilators and sedate them so they aren't terrified about their paralysis.

JB

---

From - Fri Dec 20 04:08:28 1996
Received: from rand.nidlink.com (root@rand.nidlink.com [205.219.220.1]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA26389 for ; Fri, 20 Dec 1996 15:15:21 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.111 (pm6-14.nidlink.com [205.219.220.111]) by rand.nidlink.com (8.8.4/8.6.9) with SMTP id MAA01543; Fri, 20 Dec 1996 12:22:49 -0800 (PST)
Message-ID: <32BAE72D.4324@rand.nidlink.com>
Date: Fri, 20 Dec 1996 12:21:16 -0700
X-UIDL: 851115848.041
From: Chris Smith
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
Subject: Blowguns
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id PAA26389
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 00001

André,

How's the blowgun working out? Careful about all those pins in the ceiling raining down on you, eh? . I've just read this not-to-well written travel diary as-a-book, by Ida May Sontag written in 1980 and called "Don't Drink The Water." I read it because the book jacket has 3 Amazonian Indians in loincloths and long ceremonial headdresses, puffing through very large blowguns (the look at least 6 ft. long), with hammocks inside an open air thatched roof long house near bannana trees in the background. Not much on blowguns in the book actually (it's about her world travels during her teaching sabbaticals and holidays), but here's what she's written:

"The people along the River (my note: near Manaus, Brazil on the Rio Negro, 11 mi. from the Amazon) are largely of Indian descent. I was able to barter for a Zarabatana (blowgun) with a member of the Maku tribe. This weapon is a simple yet precise hunting instrument. Only small game is hunted and contrary to popular belief it is not used for warfare. The shaft is made of Pachuiaba (palmwood) while the mouthpiece..."
is made of Brazilwood attached with a tree resin. Dart cases are made of woven palm strips and the darts are made of palmwood with wild kapok cotton stabilizers. With practice the Indians can hit small birds at 100 ft."

I'm sure I can hit one of my dogs with a plastic stun dart (no needles) and my 2 ft. store bought "bacpacker's" blowgun, inside my living room (my wife would have a fit if I used the .40 cal paintballs).

Take it easy André,

Best wishes,

Chris (in Coeur d'Alene, Idaho)
blowgun recipe. Go to your friendly neighborhood hardware store and buy a 5 foot length of aluminum electrical conduit with an inner diameter of 3/4 inch (I use 1/2 inch and it works just fine.) File the ends smooth so you don't cut your mouth. A mouthpiece isn't necessary but feel free to improvise. For darts, I use music wire (thin steel rods) from the hobby shop, although finishing nails will work too. Cut 4 inch lengths and sharpen. For fletching, wrap a piece of paper into a 45 degree cone and tape. Stick the dart through the apex of the cone and tape in place so that the cone is at the back of the dart. Drop the dart point first into the tube and mark with a pencil where the tube meets the paper cone. Remove the dart and cut off the excess paper so that the dart just barely fills the tube. The paper fletching will tear apart after a few shots. Try using a disc or cone made of nylon or some other sturdy yet flexible material.

There's not much to technique, point and blow. One variation is to push the dart a few inches into the tube, block the tube with your tongue and build up pressure by blowing with the tube blocked. Use your chest muscles to pressurize the air in your lungs then quickly pull back your tongue, releasing the trapped air at once. I haven't had much luck with that technique. It causes a jump which spoils my aim although it does seem to increase power if you can manage to pull back your tongue quickly enough.

With little practice, you will be amazed at how accurate this primitive weapon is. I would practice indoors by putting an empty coke can in one room of my apartment and shooting at it from another room, as far as I could get away from it in my small apartment. I rarely missed and my shots usually penetrated both walls of the can, being stopped only by the paper cone being dragged into the entrance wound.

Feel free to edit this and stick it on a webpage.

--
Ralph Craig | PGP public key available by e-mail or public server
104-9 Horne St. | WILL PROVE THEOREMS FOR FOOD.
Raleigh, NC 27607 | Send me a postcard, I'll send you one.
USA

For thrower, send a HELP command to:

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Dec 20 09:48:49 1996
Received: from dfw.dfw.net (root@dfw.dfw.net [198.175.15.10]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id UAA28165 for ; Fri, 20 Dec 1996 20:29:31 -0500 (EST)
Received: by dfw.dfw.net (4.1/SMI-4.1) id AA15334; Fri, 20 Dec 96 18:45:24 CST
Received: from mule1.mindspring.com by dfw.dfw.net (4.1/SMI-4.1) id AA15301; Fri, 20 Dec 96 18:44:57 CST
Received: from [38.11.182.162] (ip162.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.162]) by mule1.mindspring.com (8.8.2/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA35620 for ; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 00:44:42 GMT
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
I've had some experience with this. A properly made wooden dart is just as effective as any other projectile for hunting small game and some medium game, such as opposum, racoon, fox, (though I would probably only go after medium game under true survival conditions) A wooden dart made like the Southeast Indians did is what I'm talking about with the darts about 1 foot to 21 inches long and about 1/8 up to 3/16 inch in diameter. A complete description can be found in AMERICAN INDIAN ARCHERY by Reginald and Gladys Laubin. I believe that Benjamin Pressley also has some material on these sort of darts. The steel wire darts are great for practice, and familiarization and will also kill game, but they make a narrow wound channel and sure take their time killing. One guy I read about got around this by making his steel darts about 10 inches long and would pin his game to the trunk of a tree. The ball stopper kept the game from getting away until he could get in close to finish it off. I'm a bit more squemish than that and prefer wooden darts for a quicker finish. Poison is another avenue, but really not necessary for small game use. Read also A SPORTING CHANCE by Mannix. He took a ground hog with one Cherokee blowgun and wooden darts, and a bobcat with a Dayak blowgun with unpoisoned darts.

Touch of the Bear

JB

>Greetings!
>
>I know this has nothing to do with knives, but, I was wondering how would you
>hunt (or would you) with a blowgun? It seems to me that the darts are too
>small to kill anything unless you put a butload of them into the animal.
>
>Will
>SamWilJoe@aol.com
>
>
>Is a comment really necessary?
>
>_______________________________________________________________

>For thrower, send a HELP command to:

_____________________________________________________________________
For thrower, send a HELP command to:

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Greetings!

I know this has nothing to do with knives, but, I was wondering how would you hunt (or would you) with a blowgun? It seems to me that the darts are too small to kill anything unless you put a butload of them into the animal.

Will

SamWilJoe@aol.com

Welp, the Latin American natives use curare (sp?) as a poison on their darts. And there was a tale going on during Viet Nam about some of the folks in the area tying a piece of yarn to their darts. It seems that they were bagging monkeys with a poison that wasn't quite instant acting. They needed to slow the monkey down or it would run off into the brush. The dart would be shot at the monkey's abdomen and at the pain the monkey would look down, see something poking out of its tummy and try to poke it back in. Seemed to occupy the monkey while the poison did it's job.

I'm not at all sure of how true the story is, but it was kinda fun.

pokin in my yarn

Merv

--- Time flies like an arrow -------------------------------------
| Merv Martin * * * |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * * * |
| www.midtown.net/~merv * * * |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |

Fruit flies like a banana---
SamWilJoe@aol.com wrote:

> Greetings!
> > I know this has nothing to do with knives, but, I was wondering how would you
> > hunt (or would you) with a blowgun? It seems to me that the darts are too
> > small to kill anything unless you put a butload of them into the animal.
> > > Will
> > SamWilJoe@aol.com
> > > Is a comment really necessary?
> > >
> > > For thrower, send a HELP command to:

The blowgun, at least the primitive one I have made and used from cane
like the Cherokee used, is used mainly for hunting small game. I have
hunted squirrels and birds mainly. Darts 6 inches long fletched with
thistle down or feathers are more than adequate for going through a
small animal's body. There are accounts of the Cherokee hunting deer,
though by going for the deer's eyes, blinding him, chasing him down and
finishing him off. North American primitive peoples have used blowguns
for thousands of years for hunting small game successfully without
poison tips. Now, in South America they use poison tips for hunting
monkeys, but that is because the monkey has a more complex nervous
system and requires the addition of poison to the tip.

I can send you some info on making and using blowguns, if you like,
just let me know your snail mail address and help me out with whatever
copy and mailing costs I have. I also will be teaching a class on making
them next year in the Charlotte, NC area, if you're interested. Get on our mailing list to keep posted of when our classes are, if you like. For more info check out our homepage at TRIBE
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

---Benjamin (benjamin@perigee.net)

For thrower, send a HELP command to:

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sat Dec 21 00:46:42 1996
Received: from dfw.dfw.net (root@dfw.dfw.net [198.175.15.10]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id LAA01732 for; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 11:55:16 -0500 (EST)
Received: by dfw.dfw.net (4.1/SMI-4.1) id AA07950; Sat, 21 Dec 96 09:21:32 CST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET by dfw.dfw.net (4.1/SMI-4.1) id AA07928; Sat, 21 Dec 96 09:21:18 CST
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.128]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA64 for; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 10:14:29 -0500
Message-Id: <32BC0E3D.28BD@perigee.net>
Date: Sat, 21 Dec 1996 10:20:13 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
Mime-Version: 1.0
To: thrower@dfw.net
Subject: Re: Hunting w/ a blowgun
References: <199612202151.OAA24379@smtp1.asu.edu>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-Loop: thrower-Request@dfw.net
Reply-To: thrower@dfw.net
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Joyotpaul Chaudhuri wrote:
>
> At 03:53 PM 12/20/96 -0500, you wrote:
> >Greetings!
> >
> >I know this has nothing to do with knives, but, I was wondering how would you
> >hunt (or would you) with a blowgun? It seems to me that the darts are too
> >small to kill anything unless you put a butload of them into the animal.
> >
> >Will
> >SamWilJoe@aol.com
> >
> >Is a comment really necessary?
> >
> >
> >For thrower, send a HELP command to:
> >
> >My wifes tribe(Creek/Seminoles) used blow guns until Indian removal around
I bought what I thought was an old South American blowgun two years ago. The blowgun was only 5 foot long and the central hole was quite large compared to other blowguns in my collection. It came with a beautiful...
primitive woven bag that was full of clay pellets about the size of a large pea. I guess the South American Indians must have shot and stunned small birds with the clay pellets to obtain feathers for their arrows, headress, etc.

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 | Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970   || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:   http://ic.net/~tbailey/

From - Sun Dec 15 01:10:15 1996
Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA08092 for ; Sat, 14 Dec 1996 11:42:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.65] (ip65.las-vegas.nv.interramp.com [38.11.182.65]) by mule1.mindspring.com (8.8.2/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA66886 for ; Sat, 14 Dec 1996 16:46:43 GMT
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-Id:
Mime-Version: 1.0
Date: Sat, 14 Dec 1996 08:47:50 -0700
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
X-UIDL: 850586841.016
From: jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine)
Subject: Spitball blowgun
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

I've no experience with that kind of blowgun, and no natural cane that lives in my area (Las Vegas high desert). Yet I've used several different types of blowguns, the smallest was .38 inches in inner diameter. The modern commercial blowguns run in two main i.d. .40 and .625. For hunting if I were to do so, I would use the .625 and Cherokee style wood splint darts for small game up to the size of woodchuck. Mainly I build these similar to the description in Laubin's book on Native american archery. You can do the same thing with the .40, but there seems to be more air resistance. The main advantage to the .40 is that common push pins can be used for indoor practice with a dart board. I've used white man's cane (hard copper or conduit piping) to build from scratch blowguns of roughly .50 and find them to work rather well. I imagine it could also be done with a straight sappling of about 1 1/2 to 2 inches in diameter carefully split in half lengthwise with bone wedges and with a stone or bone scraper a groove could be made to each half, then both halves glued with pine pitch and lashed with bark strips and cord. Of course a source of bamboo or southeast river cane such as Benjamin has access to will make the whole process easier and much less laborious. I've never purposely gone after live game with the intent of killing with sharp darts, but I do find the stun darts in .625 to be very accurate for chasing cats in heat from under my window, and once hit and stunned a bird with one of these darts from 25 - 30 yards away after foolishly accepting a dare from my younger son. With a quiver of appropriate darts I would not hesitate to hunt for small game. The darts that come with modern blowguns will kill small game but are thin in
diameter, and are fairly short. They also have the nasty tendency to stick in wood so hard that only pliers can pull them out. A longer, slightly thicker wooden dart will hit with more shock, and with their longer length will keep game from returning to their burrows, and will not stick in trees to the same point that wire or nail darts will. Well, I could write more but I am probably telling you stuff that you already know, just just relating my own experiences with blowguns.

Touch of the Bear

JB

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Dec 17 02:17:59 1996
Received: from palrel1.hp.com (palrel1.hp.com [15.253.72.10]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA21850 for ; Mon, 16 Dec 1996 13:52:58 -0500 (EST)
Received: from hpbs1686.boi.hp.com (hpbs1686.boi.hp.com [15.2.220.107]) by palrel1.hp.com with ESMTP (8.7.5/8.7.3) id KAA01660 for ; Mon, 16 Dec 1996 10:56:38 -0800 (PST)
Received: by hpbs1686.boi.hp.com (1.37.109.16/15.5+IOS 3.22) id AA117452221; Mon, 16 Dec 1996 11:50:21 -0700
Date: Mon, 16 Dec 1996 11:50:21 -0700
X-UIDL: 850763729.001
From: Bill Blohm
Message-Id: <199612161850.AA117452221@hpbs1686.boi.hp.com>
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
Subject: Re: Spitball blowgun
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> Bill Blohm, how about some more info on straw, pin and paper blowgun. I=20
> take it you make a spitball with the paper, punch the pin through it and=20
> let it fly. Sounds like great indoor activity for someone who can't=20
> move!

> Tell me more, any secrets to making them fly better or straighter? =20
> Anyone ever try this pin thrower with natural materials? Might be good=20
> for small birds or frogs in an emergency?? Don't mind me, I'm a bit=20
> crazy when it comes to survival techniques...

Hmmmmm. Interesting idea, that. Not at all what I was thinking of. Rather my method is a little bit more...cleaner. ;-) I've been to the old building where we used to shoot the darts with this type of blowgun, and the darts are still in the ceiling! That was some 20 years ago! Man, they don't clean ceilings, do they???

And yeah, I was thinking about your situation when I suggested it. Just don't shoot the nurses or they'll sic the old battle-axes on you instead of the cute young ones. :-)

Anyway, what I was thinking of was more along the lines of: cut a triangle of paper, roll that around and tape it with a thin piece of tape, just enough to hold it. From the open base of the cone thus created, insert a pin into the cone's apex and on out. The head of the pin will keep it from going all
the way through. Oh, and obviously, you have to be sure you make the cone just a very, very little bigger than the straw inside diameter. Thus:

```
  \_____________________
   /                     \
  /                     / \ 
 /                     /  \_
```

Of course, the cone is more shallow than that, but you get the idea. The cone will actually have sides at a 45 degree angle or so. We've also made the cones out of tape rather than paper with just as good effects. Your idea of the spitball and sticking the pin thru it would be easier, but might be a bit more messy. You'd have to make like a horn player after a bit and drain the straw. ;-) 

You can make a blowgun the same way, using bamboo skewers or slivers of wook and feathers or paper or whatever.

Bill B.
On Fri, 20 Dec 1996, Dr. A. F. Bourbeau wrote:

> matthew j. rapaport wrote:
> >
> > > I was supprised to see some of the bola comments recently. I don't
> > > understand what people mean by holding the leather... I've made and
> > > thrown bolas of traditional configuration (though not of traditional
> > > materials). They always looked like this...
> > >
> > > X------------------------X
> > >   |
> > >   |
> > >   |
> > >   Y
> >>
> > Two "larger" stones are tied together with a length of something. A
> > SMALLER stone is tied at the mid-point of the cord X-X by a shorter cord.
> > The Bola is thrown by grasping the smaller stone (Y), and spinning the
> > two larger stones (X) around the head. When the larger stones are
> > directly behind, you throw the smaller stone at the target...
> >
> > Matthew, I don't quite understand! Are not the 3 ropes the same length?
> >
> > You're drawing shows the X to the left with a short string and the on
> > the right with a long string.
>
>No, left and right they are the same length, but the cord connecting Y at
the midpoint of the X-X cord is SHORT, perhaps 1/4 the X-X length. It is
also a smaller stone!

This is not gospel. Many variations might be perfectly legitimate. I
don't remember where I got my specification, an encyclopedia perhaps.

Congratulations on the new mailing list. I look forward to its topics.
The insect-as-food question is of interest to me as well...

BLOWGUNS! We reviewed them 6 weeks or so back. They are NOT throwing weapons, so I ask that we not spend too much time on them. They are fun though. Another fletching suggested back then was to glue a small ball of cotton to the dart, and then wrap the cotton (squeezing it to the right dimension for the pipe) with thread.

matthew rapaport Philosopher/Programmer at large KD6KVH
mjr@crl.com In God we trust. All others we monitor! quine@dfw.net

From - Tue Dec 17 07:40:33 1996
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA24393 for ; Mon, 16 Dec 1996 19:21:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.91]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA139 for ; Mon, 16 Dec 1996 19:20:24 -0500
Message-ID: <32B5F663.C37@perigee.net>
Date: Mon, 16 Dec 1996 19:24:51 -0600
X-UIDL: 850783036.016
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
Subject: Re: Proper bola throwing
References: <32B36028.23E9@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr. A. F. Bourbeau wrote:
>
> Of course, now I want to learn to throw a bola the traditional way,
> where can I get some information?
>
> AndrÈ
> --
> ___________________________________________________
> > Surviving at nature's will...
> >
> Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
> Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
> University of QuÈbec
> 555 University Boulevard
> Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
> CANADA G7H 2B1
> 418-545-5011 Ext 5259
>
> At Nature's Will Inc.
I have been taught by Steve Watts (Aboriginal Studies at Schiele Museum, Gastonia, NC) that the way to throw a bola with three weights is to place your index and middle finger respectively one each between each string as it hangs down. Keep it from tangling and launch from the hip with an overhand throw. You will know it is thrown properly when all 3 weights spread out in flight, rather like a hand flying and reaching out as it flies toward its target. Anything it hits it will wrap around and bring down. These were thrown into a flock of ducks by Native Americans, and probably other primitive people, when a duck fell to the ground it was then clubbed to death.

The length seems to be important from my experience throwing them. I find that 4 inches or so past your elbow, measure from the end of your arm upward, works pretty well. The cowboys of South America (gauchos) use a 2 weighted bola that is about as long from end to end as they are tall to throw at the lega of runaway cattle, but they are throwing it from horseback.

I can snag a stationery target pretty well and someone's legs, running, but I definitely have got to get out and take game with one yet. I sold one I made to a guy in the San Fernando Valley in California and he snagged a jack rabbit on his first hunting trip! The same guy also hit a rat walking on a wire across a neighbor's pool with one of my slings!—Benjamin (benjamin@perigee.net)
Dr. A. F. Bourbeau wrote:

> Benjamin Pressley wrote:
>
> I have been taught by Steve Watts (Aboriginal Studies at Schiele Museum, Gastonia, NC) that the way to throw a bola with three weights is to place your index and middle finger respectively one each between each string as it hangs down. Keep it from tangling and launch from the hip with an overhand throw.
>
> Do you mean that you hold the bola from the center?
>
> You will know it is thrown properly when all 3 weights spread out in flight, rather like a hand flying and reaching out as it flies toward its target. Anything it hits it will wrap around and bring down. These were thrown into a flock of ducks by Native Americans, and probably other primitive people, when a duck fell to the ground it was then clubbed to death.
>
> The length seems to be important from my experience throwing them. I find that 4 inches or so past your elbow, measure from the end of your arm upward, works pretty well. The cowboys of South America (gauchos) use a 2 weighted bola that is about as long from end to end as they are tall to throw at the lega of runaway cattle, but they are throwing it from horseback.
>
> When I look at Ted Bailey's first picture on his bola page, the gaucho on horseback seems to be holding a three stone bola by one of the three stones. What do you make of that picture?
>
> I can snag a stationery target pretty well and someone's legs, running, but I definitely have got to get out and take game with one yet. I sold one I made to a guy in the San Fernando Valley in California and he snagged a jack rabbit on his first hunting trip! The same guy also hit a rat walking on a wire across a neighbor's pool with one of my slings!---Benjamin (benjamin@perigee.net)

> Thanks Benjamin for a good answer again.

> AndrÈ-FranÅois

> --

> Surviving at nature's will...

> Dr AndrÈ-FranÅois Bourbeau
> Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
> University of QuÈbec
Yes, I throw it from the center. I have better success with this method. I have even made a handle to grasp in the center sometimes from braided leather. That works well, too. As far as the gauchos, yes I have seen their method of throwing. The first time I saw it was at a display at the Smithsonian Institution. That display depicted a 2 weighted bala and the thrower was grasping one of the weights to throw it. Now, I have had luck throwing a 2 weight bala in this manner, but not a 3 weight bala. I don't dare say, it can't be done. I just haven't had success throwing a 3 weight bala in this manner. They also throw a very long bala, from what I've observed. I assume they are able to do this because they are throwing from horseback. All I can say is give it a shot. If you'd like to try out one of my 3 weighted bolas maybe we can trade out something.

---Benjamin (benjamin@perigee.net)
I've lost the original posting, but someone mentioned a short two foot bow. If backed with sinew, hickory, or rawhide this bow should be able to shoot a 12 inch arrow (or at least allow a 12 in. draw,) but might be even better as a survival tool than a slingshot for taking small to medium game. Any thoughts on this out there. I think that I would prefer a 3 to 4 foot bow myself and at least a 20 to 24 inch draw.

JB
>I've lost the original posting, but someone mentioned a short two foot bow.  
>If backed with sinew, hickory, or rawhide this bow should be able to shoot 
>a 12 inch arrow (or at least allow a 12 in. draw,) but might be even better 
>as a survival tool than a slingshot for taking small to medium game. Any 
>thoughts on this out there. I think that I would prefer a 3 to 4 foot bow 
>myself and at least a 20 to 24 inch draw.

I made this bow out of cedar and its draw was about 11 inches. This 
morning, however, I awoke to a cold blistered morning and I found that as 
air temperature decreases, so too does the draw on a bow. --sulk --

Might start a larger one tomorrow though.

Jeff

--

"But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts is. A good part of her territory is already bare and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her villages generally are not so well shaded as ours."

- Thoreau

email:      jstevens@ccs.neu.edu 
home page:  http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens

--
>>Jeff, although I never saw the original posting to which you are referring, I can take a few guesses at the benefits of a short two foot bow. It seems to me that the shorter bow would be easier to manipulate (i.e. carry, conceal, etc...) in a stalking/hunting situation. The bow and the arrows are held easily against the body allowing for unrestricted movement through and around obstacles. It also seems that a 12" arrow is much easier to make and eventually replace in a survival situation. My experience is limited to the longer bows but this now has my interest. I suppose, for the true 'off-trail' hunter, a 12" draw is all you would need!<<

I am sure there are many more experienced archers out there with more information on short bow applications, but here is my experience. I made a 24" bow of fire-hardened oak. The main advantage of such a bow is that it can be made in an area with not a lot of straight wood of the
right length. You can almost always find two feet of straight wood. The main use for this type of bow is in set hunting. Set hunting is hunting from a camouflaged position along the side of a trail or run. Because of its size, the snap bow is not incredibly accurate. Set hunting fortunately is typically very close range and requires a hard fast shot. My oak bow draws about 35 lbs, draws about 14", and has a problem hitting much beyond 10 feet. I can hit a milk carton pretty regularly at 8', nbut forget 15'. It is a limited application bow, but a nice one to have in your repertoire. By the way, set hunting of this nature is an art form that requires enormous skill and patience. You must de-scent, stalk into an area, camo yourself without disturbing the landscape, and then sit motionless for hours. When a deer finally ables by, you have to very slowly move into firing position. Have I done it? Only in my dreams. Deer are very wary. It is a tough way to hunt. I believe it would be possible to use it for stalk hunting, but you would have to be very good to get within 10' to where you could actually hit anything. It does not get hung up in the brush however. They are fun to make and shoot however.

Kevin Reeve

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 30 08:03:20 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA03401; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 19:28:14 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA03921; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 19:27:02 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 19:31:38 EST
Received: from ultral.dreamscape.com (ultral.dreamscape.com [206.64.128.7]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA03918 for ; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 19:26:47
-0500 (EST)
Received: from default (sc21.dreamscape.com [206.114.183.214]) by ultral.dreamscape.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id TAA12646; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 19:31:51 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199612310031.TAA12646@ultral.dreamscape.com>
X-UIDL: 851992474.000
From: "Jon Harshbarger"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jharsh@DREAMSCAPE.COM
To: ,
Subject: Re: Short bows
Date: Mon, 30 Dec 1996 19:27:23 -0500
X-MSMail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1085
Jeff, although I never saw the original posting to which you are referring, I can take a few guesses at the benefits of a short two foot bow. It seems to me that the shorter bow would be easier to manipulate (i.e. carry, conceal, etc...) in a stalking/hunting situation. The bow and the arrows are held easily against the body allowing for unrestricted movement through and around obstacles. It also seems that a 12" arrow is much easier to make and eventually replace in a survival situation. My experience is limited to the longer bows but this now has my interest. I suppose, for the true 'off-trail' hunter, a 12" draw is all you would need!

Jon Harsh

e-mail: jharsh@dreamscape.com

----------
> From: Jeff Stevens
> To: Primitive Skills List
> Subject: Re: Short bows
> Date: Monday, December 30, 1996 2:23 PM
>
> >I've lost the original posting, but someone mentioned a short two foot bow.
> >If backed with sinew, hickory, or rawhide this bow should be able to shoot
> >a 12 inch arrow( or at least allow a 12 in. draw,) but might be even better
> >as a survival tool than a slingshot for taking small to medium game. Any
> >thoughts on this out there. I think that I would prefer a 3 to 4 foot bow
> >myself and ar least a 20 to 24 inch draw.
> >I made this bow out of cedar and its draw was about 11 inches. This
> morning, however, I awoke to a cold blistered morning and I found that as
> air temperature decreases, so too does the draw on a bow. --sulk --
> Might start a larger one tomorrow though.
>
> Jeff
>
> --

"But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts is. A good part of her territory is already bare and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her villages generally are not so well shaded as ours."
Just thought I might start some discussion on bows. As a college student I am very excited that it is Christmas break and am spending as much time as I can working on skills. Amongst other things I have been working on bows. Yesterday I made a small eighteen incher that broke while I was tillering. Today I made another eighteen incher that broke while I was shooting my cousin (serves me right). I also made a bow about two feet long. Works real well. I have been shooting pillows with the blunt arrow I made out of a sliver of maple and it is good to about thirty feet.

I was wondering, does anyone have any experience with making a bow from store bought wood? The small bow I was shooting my cousin with was made of a cedar fence post. Seemed to work well. It looked like the outside was all one growth ring but it was hard to tell. Anybody ever just gone to the saw mill and bought a four foot length of cedar to make a bow?
Thank you and I really enjoy this list. Anybody know the request address for the thrower list?

Jeff

"But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts is. A good part of her territory is already bare and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her villages generally are not so well shaded as ours."

-Thoreau

e-mail: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu
home page: http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Dec 27 22:45:21 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA17826; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:04:41 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA10382; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:03:28 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:08:03 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA10378 for ; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:03:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.166]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA108; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:00:47 -0500
X-UIDL: 851787496.020
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32C49CB8.4AE7@perigee.net>
Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:06:16 -0600
X-UIDL: 851787496.020
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jstevens@CCS.NEU.EDU
Subject: Re: Bows
References: <199612280128.UAA08810@amber.ccs.neu.edu>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id WAA17826
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
Jeff Stevens wrote:

Just thought I might start some discussion on bows. As a college student
I am very excited that it is Christmas break and am spending as much time
as I can working on skills. Amongst other things I have been working on
bows. Yesterday I made a small eighteen incher that broke while I was
tillering. Today I made another eighteen incher that broke while I was
shooting my cousin (serves me right). I also made a bow about two feet
long. Works real well. I have been shooting pillows with the blunt
arrow I made out of a sliver of maple and it is good to about thirty
feet.

I was wondering, does anyone have any experience with making a bow from
store bought wood? The small bow I was shooting my cousin with was made
of a cedar fence post. Seemed to work well. It looked like the outside
was all one growth ring but it was hard to tell. Anybody ever just gone
to the saw mill and bought a four foot length of cedar to make a bow?

Thank you and I really enjoy this list. Anybody know the request address
for the thrower list?

Jeff

"But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts
is. A good part of her territory is already bare
and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her
villages generally are not so well shaded as ours."

—Thoreau

e-mail: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu

home page: http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens

It is best to harvest your own bow woods or purchase from a bowyer. I
recommend the editor at Primitive Archer and Wilderness Way magazine. He
has a bowyer supply business called Bittercreek Bow Works. You can write
for his catalog at: Bittercreek Bow Works, P.O. Box 203, Lufkin, TX
75902-0203, Phone: (409) 632-8746. Also here are a few other suppliers:
Barnett Crossbows, Barnett International, Inc., P.O. Box 934, Odessa FL
33556, Phone: (813) 920-2241

One of the world's leading crossbow manufacturers. Recurve bows and
accessories. Catalog available.
Bear Archery, Inc., 4600 S.W. 41st Blvd., Gainesville, FL 32608-4999

Founded by Fred Bear. Catalog jam packed with archery equipment and
information on bow hunting.
Charlie Thornton, 3124 England Dr., Fayetteville, NC 28306, Phone:
(910) 425-4652

Bowyer, carver, flintknapper
Cliff Rhodes, 7514 Kisco Dr., Fayetteville, NC 28303

Unfinished bow staves, Hickory $59.00. For more information on various
staves, etc. available send business sized SASE.
Little River Stickbows, Rt. 2, Box 276-B, Hwy. 87N, Spring Lake, NC
28390, Phone: (919) 893-9852 or 497-6424
Various primitive and wooden bow supplies for the bowyer and archer.
Steve Chattin, Rt. 2, Box 186, Goodview, VA 24095
Primitive wooden bows, staves and arrows.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE
Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for
June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over,
camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival
and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more
information.
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html
Also Check Out Ted Baileyís Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills
Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
There is an excellent article on making a wooden bow at Primitive Archer magazine's site:
http://www.pioneerpc.com/primitivearcher/articles/bow-bld.html

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

Also Check Out Ted Bailey’s Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html
Jeff Stevens wrote:
>
> Just thought I might start some discussion on bows. As a college student
> I am very excited that it is Christmas break and am spending as much time
> as I can working on skills. Amongst other things I have been working on
> bows. Yesterday I made a small eighteen incher that broke while I was
> tillering. Today I made another eighteen incher that broke while I was
> shooting my cousin (serves me right). I also made a bow about two feet
> long. Works real well. I have been shooting pillows with the blunt
> arrow I made out of a sliver of maple and it is good to about thirty
> feet.
>
> I was wondering, does anyone have any experience with making a bow from
> store bought wood? The small bow I was shooting my cousin with was made
> of a cedar fence post. Seemed to work well. It looked like the outside
> was all one growth ring but it was hard to tell. Anybody ever just gone
> to the saw mill and bought a four foot length of cedar to make a bow?
>
> Thank you and I really enjoy this list. Anybody know the request address
> for the thrower list?

Hi Jeff,

Thanks for starting a discussion on bows. Again, I would suggest that
you break down this immense topic into several smaller, more specific
parts, such as wood choice, tillering, etc.

As far as your lumber question is concerned, I think you would have poor
luck because you want to make a bow with the part of the wood next to the bark. This part is always removed to square off the wood before sawing and going to the lumberyard.

A small sawmill, however, might be able to cut you some wood including the outer part.

To join the thrower list (I love this list too), look here:

http://ic.net/~tbailey/Primitive.html

This is Ted Bailey's primitive technology page which includes how to join the thrower group (and has other great links and other lists too).

Have a nice day.
AndrÈ
--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÅois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA  G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA  G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Fri Dec 27 22:45:32 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA17909; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:25:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA10492; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:24:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:29:14 EST
Received: from relay.ic.net (relayla.ic.net [152.160.72.5]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA10489 for
 with SMTP; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:24:30
-0500 (EST)
Received: (qmail 2937 invoked from network); 28 Dec 1996 03:28:56 -0000
Received: from falcon.ic.net (HELO ic.net) (root@152.160.101.1) by relay.ic.net
 with SMTP; 28 Dec 1996 03:28:56 -0000
Received: from [152.160.99.70] by ic.net with smtp (Smail3.1.28.1 #6) id
> Jeff Stevens wrote:

>> I was wondering, does anyone have any experience with making a bow from
>> store bought wood? The small bow I was shooting my cousin with was made
>> of a cedar fence post. Seemed to work well. It looked like the outside
>> was all one growth ring but it was hard to tell. Anybody ever just gone
>> to the saw mill and bought a four foot length of cedar to make a bow?

It has been 5+ years since I have made contact with Old Master Crafters. They supply all kinds of hardwood strips for laminating bows. I used to buy the wood to make boomerangs. I don't know if the address is still any good, but you can try:

The Old Master Crafters, Inc.
130 Le Baron St
Waukegan, IL 60085
ph: 312-623-2660

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970   || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:  http://ic.net/~tbailey/

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 30 05:49:32 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA20099; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 12:38:53 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA12290; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 12:37:40 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 12:42:18 EST
Received: from rand.nidlink.com (rand.nidlink.com [205.219.220.1]) by
I like Three River Archery supply ("World's largest Primitive/Traditional Archery Supply"):

http://www.3riversarchery.com/index.htm

They have all kinds of bowmaking materials and tools - also assorted goodies like sinew, flintnapping supplies...2,500 items.

Chris Smith
Folks might also try Native Way. Sorry I do not have the web address right now, but you can get it by e-mailing at nativeway@bkbank.com. These guys have a good supply of primitive bow and arrow making and flintknapping supplies, as well as finished products.

Another good supplier of primitive archery and flint knapping supplies is Native Way. Their Web address is:

http://home.sprynet.com/sprynet/natvway

Best Wishes,
Folks might also try Native Way. Sorry I do not have the web address right now, but you can get it by e-mailing at nativeway@bkbank.com. These guys have a good supply of primitive bow and arrow making and flintknapping supplies, as well as finished products.

The NativeWay URL is located on the following web page of Primitive Technology Links:

http://ic.net/~tbailey/Primitive.html
Hi All!

I just ran across the Three Rivers Archery web page at:

http://www.3riversarchery.com/index.htm

Its a pretty cool page and they have some really neat knapping stuff. I'm getting a few friends to go in on a big order and was just wondering if anybody on the list had done business with them. Also, does anyone happen to know about laws about importing animal parts (antler & sinew). I'm in Canada, eh?

Tim
There are 2 types of bamboo or cane native to North America (right?), Arundinaria gigantea (Giant Cane) and a smaller one the name for which escapes me. The ethnobotany search showed giant cane as the cane used for arrows but I have been told by at least 2 sources that it is the other. I am having trouble locating the correct name in my notes and wonder if anyone could help me out.

My intent is to cultivate/propagate both for use in various projects. Since both are native to the area I would not be risking environmental collapse, however, no one knows where any is growing. It seems that in the rush to develop farmland and all that has come since, the canebrakes have disappeared. Can anyone help me with a source for propagation?

Many thanks in advance.

--
Sincerely,
Barent
BKP wrote:

> There are 2 types of bamboo or cane native to North America
> (right?), Arundinaria gigantea (Giant Cane) and a smaller one the name
> for which escapes me. The ethnobotany search showed giant cane as the
> cane used for arrows but I have been told by at least 2 sources that it
> is the other. I am having trouble locating the correct name in my notes
> and wonder if anyone could help me out.
>
> I'm not sure about this, Barent, but maybe you're talking about
> Phragmites spp.

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÃois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÃbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÃbec), Canada G7H 2B1
My "Last Whole Earth Catalog" - circa 1970 - says the last word on bamboo is called (oddly):

   Bamboo
   Robert Austin, Dana Levy and Koichiro Ueda
   John Weatherill Inc.

Maybe ask an internet booksearcher if it's out of print. I generally ask Lawrence Peryer at TheSpaceBetween. There are others (Amazon maybe). Happy hunting.

Chris

http://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/huntibo1.htm (20 of 30)  [10/22/2003 6:58:57 PM]
BKP wrote:

> There are 2 types of bamboo or cane native to North America
> (right?), Arundinaria gigantea (Giant Cane) and a smaller one the name
> for which escapes me. The ethnobotany search showed giant cane as the
> cane used for arrows but I have been told by at least 2 sources that it is the
> other. I am having trouble locating the correct name in my notes and wonder if
> anyone could help me out.
> > My intent is to cultivate/propagate both for use in various projects.
> > Since both are native to the area I would not be risking environmental
> > collapse, however, no one knows where any is growing. It seems that in
> > the rush to develop farmland and all that has come since, the canebrakes
> > have disappeared. Can anyone help me with a source for propagation?
> >
> > Many thanks in advance.
> > --
> > Sincerely,
> > Barent

Here is a copy of an article that appeared in one of our former TRIBE newsletters (TRIBE NO. 17, Mar.-Jun. 1995) that I think will answer your question as well as some additional info on the uses of cane:

Sam Lawson (TACACHALE Programs, Ranger, GA) sent this very informative article to us. It is on the many uses of River Cane. It is written by Dr. Hampton Rowland a native Georgian who retired from several years of teaching in the Anthropology department at Florida State University in Tallahassee, Florida. He held a M.S. degree from that university with a specialization in primitive technology. Sam also informs us that: "The courses he taught there on this vital subject were among the best of this rare academic course taught anywhere in America. He combined the knowledge and skill of a lifetime in his spirited and fascinating lectures on the subject. Dr. Rowland spent his last years in Athens, Georgia and inspired many of us now in the field of primitive skills."

Cane Talk
By Dr. Hampton Rowland Jr.
--1989--

Whenever I talk about Southeastern Indians I try to get people to think about other material than just stone tools and pottery. These two materials certainly make up the major portion of what we recover archaeologically, but form only a small part of the items used by Southeastern Indians. This is one reason I have spent much time studying the use of cane in the Southeast and will try to pass on some of this information.

The first thing to understand about cane in the Southeast was its
abundance. Almost every early traveler had some remark about cane. Benjamin Hawkins made a survey of most of the Indian villages in Georgia and west Alabama in 1799 and he remarked on cane being readily available in over half of the locations he described. Most of the living sites were all along streams or rivers where cane grows abundantly. Perhaps you may wonder why we no longer see the huge canebreaks that we described by the early writers. The tender shoots of new cane have been described as excellent cattle fodder and the cane can be destroyed by over grazing and by hogs rooting-out the roots. Cattle and hogs came in with the Europeans and were not native to the Southeast. D'Iberville and others others state that the cane breaks could be easily cleared and provided rich and, even when green, can be cleared far easier than a stand of timber. Thus most large cane breaks disappeared due to animals eating it and to an increased need of rich agricultural land.

We need to consider some of the characteristics of cane to understand why John Swanton considered it one of the most important of all raw materials used by the Southeastern Indians. There were two native canes. The largest is Arundinaria gigantea - giant cane- which can grow to over 25 feet tall and with a common diameter of up to two inches, although D'Iberville describes some cane along the Mississippi River as large as six inches in diameter. The other native cane species, Arundinaria tecta- switch cane or river cane- grows only up to 10 feet high and no larger than 3/4 of an inch in diameter. In a given grow of either, there will be tremendous size variation depending on spacing, available light, and soil fertility.

On the scale of individual pieces, the differences in cane include variations in diameter, distance between the joints, straightness, and the degree of taper. In addition, the internal structure of cane provides opportunities for variation in usage. It is these that permitted cane to be used in so many different ways by the Southeastern Indians. The larger sections can be very stiff and strong. Cane has flexibility with this strength, even to the extreme tip of a fish pole, for example. Individual joints of cane provide various size containers or, with the joints removed, tubing in various lengths and diameters.

One characteristic of cane that is often unrecognized is the availability of uniform or nearly identical pieces. We are used to having uniform manufactured materials, such as two by four inch lumber, for construction purposes. Finding trees of consistently the same size was a problem for the Indians. But in a cane patch, with a little selection, they could find two, a dozen, or perhaps fifty almost identical pieces.

A final characteristic of cane is the ease and accuracy with which it can be shaped with stone tools. For example, cane can be split readily into strips of various widths to prepare materials for baskets or mats. Another common basket material, white oak, requires cutting trees into logs and then splitting the logs into strips—a very difficult process using only stone tools.

A final characteristic is the effect heat and dryness on cane. Green cane can be straighten or bent by applying heat and bending pressure. It will retain the new shape, straight or bent as desired, when cooled. Strips can be soaked for flexibility during weaving and then will become rigid again when dry. Green cane does not readily burn and can be used to make a grill over a fire for smoking of meat. Although not yet documented historically for the Southeastern Indians, the cooking of food by stuffing it into sections of green cane and placing the sections
over a fire is common practice with in the Far East and may have been practiced here. Finally, dry cane burns well as a fuel and gives off good light.

Some important specific uses of cane in the Southeast include:

Weapons: Cane was probably the most common material for arrows in the areas where it was available. Garcilaso de la Vega gives some dramatic examples of penetration and wounds from cane arrows. Cane was also used for spear shafts.

Food Collecting: Cane was used for fishing poles, of course, but was also used as set-poles where the fish would struggle against the spring of the pole. Cane was used for spring style snares and traps of all descriptions, using the ability to split-out the cane for funnel-shaped entrances. While not described in detail in historic documents, it would have been the best available material for fish weirs and other fish traps. There is an interesting historical reference to using circles of cane around rawhide to prevent animals from gnawing through snares.

Baskets: Baskets were a very important use for cane. They play a major role in food collecting and storage. The construction of mounds required the use of baskets and it is quite likely that these were made of cane. The Southeast Indians excelled in basket making during the historic period and their crafts are still collected today. Early Virginia settlers refer to households needing sets of Indian baskets so tightly woven they could hold water. I know of no references to cooking in baskets with hot rocks among Southeast Indians, although this practice was used by California Indians. We might assume, however, that baskets were used long before pottery was invented and were used for cooking.

Construction: Palisades of cane were constructed in Mississippi around villages for protection. Fences were also constructed of cane during the historic period to confine. Cane was woven horizontally between vertical supports for wattle and daub house construction. There are also references to cane mats for the support of the clay on the walls of houses. The De Soto accounts of 1539-1542 refer to houses and temples covered with cane mats. A very interesting description of cane used for roofing in the same fashion as ceramic tile is recorded by D'Iberville in the early 1700s.

Household: Cane mats were used in many different ways by Southeast Indians. Several early authors refer to the placing of mats on the ground for covering the floors of some houses. Beds were constructed of parallel canes tied together placed on supports and covered with cane mats. Cane mats were used to wrap the dead and one reference mentioned a cane tent or roof placed over the body. Cane was used in cooking for stirring, cutting, and dipping. Ritual drinks were blown into using cane. I have observed the Black Drink being prepared by a medicine man blowing into the drink which caused it to froth up before serving. A hollow length of cane would be especially valuable with an open fire. It would be used to blow upon the embers to get the fire started up and create a hot fire for cooking. In Asia, a blow pipe was an essential tool of the country women cooking over charcoal fires. Joints of cane provide some of the best small containers for spices. In many areas of the world.
bamboo is the principle container for carrying water.

Fire: Cane has been used as torches since prehistoric times. In the Salt River Cave of Kentucky the remains of cane torches were found that were carbon dated 2000 - + B.P. One of my students conducted an experiment and found that he could make cane torches that would last for at least 45 minutes and provide light that he could read a newspaper at 10 feet. D'Iberville describes a torch made of a bundle of cane 15 feet tall with a diameter of two feet which provided light for festivity. The Creeks commonly used a star of logs but for certain ceremonies would construct a spiral of cane that would burn for some time and place a time limit on the conference.

Miscellaneous: Cane was used in many other ways by Southeast Indians. Blow guns were made of cane in historic times, but may be of African or South American origin. Canes were used as shuttles for net making and for loom weaving, which also may be a post-contact use. Stems for clay pipes were mentioned as the first references to the use of tobacco. Punctuation on pottery by cane is a common design element. Cane was used to bore holes for stone pipes with water and sand. Cane was, and is, used for making musical instruments.

Jeff Gottlieb (Massapequa, NY) also sent us some interesting information on Rivercane and its Asian cousin Bamboo. This information is derived from Smithsonian magazine, October, 1994.:

Before European colonists arrived in North America, Arundinaria grew in vast canebreaks. Early American botanist William Bartram described the thickets as appearing to have "no bounds but the skies." Indeed, they stretched over what are now 19 states in the South, Midwest and East, and as far north as Ohio.

Explorers on horseback or on foot cursed the stuff, which they found nearly impossible to get through. Pioneers, however, taking note of the luxuriant growth, reasoned that a good stand of cane meant good soil for crops. They cleared the land for plantations and homesteads by cutting and burning it. When they were through, the big cane was nearly gone for good.

As far as is known, Arundinaria supports no interior ecosystem like Guadua, but before their razing, the "brakes" provided cover and sustenance for bear, deer, turkeys, small game, perhaps even bison. Bamboo seed, with a nutrient quality exceeding that of both rice and wheat, was a food much sought after by man and beast alike. In 1850 a diarist wrote of bamboo and animals near New Harmony, Indiana: "Fox Island was full of game from my earliest recollections up to the year 1850 when the cane ... went to seed and then all died. The seed grew in clusters and resembled oats, and all the animals and fowls got rolling fat from eating this seed."

The extirpation of North America canebreaks— and the seed and the shelter they provided— may have hastened the extinction of at least two North American bird species: the Carolina parakeet and the passenger pigeon. The pigeon relied heavily on the brakes for food and shelter. In 1813 painter John James Audubon witnessed a flight of pigeons that numbered more than one billion, so many that the sun "was obscured as by an eclipse." The passenger pigeon became extinct in 1914, the Carolina parakeet, followed fours years later. Ornithologist Daniel McKinley, considered the leading expert on the parakeet, says the
beautiful bird's erratic range (Florida to New York, and west to Colorado) was linked to Arundinaria. "Like all parrots they lived a long time [20 years] and probably didn't breed every year. In nomadic fashion they may have followed the bamboo for a place to raise a family."

A third bird that depended on the big cane for nesting is Bachman's warbler, hovering so close to the edge of extinction that the last undisputed sighting of it was in Virginia in the 1960s. Louisiana State University ornithologist James Van Remsen, Jr. theorizes that the bird's recurved bill may have become specialized for gleaning bamboo. At any rate, the warbler lived in close association with North American Arundinaria.

From - Thu Jan 16 11:06:42 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA19296; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 14:46:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA05058; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 14:45:12 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 14:43:16 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id OAA05045 for ; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 14:44:57 -0500 (EST)
Received: from Default (a186.ecom.net [207.13.224.186]) by ns2.qnet.com (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA05035 for ; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 11:49:00 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853456086.002
From: diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Date: Thu, 16 Jan 1997 11:49:00 -0800 (PST)
Message-ID: <19970116114900.LAA05035@ns2.qnet.com>
X-Sender: diogenes@pop3.av.qnet.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.3
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Sinew processing and bow string
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Just a question.....

I've made a few long bows over the years and I've always tried to use sinew strings on them. The strings work for a few months and then blow. I was wondering if anyone had any suggestions on the preparation of the sinew that might enhance it's longevity.

Of the techniques I've tried, this is what has been working best for me:
Use a tendon from a cow's neck or rear leg.
Scrape to clean it of loose material.
Urine soak for 24-48 hours.
Wash thoroughly with clear water, dry.
Set aside for months in a clean, dry dark place.

After the tendon looks translucent, I break it down to the fibers by
pounding and/or stripping.

I double twist the fibers to make the string. Once the string is set, I soak
it in my mouth for an hour or two. The saliva seems to bind the string.

I make the end loops for the bow limbs and serve these with more tendon.
That's it.

Any suggestions?

Ron Hood

"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"

Ron Hood
By the way guys, woodchuck raw hide is also supposed to make good bow strings. Just cut in a spiral fashion to make a thin thong braid together into the desired length. How many single thongs do you need to braid together to make a bowstring of a particular strength?

Jim Burdine
LV, NV
jburdine@pipeline.com

Oregon bows, especially along the west coast, were usually made of yew, although Juniper, Ash, Chokecherry and Mountain Mahogany were also used. Most Oregon bows were backed with sinew for added strength. These bows generally had a wide, thin elliptical profile with a narrowed handle. The bow length ranged from 36 inches to 56 inches.

Western Indian boyers usually produced excellent equipment prior to the introduction of the horse. Indians who hunted on foot usually got just one shot, so they had to ensure ideal performance with a well balanced bow and straight arrows.

Atlatlist@aol.com

From: Atlatlist@aol.com
Date: Sun, 19 Jan 1997 09:47:21 1997
Received: from majordomo.iastate.edu (majordomo.iastate.edu [129.186.1.10]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA13703 for ; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 20:06:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from majordomo@localhost) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) id SAA25301 for knapper-outgoing; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 18:52:16 -0600
Received: from pop-1.iastate.edu (pop-1.iastate.edu [129.186.6.61]) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA25296 for ; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 18:52:13 -0600
Received: from emout04.mail.aol.com (emout04.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.95]) by pop-1.iastate.edu (8.7.3/8.7.3) with ESMTP id SAA16032 for ; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 18:52:12 -0600 (CST)
Received: (from root@localhost)
by emout04.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0) id TAA01998 for knapper@iastate.edu; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 19:52:10 -0500 (EST)
X-Authentication-Warning: majordomo.iastate.edu: Processed from queue /var/spool/majordomo/knapper
From: Atlatlist@aol.com
Date: Sun, 19 Jan 1997 19:52:10 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970119195210_134664855@emout04.mail.aol.com>
To: knapper@iastate.edu
Subject: Re: Oregon Bows
Sender: owner-knapper@iastate.edu
Precedence: bulk
Reply-To: knapper@iastate.edu
Content-Type: text
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Oregon bows, especially along the west coast, were usually made of yew, although Juniper, Ash, Chokecherry and Mountain Mahogany were also used. Most Oregon bows were backed with sinew for added strength. These bows generally had a wide, thin elliptical profile with a narrowed handle. The bow length ranged from 36 inches to 56 inches.

Western Indian boyers usually produced excellent equipment prior to the introduction of the horse. Indians who hunted on foot usually got just one shot, so they had to ensure ideal performance with a well balanced bow and straight arrows.

Atlatlist@aol.com
At 07:52 PM 1/19/97 -0500, you wrote:
> Oregon bows, especially along the west coast, were usually made of yew,
> although Juniper, Ash, Chokecherry and Mountain Mahogany were also used. Most
> Oregon bows were backed with sinew for added strength. These bows generally
> had a wide, thin elliptical profile with a narrowed handle. The bow length
> ranged from 36 inches to 56 inches.
> 
> Western Indian boyers usually produced excellent equipment prior to the
> introduction of the horse. Indians who hunted on foot usually got just one
> shot, so they had to ensure ideal performance with a well balanced bow and
> straight arrows.
>
> Atlatlist@aol.com
>
> if you want it to be functional make it 56 inches or longer. 36 is too short

From - Tue Jan 21 02:47:05 1997
Received: from majordomo.iastate.edu (majordomo.iastate.edu [129.186.1.10]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA23076 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997
21:35:01 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from majordom@localhost) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) id
UAAIL160 for knapper-outgoing; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 20:03:14 -0600
Received: from pop-1.iastate.edu (pop-1.iastate.edu [129.186.6.61]) by
majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA1152 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997
Gary Lowell wrote:

> Thank you for the great information on "Oregon Bows" Now all I have to do is find a good Yew tree to make one out of. Do I have to do anything before I cut a small Yew tree down? I would not want to Police to get mad at me :-) Where could I get Yew tree with out getting into trouble here in Oregon. I'll be sure and do that. BTW, how long should an arrow be from end to end with a 56 inch Bow?
> >if you want it to be functional make it 56 inces or longer. 36 is to short
> Thank You
> Gary
> Things turn out best for people who make the best of the way things turn out
> http://www.open.org/gary/fishinhole.htm
> http://www.teleport.com/~garyl/
> Gary Lowell (Huggybear) Salem, Oregon.
> At 07:52 PM 1/19/97 -0500, you wrote:
> Oregon bows, especially along the west coast, were usually made of yew, although Juniper, Ash, Chokecherry and Mountain Mahogany were also used. Most Oregon bows were backed with sinew for added strength. These bows generally had a wide, thin eliptical profile with a narrowed handle. The bow length ranged from 36 inches to 56 inches.
> Western Indian boyers usually produced excellent equipment prior to the introduction of the horse. Indians who hunted on foot usually got just one
Hi Gary;

The woods most commonly used is also 'Vine Maple", and you should have no problems finding it in the area. If you need a book on Bows, we sale "Art of Primitive Bow Making" Writen by D.C. Waldorf. It is excellent.

Dane
A staff sling is not quite like a lacrosse stick. On a lacrosse stick, the pouch on the end is fixed in place. On a staff sling, the pouch is only attached on one end, and it hangs below the stick when held horizontally. The other end is just hooked over the end of the stick, and it comes off when...
thrown.

Stick--> ________________
\_/  <-- pouch

Perhaps this simple diagram will help. The end of the pouch that is closest to the handle end of the stick is attached. The other end has a loop or some means of hooking it loosely on the end of the stick so that it can release the projectile.

Steven Krom

---

> Still looking forward to hearing more about staff slings. Here in

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/huntisl1.htm (2 of 20) [10/22/2003 6:59:00 PM]
Québec, Indians had a historic game called "Lacrosse" which is still played in some communities. I played it myself as a kid. Sounds to me like a staff sling is like a lacrosse stick: a pouch made of rawhide netting on the end of a 3 ft stick.

Any comments?

André-François Bourbeau

_____________________________________________________________________

For thrower, send a HELP command to:

I'll send you a file, (may have already done so) on the fustabal, I'm familiar with Lacrosse sticks though I've never played myself. What pray tell is a hoopak? I found this sight on a SCA site.

-------------- _1363356992-- ------------

Content-Type: text/plain; name="The_Staff_Sling__Guidelines_for"; charset="us-ascii"
Content-Disposition: attachment; filename="The_Staff_Sling__Guidelines_for"
This article is intended as an introduction to a missle weapon which was extensively used from antiquity until the high middle ages, notably by the Carthaginian, Vandal, Roman, Byzantine and other armies of the continent. This weapon was called the fustibalus (in Latin). To the right may be seen an illustration from a manuscript in the Bodleian Library in Britain, which shows maritime combat with the fustibalus. It is also mentioned in the Codex Antlanticus of Leonardo da Vinci, who experimented with various forms of it as an exercise in martial engineering.

The Fustibalus was about one meter in length, and boasted a range of some 550 feet! Accuracy with this weapon comes only with practice, and its use among the romans was restricted to auxiliary troops for this reason. The trebuchet, a siege weapon much beloved by medieval engineers, was nothing more than an enormous staff sling that employed a counterweight
for acheiving torque instead of arm and shoulder. The missiles launched
were, in antiquity, referred to as glans. These were clay and/or lead pellets,
oval in shape and generally flattened. They often had the names of enemies,
pictures of scorpions and other martial graffiti inscribed or molded on
them. Those samples remaining today are about 1 1/2 to 2 1/2 inches in
length and 1/2 to 1 1/2 inches in width. These glans weigh around two ounces,
though examples exist weighing up to five.

So how do I make one? Take a rattan stick about 30-40
inches long and make
a leather 'pocket' as shown in the diagram. By securing one end some 6-8
inches from the tip (with the thonging), you'll set the range of your particular
sling. Remember, you're going to lay a slightly flattened, never round,
missile in this pocket and swing the staff 180 degrees. The point of release,
and thus the range, will depend on the length of the thonging holding the
pocket. Only trial and error will help you set your range. The other end
of the pocket **MUST** slip off the tip of the rattan smoothly - it may
be necessary to smooth the place where it clears the end with some sandpaper.

Always use tennis balls for SCA combat which have been slit on four of
their sides. You could even attach red/yellow streamers to represent the
clay incendiary grenades the Carthaginians threw from theirs. Of course,
you'll need to duct tape before slitting. Hope to see you at the Siege!!!

---

**Master Johannes the Black of the Athanor**

---

---
USA | Send me a postcard, I'll send you one. X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 From - Thu Nov 21 20:49:23 1996 Received: from parel1.hp.com (parrel1.hp.com [15.253.72.10]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id TAA29212 for : Wed, 20 Nov 1996 19:02:39 -0500 (EST) Received: from hbps1686.boi.com (hpbs1686.boi.com [15.2.220.107]) by parrel1.hp.com with SMTP (8.7.5/8.7.3) id QAA15203 for : Wed, 20 Nov 1996 16:06:23 -0800 (PST) Received: by hpbs1686.boi.com (1.37.109.16/15.5+IOS 3.22) id AA081984430; Wed, 20 Nov 1996 17:00:30 -0700 Date: Wed, 20 Nov 1996 17:00:30 -0700 X-UIDL: 848584029.000 From: Bill Blohm Message-Id: <199611210000.AA081984430@hpbs1686.boi.com> To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca Subject: Re: Realistic sling possibilities Content-Type: text Status: U X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 a) Am I the only one who uses the "shotgun" sling approach? I have also used this method to bring down an occasional rabbit or squirrel. Not often. The only other times I use this method is when sleighing out over water to watch the splashes. > b) When realistic food gathering is the only concern, what are your preferences? snares, bow, sling in that order, assuming primitive technology only, slingshot between bow and sling if a slingshot is available > c) Any literature you know of which addresses these concerns? Only what has been mentioned on this list. While a long-time user of the sling, I've never really done any research into it. all my replies are based on experience. > b) What's the current thinking on the various throwing weapon hmmmmm. > b) was up above, but if this is D. I'd go with spear, atlatl, dart, throwing sticks, rocks in that order Bill B. X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 From - Thu Nov 21 20:51:10 1996 Received: from dfw.net (root@dfw.dfw.net [198.175.15.10]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id BAA01318 for ; Thu, 21 Nov 1996 01:21:04 -0500 (EST) Received: by dfw.net (4.1/SMI-4.1) id AA23335; Wed, 20 Nov 96 23:37:09 CST Received: from crl.crl.com (crl.com) by dfw.net (4.1/SMI-4.1) id AA23300; Wed, 20 Nov 96 23:36:38 CST Received: by crl.crl.com id AA10679 (5.65c/IDA-1.5 for thrower@dfw.net); Wed, 20 Nov 1996 21:29:15 -0800 Date: Wed, 20 Nov 1996 21:29:15 -0800 (PST) X-UIDL: 848584029.015 From: "matthew j. rapaport" To: thrower@dfw.net Subject: Re: Realistic sling possibilities In-Reply-To: <32939954.4616@saglac.qc.ca> Message-Id: Mime-Version: 1.0 X-Loop: thrower@dfw.net Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; charset=US-ASCII Status: U X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 Thank you Andri, a very interesting comment. > Since I've been researching realistic wilderness survival for the last > 25 years, I have given a good deal of thought to using the sling as a > food gathering method in an emergency situation. My conclusions thus > far: > > 1- Like Jim Merlini, I too have preferred the single vertical turn and > > immediate release. My thinking is that no animal that I know of will > stand around while some primitive human being is busy spinning a stone > > for several seconds over his/her head. Even a single vertical move is quite > noticeable to some animal you are hunting. If I think the sling is more practical as a weapon of defense against animal aggressors, rather than for food acquisition. For example, chasing wolves away from sheep, or foxes from chickens. As for accuracy, talent is as much a factor as skill I'm sure. I seem to be able to achieve relatively good horizontal or vertical accuracy, but not both at the same time :-). Yet I'm told there are people who can repeatedly hit a target the size of a small mellon at 60 yards. > b) When realistic food gathering is the only concern, what are your > preferences? As you said... First for very small game at relatively close ranges (20 meters or less, squirrel, rabit, etc.) I would say the slingshot (a good one), or a light crossbow with small game points. For somewhat larger game, the crossbow or longbow if ranges can be kept under about 50 meters, a rifle otherwise. Remember where food gathering is the aim, there is also trapping to be considered... > c) Any literature you know of which addresses these concerns? There are a few magazines, and some web pointers. Look at Wilderness Way at http://www.pioneerpc.com/wildernessway/core.html and also http://home.earthlink.net/~nyerges/ > b) What's the current thinking on the various throwing weapon It is pure sport for me. The same is true of the sling for now at least. matthew rapaport Philosopher/Programmer at large KD6KVH

I'm sure you are aware of the story of the Taking of Puebla. It is a good story to tell to the kids. http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/huntisl1.htm (7 of 20) [10/22/2003 6:59:00 PM]
I’m sure. A terrific book, guess I’ll start from page 1. Worth the dinero and a perfect complement to Ted Bailey’s woven Andean slings:

http://www.cr0m.com/~mjrtbailey/Sling.html

For the umpteenth time, this book’s order information (just in case): .......................... “Sling Braiding of the Andes,” by Adele Cahlander ISBN: 0-937452-03-3 Softbound, 96 pages, profusely illustrated. Contact: Heather Unicorn Books and Crafts 1338 Ross St. Petaluma, Ca. 94954 - 6502 1 (707) 762-3362 1 (800) 289 9276 They go for $12.95 each and $4.00 for shipping and $.60 for each additional copy. .......................... .......................... .......................... The mailman also hand delivered a 42 page super resource -- “Atlatl’s -- Ancient Weapon of the Ice Age,” a compilation of Benjamin Pressley’s. Thrower Ralph Craig’s kindly distributing this title from the recent Ben Pressley TRIBE atlatl maker’s/sling seminar that Ralph attended in Charlotte. Thanks big time Ralph. Your atlatl line art illustration is an excellent addition. Best note taking method I’ve ever seen - very professional. Nice touch. Well worth the $4 turnaround. You deserve more. I have it on good authority that Ralph has another 6 copies. Another “for sure, this winter” project. Terrific print material, as was the sling making book - and once again Ted Bailey was there ahead of most everyone with his fine Primitive Technology website’s atlatl coverage and scans. Anyone interested can see his sites contact info and page bottom photo links at: http://users.aol.com/tbprilm1/Atlatl.html Great atlatl seminar handout. Ben. Take me to your leader. I see you read Indian Artifact Magazine, too. Are you on the knapper’s digest list, also?. Thanks for the bandwidth. Chris

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/huntisl1.htm (8 of 20) [10/22/2003 6:59:00 PM]
only one movement and no wind up swings. I am working on the pocket section of my fiber sling. Instead of wool yarns I used #18 nylon sein cord in yellow and white. I'm afraid that it's much too slick to use. I try to use the 16 strand braid worked up as mentioned in the book on sling braiding. So after making the finger loop, I separated my strands into 4 bundles of four strands each and did a 4 strand braid worked down until I had a length long enough for the retention cord. For making the pocket I'm using a separate length of yellow sein twine and the finger weaving pattern copied from the article on a sling pocket of the paleo indians found in Lovelock cave here in Nevada. I'll let you know when I'm done. Touch of the Bear JB

For thrower, send a HELP command to: X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 From - Tue Dec 17 01:18:14 1996 Received: from dfw.dfw.net (root@dfw.dfw.net [198.175.15.10]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id WAA17573 for ; Sun, 15 Dec 1996 22:37:14 -0500 (EST) Received: by dfw.dfw.net (4.1/SMI-4.1) id AA15373; Sun, 15 Dec 96 19:48:55 CST Received: from ic.net (falcon.ic.net) by dfw.dfw.net (4.1/SMI-4.1) id AA15307; Sun, 15 Dec 96 19:47:29 CST Received: from [152.160.99.92] by ic.net with smtp (Smail:3.128.1 #6) id m0vZ39J-003EBC; Sun, 15 Dec 96 20:47 WET Message-Id: In-Reply-To: <01ID1L9EBAK6002WDB@ALPHA.ALBION.EDU> Mime-Version: 1.0 Date: Sun, 15 Dec 1996 20:46:14 -0400 To: thrower@dfw.net X-UUIDL: 850760137.004 From: "Ted E. Bailey" Subject: Re: Slings X-Loop: thrower-Request@dfw.net Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit Reply-To: thrower@dfw.net Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii" Status: U X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 Blut und Ehre wrote: > Chris Smith mentioned an article the other day that he wished he had > entitled, Slings As A Weapon, from an old Scientific American, Oct. > > 1973. I went to our public library and found it! Great article on slings > > and their use worldwide. Mostly, neolithic and historic periods, but > > some mention of them being used at end of Paleolithic. If anyone wants a > > I found this article too, and what I found most interesting about it are the > > weights of the bullets and the method of throwing shown. It says that most of > > the sling bullets found weighed only about 25-30 grams! Does anybody on this > > list throw things that light? I love to throw Buckeye Seeds which are about the same weight. Ted Bailey email to: tbailey@ic.net P. O. Box 6076 Editor of 'Boomerang News' Ann Arbor, MI 48106 Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 Fax: (313)-761-3632 Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/
the list;... How did you determine the length of your sling cords? By expediency. I'm an overhead slinger, i.e. I swing the sling horizontally overhead when I shoot. However, my prep is to put the stone in the pouch, let it hang loose, then bring it up to firing/moving mode by swinging it back once and on the forward return up and around. Thus, my maximum sling cord must allow me to clear the ground when my hand is at about waist level. Bill B.
The Staff Sling: Guidelines for Construction and Use

The Staff Sling: Guidelines for Construction and Use

For thrower, send a HELP command to: Generally, I measure the sling

In God we trust. All others we monitor! quine@dfw.net _____________________________________________________________________ For thrower, send a HELP command to: Generally, I measure the length of my sling cords? > > By expediency. I'm an overhead slinger, i.e. I swing the sling horizontally > overhead when I shoot. However, my

prep is to put the stone in the pouch, > let it hang loose, then bring it up to firing/moving mode by swinging it > back once and on the forward return up and around. Thus, my maximum sling > cord must allow me to clear the ground when my hand is at about waist level. > > Bill B. >>

_____________________________________________________________________ > For thrower, send a HELP command to: Generally, I measure the length of my sling cords? > > By expediency. I'm an overhead slinger, i.e. I swing the sling horizontally > overhead when I shoot. However, my

prep is to put the stone in the pouch, > let it hang loose, then bring it up to firing/moving mode by swinging it > back once and on the forward return up and around. Thus, my maximum sling > cord must allow me to clear the ground when my hand is at about waist level. > > Bill B. >>
Baseball type and the older pineapple grenades. I'll leave using grenades as sling projectiles for the braver guys out there, and "never get into a foxhole with anyone... and the only thing more accurate than enemy fire is friendly fire. Actually having used both the modern fuse and cap assembly. Remember friendly fire isn't.... and the only thing more accurate than enemy fire is friendly fire. Actually having used both the modern fuse and cap assembly. Remember friendly fire isn't..... and the only thing more accurate than enemy fire is friendly fire. Actually having used both the modern fuse and cap assembly. Remember friendly fire isn't.... and the only thing more accurate than enemy fire is friendly fire.
text/plain; charset="us-ascii" Status: U X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 Personally the whole thing gives me the shivers. : -0 :) You bet Jim. The problem was if you can toss a grenade a certain distance, so can they. The stronger arm wins. We tried a number of variations on the grenade sling and finally settled on a three foot para cord tied to the fuse body. We tied a large knot in the middle of the cord and one at the end. Pop the spoon, two rotations and that death grogin was on its way. No fuss no muss. It had nothing to do with being brave and and everything to do with keeping those buggers out of the firebase. I hate fixed positions. We even made a catapult out of a captured Chinese 82mm mortar. With a number one charge it could toss 30 gallons of jellied gas about 250 yards (fused with an in-air arming contact detonator, natch). Awesome. Sometimes we'd just fire one up to watch the flash. Ancient weapons are sooo much fun. BTW. the mason jar, grenade delivery is something we adapted from Huey eggs. Ron XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX Dr. Ron Hood P.O. Box 383 Lake Hughes, CA, 93532 http://www.survival.com/~diogenes "Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!" From - Wed Jan 15 00:39:13 1997 Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA05755; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 00:43:34 -0500 (EST) Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA17135; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 00:03:10 -0500 (EST) Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 00:01:18 EST Received: from ki.se (mbox.ki.se [130.237.207.77]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA17131 for ; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 00:02:59 -0500 (EST) Received: by ki.se id AA26655 (5.67a/IDA-1.5 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca); Wed, 15 Jan 1997 06:08:20 +0100 X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Warnings-To: <> Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca Date: Wed, 15 Jan 1997 06:08:18 +0200 (METDST) Message-ID: <32D94EFA.70D5@perigee.net> From: Par Leijonhufvud Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca Subject: Re: slings & grenade launching To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: MIME-Version: 1.0 Content-Type: MULTIPART/MIXED; BOUNDARY="-------------_1358866192==_-------------" Status: U X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I) MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Slings As Hunting Weapons Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii Why not just tie a piece of cord to the grenade, knot the other end and then throw it by swinging and releasing the cord? Much harder to mess up. /Par -- Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se "Do the Atheists Really Think the Egyptians could have built great monuments like Stonehenge without the help of God!!?" - alt.atheism.satire --============_-1358866192==_------------- Status: U X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 This message is in MIME format. The first part should be readable text, while the remaining parts are likely unreadable without MIME-aware tools. --------------1358866192==-------------- Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; CHARSET=us-ascii Why not just tie a piece of cord to the grenade, knot the other end and then throw it by swingi...
length for medium range and a longer one for distance. For ammo, I choose stones that are roundish, sort of egg-shaped with a flattish side. I lay the stone with the flat side flat in my sling pouch, not on its side as it would seem more natural to do. I have found the projectile to fly more predictably when loaded in this manner. Too flat of a stone will take all manner of unpredictable paths. I have seen flat stones take a 90 degree turn in mid-flight. I have also experimented with sun hardened clay. Robert Likas has experimented with fragmentation projectiles. He has loaded a piece of clay with buckshot and thrown it. When released the force of firing it from the sling it goes to pieces and has the effect of a shotgun blast. 

---------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE: Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net TRIBE Homepage: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

We have tried heaving grenades this way but the damn spoon keeps popping off (like it is supposed to) and when you are fumbling around with a sling that isn't a good thing. Yes, yes,... we are experimenting with practice grenades not the real thing. Pull pin - Put the grenade in a glass bottle or heat a test tube and stretch it most of the way around the spoon and grenade, then pull pin - Or - Put a rubberband around the base of the spoon, away from the detonator assembly, tie the band to the sling cup. Have fun Ron Hood XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX Dr. Ron Hood P.O. Box 383 Lake Hughes, CA, 93532 http://www.survival.com/~diogenes "Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!" X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Robert Likas has experimented with fragmentation projectiles. He has loaded a piece of clay with buckshot and thrown it. When released the force of firing it from the sling it goes to pieces and has the efect of a shotgun blast. 

---------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
The Staff Sling: Guidelines for Construction and Use

13 21:06:42 1997 Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca (poste.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA23142; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 17:43:13 -0500 (EST) Received: from vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA00374; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 17:39:03 -0500 (EST) Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 17:37:10 EST Received: from palrel3.hp.com (palrel3.hp.com [15.253.88.10]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id RAA00371 for ; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 17:38:52 -0500 (EST) Received: from hpbs1686.boi.hp.com (hpbs1686.boi.hp.com [15.2.220.107]) by palrel3.hp.com with ESMTP (8.7.5/8.7.3) id OAA28154 for ; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 14:42:56 -0800 (PST) Received: by hpbs1686.boi.hp.com (1.37.109.16/15.5+IOS 3.22) id AA006584857; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 15:34:17 -0700 X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca Warnings-To: <> Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca Date: Mon, 13 Jan 1997 15:34:17 -0700 X-UIDL: 853250488.049 From: Bill Blohm Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca, bblohm@BOI.HP.COM Message-ID: <199701132234.AA006584857@hpbs1686.boi.hp.com> To: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET, primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca Subject: Re: Slings As Hunting Weapons Content-Type: text Status: U X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 I'm still catching up on this list after being out for a couple days. As a result, some of this may well have been covered by others already. However, I can speak from experience on slings, so finally something I feel I can contribute to. Matter of fact, Benjamin, you've probably read most of this over in the Thrower's list anyway. FFWIW... Been slinging, on and off, since the age of 7. In general, my slings (after the first one my dad made me) are made out of any material that will work. I like the thongs to be flexible enough to roll up, but have used stiff thongs with success. Folded, I like my slings to be of a length to clear the ground when my elbow is at my side and bent 90 degrees. The reason is that my preferred throwing method is to load, lower the loaded pouch while keeping the thongs reasonably tensioned, then drop it so it swings back and on the forward swing whip it up and around my head. I may use only one swing. I may use several. I can keep it spinning around my head as I move for a better shot or as I wait for the target to get into view. Then I whip it hard around, and when my hand is beside my head, I continue forward to point at the target. The pointing releases the free end of the sling, and the projectile speeds to the target. The other end of the sling has a loop that I wear around my middle finger. The free end is held between my first finger and thumb as I whirl it. My current slings use leather boot thongs and a piece of leather 2" x 3" for the pouch, with the thongs tied snug against the 2" sides. I've used both rectangular and oval pouches without noticing enough difference in performance to worry about it. I'm not sure, as I'm deaf; but I think that the oval pouches are quieter. Sometimes the rectangular ones seem to vibrate as I whirl them. I like the leather for durability, mainly. I've hunted small game with it, birds, rabbit and squirrel mostly. I've had limited success, but haven't been using it with the aim of using it to specifically hunt with. If I were to do that, then I imagine I'd be able to bag game OK, up to the level of a fox. Beyond that, I don't know. Of course, this depends on the range as well. However, I have sent a steel ball 1" diameter humming into a tree trunk some 80 yards away and had it hit with a very solid thud, so obviously the size of the ammo affects the range. (Sound effects courtesy of a very impressed group of people I was demonstrating to:) It's not any more difficult to master than a bow, IMHO. I've said elsewhere that both the bow and sling are as easy to master, for one main reason: the bow allows repetition, but you tire after tens of shots while the sling isn't as easy to repeat the exact same motions with but you can practice so many more shots with it, and most anywhere. As a survival weapon... only if you've spent time getting good with it. As with bowhunting, spearhunting, and other ilk, you need good stalking skills as well. If you work on your accuracy, then birds would be good game for this. However, other methods should be worked on first, as using a sling can expend a lot of energy that you might not be wise to spend yet. One reason I carry three slings with me in my emergency pouch is that they're fun to play with, roll up small, weigh nothing, and have multiple survival and emergency use. For example, I can untie the thongs and use them for snares, lashings, tourniquets, fishing, and so on as well as as a sling. (That's why I like to take more than one in my pouch.) Also good for keeping kids amused. There are several ways to sling the stone, vertically vs horizontally, or a combination. One or more rotations before release. What position is best for your release? There are a few variables, but if you work on one style and get good at it, then add an alternative backup style, using a sling might be a good survival weapon. But it's not one of those weapons that is hard to learn, it just takes a lot of practice, which can be a lot of fun. Plus, it's easily made in the survival situation, usually. As you say, they are immensely powerful. However, I challenge your statement that it's hard to master. I would counter that with the fact that I've taught several people to use a sling with reasonable accuracy (not hunting accuracy, though). Without seeing how you shoot it, I can't offer any tips, but I would suggest that perhaps you're trying too hard to control several variables. Your length seems a little long to me, and if you are slinging vertically, this could well be a part of your problem as you try to keep it from hitting the ground. I'd suggest shortening it to maybe fingertip to armpit and trying that for a while. Then gradually increase it back to the original size if you want to. You're splitting boards with it and all, so you do have some accuracy. Forget the accuracy, just get the movements down smoothly. Keep shooting like that until you can do it without any effort and still pay attention to just the placement of your first finger and thumb, or the angle of...
The Staff Sling: Guidelines for Construction and Use

your elbow throughout the whole thing. Once you can do that and still hit within a 15 to 25 degree angle in front of you, then start paying attention to the various variables and work on accuracy. As they say, learn the form first, then apply power. I also found that either horizontal spin or vertical spin have greater accuracy than a spin out of these axes. That is, a spin that goes by the ground beside you to over your opposite shoulder, for example, is going to be less accurate. For height I'll go vertical, for left/right accuracy I'll go horizontal. I've used ammo ranging from spherical to eggish, smooth to rough. I only avoid jagged ends that might cut my pouch from the force. I much, much prefer spherical ammo. I find it's much more accurate. Like you, if there is a flat side, I'll put that flat side against the pouch.

But I would much rather shoot spheres and if I have to shoot one with flats, I'll try to find one with as many flats as possible on it. I have two gallon jugs left of my favorite ammo: steel balls, 1" dia. then after that I'll either get more bearings or start making clay balls to sling. But in the field, I'll pass up stones to find those that are as spherical as possible. I also like to put several small stones in the pouch and shoot them all at once for the shotgun effect. This is particularly good with birds and small game, but does need a little larger pouch than with my usual one. I've not experienced the erratic flight paths you describe, but this may be due to my avoiding if at all possible ammo with flat sides. The release from the pouch imparts a spin of sorts to the stone, and this may account for your erratic flights. This spin isn't much, but with a flat side that could rotate towards the path of flight, that might make it plane off. Oh, and for size. I like them to be about 1" diameter, but no more than 1 1/2" diameter or less than 1/2" diameter, unless I'm "shotgunning." I think the smallest I've used, even when shotgunning, is 1/8". Probably the most erratic flight I ever had was when I first started. I was shooting stones out into the lake, watching the splashes. I was working on getting the stone way, way up there so I could get a bigger splash. After a couple throws, I did one without any splash. Puzzled, I figured I'd missed seeing it and continued. In a couple minutes, my dad came up to me and told me to move on down the lake or put the sling away. That stone I'd not seen the splash for had gone through one of his friend's windshield, about 80-90 yards...behind me. The funniest flight I ever saw was my brother's first throw. My dad carefully explained to him how to use the sling. He put in a stone, whirled it around his head, and let fly, and hit the piece of wood floating on the lake dead on. Only one problem, he'd misunderstood something and had let go completely so the sling went with that stone. The look on my dad's face was comical. I've also seen people shoot the sling, release it completely, and it gets tangled in a branch, hanging there with the stone still in the pouch! Well, this is probably long enough. I can go into details if there are any other questions, either here on the list or via e-mail. Bill B. bblohm@hpbs1686.boi.hp.com X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 From - Mon Jan 13 21:06:58 1997 Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA23585; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 18:20:48 -0500 (EST) Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AA00699; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 18:19:20 -0500 (EST) Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 18:17:25 EST Received: from parel1.hp.com (parel1.hp.com [15.253.72.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AA00687 for ; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 18:19:07 -0500 (EST) Received: from hpbs1686.boi.hp.com (hpbs1686.boi.hp.com [15.220.107]) by parel1.hp.com with ESMTP (8.7.5/8.7.3) id AA017491; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 15:23:15 -0800 (PST) Received: by hpbs1686.boi.hp.com (1.37.109.16/15.5+IOS 3.22) id AA007047276; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 16:14:37 -0700 X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Warnings-To: <> Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca Date: Mon, 13 Jan 1997 16:14:37 -0700 X-UIDL: 853250488.059 From: Bill Blohm Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bblohm@BOI.HP.COM Message-ID: <1997011132314.AA007047276@hpbs1686.boi.hp.com> To: parslowb@CFW.COM, primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca Subject: Re: Slings As Hunting Weapons Content-Type: text Status: U X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 > cedar clumps, etc. We have tried heaving grenades this way but the damm > spoon keeps popping off (like it is supposed to) and when you are > fumbling around with a sling that isn't a good thing. > Yes, yes... we > are experimenting with practice grenades not the real thing. We go that > idea from a movie we saw which title I cannot remember for the life of > me. I think that you would have to start using one of these at a young > person. I've been experimenting with shotgunning and I've got it > working. I've got to try this out soon. > Yes, yes,... we > are experimenting with practice grenades not the real thing. We go that > idea from a movie we saw which title I cannot remember for the life of > me. I think that you would have to start using one of these at a young > person. I've been experimenting with shotgunning and I've got it > working. I've got to try this out soon.

Types try using a straight loop: put the grenade in the pouch, wrap the thong around once, then put it under the pouch, stretch the thong and tie it together. This way you can move the thong under the pouch and tie it tight. If you have to use a loop, make sure it's large enough to wrap around the thong. If it gets tangled in a branch, hanging there with the stone still in the pouch! Well, this is probably long enough. I can go into details if there are any other questions, either here on the list or via e-mail. Bill B. bblohm@hpbs1686.boi.hp.com
The Staff Sling: Guidelines for Construction and Use

<> Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca Date: Mon, 13 Jan 1997 22:51:01 -0600
Message-ID: <199701140451.WAA09414@arthur.computer-services.com> X-Sender: boldrjak@computer-services.com X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Light
Version 1.5.2 MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, parslowb@CFW.COM X-UIDL: 853250488.091 From: Stephen Passwater ReplyTo: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, boldrjak@COMPUTER-SERVICES.COM Subject: Re: Slings As Hunting Weapons Content-Type: text/plain;
charset="us-ascii" Status: U X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 At 09:46 AM 01/13/97 -0800, you wrote: >>snipped for brevity, but you will see that I agree with Ben. >
>When I was a kid, up until I was about 16 had a car and could go fishing >on my own, I did a lot of messing around (a good way to characterize what >I was
doing) with throwing stuff (sticks, spears, knives, and slings) and >made my first slings. I never thought of the heart to hand measureing >system but that does come
out at about 30-36 inches which is where I >ended up. At that time I would buy leather shoelaces for the straps and >use soft waste leather from my Dad's leather
projects for the pouch. Have >used it to harrass a friend in a canoe on a lake so I know that you can >heave a good size rock quite a long way. I never got very good
for >accuracy but I could heave a rock a pretty good distance, 60-70 yards. I >used to think it was closer to 200 yards :). I used the thing to scare >game towards me
by throwing the rock to the other side of brush piles, >cedar clumps, etc. We have tried heaving grenades this way but the damn >spoon keeps popping off (like it is
supposed to) and when you are >fumbling around with a sling that isn't a good thing. Yes, yes,... we >are experimenting with practice grenades not the real thing.
We go that >idea from a movie we saw which title I cannot remember for the life of >me. I think that you would have to start using one of these at a young >age
(darn my over protective mother ;)) to acquire a high level of skill >and that at this point in my life I just don't have the time to become >proficient. > > >->Sincerely, >Barent >Duty, Honor, Country > > I tend to like staff slings, you can get pretty acurate pretty fast with these things. And they work good for grenades.
They have been used in few wars for this. boldrjak@computer-services.com Heaven help us when God's tears of sorrow are dried by the heat of his anger. XMozilla-Status: 0011 From - Tue Jan 14 03:43:05 1997 Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca
(8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA00690; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 13:43:14 -0500 (EST) Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
[132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA09734; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 13:42:00 -0500 (EST) Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca
by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 13:40:02 EST Received: from mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com
[204.180.128.166]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA09725 for ; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 13:41:42 -0500 (EST) Received: from
[38.11.182.209] (ip7.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.7]) by mule0.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id NAA167432; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 13:45:18 0500 X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Warnings-To: <> Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca Sender:
owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com Message-ID: MIME-Version: 1.0 Date: Tue, 14 Jan 1997 10:47:52 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET X-UIDL: 853274350.018 From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine) ReplyTo: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM Subject: Re: Slings As Hunting Weapons Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 Ben; I'm still learning the sling. I've made my first fiber sling from yellow and white nylon #18 sein twine(or what we would have
called trotline cord in Oklahoma) It turned out very nicely and I'm proud of it. My only problem is that the socket is rather small in comparison to my leather sling
2.5 x 3.5 inches fiber as opposed to 4x6 inches leather. On the other hand, the fiber socket seems to grip projectiles fairly securly in comparison to the leather
socket. This allows me to throw some smaller projectiles fairly well and continues to hurl golf ball sized rocks fairly well too. It does balk at the larger tennis ball
sized rocks. Now as to accuracy and hunting abillity, I do not feel that I have enough accuracy to even start hunting. I figure that when I can knock off soft drink
cans 4 out of maybe 6 hurls, then I'll know that I am good enough to consider hunting. I need to start on another sling soon, and try to split the socket just like the
Andean slings, I figure that will allow for larger projectiles. I also need to practice more. Jim Burdine LV, Nv jburdine@pipeline.com X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 From
- Tue Jan 14 03:43:14 1997 Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id
OAA00893; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 14:06:13 -0500 (EST) Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca
(8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA10164; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 14:05:09 -0500 (EST) Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2
VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 14:03:02 EST Received: from vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil (vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil [128.160.52.117]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca
(8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id OAA10149 for ; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 14:04:42 -0500 (EST) Received: from lsis-ii.nrlssc.navy.mil (isis-ii [128.160.63.118]) by
vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil (8.7.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA07654; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 13:09:45 -0600 (CST) X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLSGROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Warnings-To: <> Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca Sender: owner-primitive-skillsgroup@uqac.uquebec.ca X-UIDL: 853274350.021 From: hmesick@GOLDINC.COM Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/huntisl1.htm (17 of 20) [10/22/2003 6:59:00 PM]


The Staff Sling: Guidelines for Construction and Use

This article is intended as an introduction to a missile weapon which was extensively used from antiquity.
until the high middle ages, notably by the Carthaginian, Vandal, Roman, Byzantine and other armies of the continent. This weapon was called the fustibalus (in Latin). To the right may be seen an illustration from a manuscript in the Bodleian Library in Britain, which shows maritime combat with the fustibalus. It is also mentioned in the Codex Antlanticus of Leonardo da Vinci, who experimented with various forms of it as an exercise in martial engineering.

The Fustibalus was about one meter in length, and boasted a range of some 550 feet! Accuracy with this weapon comes only with practice, and its use among the romans was restricted to auxiliary troops for this reason. The trebuchet, a siege weapon much beloved by medieval engineers, was nothing more than an enormous staff sling that employed a counterweight for achieving torque instead of arm and shoulder. The missiles launched were, in antiquity, referred to as glans. These were clay and/or lead pellets, oval in shape and generally flattened. They often had the names of enemies, pictures of scorpions and other martial graffiti inscribed or molded on them. Those samples remaining today are about 1 1/2 to 2 1/2 inches in length and 1/2 to 1 1/2 inches in width. These glans weigh around two ounces, though examples exist weighing up to five.

So how do I make one? Take a rattan stick about 30-40 inches long and make a leather 'pocket' as shown in the diagram. By securing one end some 6-8 inches from the tip (with the thonging), you'll set the range of your particular sling. Remember, you're going to lay a slightly flattened, never round, missile in this pocket and swing the staff 180 degrees. The point of release, and thus the range, will depend on the length of the thonging holding the pocket. Only trial and error will help you set your range. The other end of the pocket MUST slip off the tip of the rattan smoothly - it may be necessary to smooth the place where it clears the end with some sandpaper. Always use tennis balls for SCA combat which have been slit on four of their sides. You could even attach red/yellow streamers to represent the clay incendiary grenades the Carthaginians threw from theirs. Of course, you'll need to duct tape before slitting. Hope to see you at the Siege!!!

Master Johannes the Black of the Athanor
The Kurds teach their kids to use a sling for small game. They use a thing "staff sling" to give the kids the right timing and arm motion. The only difference between the staff sling and a regular traditional sling is that one of the cords is replaced with a stick. The sticks are roughly oval in cross section and 2 to 3 feet long. Naturally they release the string and not the stick when they throw. I tried this method and it is really quite easy to use. Later I found out that Assyrians used it and some ancient seafaring nations used it because it wouldn't foul the rigging. There is basically no windup. It's used something like an atlatl and can be attached to a walking stick. Another thought. When I teach the sling in our advanced courses. I've learned that some folks can be accurate with a horizontal overhead swing, others take to the vertical swing which may be easier underhanded or overhanded. I let them try all of the positions and choose the one most comfortable for them. Up on the Cordeliera in Chile, the indians showed me how they teach their kids the overhead swing. They start with a short string.... about 1 foot long, until the kids learn the release points an coordination. Oddly the adults carry one of these short slings almost everywhere. The little slings don't have much range but they don't require a windup, can be used in brush and trees and will kill easily out to 20 yards or so. They're even good at the "fastdraw". Peace, Ron Hood Hoods Woods - http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/ Get a giggle, Check us out! Ron Hood Ed.D.
Well now, maybe that would give us a use for those little sleeve throwers that I've seen available out there that are too small and light for accurate throwing. I had one for a while and found that it made a dandy light spear when attached to the end of a 4 foot shaft. I saw a set of three available for about $20. That would make a base set of three for practice once set into the split end of a stick and glued and lashed into place. Also when I was a kid in Boy Scouts an Army Ranger told us to put a few of the glue on broadheads meant for cedar arrows in our survival kit so that we could improvise spears for hunting/defense. We loved that macho B.S. and dutifully added at least one to each kit(combined our resources since they came 6 to a set) I still think some of the larger broadheads meant for traditional archery would work out fine although you would probably have to taper your shaft carefully, or wind up with something that looked like a roman pylum.

touch of the Bear

JB

All I had in mind was to test the accuracy of javelins (= throwing spears)
in average hands. For this purpose,
I think the experiment should be run with a motley array of homemade spears constructed from a free mixture of ancient and modern materials. After all, nobody in the Neolithic or Bronze Ages would issue a contract for javelins according to rigid specs. For instance, if somebody used a tubular plastic mop handle for his main shaft, I'd assign him to the Cheap and Nasty Group, but I wouldn't bar him from participating.
> For people looking for throwing spears -- Cold Steel has some really
> nice stuff. They have the Bushman, a Boar Spear, a Javelin, and a
> Assegai, plus the Warhead, which can be a thrower or a spearhead.
>
> William Fagan and Company, located in Detroit, has a lot of this kind of
> stuff. He doesn't have email, but you can call him at: (810) 792-6996

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970   || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:  http://ic.net/~tbailey/

For thrower, send a HELP command to:

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Harmon Seaver wrote:

> For people looking for throwing spears -- Cold Steel has some really
> nice stuff. They have the Bushman, a Boar Spear, a Javelin, and a
> Assegai, plus the Warhead, which can be a thrower or a spearhead.

James Keating's COMTECH (U.S.) martial newsletter, the Excellerator
(XCLR8R), an eclectic self defense bulletin, arrived at the same time as
I read the above message and Ed Sackett's mention of the Madden book,
"The Art of Throwing Weapons" (on Matthew's "Thrower" website on his
"Books" page, so I'll pass this complementary little column on, for what
it's worth. BTW, COMTECH contact info and two of their weapons articles
are also on Thrower's Whip and Chakra pages at Matthew's website:

SPEAR AND POLEARMS OF THE 90'S

"The Cold Steel Special Projects Division has delivered again. They
have brought us the "king of weapons" in a classic form. Spears are
just plain cool, and once you fiddle around with a good one for awhile,
you start to see why the ancients valued them so much. I have a Cold
Steel Boar spear and the Assegai. These are serious tools, perhaps the
ultimate defensive device one could possess besides a gun. These
beauties come with two handle lengths to suit your needs (basically long
and short). If you want quality, but are on a budget, then give Cold
Steel a call 1-800-255-4716.

Pat Crawfords survival staff/spear is another nice piece of work for
those looking to spend a little more on their polearm. The spear head
can be concealed in the body of the staff until needed. It quickly
screws in and snubs down tightly, this is a thruster head. The nice
part about Pat's piece is that you have stick, stick and dagger, dagger,
staff and spear all in one! Pretty slick outfit for hikers and the
like. Call the Cutlery Shoppe: 1-800-231-1272, and tell 'em Keating sent ya. Remember gang, in today's world, one must not only be deadly in their personal defence, but resourceful as well. The unexpected tactic, weapon or boldfaced lie are as valid in your defence as a gun and the grenade. A bladesman without guile is dead. Look for a rad polearm/spear video training tape from Comtech in the near future. You'll see it first in the XCLR8R!!!"

Chris

For thrower, send a HELP command to:

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

javelins tended to have lighter heads as they are meant to be thrown longer distances than a true spear. I own one of the cold steel javelins and it seems about right to me. the head is a touch lighter than the medieval examples i have handled but, so is the shaft (at least the shaft is of a smaller diameter) I have not been hunting with mine but i have competed with it in several sca (society for creative anachronisms) competitions and it performed quite well even though it was being thrown into a wooden target, the head has not bent yet even with this kind of abuse. -ketil

For thrower, send a HELP command to:
Hi, just off the top of my head, from aerodynamics points of view, a spinning projectile (spin normal to the flight trajectory) actually help to reduce the orbital wobble of an irregularly shaped missile. The latter helps to reduce aerodynamics friction and orbital wobbles.

Please do correct me, I am a bit rusty on aerodynamics now.

Cheers and merry christmas, shirley

In the last mail Chris Smith said:

> Here's an electron. Me 2. Say! A while back someone posted about
> Romans wrapping a leater thong around javelins. When thrown, the thong
> unwrapped, imparting spin. Anyone have more particulars? I've been
> wondering, too. Funny, eh? As I recall the Museum Replica catalog that
> has some nice looking Roman javelins. They're owned by Atlanta Cutlery,
> I think. Worth a look.
> >
> > Chris
> >
Hi Ryan!

First- don't touch that hunk of aspen. It is too thick and too heavy to make a good boomerang. It is also not wide enough. Go find some aircraft grade birch plywood at a hobby store.

Here is a clip from the FAQ (www.staff.uiuc.edu/~brazelto/boomerangfaq.html):

Although boomerangs may be made out of any of several plywoods, the material of choice is aircraft grade Finnish birch plywood between 4-6mm thick and 5-12 plies. Although maple, mahogany, ash and even pine may suffice, no wood gives better flexibility, workability, and strength than Finnish birch. Cheaper grade birch plywood (and sometimes even the good stuff) can usually be found in your local hobby shop. This wood is very usable for prototypes and kids' rangs. Rarely have I found more than 5-ply wood in 4-5mm at any hobby shop. The good stuff is available from a few places, only one of which worth mentioning. That is Anderson International Trading.

Anderson International Trading
1171 N. Tustin Ave.
Anaheim, CA 92807
USA
(714) 771-6270
(800) 454-6270
FAX (714) 771-0508

Anderson gives discounts to USBA members.
Now for plans. Visit this site to get some easy plans:

http://boomplans.montesquieu.u-bordeaux.fr/

I would recommend the Pfeil for a first boom.
http://boomplans.montesquieu.u-bordeaux.fr/anglais/desc/Pfeil.html

However, please read the following clip from the FAQ before you make your first boomerang:

The best method for making your first boomerang is to copy a boomerang that works well for you. That's right; you have to buy (or borrow) a boomerang before you can make one. There are many people that I know who have tried to make a boomerang without ever having thrown and caught one successfully. This is preposterous! It is not reasonable to assume that you can make a boomerang that works if you don't know how boomerangs work in the first place. However, I have also known people to make a boomerang that works relatively well when following precise instructions from a source such as the book _Boomerang: How to Throw, Catch and Make It_, by Benjamin Ruhe and Eric Darnell.

That said, let's discuss what tools are necessary for your new hobby.

1. a band saw or scroll saw(for cutting out the general shape of your boomerang
2. a drum sander or belt sander or a rasp and wood file
3. sandpaper (several different grits)
4. water-resistant sealer like polyurethane or an acrylic

So find a boomerang that performs nicely, trace its outline onto your sheet of plywood (you should probably use plywood for your first booms, then on to other materials) and cut it out. Then the rest is just being a copy cat. Shape the boomerang just like your trusty model and take it out to the field for testing BEFORE painting and sealing.

If this is your first attempt at making boomerangs, it might not perform quite like your "prototype". So some adjustments may be necessary. Inspect the two boomerangs carefully and note any differences no matter how insignificant they may seem to you. Reshape and try again.

Hope this helps.

tony

Tony Brazelton
United States Boomerang Association
Secretary and Website Administrator
brazelto@uiuc.edu

******************************************************************************
USBAonline:
http://www.staff.uiuc.edu/~brazelto/USBAinfo.html
******************************************************************************
From - Wed Dec 4 10:11:25 1996
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA25104 for; Tue, 3 Dec 1996 20:24:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.152]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET
     (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA115
     for; Tue, 3 Dec 1996 20:23:52 -0500
Message-ID: <32A4E18D.1E9C@perigee.net>
Date: Tue, 03 Dec 1996 20:27:25 -0600
X-UIDL: 849668915.018
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
Subject: Re: Returning Throwing Sticks
References: <32A1FEFE.1F77@perigee.net> <32A29B65.2A52@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr. Andri-François Bourbeau wrote:

> I certainly wouldn't want one of those killer throwing sticks that I've
> experimented with coming BACK at me! I'm under the impression that
> returning sticks were always light and even in prehistory, mostly used
> for fun.
> Regards
> AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
>
> For thrower, send a HELP command to:
That has been my impression of returning sticks. That's why I'm
interested in information to the contrary. Ted Bailey and his associates
have apparently measured and weighed some of the sticks in museums like
the ones found in Tutankhamon's tomb and replicated them and found that
there are many that return when thrown. As far as accounts I have read
are like the account in "The Land and Wildlife of Australia" by David
Bergamini (1964): "Crouching beside an oxbow lake in one of the half-dry
river courses, a duck hunter would hurl his boomerang above a flight of
oncoming birds. At the same time he would screech like a duck hawk.
Tricked by his calls and by the shadow of the boomerang overhead, the
ducks would dive low into nets staked out or held up by collaborating
hunters farther down the billabong. In stead of falling into the water,
the boomerang, meanwhile, would land at the feet of the thrower and be
ready at hand for the next flight of ducks and the next cast." So, my
impression has been that it was more of a distraction device. Tell me,
do you have any experience taking game with a thrown stick in your
survival trips? I have been out with one and taken many shots but have
not hit a living target yet, although I have been deadly at times on practice, stationery targets and have tested many non-returning throwers. Without a doubt I like the curved variety with beveled edges, convex on either side.

Hey, I think I'll post this to the rest of the THROWER community. Anybody have any thoughts or experience in what Andre and I have been discussing?  ---Benjamin (benjamin@perigee.net)

From - Thu Jan  2 00:25:46 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA07252; Wed, 1 Jan 1997 13:52:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA12606; Wed, 1 Jan 1997 13:50:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 01 Jan 1997 13:54:59 EST
Received: from relay.ic.net (relayla.ic.net [152.160.72.5]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA12598 for ; Wed, 1 Jan 1997 13:50:02
-0500 (EST)
Received: (gmail 20532 invoked from network); 1 Jan 1997 18:04:10 -0000
Received: from falcon.ic.net (HELO ic.net) (152.160.101.1) by relay.ic.net with
SMTP; 1 Jan 1997 18:04:10 -0000
Received: from [152.160.99.22] by ic.net with smtp (Smail3.1.28.1 #6) id
m0vfV0p-003Ervc; Wed, 1 Jan 97 13:03 WET
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Wed, 1 Jan 1997 13:00:46 -0400
To: rang-list@jcn.com
X-UIDL: 852225226.036
From: "Ted E. Bailey"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET
Subject: Updated Boomerang Software
CC: THROWER@dfw.net, Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

If you have received this email message and you do not subscribe to the thrower, rang_list or Primitive Skills email subscription services; and you do not want future notices about boomerang related products, tournaments, and other information, please send me an email message and I'll remove you from my email database. If you do have an interest in boomerangs, please read further.

This is just a short note to let boomerangers know that I spent several hours updating all the boomerang software disks. A complete list of all software can be found at the following URL:
http://ic.net/~tbailey/Boomerang/Shareware.html

Some of the software highlights include:
1: Three complete books about boomerangs with drawings, photographs, etc. These three books are out of print classics that are required reading for anyone who is interested in boomerangs. Every photograph and drawing from the original text is included. These books are available in MS Word 2 (readable with higher versions too) format for DOS/Windows and MS Word 5 (and above) format for Macintosh. Other word processing applications may be able to open these files as well, but I can't guarantee anything. The three boomerang books include:

Michael Hanson's Book: "The Boomerang Book"
John Mauro's Book: "An Introduction to Boomerangs"
Herb Smith's Book: "Boomerangs; Making and Throwing Them"

All three of these books have been replicated with the permission of the copyright owners and I have been granted a license to distribute these files to you as shareware. That means that your only charge is my fee to copy and mail it to you. You may not market these files commercially to others.

2: The boomerang databases have been updated as of 1 January 1997. Some of the more popular files include:

a comprehensive bibliography of boomerang literature
an updated listing of collectable boomerangs with a full description of physical characteristics and collectable value
two comprehensive databases of: USA (1700+) and Overseas (1300+) throwers. This includes everything from addresses to phone/fax/email. This is an excellent source of information for finding other throwers in your city/state/country and for organizing local boomerang throws. You may not use these files for commercial purposes.

Please don't ask for database files in Mac, DOS or WIN formats. These are operating systems, not applications. The available Mac/DOS/Win file formats are listed on the web page mentioned above. Most word processing, spreadsheet and database applications can read the generic tab-text format or can import files from one of the other formats listed. Word Processing and Spreadsheet applications have only limited sorting capability. A database program is preferred for using these files. The files were created using Macintosh MS Works 4.0 and then translated to the other formats.

There are a lot of other software goodies too. Sorry, but I cannot email these files to you, even if you are related or my best friend. You need to order them through the mail. If you live in the USA or Canada and want a printed copy of the software list mailed to you, send me your postal address by email. As a January special, current Boomerang News (paid through issue #33 and beyond) subscribers are entitled to receive their disks without a shipping charge. Orders received after 1 February 1997 will require shipping unless ordered with other boomerang products. You can subscribe to Boomerang News through the instructions on the web page: http://ic.net/~tbailey/Boomerang_News.html New subscribers will receive a 10% discount coupon on Boomerang Man products.

Thanks for taking the time to read this. - Ted Bailey
> ...Rabbitstick Rendezvous...held held near Rexburg, Idaho every
> September. The site is on private land and is just beautiful.

The long running Rabbit Roundup (goes by something like that) is in
south eastern Idaho too. Thousands of rabbits are thrown and clubbed at
after they beat the brush for their enormous population. Traditional
for yearly crop success. Any chance anyone has information on this?
Seems like a fine place to bring your rabbit sticks.

-- Chris
I was looking through a Brigade Quartermasters catalog when I came upon an ad for "Odor-Stop" Long Lasting Deodorant. Supposidly researched secretly by the Russian Army. Only $14.99. Stops odor 8-14 days!
Well...... the active ingredient is simply zinc oxide paste, available in any drug store for about $1.50 a tube. The mechanism of action is simply to kill the odor causing bacteria that live in your skin pores. It's the same idea (and same active ingredient) as the cream (Desitin, I think) used for diaper rash in babies. I have used this method for many years and it does work with absolutely no side effects. Odor protection lasts for me up to three weeks in cold weather. If you want to try this, shower first before going to bed. Apply thoroughly to underarms (also works on feet provided odor is not a result of severe fungal infection). Wash off any excess in the morning. Some people I know have reported that several daily applications are necessary to get the effect going. After that, just use your nose to monitor the "pits" before showering to know when to reapply. I would be interested to know of anyone else's experience along these lines.

Rob

Robert Chatburn, RRT
Director/Respiratory Care
University Hospitals of Cleveland
Instructor/Dept. of Pediatrics
Case Western Reserve University
(216) 844-7930
rlc6@po.cwru.edu
In the Idaho Pacific Northwest we have a nifty bush called the Thimbleberry (Rosaceae, Rubus canadensis L.). It pretty much ranges from Coast to Coast in North America. Grows together with Huckleberry. Thimbleberry leaves are shaped like oversized Maple leaves and though the tops are a little prickly, the broad undersides are quite soft and perfect as field-expedient toilet paper. I almost never use anything else on walkabout. Couple of leaves on a splurge.

Another "Made in Idaho" item of mention in this vein is the "U-Dig-IT. This is a well constructed folding handle stainless steel trowel with a heavy leather or Cordura sheath. Costs about $15-$18 and will last
forever. Advertised as "The Cadillac of Cat Hole Digging Implements."
Standard issue for the US Forest Service. Doubles as a signaling
mirror, fish scaler and as a firepit and encampment entrenching tool.
One of my favorite "cutlery" friends. I've seen it sold in catalogs
like Brigade Quartermaster and Boundary Waters. Really recommend this.
Boise's gift to the world (if you don't count potatoes).

Chris
diogenes@qnet.com (Ron Hood) wrote:

>Anyway, this person objected to my use of the term "turd" when referring to
>a feces or scat. Okö.. The intent of my language is to communicate
>information and ideas in a way that is understandable to the largest number
>of persons. I believe a "turd" is better known than a "scat", so I chose
>that word.

Turds..... Ahhh .....What a wonderful subject. As a matter of fact it's of
my favorite. I find them quite amusing. After Ron got this message, I
started thinking........about turds and how much it really does suck when
there's no toilet paper. Wiping with a flat rock is really interesting.

I can't count the times I've been walking on a trail and see a wad of toilet
paper sticking up with a brown steamer attached to it just begging for my
dog to munch it. First it makes me laugh, then it makes me angry.. So
anyway, I looked up "toilet paper" in the "Leave No Trace" Outdoor Skills &
Ethics book endorsed by the Forest Service and Department of Agriculture to
find out what they think should be done about using toilet paper in the
wilderness. Heres what it says exclamation points and everything:

"Toilet paper must be disposed of properly!..... The low-impact camper
willing to go the extra mile might consider foregoing toilet paper
altogether and using "natural" alternatives. Popular forms of natural
toilet paper include aspen or sage leaves, stones, smooth sticks, fir cones
and snow. Obviously some experimentation is necessary to make this practice
work for you, but it is worth a try!"
Who wrote this book? Who the hell wipes their ass with a FIR CONE!! And can you imagine wiping with a wad of snow? These amusing images are imbedded in my mind. On the serious side though, if that's all you had, then you'd have to use it wouldn't you? (giggle)

Anyway, this brings me to another question for all you out there. What did the indians REALLY wipe with?

Gotta go ... Ron and I are going to make some maggot stew for dinner tonight. Mmmmm, Yummmm. Don't want to miss that! :)

And always remember ... a happy steamer is a Grogan.

Karen Hood
Hoods Woods

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 10 00:09:46 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA02811; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 11:59:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA29652; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 11:58:03 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 12:02:42 EST
Received: from mach1.wlu.ca (mach1.wlu.ca [192.54.242.17]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA29644 for ; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 11:57:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: by mach1.wlu.ca (8.6.12/1.35) id LAA17405; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 11:57:17 -0500
I've heard that the use of dry corn cobs was a fairly popular choice before the advent of toilet paper. It may not have been used by the Natives but it was apparently practised by early settlers in North America. Once the kernels have been taken off and the cob allowed to dry, the remaining kernel husk, or what ever it's called, on the cob is fairly soft. I don't know how comfortable it would have been, but it sounds a lot more pleasant to use than a rock, smooth stick, or snow!

From - Fri Jan 10 04:09:19 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA03549; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 13:43:34 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA01253; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 13:43:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 13:47:51 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA01245 for
Michael Teal u wrote:
>
> I've heard that the use of dry corn cobs was a fairly popular choice
> before the advent of toilet paper. It may not have been used by the
> Natives but it was apparently practised by early settlers in North
> America. Once the kernels have been taken off and the cob allowed to
> dry, the remaining kernel husk, or what ever it's called, on the cob is
> fairly soft. I don't know how comfortable it would have been, but it
> sounds a lot more pleasant to use than a rock, smooth stick, or snow!

I think old timers soaked them in wood ash and water which caused them
to swell. They then dried them and they would be soft and fluffy.
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 10 05:00:37 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA04916; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:25:34 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA03637; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:25:05 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:29:46 EST
Received: from kim.teleport.com (kim.teleport.com [192.108.254.26]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA03631 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 16:24:53
-0500 (EST)
Received: from ip-salem1-17.teleport.com (ip-salem1-17.teleport.com
[206.163.117.19]) by kim.teleport.com (8.8.3/8.7.3) with SMTP id
NAA24169; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 13:28:29 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Fri, 10 Jan 1997 13:28:29 -0800 (PST)
Message-ID: <1.5.4.16.19970110132836.1b97e104@mail.teleport.com>
X-Sender: garyl@mail.teleport.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Light Version 1.5.4 (16)
MIME-Version: 1.0
Hello All,

I have been reading this "turd" and "toilet paper" subject the last few days and never have I laughed so hard. It brings to mind another friend of mine who thought he was pretty good in the woods but really knew vary little. Seems he learned what he knew about the woods from watching old movies about mountain men. Well one day he he had to go, and in fact he did go. When the deed was done, he thought not having any toilet paper he would use some leaves to wipe with. He should have known more about his plants. It was Poison Oak. From that time on he used toilet paper.

Well I must say, I use toilet paper when in the woods and then I bury it at least a foot deep and away from any water. I'm not about to stick anything up there like a stone, a pine cone, a corn cob, or a stick. The vary thought of it makes me think pain, tenderness and deformity :-) All I can say to those that do use these other things to wipe with is that you are better woods folks than I :-) Keep them coming folks, I love this stuff.

Gary lowell
Salem,OR

At 11:57 AM 1/10/97 -0500, you wrote:
> I've heard that the use of dry corn cobs was a fairly popular choice
> before the advent of toilet paper. It may not have been used by the
> Natives but it was apparently practised by early settlers in North
> America. Once the kernels have been taken off and the cob allowed to
> dry, the remaining kernel husk, or what ever it's called, on the cob is
> fairly soft. I don't know how comfortable it would have been, but it
> sounds a lot more pleasant to use than a rock, smooth stick, or snow!
Subject: Re: More Turds

I think Karen Hood got us going down this turd paper trail. So Karen, here's one for you

HOW TO SHIT IN THE WOODS by Kathleen Meyer, Ten Speed Press, PO Box 7123, Berkeley, CA, 94707 ISBN 0-89815-319-0

A Sample of the TOC:
1. Anatomy of a Crap
2. Digging the Hole
3. When you Can't Dig a Hole
4. Trekker's Trots
5. For Women Only: How Not to Pee in Your Boots
6. What? No TP? or Doing Without

includes an appendix entitled "Definition of Shit"

Happy Reading

Rob

Robert Chatburn, RRT
Director/Respiratory Care
University Hospitals of Cleveland
Instructor/Dept. of Pediatrics
Case Western Reserve University
(216) 844-7930
rlc6@po.cwru.edu
I've heard that the use of dry corn cobs was a fairly popular choice before the advent of toilet paper. It may not have been used by the Natives but it was apparently practised by early settlers in North America. Once the kernels have been taken off and the cob allowed to dry, the remaining kernel husk, or whatever it's called, on the cob is fairly soft. I don't know how comfortable it would have been, but it sounds a lot more pleasant to use than a rock, smooth stick, or snow!

Heh, now this brought up memories that made me laugh! Although pretty much raised a city boy myself, my grandparents lived in the country and used kerosene lamps, a wood burning stove in the kitchen, outside water pump, and yes, the little shack out back for making water and steamers (did I get the turd, er, term, correct for that? ;^) There was never any toilet paper out there... but that's where I learned the meaning of "too hard and too slick", by personal experimentation with the occassional Sears and Roebuck catalog that was in there. It has to do with why the plain white pages were all getting ripped out and the glossy colored pages were left!

But, to the point, when the catalogs were all gone, there was always a couple of buckets of cobs. Most of the cobs were a reddish-brown color, but some were a creamy white. I asked my grandpa what the difference was and with a wink he told me, "First you use a brown one and then you use a white one to see if you need to use another brown one." I was mortified at the time, but have since seen packages of 2 brown and 1 white cob packaged with that saying, for sale in some cheesy tourist shops. Anyway, I'd pick an old cob over a pine cone any day!

-glen monaghan
JWither240@AOL.COM wrote:
>
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 12:05:30 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id MAA16228 for
; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 12:07:12
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.90 (srv2s9.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.90]) by
chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id MAA06234 for
; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 12:10:39
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D82C8F.10AA@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 00:13:03 +0000
X-UIDL: 853089211.000
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id
MAA16229
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id MAA12544
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
MAA16229
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

JWither240@AOL.COM wrote:
>
> here in the southwest, mullen leaves work just fine.

Hello,

Mullein leaves (assuming you are talking of Verbascum spp.) have been used as a blushing agent in lieu of reddish makeup. When skin is rubbed with mullein, microscopic hairs actually abrade the skin, which makes it blush. If it makes face cheeks blush, maybe it will also make bum cheeks blush!

> I would like to see some discussion on making cordage: raw materials, methods of spinning, splicing, etc.

Please ask a specific question on these subjects, and we will be happy to oblige. And please everyone, keep renaming subject headers to match message content. Thanks!

Blushingly yours,

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÅois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

From - Thu Jan 16 11:06:54 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA20313; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:46:47 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA06721; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:45:37 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:43:42 EST
Received: from mailgate1.boeing.com ([130.42.28.16]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA06715 for
I have used sphagnum moss a couple of times but only the sanitized kind right of off a tree limb. It does have a tendency to leave some residual particles of plant matter behind. Haha but it seems to get the job done and I believe it has medicinal values. Does anyone know of any???

BARUCH Attah Ba HaSHEM HaAdonai Y'shua HaMashiach
                                      Howard N.V. Barker
                                      B-YT51 266-2085
                                      MAILSTOP 39-KM
> haha but it seems to get the job done and i believe it has
> medicinal values. does anyone know of any????

This is one of those a friend told a friend of mine stories so I don't
know if it is true. Maybe someone else out there has heard of this. I
guess durring some major war (Civil War I believe) troops ran out of
sterile dressings. They used sphagnum moss and the wounds healed FASTER
than with sterile dressings. Anybody else heard of this?

Jeff

--

email: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu
home page: http://www.ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens

--

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
BKP wrote:

> snipped IAW the rules. ...some major war (Civil War I believe) troops
> ran out of sterile dressings. They used sphagnum moss and the wounds
> healed FASTER than with sterile dressings. Anybody else heard of this?
I recollect that sphagnum was being harvested in Scotland during the Hitler war for possible use as a dressing. Dried sphagnum is highly absorbent and was intended for use as a dressing material instead of scarce cotton wool. A thick layer of sphagnum in a bed is a practical help in nocturnal enuresis.

--
Alexander MacLennan  sandymac@sandymac.demon.co.uk
>snipped IAW the rules. ...some major war (Civil War I believe) troops
>ran out of sterile dressings. They used sphagnum moss and the wounds
>healed FASTER than with sterile dressings. Anybody else heard of this?

Yes, as a matter of fact family oral history (backed up by two letters)
indicates that this is what saved my relative's life (can't remeber the
exact relationship, cousin or something like). Letter mentions how short
of supplies and using the moss then 2nd letter mentions again and how he
was now healing. This guy was shot at the Wilderness.
--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
-- Jeff Stevens wrote:
>
> > haha but it seems to get the job done and i believe it has
> > medicinal values. does anyone know of any????

Not sure if this counts, but at archaeological sites in the arctic we
would wrap organic artifacts in sphagnum moss that grew in the damp
areas around ponds (though we were told by botanists that it was not
*technically* sphagnum, but a relative). This kept the artifacts moist
because drying too quickly can cause cracking and damage. It was also a
cheap (free, actually) packing material, did a good job of protecting
the artifacts in transport AND was supposed to prohibit the growth of
fungus and bacteria. Whether that was an attribute of real sphagnum, our faux-sphagnum, or our imaginations I can't say.

Cheers,
Tim

--
Tim Rast                                        t64tr@morgan.ucs.mun.ca
Graduate Student: Archaeology Unit                  (709) 576-4456
Memorial University of Newfoundland
Be Young, Have Fun, KNAP FLINT!: http://www.ucs.mun.ca/~t64tr/knap.html
I've always been taught that if you must use toilet paper in the woods, always take a trowel or small shovel, and bury it at least one foot deep, and/or cover it with a rock. Also crap far away from all water sources. I believe that most primitives used their hands and then washed afterwards or a combination of various barks and or leaves. It is still an insult in some societies to touch someone with which ever hand was traditionally used for wiping (I admit that I read this in an old airforce survival manual and cannot find it just now).

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com
James E. Burdine wrote:
>
> I've always been taught that if you must use toilet paper in the woods,  
> always take a trowel or small shovel, and bury it at least one foot deep, 
> and/or cover it with a rock. Also crap far away from all water sources. We have  
> been doing this for years, but, now can't on military  
> reservations. Too much of it buried here and there and we have to use  
> the porta potties (jumpin' johns, creaky crappers, steamer shacks, mini  
> hotels, etc.. ;) you get the picture). However, if it will wipe, is not  
> going to give me a rash (probably), is within reach (with a little  
> effort) and can be buried, I have used it. To be honest primitive didn't  
> matter (I guess that is my "primitive" instinct).  
>
> Seriously, we bury it as much to keep it from being discovered as to  
> protect the environment. A crap cache I guess!

Great thread of actual use to me. I really have enjoyed it but never can
find a sapling to bend over and sit on at just the right time.

--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Fri Jan 10 04:10:01 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA04496; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:46:22 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA03025; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:43:59 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:48:39 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA03021 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:43:47
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.61 (srv3s27.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.178]) by
chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id PAA26360 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:47:13
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D5BC4E.671@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Fri, 10 Jan 1997 03:49:34 +0000
X-UIDL: 852929974.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Karen Hood asked:

> Anyway, this brings me to another question for all you out there. What did
> the indians REALLY wipe with?

I love the net: you can discuss anything, even hemorrhoids...

Here are some answers:

The easiest and best way to wipe your bum out there (in my humble opinion) is to grab the base of a small leafy sapling and drag your hand up along it. This leaves you with a huge wad of leaves in your hand which you can use to do the job. There are very few leaves in the wilderness which are large enough or strong enough to do the job alone!

The problem is that when you use the one leaf method, the finger always ends up besides or through the leaf. Then you try to shake off the "merde" and accidentally hit your finger on a protuding stump. Ouch! and the finger automatically comes to your mouth for relief...

On the serious side, the huge wad of leaves does work very well, and even in the winter, there are always some types of trees (such as beech - Fagus grandifolia) on which dried leaves persist. Don't forget, it
doesn't matter how small the leaves are, as long as you've got LOTS of them.

Failing that, cattail heads will work if they are still solid enough not to fall apart. Bundles of grass work but leave little bits stuck as "willnots" (Will not want to be removed from there). Same problem with moss, it works but you end up with willnots. Birchbark is no good, it's too stiff, fingers go through it, and millions of willnots, especially if the white layer is used.

In Africa, the standard way of the Hausa people I visited is to use a long thin millet stalk, stick it between the legs, hold one end in each hand, and turn slowly while pulling back. This technique works with cattail stalks and other plant stalks. If you have a knife, you can whittle a smooth long stick also. Round smooth rocks from river beds, especially oblong ones, are pretty good. I've done all of this many many times and it works well.

I've also used snow, but not loose snow. Make an oblong snowball first. Usually, I use leaves, grass or stick methods for first wipe, and snow for the final wipe.

In remote areas in summer, my second wipe is always with water at the lake's edge. Then, with wet hands, I go roll them around in the cooled off ashes from the fire (that's where soap comes from, remember), and come back to the water's edge for final cleaning.

On a trip to India, I noticed that all poor people would wipe their bums with their left hand and water this way, then use soap for washing. The worst insult made to thieves in the past was to cut off their right hand, forcing them to eat and wipe with the same hand.

Of course, when animal skins were available, especially rabbit, that was certainly used also, maybe even washed and dried for the purpose. I know rabbit fur was used as a sanitary pad for Indian women. (They also used finely tanned buckskin tubes filled with spaghnum moss for this purpose.) I obviously have not tried this.
I am convinced that the majority of primitive people used a first wipe with, in order of preference, leaves, smooth sticks, rocks, the second wipe being with water or snow. Without the second wipe, your brown spot turns red mighty quick.

While on this subject, a green tree about 3 inches in diameter, bent over, makes a great seat. After the job is done, the seat flies back up into shape, waiting for the next customer. Another very important technique is to place your heels on a piece of wood 2 inches high. Try it. It is infinitely easier to squat that way.

When burying your scat, it is better to do it not too deep, stay within the organic soil for faster decomposition. Then again, just tossing an old log or rock on top is good enough in remote regions.

I know this was a shitty post,

Have a good dump.

AndrÈ
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0000

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sat Jan 11 22:57:29 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA10155; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 00:07:00 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA13992; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 00:05:34 -0500 (EST)
here in the southwest, mullen leaves work just fine.

I would like to see some discussion on making cordage: raw materials, methods of spinning, splicing, etc.

pece,
JW

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
I am convinced that the majority of primitive people used a first wipe with, in order of preference, leaves, smooth sticks, rocks, the second Well, didn't the truly primitive diet make for easier to clean butts? So that lingering material was probably not too serious a problem.

I've read where studies indicate that the crude fiber diets would often pass thru the gut in less than 30 min.
On the other hand, our modern, refined foods stay with us much too long.

b-man, rich

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"*
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG......sent anywhere!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

>>>>>> bmanrich@iamerica.net<<<<

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Jan 13 21:06:06 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca (poste.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA20632; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 12:29:15 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA26497; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 12:28:17 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 12:26:23 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by
poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id MAA26492 for
; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 12:28:03
-0500 (EST)
Received: from Quantum.qnet.com (lanc00-10.ca.qnet.com [207.155.34.40]) by
ns2.qnet.com (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA16790; Mon, 13 Jan 1997
09:32:11 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Message-ID: <2.2.32.1997011313173352.00713c74@ pop3.av.qnet.com>
X-Sender: diogenes@ pop3.av.qnet.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Pro Version 2.2 (32)
I've read where studies indicate that the crude fiber diets would often pass thru the gut in less than 30 min.

On the other hand, our modern, refined foods stay with us much too long.

In addition to the "smudge factor" of modern foods over native foods, the issue of butt hair needs to be considered since clingers need a rope to hold. Now, can any of you gifted researchers answer the question "Does a Caucasian butt have a higher hair density than a native american butt?" and "Did hair density result in a higher cling ratio per cubic Cm of steam?"

Gender differences may give us a clue. A trusted ass-ociate of mine conducted a "cling test". Her fuzz less ness had a very low clinger ratio. In fact smudging was the only difficulty she reported.

One other thing. Some years ago I was experimenting with Cattails as food. When the tops were past their prime but boiled thouroughly, they could be eaten, but not digested. The result I discovered was a feeling of fullness long after the meal. Eventually, after a complicated journey, the material had to re-emerge. Just before it did there was a period of profound gas discharges. Had I been in the city it most certainly would have annoyed the neighbors. Finally they jumped free, fast! There resting on the earth was what looked like a cylindrical pillow, a "self wiping" grogen if you will. Tho' it could have been broken up and dried for use as insulation, I decided to end the experiment.

Peace
Ron Hood

Dr. Ron Hood
P.O. Box 383
Lake Hughes, CA, 93532
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Jan 13 21:06:28 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA21559; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 14:34:36 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA28214; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 14:33:10 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 14:30:23 EST
Received: from amber.ccs.neu.edu (amber.ccs.neu.edu [129.10.111.100]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA28191 for ; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 14:32:04 -0500 (EST)
Received: from denali.ccs.neu.edu (jstevens@denali.ccs.neu.edu [129.10.113.75]) by amber.ccs.neu.edu (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA07829 for ; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 14:36:13 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Mon, 13 Jan 1997 14:36:12 -0500 (EST)
X-UIDL: 853250488.040
From: Jeff Stevens
> > I am convinced that the majority of primitive people used a first wipe
> > with, in order of preference, leaves, smooth sticks, rocks, the second

My personal favorite is the lichen that grows in spruce and fir trees. I am not sure what it is called. In fact I have been trying to find out its name for quite some time. Out west it is called Old Man's Beard or Usnea. I don't know the scientific name or even if it is the same stuff for that matter.

- Jeff
Some time ago someone wrote:

＞I am convinced that the majority of primitive people used a first wipe
＞with, in order of preference, leaves, smooth sticks, rocks, the second

My personal favourite: sphagnum moss. While it is often damp, it does get you clean.

/Par

--
Par Leijonhufvud          par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
Capital Punishment: when the government taxes you to get capital, in order
to go into business in competition with you, and then taxes the profits
on your business in order to cover its losses.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Jan 13 21:08:51 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA27165; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 02:37:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA04727; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 02:37:01 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 02:35:08 EST
Received: from priv-sys05-le0.agt.net (clgrps05.agt.net [198.161.156.16]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id CAA04724 for ; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 02:36:50
-0500 (EST)
Received: from Bad.EHLO.Input ([204.209.203.199]) by mail.telusplanet.net with ESMTP id <460976-22442>; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 00:40:45 -0700
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853250488.128
From: "Kelly Harlton"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, kharlton@AGT.NET
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, kharlton@AGT.NET
Subject: Re: The art of wiping your bum
Date: Mon, 13 Jan 1997 23:55:25 -0700
X-MSM Mail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1155
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Message-ID: <97Jan14.004045-0700_mst.460976-22442+16089@mail.telusplanet.net>
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
Anyone please correct me if I'm wrong but I think there are two kinds; one is light colored and one is dark. (sometimes they grow together) Your right, out west we call it old mans beard, Their scientific names are Usnea and Alectoria but not sure which one is which. Has several uses; medicinal, edible and utilitarian (aside from your suggested use which I am going to try).

Another obvious wipe I use that I haven't seen posted yet is; Spruce boughs. (they rank right up there with Pine cones and corn cobs) Actually this "directional" wipe does work not too bad as you can 2 hand (one in front and one behind) and draw them through, they feel quite soft. Biggest disadvantage is some of the needles fall off into your underwear and you get "needled" periodically through the day. If you want to be enviro (we all do) and if the branches are low enough you can leave them attached to the tree. (Be careful where you collect your needles for your spruce needle tea or you may be in for a nice hot "steamer" cup of tea. Gulp!)

Kelly Harlton
> > it's name for quite some time.  Out west it is called Old Man's Beard or
> > Usnea.  I don't know the scientific name or even if it is the same stuff
> > for that matter.
> >
> > -Jeff

> Anyone please correct me if I'm wrong but  I think there are two kinds; one
> is light colored and one is dark. (sometimes they grow together)
> Your right, out west we call it old mans beard, Their scientific names are
> Usnea and Alectoria but not sure which one is which. Has several uses;
> medicinal, edible and utilitarian (aside from your suggested use which I am
Quick question: from the postings I think this is also known as Squaw's Hair? The dark one, anyway, if there are actually two kinds and not just one that is drier than the other? I've often used this as tinder, along with the dead small branches found close in on the trunk and usually dry even in the most disparaging downpour, due to the tree's upper limbs and foliage.

Bill B.

P.S. I grew up calling these small (usually 1/4" dia. or smaller) twigs Squaw Wood, because of the Squaw Hair usually being found in the same spot.
> If you want to be enviro (we all do) and if the branches are low >enough you can
leave them attached to the tree. (Be careful where you >collect your needles for
your spruce needle tea or you may be in for a >nice hot "steamer" cup of tea. Gulp!)
>
Kelly Harlton

ROTFL.....sorry....know we are not supposed to address this list with
side comments but I pictured someone "wiping their bum" with a tree
branch still attached to the tree and fell out of chair with
laughter....ahem...
Sherri

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Par Leijonhufvud wrote:

> My personal favourite: sphagnum moss. While it is often damp, it does
> get you clean.
>
> /Par

I want to second that, Par. Spagnum is without a doubt the best I have found, and luckily I live in an area that has it in abundance. I'm fairly certain that spagnum has anticeptic and germicidal properties also, which make it a clear favorite. As one friend of mine is fond of saying, "spagnum for your spincter!" (ha, ha!)

Mark
>I want to second that, Par. Spagnum is without a doubt the best I have found

I have tried sphagnum only once and it totally turned me off. I just
don't like the fact that it is wet and cold. Do you guys use it wet right off the ground or do you process it in any way. I have only used it we right off the ground. I don't much like it.

Jeff
--

e-mail: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu
home page: http://www.ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens
--

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 16 11:08:14 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA23013; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 22:40:58 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA09767; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 22:39:39 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 22:37:47 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA09764 for ; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 22:39:26 -0500 (EST)
Received: from Quantum.qnet.com (palm00-14.ca.qnet.com [207.155.33.44]) by ns2.qnet.com (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA22207; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 19:43:34 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Jeff said;
>I have tried sphagnum only once and it totally turned me off. I just
>don't like the fact that it is wet and cold. Do you guys use it wet
>right off the ground or do you process it in any way. I have only used
>it we right off the ground. I don't much like it.

I process it when I can. It's a little like blow drying....The best
technique for drying sphagnum that I know.

Eat two pounds of beans, six ounces of spinach, two eggs and a chili dog.
Wait two hours. When the urge hits, back up to the sphagnum and let 'er rip.
The hot wind will blow all loose material and moisture into low earth orbit.
Tuck in the resulting loose tissue, and apply Prep "H". As an additional
benefit, there will be no hair, no clingers and no little field monkeys
dropping from that cheeky speaker for some time.

A word of caution, the above recipe has been deemed a class one explosive.
Do not attempt this near open flame!

Ron
"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"
Dr. Ron Hood
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"
The art of wiping your bum (Actually comments from me on eating cattail "past their prime")

References: <2.2.32.19970113173352.00713c74@pop3.av.qnet.com>

Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
diogenes@survival.com wrote:

One other thing. Some years ago I was experimenting with Cattails as food. When the tops were past their prime but boiled thoroughly, they could be eaten, but not digested. The result I discovered was a feeling of fullness long after the meal. Eventually, after a complicated journey, the material had to re-emerge. Just before it did there was a period of profound gas discharges. Had I been in the city it most certainly would have annoyed the neighbors. Finally they jumped free, fast! There resting on the earth was what looked like a cylindrical pillow, a "self wiping" grogan if you will. Tho' it could have been broken up and dried for use as insulation, I decided to end the experiment.

Regarding eating cattails past their prime. I assume you mean they have turned to the brown, full of fluff, seed pod. If this is the case, you may want to try this. The Paiute eat cattail seeds. A friend of mine and I were scratching our heads about how they separated the seeds from so much fluff. Finally we just lit a pile of fluff which of course disappeared with a *poof* and continued adding a little at a time until what was left was some nice toasty seeds. Tasty but tiny.
Karen Hood Wrote:

>Toilet paper must be disposed of properly!..... The low-impact camper
>willing to go the extra mile might consider foregoing toilet paper
>altogether and using "natural" alternatives. Popular forms of natural
>toilet paper include aspen or sage leaves, stones, smooth sticks, fir cones
>and snow. Obviously some experimentation is necessary to make this practice
>work for you, but it is worth a try!

>Who wrote this book? Who the hell wipes their ass with a FIR CONE!! And
>can you imagine wiping with a wad of snow? These amusing images are imbedded
>in my mind. On the serious side though, if that's all you had, then you'd
>have to use it wouldn't you? (giggle)
Anyway, this brings me to another question for all you out there. What did the indians REALLY wipe with?

Karen,

FIR CONES are remarkably SOFT—as long as you wipe *with* the scales.

Also...snow is not too bad! REALLY!!! Sometimes there is nothing else to reach for here in the north (Montana).

For lack of anything at all, you can always use "ranger wipe". With ranger wipe you wipe twice. First you wipe your butt, then you wipe your finger. It is for this reason that in many undeveloped countries the people customarily eat with only one hand—the other one!

If you "wipe twice" then be sure to sterilize your hands afterwards by vigorously rubbing with aromatic/antiseptic herbs like sage, juniper, or yarrow. Just about any highly aromatic plant will have antiseptic properties. As long as you can identify the most dangerous plants in your region, then you can safely use any others with aromatic properties.

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
E-mail your address to me for information about my 3 books. REALLY!
On Thu, 16 Jan 1997, Jeff Stevens wrote:

> I want to second that, Par. Spagnum is without a doubt the best I have
> found
>
> I have tried sphagnum only once and it totally turned me off. I just
> don't like the fact that it is wet and cold. Do you guys use it wet
> right off the ground or do you process it in any way. I have only used
> it right off the ground. I don't much like it.
It can be used as is, but what I generally do is grab a handful, squeeze out as much water as I can, and then use it. If I was in a long term camp (more than overnight, at the least) I might be bothered to dry some inside my shelter or on a stick near the fire. Oh, and do make sure to pick out at least *most* of the pine needles that is mixed up with the moss. Makes good field dressings, if nothing else.

Related question: I am told that women can use wads of (washed and dried) sphagnum as a sanitary napkin during their period. Anyone who has actually used this? I sometimes get questions when I teach courses, and being male it is all out of books for me, with no opportunities to experiment.

/Par

--
Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
Disclaimer :=> Everything above is a true statement,
for sufficiently false values of true.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 17 23:52:53 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA23562; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 00:24:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA10827; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 00:23:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 00:21:23 EST
Received: from ki.se (mbox.ki.se [130.237.207.77]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA10824 for ; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 00:23:04 -0500 (EST)
Received: by ki.se id AA07177 (5.67a/IDA-1.5 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca); Fri, 17 Jan 1997 06:28:25

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/hygiene1.htm
On 16 Jan 1997, HOWARD BARKER wrote:

> I have used sphagum moss a couple of times but only the sanitized kind right of
> off a tree limb. it does have a tendency to leave some residual particles of
> plant matter behind. haha but it seems to get the job done and i believe it has
> medicinal values. does anyone know of any????

> From trees? You are not talking Usnea or Alectoria? I've only ever seen
> it in bogs and marches. But, yes, sphagnum has some antimicrobial
> properties, IIRC.

/Par

--
Par Leijonhufvud                  par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
Disclaimer :=> Everything above is a true statement,
for sufficiently false values of true.
Usnea or Alectoria, I don't know Par. I've never even heard of them.
I live in Western WAshington, USA some plases around are like swamps.
The moss I'm refering to usually grow on tree limbs near streams and
other bodys of water, and is somewhat stringy, would probably make good
tinder for fires, and is green with a little yellow.

Please advice me on this, although it was very necc. to use this moss
when i did, I don't want to wipe with some poisonous moss stuff.:)

BARUCH Attah Ba HaSHEM HaAdonai Y'shua HaMashiach
    Howard N.V. Barker
    B-YT51 266-2085
    MAILSTOP    39-KM
On 17 Jan 1997, HOWARD BARKER wrote:

> Usnea or Alectoria, I don't know Par. I've never even heard of them.

I'll quote a post from a few days ago to this list:
On Tue, 14 Jan 1997, Tom Elpel wrote:

# USNEACEAE
# Alectoria-Black Tree Lichen* The black tree lichen is stringy and "moss" like. Montana Indians washed and soaked the lichen, then cooked it for one to two days in a steam pit. The cooked lichen was eaten or dried and powdered and used as a mush or thickener later. It is reported that Flathead Indian families ate 25 pounds of the lichen each year (Hart).
# Evernia- The plant is edible (Sturtevant). A thick tea is used on running sores (Murphey).
# Letharia-Wolf Lichen* This bright yellow tree lichen contains a highly toxic acid. It was once combined with animal fat and nails and used in Europe to kill wolves (Vitt). It is also used as a dye plant.
# Usnea-Old Man's Beard* The lichen is boiled for use as a dye (Gilmore). It is used medicinally as an antibiotic (Klein). (Usnea is a light grey color. Use the "rubberband" test for positive identification: break the stems and inside you will find a white, rubbery core that stretches a little like a rubberband.)

> I live in Western WAshington, USA some plases around are like swamps.
> The moss I'm refering to usually grow on tree limbs near streams and other bodys of water, and is somewhat stringy, would probably make good tinder for fires, and is green with a little yellow.

> Please advice me on this, although it was very necc. to use this moss when i did, I don't want to wipe with some poisonous moss stuff.:)

Hard to tell from your description, but I doubt it's sphagnum, which is the bogforming moss of the northern forrests. The color fits, though. Anyone familliar with the are and can help out on the possible ID?

/Par

--
Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
Disclaimer :=> Everything above is a true statement,
for sufficiently false values of true.
Jeff Stevens wrote:

> I have tried sphagnum only once and it totally turned me off. I just
> don't like the fact that it is wet and cold. Do you guys use it wet
> right off the ground or do you process it in any way.

Right off the "ground" (or bog to be more precise) for me. The wet and cold part doesn't seem to matter once I'm out there long enough to need to use the stuff.

Mark
At 05:34 PM 01/16/97 -0500, you wrote:
>> haha but it seems to get the job done and i believe it has
>> medicinal values. does anyone know of any????
>
> This is one of those a friend told a friend of mine stories so I don't
> know if it is true. Maybe someone else out there has heard of this. I
> guess durring some major war (Civil War I believe) troops ran out of
> sterile dressings. They used sphagnum moss and the wounds healed FASTER
> than with sterile dressings. Anybody else heard of this?
>
> Jeff
>
> --
>
> I've never heard of this, but I have read several times (never tried it
> though) that spider web makes a good bandage. It even has its own antibodies.
Heaven help us when God's tears of sorrow
are dried by the heat of his anger.
HOWARD BARKER wrote:

> I have used sphagum moss a couple of times but only the sanitized kind right of
> off a tree limb. it does have a tendency to leave some residual particles of
> plant matter behind. haha but it seems to get the job done and i believe it has
> medicinal values. does anyone know of any????

I've heard of it being used to dress and pack wounds, although I can't say I've tried it. The Indigenous folks in this area used sphagnum to pack baby diapers. It absorbs moisture better than most sponges I've seen.

Another non-medicinal use is for insulating shelters. It's especially effective as an insulator after it's dry, though. I have found this to be extremely useful, especially in regions like mine where ground debris of any quality is scarce or non-existent at certain times of the year.

Mark
snipped IAW Andre's instructions.

> The Indigenous folks in this area used sphagnum to pack baby diapers.  
> It absorbs moisture better than most sponges I've seen.

I have a wolf (coyote?) skin diaper made to use moss as the absorbent. I have pictures of me wearing it. Can I vouch for it's effectiveness or comfort? No way! But I can say that I was cute!

--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country
I can only speak practically about insects in the U.S. however, it is my experience and also from things I have read that any insect is edible. Priority-wise you would want to avoid insects with poison and stingers, however, there are ways to prepare even these, similar to eating venomous snakes, remove the poisonous parts, then prepare the rest of the insect. Of course this means having a knowledge of where the poisonous insects poison sacs are located. You also want to remove all parts that would hang in your throat, like legs and wings. It is also best to remove the head in most cases. All wild meat should be cooked thoroughly, for wild animals contain parasites that can get into your system, this includes insects, even small ones. Insects may be roasted and ground to a powder an mixed in a stew with other edibles. This is more palatable in most cases. This is also practical whenever you have several small things to eat, to make a stew and drink the broth and whatever is cooked in it. In some cases you can even strain out the solids and drink the broth for nutritional value. Most insects are high in nutritional content, like grasshoppers. Grubs are high in fat and nutrition.

One thing to keep in mind in hunting any animal you are going to eat is to never expend more energy in capturing it than it is going to give back to you upon consumption. Observe when insects are least active, if they are a type of insect that is particularly active, like a
Grasshopper. Grasshoppers crawl to the top of grass blades during the night and become very dormant and still. They are most easily captured in the early morning, while still dormant and smacked with a twig and gathered into a basket or pocket. I have read that Indians would drive the grasshoppers across a field to another group of Indians waiting with dried grass in a row across a field that they would light and roast them on the spot. I have not tested this, o, I don't know how practical it would be or if it even works. It could be heresay.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Dr. A. F. Bourbeau wrote:

> I hate eating bugs! But it sure is a great subject for debate! I too
could go on and on about hunting and trapping but will be patient and
wait for a primitive skills group to start up.
>
> Ben, stop teasing me with these great subjects! I love it too much!
>
> AndrÈ
Bugs are definitely low on my list of survival foods, too. Hey, did you by any chance check out the Food Insects Newsletter I reviewed in the the TRIBE newsletter? $5.00 for a subscription it is worth checking out just for the fun of it! ---Benjamin (benjamin@perigee.net)
Aparently insects have been adding nutrition to our diets for quite some time. It wasn't unusual for hard tack and salt beef to get wormy, that is get maggots and other larva and men would eat it, because it was all they had. I've eaten ants, tart. Accepted technique for eating any insect is to toss them in a basket with coals from your fire then remove legs and wings and eat the body. The larger tarantulas apparently taste much like crab. To eat them you need to tie the legs back and then toss them onto a bed of coals. Make sure you suck or split all the meat out of the legs. I also hear that some people dry the insects, pull off the legs and wings and then grind them up and use them as an additive to soups. I've read that mayflies were an important part of the diet for Indians in areas where they have large swarms of them.

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com

well,
i'm supposed to camp with a friend of mine from south louisanna this weekend. he says he is gwine-a teach me how to eat dem insects.
his theory is that they are very plentiful, and that they require a minimum of energy expenditure to catch. he says "you would be amazed at the food available in a rotting log -- look at dem bears, dey eaten grubs"

now from my limited reading on the matter, most insects and such are ok to eat, expect for the parasites, etc. that they might be hosting.
so the question becomes .. if one cooks-em, can he eat with gusto, without worry about ill effects? what can't you eat in the way of grubs and insects?

now if my buddy is popping these little fellows in raw, do I do likewise, or be a woosy and say naw i got a cook-em first?

in a prolonged low light longterm survival situations, grubs, fungus et alia, might be a food solution. photosynthesis will be zip, but you will have a plenty of decaying plant matter.

what say ??
Date: Tue, 14 Jan 1997 16:50:22 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, hmesick@GOLDINC.COM
X-UIDL: 853289744.000
From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: RE:Eating the little folks
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> well,
> 
> i'm supposed to camp with a friend of mine from south louisanna this
> weekend. he says he is gwine-a teach me how to eat dem insects.
> his theory is that they are very plentiful, and that they require a
> minimum of energy expenditure to catch. he says "you would be amazed at
> the food available in a rotting log -- look at dem bears, dey eaten grubs"
>
> now from my limited reading on the matter, most insects and such are
> ok to eat, expect for the parasites, etc. that they might be hosting.
> so the question becomes .. if one cooks-em, can he eat with gusto,
> without worry about ill effects? what can't you eat in the way of
> grubs and insects?
>
> now if my buddy is popping these little fellows in raw, do i do likewise,
> or be a woosy and say naw i got a cook-em first?
>
> in a prolonged low light longterm survival situations, grubs, fungus et
> alia, might be a food solution. photosynthesis will be zip, but you will
> have a plenty of decaying plant matter.
>
> what say ??
>
> -------------------------------------
> Name: H. Carter Mesick
> E-mail: hmesick@goldinc.com
> Date: 01/14/97
> Time: 12:01:36
> -------------------------------------

I say, cook em all, or take your chances. You might get lucky. Still, do you
want to take that chance.

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan 14 08:04:06 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA03530; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 19:07:50 -
0500 (EST)
> now if my buddy is popping these little fellows in raw, do I do likewise, 
> or be a woosy and say naw i got a cook-em first? 
> Alfonse, and all dem cajuns will eat anniethang dat don't ate them first:) 

rich, b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!  
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"  
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201  
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!  
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

>>>>>> bmanrich@iamerica.net<<<<<<
Mammals have parasites that can live in other mammals. 
But do insects have parasites that can live in us? 
Everything about their internals -- respiration, circulation, digestion -- 
is completely different. I wouldn't eat a tick or mosquito that sucks 
blood, but other than that...

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu
Critters like insects are both nutritious and delicious. They generally taste best cooked—roast or fry grubs, for instance. But unless you find them near fecal or polluted material, it is generally fine to eat most grubs and many other insects raw. Whenever I get hungry on a trail I kick open a rotting log and pop a few in my mouth for energy. Slimy yet satisfying.
Mammals have parasites that can live in other mammals. But do insects have parasites that can live in us?

Malaria in mosquitoes. Bubonic plague in fleas. Lyme disease in ticks. I have also had the experience of crushing a cricket and finding it full of tapeworms (there's a stimulus for your gorge!).

--

Wes Gietz  Vancouver Island, BC  Primitive skills workshops:
  http://www.islandnet.com/~chriseh/earth.skills.html
"Seek not to follow in the footsteps of the ancients;
  seek instead what they sought."

And fleas can also carry lice which have their own set of parasites which can call humans home. Kind of a two-for-one bug!
At 10:58 AM 1/15/97 -0800, you wrote:
>> Mammals have parasites that can live in other mammals.
>> But do insects have parasites that can live in us?
>
>Malaria in mosquitoes. Bubonic plague in fleas. Lyme disease in
>ticks. I have also had the experience of crushing a cricket and finding
>it full of tapeworms (there's a stimulus for your gorge!).
>
Mark L. Anderson

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 16 11:06:51 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA20099; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:24:47 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA06390; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:21:43 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:19:49 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA06369 for
; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:20:09
-0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.96]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail
Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA100 for
; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:16:14
-0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DEAA57.7DC3@perigee.net>
Date: Thu, 16 Jan 1997 16:23:19 -0600
X-UIDL: 853456086.008
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Eating the little folks
References: <199701151036.AAA19641@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Phil Goetz wrote:
>
> Mammals have parasites that can live in other mammals.
> But do insects have parasites that can live in us?
> Everything about their internals -- respiration, circulation, digestion --
> is completely different. I wouldn't eat a tick or mosquito that sucks
> blood, but other than that...
It is my understanding that All animals no matter how small, including insects have parasites. And, though, many eat them raw with no ill effects, it is safest to cook well all wild meat. If there are animals of any type that don't have parasites that anyone knows of please speak up, I'd like to know.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Sun Jan  5 23:14:58 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA22260; Sun, 5 Jan 1997 17:07:55 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA02222; Sun, 5 Jan 1997 17:05:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 05 Jan 1997 17:10:28 EST
Received: from rand.nidlink.com (rand.nidlink.com [205.219.220.56]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id RAA02219 for ; Sun, 5 Jan 1997 17:05:40 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.56 (pm1-27.nidlink.com [205.219.220.56]) by rand.nidlink.com (8.8.4/8.6.9) with SMTP id OAA13113; Sun, 5 Jan 1997 14:15:33 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D0191F.7F67@rand.nidlink.com>
Date: Sun, 05 Jan 1997 14:12:00 -0700
X-UIDL: 852567068.015
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Re: Insect Food
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id RAA22260
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Here's a recipe from the late 60's "Last Whole Earth Catalog.

.................................................................
"Re: Recipes for eating insects

This recipe comes from parts of Asia and Africa. Insert fried peanuts into cricket's abdomen (preferably cleaned). These prepared crickets are then fried. They are supposedly very tasty to those whose palate accepts them.

James Do (J.D.)"

The same source quotes the June 20, 1970 (vol.26, no.6) issue of Science Digest for another recipe that looks like it would adapt itself to a variety of insects.

- 1 pint termites
- 1 tablespoon vegetable oil
- 1/2 teaspoon salt

Remove termite wings, if any. Spread termites on stone to dry in sun. Pour oil in pan and spread dried termites on it. Toast over hot coals until almost crisp. Sprinkle with salt. "It helps the flavor, say those that have tried the recipe, if you eat the termites in handfuls." Science Digest credits the Bantu's with this recipe and reminds readers that there is "lots of vitamin B" in termites -

Termites aren't all the plentiful in parts of the U.S., but I suppose that the recipe would be just fine for ants."  

Frank Walsh

I wonder if the formic acid content of ants would present any hazard if they are eaten in quantity. AndrÈ? You said ants are tart. The acid?

The current edition of "The Millennium Whole Earth Catalog" (pg. 46) lists:

The Food Insect Newsletter
University of Wisconsin,
Dept. of Entomology,
1630 Linden Drive
Madison, WI 93706

"Unique. Why it's harder to find chocolate-covered ants, and which big bottomed species are gourmet. Thumbs up to pupae puffs and a guide to the best restaurants. Love it and eat it. - PW (Peter Warshall)"

There's a website for The Millennium Whole Earth Catalog these days:

https://www.well.net/mwec/mwec.toc.html

...............  

Chris

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sun Jan  5 23:15:20 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA22659; Sun, 5 Jan 1997 18:24:18 - 0500 (EST)
In a message dated 97-01-05 17:13:53 EST, written:

<< Re: Recipes for eating insects >>

IN New Guinea (and elsewhere I suppose) they dig up LARGE grubs, about 3 inches long, 1 inch diam. and roast them. They are supposed to taste nutty. I wonder if most larval stage insects are similar? Anyone able to add more?

John Waltz

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852567068.037
From: diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Message-ID: <2.2.32.19970106003607.006fd1fc@ pop3.av.qnet.com>
X-Sender: diogenes@ pop3.av.qnet.com (Unverified)
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Pro Version 2.2 (32)
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Sun, 05 Jan 1997 16:36:07 -0800
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM
Subject: Re: Insect Food
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Just a few thoughts....

> This recipe comes from parts of Asia and Africa. Insert fried peanuts
> into cricket's abdomen (preferably cleaned). These prepared crickets
> are then fried. They are supposedly very tasty to those whose palate
> accepts them.
> 
> James Do (J.D.)" 

One recipe I learned to enjoy...... The montegnards would catch, crickets
put them in a container which had a 2 inch strip of oil painted on the
inside. The oil kept the little buggers :>)) inside the jar. The little guys
would hang out inside the jar for about 24 hours. This gave them a chance to
empty their intestinal tracts (the cause of some bitterness in the flavor).
After they were "clean" they were dumped into a cloth bag which was then
hung by a fire to dry (cook slowly) or left in the pot and heated in situ on
a slow fire. When dried they were munched as a tasty snack or used in rice
meals. Grass hoppers are prepared in the same way but it is best to pull the
legs off before the feast.

In any case, either bug (or most bugs) can be crushed and added to stews.
This disguises the appearance and reduces the spew factor.

> Termites aren't all the plentiful in parts of the U.S., but I suppose
> that the recipe would be just fine for ants."
>
Frank Walsh

Ants are, for the most, part one of the best bug feasts. The formic acid
pretty much disappears when they are boiled. Black ants eaten raw have a
semi sweet flavor. Sorta like crunchy raw sugar with legs. We use them to
sweeten ephedra tea.

Bees and wasps are OK eaten after a good boiling. The poison is basically a
protein which disassembles at boiling temperatures. The stinger softens.
Pounding them before boiling is effective. Bee and Wasp Larvae are delicious!

One of the most dangerous insects is in the cantharidin family (blister
beetles). I doubt that you will run into those unless you pop over to the
Mediterranean just to munch bug. There are of course many cautions.......
Just a note. Beetles amount to about 40% of the known insects. The larvae of
many beetles are very high in fat and protein and make great snacks.
When in doubt about a bug do the insect safety test. And follow these time tested rules.

Always try to cook insects.

Never eat bugs you find dead.

Don't eat ones that bite back!

If it smells really bad, don't eat it!

One last thought....... If you have a strong stomach,,, or at least a clear spew zone for a technicolor yawn..... try maggots. Road kills are often infested with them. Gather a handfull or two, drop your prize into an old sock and rinse in cold clear water a couple of times, then boil. After about five minutes toss in a bullion cube. When it is finished dissolving, settle back to a fine hot stew of what looks like brown rice. It is really a fine meal.

Ron Hood

Visit Hoods Woods at

http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/

It's good for a laugh......
In a message dated 97-01-05 17:13:53 EST, written:

... Rewritten:

IN New Guinea (and elsewhere I suppose) they dig up LARGE grubs, about 3 inches long, 1 inch diam. and roast them. They are supposed to taste nutty. I wonder if most larval stage insects are similar? Anyone able to add more?

John Waltz

Graeme Newman wrote "The Down Under Cookbook" more than 10 years ago. I met him in Albany New York in 1988 and traded him a boomerang for one of his cookbooks. One of the recipes is as follows. There may be some errors because I OCR'd with my scanner - Ted Bailey

WITCHETY GRUBS

Witchety grubs (from the Aboriginal witjute, the name of roots in which the grubs are often found) are various larvae that feed in the wood of eucalyptus trees, most often between the bark and the trunk. They are about 1 to 2.5 inches long, with a fat creamy body about the width of a man's thumb, and stumpy legs. The Australian Aborigines who live in the Outback are said to consider them a delicacy. As with most food taken by the Aborigines in the Outback, they eat their witchety grubs raw. I have never tried them prepared in that way. I recommend them cooked as follows, Outback style.

witchety grubs
an old piece of metal
salt and pepper to taste
a little cooking oil (optional)
yams

So you're stuck in the Outback without anything except a little salt and pepper! The Outback is desolate often without vegetation, but one is sure to find somewhere a scrap piece of metal left from some failed effort to drive an enormous distance, or maybe from a Mad Max movie set. Scrub the metal clean, hopefully in a little sand and water from a nearby trickling creek. Prepare a fast, trench fire and place the metal across the top. Immediately place yams in coals beside the fire. After about 2 an hour, when the hot plate is quite hot, drop the witchety grubs down and rapidly roll across the metal plate. Keep rolling until they are browned all over. Remove from heat, allow to cool. Remove ya.ms from coals. Break open yams and serve each yam with a witchety grub nestled in the middle.

On a dare, I once ate a witchety grub cooked according to this recipe. It tasted quite delicious, somewhere between roast pork and chicken, and it stayed down too. But I have to admit that I haven't eaten one since.
Grub is a word used by Australians to refer to any larvae found in the garden and elsewhere. When I have asked my American friends what a grub is, they invariably reply that it is a "freeloader" and rarely relate the word to insects (real insects that is). Australians have their own word for a freeloader: a bludger.

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970   || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:  http://ic.net/~tbailey/

Ron Hood said,
> Ants are, for the most, part one of the best bug feasts. The formic acid pretty much disappears when they are boiled. Black ants eaten raw

http://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/insecfo1.htm
> have a semi sweet flavor. Sorta like crunchy raw sugar with legs. We
> use them to sweeten ephedra tea.

So...let me see, do you boil black ants before you put them in Ephedra
tea or does RAW mean they're live, freshly squashed or dried? Are they
'sweetly' doing the backstroke in their steaming teacups? Is there a
baggy full of sweet and crunchy black ants lying around over there by
the tea strainer? Inquiring minds want to know.

Ineresting recipes - I've been enjoying your website Ron and Karen.
Thanks to John Waltz, AndrÈ Bourbeau, Benjamin Pressley and all the
others for their recipes as well .

-- Chris

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 9 07:07:38 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA23677; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 13:22:06 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA18319; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 13:20:24 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 13:25:05 EST
Received: from RACHEL.NL.nuwc.navy.mil (RACHEL.NL.NUWC.NAVY.MIL
[164.223.182.6]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id
NAA18255 for ; Thu, 9 Jan
1997 13:20:03 -0500 (EST)
Received: by RACHEL.NL.nuwc.navy.mil (5.65c/1.921207) id AA01006; Thu, 9 Jan
1997 13:27:56 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852854627.030
From: jhw@RACHEL.NL.NUWC.NAVY.MIL (John Wiedenheft)
Message-ID: <199701091927.AA01006@RACHEL.NL.nuwc.navy.mil>
Subject: Re: Insect Food
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca (P-S list)
Date: Thu, 9 Jan 97 13:27:55 EST
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, wiedenheftj@asme.WEB.AOL.COM
X-Mailer: ELM [version 07.05.00.00 (2.3 PL11)]
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> the jar. The little guys would hang out inside the jar for about 24
> hours. This gave them a chance to empty their intestinal tracts (the
> cause of some bitterness in the flavor). After they were "clean"

> One last thought....... If you have a strong stomach,,, or at least
> a clear spew zone for a technicolor yawn..... try maggots. Road
kils are often infested with them. Gather a handful or two, drop
your prize into an old sock and rinse in cold clear water a couple
of times, then boil. After about five minutes toss in a bullion
cube. When it is finished dissolving, settle back to a fine hot stew
of what looks like brown rice. It is really a fine meal.

Ron, apparently you have tried this! I wonder if you tried to clean
out the maggots intestines before eating them? Or is boiling them
to kill whatever germs might be in their little guts from what they
were eating sufficient? Seems like those maggots must have a bunch
or rotten meat in their little intestines.

> When in doubt about a bug do the insect safety test. And follow

I guess I wasn't on the list when the insect safety test was explained...
Will the archives go back to the beginning of the list?

Thanks,

John Wiedenheft
--
wiedenheftj@asme.WEB.AOL.COM

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 9 07:07:59 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA24086; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 14:09:19 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA20319; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 14:07:43 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Thu, 09 Jan 1997 14:12:24 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA20316 for
; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 14:06:47
-0500 (EST)
Received: from Default (a173.ecom.net [207.13.224.173]) by ns2.qnet.com
(8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA23485; Thu, 9 Jan 1997 11:10:42 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852854627.041
From: diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Date: Thu, 9 Jan 1997 11:10:42 -0800 (PST)
Message-ID: <199701091910.LAA23485@ns2.qnet.com>
X-Sender: diogenes@pop3.av.qnet.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.3
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, wiedenheftj@asme.WEB.AOL.COM
Subject: Re: Insect Food
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Ron, apparently you have tried this! I wonder if you tried to clean out the maggots intestines before eating them.

All I ever do is boil them, Thouroughly. Sometimes I get a little white foam on the top of the boiling water, This stuff has an interesting odor. If you want to taste it, It's good to have a cold.......Either way, the flavor of the foam isn't bad tho' I prefer to skim it off. The dogs LOVE it!

Usually the maggots I collect are from range cattle who've died over the winter. In addition to the maggots I often find the carcass's contain good material for other uses. The stiff skin can be softened and used, there are the tendons, hooves and even some aged beef (occasionally).

>> When in doubt about a bug do the insect safety test. And follow 
>
>I guess I wasn't on the list when the insect safety test was explained... 
>Will the archives go back to the beginning of the list?

I have no idea if it was posted. I came into the group in the middle of an insect discussion and sorta assumed that the process had been reported. If not, I'll be happy to put it up.

Peace,
Ron Hood

Get a giggle, Check us out!
Ron Hood Ed.D.

From - Fri Jan 10 23:30:32 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA05709; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 10:39:55 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA09223; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 10:38:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 10:36:23 EST
Received: from ns2.iamerica.net (ns2.iamerica.net [205.173.248.33]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA09220 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 10:38:06
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [205.173.249.32] (ias_ppp0123.iamerica.net [205.173.249.32]) by ns2.iamerica.net (8.6.13/950817.04ccg) with SMTP id JAA11406 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 09:43:00
-0600
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199701111543.JAA11406@ns2.iamerica.net>
Subject: Re: Insect Food
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 97 09:42:02 -0600
X-UIDL: 852997950.000
From: bmanrich
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bmanrich@IAMERICA.NET
To: "dr. A.F. BOURBEAU"
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="US-ASCII"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>
> were eating sufficient? Seems like those maggots must have a bunch
> or rotten meat in their little intestines.
> Well, I have a friend/customer in Georgia who markets a video tape EATING
> CROW. He explains all about how to hunt crows and eat them.

I recall asking about the safety of eating crows (I was putting them in
the same class as buzzards and other carion eaters). He informed me that
nearly 100% of the crows he had killed were full of grain and insects not
"road kill".

Perhaps maggots and other such life forms can have safe to eat guts...and
I guesss if you gotta, you gotta....BTW...wife is making sourdough
pancakes and she's just called me to breakfast....

B-MAN, rich

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
**"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

<<<<>>> bmanrich@iamerica.net<<<<

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Fri Jan 10 23:30:55 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA05959; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 11:23:53 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA09619; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 11:23:04 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA09613 for
; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 11:22:51
-0500 (EST)
Received: from plato.remote.mun.ca (n098h002.remote.mun.ca [134.153.98.2]) by
piva.ucs.mun.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA23082 for
; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 12:56:59
bmanrich wrote:
>
>
> Perhaps maggots and other such life forms can have safe to eat guts...and
> I guesss if you gotta, you gotta....

... reminds me of something the Danish explorer Knud Rasmussen wrote
about his stay with the Netsilik Inuit:

"Right alongside the spot where we pitched our camp we found an old
cache of caribou meat -- two years old I was told. We cleared the
stones away and fed the dogs, for it is law in this country that as soon
as a cache is more than a winter and a summer old, it falls to the one
who has use for it. The meat was green with age, and when we made a cut
in it, it was like the bursting of a boil, so full of great white
maggots was it. To my horror my companions scooped out handfuls of the
crawling things and ate them with evident relish. I criticised their
taste, but they laughed at me and said, not illogically:

"'You yourself like caribou meat, and what are these maggots but live
caribou meat? They taste just the same as the meat and are refreshing
to the mouth."

I guess if you think of it that way, then they are just processed meat.
Sort of like tiny, wriggling hot dogs. Maybe thats what he means by
eating them with 'relish' :)

Cheers,
Tim

--
Tim Rast t64tr@morgan.ucs.mun.ca
Graduate Student: Archaeology Unit (709) 576-4456
Memorial University of Newfoundland
Knappers Anonymous: http://www.ucs.mun.ca/~t64tr/knap.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
I have eaten dried red ants sprinkled on my grits. They are sweet and quite flavorful.

peace,

JW
I'm sure most of you have had this experience. You are telling someone about your interest in primitive skills and of the excitement and thrill of 'survival' living, when a concerned look comes over the face of your listener. "You don't eat B-U-G-S, do you?", they respond. The truth is that this is an area in which I have very little knowledge. Does anyone have any information (books, links, etc.) pertaining to the harvesting and preparation of insects as a food source? Many thanks in advance.

Jon Harshbarger

e-mail: jharsh@dreamscape.com
Jon Harshbarger wrote:

> ..."You don't eat B-U-G-S, do you?", they respond. The truth is
> that this is an area in which I have very little knowledge. Does
> anyone have any information (books, links, etc.) pertaining to the
> harvesting and preparation of insects as a food source? Many thanks
> in advance.
> 
> Jon Harshbarger

Yep, see these bug pages on Hoods Woods website. Yuck!

http://www.av.qnet.com/~diogenes/bug.htm

http://www.av.qnet.com/~diogenes/buggy.htm

.............

Chris

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan  2 05:44:21 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA13562; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:39:44 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA17051; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:36:18 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 14:40:55 EST
Received: from hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU [128.205.32.11]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id OAA17045 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:36:08 -0500 (EST)
Received: (goetz@localhost) by hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (8.7.5/8.6.4) id OAA21914; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:39:45 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: Phil Goetz
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Message-ID: <199701021939.OAA21914@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Subject: Re: Insects As Food
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jharsh@DREAMSCAPE.COM
Date: Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:39:45 -0500 (EST)
I'm sure most of you have had this experience. You are telling someone about your interest in primitive skills and of the excitement and thrill of 'survival' living, when a concerned look comes over the face of your listener. "You don't eat B-U-G-S, do you?", they respond. The truth is that this is an area in which I have very little knowledge. Does anyone have any information (books, links, etc.) pertaining to the harvesting and preparation of insects as a food source? Many thanks in advance.

Jon Harshbarger

e-mail: jharsh@dreamscape.com

I, too, would like to know about bugs as food. I have dozens of books on most every other aspect of wilderness living, but nobody wants to talk about bugs as food, not even my US military survival manuals.

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu
Jon Harshbarger wrote:

> I'm sure most of you have had this experience. You are telling someone about your interest in primitive skills and of the excitement and thrill of 'survival' living, when a concerned look comes over the face of your listener. "You don't eat B-U-G-S, do you?", they respond. The truth is that this is an area in which I have very little knowledge. Does anyone have any information (books, links, etc.) pertaining to the harvesting and preparation of insects as a food source? Many thanks in advance.

Jon Harshbarger

e-mail: jharsh@dreamscape.com

You may wish to inquire with Andre how to access a thread that was started on this already. I also recommend "The Food Insects Newsletter" available for only $5 from the following address:
Florence V. Dunkel, Ph.D., Associate Professor, Editor, Dept. of Entomology, Room 324, Leon Johnson Hall, Montana State University, Bozeman, MT 59717-0302, USA.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
This reminds me of something I saw on PBS in a discussion of scanning electron microscope photography. It went something like this:
Little fleas have smaller fleas upon their backs to bite'em
and smaller ones have smaller still, so on ad infinitum.
eddie

Phil Goetz wrote:
>
> Mammals have parasites that can live in other mammals.
> But do insects have parasites that can live in us?
> Everything about their internals -- respiration, circulation, digestion --
> is completely different. I wouldn't eat a tick or mosquito that sucks
> blood, but other than that...
> >
> Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

It is my understanding that All animals no matter how small, including insects have parasites. And, though, many eat them raw with no ill effects, it is safest to cook well all wild meat. If there are animals of any type that don't have parasites that anyone knows of please speak up, I'd like to know.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
2.19.4 Which lemon grass do you have?

>>> A friend told me he was buying small lemon grass plants to put in his garden to help keep away bugs.

>>> Has anyone ever heard of lemon grass as a bug (I assume he meant, gnats, etc.) deterrent?

>Perhaps there is a connection to citronella?

>From herblady@super.zippo.com (Rastapoodle):

Boy, are we confused here folks, but it is a common mistake. Here's the story: Lemongrass, a delightful plant, and it's close cousin, Citronella have many wonderful properties, releasing their scent into the air not being one of them.

Lemongrass is wonderful to eat, Citronella is *not*. They look similar, so
be careful what you buy. Citronella is distilled to extract its oil, which is used in insect repellent candles, burning coils, etc.

Very interestingly, a Dutch plant scientist did some genetic engineering and spliced the oil gene of the Citronella into a Pelargonium (scented geranium) plant. The resultant plant looks like a scented geranium, but gives off the fragrance of Citronella (and rose, the original scent of the geranium) to the air with just a breeze or a kiss from the sun.

The hybrid is called Citrosa, and it is patented (you can't make cuttings for sale). A fully grown Citrosa (about 4 x 4 feet here in Miami) is supposed to protect a 100 sq. ft area from mosquitoes.

Hope this clears up any confusion.

Anya

PS I have planted my Citrosa among my Lemongrass for an ironic statement.

-----

>I would like to know if it is worth while to grow citronella plants with the idea that I can make citronella candles. I don't believe I have seen these plants in any of my order catalogs and none of my gardening books tell how you get the citronella out of the plants.

From: adgrant@water.waterw.com (Andrew Grant):
Commercially the oil is extracted by steam distillation using old extracted plants as fuel. I doubt that you want to get that elaborate. I have never tried it but I suspect that the plants could be chopped up and extracted with a solvent like alcohol or toluene. Of course you would then have to boil off the solvent. If you do contemplate this, know that the % oil in the plant is low (I have forgotten the number) so your yield will be
low.

Incidentally the notion that citronella discourages mosquitoes is not well supported by my experience. I have seen mosquito larvae in rain water on top of drums of citronella oil with oil droplets in the water!!!

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Dec 11 04:37:23 1996
Received: from water.waterw.com (water.waterw.com [199.171.193.1]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id NAA03238 for ; Tue, 10 Dec 1996 13:30:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: by water.waterw.com (5.65/DEC-Ultrix/4.3)
 id AA17788; Tue, 10 Dec 1996 13:34:51 -0500
Date: Tue, 10 Dec 1996 13:34:51 -0500
Message-Id:
Mime-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
X-UIDL: 850253684.009
From: adgrant@waterw.com (Andrew Grant)
Subject: Re: citronella oil
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> I'd appreciate any information or leads you could give me on extracting oil from cymbopogon plants.
>
>Thank you very much.

Sorry to be so slow about replying but I don't check my email every day.
I worked with citronella oil in the 1960's. My job was to develop or improve processes for the isolation of individual components and for the conversion of those components into other chemicals such as L-menthol or dimethyl octanol. My interest in the extraction of the oil was part curiosity and part a desire to try to understand some of the variations in
the quality of the oil as imported into the United States. I have long since retired and no longer have access to the literature. All of which is by way of saying that I do not know a great deal about the extraction beyond what you have probably already read.

My understanding was that growing cypobogon and extracting citronella oil was basically what we would call a cottage industry. That is it was grown in very small plots. The individual farmers set up small crude stills and steam distilled the oil from the chopped up plants. The vegetable residue from the still was sun dried and used as fuel for the next distillation batch. The individual batches were sold to collecting stations and there bulked together and drummed up for export. An old reference that covers some of this history is in "The Terpenes" vol. 1 (university Press, Cambridge 1947) the authors were Simonsen and Owen.

A good source of additional history references would be chemical abstracts. I don't know the CAS number for citronella oil itself, but you can get that easily enough. You might also want to check CAS for the individual components:

- Citronellal 106-23-0
- Citronellol 106-22-9
- Geraniol 106-24-1

I do hope this is helpful.

Andy Grant
I remember my mother always used cucumber peels against ants. Don't know what's behind this, but it seemed to work.

> AndrÈ

My grandma also used cucumber peelings to repel ants. I helped her lay out the peelings as a child. They worked great for about 24 hours--then the ants started eating them!

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Just wondering about any "natural" repellents for ants, and other ground insects.

My personal interest is that I live in a ninth floor apartment in Honolulu, and am repeatedly plagued by ants, a type small enough to crawl through the holes in window screens. I started out by buying some raid brand ant hotel kine traps, but this isn't working in the long term. Not interested in contributing to the already large amount of wasted matter in every dumpsite, so looking for a more reasonable solution.

Thanks for any help in advance.

Zachary
"I can picture a world of peace, a world without war. And I can picture us attacking that world, cause they'd never expect it." Jack Handy

You have received email from Charles Zachary Lockhart.
You can reach him at zachary@lava.net, lockhar@wiliki.eng.hawaii.edu, or lockhart@hawaii.edu.
You can check out his homepage at http://www2.hawaii.edu/~lockhart/INDEX.HTM
Charles Z Lockhart wrote:
>
> Just wondering about any "natural" repellents for ants, and other
ground insects.

Zach,

Grind up black pepper and crush it into powder. Spread it where they
are seen, esp. on their trails in and out - bottom of doors, along
windows, etc. With severe infestation, you might want to run some along
t the outside of your hacienda. Takes about a day or two, but the black
ants will go away. Have faith. They track it around on their feet and
don't like it. Breaks their scent trail, I figure. Maybe cayenne
would work too, but I haven't tried it - might be fun to try that on
"red" ants sometime. Just powdered pepper - you don't need anything else. Clean it up in a week or two. They usually don't come back, anytime soon.

-- Chris
well ive read that diatomacious earth might work.. sharp edges
on the diatoms scratch the bugs and they dehydrate. havent tried it
so can't say for sure.

another thing you might try:
nicotine is a good killer .. boil up a batch of chewing tobacco.

im sure there must b a few things they dont like the smell of and
will not cross. ammonia ? camphor ? capsicum ?

maybe a plant in your neighborhood that you never see any ants on ?

maybe try crushing a bunch of them and making a line .. maybe they
can take a hint ?
> maybe a plant in your neighborhood that you never see any ants on?

Excellent idea, but you might want to check and see what bugs this plant
DOES have. Hawaii has centipedes and millipedes, I understand? So you
wouldn't want a plant that ants disliked but was like honey to the 'pedes.

> maybe try crushing a bunch of them and making a line .. maybe they
> can take a hint?

Some insects actually will take this hint. One thing you can do is catch
a whole bunch of bugs and crush and boil them. Spray or paint the mixture
around. Doesn't always work, but sometimes it works wonderfully.

Bill B.
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DB1304.522@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Tue, 14 Jan 1997 05:00:52 +0000
X-UIDL: 853279558.001
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: ant repellent.
References:
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id QAA12842
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id QAA02449
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
QAA12842
Charles Z Lockhart wrote:
>
> Just wondering about any "natural" repellents for ants, and other ground
> insects.

I remember my mother always used cucumber peels against ants. Don't
know what's behind this, but it seemed to work.

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1
While on the subject of repelling ants, how about ants as repellent? Has anyone ever read or heard that you can "stir up" red ants and they'll emit a clear odorless substance (supposedly they spit it) that can be used for insect repellent? Is there any truth to this?

The land of bad bugs
Kelly Harlton

PS how is this coming through Andre' (I'm trying again from my other computer, is it one line or multi line?)
I see this topic as having 3 major threads:

1. Topically applied solutions for use as repellants.
2. Dietary supplements.
3. Botanical environmental additives (hanging of plants in your immediate area to discourage pest activity). Marigolds?

This could be extended to garden/farming practices which reduce insect damage.

Am told by reliable sources and have experienced it some that eating of wild food tends to make you unappetizing to insects (and uptown girls). The more wild you eat the greater effect. Also a note from Chinese medicine, most wild foods are considered tonic, which produces an
alkalizing effect on the body both promoting health and making natural living more tolerable.

A bit off the topic but I heard from an entomologist that insect "pests" are not usually a problem in places where they came from; for example, Japanese beetles are not a problem in Japan because the predators are there to keep them in balance. Integrated pest management focuses on creating balance, something we as primskillers should strive to achieve in our local environments. The old caretaker attitude.

Gene Monaco and East Tennessee Permaculture
Education, training, consulting, and implementation for sustainability
PO Box 11851, Knoxville, TN 37939
(423) 457-4354
EFMonaco@compuserve.com

From - Thu Jan  2 09:44:58 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA02456; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:35:00 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA20348; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:32:03 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 21:36:36 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA20345 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:31:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.68 (srv1s19.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.70]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id VAA19103 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:35:09 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
BKP wrote:

> Neesmuk had a
> solution of berries (durn it I can't find the dang thing in the book) and
> turpentine that he painted on his body which protected him from black
> flies and I remember being told by the guide at ? (was it Jamestown?)
> that the Native Americans (NAs) were not quite so dark skinned but after
> long exposure to the formula which they painted on their skin to protect
> them from various insects the skin would be dyed a darker color.

>From what I can gather from Nessmuk's book, his combination of pinetar
and oils was not really an insect repellant, but more of an insect
barrier. We could go deeper into this subject, but insect barriers were
where the old saying arose: "don't wash or you'll be bitten alive".

This is
> fascinating to me but the best I have found is a combination of liberal
> applications of DEET
Alternatives to DEET and the way DEET functions is another subject of interest. Some researchers have found other products, such as Ethanol, which might affect mosquito sensors in the same way as DEET.

and ingestion of above average quantities of vitamin > B (various).

I still haven't found any scientific evidence of this, and would love this subject to be pursued further also.

Where I live we also have chiggers and ticks as major as > major pests as well as mosquitoes (much diminished since the early '60s) > and various flies.

Still another subject, because you defend from black flies and from mosquitoes and from deer flies in very different ways.

> I see this topic as having 3 major threads:
> 1. Topically applied solutions for use as repellants.
> 2. Dietary supplements.
> 3. Botanical environmental additives (hanging of plants in your immediate > area to discourage pest activity). Marigolds?

I think we could go even more specific on this immensely important topic, dividing for each insect first of all, then in addition to the above, barriers (mud & others), citronella, deet, clothing or modification of clothing, use of fire, shelter building against insects, Vitamin B, Vitamin E, skin-so-soft, extracts of plants, using dragonflies, etc.

> This could be extended to garden/farming practices which reduce insect > damage.

I suggest that this subject would be out of bounds for this list, since agriculture does not really relate to primitive wilderness survival skills in the short term and would perhaps lead us too far astray.
> --
> Sincerely,
> Barent
> Duty, Honor, Country

Thanks, Barent, for suggesting these incredibly interesting threads, and I am looking forward to pursuing it with the group in specific areas of interest. By the way, thank you everyone for renaming subject headers to reflect content so accurately in the past while, it is much easier to follow threads now.

AndrÈ le coureur de bois

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Thu Jan 2 00:26:10 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA07611; Wed, 1 Jan 1997 15:18:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA12950; Wed, 1 Jan 1997 15:14:35 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 01 Jan 1997 15:14:43 EST
Received: from milo.cfw.com (milo.cfw.com [205.219.240.6]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA12935 for ; Wed, 1 Jan 1997 15:09:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from stn34.cfw.com by milo.cfw.com; (5.65v3.2/1.1.8.2/12Dec95-0403PM)
Andre's recent post reiterating topics for discussion brought up the subject of protection from insects, something I have often had need of and never found an entirely satisfactory solution to. Neesmuk had a solution of berries (durn it I can't find the dang thing in the book) and turpentine that he painted on his body which protected him from black flies and I remember being told by the guide at ? (was it Jamestown?) that the Native Americans (NAs) were not quite so dark skinned but after long exposure to the formula which they painted on their skin to protect them from various insects the skin would be dyed a darker color. This is fascinating to me but the best I have found is a combination of liberal applications of DEET and ingestion of above average quantities of vitamin B (various). Where I live we also have chiggers and ticks as major as major pests as well as mosquitos (much diminished since the early '60s) and various flies.

I see this topic as having 3 major threads:
1. Topically applied solutions for use as repellants.
2. Dietary supplements.
3. Botanical environmental additives (hanging of plants in your immediate area to discourage pest activity). Marigolds?

This could be extended to garden/farming practices which reduce insect damage.

--

Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country
Nessmuk's formula is as follows:

3 oz pine tar
2 oz castor oil
1 oz pennyroyal oil

Simmer together over a slow fire (low heat) and bottle. Rub in thoroughly and liberally at first. After establishing a good "glaze" a little replenishing from day to day will suffice.

This is from: Wood Craft by "Nessmuk" (George W. Sears), Dover Publications, Inc., New York, 1963, Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 63-21680. I am sorry, no ISBN.

This was purchased for me in 1963 or 1964 by my Aunt, Virginia Parslow Partridge who at the time worked at the Farmer's Museum in Cooperstown, NY. She has lectured on textile arts and is a leader in pursuing the family genealogy. With family like this it is no wonder that these things fascinate me!

--

Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country
I have used Yarrow to repel ants (pissmiers).

John Waltz
Belle Mead, NJ
Subject: RE: Ants as repellent

Date: Sat, 18 Jan 1997 11:28:57 -0700

MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: multipart/mixed; boundary="----=_NextPart_000_01BC0533.00DD37E0"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

------=_NextPart_000_01BC0533.00DD37E0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable
Joe Schilling wrote

You mean those bitting little buggars? Sure go ahead and try it. My question is, how do you get the spit up?

If my memory serves me;

Simply stir them up till they go crazy, then hold your hand as close as possible for a minute or two (with out getting in their "range" and keeping clear of blades of grass they could use to climb up on) And apparently their "spit" will reach your hand. Then you can rub your hand on exposed areas. I'm going to guess that this spit is used to repel ant eating organisms.

It's all fun til and ant spits in your eye

Have a great day
Kelly Harlton

------- =_NextPart_000_01BC0533.00DD37E0
Content-Type: application/ms-tnef
Content-Transfer-Encoding: base64
Hi all,

Caught this message in the tracker archives and was wondering if anyone had any scientific knowledge or sources about this subject. I've heard about this a lot, and my personal experimentation does not lead me to any positive conclusions. I already know there are many opinions from both sides, and I don't need more of those, but now I'm looking for scientific data on this. Anyone?

Thanks for your help.

AndrÈ
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau  mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Quèbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Quèbec), Canada G7H2B1

Return-Path:
Received: from bolt (bolt.LakeheadU.Ca [192.75.62.254]) by brown.videotron.net
(8.8.3/8.8.2) with SMTP id NAA21242 for ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 13:59:47 -0500 (EST)
Received: from ICE.LAKEHEADU.CA by bolt (5.x/SMI-SVR4)
    id AA20545; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 13:58:05 -0500
Received: from ICE/SpoolDir by ICE.LAKEHEADU.CA (Mercury 1.21);
           27 Jan 97 13:59:41 EDT
Received: from SpoolDir by ICE (Mercury 1.30); 27 Jan 97 13:59:13 EDT
From: "CHADWICK HOWARD CLIFFORD"
Organization: Lakehead University
To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Date: Mon, 27 Jan 1997 13:59:03 +0000
Mime-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
Content-Transfer-Encoding: Quoted-printable
Subject: Re: Insect repellants
Cc: chcliffo@Ice.Lakeheadu.Ca
X-Confirm-Reading-To: "CHADWICK HOWARD CLIFFORD"
X-Pmrqc: 1
Return-Receipt-To: "CHADWICK HOWARD CLIFFORD"
Priority: normal
In-Reply-To: <32E452F9.9FA@saglac.qc.ca>
X-Mailer: Pegasus Mail for Windows (v2.52)
Message-Id: <901910B7D85@ICE.LAKEHEADU.CA>
X-UIDL: 871f4ac39a1c4841388f195e6140ef34
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Greetings from Thunder Bay
I talked to Jim Smithers, he was surprised that I brought up your name and mentioned that you joined them on part of their Mackenzie expedition. My plant books are in deed back home in Ottawa. The natural repellants from memory are:

Cedar—the smoke of leaves or bark in shelters to rid insects and a solution made from the leaves and bark to apply externally. The tannin may die skin if used in strong solution. Plantain as mentioned earlier when eaten after a while tends to act as a natural odour repellant. There are various plants to take the sting/itch away (externally only) also like Jewelweed (spotted touch me not). I believe these plants work but I would not take my word for it— I have tried them and they seem to work but it would be better to get such info right from the book to be safe. Have you tried any with success? I have a small collection (18 or so) of medicinal/edible books at home that touch on various interesting uses. Tom Brown I think mentions the above uses in his books, that’s probably where I remember it from (Wilderness Survival, Living with the Earth and Wild medicinal plants). Sorry I could not provide a better list at this time. Best wishes

Chad

> Date: Tue, 21 Jan 1997 05:24:09 +0000
> From: Dr AF Bourbeau
> Reply-to: bourbeau@videotron.ca
> Organization: Au Gr=E9 de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
> To: CHADWICK HOWARD CLIFFORD
> Subject: Re: Insect repellants

> CHADWICK HOWARD CLIFFORD wrote:
> 
> Yes ill look into the list, but most of my plant books are back in Ottawa. Jim has retired 2-3 years ago. but he comes in once in a while. Ill see him tommorro actually, i will say hello for you. Heres a long shot— I saw a video once of a professor in Quebec somewhere who did a 30 day survival stay in the wilderness and also did a reinactment of voyageurs life style with 3 others. Would you
Yes, I know who you're talking about... it's Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau=
.

Are you aware of the Primitive-Skills-Group? If not, take a look at this
page:

http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Primskill.html

Looking forward to getting your list.

Thanks,

Andr=E9

--

Surviving at nature's will...  o

Dr Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau  mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca  / =80\  =
=AF/\  
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Qu=E9bec  /=AF=AF=AF=AF=
\=AF/=AF=AF=AF=AF\
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvvX____=_

From - Mon Jan 27 19:21:33 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by
brown.videotron.net (8.8.3/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA26381 for ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997
19:03:04 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.92 (ppp092.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.92]) by
> How much plantain, and what part of the plant were you eating?

I find that eating two plantain pods a day keeps the bugs away. I had a wonderful chance to test the effectiveness of plantain when my wife and I went for a walk by a lake. She didn't eat plantain and was swarmed by mozzies, I ate it and didn't even get buzzed.

According to the reference "Edible and Medicinal plants of the Rocky Mountains" by Terry Willard, chewing plantain root will elevate toothache.

In Tom Brown's "Edible plants" book he says that the leaves taste great when boiled and can be eaten raw.
Plantain is also well respected for its healing and bandaging qualities. The leaves are large enough to cover many wounds. Crushed or chewed plantain leaves make an excellent poultice because they contain a natural antiseptic, slow blood flow and promote healing.

According to the book "Ethnobotony of the Thompson Indians" by Nancy J Turner et Al (Published in 1970 by the Museum of British Columbia) the tribes in this region used the plant as follows:

1) As a poultice of chewed leaves was applied over carbuncles, sores and hemorrhoids
2) The leaves were cooled and then applied to sores
3) A decoction of the leaves was used as a body wash

The native indians call the plant Plantago, which means "White mans footprint". They believed that it grew where ever a white man had walked. In this they were absolutely correct - Plantain is not native to North America and was introduced from Europe by the settlers.

Tom Brown states that a decoction of the tea (45 minute steep) is an effective mouthwash for cold sores, sore gums and toothache. A weak tea is a good cough remedy and breaks up congestion. A wash of the tea is effective in promoting scarless healing and reducing blood flow from minor wounds.

(As a side note, my wife suffers from cold sores. A mountain guide advised her to rub behind her ears when she felt one coming on. This apparently stimulates the glands in the head to produce an antibiotic. I can tell you from personal experience that it does indeed help prevent cold sores.)

For those interested, check out your provincial or state museum for
information on local ethnobotany and native technologies. I find it quite exciting to read about a local plant and then go out to find it. It's only by finding and using the plants that the knowledge truly sinks in.

BTW, does any one know if Nancy J Turner is still around? I'd love to ask her some questions about her work.

Regards
Kevin Bennett

From - Tue Feb 4 10:29:51 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from 207.96.219.14 (ppp014.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.14]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with SMTP id XAA05804 for ; Mon, 3 Feb 1997 23:24:53 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32F67416.47CB@videotron.ca>
Date: Mon, 03 Feb 1997 23:26:14 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Subject: insect repellant- medline
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: 7086525c638f07d709a6ac7d81137d28
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

UI - 96304514
AU - Matsuda BM
AU - Surgeoner GA
AU - Heal JD
AU - Tucker AO
AU - Maciarello MJ
IN - Department of Environmental Biology, University of Guelph,
Ontario, Canada.

TI - Essential oil analysis and field evaluation of the citrosa plant "Pelargonium citrosum" as a repellent against populations of Aedes mosquitoes.


MH - Adult
MH - *Aedes
MH - Animal
MH - Female
MH - Human
MH - *Insect Repellents
MH - Male
MH - Mosquito Control
MH - Plant Oils/an [Analysis]
MH - *Plant Oils
MH - Plants
MH - Support, Non-U.S. Gov't

AB - A plant recently introduced into North America as the citrosa, Pelargonium citrosum ('Van Leenii'), has been marketed as a biological repellent against mosquitoes. Citrosa is claimed to repel mosquitoes within a 10 ft.2 (0.93 m2) area due to a continuous fragrant release of citronella oil. The total essential oil yield was 0.2 +/- 0.1% from fresh plant material. Chemical analysis by the authors revealed that combined essential oils of fresh greenhouse- and field-grown citrosa have 35.4 +/- 6.2% geraniol, 10.4 +/- 1.6% citronellol, 8.9 +/- 2.0% isomenthone, and 6.8 +/- 3.8% linalool. Both the morphology and essential oil of citrosa fall within the Pelargonium x asperum hybrid complex and are similar to 'Rose', the commercial rose geranium. No character of morphology or essential oil of a Cymbopogon species yielding commercial citronella oil could be detected in the citrosa. The effectiveness of the citrosa as a
repellent against field populations of spring Aedes spp. mosquitoes was evaluated and compared with a 75% deet (N,N-diethyl-3-methylbenzamide) formulation. Deet provided > 90% reduction in mosquitoes biting subjects for up to 8 h post-treatment. There was no significant difference between citrosa-treated and nontreated subjects.

RN - 0 (Insect Repellents). 0 (Plant Oils).

X-Mozilla-Status: 0000

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA06689 for ; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 11:34:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA08568; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 10:48:55 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 10:47:00 EST
Received: from vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil (vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil [128.160.52.117]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id KAA08559 for ; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 10:48:41 -0500 (EST)
X-Mailer: VAX Mailer (V4.2)
X-ListName: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: hmesick@GOLDINC.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, hmesick@GOLDINC.COM
Received: from lsis-ii.nrlssc.navy.mil (isis-ii [128.160.63.118]) by vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil (8.7.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA03930 for ; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 09:53:53 -0600 (CST)
Date: Wed, 29 Jan 97 09:22:55 CST
Subject: Re: Mosquito Attractants
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Mailer: Chameleon V0.05, TCP/IP for Windows, NetManage Inc.
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; CHARSET=us-ascii
X-UIDL: 7189654af7e638ae099815f80578a0ca
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Ive read that in some places the folks always take a small dog or pig to bed with them.. the idea being that the body temp on the beast is higher, attracting the mosquitoes and letting them get a good nights sleep.

thus one perhaps could come up with various thermal and chemical decoys.

rather than repel the mosquito .. attract it to some place else ?

-------------------------------------
Name: H. Carter Mesick
E-mail:hmesick@goldinc.com
Date: 01/29/97
Time: 09:22:55
-------------------------------------

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 30 09:46:14 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA00859 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:40:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA15653; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:15:34 -0500 (EST)
> According to "science news" mosquitoes are attracted to the CO2 in your
> breath and locate your body by it's gas trail. chew feen-a-mints, that will
> give them something to smell!

> Dr. Ron Hood

At the hospital we use a dry chemical to absorb CO2 from pulmonary function
machines. A little of this in a scarf wrapped around your face might make
you invisible.

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
Wouldn't keeping a fire going nearby serve the same purpose as a warm-blooded animal?

Matt Schoeffler
Nature & Nurture
hmesick@GOLDINC.COM wrote:

> I've read that in some places the folks always take a small dog or pig
> to bed with them... the idea being that the body temp on the
> beast is higher, attracting the mosquitos and letting them get
> a good nights sleep.
>
> thus one perhaps could come up with various thermal and chemical decoys.
> rather than repel the mosquito .. attract it to some place else ??

While traveling in Wales, I learned the reason some people call the bathroom -- Cloak Room. Back in the days of Castles, people would 'clean' their cloaks of ticks and other pests by hanging them in the 'Cloak Room.' The bugs would jump off of their cloaks and onto the piles of steamers. [The original Steamer Cleaner!]

Maybe it's just me but, I wouldn't recommend sleeping next to a pile. :-)

Love & Health,

Rees

From - Thu Jan 30 09:45:44 1997

Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA06929 for ; Wed, 29 Jan 1997
Howdy,

> I've read that in some places the folks always take a small dog or pig
to bed with them.. the idea being that the body temp on the
> beast is higher, attracting the mosquitos and letting them get
> a good nights sleep.
According to "science news" mosquitoes are attracted to the CO2 in your breath and locate your body by its gas trail. chew feen-a-mints, that will give them something to smell!

"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"
Dr. Ron Hood
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 30 09:46:40 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA10467 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 02:50:05 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA16734; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 02:19:30 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 02:17:36 EST
Received: from enaila.nidlink.com (enaila.nidlink.com [205.219.220.23]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id CAA16731 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 02:19:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.212 ([205.219.220.212]) by enaila.nidlink.com (8.8.5/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA04279; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 23:28:16 -0800 (PST)
Message-ID: <32F03F12.6A17@nidlink.com>
Date: Wed, 29 Jan 1997 23:26:25 -0700
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@NIDLINK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU
Subject: Re: Mosquito Attractants
References:
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: d221f44f25da54ef7f4a2bc9f281cdc4
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Rob Chatburn wrote:
>
> >I've read that in some places the folks always take a small dog or pig
> >to bed with them.. the idea being that the body temp on the
> >beast is higher, attracting the mosquitos and letting them get
> >a good nights sleep.
> >
> > Yep, that was the inspiration for the 1970s rock group THREE DOG NIGHT.
> >
> > Rob Chatburn

    I've slept with some pigs and I still got bit.

Brains in a can,
    Chris

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
I was under the impression that mosquitoes were directed by body heat at night.
So when I went over to a friend's house (a trailer in the woods) which was
by no means skeeter safe, I left the light on in an adjacent room. When I woke up
next morning no bites! I don't know if this is going to help the list since we
wee indoors but that's my 2=2 anyway.

Baruch Attah Ba HaSHEM HaAdonai Y'shua HaMashiach
Howard N.V. Barker
B-YT51 266-2085
MAILSTOP 39-KM
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0000

UI - 96304512
AU - Xue RD
AU - Barnard DR
IN - USDA, ARS, Medical and Veterinary Entomology Research Laboratory, Gainesville, FL 32604, USA.
TI - Human host avidity in Aedes albopictus: influence of mosquito body size, age, parity, and time of day.
MH - *Aedes
MH - Aging
MH - Animal
MH - Body Constitution
MH - Feeding Behavior
MH - Female
MH - Human
MH - *Insect Bites and Stings
MH - Time Factors
AB - Diel patterns of human host attack by Aedes albopictus in the laboratory were studied in relation to mosquito body size, age, parity, and time of day. Analysis of responses in 10-, 15-, and 20-day-old females indicated a significant main effect due to time of observation in the diel period, as well as significant time x parity and time x age interactions. The distribution of mean host attack responses during the diel period was bimodal with approximately 70% of all activity during photophase (0800-2000 h); attack rates were highest in the morning (0800 h) and evening (1400-2000 h) and lowest between 0200 and 0600 h. The diel pattern of attack responses was bimodal for nulliparous and parous females, but parous females were more active than nulliparous females between 1400 and 2000 h. This pattern became increasingly bimodal during photophase, as mosquitoes aged, regardless of mosquito body size.
Variations in host avidity patterns between young and old females suggest that mosquito repellent bioassays initiated early in the day, that last > or = 6 h, or that use young females (approximately 5 days old) overestimate the protection period of deet against mosquitoes > 10 days old.

Eight polymer and 9 microcapsule formulations of deet were tested on laboratory rabbits against Aedes aegypti and Anopheles albimanus. Several formulations were significantly more effective than simple (unformulated) deet at the same strength for periods up to 24 h. Best results were obtained with a polymer formulation containing a high molecular weight fatty acid and 3 microcapsule formulations containing lanolin, gum arabic, gelatin, tannic acid, stearic acid,
polypropylene glycol, water, and a commercial lotion in the microcapsule and carrier fractions.

RN - 0 (Insect Repellents). 0 (Polymers). 134-62-3 (Deet).

UI - 96300812
AU - Frances SP
AU - Klein TA
AU - Hildebrandt DW
AU - Burge R
AU - Noigamol C
AU - Eikarat N
AU - Sripongsai B
AU - Wirtz RA
IN - Department of Entomology, Armed Forces Research Institute of Medical Sciences, Bangkok, Thailand.

TI - Laboratory and field evaluation of deet, CIC-4, and AI3-37220 against Anopheles dirus (Diptera: Culicidae) in Thailand.

MH - Aedes
MH - Animal
MH - *Anopheles
MH - *Chromones
MH - *Deet
MH - Female
MH - Human
MH - *Insect Repellents
MH - *Mosquito Control
MH - *Piperidines
MH - Thailand
AB - Laboratory and field tests of the repellents diethyl methylbenzamide (deet), 1-(3-Cyclohexen-1-yl-carbonyl)-2-methylpiperidine (AI3-37220), and (2-hydroxymethylcyclohexyl) acetic acid lactone (CIC-4) were conducted against Anopheles dirus Peyton & Harrison, the principal malaria vector in Thailand. In the laboratory, An. dirus was more sensitive to CIC-4 than either AI3-37220 or deet.
The duration of protection provided by each repellent in laboratory tests increased with higher concentrations of repellents and when exposed in cages containing fewer mosquitoes. A field study in Chanthaburi Province, southeastern Thailand, during November 1993 tested 25% (wt:wt) ethanol solutions of each repellent against An. dirus. In contrast to the laboratory experiments, protection provided by AI3-37220 was significantly better than either deet or CIC-4 and there was no significant difference between deet and CIC-4. Protection provided by deet and CIC-4 fell to below 95% 2 h after repellent application, whereas AI3-37220 provided > 95% protection for 4 h. The protection provided by all repellents fell to < or = 65% 7 h after repellent application.

RN - 0 (Chromones). 0 (Insect Repellents). 0 (Piperidines). 134-62-3

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 30 09:46:12 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA00679 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:38:39 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA15657; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:15:42 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:12:47 EST
Received: from babar.INS.CWRU.Edu (babar.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.213]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AAA15641 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:14:31 -0500 (EST)
> As far as I know from all the research I have done so far, there is no
> confirmed scientific evidence of effects of diet of any kind as causal
> to number of insect bites. Vitamin B we hear a lot about, but the
> problem with reports such as: "and I got no bites while my wife got
> tons" has no scientific merit
> Andr=E9

Wouldn't it be fairly straightforward to conduct your own study using a
large group of people on a long outing? Divide them into fairly matched
pairs and give one group vitamin B (its B 6 isn't it?) at a precise dosage
(x mg/kg body wt) continuously for several days while the others act as
controls. The outcome variable, number of bites per day, is pretty easy to
measure. And you could even have fun counting if you had the right partner!
If there were a lot of bites you could maybe total the welt areas. Then a
simple paired t-test and voila, your answer. You might even publish it. I
offer this only half in jest.
Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 30 09:45:38 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA29271 for; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 21:34:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA14245; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 20:03:22 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 20:01:27 EST
Received: from brown.videotron.net (brown.videotron.net [205.151.222.70]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA14239 for; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 20:03:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.84 (ppp084.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.84]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with SMTP id UAA10059 for; Wed, 29 Jan 1997 20:07:21 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32EFAE41.546D@videotron.ca>
Date: Wed, 29 Jan 1997 20:08:33 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@VIDEOTRON.CA
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
bmonagh@DAYTON.NET wrote:

> Reminds me of a question I had... I was experimenting with making pemmi-
> can
> > a while back, including various "extras" along with the dried meat and
> > rendered fat; e.g., cranberries, blackberries, raisans, and nuts. In
> > particular, I had a batch with ground up peanuts... Someone else who
> > sampled that batch opined that, while tasty, it would be a bad food for=
> in
> > > the wild, since "eating peanuts attracts mosquitoes." Anybody else hea=
> rd
> > that? Believe it? While I don't eat that many peanuts, the mosquitoes
> > (and chiggers and, apparently, most annoying bugs) like me enough as is
> > without encouraging them more:^).

As far as I know from all the research I have done so far, there is no confirmed scientific evidence of effects of diet of any kind as causal to number of insect bites. Vitamin B we hear a lot about, but the problem with reports such as: "and I got no bites while my wife got tons" has no scientific merit because you don't know if the Vitamin B was the cause or whether it is something else. How do you know you would have had any more bites without the vitamin B? In order to establish a causal relationship here, you would have to control all of the other variables which could potentially be involved.

It's the first time I hear about nuts having an effect on bugs. I doubt
very much that this would be true. However, I would love to be proved wrong.

Primitive cheers,

André

---

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau  mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca

Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec

555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 30 09:46:27 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA06060 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 01:44:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA16295; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 01:06:04 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 01:04:09 EST
Received: from ki.se (mbox.ki.se [130.237.207.77]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA16289 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 01:05:22 -0500 (EST)
On Wed, 29 Jan 1997, Rob Chatburn wrote:

> Wouldn't it be fairly straight forward to conduct your own study using a
> large group of people on a long outing? Divide them into fairly matched
> pairs and give one group vitamin B (its B 6 isn't it?) at a precise dosage
> (x mg/kg body wt) continuously for several days while the others act as
> controls. The outcome variable, number of bites per day, is pretty easy to
> measure. And you could even have fun counting if you had the right partner!
> If there were a lot of bites you could maybe total the welt areas. Then a
> simple paired t-test and voila, your answer. You might even publish it. I
> offer this only half in jest.

This has probably been done already. Unfortunately it has also most likely been done by the military, in which case the research might be unavailable or hard to find. But who knows? [1]

Another setup might be:

* Double blind (neither the test subject nor the experimenter knows the time which is placebo and which is the "test substance". hard to do with nuts, but...
* Have a cage with a known number of mosquitos, expose a known amount of body (e.g. the arm, actual area can be roughly calculated) for a known duration. Count the number of bites.

* Use each test subject with all test substances, but in randomized order (double blind, naturally).

* Repeat as many times as needed to have (statistical) confidence in the experiment.

* Write up and publish in some more or less obscure journal.

/Par

[1] I just did a search in Medline: 107 hits (1966-present) on the combination of mosquitos and repellent, I'll look through them to see if there is anything useful. If anyone (a) can't access medline themselves, and (b) want the whole dump (references and abstracts), I can mail it to interested individuals. *Not* the list.

--

Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
"You need the Computing Power of a P5, 16 MB Ram and 1 GB Harddisk to run Win95. It took the Computing Power of approx 3 Commodore 64 to fly to the moon. Something is wrong here, and it wasn't the Apollo."

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 30 21:06:43 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA22336 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 10:57:54 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA20128; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 10:18:47 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Rob Chatburn wrote:

> Wouldn't it be fairly straight forward to conduct your own study using
> a large group of people on a long outing? Divide them into fairly
> matched pairs and give one group vitamin B (its B 6 isn't it?) at a
> precise dosage (x mg/kg body wt) continuously for several days while
> the others act as controls. The outcome variable, number of bites per
> day, is pretty easy to measure. And you could even have fun counting if
> you had the right partner!
I have the perfect location to conduct this study too :-). There are seriously more bugs/per square inch in this place during June and July than I have ever seen in my life. If anyone wants to check it out, you'd be welcome.

Mark

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
I have heard that too, and to some extent it does work. Though I think it would have to be over a period of time before your body totally absorbs enough to make you taste awful to the mini vampires.

Joe Schilling
From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: vit. B loading

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Thu Jan 30 21:06:44 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA01546 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 11:52:45 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA20749; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 11:08:08 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
It's been standard practice among the snake eaters (special ops military) to take mega doses of vit. B before patrolling to reduce attraction of blood sucking insects. I've never tried it myself, though a few of my acquaintances swear by it; maybe one of the more experienced members can give you an idea of dosage and actual effect.

Jim Burdine
LV, NV
jburdine@pipeline.com
Howdy,

I believe Barent has had pretty much the same experience I've had.

>I think that my tabs are 500 mg. I take one a day for 5-10 days before moving to the field.
My recollection of our SF "Hot-Wet Environment" prep kit instructions included "Thiamine, 500mg" to be taken at night 14 to 30 days before operations and continued daily. DEET "Jungle Juice" was also a part of the kit though not used extensively by us because of the odor (Charlie's nose could smell it even over the stink of their "nuoc mam") and the effect it had on the plastic parts of an XM16 "Mattel-A-Matic".

Side effects were minimal, if any. We had other things to think about. There was discoloration of the urine and a "need to pee" sensation but I attribute part of that to the Amphetamines they shoved at us. (Black beauties, 30mg biphetamines! Whoopeeee! I'm shock proof, bullet proof and anti-magnetic!) Perhaps the Amphetamines repel bugs?

The mosquitoes were the "Eat him here or take him with us" variety. I might add that the insects would land, start to "bite" then take off. The natives did not use DEET or anything else that I recollect. Something in the genetics or their diet provided protection. After the first six months in country I was pretty much unmolested by the little F-----s.

Not science, just observation.

Ron
"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"

Ron Hood

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 30 21:06:49 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA16739 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 13:23:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA22144; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 12:36:34 -0500 (EST)
> snipped IAW list protocol.
> give you an idea of dosage and actual effect.

I think that my tabs are 500 mg. I take one a day for 5-10 days before moving to the field. I don't know that mega-doses over a shorter period are effective. I have used this as the sole anti-insect tactic and it has worked in summer, in the piney woods, where others were soon on intimate terms with Charlie Chigger and Tommy Tick and I have never made their acquaintance.
Garlic has worked very well for me as a tick repellent. I've seen vastly
fewer deer ticks on me when in the Pine Barrens when loading up on granulated garlic

Matt Schoeffler
I know that Andre doesn't want testimonials but... I do the following when going to the field: wash with fragrance free soaps, take vitamin B supplements, up my garlic intake, get a haircut. When I get to the field I use a DEET product (although I would prefer something that doesn't eat the plastic watch case). I have virtually zero problem with insect bites, including chiggers. We have found that each of these step in and of themselves is effective and just combine them to work pest free. Yes, Avon's Skin So Soft does work to cut down on chigger bites (depends on how applied). Not altogether primitive but makes that long wait in the ambush so much less miserable.

--

Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country
I have found another effective pest treatment to be treating my clothes, in particular my cuffs and waistband with Permithrin. It is sold in army surplus stores and I think OFF has a commercially available product. It lasts for weeks, does not come in direct contact with my skin, and when I have used it, I have never had a tick or chigger problem when those around me are clawing at their skin like maniacs. Sure it isn't primitive or available in nature, but damm if it does work!

Kevin
BKP wrote:
>
> I know that Andre doesn't want testimonials but... I do the following
> when going to the field: wash with fragrance free soaps, take vitamin B
> supplements, up my garlic intake, get a haircut. When I get to the field
> I use a DEET product (although I would prefer something that doesn't eat
> the plastic watch case). I have virtually zero problem with insect
> bites, including chiggers. We have found that each of these step in and
> of themselves is effective and just combine them to work pest free. Yes,
> Avon's Skin So Soft does work to cut down on chigger bites (depends on
> how applied). Not altogether primitive but makes that long wait in the
> ambush so much less miserable.
>
> --
> Sincerely,
> Barent
> Duty, Honor, Country

Where I live in Northern Wisconsin, I have found very little other than
a headnet that helps at all. I don't use DEET products, especially not
on my skin, but the kids I work with do and it does very, very little to
keep the little buggers off. Like many here on the list I have tried any
and every natural repellant I can find or make including:
   -strong cedar teas
   -Bracken fern head coverings
   -strong smudges with cedar, balsam fir etc.
Nothing works for very long, if at all.

The question of diet is interesting. Plantain seeds (Plantago sp.) has a
high quantity of B vit. in them. A friend of mine was told by an Ojibwa
Medicine woman to eat half an inch of the seed stalk every day. This
recommendation was based on his extreme allergy to bee stings and his
seeming ability to attract them constantly. Since taking this remedy he
has not had a single bee sting and he says mosquitoes just don't seem to
bother him as much either. One factor is that he lives in southern WI.
Folks down that way have never encountered mosquitoes and biting flies
like they find when they come north, especially like they were this past
year. My personal experimentation with plantain seeds is that it probably helps some, but not enough to really make a serious dent in things. I eat a fairly clean diet, to, that is high in wild edibles, especially during peak mosquito time. I have heard different instructors say that natural diets help. So far I have not found that to work entirely.

Mark

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.3/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA14768 for ; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 22:15:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA04221; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 21:17:46 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 21:15:51 EST
Received: from sam.napanet.net (sam.napanet.net [157.22.192.19]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA04216 for ; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 21:17:35 -0500 (EST)
From: jpbeardsley@PUC.EDU
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jpbeardsley@PUC.EDU
Received: from [157.22.196.101] (puc101.pucelem.napanet.net [157.22.196.101]) by sam.napanet.net (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA16552; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 18:20:07 -0800
Date: Tue, 28 Jan 1997 18:20:07 -0800
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Hi all,

Caught this message in the tracker archives and was wondering if anyone had any scientific knowledge or sources about this subject. I've heard about this a lot, and my personal experimentation does not lead me to any positive conclusions. I already know there are many opinions from both sides, and I don't need more of those, but now I'm looking for scientific data on this. Anyone?

Thanks for your help.

Andr=E9

I believe that in one of Tom Browns books he mentions the use of plantain and a couple of other plants as insect repellents. When I am out hiking I often eat plantain as a trailside nibble. My hiking friends have been convinced that the vitamin-B works, as they are always getting bit. I'm not sure that it is related but I also have less reaction from poison oak. Peterson field guide to medicinal plants has some good information on plantain.
Reminds me of a question I had... I was experimenting with making pemmican a while back, including various "extras" along with the dried meat and rendered fat; e.g., cranberries, blackberries, raisans, and nuts. In particular, I had a batch with ground up peanuts... Someone else who sampled that batch opined that, while tasty, it would be a bad food for in the wild, since "eating peanuts attracts mosquitoes." Anybody else heard that? Believe it? While I don't eat that many peanuts, the mosquitoes (and chiggers and, apparently, most annoying bugs) like me enough as is without encouraging them more:^).
On Sun, 26 Jan 1997, Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> 17  Nuts       Mixed nuts       2  18  14  20
> 18  Peanut butter  2  18  14  20

Reminds me of a question I had... I was experimenting with making pemmican a while back, including various "extras" along with the dried meat and rendered fat; e.g., cranberries, blackberries, raisans, and nuts. In particular, I had a batch with ground up peanuts... Someone else who sampled that batch opined that, while tasty, it would be a bad food for in the wild, since "eating peanuts attracts mosquitoes." Anybody else heard
that? Believe it? While I don't eat that many peanuts, the mosquitoes (and chiggers and, apparently, most annoying bugs) like me enough as is without encouraging them more:^).
In a message dated 96-12-30 21:43:46 EST, Gary Lowell writes:

<< Please go and buy this book The Art of Flint Knapping, By D. C. Waldorf. It will cover the basics, such as tools, raw materials, percussion, pressure, and indirect percussion flaking techniques, as well as advanced theory and practice. You may be able to get this book at the Library. This book was of great help to me when I first started and still is. Also go to this URL http://www.ucs.mun.ca/~t64tr/knap.html This is the Knappers Anonymous Homepage you can get all kinds of information on Knapping ... >>

Note there is also Flintknapping The Art of Making Stone Tools by Paul Helweg, a 110 page booklet available from:

Errett Callahan, PhD, Dir.
Piltdown Productions
2 Fredonia Ave.
Lynchburg, VA 24503

Thanks for the knappers web page reference.

With reference to all topics discussed here, it is a pleasure to communicate with like-interest people, especially in the somewhat obscure area of primitive skills. I just subscribed last week and am glad I did.

John Waltz
Belle Mead, NJ
Do not do that!! You can be hurt bad!! Folks smater than I will be telling you why vary soon.

Please go and buy this book The Art of Flint Knapping, By D. C. Waldorf. It will cover the basics, such as tools, raw materials, percussion, pressure, and indirect percussion flaking techniques, as well as advanced theory and practice. You may be able to get this book at the Library. This book was of great help to me when I first started and still is. Also go to this URL http://www.ucs.mun.ca/~t64tr/knap.html This is the Knappers Anonymous Homepage you can get all kinds of information on Knapping, such as where to get the tools for knapping what is safe to do and what is not safe to do. Do not let your students knapp until you have checked all of this out. There are things you must do to make this a safe hobby. Here is another homepage to check out. This is called the Knapper's Corner it too is a good homepage http://www.eskimo.com/~knapper/

Good luck

Gary Lowell
Salem, Or
USA
At 08:25 PM 12/30/96 -0400, you wrote:
> Is there anyone who is an experienced knapper who can answer this email
> inquiry for me. I have no knowledge of this technology. Please respond to
> Lord Luinrandir directly. His email address is below. Thanx, Ted
> 
> >>Date: Sun, 29 Dec 1996 22:48:41 -0800
> >>From: "Lord Luinrandir, Son of Herne"
> >>Organization: The Silversmith of Brigid's Hammer Art Shop
> >>MIME-Version: 1.0
> >>To: tbailey@ic.net
> >>Subject: knapping with water?
> >>X-URL: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/GLP.html
> >>
> >>I was told that it was possible to knap obsidian into arrowheads by
> >>heating the stone and dripping water on it.
> >>
> >>I am the Lapidary Instructor at Riverbend Art Center here in Dayton Ohio
> >>and would like to teach my students something new.
> >>--
> >>Luinrandir Hernsen
> >>http://www.dnaco.net/~thx-1138/
> >>Silversmith
> >>
> >>Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
> >>P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
> >>Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
> >>Ph: (313)-971-2970  ||  Fax: (313)-761-3632
> >>Internet Address:  http://ic.net/~tbailey/
> >
> >

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Tue Dec 31 11:11:13 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA03184; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 20:57:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA09215; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 20:55:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 20:54:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA09211 for
; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 20:54:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.153]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail
Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA50; Tue, 31 Dec 1996 20:52:08 -0500
Ted E. Bailey wrote:
>
> Is there anyone who is an experienced knapper who can answer this email
> inquiry for me. I have no knowledge of this technology. Please respond to
> Lord Luinrandir directly. His email address is below. Thanx, Ted
>
> >Date: Sun, 29 Dec 1996 22:48:41 -0800
> >From: "Lord Luinrandir, Son of Herne"
> >Organization: The Silversmith of Brigid's Hammer Art Shop
> >MIME-Version: 1.0
> >To: tbailey@ic.net
> >Subject: knapping with water?
> >
> >I was told that it was possible to knap obsidian into arrowheads by
> >heating the stone and dripping water on it.
> >
> >Share your knowlegde about this with me?
> >
> >I am the Lapidary Instructor at Riverbend Art Center here in Dayton Ohio
> >and would like to teach my students something new.
> >--
> >Luinrandir Hernsen
> >http://www.dnaco.net/~thx-1138/
> >Silversmith
> >
>
> Ted Bailey 
> email to: tbailey@ic.net
> P. O. Box 6076 
> Ann Arbor, MI 48106 
> Ph: (313)-971-2970 
> Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/

HERE WAS MY ANSWER TO THIS PERSON:
I am glad to answer this question. The answer is that this is only a
myth. It is not possible to control the shaping/knapping process in this
manner. As near as I can figure this comes from an old Edgar Rice Burroughs, Tarzan novel. Stone tools and points are produced from many types of stone, including obsidian. They are produced by striking the stone with a billet or hammerstone in such a way that the energy travels through the stone and causes the stone to break off predictable, controlled flakes. The tool is further finished, depending on the tool, by using an antler tine or copper wire mounted into a handle as a pressure flaking tool. This is a very simplified explanation.

For more details I can recommend some classes from people who teach this process known as flintknapping. I also recommend the following books:

- Flintknapping Flashcards by Errett Callahan (Piltdown Productions)
- The Art of Flintknapping by D.C. Waldorf

I also recommend the following teachers:

- Errett Callahan, Piltdown Productions, 2 Fredonia Ave., Lynchburg, VA 24503
  Errett Callahan specializes in and conducts workshops in flintknapping, primitive skills, archery, etc. and sells stone knives, flintknapping supplies and a starter set for the beginning flint knapper, complete with instructional flashcards. Catalog available. He is very renowned worldwide as an exceptional experimental archaeologist. He is founder of the Society of Primitive Technology.
- Jeff Holshouser, 8535 Bringleferry Rd., Salisbury, NC 28146, Phone: (704) 639-9082
  Jeff teaches some excellent workshops on flintknapping, especially for those just starting out in flintknapping. He also collects artifacts and sells casts of originals and will do other replication.
- Flintworks, Scott K. Silsby. Rt. 1, Box 2426, Front Royal, VA 22630, Phone: (703) 636-4824
  Scott is the best teacher and tool maker, when it comes to greenstone tools. He also teaches workshops in flintknapping, bow and arrow making and sells greenstone and greenstone tools.
- Boulder Outdoor Survival School, Inc., P.O. Box 1590, Boulder, CO 80306, Phone: (303) 444-9779
  B.O.S.S. has much to offer in primitive and survival skills workshops from a week to 27 day long hands-on training. Write for a schedule of classes and products they have available. They are also a good resource to connect you with some particular craftsman, book or resource you may be having trouble locating. Dave Wescott is director and is well known for his contributions and skills in primitive and survival technologies. He organizes Rabbit Stick Rendezvous and is editor of the Bulletin of Primitive Technology.
- Barry Keegan, Pathways School, 6 Heather Lane, Elmsford, NY 10523, Phone: (914) 592-8961
  He and his partner, Anthony Follari are two of the most skilled people I have met. They communicate well and their experience in the field is apparent. Write for a full schedule of their classes.

The following organizations and newsletters are also excellent resources:

- Michigan Flintknapperis, Robert Love, 8185 Kiowa Trail, Pinckney, MI 48169
  A group of flintknappers and primitive technologists that meet
regularly and hold annual events. They are donation supported. To maintain membership you must be actively contributing to the group in some way or by contributions, suggested, $10.00. They have a fine news letter for all members and contributors to their group.

Great Lakes Primitives, George Hedgepeth, Editor, G-3450 South Linden Rd., Suite 119, Flint, MI 48507

Newsletter on various primitive skills and activity focusing on activity in the Great Lakes area. $10.00 per year

Bulletin of Primitive Technology, Society of Primitive Technology, P.O. Box 905, Rexburg, ID 83440, Phone Voice/FAX: (208) 359-2400

More than a magazine, the official bulletin of the Society of Primitive Technology. The most highly technical, yet understandable, magazine on various primitive technologies I have ever read. Contains articles by all the big names in these technologies. Join the Society and order their back issues while you can at $10 per issue. Free classifieds for members. ($25.00 year). Subscription price includes annual PrimitiveTechnology Newsletter.

ALSO CHECK OUT MY HOME PAGE BELOW FOR OUR CLASSES, ANNUAL EVENT AND SOME GREAT LINKS!
------------------------------------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Wed Dec 25 06:49:07 1996
Received: from majordomo.iastate.edu (majordomo.iastate.edu [129.186.1.10]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA03992 for ; Wed, 25 Dec 1996 00:31:31 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from majordom@localhost) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) id XAA20490 for knapper-outgoing; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 23:20:14 -0600
Received: from pop-1.iastate.edu (pop-1.iastate.edu [129.186.6.61]) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA20485 for ; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 23:20:11 -0600
Received: from echo.i-link.net (echo.i-link.net [199.172.8.2]) by pop-1.iastate.edu (8.7.3/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA22744 for ; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 23:20:10 -0600 (CST)
Received: from houston-1-1.i-link.net by echo.i-link.net (AIX 3.2/UCB 5.64/4.03) id AA35676; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 23:20:06 -0600
X-Authentication-Warning: majordomo.iastate.edu: Processed from queue /var/spool/majordomo/knapper
Message-Id: <32C0BB0B.650A@i-link.net>
Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 23:26:35 -0600
X-UIDL: 851557464.022
From: Russ Brownlow
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
Mime-Version: 1.0
To: knapper@iastate.edu
Subject: [Fwd: Keep it clean revisited]
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Disposition: inline
I just found a great way to "keep it clean". I got one of the plastic kiddie pools and placed a chair with only the front two legs inside the pool. You can then sit in the chair and have the pool catch all of your tailings. When it gets a little full, just fold the pool a little, and funnel all the waste into the trash. It works great. The pieces are caught by the edge of the pool instead of zinging off a tarp as they often do.

I would also like to push the Whittaker book. I've been knapping since I was a kid, but I could never quite get it down. Sure, I could whittle a stone into a pile of flakes in no time, and maybe have some sort of crappy looking tool at the end. But a couple of weeks ago I finally found Whittaker's book at Barnes and Noble Book Stores. I've read it about half way through. My job (as an archaeologist) currently requires me to do little more than watch big machinery demolish old buildings. I then go look at the ground to see if anything is below them archaeologically. Therefore, I sit and have a lot of free time. After reading about half the book, I sat down at work and began putting it into practice. I am happy to say that I now have a small arsenal of points that, for me, are pretty damn cool. I've struggled with knapping for about the past ten years off and on, and then after reading that book, BOOM, I could finally do it!!! I'm not claiming to be "GOOD", but I'm a hell of a lot better than I was in the past ten years. Even my friends and family were amazed that I actually had made the points that I showed them. Sorry to ramble, but to anyone that is having a hard time or just beginning to knap, I highly recommend Whittaker's book "Flintknapping: Making and Understanding Stone Tools". I'm sure it will help. If Santa leaves that scanner under the tree this year, I'll send in a before and after testimonial to the Gallery. That is how I came across the pool idea above. Since I've finally been able to do it, I CAN'T STOP!!! My arms and hands are sore! OK, enough raving.

Peace,
/
/  \
/   \
/    \
/      \
/        \
/          \
/            \
/              \
/                \
/                  \
/_________________

Jim, good pressure flaking post!

I would also like to recommend a video that I purchased about 6 months ago from Craig Ratzat from Oregon. It's the best one I've seen so far.

Anyone interested can contact Craig at 541/747-1399. The video is called "Caught Knapping".

Standard Disclaimer: I don't get any kickbacks/etc from Craig.

Good Knapping.....
Bob Thompson
EMAIL: rmthomps@spd.dccc.com

From - Sun Nov 10 05:40:50 1996
Received: from majordomo.iastate.edu (majordomo.iastate.edu [129.186.1.10]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id JAA00779 for ; Sat, 9 Nov 1996 09:14:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from majordomo@localhost) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) id IAA00933 for knapper-outgoing; Sat, 9 Nov 1996 08:03:19 -0600
Received: from pop-2.iastate.edu (pop-2.iastate.edu [129.186.6.62]) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id IAA00928 for ; Sat, 9 Nov 1996 08:03:15 -0600
Received: from maildeliver0.tiac.net (maildeliver0.tiac.net [199.0.65.19]) by pop-2.iastate.edu (8.7.3/8.7.3) with ESMTP id IAA08063 for ; Sat, 9 Nov 1996 08:03:14 -0600 (CST)
Received: from mailnfs0.tiac.net (mailnfs0.tiac.net [199.0.65.17]) by maildeliver0.tiac.net (8.8.0/8.8.8) with ESMTP id JAA21470 for ; Sat, 9 Nov 1996 09:03:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: from wsears.tiac.net (wsears.tiac.net [206.119.72.166]) by mailnfs0.tiac.net (8.8.0/8.8.8) with SMTP id JAA03328 for ; Sat, 9 Nov 1996 09:03:10 -0500 (EST)
Date: Sat, 9 Nov 1996 09:03:10 -0500 (EST)
Message-Id: <2.2.16.19961109100150.26f74214@tiac.net>
X-Sender: wsears@tiac.net
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Pro Version 2.2 (16)
Mime-Version: 1.0
To: knapper@iastate.edu
X-UIDL: 847577670.027
From: Wanita Sears
Subject: Re: KNAPPING WITH HOT ROCKS&WATER
Sender: owner-knapper@iastate.edu
Precedence: bulk
Reply-To: knapper@iastate.edu
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Bob, Edgar Rice Burroughs went into great detail in his Tarzan novels to describe how Tarzan heated the flint in a fire then sprinkled water on it to fracture the stone...... this is FICTION as the saying goes .... do not try this at home ....Heat treating is at best very tricky ITis done by burying the matierial in dry sand UNDER a fire pit,.......approx. 4 inches of sand then the stone then more sand compressed on top. on top of this you build a fire allow it to burn for a whole day, then let it go out on its own. After it is toatally out, about another whole day ,remove the stone and you will find it is like christmas time , you never know what colors the heat treating has brought out. Expirement with different sand depths , and different types of flint, as well as how long to keep the fire burning or how long you let it cool before removal from the sand . Different kinds of rock require different amounts of heat to successfully heat treat , for example... Ohio flint heat treats at around 350 degrees......any hotter and you can ruin the material, while Brandon flint from Europe requires a much hotter fire I believe it is in direct correlation to the amount of silica in the matieral as you know flint is very high in silica. Quartzite does not heat treat very well to get large flakes from "ZITE" as we call it you have to get even more primitive. When we want to work zite we go to the
Burlington Vermont area where there is some of the best, most glass like zite in North America then we get crude, by carefully picking up 100 lb boulders and smashing them down on other boulders to remove large spalls. In this manner we have produced 16 inch spear points no thicker than 3/4 of an inch. Give these methods a try you will enjoy the results much more than having an exploding rock send a shard through your skull. If you would like any more info you can write to ... Thunderpaw at this address . keep on bustin rock.

At 01:12 PM 10/25/96 -0500, you wrote:

> The closest thing i know of that comes close to hot rock
> and water method of making stone tools is the quartzite
> tool manufacturing process used by the Caddoes in East Texas.
> This quartzite is extremely tough and virtually
> impossible to spall (i've tried it). They would throw the nodules into
> their camp fires, forcing the rock to crack into smaller
> pieces that gave them possibly some degree of heat treatment
> and better angles of attack for percussion and pressure
> flaking. There is some school of thought that the hot
> rock was induced to crack by sudden cooling with
> water.
> Most the points (lots of Garys) are crude and thick
> about an inch/inch and half long and nearly as thick as
> your little finger. Makes you wonder how they hafted such
> a chubby point.
>
> Bob Thompson
> rmthomps@spd.dsccc.com
>

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Tue Nov 12 06:53:14 1996
Received: from maildeliver0.tiac.net (maildeliver0.tiac.net [199.0.65.19]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA14233 for ; Sun, 10 Nov 1996 20:27:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mailnfs0.tiac.net (mailnfs0.tiac.net [199.0.65.17]) by maildeliver0.tiac.net (8.8.0/8.8) with ESMTP id UAA00619 for ; Sun, 10 Nov 1996 20:31:15 -0500 (EST)
Received: from wsears.tiac.net (wsears.tiac.net [206.119.72.166]) by mailnfs0.tiac.net (8.8.0/8.8) with SMTP id UAA11068 for ; Sun, 10 Nov 1996 20:31:07 -0500 (EST)
Date: Sun, 10 Nov 1996 20:31:07 -0500 (EST)
Message-Id: <2.2.16.19961110212942.265f61ee@tiac.net>
X-Sender: wsears@tiac.net
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Pro Version 2.2 (16)
Mime-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
X-UIDL: 847756046.000
Hi Dr. Bourbeau,

First I must say my mother's mother's maiden name is Bourbeau. Born in Quebec. First French ancestor settled in Trois Rivieres. I do have some geneology. We most likely are cousins.

Consulted with my husband the knapper. He said there are flint and churt deposits in Canada that can be used for knapping in survival situations. There are problems with cracking if it is obtained above the frost line. Heat treating of these materials alters the structure and color in some cases for easier workability. Over an open campfire it is trial and error. After spalling off your flakes from the original piece dig a hole below your fire. You have to use 4 inches of dry sand between layers of flakes. Do small batches. If it cracks you need to go deeper with more sand between fire and first layer. If still hard to work bring layer up closer to fire. I don't know of the other knappable materials in Quebec. Tim Rast may be able to help you with that. Can't think of any other Canadian knappers.

If you have any specific questions my husband, Joel said he would be glad to answer them. His techniques are suited to wilderness survival as the only tools he uses are stone, antler, and copper. No power tools.

Hopefully next spring we will be going to Kanesatake to visit friends. Maybe you could come watch him demonstrate there.

Wanita & Joel Sears
Bear Mountain Traders

At 07:05 AM 11/11/96 +0000, you wrote:
> Hi Wanita,
> 
> I'd be very interested in obtaining additional information on the
> subject of knapping with heat, as it would be useful to my wilderness
> survival research at the University of Quebec.
> 
> Thanks!
> 
> AF Bourbeau
> Professor
> Chicoutimi
Here are some more knapping sites if anyone is interested. This first one is not quite finished, but the guy knapped with Crabtree, so he must have some pretty good knowledge on the subject. Once it is finished, it may prove helpful to many on the list.

http://www.ucalgary.ca/~dthanna/flintknap.html

http://www.lib.uconn.edu/NativeTech/stone/index.html

Also, concerning posts that inquire about knap-ins, Whittaker's book has a long list in the back of what appears to be yearly knap-ins across the country. If anyone is interested that doesn't have the book, I'll post them (just as soon as I complete my FINAL for my archaeology theory class). Let me know if you are interested.

Nothing runs contrary to nature,
Only to what we KNOW of nature.

/\   
 / \  
 /  \ 
 /    \
/     Russ\ 
(_______)

From - Sun Jan 19 20:26:22 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from majordomo.iastate.edu (majordomo.iastate.edu [129.186.1.10]) by
Greetings from Eric’s Rocks and such!!!!!!!!!

I thought i give you all a update on materials.

BRANDON FLINT ENGLAND $2.65 LBS NODULES 10LBS TO 100LBS.

INDIANA HORNSTONE I JUST HAVE 40LBS LEFT TELL THE GROUND DRY UP . $2.00 A POUND PLUS SHIPPING & HANDLING.

AGATE FROM RHODE ISLAND $4.00 A LBS PLUS SHIPPING AND HANDLING.

BEGINNING IN THE SUMMER OF 97 WE HOPE TO HAVE LARGE SUPPLY OF SLABS OF BRANDON FLINT AND HORNSTONE.

CARVING STONE
Arcadian Butterstone from south africa $2.50 a pound plus shipping and handling.

Soapstone $2.00 a pound plus shipping and handling.

Indiana slate sheet gray and red plus shipping and handling.
11 5/8 x 8 3/4 , 3/8 thick $7.00 each.
11 5/8 x 5 5/8 , 3/8 thick $6.00 each.
8 5/8 x 5 5/8 ,3/8 thick $5.00 each.
7 1/4 x 4 5/8 ,1/4 thick $4.00 each.
5 5/8 x 5 5/8 , 3/8 thick $3.00

ARROWHEAD OCARINA MUSICAL FLUTE INSTRUMENT $35.00

FIRST SOUTHEN INDIANA FLINT KNAP-N JUNE 20-22 1997

VISA , MASTERCARD AND DISCOVER WELCOME
From - Tue Jan 21 02:47:58 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA28402; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 13:40:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA18773; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 13:37:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 13:35:48 EST
Received: from binky.capnet.state.tx.us (binky.capnet.state.tx.us [141.198.136.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA18765 for ; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 13:37:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from s_bridge.rehab.state.tx.us by binky.capnet.state.tx.us; (5.65v3.2/1.1.8.2/13Nov95-1025PM) id AA26787; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 12:46:50 -0600
Received: from ccMail by rehab.state.tx.us (SMTPLINK V2.10.08) id AA853879192; Tue, 21 Jan 97 12:31:28 cst
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853875768.027
From: EDDIE.STARNATER@REHAB.STATE.TX.US
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
        EDDIE.STARNATER@REHAB.STATE.TX.US
Date: Tue, 21 Jan 97 12:31:28 cst
Message-ID: <9700218538.AA853879192@rehab.state.tx.us>
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: flaked knife
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dave,
It depends a great deal on many factors such as type of stone, platform preperation, type of precussor etc. Perhaps if you can get me some more detail I can help. On large material, over say 30 lbs, I use a 2.5" x 9" piece of copper that weighs about 151bs. I do not have to use much speed in the strike, but the mass of the heavy billet produces a much flatter spall than a lighter billet with more speed. Hope this helps.
eddie starnater
Stonehawk Creations
To all flint knappers

I am having trouble producing large flat flakes for knives from a flint core. Can anyone offer any suggestions?

Dave McMullen
mcmullen@paprican.ca
While out enjoying the first good weather of 1997 (tossing my rangs, of course), I shared time with some local uni. students. During the course of the afternoon, we shared a few outdoor experiences. I mentioned this skills list and things I had learned.

Upon the mention of fire making, one fellow said that he had discovered FOX FIRE and that he had gathered enough to read in the dark....While I have certainly heard the term "fox fire", I'd never known its properties.

Sounds like something useful for this list.

My new friend said he often found it under pine knots, in loamy, damp soils.

Any comments?

b-man, rich

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

From - Tue Jan 21 02:46:31 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMT id OAA19457; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 14:41:17 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA08405; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 14:40:48 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 14:38:54 EST
Received: from milo.cfw.com (milo.cfw.com [205.219.240.6]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA08401 for
; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 14:40:30
-0500 (EST)
Received: from stn10.cfw.com by milo.cfw.com; (5.65v3.2/1.1.8.2/12Dec95-0403PM)
id AA04893; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 14:49:22 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E3F610.3EC9@cfw.com>
Date: Mon, 20 Jan 1997 14:47:44 -0800
X-UIDL: 853818488.020
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>snipped IAW Andre's instructions:
> Upon the mention of fire making, one fellow said that he had discovered
> FOX FIRE and that he had gathered enough to read in the dark....While I
> have certainly heard the term "fox fire", I'd never known its properties.

Fox Fire is the luminescent rotting wood often found in the forest, at
least here in the south. I have often seen it, sometimes in quantities
large enough or bright enough to be useful for performing light requiring
tasks, but not often. It is not a fire starter, and I have never heard
it referred to in reference to actual combustion. You may have heard of
the Fox Fire books (a series of 10 I think) which are interviews
conducted by high school students, mostly of "experienced" people in the
Rabun county area of North Carolina. I have the books, great info and
reading, ISBN: 0-385-07353-4, 0-385-02267-0, 0-385-02272-7,
0-385-12087-7, 0-385-14308-7, 0-385-15272-8, 0-385-15244-2,
0-385-17741-0, 0-385-17744-5, and 0-385-42276-8. The series (of
books, I think that there were magazines or articles earlier than
that) started in 1973. Unfortunately, the editor and founder of the
group was convicted of child molestation and ended his relationship with
the group 2-3 years ago (I think).
Long post but I could talk more about the books, as to your original question, I think that foxfire (correct spelling) is interesting but of limited practical use.

--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com
James E. Burdine wrote:

> snipped IAW Andre's instructions.
> Foxfire is methane gas,

I thought that was swamp gas!?! Please elaborate. Is this a dialectual (sp?) difference? Not in my experience and I have lived in CA, TX, WV, VA, KY, FL and have family and friends in every other state, Canada, Australia, England, Germany, etc... Foxfire has always meant luminescent, rotting wood to us. The luminescence created by the little living things (a fungus I believe) living off the dead wood. I will say that about the only place I have seen it is in the the southern US.

According to the initial volume of "Foxfire" it is "...a tiny organism that glows in the dark and is frequently seen in the shaded coves of these mountains."

Sorry for the disjointed post but I am writing on the fly, grabbing books as I come to a point requiring documentation. There are other names for swamp gas, but I have never heard it referred to as "foxfire".

Told you I could be blunt.

--

Sincerely,
Barent
Don't know much, but, what I know I KNOW.

I have seen phosphorescent fungus in Western Massachusetts
> Hi does anyone know any natural lip balm's and skin lotions that can be 
> found in southwestern plants and animals?
> 
> Jennie
>
> The main one I know is aloe vera. Also good for burns. I'll keep looking.
>
> Jim Burdine
> LV, Nv
> jburdine@pipeline.com

> From - Mon Jan 13 21:05:37 1997
> Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by 
> chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA19880; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 10:42:27 -
> 0500 (EST)
> Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by 
> poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA24850; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 10:41:22 -
> 0500 (EST)
> Received: from [38.11.182.66] (ip66.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.66]) by 
> mule0.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id KAA56604; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 10:18:32 -0500
> X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
> Warning-To: <>
> Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
> Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
> X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
> Message-ID:
> MIME-Version: 1.0
> Date: Mon, 13 Jan 1997 10:41:22 -0500
> To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, dicenzojennie@WEBTV.NET
> X-UIDL: 853031663.050
> From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
> Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
> Subject: Re: natural remedy
> Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
> Status: U
> X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Hi everyone,

Balsam Fir is probably one of my all time favorite natural remedies, which is great because it grows all over the place near me. The primary section of the tree I use is the pitch which has a natural antiseptic and can be used on cuts. It works better and heals faster than any store bought medicine I have ever found. The biggest use, though, is on burns and blisters. I have seen it heal the nastiest hand-drill blisters sometimes overnight and I've proved this over and over to people. I first learned about the burn properties of Balsam pitch from a synopsis of a doctoral thesis put out by a woman who, in addition to being and M.D. was apprenticed to an Ojibwa medicine woman in Michigan. I've since tried it under numerous circumstances from bad blistering to severe first and mild second degree burns and have found it soothing (which is important for a burn remedy) and a quick aid to healing. If anyone is interested I can post an address where this M.D.'s piece can be purchased.

Mark
Actually there is a very good use for maggots that does not involve food. If you have a small area of infection maggots are quite good to debride(eat) the sick flesh out. Allegedly they won't eat healthy flesh,
only dead purulent flesh. Can prevent a small problem from becoming a bigger problem.

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
At 04:34 PM 1/11/97 -0700, you wrote:
>Actually there is a very good use for maggots that does not involve food.
> If you have a small area of infection maggots are quite good to
debride(eat) the sick flesh out.

Exactly true. I know from experience what it's like to grow maggots on one's arm. As odd as it seems our medical training included instructions for protecting maggots on an open wound. As I remember (perhaps someone can check this) they excrete (secrete) a chemical called Alantoin. This slime is used as the basis of some cosmetics and skin care products.

" EEEEK! I can't eat that!" "Hell then, just rub it's shit on your skin!"

In addition to reducing scarring, the substance is also supposed to reduce the chances of infection through some sort of antibiotic action.

There are some insect larval infestations that I find much more unpleasant. The Bot fly larvae is a good example of that......

On that note..... I'm going to journey into the kitchen where Karen and I are preparing a wonderful romantic dinner free of maggots, road kill, butt devils exploding marshmallows (great story!) and other wonders of the primitive sciences. Till the 'marrow....

Peace,

Ron Hood

Visit Hoods Woods at
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/
It's good for a laugh......

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA10402; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 00:58:34 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA14302; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 00:57:59 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 00:56:06 EST
Received: from enaila.nidlink.com (enaila.nidlink.com [205.219.220.23]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AAA14299 for
; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 00:57:49
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.80 (pm2-17.nidlink.com [205.219.220.80]) by
enaila.nidlink.com (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA17395; Sat, 11 Jan
1997 22:04:12 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D870D8.40B2@nidlink.com>
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 1997 22:04:24 -0700
X-UIDL: 853084405.018
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@NIDLINK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: Re: Medical use for maggots
References:
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
James E. Burdine wrote:

> Actually there is a very good use for maggots that does not involve food.
> If you have a small area of infection maggots are quite good to
debride(eat) the sick flesh out. Allegedly they won't eat healthy flesh,
only dead purulent flesh. Can prevent a small problem from becoming a
bigger problem.

> Jim Burdine
> LV, Nv
> jburdine@pipeline.com

I had that experience, only with fingerling fish (trout, I think) while
fording a river (trying to get over to a hotspring, of course). I had a
lingering wound I don't want to describe and was surrounded by a school
of these little fish, busily pecking at my arm. Felt odd but didn't
hurt. Healed very rapidly after that. Might want to go down to the
fish farm in the future.

Chris

From - Fri Jan 10 04:09:54 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA04296; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:19:11 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA02606; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:17:21 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:22:03 EST
Received: from vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil (vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil [128.160.52.117])
by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA02601 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 15:17:10
well, i have a friend for India that says as a small lad they were always instructed to get the dog to lick minor cuts and scrapes. It seems that dogs have a large number of antibodies in their saliva, and can be used for minor first aid.

Since many have reported that the dogs have an attraction to fecal material ...

exercise to be completed by the reader

have a good weeked.

Name: H. Carter Mesick
E-mail: hmesick@goldinc.com
Date: 01/10/97
Time: 14:12:04
Hi everyone,

Balsam Fir is probably one of my all time favorite natural remedies, which is great because it grows all over the place near me. The primary section of the tree I use is the pitch which has a natural antiseptic and can be used on cuts. It works better and heals faster than any store bought medicine I have ever found. The biggest use, though, is on burns and blisters. I have seen it heal the nastiest hand-drill blisters sometimes overnight and I've proved this over and over to people. I first learned about the burn properties of Balsam pitch from a synopsis of a doctoral thesis put out by a woman who, in addition to being a M.D. was apprenticed to an Ojibwa medicine woman in Michigan. I've since tried it under numerous circumstances from bad blistering to severe first and mild second degree burns and have found it soothing (which is important for a burn remedy) and a quick aid to healing. If anyone is interested I can post an address where this M.D.'s piece can be purchased.

Mark
On 17 Jan 1997, HOWARD BARKER wrote:

> Usnea or Alectoria, I don't know Par. I've never even heard of them.

I'll quote a post from a few days ago to this list:

On Tue, 14 Jan 1997, Tom Elpel wrote:

```
# USNEACEAE
# Alectoria-Black Tree Lichen*  The black tree lichen is stringy and "moss"
# like.  Montana Indians washed and soaked the lichen, then cooked it for one
# to two days in a steam pit.  The cooked lichen was eaten or dried and
# powdered and used as a mush or thickener later.  It is reported that
# Flathead Indian families ate 25 pounds of the lichen each year (Hart).
# Evernia-  The plant is edible (Sturtevant).  A thick tea is used on running
# sores (Murphey).
```
Letharia-Wolf Lichen* This bright yellow tree lichen contains a highly toxic acid. It was once combined with animal fat and nails and used in Europe to kill wolves (Vitt). It is also used as a dye plant.
Usnea-Old Man's Beard* The lichen is boiled for use as a dye (Gilmore). It is used medicinally as an antibiotic (Klein). (Usnea is a light grey color. Use the "rubberband" test for positive identification: break the stems and inside you will find a white, rubbery core that stretches a little like a rubberband.)

I live in Western Washington, USA some places around are like swamps. The moss I'm referring to usually grow on tree limbs near streams and other bodies of water, and is somewhat stringy, would probably make good tinder for fires, and is green with a little yellow.

Please advice me on this, although it was very necc. to use this moss when i did, I don't want to wipe with some poisonous moss stuff.:)

Hard to tell from your description, but I doubt it's sphagnum, which is the bogforming moss of the northern forests. The color fits, though. Anyone familiar with the area and can help out on the possible ID?

/Par

--
Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
Disclaimer => Everything above is a true statement, for sufficiently false values of true.
> snipped IAW Andre's instructions... I've read of the
> use of spider webs as a hemostat or clotting agent by some indian medicine
> people. Anyone else run into something like that?

I was living in WV as a boy when I first heard of this. Came in handy a
time or two. Works on small wounds even big bleeders, don't know that I
would try it on a sucking chest wound though. I thought that it was used
also by the non-natives in upstate NY (where my family is from and from
or through whom I heard of the technique).
I was also taught to lick my own wounds to encourage clotting! Worked, I guess, at least I didn't bleed all over everything. Guess you could say I was a bit accident prone and always playing with sharp things.

--

Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country
Mark D. Ball wrote:

> Plants*, p. 99) that Chickweed juices (from the leaves I think he means)
> added to tallow (rendered animal fat) makes a good lip balm. I haven't
> tried it.

Tom's right, I have found that any rendered (or unrendered, for that
matter) animal fat works for lip balm, but it seems to me that plant
juices are only added for flavoring, so many would do, or they could be
dispensed with entirely. For example, I once used squirrel fat (just
wiped the peeled skin on my lips). Lip chapping is indeed a major
discomfort on survival trips, and lip balm is part of my everyday pocket
gear. I'd love to know if any non-animal sources exist. I may have
read (not sure, worth a try) that balsam fir (Abies balsamea) sap from bubbles was used. Anyone else on this?

AndrÈ

> >
> > From: jennifer dicenzo
> > To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
> > Subject: natural remedy
> > Date: Saturday, January 11, 1997 1:09 AM
> >
> > Hi does anyone know any natural lip balm's and skin lotions that can be found in southwestern plants and animals?
> >
> > JENNIE

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

From - Sat Jan 11 08:17:40 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA06369; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 12:40:24 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA10059; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 12:39:00 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 12:37:07 EST
Received: from cybersys.mercy.org (cybersys.mercy.org [205.225.34.178]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA10056 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 12:38:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from default by cybersys.mercy.org with smtp (Smail3.1.28.1 #2) id mÖvj7SB-00004KC; Sat, 11 Jan 97 09:42 PST
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID:
X-UIDL: 853031663.004
From: "Mark D. Ball"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mball@MERCY.ORG
To:
Subject: Re: natural remedy
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 1997 09:41:49 -0800
X-MSMail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1155
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
Status: U
Hi Jennie. Tom Brown says (*Tom Brown's Guide to Wild Edible and Medicinal Plants*, p. 99) that Chickweed juices (from the leaves I think he means) added to tallow (rendered animal fat) makes a good lip balm. I haven't tried it.

----------

> From: jennifer dicenzo
> To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
> Subject: natural remidy
> Date: Saturday, January 11, 1997 1:09 AM
>
> Hi does anyone know any natural lip balm's and skin lotions that can be found in southwestern plants and animals?
> JENNIE

From - Sat Jan 11 08:17:58 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA06597; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 13:11:52 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA10290; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 13:10:54 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 13:09:01 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA10287 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 13:10:41 -0500 (EST)
Received: from Quantum.qnet.com (lanc02-29.ca.qnet.com [207.155.34.119]) by ns2.qnet.com (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA12548; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 10:14:43 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853031663.010
From: diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Message-ID: <2.2.32.19970111181624.0072fda8@pop3.av.qnet.com>
X-Sender: diogenes@pop3.av.qnet.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Pro Version 2.2 (32)
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 1997 10:16:24 -0800
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mball@MERCY.ORG
Subject: Re: natural remedy
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

At 09:41 AM 1/11/97 -0800, you wrote:
>Hi Jennie. Tom Brown says (*Tom Brown's Guide to Wild Edible and Medicinal Plants*, p. 99) that Chickweed juices (from the leaves I think he means) added to tallow (rendered animal fat) makes a good lip balm. I haven't tried it.
Actually, Larry Dean Olsen taught this long before Ol' Tom put it into his book. I believe Tom took a few lessons from Larry back in the early '70's. That explains why so much of his material is nearly identical to Larry's. I think Larry maybe "Stalking Wolf".

There's another technique, one that I hesitate to mention... but it works. Rub some brown steamer on your lips, I promise that you won't lick them after the first time. Your lips won't get chapped.

Peace

Ron Hood
XXX

Visit Hoods Woods at
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/
It's good for a laugh......

I once used squirrel fat
I know for a fact that MINK OIL is one of the very best fats for skin care. Will give some protection from sunburn, has a slight anesthetic
effect for cuts, bites, burns, etc., is very healing.

Probably other similar fats are effective (turtle fat is claimed to be equal to mink fat... but who want to wear a turtle shell coat? :D).

Tea Tree oil is an excellent plant balm. There are several brands on the market, as well as different grades and qualities. The very best is made from the Australian MELALEUCA ALTERNIFOLIA. Was known as "The Aussie penicillin" in WW II.

In the highest grade, melaleuca oil is many more times effective than aloe for burns, bites, etc.

Mink oil, comes in various grades. BUY THE BEST, it's expensive, but does not go bad. And it is avail. in 100% pure grade.

Us city boys, do know some stuff:)

rich, b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

From - Mon Jan 13 21:05:37 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA19880; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 10:42:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA24850; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 10:41:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 10:39:30 EST
Received: from unix.newnorth.net (unix.newnorth.net [205.212.60.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id KAA24847 for ; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 10:41:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from marknq.newnorth.net (rhin-cs2-8.newnorth.net [205.212.60.178]) by unix.newnorth.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id KAA25086; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 10:56:35 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DA562C.5E06@unix.newnorth.net>
Date: Mon, 13 Jan 1997 09:35:08 -0600
X-UIDL: 853250488.004
From: Mark Zanoni
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MarkNQ@UNIX.NEWNORTH.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Win95; I)
Hi everyone,

Balsam Fir is probably one of my all time favorite natural remedies, which is great because it grows all over the place near me. The primary section of the tree I use is the pitch which has a natural antiseptic and can be used on cuts. It works better and heals faster than any store bought medicine I have ever found. The biggest use, though, is on burns and blisters. I have seen it heal the nastiest hand-drill blisters sometimes overnight and I've proved this over and over to people. I first learned about the burn properties of Balsam pitch from a synopsis of a doctoral thesis put out by a woman who, in addition to being and M.D. was apprenticed to an Ojibwa medicine woman in Michigan. I've since tried it under numerous circumstances from bad blistering to severe first and mild second degree burns and have found it soothing (which is important for a burn remedy) and a quick aid to healing. If anyone is interested I can post an address where this M.D.s piece can be purchased.

Mark
I haven't tried any of this (the voice of inexperience), but Jewel weed strikes me as a good emollient for lips. Also cactus juice, aloe, dodder, good old cattail root paste, english plantain is good as a poultice. Maybe trail celery (thistle). I'm thinking mostly succulents.

John Waltz

Hi does anyone know any natural lip balm's and skin lotions that can be found in southwestern plants and animals?

Jennie

The main one I know is alovera. Also good for burns. I'll keep looking.

Jim Burdine
LV, NV
jburdine@pipeline.com
One of the basics to carry with you is the bark especially the inner bark (cambium) of the willow. White willow seems to be the best, but all have a chemical called salicine. It's the natural form of aspirin (aceytal-salicilic acid). So whatever you use aspirin for you can substitute willow bark for. The leaves work too but are a different strength.

I've used willow bark tea for aspirin on survival trips and it works, but may irritate your stomach (no buffers like in store bought aspirin). I would like more information on preparing this too. Is it really the inner bark that works or all of the living parts? What strength does the tea need to be to correspond to an accurate dosage? Is there a way to remove the bitterness? Are there other ways to ingest it other than tea?

André
PS It does not cease to amaze me how many interesting subjects come up on this list! By the way, thanks everyone for renaming subject headers to reflect content of message.
--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA     G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA  G7H 5A7
418-543-2888
bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Fri Dec 27 05:37:29 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA15551; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 15:46:45 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA07350; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 15:46:00 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 15:48:47 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA00329 for
; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 13:19:34
-0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.154]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail
Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA128; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 11:41:56 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32C0171E.148A@perigee.net>
Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 11:41:56 -0500
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Willow bark as aspirin
References: <32BEEEF3.5952@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> 
> Merv Martin wrote:
>
> > One of the basics to carry with you is the bark especially the inner bark
> > (cambium) of the willow. White willow seems to be the best, but all
> > have a
> > chemical called salicine. It's the natural form of aspirin
> > (acetysalicilic acid). So whatever you use aspirin for you can
> > substitute
> > willow bark for. The leaves work too but are a different strength.
> > 
> I've used willow bark tea for aspirin on survival trips and it works,
> but may irritate your stomach (no buffers like in store bought aspirin).
> I would like more information on preparing this too. Is it really the
> inner bark that works or all of the living parts? What strength does
> the tea need to be to correspond to an accurate dosage? Is there a way
> to remove the bitterness? Are there other ways to ingest it other than
> tea?
>
> AndrÈ
>
> PS It does not cease to amaze me how many interesting subjects come up
> on this list! By the way, thanks everyone for renaming subject headers
> to reflect content of message.
> --
> ----------------------------------------------------------
> Surviving at nature's will...
> 
> Dr AndrÈ-François Bourbeau
> Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
> University of QuÈbec
> 555 University Boulevard
> Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
> CANADA     G7H 2B1
> 418-545-5011 Ext 5259
> 
> At Nature's Will Inc.
> 3801 Rang St-Martin
> Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
> CANADA     G7H 5A7
> 418-543-2888
> 
> bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
> ----------------------------------------------------------
> I'm not sure of exact doses. I usually make an infusion (a tea). For a
mild sedative a bundle of young tiny branches steeped in boiling water
is very soothing. You can further concentrate it by boiling the inner
bark and branches, inner bark seems to be strongest. The more you boil
down the stronger it becomes. You can also make a tincture by crushing
and cutting up the inner bark, placing it in a bottle of ingestible
grain alcohol, placing in a dark place and shaking it every now and then. The shelf life is much longer and it is more concentrated this way and usually only requires a couple of drops, wait and see if it helps and give yourself a couple of more drops as you need it. I have also just chewed the inner bark. It is very bitter, but somehow a satisfying sensation. It takes the edge off of minor pain like muscle soreness. An infusion can also be rubbed on the skin to soothe muscle soreness and can be gargled for throat soreness.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive living skills. Check out our home page for more information.
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
One of the basics to carry with you is the bark especially the inner bark (cambium) of the willow. White willow seems to be the best, but all have a chemical called salicin. It's the natural form of aspirin (aceytal-salicilic acid). So whatever you use aspirin for you can substitute willow bark for. The leaves work too but are a different strength.

I've used willow bark tea for aspirin on survival trips and it works, but may irritate your stomach (no buffers like in store bought aspirin). I would like more information on preparing this too. Is it really the inner bark that works or all of the living parts? What strength does the tea need to be to correspond to an accurate dosage? Is there a way to remove the bitterness? Are there other ways to ingest it other than tea?

André

PS It does not cease to amaze me how many interesting subjects come up on this list! By the way, thanks everyone for renaming subject headers to reflect content of message.

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

I'm not sure of exact doses. I usually make an infusion (a tea). For a mild sedative a bundle of young tiny branches steeped in boiling water is very soothing. You can further concentrate it by boiling the inner bark and branches, inner bark seems to be strongest. The more you boil down the stronger it becomes. You can also make a tincture by crushing and cutting up the inner bark, placing it in a bottle of ingestible grain alcohol, placing in a dark place and shaking it every now and then. The shelf life is much longer and it is more concentrated this way and usually only requires a couple of drops, wait and see if it helps and give yourself a couple of more drops as you need it. I have also just chewed the inner bark. It is very bitter, but somehow a satisfying sensation. It takes the edge off of minor pain like muscle soreness. An infusion can also be rubbed on the skin to soothe muscle soreness and can be gargled for throat soreness.
Benjamin Pressley  
benjamin@perigee.net  
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca  

Snail Mail:  
TRIBE  
P.O. Box 20015  
Charlotte, NC 28202  
USA  
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net  
TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive living skills. Check out our home page for more information.  
TRIBE Homepage:  
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html  

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011  

From: bmanrich  
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca  
To: "dr. A.F. BOURBEAU"  
Subject: Re: Willow bark as aspirin  
Date: Tue, 24 Dec 96 12:43:13 -0600  

>bark  
>(cambium) of the willow.  White willow seems to be the best, but a  
I believe that dogwood bark was used for pain, as well.  Would be  
interesting to know just how many common plants we have avail. that can
be used for pain/fever.

>From my earlier days in East Texas, I recall "devil's walking stick", not only did it have thorns, but its interior had an agent that stung, and was claimed to be effective for tooth ache.

rich harrison, b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
**"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying. >>>>>> bmanrich@iamerica.net<<<<

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Dec 27 22:44:37 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA17539; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:07:57 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA09892; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:06:43 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:11:21 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA09888 for ; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:06:30 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.166]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA43; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:04:03 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32C48F6C.5F4F@perigee.net>
Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:09:32 -0600
X-UIDL: 851787496.001
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bmanrich@IAMERICA.NET
Subject: Re: Willow bark as aspirin
References: <199612241844.MAA10817@ns2.iamerica.net>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id VAA17539
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

bmanrich wrote:

> 
> >bark
> >>(cambium) of the willow. White willow seems to be the best, but a
I believe that dogwood bark was used for pain, as well. Would be interesting to know just how many common plants we have avail. that can be used for pain/fever.

> From my earlier days in East Texas, I recall "devil's walking stick", not only did it have thorns, but its interior had an agent that stung, and was claimed to be effective for tooth ache.

> rich harrison, b-man

> RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975 !
> "Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"*
> Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
> FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
> **"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.
> >>>>>> bmanrich@iamerica.net<<<<<<

I have not heard of dogwood used for pain relief, however, I do know it contains conine, a substitute for quinine. It was used extensively during the Civil War (U.S.). As far as researching how many plants are good for pain relief, Chris gave an excellent reference that is easy to use: The Ethnobotany Cafe, here's the address, in case anyone missed it: http://countrylife.net/ethnobotany/

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

Also Check Out Ted Baileyís Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Dec 25 06:47:18 1996
Received: from pti.alaska.net (husky.ptialaska.net [198.70.245.245]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id NAA01113 for ; Tue, 24 Dec 1996
Heya all,

First let me introduce myself a little. My name is Greg Biddle, I'm an archeologist, currently working in Juneau AK. I have worked all over quite a bit of the western and midwestern US. I have been flintknapping for about 7-8 years and have been interested in / practicing 'primitive' skills since my uncle taught me how to shoot a bow, bareback from a horse, and how to cure squirrel pelts with table salt (Sorry Mom!!) I am really enjoying this group, although I was getting a little worried about the 'fish bombombing' thread!!

Andre wrote:

>I've used willow bark tea for aspirin on survival trips and it works,
>but may irritate your stomach (no buffers like in store bought aspirin).
>I would like more information on preparing this too. Is it really the
>inner bark that works or all of the living parts? What strength does
>the tea need to be to correspond to an accurate dosage? Is there a way
>to remove the bitterness? Are there other ways to ingest it other than
>tea?

One way I've found to 'buffer' the willow bark is to add a little bit of mint (especially peppermint leaves) to the tea - it also makes it taste a LOT better. Mint also works as a stomach-soother by itself. And I have also used red willow bark with the same effects. As for dosages, I usually follow the 'intuitive' rule of about one cup of tea every 4 hours or so until the problem goes away. And I have heard that willow bark can be smoked to ingest the aspirin-like stuff, although I imagine that would just cause throat pain instead of stomach pain! And the bark can be chewed - same stomach and taste problems, but this does work especially well for toothaches (yeah, go figure!)

Well, thanks for letting me put in my 2 cents - I'll be watching closely, as I think there is lots coming from this group for me to learn.

Greg
By the way, how many do we have in the group with knowledge of medicinal and edible plants? Please step forward, so we can pick your brains from time to time. I do OK with plants and know enough to survive, but there are so many I know that I know so much more than me.

Got info and can dig up a few for ya. It'd be easiest to set up categories for treatment. Like burns, breaks, upset stomach, aches and pains...

_DO_ be careful, a plant called foxglove grows in North America. It's generic name is Digitalis (specifically Digitalis purpurea). Note the name Digitalis. Sounds like heart medicine doesn't it. It's the source of digitalis. That's just one.

One of the basics to carry with you is the bark especially the inner bark (cambium) of the willow. White willow seems to be the best, but all have a chemical called salicine. It's the natural form of aspirin (aceyl-salicilic acid). So whatever you use aspirin for you can substitute willow bark for. The leaves work too but are a different strength.

Now, be careful collecting the inner bark. If you cut away the cambium layer all the way around the tree (called girdling the tree), you'll kill it! That's it's blood system.

As far as dosage, I need to dig for some definitions and will post after
Christmas.

Speaking of that Merry Christmas to all and to all a prosperous New Year.

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------
| Merv Martin       *              *               |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com    *     *            *   |
| www.midtown.net/~merv     *               *          |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |
------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---
Jewel Weed is the best remedy for easing ivy itch. Just take a stalk, split it to expose the succulent inner and swab away. I have even made a preserve of isopropal alcohol and jewel weed juice (ground in a food processor) which lasted a couple of years and worked until it was used up.

I am not even sure I've seen poison oak! Just try to go out and try to find some plant you've never identified/not familiar with. Like looking for a needle in a river bank.

John Waltz
Belle Mead, NJ
> My understanding of how these poisons work is the opposite of what's
> being assumed here. Allergies, you know, are immune responses gone
> amok. Some people have never been sensitized to poison ivy in the
> first place, and so seem immune. But a big dose can create
> a sensitivity that reveals itself on further exposure.
> My father was once immune, so he was given the task of cleaning
> out a big patch of poison ivy. His next exposure caused very
> severe illness.
>
> According to MEDICINE FOR MOUNTAINEERING by James Wilkerson, MD 4th Ed, 1992:

"Decensitization for poison ivy has been tried, but the side effects are
as bad as the rash. No desensitizing agent has been approved by the Food
and Drug Administration."

And according to Paul Auerbach, MD in MEDICINE FOR THE OUTDOORS:

The rashes of poison ivy, poison sumac, and poison oak are caused by a
resin (urushiol) found in the resin canals of leaves, stems, berries, and
roots. The potency of the sap does not vary with the seasons. Because the
plant parts have to be injured to leak the resin, most cases are reported
in the spring when the leaves are most fragile. Dried leaves are less
toxic; particles can cause a severe reaction on the skin and in the nose,
mouth, throat, and lungs."

BTW: I have used a wash made of jewelweed (Impatiens sp.) leaves and stems
crushed in water on my skin when I think I have been exposed to poison ivy
with apparent success. I have used the juice from the stems right on small
poison ivy skin eruptions when it just starts to itch and the rash
dissappears.

Rob Chatburn
> Seems like one of the old homeopathic medicines was poison ivy, but
> in very dilute form.

Homeopathic remedies assist the body by using a ***VERY*** diluted substance that, taken
undiluted, would produce the very reaction you are trying to heal. (!) I've got a
Homeopathic remedy (never homemade, always lab-made) for Poison Ivy/Oak. Label says:
RHUS TOXICODENDRON, CROTON TIGLIUM, XEROPHYLLUM. The scientific names they use may be
outdated since Homeopathy has been around for 100 years. What are those last two
anyway (in english/common name)? No one quite knows how they work, yet there is much
research that documents its effectiveness.

The only problem with self-diagnosis (I use Homeopathic remedies at home) is that you
often have to be quite specific with the remedy. Just because you have an itch/rash
doesn't mean one remedy will cure that itch/rash (unlike cortisone which, I guess, would
be effective for most any rash). You have to be fairly exact in your typing of a
problem, so you can match the appropriate remedy. On the beneficial side: If you take
the 'wrong' remedy, you will simply not experience any change. Also, you could swallow
an entire bottle of any remedy and would not experience any negative side-effects.

A common Homeopathic remedy I use is Arnica montana (or Leopard's Bane) for sore muscles
and bruises. It can be taken internally in pill form and/or rubbed on externally in gel
form.

Love & Health,
Rees

>Homeopathic remedy (never homemade, always lab-made) for Poison Ivy/Oak.
Label says:
>RHUS TOXICODENDRON, CROTON TIGLIUM, XEROPHYLLUM. The scientific names they use may be
>outdated since Homeopathy has been around for 100 years. What are those last two
>anyway (in english/common name)?

Croton spp (at least according to my books) now has the genus name of
Eremocarpus, in the Spurge (Euphorbiaceae) family. The common name for the genus is doveweed or turkey-mullen.

Xerophyllum (in this area X. tenax) has the common name of beargrass. It's actually in the lilly family. It's a cool-looking plant that often grows in the higher areas. It has a bunch of basal leaves and sends up a tall shoot with a cream-colored flower cluster. (Kind of like yucca but with a more compact flower head and leaves that aren't used as a weapon.)

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA04733; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 00:22:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA00729; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 00:21:43 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 00:19:50 EST
Received: from mailgate21 (mailgate21-hme0.a001.sprintmail.com [205.137.196.52]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA00722 for ; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 00:21:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: by mailgate21 (SMI-8.6/SMI-SVR4) id VAA06780; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 21:25:17 -0800
Received: from sdn-ts-058mdrelrp14.dialsprint.net(206.133.8.81) by mailfep1-hme1 via smap (KC5.24) id Q_10.1.1.4/Q_17270_1_32e9990b; Fri Jan 24 21:24:27 1997
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E999C1.5E31@sprintmail.com>
Date: Sat, 25 Jan 1997 00:27:29 -0500
From: ROBERT COX
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, robertlcox@sprintmail.com
Organization: Nuisance Wildlife Control Service & Express Private Process Service
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, writer@PERIGEE.NET
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
References: <199701231639.KAA16830@ns2.iamerica.net> <32E92A28.7338@perigee.net>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Bob Jones wrote:
>
> bmanrich wrote:
> >
> > My Dad was a red-head and he was never affected. He said that red/blond
> > hair people were seldom bothered...what do you guys have to say on this?
> >
> > I was a reddish haired, freckled, pale skinned boy. My reaction to
poison ivy/oak/sumac was severe. I don't believe red hair offers much protection.

One year sumac caused both my legs to swell to twice their normal diameter. I spent three weeks in bed under a sheet tent with my legs suspended above towels. The towels needed to be changed each hour as they became saturated with liquid.

My worst encounter was at age sixteen after necking in the woods. We were wearing bathing suits (no, really) and nearly every inch of my skin was affected. Those few square inches spared from direct contact were infected later when I used the bathroom.

After two days I looked like the elephant man! Eyes swollen shut, each finger was a single huge blister with a nail indented at the end. Using the bathroom during the next week was a terrifying adventure.

But how might this story relate to primitive skill? Well, for those of us who react severely to poison ivy/oak/sumac the first skill to master is that of identification of the offending plants.

I spend many days each year hiking in the mountains yet it has been many years since I have had a reaction. I attribute my success to the caution I exercise while in the forest. I know the plants and I avoid contact with them. While this may restrict my freedom somewhat it does enable me to enjoy an environment that might otherwise be too dangerous to explore.

BTW, in the 1950's our family doctor suggested to my mother that I chew several poison ivy leaves each spring to decrease my sensitivity. She declined and I was never inclined to try it. I wonder if it really works...?

Bob Jones
writer@perigee.net

I was reading an old issue of bulletin of primitive technology today. It had a note about using the crushed green leaves of plaintain to cure poison x rashes. It stated that they totally eliminated blisters, rash, and itching within ONE HOUR!

Robert L. Cox, Jr. - President
Nuisance Wildlife Control Services
Express Private Process Service
P.O. Box 5582, Towson, MD 21285
Email: robertlcox@sprintmail.com
Phil Goetz wrote:

> 
> > BTW, in the 1950's our family doctor suggested to my mother that I chew
> > several poison ivy leaves each spring to decrease my sensitivity. She
> > declined and I was never inclined to try it. I wonder if it really
> > works...?
> > >
> > > Bob Jones
> > > writer@perigee.net
> > >
> > > This is an old lumberjack trick that I read about in a Euell Gibbons book.
> > > I asked the plant-woman at Tom Brown's school about it (forgot her
> > > name), and she said that it might work sometimes but she knew one person
> > > who tried it and got a terrible internal reaction and lifelong sensitivity.
> > >
> > > Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu
> 
> Hello all. i had just replied to another reply about this topic - re:
using plaintain leaves on the rash. I also have another interesting

tidbit. Nightshade, when crushed and mixed with alcohol creates a
topical analgesic similar to Zostrix, according to the article I read.

--
Robert L. Cox, Jr.  - President
Nuisance Wildlife Control Services
Express Private Process Service
P.O. Box 5582, Towson, MD 21285
Email: robertlcox@sprintmail.com
Does anybody know of some remedies for Nettle (Urtica spp.) stings. I know Jewelweed (Impatiens capensis) is a good remedy, but it does not grow in my region. I have found that the rubbing root of the Nettle plant directly on the affected area is a good temporary cure. The problem is that about 15 to 20 minutes later the irritation comes back. Any information would be greatly appreciated.

All Good Medicine,
Marc Besse
mbesse@accessone.com
Plantain also works for stinging nettle. I have heard that the underside of a fern (don't ask me what kind) works when it is fertile (ie, has those brown dots, pollen?, on the underside). Howz that for a non-technical, heard-it-through-the-grapevine explanation?

Love & Health,
Rees
JWaltz@AOL.COM wrote:
>
> Jewel Weed is the best remedy for easing ivy itch. Just take a stalk,
split it to expose the succulent inner and swab away. I have even made
>a preserve of isopropal alcohol and jewel weed juice (ground in a food
>processor) which lasted a couple of years and worked until it was used
>up.

Plantain (Plantago sp.) is also reported to draw the toxins out of a
recent eposure to poison ivy. However being one of those lucky folks
that so far has avoided the plague (although I have been in contact with
it many times) I have yet to try it on myself. I have used this and a
few other PI remedies on a bad reaction to mullien (blisters, itching
eqc. It looked so similar to PI that a doctor diagnosed it as such),
obtained while working on handdrill (mullien is indeed an irritant to
some, however it seems that the more I work with it, the less severe my
reactions are, which is contradictory to what I know of PI). In this
case I used plantain, jewelweed and apple cider vinegar and it cleared
up the affliction in a couple of days. I have since used the apple cider
vinegar on a number of skin infections with great success. The most
recent situation was a persistant fungal type infection from tanning
slightly over ripe deer hides that was completely healed with no
reoccurrence by vinegar after everything else I tried failed.

Just a comment, finally, on jewelweed and my knowledge of how it works.
Supposedly, it is most effective when applied prior to exposure or
immediately after. It supposedly works to nutralize the active
irritant. A friend that has very bad reactions to the stuff claims that
jewelweed can't touch his PI after the symptoms have appeared.

I have also heard of elderberry inner bark being an effective PI
remedy, but have no personal experience with it. Anyone tried this
or know about it?

Mark Zanoni

From - Thu Feb 11 13:56:28 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMT id OAA07983; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 14:46:17 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA04046; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 14:45:01 -
JWaltz@AOL.COM wrote:
>
> In a message dated 97-01-22 22:31:34 EST, Rob Chatburn wrote:
> 
> >> The tannin content acts as an
> >> astringent. >>
> >
> > That would include all Quercus.. Oak trees/acorns
> >
> > John Waltz
> > Belle Mead, NJ
>
> Tannin is also extremely toxic, which is why eating untreated
> (leaching or boiling out the tannic acid) acorns is a big no no.
> I know that there are other astringents found naturally. Witch Hazel is
> a great topical astringent, but I have never heard of anyone using it
> internally. Some of my books list common plants such as Uva ursi,
> nettles, self heal, wood betony and wild geranium as all containing some
> astringent properties but I have no further information on actual
> content. Michael Moore suggests plantain, sage (Artemesia sp. certainly
> and not Salvia), self heal, amaranth, wormwood, bistort and a number of
> other plants I have not worked with as being diarrhea remedies. I have
> used all of these but wormwood internally myself both as food and as
> medicines. Sage was suggested to me for a number of ailments by an
> Ojibwa man I know. It is also a powerful diaphoretic (promotes sweating)
> so it sort of acts like your own internal sweat lodge too :-)

Happy healing :-}
Marc Zanoni

From: Mark Zanoni

Subject: Re: Stinging Nettles

I know Jewelweed (Impatiens capensis) is a good remedy, but it does not grow in my region. I have found that the rubbing root of the Nettle plant directly on the affected area is a good temporary cure. The problem is that about 15 to 20 minutes later the irritation comes back.

Wow! You have some powerful and persistent nettles out your way. My experience is that the irritation tends to go away on its own untreated within a half hour, however, when I don't want to wait that long I use Plantain (Plantago sp.) in a poultice form and it usually helps lessen the irritation in a couple of minutes. To make a poultice either chew up a leaf and apply the resulting mass directly or grind the leaves up with a mortar and pestle or a couple of rocks until the same kind of pasty consistancy is obtained.

A word on Plantain. I know of an ethnobotanist at the UW Milwaukee who argues that Plantain major is actually Native to this continent, a notion that is certainly disputed (one of the common names for this plant given by Native tribes was "white man's footsteps", so named...
because it seemed to spread through the continent along with the European invasion). He argues that there are two varieties of the plant—one that is native and one that is not. The native variety has a redish-purple tinge to the base of the leaves, the non-native variety is white. He also argues that there is evidence of Native people in my neck of the woods (WI) using the native Plantain for food and medicine prior to white contact. Anyone out there run across any information on this?

Mark Zanoni

From - Thu Feb 11 13:56:32 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA08484; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 16:25:29 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA04700; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 16:23:33 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 16:21:39 EST
Received: from pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU (pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU [128.205.35.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA04697 for ; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 16:23:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: (goetz@localhost) by pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU (8.7.5/8.6.4) id QAA24833 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 16:27:37 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: Phil Goetz
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Message-ID: <199701252127.QAA24833@pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Sat, 25 Jan 1997 16:27:37 -0500 (EST)
In-Reply-To: <32EA5E8B.3120@unix.newnorth.net> from "Mark Zanoni" at Jan 25, 97 01:27:07 pm
X-Mailer: ELM [version 2.4 PL25]
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> Just a comment, finally, on jewelweed and my knowledge of how it works.
> Supposedly, it is most effective when applied prior to exposure or
> immediately after. It supposedly works to neutralize the active
> irritant. A friend that has very bad reactions to the stuff claims that
> jewelweed can't touch his PI after the symptoms have appeared.

This agrees with my experience. I've used poultices, distillate, never had much success with jewelweed on poison ivy, but I'm not sure I've ever applied it quickly enough.

I am skeptical of any herbal cures for poison ivy. I've never had any external cure work well, not even cortisone applied externally, liberally,
and frequently. Ingested cortisone, starting at 50mg/day, tapering off to 10mg/day in a week, is the only cure I know. But doctors are reluctant to prescribe cortisone.

Disclaimer: I am not a doctor.

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

From - Thu Feb 11 13:56:34 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA08514; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 16:29:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA04724; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 16:28:55 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 16:27:02 EST
Received: from unix.newnorth.net (unix.newnorth.net [205.212.60.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA04721 for ; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 16:28:45 -0500 (EST)
Received: from marknq.newnorth.net (rhin-cs2-16.newnorth.net [205.212.60.186]) by unix.newnorth.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id QAA05515; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 16:43:35 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32EA7982.3100@unix.newnorth.net>
Date: Sat, 25 Jan 1997 15:22:10 -0600
From: Mark Zanoni
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MarkNQ@UNIX.NEWNORTH.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, reesrees@WAONLINE.COM
Subject: Re: Stinging Nettles
References: <9701251253.AA29775@pulm1.accessone.com>
            <32EA50EA.11CC@waonline.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Rees wrote:
>
> Marc Besse wrote:
> >
> > Does anybody know of some remedies for Nettle (Urtica spp.) stings. ...
> >
> > Plantain also works for stinging nettle. I have heard that the underside of a fern
> (don't ask me what kind) works when it is fertile (ie, has those brown dots, pollen?, on
> the underside). Howz that for a non-technical, heard-it-through-the-grapevine
> explanation?
> >
> > Love & Health,
> > Rees
Sounds like possibly Cinnamon Fern, although I have never heard of it being used this way. Maybe so though (BTW they are spores :-)).

Mark

From - Thu Feb 11 13:56:38 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.2.8/8.2) with ESMTP id SAA09338; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 18:45:41 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA05401; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 18:43:14 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 18:41:21 EST
Received: from cybersys.mercy.org (cybersys.mercy.org [205.225.34.178]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA05398 for ; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 18:42:57
-0500 (EST)
Received: from default by cybersys.mercy.org with smtp (Smail3.1.28.1 #2) id m0voHoI-0000D1C; Sat, 25 Jan 97 15:46 PST
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID:
From: "Mark D. Ball"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mball@MERCY.ORG
To:
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
Date: Sat, 25 Jan 1997 15:37:58 -0800
X-MSMail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1155
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> I am skeptical of any herbal cures for poison ivy. I've never had any
> external cure work well, not even cortisone applied externally,
liberally,
> and frequently. Ingested cortisone, starting at 50mg/day, tapering off
> to 10mg/day in a week, is the only cure I know. But doctors are
reluctant
> to prescribe cortisone.
>
> Disclaimer: I am not a doctor.
>
> Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

Topical corticosteroids are available in a wide range of potency. The Over
The Counter preparations are the weakest. The more potent forms are pretty
effective topically, but can cause skin atrophy (thinning) if used long
enough. Some parts of the body are more susceptible to this than others.
That is why doctors are somewhat reluctant to prescribe the more potent
forms.

Disclaimer: I am a doctor. :-)

Mark

Mark D Ball
mball@mercy.org

From - Thu Feb 11 15:29:08 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA10048; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 21:24:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA05992; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 21:22:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 21:20:29 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA05989 for ; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 21:22:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.86 (ppp086.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.86]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id VAA27124 for ; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 21:25:41 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <2B7A69A7.46F4@videotron.ca>
Date: Thu, 11 Feb 1993 14:58:47 +0000
X-UIDL: 854245742.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au GrÉ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
References: <970124172118_539113316@emout17.mail.aol.com>
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id VAA05990
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chicl.saglac.qc.ca id VAA10048
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
VAA05990
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

JWaltz@AOL.COM wrote:
>
> Jewel Weed is the best remedy for easing ivy itch. Just take a stalk, split
> it to expose the succulent inner and swab away. I have even made a preserve
> of isopropal alcohol and jewel weed juice (ground in a food processor) which
lasted a couple of years and worked until it was used up.

I am not even sure I've seen poison oak! Just try to go out and try to find some plant you've never identified/not familiar with. Like looking for a needle in a river bank.

For the record, I have also used jewelweed or touch-me-knot as an antidote for poison ivy. Works better than anything you can buy, I'm convinced of that. I just take the fresh stalks and bruise them so the stem (very soft and tender) juice can be rubbed on the rash. Almost a miracle how good this works.

If you want to look up the plant, the scientific name is Impatiens biflora and it grows in low-lying places just about everywhere poison ivy does. Probably other species of Impatiens would work too. I don't know, but I would try this on any other kind of rash too.

It gets the name jewelweed from the fact that a leaf place under water shines like silver. It is quite amazing to see. Indians apparently used this plant to make fishing lures, and although I haven't tried it, I can't see why it wouldn't work.

Primitive cheers,

AndrÈ
At 04:48 AM 1/25/97 -0800, you wrote:
>
>Does anybody know of some remedies for Nettle (Urtica spp.) stings. I know
>Jewelweed (Impatiens capensis) is a good remedy, but it does not grow in my
>region. I have found that the rubbing root of the Nettle plant directly on
>the affected area is a good temporary cure. The problem is that about 15
>to 20 minutes later the irritation comes back. Any information would be
>greatly appreciated.
>
> All Good Medicine,
> Marc Besse
> mbesse@accessone.com
>
> My first choice would be broad-leaved plantain (Plantago major around here)
> leaves. I have also used curly dock (Rumex crispus) with some success. It
> has the bonus of having the same habitat as nettles so is readily found
> after you get stung.

From - Sun Jan 26 23:20:35 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA10603; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 23:43:46 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA06447; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 23:42:51 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 23:40:53 EST
Received: from celeste.INS.CWRU.Edu (celeste.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.214]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id XAA06440 for
; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 23:42:36
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [129.22.220.16] (dialin016.REMOTE.CWRU.Edu [129.22.220.16]) by
celeste.INS.CWRU.Edu with ESMTP (8.7.6+cwru/CWRU-3.0) id XAA19647;
Sat, 25 Jan 1997 23:46:37 -0500 (EST) (from rlc6@pop.cwru.edu)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: rlc6@pop.cwru.edu
Message-ID:
In-Reply-To: <970124172118_539113316@emout17.mail.aol.com>
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Sat, 25 Jan 1997 11:49:03 -0500
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWaltz@AOL.COM
Jewel Weed is the best remedy for easing ivy itch. Just take a stalk, split it to expose the succulent inner and swab away. I have even made a preserve of isopropal alcohol and jewel weed juice (ground in a food processor) which lasted a couple of years and worked until it was used up.

This is supported by Varro Tyler, PhD in his book HERBS OF CHOICE:

"The results of a clinical study, in which a 1:4 jewelweed preparation was compared for its effectiveness with other standard poison ivy dermatitis treatments was published in 1958 (Annals of Allergy 1958;16:526-527). Of 115 patients treated with jewelweed, 108 responded 'most dramatically to the topical application of this medication and were entirely relieved of their symptoms within 2 or 3 days after the institution of treatment.' It was concluded that jewelweed is an excellent substitute for ACTH and the corticosteroids in the treatment of poison ivy dermatitis. The active principle in the plant responsible for this activity remains unidentified.

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
I have since used the apple cider vinegar on a number of skin infections with great success. The most recent situation was a persistent fungal type infection from tanning slightly over ripe deer hides that was completely healed with no reoccurrence by vinegar after everything else I tried failed.

A few years ago I published a scientific article concerning the disinfecting properties of vinegar (acetic acid). It turns out that it is as effective at killing most organisms on contaminated equipment (and presumably skin) as commercial quaternary ammonium compounds. I will mail a reprint to anyone who e-mails their snail-mail address (only if you say that 3 times fast).

Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
>Does anybody know of some remedies for Nettle (Urtica spp.) stings. I know
>Jewelweed (Impatiens capensis) is a good remedy, but it does not grow in my
>region. I have found that the rubbing root of the Nettle plant directly on
>the affected area is a good temporary cure. The problem is that about 15
>to 20 minutes later the irritation comes back. Any information would be
>greatly appreciated.
>
>Karen Sherwood, former plant instructor of TB's school, recommends the
>crushed leaves of burdock. I have tried it and it seems to work but the
>effect is not dramatic.

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
About 20 or so years ago, when I worked for the US Forest Service I used to take a substance in the spring that was made from the extract of PI leaves. It was called Imune-Ivy, and was mixed with water and tasted like tea. It seemed to minimize my otherwise terrible reaction to PI. After a few years, the said it didn't really work and refused to buy it for us. I don't know if it is still around, but it did seem to help. Maybe this is what some of you are referring to.

On another "cure" that I have been subjected to. Back in my college days I was at a summer field camp in northern Wisconsin and got a terrible case from helping the camp director clear brush. I, too was swelled up like a balloon and had spent 3 days in bed not even able to eat. There were no doctors available in the area. It so happened that there was a week-long news conference/retreat for NASA going on at the camp and the head of space medicine from the Manned Spacecraft Center in Houston was there. The camp director had him come and take a look at me (didn't know they had to worry about PI on the moon). He told the doctor to go to the drug store in Ashland and get a gallon of some stuff. Don't remember what the name for it was, but it was a suspension of aluminum hydroxide - looked like gray dishwater. They wrapped me up like King Tut in strips of old sheets, shirts, whatever, and poured the stuff on me until it dripped out the other side. The next day they unwrapped me and I looked like a prune. But, the blisters were all gone. No itching, nothing! I scabbed over and in a week was good as new.

Does anybody know anything about this stuff? For really bad cases it seems to work miracles.

Grant Goltz
To:
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
Date: Sun, 26 Jan 1997 10:31:28 -0800
X-MSMail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1155
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

On Jan. 25, Grant Goltz wrote:

> and get a gallon of some stuff. Don't remember what the name for it was,
> but
> it was a suspension of aluminum hydroxide - looked like gray dishwater.
> They
> wrapped me up like King Tut in strips of old sheets, shirts, whatever,
> and
> poured the stuff on me until it dripped out the other side. The next day
> they unwrapped me and I looked like a prune. But, the blisters were all
> gone. No itching, nothing! I scabbed over and in a week was good as
> new.

I think the solution you are talking about might have been aluminum acetate, also called Burow solution. It is used as a compress in a 1:20 to 1:40 dilution.

Mark

Mark D Ball
Plastic Surgeon
Redding, CA
mball@mercy.org
In a message dated 97-01-26 00:01:24 EST, you write:

> Does anybody know of some remedies for Nettle (Urtica spp.) stings. I know
> Jewelweed (Impatiens capensis) is a good remedy, but it does not grow in my
> region.

> From the book "The Encyclopedia of Medicinal Plants" by Andrew Chevallier, DK

Chickweed (Stellaria media) cream is very effective. This is made by
combining about 50 grams of the fresh herb with 150 grams of emulsifying wax
(this is made by combining oil or fat with water into an emulsion, best done
slowly in a blender or something similar - like making mayonaise), 70 grams
of glycerine and about 80 ml of water. Heat it all up and simmer for about 3
hours, then strain through a jelly bag. put in small jars and store in the
refrigerator.

For most effective relief, this treatment can be combined with an infusion of
5 grams (dried herb) of each of the following: Nettle (Urtica dioica),
Heartsease (Viola tricolor), and Calendula (Calendula officinalis) in 750 ml
of water taken regularly during the day. Or: A decoction of 5 grams of the
root of each of the following: Dandelion (Taraxocum officinale), Yellow dock
(Rumex crispus), and Burdock (Arctium lappa) in 750 ml of water. Drink 2
cups a day.

This all sounds kinda complex, but if you really have a problem with the
nettle rash....

This book is an excellent source of information and I would highly recommend
it to any seriously interested in herbal remedies and the like. Although it
is a bit pricey ($40.00), it has more info than a handful of cheaper books
combined.

BTW, for those interested in medicinal plants, check out the "Medicinal
Plants of Native America Database" at:


This and a bunch of other interesting plant info is at the National
Agricultural Library of the USDA.

Once you get to this site hit the "query" link. At this point I would
recommend doing the "Fuzzy Search" option. You will have to select the
MPNADB database (and/or some other ones) and hit "search" to get an input form.

This is an enormous database with everything cross-linked. It may seem too complicated at first glance, but play around a bit - there are tons of info there.

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655

From - Sun Jan 26 23:21:50 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA00903; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 21:17:16 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA11107; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 21:11:24 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 21:09:31 EST
Received: from emout07.mail.aol.com (emout07.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.22]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA11104 for ; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 21:11:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from root=localhost) by emout07.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0) id VAA17143 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 21:15:17 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 854338570.030
From: NatnNurt@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, NatnNurt@AOL.COM
Date: Sun, 26 Jan 1997 21:15:17 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970126211516_1144807763@emout07.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Stinging Nettles
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Marc,
Rattlesnake plantain, which also grows on the East coast, is actually a kind of an orchid. Common names can be confusing that way.

Matt Schoeffler

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id IAA03793; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 08:14:58 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id IAA12967; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 08:13:30 -0500 (EST)
Marc Besse wrote:

> The only type of Plantain grows here in the Pacific Northwest is called
> Rattlesnake Plantain (Goodyera oblongifolia). It is very hard to find some
> of these plants around my area. For the information the next time I
> find some Rattlesnake Plantain I will give it a try. Just a interesting
> note I found Plantain growing right next to the Nettle plants down in
> California, but I have never seen them growing together around here.
> 
> Marc, thanks so much for the scientific name for the plantain. Plantain
> here is a completely different plant!!! Now I'm confused because I have
> been following this thread with the idea that we were talking about
> Plantago spp.

Thanks for clearing this up, and don't forget everyone that we are an
international group and that scientific names helps keep us all on the
same wavelength. Burdock (Arctium spp.) has at least 30 different
common names around the world, many of which are the same names as many
other plants. Gets real confusing fast and leads to bad information
being circulated.
Hi all,

Here is a snippit from my "Herbal Field Guide to Plant Familie" that might be helpful:

Tannic Acid

An "astringent" is an acid substance that causes tissues to constrict. If you taste an astringent substance you will experience the sensation of "cotton mouth" as the tissues constrict inside your mouth. The most common natural astringent is tannic acid. Gallic acid is also
astringent. The act of constricting tissues is medicinally useful in a number of ways.

First, it closes off secretions, especially of the digestive system, and is therefore useful for "drying up" diarrhea. Similarly, astringents tighten up ulcerated tissues, thus speeding the healing of stomach ulcers and bloody urine, as well as cuts, excema and eruptions on the skin, often used as a poultice or wash. Since they cause wounds to tighten-up and stop bleeding, they are sometimes listed as "hemeostatics" or "coagulants".

Astringents even tighten up inflamed tissues, thus being beneficial to swellings, sunburns, pimples, blisters, sore throats, inflamed or tired eyes, or as a sitz bath after childbirth to speed the healing of inflamed tissues. A few astringent plants have been used on headaches and to a limited extent on arthritic-type conditions, again to reduce inflamed tissues. Thus astringent herbs are sometimes listed as being "anti-inflammatory". (Hence the stinging nettle/poison ivy connection) Astringent herbs are sometimes used as a poultice to diminish varicose veins.

Since acids are generally harmful to bacteria, astringent plants are often also listed as being "antiseptic" or "antibiotic".

Through the act of tightening tissues, astringents act as a sort of "toner" or "strengthener". For example, you can buy astringent facial toners at the store. Similarly, the leaves of astringent plants can be put in shoes to tighten tissues and protect against blistering. Internally, astringents can tone and strengthen mucous membranes, such as in the urinary tract. Most plants that have astringent properties are also "diuretic" in nature, meaning they make you urinate more. This effect appears to be due to drawing water out of the body cells. Bladder infections, and other urinary tract problems can be caused by excessive alkalinity, especially in women. The acid nature of the astringents can make them useful for counter-acting the alkalinity, while "toning" the urinary tract in the process.

Tannic acid is also used for tanning hides. That drying, puckering sensation that you get when you taste an astringent is the same action that works on the hides, drawing out the binders (proteins?), so the hide becomes more flexible. Over-consumption of these tannins is potentially dangerous, and countries where black tea is popular tend to have high rates of stomach cancer. Incidentally, milk in tea reduces the tannin effect. The tannin binds with the milk protein, instead of binding with the proteins of your stomach lining.

Tannins are among the most common plant constituents in nature. As one example, virtually every plant in the Rose family contains tannin. It is much easier to remember what tannic acid does, and know that the whole family (plus many plants in other families) contains tannin, than to try to remember each individual application listed for each plant.

People often speculate about how primitive cultures had to learn the uses of "every single plant" by "trial and error", but I think it was easier than that. You can identify the essential properties of the majority of plants (probably 90% or more) with just the basic senses and a very small amount of knowledge.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691  
Pony, MT 59747  
tomelpel@3rivers.net  
E-mail your postal address to me (not the group) for information on our books.

Thomas J. Elpel  
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School  
Box 691  
Pony, MT 59747  
tomelpel@3rivers.net  
E-mail your postal address to me (not the group) for information on our books.

From - Mon Jan 27 18:37:55 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA07314; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 15:47:42 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA17412; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 15:44:19 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 15:42:24 EST
Received: from barley.adnc.com (barley.adnc.com [205.216.138.31]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA17409 for ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 15:44:00
-0500 (EST)
Received: from fish.adnc.com by barley.adnc.com (SMI-8.6/SVRMailer ADN 1/96) id MAA08647; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 12:51:42 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Mon, 27 Jan 1997 12:51:42 -0800
Message-ID: <199701272051.MAA08647@barley.adnc.com>
X-Sender: fish@mail.adnc.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Light Version 1.5.2
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, w6@WOODRUFF-SAWYER.COM
X-UIDL: 854408127.010
From: John Fisher
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, fish@ADNC.COM
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

At 02:03 PM 1/24/97 -0800, you wrote:
>>My sis on the other hand could just walk along a path near it without actually touching it and would get a case.
>
>Forgive me if you were only joking, but I'm told you *do* actually have to come in
contact with the plant's oils to come down with a case.
>
--John
>
Of course, a number of firefighters here in the west come down with pulmonary poison oak every year from breathing the smoke. Oh, and regarding all that bit about IV drugs and all, if you're going to try it come on out here...always did want to try an intubation on an anaphylaxis patient! :(

John

From - Mon Jan 27 18:38:05 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA08228; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 17:54:53 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA18658; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 17:50:05 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 17:48:11 EST
Received: from enaila.nidlink.com (enaila.nidlink.com [205.219.220.23]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA18655 for ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 17:49:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.158 (pm7-27.nidlink.com [205.219.220.158]) by enaila.nidlink.com (8.8.5/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA02909; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 14:58:15 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32ED2499.4170@nidlink.com>
Date: Mon, 27 Jan 1997 14:56:41 -0700
X-UIDL: 854408127.017
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@NIDLINK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, fish@ADNC.COM
Subject: Re: Poison Ivy/Oak/Sumac Reaction
References: <199701272051.MAA08647@barley.adnc.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

John Fisher wrote:
>
> At 02:03 PM 1/24/97 -0800, you wrote:
> >>My sis on the other hand could just walk along a path near it without actually touching it and would get a case.
> >
> >Forgive me if you were only joking, but I'm told you *do* actually have to come in
I posted about I.V. steroids and I.M. epinephrine (adrenaline) for poison oak, but wasn't really considering eating any (not hardly!) and then trying to reverse self-inflicted damage. Just jokingly suggesting a course of treatment. I had a good natural non-reaction to poison oak (could wade through it) and walked through forest paths choked with it for years, on a daily basis (I am blonde, but think that irrelevant, BTW) and then one day WHAM! Fascinating watching oneself try to claw off their own skin (for months). Like an out of control drug addict, I imagine. I give P.O. a wide berth now, but naturally would like to desensitize. Just wondered. I lived in a mountain canyon (near naturalist Christopher Nyerges) stuffed with poison oak and knew a lady forest fighter there that reacted to poison-oak laden smoke from miles away. Could watch her swell up and wheeze when the smoke barely flew. Thanks to everyone for this helpful thread.

Chris
From - Wed Jan 22 04:15:43 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA10128; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 16:02:17 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA04511; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 15:59:46 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 15:57:51 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA04507 for
; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 15:59:35
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.86 (ppp086.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.86])
by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id QAA22959 for
; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 16:03:03
-0500 (EST)

X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E5920C.5FC1@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 04:05:32 +0000
X-UIDL: 853967196.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Diarhea remedies
References:
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id
PAA04508
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id QAA10128
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
PAA04508
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

David Weinstock wrote:
>
> Giardia is everywhere, and even mountain springs that seem to be
> bubbling up from the living rock are not necessarily safe.
> 
> On the other hand, primitive peoples were commonly afflicted with
> parasites, lice and other delights of the great outdoors. How
> did they handle it? Should one slip up and contract a waterborne
> disease, how to survive?

Good question! I know of great natural remedies for constipation, the
best of which I think is Elderberry (scientifically proven), but what
about natural remedies for the opposite ailment. Anyone?

AndrÈ
I have heard that Cattail Root starch does the jobs without the constipation from over the counter medicine. Of course I could be wrong.

Joe Schilling....

---

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÅois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1

--

From: "Schilling Joe"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Schilling_Joe@BAH.COM
Subject: RE: Diarhea remedies
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Mailer: Mail*Link SMTP for Quarterdeck Mail; Version 4.0.0
Content-Type: text
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

I have heard that Cattail Root starch does the jobs without the constipation from over the counter medicine. Of course I could be wrong.

Joe Schilling....

---

From: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca on Wed, Jan 22, 1997 4:48 PM
Subject: Diarhea remedies
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca

David Weinstock wrote:

> Giardia is everywhere, and even mountain springs that seem to be
> bubbling up from the living rock are not necessarily safe.
> On the other hand, primitive peoples were commonly afflicted with
> parasites, lice and other delights of the great outdoors. How
> did they handle it? Should one slip up and contract a waterborne
> disease, how to survive?
Good question! I know of great natural remedies for constipation, the best of which I think is Elderberry (scientifically proven), but what about natural remedies for the opposite ailment. Anyone?

Andre
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr Andre-Francois Bourbeau  mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca   /
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Quebec
/\#248##248##248##248##248#/\
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Quebec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvvX_____\
Good question! I know of great natural remedies for constipation, the best of which I think is Elderberry (scientifically proven), but what about natural remedies for the opposite ailment. Anyone?

In one of his videos, and in an article in American Survival Guide, Chris Janowsky highly recommends a tea made from raspberry leaves for diarrhea. I have seen blackberry also in herbal books. The tannin content acts as an astringent. There are many other plants as well listed in any good herbal.

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

Return-Path:
Received: from mailgate22 (mailgate22-hme0.a001.sprintmail.com [205.137.196.54]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.3/8.8.2) with SMTP id XAA19318 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 23:56:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: by mailgate22 (SMI-8.6/SMI-SVR4)
   id UAA04086; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 20:55:24 -0800
Received: from sdn-ts-020mdrelrp10.dialsprint.net(206.133.13.45) by mailfep3-hme1 via smap (KC5.24)
   id Q_10.1.1.8/Q_2320_1_32e6ef35; Wed Jan 22 20:55:17 1997
Message-ID: <32E6EF2B.E0E@sprintmail.com>
From: ROBERT COX
Reply-To: robertlcox@sprintmail.com
Organization: Express Private Process Service
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
Subject: Re: Diarrhea remedies
References: <32E5920C.5FC1@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>David Weinstock wrote:
>Giardia is everywhere, and even mountain springs that seem to be
>bubbling up from the living rock are not necessarily safe.
>On the other hand, primitive peoples were commonly afflicted with
>parasites, lice and other delights of the great outdoors. How
did they handle it? Should one slip up and contract a waterborne
disease, how to survive?
>Good question! I know of great natural remedies for constipation, the
best of which I think is Elderberry (scientifically proven), but what
about natural remedies for the opposite ailment. Anyone?
 AndrÈ
--
Surviving at nature's will...

I have consulted some US Govt sources for the following:

For Diarrhea: 1st 24 hours, fluids only. If not relieved, (which if the
person has Giardiasis or has contracted another intestinal parasite,
they probably won't be) then try one of the following. (Continue with
fluids only - small amounts many times a day)
I. Fine Ground Charcoal, Fine Ground Dried Bones, or Fine Ground Chalk
A. Mix a "handful" with (treated) water and administer every
two hours until Diarrhea has stopped or slowed.
   1. If Possible, add an equal portion of apple pomace
      (basically left after pressing all the juice out of an
      apple) or ground up citrus rinds to the mixture. This makes
      it more effective.
II. Administer a strong tea solution every two hours (if you have
tea of course).
   III. If the above do not work; Boil hardwood inner tree bark for
two hours to release as much of the tannic acid it contains
   as possible. Administer this vile tasting and smelling brew
every two hours. This will stop most diarrhea episodes
cold. (Be A Man! You can always hold your nose.)
Other suggestions: Don't resume eating solid food until the symptoms
ease. If you have rice, that would make a good starter food. Add salt if
you have it to your water in small amounts to maintain some electrolyte
balance. Watch out for signs of dehydration. Aspirin/Acetaminophen for
fevers.
If you have access to drugs, the recommended therapy FOR GIARDIASIS is
Quinacrine Hydrochloride 100 mg 3xD for 5-7 days. Or Flagyl (which is
what my doc gave me - it worked quick) 250 mg 3xD for 10 fays.
Problem is, you don't know what you have unless you are diagnosed by having a stool culture done. You may have amoebic dysentery, or God knows what else. GENERAL DISCLAIMER - I AM NOT A DOCTOR!!
Also, there is an article on the Wilderness Way site that talks about using talc for diarrhea.
Good luck!

Robert L. Cox, Jr. - President
Nuisance Wildlife Control Services
Express Private Process Service
P.O. Box 5582, Towson, MD 21285
Email: robertlcox@sprintmail.com

> Good question! I know of great natural remedies for constipation, the
> best of which I think is Elderberry (scientifically proven), but what
> about natural remedies for the opposite ailment. Anyone?
>
In one of his videos, and in an article in American Survival Guide, Chris Janowsky highly recommends a tea made from raspberry leaves for diarrhea. I have seen blackberry also in herbal books. The tannin content acts as an astringent. There are many other plants as well listed in any good herbal.
Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

From - Thu Jan 23 11:34:40 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA14391; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 23:53:10 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA09610; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 23:51:28 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 23:49:35 EST
Received: from mailgate22 (mailgate22-hme0.a001.sprintmail.com
[205.137.196.54]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id
XAA09603 for ; Wed, 22 Jan
1997 23:51:16 -0500 (EST)
Received: by mailgate22 (SMI-8.6/SMI-SVR4) id UAA04086; Wed, 22 Jan 1997
20:55:24 -0800
Received: from sdn-ts-020mdrelrp10.dialsprint.net(206.133.13.45) by
mailfep3-hme1 via smap (KC5.24) id Q_10.1.1.8/Q_2320_1_32e6ef35; Wed
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E6EF2B.E0E@sprintmail.com>
From: ROBERT COX
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, robertlcox@sprintmail.com
Organization: Express Private Process Service
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
Subject: Re: Diarrhea remedies
References:
<32E5920C.5FC1@aglac.qc.ca>
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id
XAA09604
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id XAA14391
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
XAA09604
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> David Weinstock wrote:
> >
> > Giardia is everywhere, and even mountain springs that seem to be
> > bubbling up from the living rock are not necessarily safe.
> >
> > On the other hand, primitive peoples were commonly afflicted with
> parasites, lice and other delights of the great outdoors. How
> did they handle it? Should one slip up and contract a waterborne
> disease, how to survive?
>
> Good question! I know of great natural remedies for constipation, the
> best of which I think is Elderberry (scientifically proven), but what
> about natural remedies for the opposite ailment. Anyone?
>
> AndrÈ
>
> Surviving at nature's will...
>
> Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca
> Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
> 555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1

I have consulted some US Govt sources for the following:

For Diarrhea: 1st 24 hours, fluids only. If not relieved, (which if the
person has Giardiasis or has contracted another intestinal parasite,
they probably won't be) then try one of the following.(Continue with
fluids only - small amounts many times a day)
I. Fine Ground Charcoal, Fine Ground Dried Bones, or Fine Ground Chalk
   A. Mix a "handful" with (treated) water and administer every
two hours until Diarrhea has stopped or slowed.
   1. If Possible, add an equal portion of apple pomace
      (basically what's left after pressing all the juice out of an
      apple) or ground up citrus rinds to the mixture. This makes
      it more effective.
   II. Administer a strong tea solution every two hours (if you have
       tea of course).
   III. If the above do not work; Boil hardwood inner tree bark for
two hours to release as much of the tannic acid it contains
   as possible. Administer this vile tasting and smelling brew
   every two hours. This will stop most diarrhea episodes
cold. (Be A Man! You can always hold your nose.)
Other suggestions: Don't resume eating solid food until the symptoms
ease. If you have rice, that would make a good starter food. Add salt if
you have it to your water in small amounts to maintain some electrolyte
balance. Watch out for signs of dehydration. Aspirin/Acetaminophen for
fevers.
If you have access to drugs, the recommended therapy FOR GIARDIASIS is
Quinacrine Hydrochloride 100 mg 3xD for 5-7 days. Or Flagyl (which is
what my doc gave me - it worked quick) 250 mg 3xD for 10 fays.
Problem is, you don't know what you have unless you are diagnosed by
having a stool culture done. You may have amoebic dysentery, or God
knows what else. GENERAL DISCLAIMER - I AM NOT A DOCTOR!!
Also, there is an article on the Wilderness Way site that talks about
using talc for diarrhea.

Good luck!

Robert L. Cox, Jr.  - President
Nuisance Wildlife Control Services
Express Private Process Service
P.O. Box 5582, Towson, MD 21285
Email: robertlcox@sprintmail.com
From: Merv Martin
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU
Subject: Re: Diarhea remedies

>>Good question! I know of great natural remedies for constipation, the
>>best of which I think is Elderberry (scientifically proven), but what
>>about natural remedies for the opposite ailment. Anyone?
>
> In one of his videos, and in an article in American Survival Guide, Chris
> Janowsky highly recommends a tea made from raspberry leaves for diarrhea. I
> have seen blackberry also in herbal books. The tannin content acts as an
> astringent. There are many other plants as well listed in any good herbal.
> I just opened an herbal I have here and it mentioned things with astringent
> properties, and especially tannin. Agrimony (Agrimonia eupatoria),
> American Cranesbill (Germanium maculatum), and Tormentil (Potentilla erecta)
> are mentioned specifically
>
> So... munch an oak. That's just one thing with tannin in it. Seems like
> walnut hulls too. Shouldn't hurt you unless you eat the whole tree

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> David Weinstock wrote:
> (snip)
> Good question! I know of great natural remedies for constipation, the
> best of which I think is Elderberry (scientifically proven), but what
> about natural remedies for the opposite ailment. Anyone?
> (snip)

Blackberry leaf tea is one remedy, but it is a mild one.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
In a message dated 97-01-22 22:31:34 EST, Rob Chatburn wrote:

<< The tannin content acts as an astringent. >>

That would include all Quercus.. Oak trees/acorns

John Waltz
Belle Mead, NJ
Mark, are you sure tannin is "extremely" toxic? I have experimented with eating a few raw, unleached acorns from both white and red oak without any apparent effects. But then again, maybe half my liver is halv shot and I don't know it.

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
Rob Chatburn wrote:
>
> Mark, are you sure tannin is "extremely" toxic? I have experimented with
> eating a few raw, unleached acorns from both white and red oak without any
> apparent effects. But then again, maybe half my liver is halv shot and I
> don't know it.
>
> Rob Chatburn
> *Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

I will have to disagree with the statement that tannin is highly toxic. You get tannins when you drink tea. You get tannins when you eat many plants. I would not go overboard on consuming strong (undiluted) tannin solutions such as from boiling tree bark. But you can do that specifically for diarrhea - one good dose of it will usually cure diarrhea. (but it's gonna taste BAD!)

--
Robert L. Cox, Jr.  - President  
Nuisance Wildlife Control Services  
Express Private Process Service  
P.O. Box 5582, Towson, MD 21285  
Email: robertlcox@sprintmail.com

From - Sun Jan 26 23:21:03 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA13317; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 11:43:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA08557; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 11:39:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from unix.newnorth.net (unix.newnorth.net [205.212.60.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id LAA08554 for 
; Sun, 26 Jan 1997 11:39:35  
-0500 (EST)
Received: from marknq.newnorth.net (rhin-cs2-5.newnorth.net [205.212.60.175])
by unix.newnorth.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id LAA11419; Sun, 26 
Jan 1997 11:54:46 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Rob Chatburn wrote:

> Rob Chatburn
> *Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

Rob,

The word extreme is, I suppose, relative. It is toxic, though. I
to have eaten a few white oak acorns. They have the lowest
tannic acid quantity of any of the oaks. I'm not sure I would
eat many red or (especially) black oak acorns. They're so bitter
anyway I'm not sure I would be able to get them down.

Mark
Hi all,

Here is a snippit from my "Herbal Field Guide to Plant Familie" that might be helpful:

Tannic Acid

An "astringent" is an acid substance that causes tissues to constrict. If you taste an astringent substance you will experience the sensation of "cotton mouth" as the tissues constrict inside your mouth. The most common natural astringent is tannic acid. Gallic acid is also astringent. The act of constricting tissues is medicinally useful in a number of ways.

First, it closes off secretions, especially of the digestive system, and is therefore useful for "drying up" diarrhea. Similarly, astringents tighten up ulcerated tissues, thus speeding the healing of stomach ulcers and bloody urine, as well as cuts, excema and eruptions on the skin, often used as a poultice or wash. Since they cause wounds to tighten-up and stop bleeding, they are sometimes listed as "hemeostatics" or "coagulants".

Astringents even tighten up inflamed tissues, thus being beneficial to swellings, sunburns, pimples, blisters, sore throats, inflamed or tired eyes, or as a sitz bath after childbirth to speed the healing of inflamed tissues. A few astringent plants have been used on headaches and to a limited extent on arthritic-type conditions, again to reduce inflamed tissues. Thus astringent herbs are sometimes listed as being "anti-inflammatory". (Hence the stinging nettle/poison ivy connection) Astringent herbs are sometimes used as a poultice to diminish varicose veins.

Since acids are generally harmful to bacteria, astringent plants are often also listed as being "antiseptic" or "antibiotic".

Through the act of tightening tissues, astringents act as a sort of "toner" or "strengthener". For example, you can buy astringent facial toners at the store. Similarly, the leaves of astringent plants can be put in shoes to tighten tissues and protect against blistering. Internally, astringents can tone and strengthen mucous membranes, such as in the urinary tract. Most plants that have astringent properties are also "diuretic" in nature, meaning they make you urinate more. This effect appears to be due to drawing water out of the body cells. Bladder infections, and other urinary tract problems can be caused by excessive
alkalinity, especially in women. The acid nature of the astringents can make them useful for counter-acting the alkalinity, while "toning" the urinary tract in the process.

Tannic acid is also used for tanning hides. That drying, puckering sensation that you get when you taste an astringent is the same action that works on the hides, drawing out the binders (proteins?), so the hide becomes more flexible. Over-consumption of these tannins is potentially dangerous, and countries where black tea is popular tend to have high rates of stomach cancer. Incidentally, milk in tea reduces the tannin effect. The tannin binds with the milk protein, instead of binding with the proteins of your stomach lining.

Tannins are among the most common plant constituents in nature. As one example, virtually every plant in the Rose family contains tannin. It is much easier to remember what tannic acid does, and know that the whole family (plus many plants in other families) contains tannin, than to try to remember each individual application listed for each plant.

People often speculate about how primitive cultures had to learn the uses of "every single plant" by "trial and error", but I think it was easier than that. You can identify the essential properties of the majority of plants (probably 90% or more) with just the basic senses and a very small amount of knowledge.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, MT 59747
tomelpel@3rivers.net
E-mail your postal address to me (not the group) for information on our books.

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, MT 59747
tomelpel@3rivers.net
E-mail your postal address to me (not the group) for information on our books.
Sean Clemenza wrote:

Is anyone familiar with how to make oils under survival situations? I've only found limited information on plant oil extraction and know very little (nothing) about how to prepare oils from animal fats.

Hi Sean,

Again, many interesting threads you are suggesting, we're going to be busy this year!

I'll tackle the oil from animal fat question since I've done that a lot (hundreds of pounds).

Actually, this is a very simple process called "rendering". Place the raw animal fat in a kettle over very low heat (less than 250 degrees F) and wait.
The fat will slowly start melting and turn to a warm liquid. With a large batch this can take several hours. Eventually, all non-soluble materials will remain, floating in the oil. Strain the oil through a cloth and there you have it.

Naturally, once this oil cools down, it will harden somewhat, but just a little heat will make it liquid again.

Hope this helps as a starting point.

André
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan  3 22:20:11 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA11386; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:47:18 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA26366; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:45:45 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 20:50:22 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA26361 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:45:36 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.108]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA124 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:42:28 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CDC509.15FA@perigee.net>
Date: Fri, 03 Jan 1997 20:48:41 -0600
X-UIDL: 852391024.004
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Subject: Re: Oil from animal fat
References: <00011B02.3356@radian.com> <32CB5429.76DC@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id UAA11386
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

Sean Clemenza wrote:

Is anyone familiar with how to make oils under survival situations? I've only found limited information on plant oil extraction and know very little (nothing) about how to prepare oils from animal fats.

Hi Sean,

Again, many interesting threads you are suggesting, we're going to be busy this year!

I'll tackle the oil from animal fat question since I've done that a lot (hundreds of pounds).

Actually, this is a very simple process called "rendering". Place the raw animal fat in a kettle over very low heat (less than 250 degrees F) and wait. The fat will slowly start melting and turn to a warm liquid. With a large batch this can take several hours. Eventually, all non-soluble materials will remain, floating in the oil. Strain the oil through a cloth and there you have it.

Naturally, once this oil cools down, it will harden somewhat, but just a little heat will make it liquid again.

Hope this helps as a starting point.

André
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

I, too, have experimented with animal fats, mainly for use in lighting. André's method is best for refined oil that will have many uses. If you need something down and dirty for lighting you can just boil the fat in water. Let the water cool and skim off the oil off the top now semi-solid. You can also fry it. Just fry and drain before it burns up. This oil can be used for many lighting applications. All you need is a wick and a container of some sort (shell, pottery, etc.). A wick is any material that will absorb the fuel oil and burn it quicker that it consumes itself. I like cattail fluff. Just saturate it, pinch it above the surface of the oil and light it. Dried, rolled mullein leaves also work well, just saturate and hang out of the fuel and light. Jute twine also works well, it works even better if you untwist it and cord some cattail fluff into it. This also works with cedar bark.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Actually, this is a very simple process called "rendering". Place the raw animal fat in a kettle over very low heat (less than 250 degrees F) and wait. The fat will slowly start melting and turn to a warm liquid. With a large batch this can take several hours. Eventually, all non-soluble materials will remain, floating in the oil. Strain the oil through a cloth and there you have it.

I render deer tallow to make soap and one sure fire way to keep the temp below 250 F is to put water in with it. Keeps it around 212 F. when it cools the water is on the bottom and most of the non-soluble stuff is on the bottom of the solidified fat (which is on the water of course) and can be scraped off. I don't even strain it - it just comes out clean.
Jim (jim@webserve.net)

From - Thu Jan  2 05:43:44 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA12713; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 12:33:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA15980; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 12:31:52 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 12:36:27 EST
Received: from zippy.radian.com (zippy.radian.com [129.160.16.4]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA15976 for
; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 12:31:39
-0500 (EST)
Received: from ccssmtpgate.radian.com (ccsmtpgate.radian.com [129.160.224.126]) by zippy.radian.com (8.6.12/8.6.5) with SMTP id LAA19438 for
; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 11:35:38
-0600
Received: from ccMail by ccssmtpgate.radian.com (IMA Internet Exchange 2.03 (Beta 6) Enterprise) id 00011B02; Thu, 2 Jan 97 11:28:38 -0600
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Thu, 2 Jan 1997 09:24:20 -0600
Message-ID: <00011B02.3356@radian.com>
X-UIDL: 852226924.001
From: Sean_Clemenza@RADIAN.COM (Sean Clemenza)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Sean_Clemenza@RADIAN.COM
Subject: Primitive Oils
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
CC: Sean_Clemenza@RADIAN.COM (Sean Clemenza)
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Description: cc:Mail note part
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Is anyone familiar with how to make oils under survival situations?  I've only found limited information on plant oil extraction and know very little (nothing) about how to prepare oils from animal fats.

I've read that for oil extraction from plant material (nuts, seeds, leaves, etc), the oil is best removed by an elaborate pressing operation, although boiling the materials and skimming the oil may be somewhat effective also.  Anyone with any experience or ideas in this area?

I originally was looking for a good survival lubricant, but the lighting properties could also be quite handy (candles, torches, and the like).

I see this topic as having 3 major threads:
1. Oil from plants
2. Oil from animal fat
3. Other sources of lubricants (pine pitch?, beeswax?)

Sean Clemenza
Davis, CA
sean_clemenza@radian.com

Who would've thought that I would ever want oilier skin? =)

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan  2 05:45:02 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA14245; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 16:04:16 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA17841; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 16:01:20 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 16:05:56 EST
Received: from mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com [204.180.128.166]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA17838 for
; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 16:01:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.12.224.118] (ip118.las-vegas2.nevada.pub-ip.psi.net [38.12.224.118]) by mule0.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id QAA21866; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 16:05:02 -0500

X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Thu, 2 Jan 1997 13:07:01 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Sean_Clemenza@RADIAN.COM
From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: Re: Primitive Oils
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> I originally was looking for a good survival lubricant, but the
> lighting properties could also be quite handy (candles, torches,
> and the like).

Sean;
While plant oils are not impossible to obtain, It would probably be easier
to remove all visible fat from an animal and then render it, someone might
check the FOXFIRE books for the exact wayto render fat, but I believe it
involves the slow heating of the fat in a large pot and skimming off the
impurities, until all that is left is clear oil. This was used for lamps,
cooking (both for heat and for cooking/frying/baking), lubrication of
weapons, etc. The process of rendering would have had to done carefully to
prevent grease fires. I think that's one of the reasons that large game
animals were especially prized, That fat would be as valuable as much as
the meat was. I haven't tried this myself, so anything I say about it
should be considered suspect.

JB

>That fat would be as valuable as much as the meat was.

1 gal bear oil, clear, $5-10 in 1898 per my grandfather.
--

Sincerely,

Barent
BKP wrote:
>
> I would store my oil and tallow in pots/jugs (preferred) but what about
> stoppers? Beeswax? Would the oil react with it? I expect that the
> tallow would not affect or be affected by beeswax. Clay plug? With pine
> pitch seal? How good a seal is actually needed.

Hi Barent,

You don't need a very good seal because the tallow/oil is not liquid
unless it is extremely warm out. Therefore, any of the above solutions
will work, as will also cork, wood, spruce gum, cloth with string, and
here's an oldtimer's solution that works real well: corncob centers.

André

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1
I would store my oil and tallow in pots/jugs (preferred) but what about stoppers? Beeswax? Would the oil react with it? I expect that the tallow would not affect or be affected by beeswax. Clay plug? With pine pitch seal? How good a seal is actually needed.

Amazing how one question leads to another? ;) Oh, thanks for the answer on the "arrow cane". Still looking though my notes and will post when (if) I find the answer.

--

Sincerely,
Barent
From - Fri Jan  3 05:10:48 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA09582; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 16:52:21 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA25202; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 16:50:36 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 16:55:12 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA25199 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 16:50:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.63 (srvls4.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.55]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id QAA00371 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 16:53:47 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CC9164.443B@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Fri, 03 Jan 1997 04:56:04 +0000
X-UIDL: 852329061.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Advanced Tom Brown courses
References:
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id QAA09582
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

John Wall wrote:
> Just to fill
> you in, you have to complete several courses plus one other
> advanced, invitation-only course, before you would be invited on the
> Montana course.

Hi John,

With regards to these extremely advanced courses given by Tom Brown, where individuals are dropped for a month in a winter wilderness, I would love to have a few names and addresses of graduates who have actually survived those incredible ordeals. They would have mighty interesting stories to tell, and I would be willing to fly out to anywhere in the states to meet any of them and interview them for my research. Please try to obtain some names for me!

Thank you,
André

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

From - Wed Jan 15 08:16:08 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA12854; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 18:43:14 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA25898; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 18:42:32 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 18:40:38 EST
Received: from osceola.gate.net (osceola.gate.net [199.227.0.18]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id SAA25892 for ; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 18:42:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: from dfbf12-48.gate.net (dfbf12-48.gate.net [199.227.103.111]) by osceola.gate.net (8.8.4/8.6.12) with SMTP id SAA59194; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 18:46:08 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DCF527.12C4@gate.net>
Date: Wed, 15 Jan 1997 07:17:59 -0800
X-UIDL: 853376390.007
From: Bryce Rogow
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, brogo@GATE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win16; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jharsh@DREAMSCAPE.COM
Subject: Advice
References: <199701150307.WAA02097@ultra1.dreamscape.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

I am strongly considering signing up for the Standard Course this summer. What can anyone tell me about the course's value, Mr. Brown, the instructors, etc? Any advice would be appreciated.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA13918; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 21:15:14 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA27173; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 21:13:15 -
Hello Bryce. I don't know if you've been reading the posts for the past week, but there has been much said about Tom Brown. He seems to be a very controversial man from what I have gleaned from this list (I'm new). I have read all of his books, and have signed up for the Standard course in April myself. I would suggest you get the archives and check out the dialog recently. There are some folks on this list who have made it clear that they are tired of the Tom Brown debate. Some have said that Tom is a fake, that Stalking Wolf never existed, that this has been documented by an investigative reporter (the report could not be referenced), etc. Some of his students on this list defended him adamantly, and convincingly. There was a most disturbing (to me) letter from one of his students describing a bad experience at the Tracked School with Tom. I think you can get the archives by asking Andre for them.

----------
> From: Bryce Rogow
> To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; jharsh@DREAMSCAPE.COM
> Subject: Advice
> Date: Wednesday, January 15, 1997 7:17 AM
> 
> I am strongly considering signing up for the Standard Course this summer. What can anyone tell me about the course's value, Mr. Brown, the instructors, etc? Any advice would be appreciated.

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA14544; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 22:53:46 -0500 (EST)
To every one concerned,

Ron and I have traded information privately about TB and worked everything out to both our satisfactions. It was basically a misunderstanding on my part and I apologized to Ron. Just wanted to clear things up, NOT START anything.

Walk in Balance,
Bob Barr
> Ron,  
> Did you ever think about how your dislike for Tom Brown makes you look  
> to other people? How does continually putting someone down help others  
> to grow and learn? I have had and helped out at many classes at Tom's  
> school and I have NEVER heard Tom talk badly about any person or any  
> school!  
>  
> Bob Barr  

Well, I took a class from Tom, and he didn't attack anyone specifically,  
but he made it clear that /he/ was the world's foremost survival trainer, 
tracker, and philosopher, and everybody else was nitwits.  
The only praise he ever gave other instructors was,  
"He was one of my students."  

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu  

"You read those damn books out there, and they'll kill you.  
I know.  I've dragged out the bodies of people following that  
damn 'survival advice'. They've got plants listed as edible that  
will kill you."  

- Tom Brown (from memory)  

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by  
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id JAA17141; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 09:27:27 -0500 (EST)  
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by  
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA00847; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 09:26:29 -0500 (EST)  
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)  
with SMTP; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 09:24:35 EST  
Received: from enaila.nidlink.com (enaila.nidlink.com [205.219.220.23]) by  
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id JAA00844 for  
; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 09:26:17
I'd like to post this donation to the Primitive Skills Group from a New Zealand Forester, John Phair. Hope you'll be pleased.

It rained and it rained and it rained
the average fall was well maintained
and when the tracks were simple bogs
it started raining cats and dogs
after a drought of half and hour
we had a most refreshing shower
and then, most curious thing of all
a gentle rain began to fall
next day but one was fairly dry
save for one deluge from the sky
which wetted the party to the skin
and then, at last - the rain set in.

Cheers John

.................................

-- Chris
Tom Elpel wrote:

>>    I have listened to the Tom Brown debate for the last eight and a
>>half years, since I first encountered it in 1988 at the revival of
>>Rabbitstick Rendezvous in Rexburg, Idaho. I have to confess a gravitation
>>to gossip, and I could share new light on the subject for you (I can play
>>both sides of the issue).
>>>

>>ALWAYS Peace (anything else is war),
>>>

>It's interesting that you say you can "play both sides of the issue," but
>yet you state without reservation that "always peace - anything else is war."
>
>Maybe you should start a conversation about proper hygiene of your upper lip.
>
>I hear Ron Hood teaches a great spine growing class.
>
>Karen Hood

Karen,

Thank you for pointing out the contradiction. It was a poor choice of words on my part, and I apologize. I should have said, "I have additional information from both sides, but will play neither."

Always Peace (for reals!),

Thomas J. Elpel
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTTP id MAA09320; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 12:19:31 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA21551; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 12:18:35 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 12:16:39 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTTP id MAA21545 for ; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 12:18:20 -0500 (EST)
Received: from Quantum.qnet.com (palm00-01.ca.qnet.com [207.155.33.31]) by ns2.qnet.com (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA13586; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 09:22:20 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853349422.000
From: mtnwmn@SURVIVAL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mtnwmn@SURVIVAL.COM
Date: Wed, 15 Jan 1997 09:22:20 -0800 (PST)
Message-ID: <199701151722.JAA13586@ns2.qnet.com>
X-Sender: mtnwmn@pop3.av.qnet.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.3
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tomelpel@3RIVERS.NET
Subject: Re: Correction: "Both Sides"
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Tom Elpel wrote:

> Karen,
> Thank you for pointing out the contradiction. It was a poor choice
> of words on my part, and I apologize. I should have said, "I have
> additional information from both sides, but will play neither."
> 
> Always Peace (for reals!),
> 
> Thomas J. Elpel

Tom,

It's nice to see that you can take a goodhumored ribbing and not take
offense. I respect that. :)

Karen Hood
Hoods Woods

From - Sat Jan 11 23:00:00 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTTP id HAA11422; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 07:05:25 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id HAA15184; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 07:01:52 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 06:59:58 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id HAA15180 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 07:01:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.156]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA15180 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 06:58:00 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D8E16F.5A7D@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 07:04:47 -0600
X-UIDL: 853084405.063
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Here we go again...
References: <2.2.32.19970111181624.0072fda8@ pop3.av.qnet.com>
              <32D79DAD.2685@ix.netcom.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

So, what's it going to take to get people to stop whining about Tom Brown? I have suggested privately e-mailing people on this subject, but that doesn't work. I for one have better things to do and would rather not have to wade through a bunch of mindless defense of Tom Brown. Or here's an idea for everyone who wants to continue this thread, start your own discussion list.

------------------------------------------------------------------------
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Wed Jan 15 00:39:22 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA06196; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 01:51:37 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA17781; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 01:50:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
Sherri Wrote:

> Let us not cast others aside or out just because they
> do not happen to share our position on some things.

I have a better idea, let us not drop another hit of acid and become one
with the flowers.

Flowers don't know the meaning of freedom of speech so they can't take it
away from us :)

Karen Hood

Karen Hood Wrote:

Sherri Wrote:

> Let us not cast others aside or out just because they
> do not happen to share our position on some things.

I have a better idea, let us not drop another hit of acid and become one
with the flowers.

Flowers don't know the meaning of freedom of speech so they can't take it
away from us :)

Karen Hood
Let us not cast others aside or out just because they do not happen to share our position on some things.

I have a better idea, let us not drop another hit of acid and become one with the flowers.

Flowers don't know the meaning of freedom of speech so they can't take it away from us :)

I am new to this list (signed on yesterday) and don't know jack from jill. That said, I subscribed to this list looking for survival skills. I have read here of some incredible skills! I am excited to learn about more. My confusion is thus: what does the above post have to do with survival? It reminds me of the old Python skit: the Argument Clinic. (No it doesn't. Yes, it DOES.)

Please understand, it is not my place to say what messages are addressed on this list, and that isn't my intention -- I just want to better understand the purpose of this list so I can know where I fit in, and what kind of submissions are acceptable and desired. The guidelines I was emailed when signing up said:

Remember! This group is intended for fun, sharing and learning about primitive wilderness survival and living skills.

Oh, I think I got it: Primitive-Skills would naturally include bickering. (Always did in my family.) ;^)

With Love & Respect,

Rees
Hi folks,

Since some of you seem to be bound and determined to misrepresent a reasonably good natured exchange between Kevin and myself, I think I ought to clear the decks.

The recent attack on my character by Bob Barr, and to a lesser extent by Ferrel, leaves me to wonder where the notion of good humored debate has gone. The notion certainly was not lost on Kevin with who I debated (and with whom I shared several very funny private exchanges). The debate has however taken on a life of it's own. Subsequent to the fun exchange and ribbing Kevin and I gave each other, I attempted to share some skills and experiential information that I thought might be of general interest to the group. From those postings I received no comment, question or notion of interest (though my words and concepts came through in other posts). The silence was pregnant.

I know that silence..... Some of you are afraid to speak out. Why? because you fear to upset the brownies who scream in defense of their guru. A man who I know (perhaps better than I've let on) and who does not want, nor need, their defense. Our exchanges were meant to draw out the strident
screams of indignant brownies, leaping to the defense of....... Not of Tom..... but of their own ex halted vision of the poor man. Stand on your own feet. Speak for yourself. Survival is not what "Tom says......." survival is independence, skills, personal strength, innovation (just what most of you demonstrate).

But for you brownies out there. I will give you a short sample of the private mail I received while Kevin and I played. (Oh! if you were the author of some of this, don't worry. No one will know but Karen and I. Of course if you want to fess up.... feel free!)

>I'd love to ask him questions to see how he can weasel his way out of
>them... for example: (Hi Tom, could you send me a list of names for
>those 48 people you mentioned made it through the 30 day winter survival
>course with no clothing? I'd love to do a piece on their
>stories.)
>
>Keep em coming!

And

>I've been teaching survival for 20 years. I've never seen more ill educated
>persons than the ones TB turns out in his assembly line school. None of these
>people has any clue about the real skills of wilderness survival......

And

>I can't for the life of me imagine how anyone can think that they will learn
>anything about the wilderness when they sit in a group of a hundred
>people while they listen to a grown man moan about how bad things are.
>People just get ripped off... and the funny thing is... they love it!

And

>Are Tom Brown followers a bunch of whiners or what?!! I
>hate they got stirred up, I'm tired of their crying. How can anyone take
>seriously a 'teacher' that teaches "Spirit Tracking" and tells people
>they can touch a track and tell what direction an animal was looking and
>that they will no longer need physical tracking skills once they take
>this course.

And

>I've taken several classes with Tom. At some point I realized that I had
>learned that I really hadn't learned anything about survival but I thought
>I could track a mouse fart. It became painfully obvious to me when I took a
>survival program in Colorado and I had no idea what the teacher was talking
>about.......

And

>Yeah, Tom's got a bit 'o the lightning rod about him, I guess. It's
>probably those books. Hellacious publicity, plus "spiritual
>mystery." I personally thought Tom was living under a self-imposed
>"mystique of the tortured soul." Whatever. I don't judge him as
>good or bad; I *did* judge that he was a man of good character; and
>I *don't* envy his life. I mean, the poor guy lives in New Jersey!
Believe me, it goes on and on.

It goes on and on. It's not me folks, it's you. For those of you who are too fearful of the power Tom has in our little industry, I say "speak up". I always have said what was on my mind and I will continue to do so. My name sake, Diogenes, was the seeker of truth. I've had this nickname since I was a kid and I will continue to wear it.

Remember too. Seeking truth requires facing facts, getting evidence and learning. That is what this group is about. If you can't stand an examination of the most controversial figure in wilderness education...... Leave.

If you need to try to insult me, do it to my face. I'll defend myself.

If you value the skills I learned the hard way and tried to share with you all, let me know. If you don't, let me know and I will only share them with my students, ten at a time.

Sincerely

Ron Hood

BTW What is a brownie? Not just a student of Tom's, but a convert............. That's all.

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Dr. Ron Hood
P.O. Box 383
Lake Hughes, CA, 93532
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan 14 03:42:32 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA29856; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 11:31:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA07848; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 11:30:21 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 11:28:28 EST
Received: from slip-3.slip.net ([207.171.193.17]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA07838 for
; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 11:30:08 -0500 (EST)
Received: from woodruff-sawyer.com [204.162.170.22] by slip-3.slip.net with
smtp (Exim 0.57 #1) id 0vkBoP-0004wl-00; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 08:34:10 -0800
Received: from pc67 by woodruff-sawyer.com (AIX 3.2/UCB 5.64/4.03) id AA116141;
; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 08:32:09 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
>Yeah, Tom's got a bit 'o the lightning rod about him, I guess. It's
>probably those books. Hellacious publicity, plus "spiritual
>mystery." I personally thought Tom was living under a self-imposed
">"mystique of the tortured soul." Whatever. I don't judge him as
>good or bad; I *did* judge that he was a man of good character; and
>I *don't* envy his life. I mean, the poor guy lives in New Jersey!

It's always a pleasure to see one's private e-mail thrown into the
public trough. Thank you, Mr. Truthseeker.

The above post to Ron was in the context of a longer message in
which I'd asked him to provide the newspaper article he said he had
that was so damning to Tom. Joe McCarthy once said he had a list of
subversives, and no one bothered to ask to see it (because only a
subversive would want to?). I'm not saying the article doesn't
exist, but as someone who studied journalism in school and worked as
a newspaperman, I felt like seeing this thing and judging it for
myself.

I also included some bio information in my post to him to show that
I've taken skills classes from several instructors and am not one of
these semi-mythical "brownies." When I saw Ron's "let's be honest"
post, I thought he was going to quote what these brownies were
saying. *That* is what's missing here. Who are these so-called
brownies he's so upset with?

Sure, it's easy to believe there are impressionable people (mostly
under 30, I would guess) who look to Tom as a guru (an image which
Tom did his best to dispel at the class I took from him). These
people no doubt exist, and if they stick to it, life will grow them
out of their need for discipleship -- when they have come to know
what spiritual truth is on their own. So what's in it for a guy to
makes fun of these truth seekers?! Tom is *not* just teaching
physical survival skills, and that's why he makes a point of
suggesting that if that's all you're interested in, then you should
find another school. Now there are lots of people for whom the word
"spirituality" conjures up a whole raft of ghosts and hobgoblins,
and who must take cover behind a lot of pseudo-rationality and
ignorant put-downs to keep feeling safe and in control of a world
that really isn't all that mysterious. So with these people in mind, there's always the implication that *anyone* who thinks Tom is a good guy is some kind of kook. In short, I think Ron's use of the term "brownie" is a cheap shot from a man who knows an epiphany when he has one. (Ron's foxhole turd epiphany reminded me of Carl Jung's -- where God dropped a grogan on a church -- and I agree with Ron and Carl that God has a great sense of humor!)

I'm sorry I said the things I did about Tom to Ron -- not because I disavow them, but because I intended them for Ron alone, assuming (through the little I know about him via his posts and his website) that he would hear it the way I meant it. I certainly couldn't make that assumption for the entire group!

Finally, Ron de-contextualized my joke about New Jersey by taking off the :-) dude I had tacked to the end. That was a *joke*, mang!

If anyone has a beef with what I said, please e-mail me directly at:

jwall@woodruff-sawyer.com

Muchas thank yous,

Aloha,

--John
Greetings.

As Don Henley says - "They stabbed it with thier steely knives but they just can't kill the beast" - this is turning into a B-movie - the Thread That Wouldn't Die!  This is also guaranteed to be my absolute last post on this subject.

As I see it there are a couple of different schools of thought in the Primitive Skills arena. There are the west coast practitioners like Larry Dean Olsen, David Wescott, and Ron Hood. There are scientists like Ev Calahan and Dr Bourbeau. There are east coast practitioners like Tom Brown and Benjamin Pressley and Charles Worsham. They all have things to teach us. Unfortunately there is a rift between the Brownsters like myself and many others. I have tried to come to an understanding of why this has occured, and I have several ideas that aren't really important here. (I will discuss it with anyone who likes via private E-mail)  For me the point is not that the rift exists. THE POINT IS I WANT TO LEARN FROM ALL OF YOU!  Lets get beyond who learned from who and who said what. Lets focus on the skills. Can we agree to leave the personalities out of the discussions and focus on the skills. Otherwise we will succeed in driving folks away like myself and Ron Hood.

Ron and I, who originally began this thread, have come to a very respectful understanding. I want to hear what he has to offer, and by the way, he has unbelievably great credentials AND EXPERIENCE. It is a shame if anyone feels thay are not listened to or valued. As Rodney King said, can't we all just get along?

Thanks for hearing one final plea.

Kevin
Ron/Bob/Kevin

I've been lurking around ever since this primitive server started and very much enjoy the humour and knowledge you provide and would hate to see you no longer participate.

The debates about TB have been interesting, but I worry now that they are going too far and are becoming very personal to those involved. This is making it uncomfortable for those of us on the periphery, kind of like watching your parents or friends arguing and wanting to help but also not wanting to get involved.

It now seems as though battle lines are being drawn and we are being asked to take sides, I quote "I know that silence..... Some of you are afraid to speak out. Why? because you fear to upset the brownies who scream in defense of their guru."

I have no fear of speaking out about most things. Perhaps the pregnant silence was embarressment?

I too have some concerns about Tom Brown, mainly because his pseudo-spiritual mumbo jumbo gets in the way of the meat of his teaching. I feel that he has a tendency to exaggerate and am mildly worried by the religious cult developing around him. Frankly though I don't lose sleep over it, it's just not important enough for me to care about. For those that are concerned about this issue, there is a TB listserver which may well be the appropriate forum for this kind of discussion.

(BTW I don't necessarily blame TB for the cult thing. There's a saying that when people stop believing in anything, they start believing in everything. In this, TB fills a role model for those looking for a saviour.)

Please keep up the primitive skills postings and I hope that we can get some of the steam out of the TB thread before someone gets too upset.
Cheers

KB

> Remember too. Seeking truth requires facing facts, getting evidence and
> learning. That is what this group is about. If you can't stand an
> examination of the most controversial figure in wilderness education......
> Leave.

> If you need to try to insult me, do it to my face. I'll defend myself.

> If you value the skills I learned the hard way and tried to share with you
> all, let me know. If you don't, Let me know and I will only share them with
> my students, ten at a time.

Ron, and the rest of you,

As one who has been silent on this exchange, I'll speak up to some extent.
Myself, I saw no need to participate in casting aspersations on others.
Also, being deaf, I've learned to sit and listen to exchanges, to see what
I can learn from them. From the entire TB debate that was on the list, I
simply gathered that there was a debate about certain aspects of the TB
culture that were so diffuse that clarification was desired. Further, I did
pick up that this exchange was respectful between the two of you. That suited
me fine. Between you and Kevin, I gathered that you both agree on the need
to teach, but also on the need to actually learn what was taught, and to
build on that so that one can stand on his own feet rather than quoting
someone who was an unwilling prophet, in the eyes of a few rabid students
of his. There are always those who will seek out someone to follow, but
not actually practice what he simply tries to teach. And to justify their
attendance after finding out how much work and practice it takes to actually
become merely good at what is taught, they deify the teacher to justify their
own unwillingness to put in the time and effort of actual practice, preferring
rather to nitpick fine details and justify that as understanding. This is
true not only with people like TB (to use the subject matter) but also with
many other teachers. For example, look inside just about any religion.
I do not mean to disparage anyone, be it Ron, Kevin, TB, or anyone else.
This is merely an observation of mine.

Myself, I have no knowledge of TB other than what I've picked up in groups
like this one. I've not even read his books. From what I gather, I gather
that his background is undefined, but that the skills he teaches are
worthwhile, but could also be learned cheaper with other instructors if you
want to search them out. Similar to shopping at Sears or at Wal-mart: one
might cost more because of the name, but you can get the same thing at either.
In either case, the use of what you learn is critical, as is learning it well
enough to pass it on to the next generation, or anyone else who expresses
an interest.

Finally, it appears from your posting that I do not get all the posts. Or if
I do, they're so multi-threaded that I didn't realize they were part of the
same thread. I do hope you, and Kevin too, will continue to populate this
list as you both have a lot to teach. In general, I don't have the experience
of either of you, and so I keep quiet and listen and learn. But when I do
know about something, such as using slings, I will speak up and offer my
input for what it's worth.

That last paragraph of yours above is rather poigant. When this started, and
when that note about the use of turds being blasphemous popped up, I was
seriously afraid that this list would erupt into a flame war, similar to what
I've seen in various newsgroups. And if it did, I knew that we would lose a
lot of the talent and skills that frequent this list. Don't let that happen.

BTW, I had a discussion with a few friends, of assorted religious background,
and the general consensus was "Turd? What's the big deal?" Also, we figured
that if anyone was blaspheming, it was that writer, hiding behind the Lord's
name (the e-mail address). Also, the general consensus was also that this
person is an example of the type of person I was discussing up above in my
first paragraph: someone quoting the tracts and verses without understanding
them. Such exist, and we must learn to live around them.

Friends, Listmembers, Terrans, let us cast this foul taste aside and return
to learning, sharing stories, and living together in this list.

I now return you to your regularly scheduled list...

Bill B.
John Wall wrote:
>
> Sure, it's easy to believe there are impressionable people (mostly
> under 30, I would guess) who look to Tom as a guru (an image which
> Tom did his best to dispel at the class I took from him). These
> people no doubt exist, and if they stick to it, life will grow them
> out of their need for discipleship -- when they have come to know
> what spiritual truth is on their own.

Well said John, Well said.

But...this has brought up an interesting question for me. Do you
experienced teachers say that the spiritual aspect is not or cannot be
incorporated into tracking? and/or primitive skills? hummm....I find
this thought interesting. I follow many (spiritual) gut instincts in my
life, with everything I do. Some people can and do have the ability to
"see" "feel" what "was/is" there. This has been proven in quantum
physics; and parapsychology. I would be interested to know how the
"teachers" (as in....learn a living teaching primitive skills) think of this. If this is not considered something for the list then please email me privately. BTW...this is a serious question here.

But I will say this.....I do tend to get annoyed when someone says "if you can't take us talking about a teacher.....leave". I have already said....we are learn from each other...students from teachers...and teachers from students...all of us from each other. I do not like to be invited to leave if I have personally different views. (not that I thought this was directed personally at me) but the point of the matter is we ALL have a right to be here. No one (in my humble opinion) should be told to leave....

Gentlemen....we are all part of each other...all of us....connected to one another as human beings on this planet. We ALL are unique with our own viewpoints and have the right to have them; as we ALL grow with age and experience. Let us not cast others aside or out just because they do not happen to share our position on some things.

Sherri
seer7@dnaco.net       "Good Planets Are Hard to Find!!"

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan 14 10:42:30 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA04978; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 22:03:55 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA16234; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 22:02:16 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 22:00:23 EST
Received: from ultral.dreamscape.com (ultral.dreamscape.com [206.64.128.7]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA16229 for ; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 22:02:05 -0500 (EST)
Received: from default (sAc17.dreamscape.com [206.114.185.210]) by ultral.dreamscape.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id WAA02097 for ; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 22:07:07 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199701150307.WAA02097@ultra1.dreamscape.com>
From: "Jon Harshbarger"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jharsh@DREAMSCAPE.COM
To:
Subject: Re: Let's be honest
Date: Tue, 14 Jan 1997 22:02:41 -0500
X-MSMail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1085
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
I realize that this is a subject of dying popularity especially within the parameters of this group and I apologize for my unwillingness to walk away from such a controversial, no-win topic. However, the issue pertaining to the integrity of Tom Brown Jr. should be of paramount interest to anyone involved with the primitive arts. Recognize one fact, for those of you unfamiliar with the source; The multi-million dollar Tracker organization is, by far, the single most influential outreach program in the field. Not a point worthy of criticism by any means. However, we all should concern ourselves with what is being served on that $700 plate.

I am an advanced Tracker student. I admit that for one reason only; I hope it is clear. I have seen the smoke and the mirrors. I have witnessed the quality of instruction drop as average class size exceeds 100. I have witnessed The Tracker succumb to the enormous demands of a large class as he fumbles to remember where he had originally, so decisively, said that track was. I have seen him mistake my thumb print for a fox print. I can sympathize with the frustration of Mr. Goetz.

I am suggesting that we have a responsibility. I am disappointed that this topic has been relinquished to the back burners of private correspondence. We ARE part of the whole.

Ron, I would appreciate information on that article you mentioned earlier and would like to be included in future discussions.

Jon Harshbarger
jharsh@dreamscape.com
Hi Jon,

> I realize that this is a subject of dying popularity especially within
> the parameters of this group and I apologize for my unwillingness to walk
> away from such a controversial, no-win topic.
> Ron, I would appreciate information on that article you mentioned
> earlier and would like to be included in future discussions.

I'll be in touch with you by E-mail. I recognize the truth of what you said
in your message. It is interesting that some folks want to ban the
debate...... Free speech... dead on the net? Naw... never happen, not in a
group whose core being is founded on independence.

I want you to know that I believe this to be a very important topic, just as
you so wisely pointed out. I don't really care about TB. He will fall under
his own weight. It sounds like that is what is happening now. More
importantly, I think, everyone NOW knows the issue will be met squarely. I
plan to ignore further posts directed at me unless I find them to
particularly offensive or spectacularly incorrect (as in Sherri's post. Her
comments I will deal with privately).

Meanwhile.... with your help and Kevin's and other free thinking students of
the primitive arts we can all assist new members with the notion that not
everyone thinks that TB is the font of knowledge. "Tom says........ " is a
trigger, we can tell them to keep their finger off it.

Thank you for a thoughtful post.

Ron Hood
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Dr. Ron Hood
P.O. Box 383
Lake Hughes, CA, 93532
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

From - Mon Jan 13 21:08:17 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA26786; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 01:35:20 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA04357; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 01:34:41 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 01:32:49 EST
Received: from mail.inforamp.net (Mail.InfoRamp.Net [204.191.136.66]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA04351 for
; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 01:34:30
-0500 (EST)
Welcome & thank you Mr. Peterson, your words are very wise. I hope they will be accepted by all in this group. It is the skills that are important & the fact is - like it or not - as you point out, these 2 individuals have been responsible for introducing many to a closer kinship with the wilderness. Isn't that the ultimate goal we too would like to accomplish? As someone already wisely said in an earlier post, let's concentrate on the skills, & give credit if it is due. I was glad to see the thread end.

As one who has been fairly recently introduced to primitive skills, I've just been sucking up the info posted. Even the steamers caught me with my mouth open (I'll have a devilish smile every time someone eats a steamed hot dog - they're called steamies in MTL). Keep the skills (& comedy) rolling folks as you have lots to teach & some of us have lots to learn. I would also like to thank Dr. Bourbeau for this wonderfully informative group. My intro will come soon.

> (snip) Mr. Peterson wrote:
> I found the recent exchange concerning two very prominent primitive practitioners very amusing and sad at the same time. Both have contributed greatly to the advancement of primitive skills. That's probably all that should be said. I know Mr. Brown only by his good reputation and that he has helped open the eyes of many to primitive skills and methods. This is wonderful! My eyes were opened by Larry Dean Olsen in 1969. We have been good friends ever since and I appreciate that he has been a mentor to me. This is also wonderful.
> >
> >What has been the result? Thousands of people have been blessed with a new awareness. That's what's important. Let's drive on folks and share our knowledge.
> >
> >(snip)
With the discussion of TB and others out there, I just had to put in my 2 cents worth. Here goes.

Tom has been ONE of the greatest teachers in my life. He is NOT the ONLY teacher in my life. Likewise, I am a teacher to others. Do I, as anyone else have problems, shortcomings etc. Sure! That does not mean I cannot learn from others or teach the skills that I have learned (regardless of who taught them to me). I have learned many skills from many teachers and am greatful to them all. I hold Tom (with his faults and flaws) in high regard, though he has not achieved deity status. I have also learned valuable things from John & Jerry McP, Olsen, Hood, etc through a variety of media.

I have NEVER heard Tom talk badly about any person or any > school!

Both Bobb and Phil are correct. The point being Tom has not criticized an individual, but some methodology which is his right to do, and your right not to accept if you have found another way that works for you. A case in point, all you need to do is reference the Colorado Division of Wildlife guid called "the art of survival", look to the section on shelter (pg2) to see how it can easily get someone killed.
"You read those damn books out there, and they'll kill you. I know. I've dragged out the bodies of people following that damn 'survival advice'. They've got plants listed as edible that will kill you."

It is Never the WHO but the WHAT that is important. Simply teach, learn, and leave the "who has the biggest butt" for the beauty pageants. Sorry this has turned into $2.00 worth.

Bobb, Great job at the Philosophy 1 workshop.

For the Children, For the Earth,
eddie starnater

---

From - Fri Jan  3 02:49:03 1997
Received: from kirk.dnaco.net (root@kirk.dnaco.net [206.150.232.3]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA07432 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 13:32:40 -0500 (EST)
Received: from sherri (uhura-3.dnaco.net [206.150.232.103]) by kirk.dnaco.net (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA18483; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 13:36:33 -0500 (EST)
Message-Id: <199701031836.NAA18483@kirk.dnaco.net>
Date: Fri, 03 Jan 1997 13:38:07 -0500
X-UIDL: 852317049.001
From: Sherri <"seer7@Mailhost"@dnaco.net>
Reply-To: "seer7@Mailhost"@dnaco.net
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0Gold (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
Subject: Myth of the Happy Wanderer
References: <00011B02.3356@radian.com> <32CB5429.76DC@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

That's an admirable goal. It brings to mind a question of mine:
>Survival trainers, including Tom Brown, sometimes boast that
>they can train people to survive anywhere, anytime. They give
>the impression that one can wander through the wilds freely,
>without the burden of possessions, making what you need when you
>need it.

>I have visited many American Indian museums in New York State,
>Arizona, and New Mexico, and one thing that impressed me
>repeatedly is that these Indians (Iroquois, Navajo, Hopi,
>Anasazi, Sinagua) were not wide-ranging foragers free of
>possessions.

>Nor were they able to survive "anytime, anywhere".

>Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

What I've heard Tom say is that someone with special expertise
and/or training (e.g. an Apache scout or a diligent Tracker
student) could survive anywhere, anytime, as long as they only
had themselves to support. He explicitly stated in one or more classes I've attended that the average traditional person, dependent on existence in a social group for survival, most likely did not have this level of skills. It certainly wouldn't be true of a family, band, or village with dependent children and oldsters to support.

Even in the case of an Apache scout, this doesn't rule out death by mishap or misjudgment. I think it was in _Grandfather_ that Tom describes a situation in which Stalking Wolf gets caught in the far north in the winter and comes close to dying.

Even in traditional hunting-gathering societies, I doubt that the model of the "happy wanderer" applies. I suspect that most traditional peoples are interested in the same things most modern people are: to live comfortably and raise a family, not to wander freely. I doubt that they would want to move unless availability of food or firewood, or pressure from hostile neighbors, required it. I also doubt they would needlessly destroy belongings to start over fresh at a new location unless the belongings were easy to make and/or difficult to transport.

In sum, I don't think the claim made by modern instructors that they can teach you to survive "anywhere, anytime" starting from scratch (if true) has anything to do with the way the majority of traditional and prehistoric peoples ever lived or aspired to live.

Terry
Terry Morse
morset@ccmail.orst.edu

"If a man walk in the woods for love of them half of each day, he is in danger of being regarded as a loafer; but if he spends his whole day as a speculator, shearing off those woods and making earth bald before her time, he is esteemed an industrious and enterprising citizen. As if a town had no interest in its forests but to cut them down!" -- Thoreau

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Tue Jan  7 05:26:50 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA03529; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 02:54:58 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA07130; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 02:53:00 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from dfw-ix6.ix.netcom.com (dfw-ix6.ix.netcom.com [206.214.98.6]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA07127 for 
; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 02:52:43 
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 199.182.128.92 (sjx-ca10-28.ix.netcom.com [199.182.128.92]) by
>I think Andre's post says it best of all. I would run far from anyone
>who teaches you skills for a week and then tells you you can survive. I
>have met too many students (of mainly Tom Brown) that did not even know
>how to make a friction fire.........

I also must state for the record that Tom never makes the claim that you
can survive lavishly after just one class. Like Bob said earlier, many
of his students hear what they want to hear. Tom does say that you
could "survive" with just a week's training, but I take that to mean
that one would not die in an emergency. Basically, if you can make a
shelter, find water, with great luck build a fire, you will probably
last in the woods until you are found. He makes it very clear in the
classes I have attended, helped, and taught, that you had better not
just walk into a life threatening situation without lots of practice.
In fact he recommends that as you go backpacking, you take along less
and less equipment each time until you GRADUALLY wean yourself of your
need for equipment.

In fact there is a very funny story told by Jon Young (WAS & Kamana),
who was a member of Tom's Scout troop many years ago. (Imagine having
Tom as a Scoutmaster!) Tom told the boys to bring whatever they wanted
on the first camping trip. Of course they brought mountains of
ridiculous stuff. But on each trip, their precious stuff would
dissapear. Then, Tom would accidentally back his jeep over the tents.
Then he would accidentally drop the sleeping bags into the stream. You
get the picture. By the end of six months his boy scouts were able to
camp lean and mean - and as Jon tells it, there was no use taking
anything with you anyway, because it would always mysteriously
dissapear.

I challenge anyone critical of Tom to learn first hand. Take a class
and then judge. I think you will see much of the criticism of Mr Brown
is based on rumour, innuendo, and simple untruth. Some of it may
legitimately be based on students who, as Bob mentioned, hear what they
want to hear, and do stupid things. I doubt you will find that much in
many of Tom's more advanced students. They are in my experience a very humble bunch who want to learn form every available source. I for example have learned from Benjamin Pressley. His postings have been great, and his article in the last Journal of Primitive Technology on torches was fabulous. We all can learn from each other and I hope we can all keep an open mind and respect one another's perspectives.

Kevin

Benjamin P. wrote:
>I think Andre's post says it best of all. I would run far from anyone who teaches you skills for a week and then tells you you can survive. I have met too many students (of mainly Tom Brown) that did not even know how to make a friction fire........

Sorry folks but I can't let that one go unanswered. It sounds like ol' BP has an axe to grind with ol' Tom Brown. Gotta say that anyone who knows TB and his commitment to the earth -- and the things which go way beyond practicing primitive skills -- would have more respect. It simply isn't true that Tom teaches you skills for a week and then tells you you can survive. Rather, he makes it VERY clear that you need dirt-time. The basics taught in the standard class are what he considers the most essential for the most-likely survival situation, plus a wetting of the
appetite for the more important aspects of Stalking Wolf's teaching--the spiritual, the caretaker attitude, and love. Tom covers bowdrill and handdrill in the Standard class, and 95% of the class gets the fire going, usually with less-than-dry cedar. Anybody who's been through that class well knows their limitations, and usually is humble enough not to boast about survival skills. If BP ran into some that weren't like this it is likely an anomaly, and I doubt widespread among Tracker students.

Perhaps the problem is that TB's reputation and apparent success causes some others to feel the need to take shots at him rather than sharing the consciousness around the need for these skills to stay alive. My own experience with TB after eight courses, are beyond words. I have never been to any school including five years of engineering school where I learned as much about as many important things as what TB has to offer. My observation of his commitment to finding better ways of teaching more and more folks -- spreading himself razor thin while maintaining the essence of the teachings -- is that his efforts are unmatched. The fights over local environmetal issues in the Pine barrens, and his proximity to New York City, are evidence of his working the front lines. It's much easier to live and teach in the beautiful wilderness areas. I could go on but this is off subject. I hope we need not continue to clutter up this list with shots at TB or any other teachers.....Unless the good Dr. AFB doesn't mind :)

>Oh, and by the way, I wasn't just picking on Tom Brown, just sharing >my experiences with some of his students I'm familiar with. I can >recommend some other teachers I am more confident in, though, that cost >a whole lot less.

I'd sure like to know them. My budget is tight just like everybody else's.

Regards.

Gene Monaco and East Tennessee Permaculture
PO Box 11851, Knoxville, TN 37939
(423) 457-4354
EFMonaco@compuserve.com

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan  7 05:28:02 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA06539; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 13:12:30 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA10424; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 13:11:17 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from kirk.dnaco.net (kirk.dnaco.net [206.150.232.3]) by
poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA10421 for
; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 13:11:07
-0500 (EST)
Received: from sherri (uhura-20.dnaco.net [206.150.232.120]) by kirk.dnaco.net
(8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA20652; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 13:15:11 -0500
(EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca
BKP wrote:
> It sure was a long way around the golden rule, which by the way was
> a part of another survival tool, but I would like to see this wonderfully
> informative group continue and thrive.
> Peace to all.
> --
> Sincerely,
> Barent
> Duty, Honor, Country

Barent,

Did I miss something? I wasn't under the impression that anyone was upset. Maybe I just don't have my psychic antennas out....I thought each was just sharing opinions on their viewpoints.

I agree that we should use the tech. available to us. The point, in my opinion, is that if you are thrown into a survival situation without any (or just a little) tech. Do you have the ability to handle this and survive. I am trying to learn the skills to do so...also want to pass this on to my child and his children...we are losing so much valuable skills with our tech. I want my family to carry the skills and ability. I like my nice warm house and hot shower as much as anyone...but this is not to say it will always be here....all it would take is a major castatrophe (sp)...sadly, most of society would be totally lost without the grocery store, car, etc. Panic would set in...we are too soft and too far removed from nature and our roots. Our peace of mind is being lost, taken over by stress...and "I see" I want, therefore "I must have" type of consumerism. We have forgotten the beauty of the flowers, the earth, and animals...we are so busy rushing, rushing, rushing. We have forgotten our connections with this planet...we are destroying everything with our greed and lack of concern.

humm....I took off on a tangent here....sorry....but this is just my opinion...I do not blame or feel anger at others who do not hold this mindset...It is my feelings.

In peace
I have also been following the thread and I have to say that I don't like the direction it is taking. No flame wars please.

If survival means to continue existence, to propagate, to continue a gene line, then it is most prudent to use whatever techniques, technology, resources, assistance is available. The two divergent paths of thought here include what I, IMHO, have categorized as pragmatists and idealists (for want of a better term). The pragmatists accept the premise that continuation of the gene line (my children) is the overriding concern and are concerned primarily with that. Idealists, although they quite clearly accept the premise (they are living) want to consider only the possibilities on the idealists plane. That is, if it is possible don't say that it isn't.

My ancestors, like yours, survived over millenia using various skills. Now, I have that task and I have advantages available to me that were unavailable to them. In a "true" survival situation, where one has no choice in the matter and must do or die, I will make use of every advantage that technological advancement has given me that I still have...
to use and will go to great lengths to learn. It is also true that mankind live the most luxuriant of lifestyles for all time. My home, for example, is comfortable year round, unlike even the most wealthy or privileged of people of only 200 years ago (Ron's point on technology).

You are both right, just looking at the same question from different angles. That is the idea of the group, to get that different angle. I don't think that there is any reason to get irritated when someone disagrees, but find out why, you might just learn something.

It sure was a long way around the golden rule, which by the way was a part of another survival tool, but I would like to see this wonderfully informative group continue and thrive.

Peace to all.
--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From Thu Jan 2 07:43:42 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA01618; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 19:34:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA19215; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 19:33:12 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 19:37:48 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA19210 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 19:33:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.68 (srv1s19.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.70]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id TAA17062 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 19:36:20 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CB65FF.6D42@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Thu, 02 Jan 1997 07:38:39 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
References: <199701022017.PAA22617@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chicl.saglac.qc.ca.id TAA01618
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Phil Goetz wrote:

(snip)

> All this leads me to suspect that the claim that people can survive
> "anytime, anywhere", even if dropped into the wilderness in the middle of
> winter, and the related idea that people can live without the burden
> of possessions, are myths, with great emotional appeal but little truth.
> 
> What do the people on these lists with more experience think?
> 
> Hi Phil,

Great question, Phil, I'll try to be brief even though I want to scream bloody murder
for the same reasons you bring up. So much nonsense out there...

My specialty has been "get dropped there naked and try to survive" research for the
last 25 years. I've tried this hundreds of times in simulated conditions, and there is no
way in hell anyone is going to make ME believe that it's easy. NO WAY! It is
always,
always a very painful and difficult experience to be dropped off in the bush with no
gear and try to survive, at least here in Quebec. If it's winter, you freeze your
buns
off, and if it's summer, you get bitten alive. If it's fall or spring, you are
soaking
wet from the constant rains and miserable.

Now it is true that with good training you can make life, if not comfortable, at
least,
less miserable.

Most of all, this depends on LUCK! If you happen to fall upon a fresh wolf kill, a
weakened and dying Caribou, a great berry patch, a fish spawning stream, a particular
spot with tons of dead wood, good weather, etc., survival becomes fairly easy and can
approach the pleasurable. However, if the opposite happens, wet soggy snow, no
berries
and no animals, no gear to fall back upon etc., you are lucky just to stay alive
without
sustaining injury. Lots of pain, but no permanent injuries- that's the best you can
hope for, and with proper survival training, is always possible in my estimation, to
survive at least in the short term until rescue.

Most of the time, you have a mixture of the two. Some good elements, some rotten, it
varies from day to day and from spot to spot.

People who boast of how easy everything is done tend to forget that after a single
day
of badluck (rotten weather for instance), your capacity to function and think right
is
drastically reduced through lack of sleep and food. On some of my experimental
trips, I
noticed my pulse go down to 32 beats a minute, and watched myself take 20 minutes to
go
gather a single piece of firewood. Hey, surviving ain't easy in those conditions!
All of my research on aboriginal ways of life confirms my field testing on this. Even long ago, when an Indian was far removed from his primitive gear, he would sometimes be OK, sometimes deal with pain and discomfort but be OK, sometimes starve to death. It depended on luck and the richness of the environment.

That's my quick opinion on this, hope it helps answer your question...

André

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Thu Jan 2 05:44:42 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA13879; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 15:16:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA17400; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 15:13:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA17394 for
Thu, 2 Jan 1997 15:13:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: (goetz@localhost) by hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (8.7.5/8.6.4) id PAA22617; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 15:17:13 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
From: Phil Goetz
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Message-ID: <199701022017.PAA22617@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Subject: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca, trackers@muskoka.net
Date: Thu, 2 Jan 1997 15:17:12 -0500 (EST)
In-Reply-To: <199701011635.LAA23360@kirk.dnaco.net> from "Sherri" at Jan 1, 97
11:38:00 am
X-Mailer: ELM [version 2.4 PL25]
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

(from a post to primitive-skills-group)

> ... I am attempting to teach myself to live in any environment, for
any length of time, starting with no more than a knife and piece of plastic. ... 
Many blessings upon us all,
Sherri
(seer7@dnaco.net)
"Good Planets Are Hard to Find"

That's an admirable goal. It brings to mind a question of mine: Survival trainers, including Tom Brown, sometimes boast that they can train people to survive anywhere, anytime. They give the impression that one can wander through the wilds freely, without the burden of possessions, making what you need when you need it.

I have visited many American Indian museums in New York State, Arizona, and New Mexico, and one thing that impressed me repeatedly is that these Indians (Iroquois, Navajo, Hopi, Anasazi, Sinagua) were not wide-ranging foragers free of possessions. They were tied to their homes and things more than we are today. They had large, heavy implements for drying, storing, processing, and cooking food, which were very labor-intensive to make. They were tied to the cycle of the seasons -- not only did they have to lay in food for the winter, but many of the raw materials they needed could only be collected in certain seasons, so they needed to gather and stockpile them. The Iroquois moved their villages, but only about once every ten years, and only ten to thirty miles at a time. The Hopi and their ancestors never moved at all.

Nor were they able to survive "anytime, anywhere". Starvation was not uncommon. In the fall of 1778 (or 1779?), US Generals Clinton and Sullivan marched through NY State to subdue the Iroquois *, burning stores of crops as they went. Perhaps 1/3 of the affected Indians starved to death that winter, despite having greater training and greater natural resources than today's survival experts.

The wild areas left to us today in the northeast US -- the Appalachians, the Catskills, the Adirondacks -- are areas where Indians did not live because they were too inhospitable. I suspect they were not numerous in the Pine Barrens either, though I don't know. (There is a large Iroquois reservation in the Alleghenies, the site of the original Cornplanter reservation, but I don't think Indians lived there before the Revolutionary War. I recall that Cornplanter was relocated to there.)

All this leads me to suspect that the claim that people can survive "anytime, anywhere", even if dropped into the wilderness in the middle of winter, and the related idea that people can live without the burden of possessions, are myths, with great emotional appeal but little truth.

What do the people on these lists with more experience think?

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

* This campaign was the idea of George Washington himself. He thought that the Iroquois had sided with the British in the Revolutionary War, though what had actually happened was that they were divided in council and a minority joined the British side. You can see roadside signs across NY State commemorating this march in glowing terms for paving the way for civilization.
in New York, signs which I think were put up around the 1960s (a time when large tracts of Indian land were still being taken, as for the Kinzua Dam in Alleghany). Now that so much time has elapsed that we no longer have to DO anything if we admit that Americans treated the Indians poorly, we are much more willing to recognize the Clinton-Sullivan campaign as simple genocide.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 2 05:45:14 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA14575; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 16:45:21 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA18138; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 16:42:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 16:46:59 EST
Received: from pairel1.hp.com (pairel1.hp.com [15.253.72.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA18135 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 16:42:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from hpbs1686.boi.hp.com (hpbs1686.boi.hp.com [15.2.220.107]) by pairel1.hp.com with ESMTP (8.7.5/8.7.3) id NAA22418; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 13:46:08 -0800 (PST)
Received: by hpbs1686.boi.hp.com (1.37.109.16/15.5+IOS 3.22) id AA242041122; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:38:42 -0700
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:38:42 -0700
From: Bill Blohm
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bblohm@BOI.HP.COM
Message-ID: <199701022138.AA242041122@hpbs1686.boi.hp.com>
To: goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU, primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
Content-Type: text
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> All this leads me to suspect that the claim that people can survive
> "anytime, anywhere", even if dropped into the wilderness in the middle of
> winter, and the related idea that people can live without the burden
> of possessions, are myths, with great emotional appeal but little truth.

> What do the people on these lists with more experience think?

Perhaps taken out of context? I'm not familiar with the Tom Browns or any others. I know what I've learned thru experience and reading and applying. Perhaps what they really mean is: "I can train you to be able to survive until found anytime, anywhere." I also have a problem with the latter part of that quote above, in that it's possible to live without the burden of possessions. Is not clothing a possession? Your hunting implements? Your trapping implements? And the time you put into your bow and arrows and spear...do you want to do that every time you need them? Can you guarantee the materials will be there when you decide to make another one? And what about food? That's also a possession, same questions apply.
No, one can't live without possessions. No way, no how, unless it's for a few days in the summer. Any other time, you need possessions of some type just to stay alive. But one can survive anytime, anywhere, for a while if properly trained.

My $0.02.

Bill B.

That's also a possession, same questions apply.
No, one can't live without possessions. No way, no how, unless it's for a few days in the summer. Any other time, you need possessions of some type just to stay alive. But one can survive anytime, anywhere, for a while if properly trained.

> My $0.02.
Well, if you have a good knife, you can make traps for food & clothes; a bow; build a survival hut etc. The plastic will make sure you have water. It is possible to do this and make it as long as one thinks clearly and knows the right skills and does not panic.

See?

Sherri

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan  2 07:43:39 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA01595; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 19:28:01 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA19088; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 19:26:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 19:31:19 EST
Received: from palrel3.hp.com (palrel3.hp.com [15.253.88.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA19080 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 19:26:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from hpbs1686.boi.hp.com (hpbs1686.boi.hp.com [15.2.220.107]) by palrel3.hp.com with ESMTP (8.7.5/8.7.3) id PAA20539 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 15:28:38 -0800 (PST)
Received: by hpbs1686.boi.hp.com (1.37.109.16/15.5+IOS 3.22) id AA244597272; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 16:21:12 -0700
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Thu, 2 Jan 1997 16:21:12 -0700
From: Bill Blohm
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bblohm@BOI.HP.COM
Message-ID: <19970102232321.AA244597272@hpbs1686.boi.hp.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, seer7%Mailhost@DNACO.NET
Subject: Re: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
Content-Type: text
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Well, if you have a good knife, you can make traps for food & clothes; a bow; build a survival hut etc. The plastic will make sure you have water. It is possible to do this and make it as long as one thinks clearly and knows the right skills and does not panic.

See?

Didn't realize this was also posted to the list or would have posted my reply as well. Confounded headers. :-)

My reply to Sherri was basically that no, I don't see it. Right away you've
got two prized possessions: the knife and the plastic for the sun still.

My guess here is that while I'm agreeing with Sherri on this, I'm disagreeing with the definition and usage of the word "possessions."

Bill B.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan  2 09:18:01 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMT id TAA01740; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 19:53:28 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA19401; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 19:50:36 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 19:55:10 EST
Received: from hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU [128.205.32.11]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMT id TAA19394 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 19:50:22 - 0500 (EST)
Received: (goetz@localhost) by hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (8.7.5/8.6.4) id SAA26103 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 18:30:43 - 0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852253284.001
From: Phil Goetz
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Message-ID: <199701022330.SAA26103@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Subject: Re: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Thu, 2 Jan 1997 18:30:42 -0500 (EST)
In-Reply-To: <199701022138.AA242041122@hpbs1686.boi.hp.com> from "Bill Blohm" at Jan 2, 97 02:38:42 pm
X-Mailer: ELM [version 2.4 PL25]
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> Is not clothing a possession? Your hunting implements? Your
> trapping implements? And the time you put into your bow and arrows and
> spear...do you want to do that every time you need them? Can you guarantee
> the materials will be there when you decide to make another one? And what
> about food? That's also a possession, same questions apply.

Let me restate it in a more interesting way.
Can you live indefinitely with just possessions that you can carry with
you, so that you can go off in any direction and not need to come back
if you are delayed or lose your direction? As in a long scouting mission,
but without a horse.
Well, if you have a good knife, you can make traps for food & clothes; a
bow; build a survival hut etc. The plastic will make sure you have
water. It is possible to do this and make it as long as one thinks
clearly and knows the right skills and does not panic.

Sheri;
The trick is not having the knife or the plastic. Being dropped out here
naked without any possessions at all. Will you have the knowledge to find
shelter, the right materials to make fire with, clothing, drink, the right
stone to make simple flake tools?
I, myself can make simple flake tools, but have trouble with firestarting
from scratch. Even here in the desert, I can find enough material for a
debris hut or insulated Scout pit, but will I be able to build it before
hypothermia or thirst does me in. Looking for water is an art in itself out
here.
Learning more each day.

Jim Burdine
> All this leads me to suspect that the claim that people can survive
> "anytime, anywhere", even if dropped into the wilderness in the middle
> of winter, and the related idea that people can live without the burden
> of possessions, are myths, with great emotional appeal but little truth.
> I agree, it seems that you always do the best you can with what you've
got. When you are used to having a lot it is hard to adjust, particularly
large numbers of people in one place at one time. I think that the true
goal is to live long enough to get better equipment and food. Carlin was
right, we have stuff and we have a house for a place to keep our stuff.
Everyone has a house (if they are surviving properly) of some kind or anothe.
Sherri wrote:

> At the Standard, Tom also mentioned an invitation-only class where
> he drops you off in the Bob Marshall Wilderness (Montana) in the
> middle of winter with just the clothes on your back (and not much
> clothing at that), and maybe a knife?, and returns four days later
> to take your clothing. If you get that far (having made your own
> new clothing by then), you spend an additional 26 days out there;
> otherwise he takes you out (having commuted via snow machine). Tom
> said only something like 48 students had ever completed this course.
>
Hi Sherri,
If you could give me the name and address of any of those 48 students who have "made it" through this course, I would love to interview them for my research. Can you try to link me up with any of them through your contacts? Thank you.

André

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan  3 00:34:17 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id DAA04234; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 03:07:36 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id DAA21839; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 03:05:09 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id DAA21836 for
with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 03:09:47 EST
Received: by emout10.mail.aol.com (8.6.12/8.6.12) id DAA03434 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 03:09:01 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852312242.061
From: JWither240@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWither240@AOL.COM
Date: Fri, 3 Jan 1997 03:09:01 -0500
Message-ID: <970103030901_1391314170@emout10.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

In a message dated 97-01-02 15:22:36 EST, you write:

<<
I have visited many American Indian museums in New York State, Arizona, and New Mexico, and one thing that impressed me repeatedly is that these Indians (Iroquois, Navajo, Hopi, Anasazi, Sinagua) were not wide-ranging foragers free of possessions. They were tied to their homes and things more than we are today. >>

Speaking with an archeologist in the SW New Mexico area, I was told that
this was true in good times of plenty. But in times of environmental stress, 
The villages would scatter and small bands would return to the "old old ways" 
and survive as migrating foragers until such times as the rains returned 
bringing back times of plenty. Then the small roving bands would regather 
and resume or renew their village life and with more leisure time, develop 
cultural traits (art, etc.....)

Peace,
JW

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan  3 04:42:47 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by 
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA08731; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 15:26:50 - 
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by 
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA24749; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 15:25:42 - 
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) 
with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 15:30:19 EST
Received: from slip-3.slip.net (slip-3-barrnet.slip.net [204.160.88.17]) by 
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA24746 for 
; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 15:25:33 
-0500 (EST)
Received: from woodruff-sawyer.com [204.162.170.22] by slip-3.slip.net with 
smtp (Exim 0.57 #1) id 0vgGF8-0007dv-00; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 12:29:30 
-0800
Received: from pc67 by woodruff-sawyer.com (AIX 3.2/UCB 5.64/4.03) id AA72552; 
Fri, 3 Jan 1997 12:27:17 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Fri, 3 Jan 97 12:26:41
X-UIDL: 852325439.000
From: John Wall
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, w6@WOODRUFF-SAWYER.COM
Subject: Re: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mjr@CRL.COM
X-Priority: 3 (Normal)
X-Mailer: Chameleon 5.0.1, TCP/IP for Windows, NetManage Inc.
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; CHARSET=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>I hope there's some training first...

My message was forwarded to this list by someone else from the 
Tracker list, so you got it without any background. Just to fill 
you in, you have to complete several courses plus one other 
advanced, invitation-only course, before you would be invited on the 
Montana course. Although Tom (Brown) didn't say how you'd get your 
clothes so fast, I assume (probably incorrectly) that you'd pretty
much have to find and kill a hibernating bear, use its flesh and hide, and even take over its cave....

--John

At the Standard, Tom also mentioned an invitation-only class where he drops you off in the Bob Marshall Wilderness (Montana) in the middle of winter with just the clothes on your back (and not much clothing at that), and maybe a knife?, and returns four days later to take your clothing. If you get that far (having made your own new clothing by then), you spend an additional 26 days out there; otherwise he takes you out (having commuted via snow machine). Tom said only something like 48 students had ever completed this course.

I don't think anyone on this list has ever done it, although I haven't asked in several months.

Also, if you're interested in being a "happy wanderer," think of
yourself as being one right now, no matter what you're doing to survive.

--John

On Fri, 3 Jan 1997, Sherri wrote:

> At the Standard, Tom also mentioned an invitation-only class where
> he drops you off in the Bob Marshall Wilderness (Montana) in the
> middle of winter with just the clothes on your back (and not much
> clothing at that), and maybe a knife?, and returns four days later
> to take your clothing. If you get that far (having made your own
> new clothing by then), you spend an additional 26 days out there;
> otherwise he takes you out (having commuted via snow machine). Tom
> said only something like 48 students had ever completed this course.

I hope there's some training first... I know how to build a snow shelter of a rudimentary sort, but for this even I need some tool like a shovel or a broken ski, something more than a knife. Even at that, I'd probably be dead in a hour under the conditions you describe. The only actual survival course and practice I've ever had (nothing but a knife and my clothing allowed) was in the tropics, and it was summer to boot...
Fishing was great!

matthew rapaport     Philosopher/Programmer at large     KD6KVH
mjr@crl.com     In God we trust. All others we monitor!     quine@dhw.net

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan  3 22:20:01 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA11308; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:38:40 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA26255; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:37:13 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 20:41:50 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA26252 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:37:04 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.108]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA127; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:33:47 -0500

X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CDC300.74B4@perigee.net>
Date: Fri, 03 Jan 1997 20:40:00 -0600
X-UIDL: 852391024.000
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Subject: Re: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
References: <199701022330.SAA26103@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Phil Goetz wrote:
>
> > Is not clothing a possession? Your hunting implements? Your
> > trapping implements? And the time you put into your bow and arrows and
> > spear...do you want to do that every time you need them? Can you guarantee
> > the materials will be there when you decide to make another one? And what
> > about food? That's also a possession, same questions apply.
> >
> > Let me restate it in a more interesting way.
>>
> Can you live indefinitely with just possessions that you can carry with
> you, so that you can go off in any direction and not need to come back
> if you are delayed or lose your direction? As in a long scouting mission,
> but without a horse.
>
I think Andre's post says it best of all. I would run far from anyone who teaches you skills for a week and then tells you you can survive. I have met too many students (of mainly Tom Brown) that did not even know how to make a friction fire. I also know some of his students who were told this by Tom Brown and attempted to do so and had to be rescued. One has to carefully hone one's skills over time becoming proficient over time. Then one should test their skills a little at a time. For example, take your modern gear to camp out and resolve yourself not to make fire with matches, only by friction methods. But, take your matches as a back-up, just don't use them unless you have too. Find out where your weaknesses are then work on your skills that you are weak on. As you become more proficient then try doing with less and less. We modern primitives have the privilege of doing this, working backwards, so to speak. We should take advantage of it. Don't place yourself and others at risk.

Oh, and by the way, I wasn't just picking on Tom Brown, just sharing my experiences with some of his students I'm familiar with. I can recommend some other teachers I am more confident in, though, that cost a whole lot less.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA12185; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 22:40:35 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA27089; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 22:39:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
    with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 22:43:45 EST
Received: from epix.net (grape.epix.net [199.224.64.22]) by posto.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA27086 for
    ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 22:39:00 -0500 (EST)
Received: from bobs-computer (lwby-85ppp184.epix.net [199.224.85.184]) by epix.net (8.7.6/8.7.5) with SMTP id WAA15801; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 22:40:34 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CDD094.60CA@epix.net>
Date: Fri, 03 Jan 1997 22:37:56 -0500
Benjamin Pressley wrote:

> I think Andre's post says it best of all. I would run far from anyone
> who teaches you skills for a week and then tells you you can survive.

Ben,

I couldn't agree with you more and I know exactly what your talking
about with Tom's teachings. On the other hand alot of problems happen
because students just hear what they want to hear. Your post that you
just wrote is almost word for word what Tom says in his standard class.
I have taken many classes from Tom and have helped out at 3 different
standards and he said the same thing at everyone.

I say this not to stand up for Tom but to let people know that when we
hear something new, our brain fills in 80% from our file cabinet and 20%
is what we really see. Thats why at a crime scene everyone has a
different story as to what happened.

Your point is well taken and I hope it prompts us all to practice more
and to leave our HUGE EGOS behind, so were not too proud to take matches
(or other things) along for safety while were learning and teaching.

Walk in Balance,

Bob Barr
Benjamin Pressley wrote:

> Oh, and by the way, I wasn't just picking on Tom Brown, just sharing my experiences with some of his students I'm familiar with. I can recommend some other teachers I am more confident in, though, that cost a whole lot less.

I have been watching with much interest this thread of opinions I unintentionally started. I agree with much ...you must be able to have the mental, emotional stability that allows you to sit down and take a realistic look at where you are and what needs to happen, without panic. And I also agree that most individuals faced with a tragedy, would not pull themselves together enough to face their situation. I think it takes a particular type of person to do this. A person who has faced many tragedy's and issues in their lives and came out the other side of them better instead of bitter. A person of this mentality usually is used to facing situations realistically. I agree that it takes many many years of hard practice to be able to be self-sufficient in the wild with only a few "possessions" (smile)...ie...knife and plastic.

I personally have not taken any of Tom Brown's classes yet, but I like his thoughts and writings and I have learned much from his books. I intend to take some classes from him altho I will have to save my pennies to do so. I need to meet him in person so I can feel his energy. I also, am interested in the names of the other guides of wilderness living that you mentioned Ted; if you would be so kind as to post these.

But I still stand on my original statement. It can be done.

smiles and blessings,
Sherri
Phill wrote:

>>Thanks, but my question wasn't whether you could do it after a week's
>>training. My question was whether it is feasible even for someone with
>>years of training. Clearly it is POSSIBLE, since I think people have
>>done it, but is it prudent? Would such a person have a high
>>likelihood of dying even if well-trained? Is it feasible for a family
>>with children?

I will answer your question with my own opinion and some historical
background that I am aware of. First of all, I think it not prudent to
try to live equipment free. It wouldn't be much of a life IMHO. It
would seem that living this way would require such great hardship and
sacrifice of comfort and even health, that it would only be prudent in
an emergency. Here is where the historical part comes in. The Apache
were a wandering people. They lived in a very harsh environment. The
accounts of them at war indicate an ability to go for extended periods
without external support, and only what they carried on a belt or in
their hands. Bear in mind, these were the warriors going on punitive
raids. They had the ability to travel through the desert, finding water, covering sometimes 60 to 80 miles a day. They were incredible warriors by anyone's standards. Here are some caveats however. They usually had a definite prize in mind when they went raiding: Horses. They stole the horses, rode them till they dropped, and then ate them. They also made extensive use of caches of supplies and ammunition. They traveled in small groups, hence needing smaller provisions, and they left their families home. Given these qualifications, were they still great survivalists? In my opinion, the greatest. They survived one of the harshest environments known. They used their skills to get them through, but they always had food waiting for them if their raid was successful, and they almost always had caches around for use in an emergency. Historical record indicates they used those caches frequently. So even the best trained, toughest soldiers in history were not able to sustain themselves entirely without supplies and preparation. Now, I am not talking about the Apache Scouts, the equivalent of our Navy Seals, but that is another story altogether...

Just my opinion.

Kevin

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Tue Jan  7 05:26:33 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA03268; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 01:43:39 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA06762; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 01:42:02 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 01:46:43 EST
Received: from hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU [128.205.32.11]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA06759 for ; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 01:41:52 -0500 (EST)
Received: (goetz@localhost) by hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (8.7.5/8.6.4) id BAA09492; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 01:45:44 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852675708.061
From: Phil Goetz
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Message-ID: <19970107070645.BAA09492@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Subject: Re: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
Date: Tue, 7 Jan 1997 01:45:44 -0500 (EST)
In-Reply-To: <32CDC300.74B4@perigee.net> from "Benjamin Pressley" at Jan 3, 97
  08:40:00 pm
X-Mailer: ELM [version 2.4 PL25]
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
Phil Goetz wrote:

> Let me restate it in a more interesting way.
> Can you live indefinitely with just possessions that you can carry with
> you, so that you can go off in any direction and not need to come back
> if you are delayed or lose your direction? As in a long scouting mission,
> but without a horse.

I think Andre's post says it best of all. I would run far from anyone
who teaches you skills for a week and then tells you you can survive.

Thanks, but my question wasn't whether you could do it after a week's training.
My question was whether it is feasible even for someone with years of training.
Clearly it is POSSIBLE, since I think people have done it, but is it prudent?
Would such a person have a high likelihood of dying even if well-trained?
Is it feasible for a family with children?

Phil
Hey folks!

I was working under the impression (delusion?) that most folks here had some EXPERIENCE at survival living. I can't believe that folks doubt that survival living is possible! It amazes me..... Try this one on for size.

Wake up Phil and Kevin!

>>Thanks, but my question wasn't whether you could do it after a week's training.
>>My question was whether it is feasible even for someone with years of training.
>>Clearly it is POSSIBLE, since I think people have done it, but is it prudent?
>>Would such a person have a high likelihood of dying even if well-trained?
>>Is it feasible for a family with children?

>>Phil

We've been tool makers on this planet for at least a hundred thousand years. That's over this entire planet. During those years we created and lived on this earth using survival living skills.

Take a piece of line ten feet long call it 100,000 years. Divide that in half and call it 50,000 years, divide again and call it 25,000 years. At that point European "Indians" were drawing pictures in caves in france. The American indian was still trying to grunt his way across a land bridge. Divide again for 12,500 years. The American indian was discovering flint and the European indians were creating edifices, records on rock and having ceremonial burials. Humans were STILL using survival skills, comfortably. Divide your line again and again at 6,250 and 3,125 years. The line is now pretty short. The Egyptians were working on advanced mathematics, creating pyramids, calendars...... whole cultures were rising and falling all over Asia and Europe. The American indian was still trying to crawl out of the mud. But they were surviving. Divide your line again and again at 1562 years and 781 years and 390 years. The line is now quite short. The American Indian was now in ascendancy on this continent. The Europeans, Asians, Africans, Ottomans, Romans, Greeks, Phoenicians, Hittites, Syrians, Aztecs, Mayans.... etc. had all built civilizations, been close to the earth, learned and forgotten millenia of survival skills BUT, most of this planet still depended on what you call survival skills. It wasn't until the last division on your line, at around 200 years (can you even hold the survival line by this little button of time on the string) that this synthetic civilization arose and we began to forget our survival skills.

The folks in this little group (I think!!??) are trying to rediscover some of these lost skills.

>I will answer your question with my own opinion and some historical background that I am aware of. First of all, I think it not prudent to try to live equipment free. It wouldn't be much of a life IMHO. It would seem that living this way would require such great hardship and sacrifice of comfort and even health, that it would only be prudent in
Prudent!? You are here because of a few thousand generations of imprudent survivalists... Much of a life? Your statement is based on your notions of comfort and convenience..... not on fact. I know hundreds of folks who live off the land, Well and comfortably. Where? all over the world. In South America I lived with natives who walk happily into the jungle with nothing, naked, and live as comfortably as they do at home in their hut. I know folks here in the states who do the same. I'm sure Benjamin P. and many others in this group can do it. Perhaps it's YOUR turn to rediscover your roots.

Now for the big one... TB

If I take issue with TB it is with his American Indian centric opinions.... not his skills. I knew Tom 20 years ago, long before he developed his rabid following of "brownies". The Tom I knew would shudder at the vision of what he became. If you are insulted by this comment... so be it. Consider your position well, history is full of zealots. There are many philosophies and followers for those philosophies..... brownies are only a very small group. To be sure, Tom's course's teach good skills, period. I've read his books (as I've read the books from hundreds of other authors) and what I find is a tired rehash of stories and incidents taken from other sources. Shades of Don Juan. What we hear are American indian legends, taken out of context and blasted into some sort of surreal narrative. Fine, if you want fiction.

If Tom's stories butter your bread, good for you. Read, enjoy and live your life by TB's teachings. If you are an individual, read and learn from many sources and then choose your OWN PATH. You have many lives to lead don't waste them all on another persons "path".

A couple of years ago a Chinese friend of mine told me a story.

A Buddhist was sitting in the shade under a large tree, meditating about life. In his meditation he asked the spirits how many lives he would lead. A spirit came down to him and pointed at the large Sycamore above his head and said "You will have as many lives as there are leaves on that tree" The Buddhist looked at the tree, saw the uncountable leaves, looked at the spirit and said "So Few!"

Get a few lives......

Peace,

Ron Hood

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

Visit Hoods Woods at

http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/
It's good for a laugh......

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
From - Tue Jan  7 05:27:45 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA06334; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 12:47:58 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA10008; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 12:45:26 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 12:50:01 EST
Received: from kirk.dnaco.net (kirk.dnaco.net [206.150.232.3]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id MAA10003 for ; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 12:45:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from sherri (uhura-20.dnaco.net [206.150.232.120]) by kirk.dnaco.net (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 12:49:11 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199701071749.MAA19076@kirk.dnaco.net>
Date: Tue, 07 Jan 1997 12:53:29 -0500
X-UIDL: 852675708.103
From: Sherri <"seer7@Mailhost"@DNACO.NET>
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, "seer7@Mailhost"@DNACO.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0Gold (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Subject: Re: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
References: <2.2.32.19970107172320.0070564c@ pop3.av.qnet.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> last division on your line, at around 200 years (can you even hold the
> survival line by this little button of time on the string) that this
> synthetic civilization arose and we began to forget our survival skills.

I was wondering when someone would get around to mentioning
this...smiles

As for Tom, we all have our spiritual lessons to learn and I do not feel
Tom is any different than the rest of us. It is so easy for people to
sling judgements of this or that one. I personally take the position of
many teachers, many lessons, and walk my path. But then I have always
done this. I have learned much from Tom Browns books, the Kamana, this
thread, the tracker thread,,,,,,etc.....

With love and blessings,
Sherri

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan  7 10:16:51 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
Ron Hood wrote:

>>Hey folks!

>>I was working under the impression (delusion?) that most folks here had some EXPERTISE at survival living. I can't believe that folks doubt that survival living is possible! It amazes me..... Try this one >>on for size.

>>Wake up Phil and Kevin!

What the original thread asked, what I was responding to, and what you seemed to have missed was whether or not it was advisable to attempt to live in full survival without any equipment and with a family. I have gone into the woods with only a knife for survival living, and after two days I found I didn't need the knife. Yes it is possible. In fact, I found it a delightful experience. Attempting to do that with my wife and five children ranging in age from 10 to 1 yr old would be quite a challenge. I still believe I could do it, but not nearly as easily as I would on my own. Of course, many people are capable of walking into the woods naked. The thread was also asking whether attempting to survive with what you carry in your hands is advisable. In my experience, I accumulate more than just a handfull of possessions along the way. By the third day I have traps, bowls, hopefully some hides in process, etc. I suppose I could simply forage under the right circumstances for a prolonged period of time, but that is what I was refering to as being uncomfortable over a long
As for your opinion of Tom Brown, I care little. I have studied with many teachers of wilderness survival, read many books, practised, experimented, and lived on my own. While I am not nearly as well traveled or experienced as you, I feel like I can do all right for myself. Tom happens to be one teacher that I like. I prefer to see people who criticize Tom have some first hand experience upon which to base their observations. You seem to have had contact with Tom sometime, therefore I respect your opinion as valid in your eyes. There are many paths. His is not one you care for, fine by me. I am not trying to convert anyone to Brownie-ism. I just don't like people without first hand experience with Tom taking shots at him. I was impressed with your credentials when you introduced yourself, and I thought you would probably have a lot of good things to teach. I hope I can continue to learn from your postings. Peace and have a great day.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan  7 05:28:42 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA07645; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 15:10:03 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA11691; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 15:07:51 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 15:12:31 EST
Received: from hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU [128.205.32.11]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA11688 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 15:07:37 -0500 (EST)
Received: (goetz@localhost) by hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU (8.7.5/8.6.4) id PAA12671 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 15:11:39 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852675708.136
From: Phil Goetz
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Message-ID: <199701072011.PAA12671@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Subject: Re: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Tue, 7 Jan 1997 15:11:38 -0500 (EST)
In-Reply-To: <2.2.32.19970107172320.0070564c@ pop3.av.qnet.com> from "diogenes@survival.com" at Jan 7, 97 09:23:20 am
X-Mailer: ELM [version 2.4 PL25]
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> I was working under the impression (delusion?) that most folks here had some
EXPERIENCE at survival living. I can't believe that folks doubt that survival living is possible! It amazes me..... Try this one on for size.

Wake up Phil and Kevin!

We've been tool makers on this planet for at least a hundred thousand years. That's over this entire planet. During those years we created and lived on this earth using survival living skills.

You didn't read my question very carefully, especially considering the way you reacted. Of course people can live without supermarkets. The question is whether they can live without having a home base, a stock of food, or without preparing for the upcoming seasons. Hence the thread title, "Happy WANDERER". The question is also about how factors like having children, living in a northern climate, or living in the marginal and/or overutilized wild lands left to us today affects the answer.

I know hundreds of folks who live off the land, Well and comfortably. Where? all over the world. In South America I lived with natives who walk happily into the jungle with nothing, naked, and live as comfortably as they do at home in their hut.

I would love to hear more particulars of how they live and the land that they live in.

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu
Subject: Re: Myth of the Happy Wanderer?
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Mailer: Chameleon V0.05, TCP/IP for Windows, NetManage Inc.
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; CHARSET=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Would anyone care to venture a guess on how many acres of southern woodland would be required to support a family of four living as hunter-gathers. Some of yall have some knowledge of other culture living close to h/g style, and might could venture a guess.

I'm going to guess about 1 square mile at a minimum, but I dont have any numbers or data to back it up.

So, to live in a "primative" life style, sans agriculture, how many acres does it take?

-------------------------------------
Name: H. Carter Mesick
E-mail: hmesick@goldinc.com
Date: 01/07/97
Time: 14:33:17

-------------------------------------

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan  7 10:17:04 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA10563; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 21:34:34 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA14952; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 21:33:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com [204.180.128.166]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 21:37:51 EST
Received: from mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com [204.180.128.166]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA14947 for ; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 21:33:00
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.29] (ip29.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.29]) by mule0.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id VAA98022; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 21:36:59 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Tue, 7 Jan 1997 18:39:11 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, hmesick@GOLDINC.COM
X-UIDL: 852691293.002
Would anyone care to venture a guess on how many acres of southern woodland would be required to support a family of four living as hunter-gathers. Some of yall have some knowledge of other culture living close to h/g style, and might could venture a guess.

I'm going to guess about 1 square mile at a minimum, but I dont have any numbers or data to back it up.

So, to live in a "primitive" life style, sans agriculture, how many acres does it take?

I think that you are underestimating the area. I think that in order to support a family without overhunting the area you are looking at a minimum of 1 square mile per person(just a guess and it might be conservative) This would not have to be owned, but must be accessable.

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com

I think that you are underestimating the area. I think that in order to support a family without overhunting the area you are looking at a minimum of 1 square mile per person(just a guess and it might be conservative) This would not have to be owned, but must be accessable.

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com
Kevin,

>What the original thread asked, what I was responding to,

> I hope I can continue to learn from your postings.

>Peace and have a great day.

I understand your position, and respect it as I respect everyone who works at bettering themselves on any path.......

Peace to you.

And now we return to our regularly scheduled discussions.

Ron Hood

Visit Hoods Woods at

http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/

It's good for a laugh......
Ron Wrote:

>>Actually, Larry Dean Olsen taught this long before Ol' Tom put it into
>>his book. I believe Tom took a few lessons from Larry back in the
>>early '70's. That explains why so much of his material is nearly
>>identical to Larry's. I think Larry maybe "Stalking Wolf".<<

Now the facts:
Actually I have heard this before, though not from Larry's lips, only
from those who will profit from denegrating Tom Brown (like those who
run other schools). Larry Dean Olsen was at Brigham Young University in
the early seventies, running the wilderness program through the
University that was the Genesis of BOSS. Tom did not attend BYU and take
Larry's program, which was the only way to get the program back then. (I
was there at BYU way back when) While Tom and Larry may have met,(anyone
care to say when or where they met?) who is to say who was the teacher
and who was the student? I have tremendous respect for Larry and all he
has done for this field, but the fact is he did not teach Tom what Tom
knows. Larry was not teaching public classes at that time. BOSS wasn't
started until 1980 by Doug Nelson and David Wescott, also out of BYU. By
the way, the Tracker School started in 1977.

As for Stalking Wolf, in order to prove he was the figment of Tom's
imagination, you would have to go back and talk to people who knew Tom
as a boy and ask them if they knew Stalking Wolf. I have personally
talked to three individuals who knew Tom AND Stalking Wolf, and who
describe him exactly as Tom does. Are they all lying? I don't think
so.

So Ron, while you love to discredit Tom as often as you can, lets face
some facts, and keep this list focused on Primitive Skills and not
personalities. If defending Tom this way makes me a zealot, then I guess
I am one. However, I am not trying to convert anyone, just tell the
facts as I know them. Besides, it is a real waste of time to have to
respond this way. I mean it when I say that you have a lot to teach and
I want to hear more of what you have to say about survival skills.
Besides, your Steamers stories are comedy classics. How about a book
call Steamers Stories?

Finally, my copy of Outdoor Survival Skills by Olsen does not mention
chickweed at all, so where exactly does Larry teach this little tidbit?

Just the facts mam, 
Kevin 

From - Sat Jan 11 08:19:05 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA08078; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 17:23:10 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA11718; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 17:20:52 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 17:19:00 EST
Received: from cybersys.mercy.org (cybersys.mercy.org [205.225.34.178]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA11715 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 17:20:39 -0500 (EST)
Received: from default by cybersys.mercy.org with smtp (Smail3.1.28.1 #2) id m0vjBqX-00000fC; Sat, 11 Jan 97 14:24 PST
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: 
X-UIDL: 853031663.035
From: "Mark D. Ball"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mball@MERCY.ORG
To: ,
Subject: Re: natural remedy
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 1997 14:23:55 -0800
X-MSMail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1155
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Thanks for your response Ron. I have not heard of Larry Dean Olsen. Is the "material" you mentioned in book form? Are you suggesting that Tom Brown is using Stalking Wolf as a metaphor, and that he was not an actual person? If Larry Olsen has books in print, I would love to get the names. Thanks again.

----------

> > Actually, Larry Dean Olsen taught this long before Ol' Tom put it into his
> > book. I believe Tom took a few lessons from Larry back in the early '70's.
> > That explains why so much of his material is nearly identical to Larry's. I
> think Larry maybe "Stalking Wolf".
> 
> > There's another technique, one that I hesitate to mention... but it
> works.
> > Rub some brown steamer on your lips, I promise that you won't lick them
> > after the first time. Your lips won't get chapped.
> > 
> > Peace
> > 
> > Ron Hood
> 
> XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
> 
> > Visit Hoods Woods at
> 
> > http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/
> > It's good for a laugh......
> >

From - Mon Jan 13 21:07:55 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA26253; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 00:05:08 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA03404; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 00:03:55 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 00:02:00 EST
Received: from epix.net (grape.epix.net [199.224.64.22]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AAA03394 for
; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 00:03:43
-0500 (EST)
Received: from bobs-computer (lwby-85ppp106.epix.net [199.224.85.106]) by
epix.net (8.7.6/8.7.5) with SMTP id AAA10850; Tue, 14 Jan 1997
00:05:34 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DB1338.6808@epix.net>
Date: Tue, 14 Jan 1997 00:01:44 -0500
X-UIDL: 853250488.094
From: Bob Barr
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqc.uquebec.ca, rebarr@EPIX.NET
Organization: Woods Wisdom
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.01Gold (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Subject: Re: natural remedy
References: <2.2.32.199701111181624.0072fda8@ pop3.av.qnet.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM wrote:
>
> Actually, Larry Dean Olsen taught this long before Ol' Tom put it into his
> book. I believe Tom took a few lessons from Larry back in the early '70's.
> That explains why so much of his material is nearly identical to Larry's. I
> think Larry maybe "Stalking Wolf".
>  
> Peace
>  
> Ron Hood

Ron,

Did you ever think about how your dislike for Tom Brown makes you look
to other people? How does continually putting someone down help others
to grow and learn? I have had and helped out at many classes at Tom's
school and I have NEVER heard Tom talk badly about any person or any
school! It's no wonder the world is in the shape it's in when the few
people that teach primitive skills can't put their ego's and insecurities
aside and just teach. What kind of teacher would you choose if you were
the student reading all the comments?

Bob Barr
Bob,

>Did you ever think about how your dislike for Tom Brown makes you look >to other people?

Wake up..... We've had this discussion. It was fun while it lasted. It went away. (Kevin... You out there?) You must have your head up your..... in the sand. You cannot take a portion of an argument, that was part of an extended exchange, and make it your platform to criticize another. It makes you look rather ignorant. It is a gross mis-statement to suggest that I "dislike" Tom. Wrong, Tom is good at what he does.

What you did when you took that part of our long exchange was to misrepresent the entire context in which that discussion was taking place. If you gained from your association with him...... good for you. Now be mature enough to understand that discussing issues does not connote "dislike". The exchange that was going on at that time dealt with a number of issues, not the least of which was what you exemplified in your attack on me.

Ego has nothing to do with it. My students don't say "Ron says......." I teach them to stand on their skills and say "I say......." With belief in their skills they have the confidence to speak on their own authority. They also know that I do not speak ill of Tom or any other instructor....... though we will discuss the issue if it comes up.

Please...... If you need to send insults, do it to my Email and don't burden the rest of the group with character assassinations.

Ron Hood

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Dr. Ron Hood
P.O. Box 383
Lake Hughes, CA, 93532
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sat Jan 11 08:19:24 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA08337; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 18:06:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA11955; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 18:06:03 -0500 (EST)
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 18:04:11 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id SAA11952 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 18:05:41 -0500 (EST)
Received: from Quantum.qnet.com (lanc00-15.ca.qnet.com [207.155.34.45]) by
Hi Kevin,

Thanks for laying out the arguments for the rest of us to see. Now we don't have to wait for them to emerge from the fog, piecemeal. I would be happy to put this controversy to rest (at least in this little group of students!). I've had direct contact with perhaps 30 or 40 of TB's students and I have a difficult time responding to their questions about TB. From time to time folks email me with comments about TB's "Theft" of Olsens material and with other details about which I know nothing. I do know that Tom's credibility is in question. If I can find it, someplace in this mass of paper's I call an office, is a long scathing article by an investigative reporter who did look into Tom's history. His conclusion..... Tom is a snake oil salesman who lies about his qualifications. I will attempt to find this little jewel so you can go to work on it.

> Larry Dean Olsen was at Brigham Young University in
> the early seventies, running the wilderness program through the
> University that was the Genesis of BOSS. Tom did not attend BYU and take
> Larry's program, which was the only way to get the program back then.

> Larry was not teaching public classes at that time.

Not true. Larry taught classes to the public through Continuing Education at BYU starting in 1966. His Youth Leadership course was put into the curriculum in 1967 (the same year he earned his BA). He continued teaching in Continuing Education (Publicly) for another three years. Larry also conducted seminars and laboratories as a visiting professor at a number of colleges and universities in 1970-73, I attended several of them. Larry's program was frequently copied and implemented in colleges. I helped implement his curriculum at Los Angeles Valley College in 1971.

While we would need to speak with Larry about this, it certainly makes the argument that TB took Larry's course, feasible. I don't know if they met at that time or not. I do know that the ranks of survival instructors were very thin back then. Nearly all of us knew of one another, visited one another to
learn and share (like this group only in person) and help to push the wisdom's of the primitive arts. We also worked to endorse one anothers unique approach to wilderness education.

> the way, the Tracker School started in 1977.

Five years after I began teaching professionally and ten years after Larry published his First edition of "Outdoor Survival Skills"

> As for Stalking Wolf, in order to prove he was the figment of Tom's imagination, you would have to go back and talk to people who knew Tom as a boy and ask them if they knew Stalking Wolf. I have personally talked to three individuals who knew Tom AND Stalking Wolf, and who describe him exactly as Tom does. Are they all lying? I don't think so.

Actually that is EXACTLY what this reporter (I promise..... I will try to find the article... If anybody else has a copy, please post it) said that he did. It was his contention that there was no "Stalking Wolf", that Tom grew up in the city, and had no contact with the wilderness until he became an adult. Who knows who is lying, did you know stalking wolf? There are many manipulative techniques that will lead people to believe that they met or witnessed something. How do I know? I also make and sell magic. In fact, in addition to the "woodsmaster" videos we sell, we also produce Magic instruction videos. I know how people can be led to believe...... it is my work. I should hasten to add that WE do not use these techniques at Hoods Woods. I do not want disciples. We maintain VERY small classes (6-10 folks) who have an interest in a personal wilderness experience and a desire to use the skills we teach. Sharing my knowledge is an avocation and a life style, not my primary income. Check out the videos, you'll see what I mean.

> So Ron, while you love to discredit Tom as often as you can, lets face some facts, and keep this list focused on Primitive Skills and not personalities.

Tom is a running target. His people intercede for him at every turn. Only Tom knows the truth. Even his books are penned by other authors (as told to). Did he ever visit your tracker group? Does he ever speak privately with any of you? How many are in his classes... I hear 60 to 150 folks at a time..... is that true? Lessee...... My rough estimate is that TB must be pulling in about 3 mil a year..... Old Stalking Wolf must be turning over in his grave. Inquiring minds want to know. Teach me, tell me the truth....... I discredit Tom! No, I think not, Tom does a fine job of that all by his lonesome.

I hope you can see that I have nothing to gain by attacking Tom. I only gain by learning what drives brownies to behave so defensively whenever TB's name is mentioned.

About "Staking Wolf" the New York Apache(!!!)...... I deeply believe in spirit guides and learnings from the great unconscious. We know little about the spirit world but attempts to learn are important to our growth. As important as that attempt is, the requirement that we separate "Magic" from true metaphysical evidence is even more compelling.

> If defending Tom this way makes me a zealot, then I guess I am one. However, I am not trying to convert anyone, just tell the
facts as I know them.

And as you learn more facts my wilderness brother (and I do view you that way) be open enough to question what you had thought of as facts. I do, I have and I will continue to question facts that I "Know". I've learned, and changed my opinion many times. That is part of being a survivor. When the facts about TB are in the open...... I sincerely hope that they represent him favorably. Meanwhile do what you must. Someone needs to represent his interests. By doing so you do not become a zealot, only another reasoning member of the argument.

> Besides, it is a real waste of time to have to respond this way.

I don't think so. These are important issues. Since the entire Tracker group seems to have jumped over here (WELCOME!) it's important that the character and interests of this group remain independent of the "Tom says....." statements I don't give a shit about what "Tom says....." let him say it. Too many of the brownies I've met have used "Tom says.....". Lets dig into the other sources that offer real information, accurate data and believable experiences.

Knowledge is a little like a copy of a recording. Each copy is a little weaker and a little less accurate unless you enhance the recording with new data. Repeating TB's stuff is just another recording of a recording that he made.

> I mean it when I say that you have a lot to teach and
> I want to hear more of what you have to say about survival skills.
> Besides, your Steamers stories are comedy classics. How about a book
> call Steamers Stories?

Thank you! I hope that some of you who posted to the various "Turds" discussions would be willing to allow me to post that thread with your attribution on my site. I'm creating a subsection to the site library that will be filled with various rantings and ravings of mine and others.

>Finally, my copy of Outdoor Survival Skills by Olsen does not mention
>chickweed at all, so where exactly does Larry teach this little tidbit?

Larry circulated various "edible and useful" handouts in his workshops. I made notes on many of these items in my LDO notebooks. That is where I found it.

"Mild Medicinal Plants..... Cattail, Chickweed, Plantain, Pounded and mixed with rendered animal fat for a salve for burns and chapped lips." 1971

Thanks for the response Kevin..... I enjoy your additions and comments.

Finally, from the Sanskrit

It cannot be stolen by theives,
nor can it be taken away by kings.
It cannot be divided among brothers and
it does not cause a load on your shoulders.
If spent, it indeed always keeps growing.
The wealth of knowledge is the most superior wealth of all.
Peace

Om! May the Lord protect us, may he cause us to enjoy,
may we exert together,
may our studies be thorough and faithful,
may we never quarrel with each other.
Om Peace, Peace, Peace.

Ron Hood
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

Visit Hoods Woods at
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/
It's good for a laugh......

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sat Jan 11 23:00:08 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA11984; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 10:13:36 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA15641; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 10:12:55 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 10:11:02 EST
Received: from dfw-ix6.ix.netcom.com (dfw-ix6.ix.netcom.com [206.214.98.6]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA15637 for poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA15641; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 10:12:55 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.187.203.100 (sjx-ca40-04.ix.netcom.com [205.187.203.100]) by dfw-ix6.ix.netcom.com (8.6.13/8.6.12) with SMTP id HAA14101; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 07:16:49 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D89D45.1EC9@ix.netcom.com>
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 08:13:57 +0000
X-UIDL: 853084405.066
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Ron:
Rather than include more of the rhetoric that you and I are both pretty good at I suggest that you and I agree to disagree about Tom Brown. I have a live and let live attitude. I hope you will consider the same. Tom doesn't attack you, so why not leave him alone? I, for Benjamin's sake am not going to comment publicly again on Tom. (By the way Benjamin, are my comments mindless?)

My experience with Tom is firsthand and very personal. Based on my observation at very close range over a long period of time, and my own investigation of his character, I have concluded that what Tom claims is true. Do I expect you to take that at face value? No. Everyone must make their own decisions based on the best available facts.

I understand your frustration when you hear his students say "Tom says..." I too find that frustrating. I would much rather hear "In my experience..." I too find that Tom has been elevated to some kind of Prophet status by SOME of his students and that also bothers me. He urged me to not believe anything he told me until I had tried it for myself. That is incredibly great advice to everyone reading this post.

I do not speak for Tom. But I hate to see the same old stories perpetuated without fact or first hand experience. If he had any interest, he would speak for himself. Frankly, he doesn't have the time or the inclination. When I have asked him why he doesn't spend more time dealing with his critics he responds that it wouldn't matter anyway. I am inclined to agree. I doubt there is anything I or he could say that would change your mind.

Lets keep the list focused on skills not personalities. Lets leave Tom Brown out of discussions here. Visit the Tracker list if you want to talk about Tom, or contact me directly. I always enjoy the debate - whether it gets us anywhere or not.

Kevin

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sun Jan 12 20:47:43 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA12941; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:25:40 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA16499; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:24:35 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA16496 for
; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:24:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.157]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA67 for
; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:20:46 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Kevin wrote:

> Rather than include more of the rhetoric that you and I are both pretty good at I suggest that you and I agree to disagree about Tom Brown. I have a live and let live attitude. I hope you will consider the same. Tom doesn't attack you, so why not leave him alone? I, for Benjamin's sake am not going to comment publicly again on Tom. (By the way Benjamin, are my comments mindless?) (snip)

> I understand your frustration when you hear his students say "Tom says..." I too find that frustrating. I would much rather hear "In my experience..." (snip)

> I think it's important to keep the list focused on skills not personalities. Lets keep Tom Brown out of discussions here. Visit the Tracker list if you want to talk about Tom, or contact me directly. I always enjoy the debate - whether it gets us anywhere or not.

> Kevin

Please don't focus on one word, i.e. "mindless". I agree I could have used a better choice of words. I did not mean anyone on this list is mindless, for sure, I have met some people I am *very* impressed with their skill level on here. I wish to contribute and to learn from you all. THAT is what this group is about. I forget where I read it at or even exactly how it was worded, but I read that the best teacher is one who imparts their knowledge regardless of whether their name is remembered or not. That is why I have more of a desire to learn and teach skills than to focus on a single person. I myself am very proud of my mentors along the way. I am very careful to give honor where honor is due and credit where credit is due in everything I write or share. Sherri, for one, has asked me where I learned and I thank her for that opportunity to share with her who some of those people were, in addition to my own experimentation and research along the way. I guess I just want to get back to focusing on skills in this group. Forgive any emotional over reaction, if applicable.

I suppose there is some value in debating whether an instructor is worth our financial investment or not. I'm just not sure this medium is the place to debate that or not. When searching for a good instructor it depends on what you are looking for in instruction. One needs to
determine whether they are in search of philosophical or spiritual guidance or is one looking to learn physical skills that can be learned and taught to others that would help in a survival situation. There definitely is a value to inquiring from the instructor's students on what they really learned and can do. It won't take long to figure out what their particular teacher majors in. As I said, I'm just not sure this is the place to discuss it. If everyone disagrees with me then I will either tolerate or gracefully bow out. Perhaps it would be a good idea to review the purposes of this group that Andre established for us before we say.

At TRIBE, for example, we established a policy from the start not to promote any religious, spiritual, psychological or political viewpoints. It isn't that we are against these things, it is just that we 1) feel we can best honor everyone's beliefs by not promoting any particular belief system, and, 2) we have seen too many good primitive skills events ruined because they allowed views to be publicly presented that offended others who had just as valid beliefs and as a result lost some very good supporters that had much to offer in skills. It has kept us out of a lot of trouble and we have never received anything but praise for this policy. In fact, I know of a couple of major events that have changed their policies because they have seen the success of such a policy as this. There are plenty of so-called 'spiritual' happenings around and not enough good quality primitive skills events, in my opinion. TRIBE, by the way, is not a commercial venture. It is an organization that operates non-profit for the purpose of education and providing a network and medium whereby knowledge and resources may be shared with one another.

I don't want to see anyone leave this group because we have got away from what we all have something to contribute to that will benefit us all and that is primitive, wilderness and survival skill knowledge. I don't care who your favorite teacher is, anyone is welcome to this group, as far as I'm concerned if he wishes to contribute, or sit back and learn about, primitive, wilderness and survival skills.

Primitive skills is one thing we all have in common. No matter what part of the world our ancestry lies in, if you go back far enough in their history, there was a time they lived off of only what nature provided. That is a thread that runs deep through us all. But, again, if the majority rules otherwise I will either tolerate it or bow out gracefully. Sorry for the lengthy use of bandwidth, I just don't want to be misunderstood.

--------------------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:  TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Fri Jan 10 21:34:59 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id EAA04550; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 04:07:05 -0500 (EST)
Hi does anyone know any natural lip balm's and skin lotions that can be found in southwestern plants and animals?

JENNIE
To all:

I have listened to the Tom Brown debate for the last eight and a half years, since I first encountered it in 1988 at the revival of Rabbitstick Rendezvous in Rexburg, Idaho. I have to confess a gravitation to gossip, and I could share new light on the subject for you (I can play both sides of the issue). Nevertheless, I will avoid the temptation to do so, because that is not the purpose for being part of this group (I will not e-mail anybody one-on-one either).

I would like to ask Andre to add a rule banning the Tom Brown debate from this group. The currently subscribed members might achieve a truce, but tomorrow there will be new members subscribing who will restart the debate... let's break the vicious cycle now.

Also, the steamer discussion was fresh for awhile, now it is just old and stinks...

ALWAYS Peace (anything else is war),

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, MT 59747
I couldn't say it better myself, but I can wholeheartedly agree!!! ENOUGH with the whole thing!!!

>snip<

> I would like to ask Andre to add a rule banning the Tom Brown debate from this group. The currently subscribed members might achieve a truce, but tomorrow there will be new members subscribing who will restart the debate... let's break the vicious cycle now.

> Also, the steamer discussion was fresh for awhile, now it is just old and stinks...

> ALWAYS Peace (anything else is war),

> Thomas J. Elpel

Damn right, brother! I'm glad I'm not the only one who doesn't care about this!!!

Greg Biddle
On Tue, 14 Jan 1997, Tom Elpel wrote:

> I would like to ask Andre to add a rule banning the Tom Brown debate from this group. The currently subscribed members might achieve a truce, but tomorrow there will be new members subscribing who will restart the debate... let's break the vicious cycle now.

I appreciate the sentiment, but impractical. Andre can ask us to stop it for now, but it will be raised again, by newcomers as you suggest, whether there is a rule of not. Perhaps Andre should create a text file that he sends to the list when this issue raises its head. It could be polite and say something like "We are aware of the potential controversies surrounding this man. We suggest you not talk about it, since it causes many hurt feelings, and the argument generates only heat, and never light!"

matthew rapaport  Philosopher/Programmer at large  KD6KVH
mjr@crl.com     In God we trust. All others we monitor!  quine@dfw.net
I would like to ask Andre to add a rule banning the Tom Brown debate from this group. The currently subscribed members might achieve a truce, but tomorrow there will be new members subscribing who will restart the debate... let's break the vicious cycle now.

Also, the steamer discussion was fresh for awhile, now it is just old and stinks...

Here Here, I agree, I second, yes, good Idea. O. K.

Bye

ED
I just want to request a stop to any further comments from anyone who took me wrong when I used Tom Brown's name. I truly was not bad mouthing the man, as I said. I do not teach primitive and survival skills as my only living. I hold a full time job and teach, write and freely share knowledge as a sideline because I truly enjoy sharing it. I am not in competition with anyone, so I have no need to put down anyone for that reason. I would not do it if I was in competition. One of the reasons I started TRIBE was to let people know about people who were not so well known that were highly skilled and did not cost so much. For in my opinion, knowledge not taught is knowledge lost. I have found most people have appreciated that, for like me there are a lot of people out there who can't afford some of these high dollar teachers (Don't read Tom Brown exclusively into this. There are many high priced teachers around.).

I am here to pass on knowledge. Answer questions where I can. Point you to others who can answer your questions, if I can't or if they can do a better job at it. If anyone wishes to further comment on the subject, please e-mail me privately. Do not post it to the group. Let's stay focused on the skills and sharing of usable knowledge. If anyone ever wants a list of teachers I know of that are reasonably priced and highly qualified, e-mail me privately and I will e-mail you a list.

If I have offended anyone personally. My apologies. I will be more careful in the future. Re-examine what I said in a positive light and you will see I did not slander the man. I'd rather drop it, but as I said, if you have any further discussion e-mail me privately. Thanks for bandwidth. PEACE.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
To one and all,
We are gathered here on this list to learn about skills practiced by our ancestors. Up till now I've enjoyed some great posts from nearly everyone, I feel that I am a rank beginner in primitive technology and only starting to achieve some minor craftsmanship in fiber work and other primitive skills. So I would learn from all of you. Most of my knowledge of primitive tech comes from books and articles penned by some of the people that we have on this list. Some of it comes from other sources, including the spoken word from people that have actually had to rely on their skills to survive. I am willing to share what little I know to go with what many of you know. Some of you people are awesome. The practical knowledge that is available here is unbelievable. I am concerned about one thing though. As an R.N. I watch a bunch of cardiac rythm tracings, every once in a while electrical interference occurs we call that artifact. Some times that artifact is so bad that it completely covers over the tracing that I am trying to look at. Then one has to go in and replace the old patches with new ones or move some impeding object that is causing problems so that the tracing can once again be seen. On this list, the main message is primitive skills and renewing primitive knowledge, this rift between our members is just artifact that is obscuring the main message. I don't want any of you to move on, and I would not like to leave either, so what I propose is what corporate types are calling a culture change, Please lets go on trading knowledge and leave any personal flames in private e-mail.(actually I would like those to end too, but hey I'm often unrealistic) ;-)
From - Sun Jan 12 20:48:17 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA13554; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:18:27 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA17459; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:18:08 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:16:15 EST
Received: from enaila.nidlink.com (enaila.nidlink.com [205.219.220.23]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA17455 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:17:57 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.115 (pm6-18.nidlink.com [205.219.220.115]) by enaila.nidlink.com (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA21898; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 12:24:24 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D93A6F.7B63@nidlink.com>
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 12:24:31 -0700
X-UIDL: 853163066.022
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@NIDLINK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Re: Survival Experts
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Thanks to all my teachers here (and there). This is seriously great. As far as I'm concerned, you folks that have been out there doing it for a long, long time deserve special recognition and consideration. You all have my respect, whatever your take on subjects like politics, philosophy, spiritualism, aesthesism, indelicate crudities, poison arrows or poaching...whatever. Say whatever you want. I don't want to see the most experienced get up and leave because of too much of a need for a relaxed forum ("On rope - SLACK). I value everything you are saying - only so much gets through anyway. All I want is to stay alive and you people are my best bet. This is not a hobby or an exercise. That other stuff is an illusion. There is no 2nd chance for the unlucky and the unprepared. You're for real. That's the deal. Keep on.

-- Chris

From - Wed Jan  8 10:01:51 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA14195; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 10:19:27 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
Attitude and desire to live is sometimes quoted as a factor for survival, but has much less to do with surviving than generally estimated, in my opinion, because attitude is very greatly proportional to confidence which is very greatly proportional to skills training. To demonstrate this, send a beginner out in rain to rub sticks when he has never done it before and watch him give up! Meditation and positive attitude won't help!

Perhaps that's true if he's *never* done it before, but I took some photos of a fellow beginner in my class at Tom Brown's school last May as he took the opportunity of a wild thunderstorm (tornado warning sirens were howling in the background) to see if he could catch his tinder bundle on fire in the rain. He was the only one (out of 65 or so students) who even tried. He succeeded. I think he succeeded, in large part, because of his attitude. I'll see if I can still reach him via e-mail and get him to comment.

--John
someone wrote and John Wall responded to:
> 
> >Attitude and desire to live is sometimes quoted as a factor for 
> >survival, but has much less to do with surviving than generally 
> >estimated, in my opinion, because attitude is very greatly 
> >proportional to confidence which is very greatly proportional to 
> >skills training. To demonstrate this, send a beginner out in rain 
> >to rub sticks when he has never done it before and watch him give 
> >up! Meditation and positive attitude won't help!

I'm sorry I didn't get the name of the original poster John was responding to but I need to throw my two cents in here because I think this is a key issue. My experience is that confidence is important, however, overconfidence will kill you! When we arrogantly assume that fire, food, shelter etc. are simply the result of our impeccable and insurmountable skills and personal strength we are in for a rude and possibly abrupt awakening. Not only is attitude important, it and our spiritual relationship with the materials and the land we use, might be the single most important skill we have. Without an attitude of humility to powers greater than ourselves and an attitude of thanksgiving and respect for our skills and the gifts we are being given, all these skills we are talking about are nothing more than another excuse to kill animals, dig holes, cut down trees and generally rip up the land and, frankly at this point in time, who needs it! Yes, any serious practitioner needs to learn and put in "dirt time". Not doing that and
living on faith alone is as ridiculous as ignoring this basic principal. However, I have learned this the hard way and use stories of my own folly on this score in classes I teach, and it is a lesson I seem to need to learn over and over again, however, every time I start getting arrogant and think it's me and my all powerful skills that are giving me fire etc., I get a lesson in humility. To me this is basic, practical, get results kind of spirituality- certainly the kind that guided our ancient ancestors. At this point in human history we would do well to contemplate this as we look around at the mess we have created by believing that humans were the center of the universe. I see this same attitude alive and well in the "primitive tech." community as it is elsewhere in our society and it is equally repulsive to me.

Enough for my sermon :-)  

Mark

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Tue Jan  7 08:37:36 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA10088; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 20:24:30 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA14178; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 20:23:06 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 20:27:47 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.68]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA14173 for ; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 20:22:57 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.68 (srv1s17.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.68]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id UAA04364 for ; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 20:26:19 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D20936.7786@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Tue, 07 Jan 1997 08:28:38 +0000
X-UIDL: 852687100.002
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Survival possibilities (Myth of wanderer question)
References:
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id UAA10088
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
hmesick@GOLD INC.COM wrote:
>
> Would anyone care to venture a guess on how many acres of southern
> woodland would be required to support a family of four living
> as hunter-gathers. Some of yall have some knowledge of other
> culture living close to h/g style, and might could venture a guess.
> 
> I'm going to guess about 1 square mile at a minimum, but I
> don't have any numbers or data to back it up.
> 
> So, to live in a "primitive" life style, sans agriculture,
> how many acres does it take?

Hi everyone,

To answer this question, and try to answer Phil's question a bit better than I did last time about survival possibilities, here's this:

The main problem in surviving in the woods for a long time is food. Read any of the old explorer tales—Fraser, Franklin, Hearne etc. and you get this distinctive feeling, almost a mathematical formula:

food available = happy & carefree
no food = unhappy & worried

I'm not saying there are no other problems, but if you've got food, you have energy and you can work at solving those problems of cold, bugs etc.

The problem is it takes a LOT of food to survive. Inuit people traditionnally had to kill 200 caribou a year, plus other animals to fend for their immediate family.

Quick mathematics will show you the scope of the problem. You need at least 2500 KCal a day to maintain your weight in the long term. Fresh meat or fish is worth about 500 KCal/lb if it's lean, and fat around 3000 KCal/lb. Many forest animals have little fat. Let's average this out, for discussion sake to 1000KCal/lb, which is the best you can hope for. This means 2.5 lbs of meat a day (butchered), which is one of the best foods available. Over one year, therefore, you need 365 X 2.5lbs = 912.5 or almost 1000 lbs of butchered meat per person. That's a lot of muskrats, partridges and rabbits. It's also a couple of moose and a dozen caribou.

Now back to the question: can this be done? Like Ron says, of course it can be done! But, ONLY IF THERE ARE ANIMALS where you happen to be! Today, massive hunting, fishing, trapping, clear-cut logging and pollution have depleted animals from many areas. On a one month trip I once took, I saw 4 partridges and not a single rabbit track or dropping.

Another problem one might face is that when starting out with absolutely no gear, especially in cold climates, the first day is spent on tool and fire building (and figuring out how to get water from snow) leaving time for only minor shelter, the second day is spent on better shelter and bedding, and the third day is usually where food gathering begins. Some weakness starts setting in unless food is available, and this weakness cycle gets worse as each day progresses, especially when expanding energy gathering tons of firewood to offset the cold and wet due to
inadequate clothing. Judgment can also diminish here, and unprepared persons can start acting foolishly and spend their last energy wandering and end up dead from hypothermia before having a chance to set up traps and otherwise obtain food. On the other hand, if food is somehow obtainable in the first few days, survival becomes easier and easier because of the accumulation of tools, weapons, and other primitively manufacture gear (clothing, baskets, rafts etc).

Note however, that obtaining 1000 lbs of food is not an easy matter! If you can catch 5000 eels when they migrate past the point your are on, then you will be fine. But if there are not even insects available to eat, too bad. We only survive if nature wills...

Survival thus depends, in my opinion, on 4 major factors:

1- Luck! As I posted previously, luck determines to a large extent what you find to help you survive. No choice on this one.

2- Richness of environment. Although all environments have their particular sources of survival, some are extremely demanding and could kill even the most skillfully trained persons. No choice on this one.

3- Possessions. Naked at 40 below diminishes chances of survival greatly. A knife can make a lot of difference... as can a match. Prevention enters here- choose prevention.

4- Skills training. Practice enters here- just about the only skills which will be useful out there are the ones that are ingrained because you have done them before. This is what this list is all about- providing info for practicing.

Attitude and desire to live is sometimes quoted as a factor for survival, but has much less to do with surviving than generally estimated, in my opinion, because attitude is very greatly proportional to confidence which is very greatly proportional to skills training. To demonstrate this, send a beginner out in rain to rub sticks when he has never done it before and watch him give up! Meditation and positive attitude won't help!

The sum of these 4 above mentionned factors will decide on your fate and determine what I call the "level of survival difficulty" of the situation your are in. The problem is always one of time. Is there enough time available depending on luck, richness of environment, possessions available (that permit you to save time), and prior training (which speeds up problem solving), to let you survive? If the answer is yes, the myth of the happy wanderer is possible. If the answer is no, it is not.

So, to me, the answer to the myth of the happy wanderer question is MAYBE!

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÃois Bourbeau
On Tue, 7 Jan 1997, Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> Quick mathematics will show you the scope of the problem. You need at
> least 2500 KCal a day to maintain your weight in the long term.

One of my professors was fond of pointing out that the first law of
thermodynamics was actually discovered by a biologist, a British doctor
who served upon sailing ships, and happened to notice that men ate less in
warmer climates. He concluded that one needs less energy to maintain body
temperature when the ambient temperature helps out by being relatively
high.

> Survival thus depends, in my opinion, on 4 major factors:
>
Absolutely. These same 4 apply in different ways to both survival proper,
and primitive living situations which are not quite the same thing.
Sometimes we are blurring the distinction between primitive living and
survival. The latter becomes the former as more time is involved. I do
not expect to parachute into the wilderness armed only with a knife and
the clothing on my back any time soon. But I might find myself cut off on
an isolated road in my car, or on a trail closed by snow. In these
situations, being creative in the use of what may be a virtual wealth of
hi-tech equipment I carry on my back, will make the same kind of difference
when it comes to waiting out a 3 or 4 day rescue.
I believe Andre hit the nail on this one...... Just a quick note on the landscape out here in California. The Handbook of North American Indians (vol8, Robert Heizer) puts the number of aboriginals as low as 3 per square mile in the rougher lands of the Sierra Nevada mountain range to as high as 14 per mile in in some of the flat lands. Kroeber suggested that as many as 70 could subsist in the Napa, Sonoma area during the Acorn season. Acorns have a fairly high fat and protein content and stored quite well. Meat was not a big part of the diet of the inland indians. Coastal indians preferred seafood (so do I, but an occasional rat is good chow).

Peace,

Ron Hood
Visit Hoods Woods at

http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/

It's good for a laugh......

>>> Would anyone care to venture a guess on how many acres of southern woodland would be required to support
>>> a small "camp" about 20 miles away. 7.5 acres.  Has a nice house and a pond(in Texas this is a "tank"). I've often wondered if my wife and I could really survive on just this parcel.

First off, not enough hardwood to keep fireplace fueled. Second, too many pines, so not enough "meaty" animals. You can't live on rabbits only.
Parcel is surrounded by commercial tree stands(paperpulp), Deer do visit the pond.

My wife did farm a 1/2 acre plot and she produced far more than we could
use...but farming is a full-time job, esp. if you grown and perserve the produce. Life's really too short, when it's just as easy to visit the local store and purchased needed veggies, ect.

Now, the above is nothing like being out in the wilds, trying to survive.

Having done my share of hunting, fishing, ect. I finally realized that it takes a certain amount of energy output to collect the "fuel" you need to just keep going. Those of you who have been in the wilds and have survived must really appreciate just what it takes to barely survive. I don't think living "hand to mouth" is surviving with comfort...IMHO.

That's cityboys for you:

b-man, rich

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

>>>>>> bmanrich@iamerica.net

From - Sat Jan 11 08:20:39 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA09035; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 20:08:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA12759; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 20:08:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 20:06:29 EST
Received: from mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com [204.180.128.166]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA12755 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 20:08:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.66] (ip53.las-vegas2.nevada.pub-ip.psi.net [38.12.224.53]) by mule0.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id UAA97914 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 20:12:15 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 1997 17:14:36 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853031663.066
From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: TB (Not the disease)
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

I've lurked on the Tracker list and note that there is a disturbing tendency to deify Tom. That led some on the tracker list to take shots at Tom for being a hypocrit because he managed to get hooked on cigarettes. I have a collection of his field guides among other guides (including the pocket sized one by LDO) I've also read a few of his other books and found them entertaining. I figure at the very least his books can be considered a source, but as with all written works not to be taken as hard fact until you have tried the techniques. I like to look at several different sources before I try something out. I guess the point is that we don't need a backwoods guru as much as we need a fellow seeker of primitive technology. Since Fred Paleo or Hary Neanderthal nor Ishi are here to show us what they learned from nature's laboratory, all of us are trying out primitive techniques, learning from the trying and passing on what we learn. No one source, even when they combine spiritualistic practices (or especially, since there is no more destructive war as a religious one) should be seen as gospel until you have tried it out yourself. If it doesn't work go back to the teacher and see what he did different. I don't care if there really was or wasn't a Stalking Wolf, it makes a nice story, but since I never met the man myself I cannot argue his existence. I am glad that this list keeps the sticky spiritual world out of discussion, except it seems the spiritual release of passing a brown steamer. ;-) If TB wanted to be a part of this list he would be here and be welcome, just as the other Tracker members are welcome. Argue for yourself, not TB. Let TB talk for himself, or not. Sorry for the meandering dialog folks.

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Jan 15 00:39:21 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA06140; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 01:32:57 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA17675; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 01:32:43 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 01:30:50 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA17672 for
; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 01:32:27
-0500 (EST)
Received: from Quantum.qnet.com (palm01-03.ca.qnet.com [207.155.33.63]) by ns2.qnet.com (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA27325; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 22:36:35 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853348824.011
From: mtnwmn@SURVIVAL.COM
Tom Elpel wrote:
> I have listened to the Tom Brown debate for the last eight and a
> half years, since I first encountered it in 1988 at the revival of
> Rabbitstick Rendezvous in Rexburg, Idaho. I have to confess a gravitation
> to gossip, and I could share new light on the subject for you (I can play
> both sides of the issue).

> Also, the steamer discussion was fresh for awhile, now it is just old and
> stinks...

> ALWAYS Peace (anything else is war),

It's interesting that you say you can "play both sides of the issue," but
yet you state without reservation that "always peace - anything else is war."

Maybe you should start a conversation about proper hygiene of your upper lip.

I hear Ron Hood teaches a great spine growing class.

Karen Hood
Whew!

Thanks folks. There are many paths....Simply taking TB's classes does not make you a "Brownie", you are a student (as are we all). There is a more sinister problem, not of Tom's design. "Cult...admiration of, or devotion to, a person or thing especially as a form of intellectual snobbery" (Webster dictionary). These are the "Brownies". Visit the tracker thread.......

>I personally take the position of
>many teachers, many lessons, and walk my path. But then I have always
>done this. I have learned much from Tom Brown's books, the Kamana, this
>thread, the tracker thread,,,,,etc.....

And

>Did I miss something? I wasn't under the impression that anyone was
>upset. Maybe I just don't have my psychic antennas out....I thought
>each was just sharing opinions on their viewpoints.

Sherri

Exactly! There are many leaves on the tree of "lives" and you need to visit each one of them to understand. Sherri, you've got the essence of my argument. To stay on track in this group we need to focus on the skills, not the personalities. Still we cannot allow one philosophy to dominate.....Including mine.

>Ron, I'm only insulted if I'm considered a rabid brownie just
>because I took one of his classes.... ;)

NO!

>By the way, I think Tom does shudder at what he's become. He often
>told my class how much he hated running the school, adding that he
>felt an inner compulsion (vision) to continue doing so, even though
>his druthers would be to go live a more interesting life in the
>Canadian Rockies.
>
>He also told us (I was there last May) that the Tom Brown in "The
>Tracker" is dead, so I guess you and he are pretty much in
>agreement.

I agree. Sometimes the compulsion to prosletize overwhelms good sense. This is why I use the "Androgogy of wilderness learning" (it's on our web page)... as a vehicle to organize survival learning. How you clear the "Panes" of your understanding is up to you to determine. There is at least
one great teacher for each pane.

> If you, or any teacher you know, offers any full-immersion,
> long-term "living off the land" programs where a "graduate" would
> really be able to do it, I'd be grateful to hear about it.

Try to find; Larry Dean Olsen..... Larry is VERY good and used to offer long
term survival living skills. He is also surprisingly good on the philosophy.
I haven't seen him for several years but if I do contact him I'll send you
the contact information (with his permission).

Finally, The only way to discover if you can survive is ... to do it. I'm
putting together a guide to "survival camping" which I'll post when I'm
finished. Essentially what you do is provide yourself with an "escape
capsule" if your survival practice dose'nt work or you notice that you are
harming the land. Confidence comes with exposure.

Let's get back to the techniques..... they are much more fun!

Peace,

Ron Hood
Get a giggle, Check us out!
Ron Hood Ed.D.
I wrote this up last August, intending to mail it to the trackers list, but never did, though I showed it to John Wall and Mark Zanoni. It tells about my (bad) experience with Tom Brown. Since then I have heard more about TB and believe, at least, that he has a great deal of skill.

I think there are three reasons why so many people want to knock Tom. One is his incredible claims. Two is his ever-increasing popularity. Combined with one, you get the suspicion that he is deceiving a lot of honest, earnest people. Three, and most important, is his tremendous ego. Maybe if Tom Brown did not feel the need to raise himself up so high above everyone else, others would not feel the need to knock him down. People protest that Tom Brown tells his students not to take his word for anything, but the fact is that he tells you his stuff is fantastic and everybody else's stuff is at best good.

Or maybe it's just his personality. Can you imagine anybody getting upset about something, say, Paul Rezendez said? No, because you could still have a beer with him.

Phil

"It's very difficult being in a band with God's messenger."
- Marc Breault, formerly David Koresh's bass man

--

Is Tom Brown for Real?

August, 1996

Copyright 1996 by Phil Goetz.
Please do not re-distribute on mailing lists, newsgroups, or web sites.

After seeing how many people are struggling to puzzle out whether Tom is for real, I decided to share my experience with Tom.

First, though, I must tell you two facts about myself. The first is that, as long as I can remember, I've wanted to live off the land, and to know nature, even though I never lived in the country and never met anyone else who shared or even understood this desire. Second, I was once Christian, but became a materialist. So I understand the longing for spiritual rightness, but gave up hope that any such thing exists.

I didn't have much access to wild lands, but I did have access to books.
I studied field guides, survival manuals, anything I could get my hands on. I read five of Tom's books. I didn't believe everything in them, but they revived old hopes that I had thought were dead. Last year, I found out that Tom was giving courses, and I called up right away and reserved a place in the next Standard. I remember poring over Tom's catalog, calculating how many years it would take me to get the time and the money to take all his courses.

So I arrived at the farm in early August 1995, eager to learn, determined to tape every word and study it twice. But as the class progressed, I grew more and more uneasy. Tom was too slick, too intense. I could not shake myself of the thought that he didn't talk like a teacher or wise man, he talked like a con man. The way he spent so much time hyping his courses, and putting down others. It seemed like a well-rehearsed show.

Some things set off little warning flags in my mind. Like, why was it that no one else had ever seen or heard of Grandfather or Rick? How had the tracker moved through the world without leaving any tracks of his own -- friends, family, anyone to verify the things he said? Read his books -- notice he never mentions details about his home life, making it hard to verify his identity. "Tom Brown, Jr." is a convenient name -- every town must have a Tom Brown; mine has six of them. Why did Tom feel the need to not just put down but cast as an idiot every other survival expert in the world? Why did he discourage his students from asking questions, or from trying to improve on his methods? (I teach college students myself, so these last two struck me as especially perverse.) Why was Tom a chain-smoker? There's no wild tobacco in the Pine Barrens as far as I know. He said that he began chain-smoking the day he left the woods, to cope with the stress. But in my experience, nobody begins smoking that way -- cigarettes naturally repulse humans, and they must be socialized into smoking.

Some things set off big flashing red warning lights in my mind. Like his claim that he doesn't bother to track on foot anymore; he tracks from a helicopter flying at 30 or 40 miles an hour. Like his claim that he would teach us to make ourselves invisible, and that he would prove this in one class by having us camo ourselves up to look like wild men and stand beside the road, and people would drive right by -- well, I'd drive right by, wouldn't you? Like his claim that he would teach us to fight using something like the Force, and prove it to us by blindfolding us and then having us fight an instructor with something like a quarterstaff -- too easily faked.

When Tom came out with some new outrageous statement -- he would teach us to spirit-track, so we would just touch a print and know where the animal was -- the only audible reaction was "Wow!" I was as stunned by the way people immediately accepted everything Tom said as by the things he said. There was a guy there that week who gave Reiki classes in Australia on how to heal using your inner forces. He claimed to have healed severe, life-threatening leg wounds with his bare hands. The other class members ate it up. I asked him if he ever demonstrated healing an open wound in his thousand-dollar classes. He smiled and said no.

Tom never demonstrated anything, either. The whole week I was there, I did not see him track one animal, or do one thing that demonstrated any of the abilities he claimed. The only thing he did was to set up a course of grass
tracks for us to view. This was a set of spots along a trail, at each of
which there were a few bent blades of grass which he said were tracks.
But he didn't let us watch him find these tracks, nor even warn us that
he was going to, so we could look for them beforehand. We didn't know
about it until the whole thing was laid out for us. He might have made all
those marks with his fingers.
What made me lose faith in Tom, though, wasn't these logical considerations,
but two moments when Tom looked into my eyes.

When he was telling us about track measurements, he explained that
a right-handed person takes a longer step with their right (left?) foot,
and you could measure this difference in stride lengths, then figure out
which way they would circle. I scribbled some calculations in my notebook,
raised my hand, and asked, "Tom? With the examples you've given us, the
difference between length of left and right strides would be at most
half a millimeter. Can you really see such a small difference?"

He stopped, pinned me a moment with that cold, alpha-wolf stare of his,
then said, "Yes." Then he resumed his talk.

Now, the answer to my question is clearly, No, or at least,
No, not unless you make about a hundred measurements and average them out.
(See appendix for the argument.)
But that's not what bothered me about Tom's answer.
When he looked at me, in the second before he said "Yes",
what I saw in his eyes was not consideration of my question,
but a threat evaluation. And when he said "Yes," it sounded like a lie,
or more precisely like something apart from him,
the truth or falsity of which meant nothing to him.

I can't explain why this brief moment meant so much to me. I don't
expect you to be swayed by my recounting of it. I wouldn't in your place.
But in that instant I began to think that Tom was not just exaggerating
or deceiving himself -- he was capable of deliberate lies.

The second occasion was a time when Tom was hanging around in the barn
after a talk. I went up and told him about some folks at MIT who studied
insect tracks. They had developed an array of devices to study walking as no
one ever had before: photographic and pressure-sensitive methods to record
insects walking, and measure exactly how much pressure each part of their
feet applied, where, in what direction, and when.

I had thought that, as a tracker, he would want to know more, maybe build a
similar device and walk across it. Or maybe he would dismiss it, saying,
"Sand is the only pressure-sensor I need." But he said something like,
"Yeah, amazing what they can do now." And he said it in a way that told me
he did not care one whit what I was saying, it was just student-chatter
and it was bouncing off him like rain off an umbrella. I was stunned that he
had no opinion, positive or negative, of these new developments in tracking.
It made me suspect that he didn't really care about tracking at all.

I tried to find some evidence that Tom had done the things he had claimed.
He was very evasive about specific cases, never giving a place or a date,
and saying only that he had tracked for the New Jersey State Police and for
the FBI. I called them, on the payphone in the barn. The New Jersey State
Police department of missing persons said, yes, they knew who Tom Brown Jr.
was, but no, he had never worked with the State Police. The FBI was either
very secretive or very confused; I was bounced from department to department without finding anyone who could confirm or deny that Tom Brown had ever worked with the FBI. I did talk to someone who worked on tracking cases, and he said that as far as he knew, the FBI always used dogs. He had never heard of a dogless tracker working with the FBI.

On the last day, it was time to sign up for the back-to-back. I had intended all along to sign up, but as my doubts had grown, so had my reluctance. I earn $9800 per year as a teaching assistant, before taxes. It costs me over a month's pay to attend one of Tom's courses, and now I was considering signing up for two. I had already decided that Tom mixed truth with fiction, probably because it sold better. I was willing to accept that, to sort it out myself. But before I laid out two months' pay, I wanted to know that this would go somewhere, that Tom really knew what he was talking about.

So far, the evidence was not good. I doubted very much that Tom could teach me to track mice across gravel in the one remaining lesson. Tom said no student of his had ever failed on a tracking case, yet I didn't feel able to track anyone. Were Tom's claims for his other courses equally vacuous? I didn't know about the skills courses, but I didn't need to attend his philosophy courses to know that his claim to be able to destroy any opposing philosophy in one week was untrue.

I was by this time highly skeptical of everything Tom said. The only solid evidence I had that Tom even had skill at tracking was a few bent blades of grass. On the grass-track course, at one alleged rabbit track, the person showing off the track had pointed out where the grass was bent more or less in the shape of a rabbit's rear feet. I studied the ground, and I found what could have been the print of forepaws, further off the trail, right where I expected it. If Tom had bent the grass himself, surely he would have pointed it out. But then, maybe Tom had pointed it out. I didn't know. I was shown the track by a student who was shown the track by a student who was shown the track by Tom. And then, maybe Tom would have been extra-thorough in track-creation just for people like me.

I wanted more information. I asked a couple of the instructors what sorts of things they had seen Tom do, but didn't get any specific answers. I reasoned that Tom might decide not to let me into the advanced class if I asked too many questions, but only if he really was a fraud. So Sunday morning, when he was hanging out by the Hummer, talking with a couple of students about his daughter and other things, I joined in the conversation. After a little banter I asked if he was going to demonstrate any of his tracking skills. He said indignantly, "I don't do dog-and-pony shows." I asked who he'd worked with in his career as a tracker. He only said, again, "I've worked with the FBI." I asked if he had any clippings.

I tried to ask this in a conversational manner. But Tom didn't fall for that. He frowned, then said, "Come with me." I followed as he turned and walked into the trailer with the office. Without looking at me, he went up to the desk, told the woman behind it, "Write this man a check for $660. Then memorize his name and face, so you can see to it that he never comes back here again."

He acted angry. He said I was insulting him and insulting Grandfather. I did not mention that he was insulting me by expecting trust he hadn't
earned. I didn't say much of anything; I left like a whipped dog.

What do I think about Tom Brown, Jr., now? So many things about him are inconsistent with his stated mission as a teacher -- his refusal to demonstrate his skills, his lack of interest in his students and lack of desire to be around them, his tremendous ego, his scorn for other schools, his exaggerated claims (which I've since heard two other complaints about on the trackers list), his intolerance of questions, the fact that he doesn't even seem to enjoy being outside but usually hides in his house -- and consistent with the hypothesis that he is a con man. How can you claim to teach tracking, but never take your students out tracking?

Add to that the fact that his reputation is based mostly on events recounted by him, with no corroborating witnesses. Add to that when I checked out the only claim of his that I could, tracking for the NJ State Police and the FBI, I came up empty-handed. But more than all these things, I see the image of Tom, his back to me, saying in a perfectly calm voice, "See to it that he never comes back here again." No warning, no chance to explain. He did his best to make his stories unbelievable, then punished me for not believing. Why? I don't understand why a teacher would do that, unless he had something to hide.

This is, of course, the easiest conclusion for me. If I believed that Tom Brown held the key to a new reality, and he had singled me out to deny me entrance, I wouldn't be able to sleep at night. If I accepted everything Tom says as true, I would have to completely change my way of life, my goals. I would have to throw away a belief structure that I have spent years constructing and revising.

I will not do that without strong evidence. But strong evidence is what Tom refuses to provide. I know some people have seen him do remarkable things, or talked to people who have seen him do remarkable things. I don't know how to explain in particular something Mark Zanoni told me, and it bothers me. But you have to scrutinize claims like Tom's. Let me give you an example: Harry Houdini was on an ocean liner once, and the passengers prevailed upon him to give them a magic show. He asked people to write a question for him on a sheet of paper. It so happened that Teddy Roosevelt was one of the passengers, and he wrote the question, "Where did I spend Christmas?" on his sheet of paper. Houdini put that paper between two slats of wood, tied them together, did some hocus-pocus over them, and when he pulled them apart, there was a map of South Africa with an X on the spot where Roosevelt had spent Christmas.

Pretty impressive. But it was a trick, not magic. Houdini explained how he had drawn the map ahead of time, and how he had influenced Roosevelt, one of the most brilliant men alive, to ask the very question that he did without Roosevelt's knowing it. How can you detect something like that? It's pretty damn hard. You can't begin to verify any claims of powers or abilities without the full cooperation of the claimant. I do not think Tom will ever submit to such a test. I would like very much to go out with one of Tom's advanced students, and test these matters for myself. But until I do, I'm not going to lose sleep over it.

with a great week of training and no money out of my pocket, so I can't say he cheated me. But he gave me hope, and then he crushed it. I wanted to believe in Tom. I suppose I still do, or I wouldn't waste so much time on this letter. I'm angry at Tom because I had wanted something so badly, for so long, and Tom Brown offered it to me and then snatched it from my grasp. Was he a fraud, afraid of exposure, or a teacher so jaded and indifferent that he could throw students away on a whim? I don't know which is worse. I'm angry at myself because I only want to know the brush and the forest and myself with them, and it shouldn't matter if my teacher livened up his teaching with fancies about spirits. I'm ashamed because I needed the money. I never would have pushed him if I hadn't been worried about the money. I felt dirty cashing the check, like Judas, trading in his spiritual leader for some ready cash, reducing a spiritual quest to a financial transaction. I'm bitter because now I'll never know what I lost.

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

APPENDIX: How many measurements it takes to tell which way someone is curving

I walked along a muddy riverbank and then measured the differences between the heel-of-right-foot-to-heel-of-right-foot distance and the heel-of-left-foot-to-heel-of-left-foot distance, throwing out all measurements over 1.5 inches. The standard deviation was then 1.78 cm. This is too large to account for by errors in my measurement.

This means that to know the average difference between right-right and left-left footsteps within .5mm with a confidence of 75%, assuming a normal distribution of differences and that you could make perfect measurements, you would need to take enough (right to right) - (left to left) pairs to reduce the standard deviation of the average from 1.78cm to .05/1.15 = .0435cm. (That's because to have a 75% confidence that the value of a random variable will fall within a certain distance from the true average, you need to go out 1.15 standard deviations above and below the average. In this case the random variable is the sample average of your (R-R)-(L-L) measurement, the average is the true average if you followed the tracks forever and kept measuring, and the 1.15 standard deviations is supposed to come out to be .05cm.)

The standard deviation of the average of a sample is the standard deviation of the sample divided by the size of the sample. This means you have to measure n = 1.78/.0435 = 41 (R-R)-(L-L) pairs; that's 82 measurements.
As I stated before....there are many teachers...many ways...each is good in their own right.  Let us combine knowledge from all teachers, without deciding who is right and wrong...but only with what works......in this way....we will come to the best of all ways.

Sherri

"Good Planets Are Hard to Find!!"

From - Tue Jan  7 05:28:01 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA06515; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 13:08:24 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA10342; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 13:05:24 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 13:05:10
-0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA10342; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 13:05:24 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 13:05:10
-0500 (EST)
Received: from bham.ac.uk by dir.bham.ac.uk [147.188.128.25]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA10330 for
; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 13:05:10
-0500 (EST)
Received: from bham.ac.uk by dir.bham.ac.uk with SMTP (PP) using DNS id
<15125-2@dir.bham.ac.uk>; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 12:26:17 +0000
Received: from nw-gate5.bham.ac.uk by bham.ac.uk with SMTP (XT-PP); Tue, 7 Jan 1997 12:46:39 +0000
Received: From CCC/WORKQUEUE5 by nw-gate5.bham.ac.uk via Charon-4.0A-VROOM with
IPX id 100.970107124538.448; 07 Jan 97 12:46:42 +0100
I just wanted to add a perhaps less practical note to the idea of the 'Happy Wanderer'. Where happiness is involved, you also have some psychological states as well as physical requirements. Bruce Chatwin in 'Songlines' felt that wandering as such was man's instinct, and that stasis, settlement of a permanent nature, was tantamount to metaphysical decline. Chatwin was an 'amateur', and sometimes eccentric in his views, but I feel there is an element of truth to this. What do others feel about the real, 'hard-wired' need for the Walkabout?

Cheers,

Mike.

Mike Mertens,                      Tel: 0121 414 3344 Ext. 3280.
Department of German Studies,      E-mail: M.J.Mertens@bham.ac.uk
University of Birmingham,          England,
Edgbaston,                         B15 2TT.
> this. What do others feel about the real, 'hard-wired' need for the
> Walkabout?

A Walkabout or some type of wandering, be it for the day or for several
days, allows me to recover from the stresses of my job and from just
being around people. I define the Walkabout as not necessarily just by
foot, but by foot, by canoe, by bike, by whatever. Often I solo, but
sometimes I'll invite along a friend who also likes such treks. We may
not talk much, or we may, but we both want to get away from "civilization"
(at least that's how we put it). The best are those of a few days. What
gear we take depends on the circumstances, where we're going, and the
expected environment. Sometimes we take a lot, sometimes just the bare
necessities, again it depends on what we feel like doing. These are
rarely, for us, survival-type treks, though. We might take some stuff
from the land and waters we travel, but we also bring stuff with us.
While not necessary to the need of the Walkabout itself, I or we also
practice the gentle art of minimum impact, of leaving no trace of having
been through here. For some reason, at least for me, doing this seems to
enhance the Walkabout for me. I know the Walkabout more as a Caamoraan,
a soul-cleansing. For me, life would be difficult without the chance to
take such a trek once in a while, usually once a year at least. I'm not
anti-social by any means, but I sure do need to get away from people at
times. Never bothered to rationalize it out, it's just something I need.

Bill B.
On Tue, 7 Jan 1997, MJ MERTENS REG: wrote:

> What do others feel about the real, 'hard-wired' need for the
> Walkabout?
>
> As someone said, there are two kinds of people... In this case, I count
them as being those who really like predictability and status quo (or don't
like risk and change), and those who really like some excitement and
change (don't like predictability and status quo). My exact choice of
words (risk, change, excitement, etc.) may not be the best, but I think
you get the idea.

The first type continue to draw inside the lines, report daily to the
factory, neatly trim their lawns, etc. I.e., many of them make up the
bulk of the typical law-abiding folk that make up a large percentage of
the world's population, whose families have lived in the same town (maybe
even same house) for generations. Nothing wrong with that, if that's who
you are.

The latter types, though, are probably the ones who were more likely to
walkabout, sail unknown oceans, rob banks, write graffitti, climb tall
mountains, invent airplanes, etc. Those types tend to stress the rest of
society in one way or another, either for better or worse, since the
tendency can be inherently "bad" for society (theives, vandals, etc.) or
at least distressing (but.. but.. we all KNOW the world is flat, so why is
this crazy guy trying to sail west to get east???) Of COURSE the sun
revolves around the earth, so excommunicate the clown! Law abiding
citizens should hold meaningful full time jobs, so what's this goofball
doing playing boyscout in the woods--hey, is he having more fun than I
am???)

But then, those are just my thoughts on the matter.

-glen monaghan

These opinions are my own. Feel free to share, but I disclaim
all sizes, shapes, and colors.
From - Fri Jan 3 04:42:54 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA09072; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 16:11:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA24902; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 16:08:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 16:13:35 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA24899 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 16:08:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.63 (srv1s4.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.55]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id QAA29757 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 16:12:10 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CC87A3.5718@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Fri, 03 Jan 1997 04:14:27 +0000
X-UIDL: 852326651.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Tom Brown
References: <32CD783C.5ED9@cfw.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id QAA09072
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

BKP wrote:
>
> I have seen references here and elsewhere referring to "Tom Brown's
> philosophy...". Could someone explain that philosophy to me.

Hi Barent,

Sorry, but PHILOSOPHY ISSUES ARE NOT TO BE DISCUSSED within this group!
Nor are subjects related to any particular political, religious, or
other belief-based considerations. Thank you everyone for respecting
this important guideline.

Your question itself is nevertheless valid, and you can learn all you
want about Tom Brown's philosophy at the following Web sites, and can
even discuss it to your heart's content by joining the Tracker list there:
I will not attempt to summarize or comment Tom Brown's philosophy (even if it itches me to do so), and I encourage everyone else to refrain from doing it also. Sorry for being so firm, but I really think we would be swaying dramatically from the groups purpose by allowing this.

Barent, please note that this is not directed to you personally in any way whatsoever. Thanks for understanding.

AndrÈ

PS Nothing preventing anyone from answering Barent directly if they wish...

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
I have seen references here and elsewhere referring to "Tom Brown's philosophy...". Could someone explain that philosophy to me. I think that the "why" is often as important as the "how" because it so often colors the logic involved at arriving at the "how". It seems that Mr. Brown's view differs from others in the field and that this is a major point of contention. I may even be familiar with the man's work and not realize it, having forgotten his name or not connecting it with something I've read. I would appreciate any help you may give on this.

--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan  3 22:21:13 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA11882; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 22:12:01 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA26865; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 22:10:32 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 22:15:08 EST
Received: from milo.cfw.com (milo.cfw.com [205.219.240.6]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA26860 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 22:10:19
-0500 (EST)
Received: from stn32.cfw.com by milo.cfw.com; (5.65v3.2/1.1.8.2/12Dec95-0403PM) id AA15355; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 22:18:46 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CDF59B.39A3@cfw.com>
Date: Fri, 03 Jan 1997 22:15:55 -0800
X-UIDL: 852391024.027
From: BKP
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca, parslowb@CFW.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02E-KIT (Win16; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Tom Brown
References: <32CD783C.5ED9@cfw.com> <32CC87A3.5718@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> Sorry, but PHILOSOPHY ISSUES ARE NOT TO BE DISCUSSED within this group!
> Nor are subjects related to any particular political, religious, or
> other belief-based considerations.

Andre,
I do understand. Won't ask again except by private e-mail. Will note that Mr. Pressley made mention again, probably prompted by my post, of Mr. Brown and his methods. I was pretty quick to pick up on this undercurrent of partisanship on the part of members. Some is undoubtedly related to their competing for their livelihood (true survivalism). ;) I just wanted you to know that I am not in the least offended, as I said before I can be blunt to the point of causing trauma! Thanks for all your help and a very enlightening group!

--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Sat Jan 11 08:19:57 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA08888; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 19:48:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA12472; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 19:47:29 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 19:45:37 EST
Received: from kirk.dnaco.net (kirk.dnaco.net [206.150.232.3]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA12469 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 19:47:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: from sherri (uhura-12.dnaco.net [206.150.232.112]) by kirk.dnaco.net (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA16982 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 19:51:26 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199701120051.TAA16982@kirk.dnaco.net>
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 1997 19:48:26 -0500
X-UIDL: 853031663.053
From: Sherri <"seer7@Mailhost"@DNACO.NET>
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, "seer7@Mailhost"@DNACO.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0Gold (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Tom Brown
References: <970107221337_1991098923@emout02.mail.aol.com>
   <32D58880.5C98@perigee.net>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Hi All,

Will add my little tibit to this.....I personally do not care who first
came up with what or from what source it came from. All I care is...that it works. There is too much of, "this is not that persons material". These things are better addressed by the "Spirit that runs thru all things"...let us be at peace with this.

No matter where Tom did or did not come up with his stuff; he HAS gotten alot of people interested in the primitive skills and their connection back to nature. Including myself. I was connected to nature but his books sent me on a whole new tangent that I am passionately involved in. This is a good thing that has come about thru him irregardless of the hows, wheres or whys.

Sometimes the small things can just bog us down. I say, lets not worry about these, let us be glad for whom comes into this awareness no matter how, because in the whole scheme of things....that you got here is what is the most important.

In Peace,
Sherri

"Good Planets Are Hard to Find!!"

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
I have been reading with great interest the exchange regarding Tom Brown. I have only read his books, and have not met him. The comment was made, I believe by Sherri, that we should not dwell on this topic because it really does not matter. While I agree that our primary goal should be to exchange information about primitive skills, I have to say that I think the issue of truthfulness in Tom Brown's books regarding his background is an important topic. It is to me at least, because I have signed up for his standard course this April. If he has, as Ron Hood seems to be saying, fabricated Stalking Wolf and all those hundreds of stories of his boyhood, how can I trust what I learn from him? What is to stop him from fabricating other things, such as techniques on which I might someday stake my life? I would love to find out that Ron is wrong about this. I for one would like to see the dialogue continue, and especially I would like to hear from anyone who has first-hand information that can put this question to rest.

Mark D Ball
mball@mercy.org

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sat Jan 11 22:56:59 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA09555; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 22:03:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA13469; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 22:02:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 22:00:45 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA13460 for ; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 22:01:58 -0500 (EST)
Received: from Quantum.qnet.com (lanc00-03.ca.qnet.com [207.155.34.33]) by ns2.qnet.com (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA25867; Sat, 11 Jan 1997 19:05:19 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853084405.003
From: diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Message-ID: <2.2.32.19970112193030700.0.072e86c@pop3.av.qnet.com>
X-Sender: diogenes@pop3.av.qnet.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Pro Version 2.2 (32)
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 1997 19:07:00 -0800
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mball@MERCY.ORG
Subject: Re: Tom Brown Jr.
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> If he has, as Ron Hood seems to be saying, fabricated
Stalking Wolf and all those hundreds of stories of his boyhood, how can I trust what I learn from him?

Two thoughts.
One) I am not saying that they were fabricated, I do not know the truth. Only Tom knows. While they are questionable they could be....... 
Two) Take his stories as lessons. Depersonalize them and just take from them the wisdom they contain. When he says "I" think "The man..."

My sensei told me a story of a samurai who fell from the edge of a huge cliff. As he sped by the rock he spied a single small tree sticking from the sheer cliff. In a desperate grab, he caught it. He stopped falling. Hanging there by a single hand he looked up the cliff, it was unclimbable. He looked down, hundreds of sheer feet to a raging river bounded by sharp rocks.

He looked at the tree he was holding and there, in the middle of the root system was a single strawberry plant with one large red strawberry. He picked it, bit into it rolled his eyes back and thought "so sweet......."

Enjoy the present.

Tolstoy had an even more perfect story. The emperor's three questions. It's much too long though.

> What is to stop him from fabricating other things, such as techniques on which I might someday stake my life?

I do not believe that anyone would fabricate techniques. I have not questioned Tom's skills. You will get what you want I'm sure. Before you stake your life on your skills, practice, practice, practice what you learn, learn, learn.

I doubt that we will ever resolve this debate, it's an exercise. Tom pinches steam just like the rest of us, yet some folks see him as a prophet of some sort. I'd hate to be in that position.

Thanks for your thoughts!

Peace
Ron Hood
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

Visit Hoods Woods at

http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/
It's good for a laugh.......
On Sat, 11 Jan 1997, Mark D. Ball wrote:

> What is to stop him from fabricating other
> things, such as techniques on which I might someday stake my life?

I hope at least this won't be a problem. You will surely practice
techniques under controlled conditions before you stake your life on
them... This no matter from whom they are obtained.

matthew rapaport     Philosopher/Programmer at large        KD6KVH
mjr@crl.com    In God we trust. All others we monitor!  quine@dfw.net

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
On 01/11/97 18:15:42 you wrote:
> I have been reading with great interest the exchange regarding Tom Brown.
> I have only read his books, and have not met him. The comment was made, I
> believe by Sherri, that we should not dwell on this topic because it really
> does not matter. While I agree that our primary goal should be to exchange
> information about primitive skills, I have to say that I think the issue of
> truthfulness in Tom Brown's books regarding his background is an important
> topic. It is to me at least, because I have signed up for his standard
> course this April. If he has, as Ron Hood seems to be saying, fabricated
> Stalking Wolf and all those hundreds of stories of his boyhood, how can I
> trust what I learn from him? What is to stop him from fabricating other
> things, such as techniques on which I might someday stake my life? I would
> love to find out that Ron is wrong about this. I for one would like to see
> the dialogue continue, and especially I would like to hear from anyone who
> has first-hand information that can put this question to rest.
> >
> >Mark D Ball
> >mball@mercy.org
> >
> >I rarely input into lists because I have much to learn and little to contribute in
> comparison to others. I appreciate these opportunities to increase knowledge and
> techniques as well as enjoy different opinions. It helps one to keep things in
> perspective. BUT THIS IS GETTING RIDICULOUS!
> The more you argue Tom's window dressing (this is what I call all the extra
> information that has nothing to do with the basic skills he teaches) the more you
> build up an aura and mystique around a human being who is teaching something valuable
> but is nothing more than one of many who does the same thing.
> About three years ago I had absolutely no involvement in primitive skills whatsoever
> except a growing passion for herbalism. I am an avid reader and stumbled upon one of
> Tom's books. I read them all within the next three months and found myself introduced
> to whole new philosophy: a concrete approach to all the ideals so many of us seem to
> hold. Myself, my husband and two friends decided to take some of Tom's courses. Yes!!
> we learned totally new skills that were alien to us at the time and found that with
> practice they work! Some concept!! They work! What more can you ask of a teacher. We
> have also taken some other courses with other people who have taught us a great deal
> also. Those skills also work!
Need there be more. Can we not leave our teachers to their own lives and stop making them into something they are not and do not want to be?
Sorry for taking up so much time!
Sue

From - Sun Jan 12 20:50:20 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA16657; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 23:57:44 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA20737; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 23:57:04 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 23:55:10 EST
Received: from dfw-ix1.ix.netcom.com (dfw-ix1.ix.netcom.com [206.214.98.1]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA20734 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 23:56:53 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.186.122.139 (sjx-ca58-11.ix.netcom.com [205.186.122.139]) by dfw-ix1.ix.netcom.com (8.6.13/8.6.12) with SMTP id TAA12120; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 19:57:56 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D94FC4.11A4@ix.netcom.com>
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 20:55:32 +0000
X-UIDL: 853163066.093
From: Kevin
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, KSREEVE@IX.NETCOM.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01E (Macintosh; U; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Subject: Re: You know who
References: <199701092045.MAA26462@ns2.qnet.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dear group,
Ron and I have taken our discussion of you-know-who off line. He responded to my last post privately, and we will not tie up the group's bandwidth with further discussions of you-know-who. Hope you are all OK with this. Ron and I have great respect for one another and there seems to me to be nothing but great feelings between us.

On the sour side, Ron has spoiled one of my favorite traditions. I am heading for the East Coast for a week or two very soon, and whenever I get to the beach, I order a platter of fresh steamed clams appropriately called STEAMERS on the menu. Alas I am afraid I can never look at them the same way again! Imagine driving down the island and seeing signs in all the eating establishments for FRESH HOT STEAMERS! Yikes! Perhaps I'll send Ron a couple of steamers via the mail. Probably wouldn't smell too good by the time they got there though.
If I have a chance I'll say goodbye, otherwise I be in touch in a couple of weeks.
Kevin

---

Kevin wrote:

> Imagine driving down the island and seeing signs in all the eating establishments for FRESH HOT STEAMERS! Yikes!

Or like when you pass a roadside place that has a big sign that says, "EAT! GAS!" Not to appetizing, but low-level grunt funny.

Chris

From - Tue Jan  7 10:16:37 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA10268; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 20:54:47 - 0500 (EST)
Sherri wrote:

> >=20
> You know Andre', I was thinking this morning. All of us are interestin= g
> in primitive skills and/or tracking. A lot of the people on the tracke=
> thread would like to start/get land for a community. I was
> thinking...what if...all of the primitive people and all of the tracker
> people put in some money and got some really remote (cheap) land in
> Canada. This would be jointly owned by all and would be a place to com=
> e
> together, practice skills, and/or a retreat for all of us if these dire
> predictions of earth shifts...major last war...etc. etc. were to come
> to pass. It seems to me that we could as a large group buy a bunch of
> remote land that would be enough for all of us. What say you?

I personnally don't think this would work, because ownership would no=20
longer mean anything under situations you describe! But you can ask the=20
list about it if you wish.

André
--=
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan  7 21:18:08 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA11733; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 00:28:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA16739; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 00:26:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 08 Jan 1997 00:31:26 EST
Received: from emout02.mail.aol.com (emout02.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.93]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AAA16735 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Wed, 8 Jan 1997 00:26:37 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852732822.013
From: JWither240@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, JWither240@AOL.COM
Date: Wed, 8 Jan 1997 00:30:37 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970107221337_1991098923@emout02.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: [Fwd: Land]
Content-Type: text
Status: U
I like the idea. The land could belong to a corporation with all the members owning shares. Rules and regulations would need to be drafted, and a limit to the number of people the land could support would have to be set and adhered to.

Just a few thoughts...

Jim W.
fairly successful at achieving this in the mountains of NC. His wife inherited some money, though and they bought land. They are trying to build a small community and retreat center. The ones who live there own their land but agree that if they move that it must be sold to someone that has similar convictions for their project and there is a certain portion of the land that is agreed to belong to the community as a whole for an educational and living center. They rent cabins, Teepees and teach classes there. Good luck to whomever seriously pursues this. Keep me posted if you have any success.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Fri Jan 17 23:56:38 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA29040; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 15:50:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA18076; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 15:49:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 15:47:14 EST
Received: from unix.newnorth.net (unix.newnorth.net [205.212.60.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA18065 for ; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 15:48:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from marknq.newnorth.net (rhin-cs-3.newnorth.net [205.212.60.153]) by unix.newnorth.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id QAA07227; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 16:04:06 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DFE43C.1C10@unix.newnorth.net>
Date: Fri, 17 Jan 1997 14:42:36 -0600
X-UIDL: 853606174.071
From: Mark Zanoni
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MarkNQ@UNIX.NEWNORTH.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM
Subject: Re: Let's be honest
References: <2.2.32.19970117437734774006af5d8@ pop3.av.qnet.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
diogenes@survival.com wrote:
>
Hi folks,

Since some of you seem to be bound and determined to misrepresent a reasonably good natured exchange between Kevin and myself, I think I ought to clear the decks. (snip)

I know that silence..... Some of you are afraid to speak out. Why? because you fear to upset the brownies who scream in defense of their >guru.

I think this is partly true. I have taken a class from Tom Brown (a good class, I might add, back in the days before 100 person Standard Classes), I have also taken many classes from other people some of whom make no bones about their dislike of Tom. I also have friends who count themselves (and rightly so) among Tom's few friends. More interestingly, I have found myself being asked to teach classes for groups of Tom Brown students and have found myself in the middle of just his kind of discussion. It is a bit curious how it is that TB has become both so deified and so hated. I'm sure it's something he dislikes as well and from what I hear, he spends a great deal of time and effort trying to insulate himself from the worshiping hords. Interestingly, I believe that this worship is in direct conflict with what he teaches, but doesn't it always seem to be this way.

The more interesting discussion, and one that would serve us better on this list would be one having to do with teachers in general, and primitive skills teaching in particular. My experience is that all the pitfalls and problems of teaching get amplified when primitive skills come into play. They are great mysteries to most people in this culture and, strangely, have the tendency to both attract and repulse. People tend to look at someone who can do things like start a fire by friction or find and read tracks as if they are creating miracles. It is so far outside the realm of most peoples experience that they either worship of the feet of the practitioner or run screaming for the hills. Many of course fall somewhere in the middle, but examples of both extremes are extremely common.

I've been a teacher for around 10 years. It's at once the most rewarding and most difficult thing I have ever done. There are also tremendous pitfalls that every teacher needs to overcome at one time or another-- ego being the most powerful and potentially damaging. "Tom Brown"-- both the man and the legend-- would be useful to examine as part of this. How does someone in his position exemplify both the good and the bad ways of dealing with this? How do we deal with this and the many other issues that come up-- not the least of which is the tendency to both be compared and compare ourselves to people of Tom's stature (whether or not you believe in his abilities)? I would be very interested to hear about this from others in the group.
Our exchanges were meant to draw out the strident
screams of indignant brownies, leaping to the defense of...... Not of
Tom..... but of their own ex halted vision of the poor man.

This may be partly true. I certainly have seen hackles raised when someone would
raise even the mere
suggestion of Tom's humanity. I think, though, that there is more to this than meets
the eye, although I
don't feel like I want to touch that "snake" here. More than that, though, I do
question why it is that
you feel this ("draw out the strident screams of indignant brownies") is necessary to
do in the first
place. There seems to be a sport developing in certain circles of taking every
opportunity to rip this guy
and his students to shreds. This is the part of all this that pisses me off. Tom has
a lot to teach. So
does Larry Dean Olson, Richard Jamison, James Halfpenny and other detractors of his
that seem always on
the ready to twist in a cheap shot here and there (Larry being the worst with his
statement in the
promotional section of his book saying that he is "the true Stalking Wolf" or
something to that effect).
The cheap shots detract from their teachings in my opinion, making me question thier
credibility as much
as they seem to constantly need to question Tom's. My opinion is that those that do
know, don't say. They
certainly don't cut others down. That's a child's game that, for the good of the
science and art of skills
practice needs to stop! I have often speculated what a wonderful world it would be
if, to give one
example, Tom Brown and James Halfpenny were able to sit at the same table once, put
differences aside and
respectfully talk about their unique approaches to the art of tracking. I believe it
would raise knowledge
of the art to a level beyond what maybe even the ancients were able to approach. They
each have a piece of
the puzzle, in my opinion and may, in the end, find more to agree upon than not.

I'd love to ask him questions to see how he can weasel his way out of
for example: (Hi Tom, could you send me a list of names for
those 48 people you mentioned made it through the 30 day winter survival
course with no clothing? I'd love to do a piece on their
stories.)

I have always questioned the existance of such a list myself, however, it matters not
a bit to me one way
or the other. Tom tells "stretchers", in fact former instructors says he bends or
actually tells
fabrications at times when he doesn't need to, and relate that it is very irritating. The
personality
traits of the man are legendary, however it in know way detracts from his skills, or
what the man has done
for this field. Even if the 30 day "Naked survival class" is reality, I wouldn't give
a list of students
away either. Would you?
I've been teaching survival for 20 years. I've never seen more ill educated persons than the ones TB turns out in his assembly line school. None of these people has any clue about the real skills of wilderness survival......

Well, here is a thing I will find a slight bit of agreement with, although the short sightedness of the statement is self evident. I have been amazed at the limited ability of some of the Brown students who seem to use as the proof of their abilities the number of classes they have taken rather than actual practice. The opposite is also the case. There are some damn good practitioners out there who taken classes from no one else but Tom. The problem is that I find the same kinds of people when I encounter those from other schools too. Completion of BOSS's 27 day "Walkabout" is no more proof of survival abilities than having taken 20 Brown classes in a year. As someone who rarely takes classes, but spends a ton of time in skills practice and application, both of these kinds of people irritate me. These people are a dime a dozen, however, all over the place. You can find them at mountain man rendezvous' where it seems to be more fun to pretend then to practice and you can find them at most places where hunters and other outdoorsmen gather. The situation is the same- long on talk, short on practice and you damn sure can't show 'em anything new. They know it all! The problem is it doesn't have anything to do with the teacher, in fact they dishonor the teacher every time they open their mouths. It has everything to do with the student, though. Everyone wants the easy soft way it seems and it's a lot easier to talk then to do.

I can't for the life of me imagine how anyone can think that they will learn anything about the wilderness when they sit in a group of a hundred people while they listen to a grown man moan about how bad things are. People just get ripped off... and the funny thing is... they love it!

If this were the case I have a hard time figuring out why people keep coming back class after class. There's a hell of a lot of repeat customers at the Tracker school. I know a lot of people, also, who started off thinking the guy was yanking their chains and learned some very powerful lessons that changed their opinion. None of these people would at all be anything remotely approaching gullible. There certainly are gullible students there, though, just as they can be found anywhere. I have a hard time believing that many of them stay long.

As far as the statement about "listening to a grown man moan about how bad things are", you could find a lot more like him on any Indian reservation you would care to visit. The philosophy that things are indeed
going to hell in a hand basket is fairly common and in fact it doen't take much of a
genius to see the
truth in that opinion.

> > How can anyone take
> > seriously a 'teacher' that teaches "Spirit Tracking" and tells people
> > they can touch a track and tell what direction an animal was looking and
> > that they will no longer need physical tracking skills once they take
> > this course.

Now this one pisses me off, mainly because I've had enough powerful experiences
happen while tracking to
believe with out a doubt that "spirit tracking" indeed has to have a good deal of
merit. Also, Tom isn't
the only one that teaches this or believes in the validity of it. Unless they are
wholly a left brain,
analysis type tracker (and I can't believe you could track for long and remain that
way honestly), it
isn't possible to spend the time it takes to learn this art and not touch something
that can't logically
be explained. Even more than this, putting the possiblility down is, in my opinion, an
ultimate sin. What
you do is close yourself off to possibilities, something no good scientist or artist
can ever afford to
do.

> > I've taken several classes with Tom. At some point I realized that I had
> > learned that I really hadn't learned anything about survival but I thought
> > I could track a mouse fart. It became painfully obvious to me when I took a
> > survival program in Colorado and I had no idea what the teacher was talking
> > about........

I would be the first one to admit that the skills teaching that takes place at the
Tracker farm is hit and
miss. With so many people around it is so dependent on the quality of the assistants,
which seem to change
frequently, and details do get lost in the shuffle. I'm living proof, though, that if
you are dilegent,
persistant and dedicated enough you can take what you learn their and make it work.
I'd be the first one
to say that it's not ideal and that I've gotten better quality instruction in other
places, however,
either way, it's what you do with it after the class that really counts. A good class
can help, but it's
now substitute for "dirt time". I think Brown would be the first to agree with this.

> > For those of you who are too
> > fearful of the power Tom has in our little industry, I say "speak up".

Me thinks he doth protest to much! It gets a little old too.

> > Remember too. Seeking truth requires facing facts, getting evidence and
> > learning. That is what this group is about. If you can't stand an
> > examination of the most controversial figure in wilderness education......
> > Leave.

Examine him all you want, but don't discount him before you start. You aren't going
Examine him all you want, but don't discount him before you start. You aren't going to get much truth out of that.

Mark Zanoni

Ron

"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"

Ron Hood
Hi everybody,

I wanted to pose an issue to the group that I would welcome discussion on. The issue has come up several times lately and begs some consideration. Let me begin, first, by telling you about a discussion I had awhile back with one of my teachers (not the unmentionable one) about this issue and responses he has encountered with other very famous people in this field, journals and magazines in the field and thoughts we both have had on frequent occasions about theories on tool use, primitive skills and ancient life ways.

This particular person lives in an unnamed eastern city very near a well respected lithics and primitive tech. expert. They were discussing some theory on the use and manufacture of stone age weaponry and my teacher, a very adept and practiced tracker who does classes for many professional organizations and the general public on tracking and other primitive skills, offered the opinion that it was not possible in his mind, to know how a tool was used, or how it fit into the lives of ancient people unless you understood and practiced tracking. He was immediately told by this other respected primitive tech. person, that in his mind, the importance of tracking and its associated skills was "over rated".

I have given this point of view and its associated results a good deal
of thought. To me, the practice of ancient skills involves the necessary familiarity with a language. Among the languages that almost by definition apply here is, for lack of a better term, the "language of nature". My experience has been that this language is tremendously complex and involves immersion to be understood. When a person goes to the woods to practice skills we are thrown into a world that is radically different than our modern one. It is not to big of a leap to argue that the kinds of knowledge, information and ways of interaction that sustain us in the modern one are virtually worthless out there. Things like clocks, traffic signs, computers, etc. have no real natural world application. The natural world has its own rhythms and cycles that must be adhered to and, if there is a parallel for the traffic signs, billboards and other information that dot our landscape it would have be in the subtle markings, tracks, pathways and other things that make up the natural landscape. Understanding them, indeed even seeing them is not a given, in fact in my experience most people, even seasoned woodsman, don't. I believe that learning the art of tracking and all its attendant skills of awareness, movement etc. are the key toward understanding what is "out there" and how we can fit into it. In fact it is the "language" of the woods, or at least a key to understanding it.

It has always mystified me as to how rational scientists can pose and construct theories about ancient peoples without understanding the reality that they lived in. Living in nature and understanding its laws and rhythms, by definition necessitates a different way of looking at the world. My experience is that tracking gives you that key. Tracking at the very least gives you a foundation upon which to test and utilize your theories. Making and using primitive tools is one thing, putting them into practice in real conditions is still another. Anyone who's a hunter knows how difficult it is to be successful consistently even under ideal conditions with modern weapons. Imagine if you depended only on the use of primitive tools and your knowledge of the woods for survival. Without a doubt it would require a totally different world view than most of us are familiar with, and most certainly a set of other skills and approaches. A key one would almost certainly involve tracking, especially if you lived in a harsh environment such as the arctic or the desert. Even modern observations of the KAHABARI bushman or the aborigines of Australia would certainly lead one to conclude that indeed, survival depended to an incredible degree on raising tracking skills to a high art. It wasn't just a nice little sideline to know, it was the foundation of all your skills. Why then today would those of us that seek to follow in their footsteps, or at the very least understand their lifeways, neglect to learn those key skills that made their lives possible. Even worse, it would seem almost criminal to create theories about their culture without taking this factor and all its attendant aspects into consideration.

A couple of years ago, a theory was put forth that is now almost repeated as gospel in scientific circles about Plisostocene humans in NA and their supposed involvement in the destruction of whole species of megafauna, most notably the mastodon. I have always found this theory to be almost comical in light of my experience in the woods. Beyond the fact that the theory throws out the window most of what is understood about predator/prey relationships, it rests upon one idea that simply does not make sense to anyone who has actually attempted to put primitive tools into actual wilderness practice. That theory being that
the simple development of the "clovis point" so revolutionized the capability of ancient peoples that they were able to hunt down and exterminate their primary prey at will. Ya right!!! This guy had no idea how it works and he certainly could never have actually tried to hunt and kill even a deer with a stone tipped spear, much less an animal the size of a mastadon. No matter how well made that tip is, even if he had an atlatl, it just would never have been that easy. The world doesn't work this way.

My theory is, had he been a tracker, and had he developed the skills to be a tracker and if he had spent the necessary mega hours in the woods it takes to develop that art he could never have come to the conclusion that he did. I would argue that first of all, tracking changes your conciousness (here we are at the edge, Andre'). It makes you aware of how ancient peoples, out of necessity, looked at the world. The world is big and complex (lesson #1). Animals are not "furry robots" (lesson #2). There are patterns and laws that must be adhered to in that big, complex world (lesson #3) etc. etc. Most of all, tracking probably would have lead him to attempting to test his clovis point theory under real world conditions on say a deer or other similar animal. He either would have switched his theory immediately to one having to do with time travel and machine guns or, if he was intellegent (which certainly is debatable anyway), he would have gone on to look for more plausible explanations for how things came to be and left the "Indians", or at least their ancestors, alone.

I would be interested in discussing all manor of related issues here. Do you practice and/or teach tracking, awareness etc.? Do you do so with the assumption that this skill is foundational to the other skills? If so, why? If not, why not? What has your experience been learning the "language of the woods"? Was tracking a part of that? Why or why not?

Mark Zanoni

From - Sun Jan 19 20:49:06 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA15421; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 02:39:30 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA03084; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 02:37:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 02:35:16 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id CAA03081 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 02:36:47 -0500 (EST)
Received: from Quantum.qnet.com (lanc01-04.ca.qnet.com [207.155.34.64]) by ns2.qnet.com (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA11827; Sun, 19 Jan 1997 23:40:53 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <2.2.31.19970120074230.006e58d4@ pop3.av.qnet.com>
X-Sender: diogenes@ pop3.av.qnet.com (Unverified)
Hi Mark,

> They were discussing
> some theory on the use and manufacture of stone age weaponry and my
> teacher, a very adept and practiced tracker who does classes for many
> professional organizations and the general public on tracking and other
> primitive skills, offered the opinion that it was not possible in his
> mind, to know how a tool was used, or how it fit into the lives of
> ancient people unless you understood and practiced tracking.

I wonder what the Chumash, coastal California Indians, would think of it too.... They were fishermen and rarely hunted. Trap yes, hunt no. Their primitive skills were pretty good, they lived off the land. Fishermen rarely "track" their game. For that matter I wonder what any coastal Indian group would think.

The Easter Islanders probably didn't do too much tracking. Not much to track on that island. They knew their world pretty well. The Gabrellinos, Fernandinos were recorded by the Spaniards as being poor trackers. Poor by Spanish scales.... hmmm. makes you wonder. Of course a good Spanish tracker was said to have been able to track a pigeon five days after he farted in the sky.

I know from my experience with the Indians in the Brazilian Jungles, who do very well with their primitive weapons in hunting, can't track wet feet out of the bathroom. Their prey is in the trees, they look for movement. All of the jungle peoples I've met have been that way.

I doubt you'd question their understanding of the skills they rely on.

> It makes you aware of
> how ancient peoples, out of necessity, looked at the world. The world is
> big and complex (lesson #1).

It is simple, and is ruled by spirits with basic human motivations that the peoples could understand. Our world is big and complex.

> Animals are not "furry robots" (lesson #2).

I've never heard of an Indian robot. Or a "furry robot". Can you tell me where that came from?

> There are patterns and laws that must be adhered to in that big, complex
> world (lesson #3)

There are simple patterns and rules in a simple universe.

> Most of all, tracking probably would have
lead him to attempting to test his clovis point theory under real world conditions on say a deer or other similar animal. He either would have switched his theory immediatly to one having to do with time travel and machine guns or,

I want to understand how a deer can represent a mastodon. Have you ever SEEN an elephant hide? I doubt that there would be any usable correlation between your testing hypothesis and an actual test on a mastodon (using your time travel/machine gun theory).

......> if he was intelligenent (which certainly is debatable anyway), he would have gone on to look for more plausible explainations for how things came to be and left the "Indians", or at least their ancestors, alone.

Excuse me, I don't understand why his intelligence is an issue here. Or for that matter how you can question it. If spelling were a test of intelligence....

Incidentally, we have a group of folks, A-N-T-H-R-O-P-O-L-O-G-I-S-T-S, who study these issues. In my reading, tracking skills have rarely been an issue in the success of a primitive culture.

Ron Hood

"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"
Dr. Ron Hood
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

From - Sun Jan 19 20:49:13 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id EAA15922; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 04:34:24 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id EAA03399; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 04:32:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 04:30:38 EST
Received: from nanaimo.ark.com (nanaimo.ark.com [204.50.61.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id EAA03393 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 04:32:21 -0500 (EST)
Received: from markus (na1p11.ark.com [204.50.61.44]) by nanaimo.ark.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id BAA07941; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 01:36:09 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E33953.76FC@nanaimo.ark.com>
Date: Mon, 20 Jan 1997 01:22:27 -0800
From: Mark Tollefson
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, markus@NANAIMO.ARK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01KIT (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
diogenes@survival.com wrote:

> I wonder what the Chumash, coastal California indians, would think of it
> too.... They were fishermen and rarely hunted. Trap yes, hunt no. Their
> primitive skills were pretty good, they lived off the land. Fishermen rarely
> "track" their game. For that matter I wonder what any coastal indian group
> would think.

I beg to differ on this point. The natives most certainly did/do "track" their fish. If you have ever gone to a new fishing hole that is a trophy fishing lake, and gone away skunked....you obviously don't know the lake or where the fish will be. That would take time to study where the fish will lie in the lake (or ocean), when they will be at those points at which times of the year. This applies to tidal fishing as well but you have to take into account a fishes migratory patterns. Coastal Indians just don't go out and "fish" they know where they are going (proven fishing spots), and when (depending on the season they will fish different areas for different species of fish).

Also, stating that the Indians trap their fish indicates some sort of analysis of the movement patterns of fish. I would call that tracking.

> I know from my experience with the indians in the Brazilian Jungles, who do
> very well with their primitive weapons in hunting, can't track wet feet out
> of the bathroom. Their prey is in the trees, they look for movement. All of
> the jungle peoples I've met have been that way.

I have no idea what the seasonal patterns would do to the game that these people hunt, but I would hazard a guess that these Indians would also knew the migratory patterns and routes, or territories of the game they hunted. This all goes hand in hand with conservation of energy. If you know in January where the best game is going to be, you are not going to go and hunt somewhere else. The only way you would know where the best hunting would be would be by analyzing the movement patterns of the game you hunt, or tracking.

> It makes you aware of
> how ancient peoples, out of necessity, looked at the world. The world is
> big and complex (lesson #1).
>
> It is simple, and is ruled by spirits with basic human motivations that the
> peoples could understand. Our world is big and complex.
As for the first part of this statement, I would say that it is highly contradictory to assume that spirits have human motivations. I have never seen a spirit eat anything that I would consider for dinner, or contribute to the grogan pile, or go on a date on Saturday night. The last part of this statement does not make sense to me. You are both saying the same thing.

> > There are patterns and laws that must be adhered to in that big, compex world (lesson #3)
> > There are simple patterns and rules in a simple universe.
>
Again you contradict yourself. If our world is big and complex as you suggest in your response to lesson #1, how can our universe then have only simple patterns and rules??

> > I want to understand how a deer can represent a mastodon. Have you ever SEEN an elephant hide? I doubt that there would be any usable correlation between your testing hypothesis and an actual test on a mastodon (using your time travel/machine gun theory).

It would be my conclusion, that hunting with a stone pointed spear would require a high degree of accuracy on the part of the thrower, as well as a close proximity to the intended victim, and a darn good, strong arm!! Would these parameters not be the same regardless of the animal being hunted?? It sounds like you have seen an elephant hide, so how thick are they?? If they are as thick as you suggest, then that makes using a stone tipped spear even more difficult, making the idea that Pliestocene humans eradicated an entire race of elephant type animals with these weapons even more ridiculous.

> Incidentally, we have a group of folks, A-N-T-H-R-O-P-O-L-O-G-I-S-T-S, who study these issues. In my reading, tracking skills have rarely been an issue in the success of a primitive culture.

> Have A-N-T-H-R-O-P-O-L-O-G-I-S-T-S studied tracking?? If they have, then I would love to know if you could provide me with a couple of book titles, I would love to read some works on tracking from a anthropologists point of view. If they haven't then I don't see them as being in a good position to comment on the relative success of a primitive culture in those terms.

Mark Tollefson
Ladysmith B.C.

There are thousands hacking at the branches of evil to one who is striking at the root.
Henry David Thoreau

From - Sun Jan 19 20:49:18 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id IAA16694; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 08:24:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id IAA04049; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 08:21:41 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) with SMTP id IAA04046 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 08:21:31-0500 (EST)
Received: from milo.cfw.com (milo.cfw.com [205.219.240.6]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id IAA04046 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 08:21:31-0500 (EST)
Received: from stn12.cfw.com by milo.cfw.com; (5.65v3.2/1.1.8.2/12Dec95-0403PM) id AA12074; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 08:30:20 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E39D39.746F@cfw.com>
Date: Mon, 20 Jan 1997 08:28:41 -0800
From: BKP
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, parslowb@CFW.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02E-KIT (Win16; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: RE: Tracking and Primitive Skills
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Mark,

I submit that, due to the pervasive influence of man on the planet, it is practically impossible for any of us (are Canadians an exception?) to experience the "paleolifestyle". It seems to me that animal and plant life have been so drastically altered by man that emulating or reproducing the lifestyles of aboriginal inhabitants of even 250-300 years ago is impossible.

I agree that tracking is a necessary adjunct skill to use of the weapons. However, one can argue that one must be able to properly identify, process, manufacture, use, track, process animal product, manufacture, and use in order to survive using these primitive methods of equal importance. Like a chain that is only as strong as the weakest link, each task must be performed successfully in order for the individual (more likely at least a small group) to survive. Just think of what you must be able to do to hunt with the atlatl, each and every step is a critical survival skill with no second place winner.

That is what makes this list so interesting for me, the diverse and numerous skills and methods for accomplishing the many tasks.

I am not saying that I agree or disagree with you just that I feel as I
have stated. I think that this would be a good thread as it goes to the root of what and why of the list.

--

Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

From - Sun Jan 19 22:32:59 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca ([132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca
(8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id JAA17282; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 09:49:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA04920; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 09:46:30 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 09:44:37 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id JAA04910 for
; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 09:46:19
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.54 (ppp054.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.54])
by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id JAA09688 for
; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 09:49:48
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E29790.6F23@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Sun, 19 Jan 1997 21:52:16 +0000
X-UIDL: 853773778.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Tracking & primitive skills
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id JAA04913
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id JAA17282
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
  JAA04913
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

I know the best trappers in QuÈbec. These guys are also scientific biologists and do research for the ministry of natural resources. For example, they have put collars on hundreds of wolves in Parc des Laurentides and have been following their movements. They do research on how trapping can be used to actually augment the faunal capacity of an area. Roland Lemieux of QuÈbec took over a trapping area 25km square and augmented his fur catches of fox from 1 to over 30 per year over a 10 year period. All of his other captures have seen similar jumps. His trapping area is now at a peak which he can maintain year after year.
Roland knows animals better than anyone I have ever met. He and his research team have studied animal tracks and scats scientifically and have published a great deal of material and videos on these subjects (all in french, sorry). I have spent time in the woods with Roland, exchanging survival tricks for trapping and tracking knowledge. Everything he has shown me is measurable, repeatable, understandable, and perfectly logical. Anyone can learn it.

Before I read the Tom Brown thread and looked at the Tracker archives, I thought what I had been learning with Roland Lemieux and through books such as "Field guide to animal tracks" was what learning tracking was all about—studying animal tracks and feces to learn about their habits. Now I realize that there is another dimension to tracking which many people practice, which refers to improving the individual's capacity to be "at one" with nature. This other dimension to tracking is a spiritual one which involves psychology and individual belief systems. We have all agreed not to discuss these issues.

Therefore, in accordance with the guidelines set forth by this group, I would ask everyone to limit tracking discussions to physical tracking skills. For example, to find out if there are muskrats in a small stream, you can look on rocks or logs which are sticking up out of the water. If there are muskrats, you will find scats there. The number of scats on the rocks or logs will give you a vague indication of how many muskrats there are in the area. Muskrats dig holes in banks which sometimes go to the length of 80 feet. This information makes us aware of the futility of digging for muskrats in survival situations. I would love to hear more about animal habits which would make their capture easier in survival situations.

However, I would ask everyone to please respond to those aspects dealing with non-physical tracking skills off-line. I insist.

Thanks for reading,

AndrÈ
I personally agree with Ron and Mark. There are other senses that can and do come into play. We, as a race, use these senses all the time in our everyday life. Some people are just more aware of it than others. I do not see how discussing this in line with tracking would cause any harm as long as we don't bring up the TB thing.

Sherri

seer7           "We are the Witnesses to the Rape of the World"

diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM wrote:
>
> Hi Y'all
>
> Good post Mark Z.!
>
> For the purposes of this group, I'd like to work out a broad definition of
> "tracking". Much of what has been discussed about the topic has been done
> without an understanding of what tracking represents in our various
> intrepretations. I hope we can come to some concensus.
>
> A place to start;
>
> Tracking; following evidence of the passage of some person, animal or thing
> either by physical evidence left behind or by other existing physical
> phoenomena such as sight, sound, smell or vibration.
>
> One thought. Our "brains" are incredibly complex organs. As we all know the
> brain has a way of processing stimuli that we are not consciously aware of.
> Often this stimuli is below some sensory awareness threshold but will
> manifest itself as a "feeling". I practice and teach techniques for
> enhancing our awareness of these subliminal stimuli. This is not "spirit
> tracking".
>
> Ron Hood
> "The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"
> 
> Ron Hood

X-Mozilla-Status: 0010

From - Tue Jan 21 02:46:52 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA21894; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 19:09:47 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA11269; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 19:07:03 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 19:05:10 EST
Received: from emout14.mail.aol.com (emout14.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.40]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA11266 for
; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 19:06:52
-0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout14.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0)
id TAA19197 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Mon, 20 Jan
1997 19:11:02 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853818488.034
From: MaxWarhawk@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MaxWarhawk@AOL.COM
Date: Mon, 20 Jan 1997 19:11:02 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970120183237_1658349623@emout14.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Tracking What?
MIME-Version: 1.0
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id
TAA11267
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id TAA21894
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=unknown-8bit
TAA11267
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

My personal points of observation on the *tracking* thread:

Seems to me this is like discussing what the best color is. We need to
focus on one particular *color* and confer on its particular aspects.

>From the standpoint of a novice survivalist, I believe that the literal
meaning of tracking be adopted out of respect for those individuals
who read the list and do not post (could be quite a few...:-))

One note: I believe Mark is talking about *getting in touch with nature*
The finite skills of survival are critical to living wild, but in this day and age, and the environmental situation, respect for nature is at the least, a viable subject. Unfortunately, it may not be a subject that is politically correct to discuss.

I would gladly partake in any private discussion of this matter. BTW, without our precious outdoors, most of these subjects would be moot!

fTreading Softlyf

MaxWarhawk@aol.com

AndrÈ wrote;

>Roland knows animals better than anyone I have ever met. He and his research team have studied animal tracks and scats scientifically and have published a great deal of material and videos on these subjects
Perhaps one of you guys who run schools would like to invest the resources to translate this material and then sell it to the rest of us? I, for one, would be willing to commit to a purchase if it could be costed out realistically. Anyone with me on this one?

Rob Chatburn

Sherri wrote:

> (all in french, sorry).

> I personally, agree with Ron and Mark. There are other senses that can and do come into play. We, as a race, use these senses all the time in our everyday life. Some people are just more aware of it than others. I do not see how discussing this in line with tracking would
cause any harm as long as we don't bring up the TB thing.

I don't think we need to bring that up to discuss it. It's not like he's the only teacher in the world that uses it in this context.

One further argument on this is that intuition and related aspects are becoming more and more accepted in many areas of society, Corporations are hiring trainers to work with employees to use these techniques to increase creativity and problem solving abilities, relieve stress etc. My experience with tracking is that you need all the help you can get from all parts of your brain, senses and physical body to get a handle on what's going on. Not being able to use them, or trying to talk about tracking without touching on them is similar to talking about starting fires with a bow drill but avoiding discussion of notches and wood types. It's just one more tool, and a much under rated one at that.

Mark

From - Tue Jan 21 02:47:47 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicli.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA27404; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 11:25:57 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA17375; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 11:25:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 11:23:36 EST
Received: from unix.newnorth.net (unix.newnorth.net [205.212.60.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id LAA17372 for ; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 11:25:20 -0500 (EST)
Received: from marknq.newnorth.net (rhin-cs7-2.newnorth.net [205.212.60.202]) by unix.newnorth.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id LAA14589; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 11:40:35 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E4EC6E.1F4@unix.newnorth.net>
Date: Tue, 21 Jan 1997 10:18:54 -0600
X-UIDL: 853875768.021
From: Mark Zanoni
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MarkNQ@UNIX.NEWNORTH.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MaxWarhawk@AOL.COM
Subject: Re: Tracking What?
References: <970120183237_1658349623@emout14.mail.aol.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

MaxWarhawk@AOL.COM wrote:

> My personal points of observation on the *tracking* thread:
Seems to me this is like discussing what the best color is. We need to focus on one particular *color* and confer on its particular aspects.

I think this is what we are all suggesting, if I understand you correctly.

> From the standpoint of a novice survivalist, I believe that the literal meaning of tracking be adopted out of respect for those individuals who read the list and do not post (could be quite a few..:-))

I believe that the "literal meaning" as understood by most people (i.e. following a set of clear foot prints) is misleading and not very helpful in most instances. Tracking, is more a way of seeing than anything else and while it certainly can involve following a set of footprints at times, it usually isn't as simple or as clear cut as that in most situations. For "novice survivalists" I would suggest learning this skill as a first step. You may not understand why now, but I think you may find that becoming a good tracker will strengthen, enhance and give you a solid foundation for other skills that you need to learn.

> One note: I believe Mark is talking about *getting in touch with nature*

Well...yes and no. Tracking is a process that will help you "get in touch with" and understand nature more completely. It can be more than that, though.

> The finite skills of survival are critical to living wild, but in this day and age, and the environmental situation, respect for nature is at the least, a viable subject. Unfortunately, it may not be a subject that is politically correct to discuss.

To me knocking around in the woods without knowledge of where you are brings to mind images of a "bull in a china closet". In my opinion skills without an ethic is just another excuse to cut down trees, dig holes and kill animals. At this point in history, who needs it!

HOWEVER, that's my opinion. I understand it might not reflect everyone's. It may indeed not be appropriate to discuss here. I don't think we need to discuss it, for the same reason that we don't need to discuss it in conjunction with any other skill.

> I would gladly partake in any private discussion of this matter. BTW, without our precious outdoors, most of these subjects would be moot!

That's all I need is one more on line discussssion,

Mark

From - Wed Jan 22 00:33:14 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA02630; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:33:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA23667; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:32:23 -0500 (EST)
Mark Z wrote:

> I believe that the "literal meaning" as understood by most people (i.e. 
> following a set of clear foot prints) is misleading and not very helpful

I have to disagree. I think it is MISLEADING to refer to tracking as ANYTHING other than its literal meaning.

>situations. For "novice survivalists" I would suggest learning this 
>skill as a first step. You may not understand why now, but I think you 
>may find that becoming a good tracker will strengthen, enhance and give

I use the term "novice survivalist" because I have never been to a survival school, nor do I teach those skills professionally. I feel that I have more knowledge and insight on the "non-physical" side. Throughout the year, I spend time in the timber, often just sitting for hours doing nothing....(hmm) but looking/smelling/listening. I have had some very powerful experiences during these times, but cannot for the life of me call that tracking.

It's difficult to explain, but I think everyone knows what is being talked about. My CHALLENGE to everyone is to come up with an acceptable, and appropriate TERM for this! (all I can come up with is like.....groovin' man!)

Thanks for your time.

fTreading Softlyf MaxWarhawk@aol.com
From - Wed Jan 22 00:33:33 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA03878; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:12:48 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA25378; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:12:15 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:10:22 EST
Received: from barley.adnc.com (barley.adnc.com [205.216.138.31]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA25375 for
; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:12:04
-0500 (EST)
Received: from fish.adnc.com by barley.adnc.com (SMI-8.6/SVRMailer ADN 1/96) id
UAA09541; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:09:42 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:09:42 -0800
Message-ID: <199701220409.UAA09541@barley.adnc.com>
X-Sender: fish@mail.adnc.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Light Version 1.5.2
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MaxWarhawk@AOL.COM
From: John Fisher
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, fish@ADNC.COM
Subject: Re: Tracking Challenge
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id XAA03878
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="iso-8859-1"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>My CHALLENGE to everyone is to come up with an acceptable, and
>appropriate TERM for this! (all I can come up with is like.....groovin'
>man!)
>
>Thanks for your time.
>
>fTreading Softlyf MaxWarhawk@aol.com
>
Like awareness, man!

John Fisher

From - Wed Jan 22 00:33:52 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA04085; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:46:32 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA25847; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:45:01 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
Tracker37@AOL.COM wrote:

> What on earth is with you people's aversion to Tom Brown? And especially the
> way he tracks? It's like you think it is a disease or something...

One would think so, but it is an "unmentionable topic" on the list for reasons that, although strange and obscure, seem to stand for now. He was one of my teachers as was he the teacher of many of the trackers listed on previous posts (i.e. Charles Worsham, Tom Hanratty, Jon Young, John Stokes, Jim Lowry etc.). I respect him, I just agree not to talk about him. That's all. If you want to discuss the issue further, contact me privately.

Mark

Mark
Max, I agree with you entirely. As someone who was not even aware that the term Tracking had another meaning as of one month ago, I found it quite confusing to make heads and tails of all this. I suspect that the term will also be quite confusing to anyone else which has not been introduced to the concept.

I have had some very powerful experiences during these times, but cannot for the life of me call that tracking.

Again, I agree, I also have had very powerful experiences, but cannot for the life of me call that tracking.

I believe that your challenge is a worthy one, and I would like to accept it. Here is my attempt at classification:

1. Steve Van Matre wrote several books related to the process of getting people to gradually "fit-in" to nature. He calls this process, and
titles his books:

Acclimatizing and acclimatization

These terms have been accepted in the outdoor education field and are being used by many other important researchers on these topics such as Jean-Claude Jay Rayon of Quèbec.

2. Maurice Legault of Laval University (former outdoor pursuits professor) and many other psychologists like him are studying the effects of nature stays on personal growth, and lead trips into nature where the purpose of the trip is to develop self-awareness and gain other psychological benefits by the direct contact with the earth. Some of the experiences in this type of trip may seem "weird" to the outsider, but it is a valid field of study which is subject to much research. Like in any other field, the value of the experiences depend on the quality of the leaders and the before and after analysis of such. This domain of research is often called:

Eco-psychoology

3. There are also many belief-based school of thoughts which view nature as Nature, and worship to various extents the miracles which happen when man encounters various powerful influences present in wilderness settings. Many of these schools of thoughts seem to be based at least in part on the study of native spirituality. This category of activity is usually referred to as:

Nature spirituality

4. The scientific term which is used to describe the study of the interrelationships between the various parts of natural systems is called:

Ecology

5. The study of physical phenomena which are encountered in wilderness settings and the subsequent attempt at trying to figure out what caused these phenomena is called:

Nature interpretation

6. The study of animal habits, behavior, reproduction, life cycles, dens etc. is part of the study of:

Animal biology

7. The study of theories and principles involved in becoming physically comfortable in the wilderness, and the learning of skills in various physical activities practiced in wilderness settings, refers to:

Outdoor pursuits and outdoor recreation
8. The study of teaching skills and group management skills particular to wilderness settings is called:

Outdoor leadership

9. The study of the use of the outdoors to teach course curriculum for standard school curriculums is called:

Outdoor education

10. The study of the impacts of outdoor-related activities, and resource-harvesting activities on the natural resources of an area is called:

Environmental education

11. The acts of defense of the environment against commercial development is called:

Environmental lobbying

9. The study of social and cultural aspects of primitive societies is called:

Ethnology

10. The specific study of physical survival skills used by primitive people is a branch of ethnology called:

Primitive technology

11. The study of skills and methods which can be used to prolong life while waiting for rescue in emergency situations is referred to as:

Wilderness survival

12. The study of physical signs which give clues to the movement patterns of animals is called:

Tracking

That's my feeble attempt at categorizing very complex and inter-related categories of study.

But, using these general definitions (in spite of their shortcomings), we can see that many schools of "tracking" are using that term loosely to include many of the above categories.

For the purposes of this list, still using the above general definitions, only the following categories (in my opinion) fall within the realm of our guidelines for topic discussion:
1. Primitive technology
2. Wilderness survival
3. Specific aspects of animal biology and tracking related to information which lead to improving trapping skills in primitive situations.
4. Specific aspects of environmental education related to particular primitive skills.

Thanks for reading this long post with little actual primitive skills content. I'm just trying to contribute to making group guidelines clearer. Remember, this is just my PERSONAL OPINION and you are welcome to disagree and orient the group discussions otherwise if you wish.

THANKS EVERYONE for your continued participation and great information sharing...

AndrÈ-FranÃois

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÃois Bourbeau  mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd., Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1

From - Wed Jan 22 07:44:51 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA12217; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:34:58 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA07036; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:34:37 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:32:34 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA07030 for
; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:34:16
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.83 (ppp083.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.83])
by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id TAA27457 for
; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:37:44
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E5C45D.4DF3@saglac.ca>
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 07:40:13 +0000
X-UIDL: 853980033.002
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Re:Tracking Challenge
Mark Zanoni wrote:

<< At the very least the tracks fit into a context. They are not isolated, separate pieces. They relate to the place where they are. Being aware of that place, the rhythm of bird sound, the sun angle and time of day, past history of the area (primarily weather patterns) all fit into the story you are reading. In some instances they might be key factors. You can't age tracks, for instance, unless you are aware of weather patterns, the nature of the soil or ground cover you are tracking on etc. These are important factors. They are also not tangential to the process. They are part of the process.>>

Hi Mark,

This will also be my final public post on this subject. Like you said, it will be more interesting to get back to the actual skills instead of discussion terminology.

Just wanted to say that I finally understood where you're coming from after reading the above paragraph. And I finally agree with you on this. My suggested definition of tracking was:

"The study of physical signs which give clues to the movement patterns of animals".

You are absolutely right in that there are far more clues out there than just tracks, scats, and branch nibbles. Obviously, all of the other factors you mention such as global and recent weather patterns, current bird and insect behavior, soil types, slope inclination, sunny spots vs shade and so on are all valuable tracking indicators. They are to be included in the "physical signs which give clues to the movement patterns of animals" and therefore fall in the tracking category.

It is easy to understand how advanced tracking, advanced nature interpretation, and advanced animal biology can overlap. It is the same in judo and karate- advanced judo has punches, while advanced karate has throws, and both have combat psychology. It's just a bit confusing to a beginner in martial arts.

Anyway, I hope this subject is now closed, if not, I will be glad to pursue it further off line.

Sorry for taking up group space on a non-skills issue. It has been interesting for me to observe myself be undisciplined and trangress my own suggestions for guidelines! Guilty!

Much tranquility wished upon everyone,
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> I think it is MISLEADING to refer to tracking as
> ANYTHING other than its literal meaning.

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> MaxWarhawk@AOL.COM wrote:
> >
> >I think it is MISLEADING to refer to tracking as
> >ANYTHING other than its literal meaning.
>
> Max, I agree with you entirely. As someone who was not even aware
that the term Tracking had another meaning as of one month ago, I found it quite confusing to make heads and tails of all this. I suspect that the term will also be quite confusing to anyone else which has not been introduced to the concept.

I'm going to take one last stab at this and then drop it as it seems to be going nowhere and I would rather talk about and practice tracking and skills then debate the terminology.

First of all, you may be right. This could very possibly be confusing to someone who is not a tracker. Tracking is an experiential process. These understandings come through the process of learning. However, every good tracking teacher will tell you that you focus on the tracks and sign to exclusion of everything else at your own peril. This is especially true when mantracking or in country where big, dangerous predators are (i.e. grizzlies or tigers). I have never had a deer circle back around on me and certainly haven't been stalked by a grizzly, but teachers of mine have and it happened because they were missing big pieces of the puzzle. At the very least the tracks fit into a context. They are not isolated, separate pieces. They relate to the place where they are. Being aware of that place, the rhythm of bird sound, the sun angle and time of day, past history of the area (primarily weather patterns) all fit into the story you are reading. In some instances they might be key factors. You can't age tracks, for instance, unless you are aware of weather patterns, the nature of the soil or ground cover you are tracking on etc. These are important factors. They are also not tangential to the process. They are part of the process.

Is this confusing. Probably. However, these are the primary things stressed by every teacher I have ever worked with in this area. My own experience bears this out. Keep in mind that these are people who are trying hard to raise tracking from a little understood side aspect of wildlife biology (the tracking I learned in school was so simplistic as to be useless) to an artform on par with, or maybe even surpassing the ancient practitioners. If you take a class with Charles Worsham or Tom Hanratty or a few others that have been mentioned here you will find a wealth of information that will both boggle your mind and open your eyes to the point where you have to say, "wow, where have I been all my life".

This is my last post to the group on this issue. If anyone wants to discuss it further, contact me by private email,

Mark Zanoni

I have had some very powerful experiences during these times, but cannot for the life of me call that tracking.

Again, I agree, I also have had very powerful experiences, but cannot for the life of me call that tracking.

Its difficult to explain, but I think everyone knows what is being talked about.

My CHALLENGE to everyone is to come up with an acceptable, and
I believe that your challenge is a worthy one, and I would like to accept it. Here is my attempt at classification:

1. Steve Van Matre wrote several books related to the process of getting people to gradually "fit-in" to nature. He calls this process, and titles his books:

   *Acclimatizing and acclimatization*

   These terms have been accepted in the outdoor education field and are being used by many other important researchers on these topics such as Jean-Claude Jay Rayon of Québec.

2. Maurice Legault of Laval University (former outdoor pursuits professor) and many other psychologists like him are studying the effects of nature stays on personal growth, and lead trips into nature where the purpose of the trip is to develop self-awareness and gain other psychological benefits by the direct contact with the earth. Some of the experiences in this type of trip may seem "weird" to the outsider, but it is a valid field of study which is subject to much research. Like in any other field, the value of the experiences depend on the quality of the leaders and the before and after analysis of such. This domain of research is often called:

   *Eco-psychology*

3. There are also many belief-based school of thoughts which view nature as Nature, and worship to various extents the miracles which happen when man encounters various powerful influences present in wilderness settings. Many of these schools of thoughts seem to be based at least in part on the study of native spirituality. This category of activity is usually referred to as:

   *Nature spirituality*

4. The scientific term which is used to describe the study of the interrelationships between the various parts of natural systems is called:

   *Ecology*

5. The study of physical phenomena which are encountered in wilderness settings and the subsequent attempt at trying to figure out what caused these phenomena is called:

   *Nature interpretation*

6. The study of animal habits, behavior, reproduction, life cycles, dens etc. is part of the study of:

   *Animal biology*
7. The study of theories and principles involved in becoming physically comfortable in the wilderness, and the learning of skills in various physical activities practiced in wilderness settings, refers to:

Outdoor pursuits and outdoor recreation

8. The study of teaching skills and group management skills particular to wilderness settings is called:

Outdoor leadership

9. The study of the use of the outdoors to teach course curriculum for standard school curriculums is called:

Outdoor education

10. The study of the impacts of outdoor-related activities, and ressource-harvesting activities on the natural ressources of an area is called:

Environmental education

11. The acts of defense of the environment against commercial development is called:

Environmental lobbying

9. The study of social and cultural aspects of primitive societies is called:

Ethnology

10. The specific study of physical survival skills used by primitive people is a branch of ethnology called:

Primitive technology

11. The study of skills and methods which can be used to prolong life while waiting for rescue in emergency situations is referred to as:

Wilderness survival

12. The study of physical signs which give clues to the movement patterns of animals is called:

Tracking

That's my feeble attempt at categorizing very complex and inter-related categories of study.

But, using these general definitions (in spite of their shortcomings), we can see that many schools of "tracking" are using that term loosely to include many of the above categories.
For the purposes of this list, still using the above general definitions, only the following categories (in my opinion) fall within the realm of our guidelines for topic discussion:

1. Primitive technology
2. Wilderness survival
3. Specific aspects of animal biology and tracking related to information which lead to improving trapping skills in primitive situations.
4. Specific aspects of environmental education related to particular primitive skills.

Thanks for reading this long post with little actual primitive skills content. I'm just trying to contribute to making group guidelines clearer. Remember, this is just my PERSONAL OPINION and you are welcome to disagree and orient the group discussions otherwise if you wish.

THANKS EVERYONE for your continued participation and great information sharing...

AndrÈ-FranÁois

--
Surviving at nature's will...  o

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca / Ä/ /Ä /
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec /0000\0/0000\ 
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvvX______\
As far as following a stream, this probably works in most cases, but beware of following one in a mountainous area where two streams may run together and into a hole in the ground and disappear.

I was once lost and had to spend the night out without gear because I tried to follow a stream back to camp and took a wrong embranchement where the Y in the stream had gone underground. To find my way back, after going up and down the creek for miles to find my camp which was on it's edge and never finding it, I finally decided to follow the creek IN the creek, and that's how I found out about my mistake.
I guess my favorite uses radiation too! Poke a stick firmly in the ground, long or short I don't think matters, long may be more accurate. Mark the position of and measure it's shadow with another stick. It's a good idea to break the measuring stick at the shadow length point. Hang around a few hours until the shadow of the upright stick is the same length. Mark again.

If you're in the northern hemisphere, a line drawn from the upright stick and a point half way between the two marks (closest distance) is north. In the southern hemisphere, of course it's south and on the equator, you need more info. :) :) 

It might be helpful to know what season it is in the tropics too. You could possibly be north of the equator and get a line that points south. If you're in the northern tropics, the sun will be north of you for some part of the year (by definition). Same problems in the southern tropics.

I don't know how to solve the tropic problem unless you have a handy whirlpool close, or know the season.

Speaking of seasons

Happy Holidaze All

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ----------------------------------

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Dec 20 23:15:32 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id JAA00965; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 09:20:53 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA05093; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 09:19:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 09:23:47 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.66]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id JAA05090; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 09:19:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTPT id JAA05091 for ; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 09:22:20 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BB006B.1A69@saglac.qc.ca>
Chris Smith wrote:

> Hi Merv!
>
>   Chris here. I've had some experiences with dowsing. Seen our dowsing
> thread on Thrower (?), at:
>
>             http://www.crl.com/~mjr/findit.html
>
>    Could be flame bait & taboo subject: challenges the belief systems of
> some and perhaps not enough in others. Maybe it's been that way since
> Descartes and the dawn of the "Age of Reason" or some such - I dunno. I
> use it and sometimes it seems to work. No flames (please) list
> members. Sure it can be explained OR explained away, but a little voice
> in the back of my mind keeps saying, "There are more things under heaven
> and on earth than is in your philosophy, Horacio". Dowsing's
> fascinating at least in a historical/contemporary context as a primitive
> practice that's survived to the present time.
>
>    Any dowsing experiences, Merv? Maybe a possible use for that
> Christmas tree after the big day, eh?
>
>    Chris

Hi folks,

Dowsing was definitely not what I had in mind by primitive direction
finding, but I don't mind the subject for now. In fact, many survival
books claim that such things can work. I've seen finding water by
pendulum, witchhazel sticks, burying rocks, following spider web orientation, and all sorts of other weird unexplainable stuff.

Now, as a former semi-professional magician, I maintain that these things are all hocus pocus. My friend the Amazing Randi (Randall Swinge), who is Houdini's successor in magic circles, has offered $100,000 to anyone who could demonstrate something weird in seance sessions that he couldn't explain (put the trick to light). He has never had to pay up in the last 10 years since he offered the prize.

I will offer the same $100,000 to anyone who can find a jar of water buried in a field at random after multiple tries using any of the so called water finding methods. The common answer I get is that the jar interferes. Ok, let's put the water in earthenware crocks. Surely that is easier to find than water deep down through granite etc. It is obvious to my scientific mind that these techniques were invented by someone to take advantage of unsuspicious people and earn a living without working. It is absolutely incredible, don't forget, the length to which a magician can go to obtain information which will credit him with "superhuman" capabilities. Some people are absolute geniuses with hidden technology which will blow your mind with it's impossibility. Others are absolute psychological geniuses.

I think the explanation to dowsing on the browser page is accurate:

"As it turns out, the dowser may do nothing more than stimulate the users' own subconscious knowledge of where he or she lost the knife. Of course since we are usually looking for knives or other implements that we have lost, this may be sufficient, especially if it works more or less consistently."

In fact, the same amount of time spent actually searching for the knife in a methodical manner would have found the knife at least as quickly.

Searching for lost objects in survival situations can become very important if not life threatening. I remember visiting one student in a survival simulation groping around in the dark to find his whistle to call it quits. "I lost my matches in the snow" says he. I patiently talked to him, found out where he had been, and told him to start searching methodically in the most likely spot. After a few minutes, he found his matches and did not "die".

I teach that the trick in searching for lost objects is never to search in the same place twice. Do it right the first time. Go very methodically and precisely so you can eliminate sections of ground definitely. You will eventually find it this way, it's only a matter of time. I you don't look methodically, you can search forever.

Sorry about the flame, couldn't help myself, you hit a sensitive nerve.

It doesn't matter how many times people tell stories of "it worked", until someone can demonstrate that "it works" in a repetitive way, it is just blind luck.

Bury a knife somewhere at random in a sawdust pile 100 feet square, and you will never be able to find it repeatedly using dowsing, I guarantee that!
Just a stubborn scientist replying!

AndrÈ-FranÁois

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA     G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA     G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
BKP wrote:

> Howdy,
> 
> I'm a soldier in the US Army, stationed with a National Guard unit in Virginia. We do a lot of direction finding, land navigation, and I would be very interested in discussing this.
> 
> I suppose that one of the first ways of navigating was to follow a stream bank, up and down stream, to get somewhere. Still recommended for those lost and unhurt to simply follow a stream down and continue until you meet up with someone which is inevitable. We also look to the sun for direction.

Following some streams here in Québec would sometimes lead you to a 1000 mile trek without seeing anything until the arctic ocean! Also, many places here are height of land where one creek flows into the Atlantic and another to Hudson's Bay and another to the Artic. So I'm not so sure about the follow the creek method. Also, following creeks here usually means you have to walk in alder (Alnus spp) swamps which makes going very rough, especially on creeks that wind and wind around bend after bend.

The sun and stars are indeed the safest orienteering methods.

> I must ask though, are we talking about methods used by primitive peoples or methods using low tech skills? Won't always be the same. Interested in hearing from other members of the group.

Both subjects are interesting. However, I think you're opening up a very big can of worms, (we could write a whole book on the subject). Maybe more specific questions will help the rest of us answer.

How about the question of moss growing on the north side of trees, for instance. What do people think of that?

Best regards,
AndrÈ-FranÁois

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888
bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Dec 20 20:32:01 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA29880; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 02:22:38 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA04643; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 02:22:34 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 02:27:07 EST
Received: from rand.nidlink.com (rand.nidlink.com [205.219.220.1]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA04640 for ; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 02:22:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.122 (pm6-25.nidlink.com [205.219.220.122]) by rand.nidlink.com (8.8.4/8.6.9) with SMTP id XAA11965; Fri, 20 Dec 1996 23:29:53 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BB837F.3304@rand.nidlink.com>
Date: Fri, 20 Dec 1996 23:28:16 -0700
X-UIDL: 851174953.009
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, eaten_by_limestone@CLIFFHANGER.COM
Subject: Re: primitive direction finding
References: <199612210617.BAA06855@butthead.globecomm.net>
merv martin wrote:

> Hi
> > Who all got here??????
> >
> > Say, Doc Andre says we can discuss primitive direction finding, is that
> dowsing???) :) :) :) :) :) )
>
> > Cheers
> > Merv

Hi Merv!

Chris here. I've had some experiences with dowsing. Seen our dowsing thread on Thrower (?), at:

http://www.crl.com/~mjr/findit.html

Could be flame bait & taboo subject: challenges the belief systems of some and perhaps not enough in others. Maybe it's been that way since Descartes and the dawn of the "Age of Reason" or some such - I dunno. I use it and sometimes it seems to work. No flames (please) list members. Sure it can be explained OR explained away, but a little voice in the back of my mind keeps saying, "There are more things under heaven and on earth than is in your philosophy, Horacio". Dowsing's fascinating at least in a historical/contemporary context as a primitive practice that's survived to the present time.

Any dowsing experiences, Merv? Maybe a possible use for that Christmas tree after the big day, eh?

Chris
"Primitive" direction finding wasn't all that primitive. If you look into archeoastronomy, you'll find that pre-Conquest peoples in both North, South, and Central America had extremely accurate observatories all over the place. They clocked the movement of stars, planets, sun and moon, had buildings and whole communities arranged on lines to correspond with various orbits, holes in buildings where the sun shone thru only on the equinox, etc. The precision of their work often astounds modern day astronomers.

Since they had no magnetic compass, they didn't orient so much north/south/east/west as toward where the sun appeared at equinox and solstice.

Which reminds me -- today is the Winter Solstice.

--

Harmon Seaver hseaver@northnet.net hseaver@csd.uwm.edu

The fundamental delusion of humanity is that I am in here -- and you are out there.

Copyright, Harmon F. Seaver, 1996. License to distribute this post is available to Microsoft for US$1,000 per instance, or local equivalent.
bmanrich@iamerica.net wrote:
>
> BKPR wrote:
>
> > Howdy,
> >
> > I'm a soldier in the US Army, stationed with a National Guard unit in
> > Virginia. We do a lot of direction finding, land navigation, and I would
> > be very interested in discussing this.
> >
> > I suppose that one of the first ways of navigating was to follow a stream
> > bank, up and down stream, to get somewhere. Still recommended for those
> > lost and unhurt to simply follow a stream down and continue until you
> > meet up with someone which is inevitable. We also look to the sun for
> > direction.
> >
> > Following some streams here in Quebec would sometimes lead you to a 1000 mile
> > trek without seing
> > anythin until the artic ocean! Also, many places here are height of land where one
> > creek flows
> > into the atlantic and another to Hudson's Bay and another to the Artic. So I'm not
> > so sure about
> > the follow the creek method. Also, following creeks here usually means you have to
> > walk in alder
> > (Alnus spp) swamps which makes going very rough, especially on creeks that wind and
> > wind and wind
> > around bend after bend.
> >
> Here in Virgina and in most every mid atlantic state, following the stream will
> always
> get you to someone's home. Everyone built along streams and there is no wilderness
> at
> all. :( Yes following the stream ban can be very difficult, but you don't have to
> follow the river, stream, creek, etc from the bank. This brings us to another short
> distance navigation method. Contouring. Follow a particular elevation on a terrain
> feature to a known point and move from there. Very useful in the dark when a compass
> is
> unavailable.
>
> The sun and stars are indeed the safest orienteering methods.
> >
Maybe the safest is the compass and good terrain & compass map orientation. I have been reading about use of various GPS (not very primitive to us) and the weaknesses for those unaccustomed to more primitive methods.

> > I must ask though, are we talking about methods used by primitive peoples or methods using low tech skills? Won't always be the same. Interested in hearing from other members of the group.

> > Both subjects are interesting. However, I think you're opening up a very big can of worms, (we could write a whole book on the subject). Maybe more specific questions will help the rest of us answer.

> > How about the question of moss growing on the north side of trees, for instance. What do people think of that?

My answer is I don't believe a word of it. Sun, stars, landmarks (of limited utility), and terrain. Dead reckoning? Done some of that, too.

Say, is there much goo to eat among the alders?

> >
> > Best regards,
> >
> > Andri-Frangois
> >
> > --
> > Surviving at nature's will...
> >
> > Dr Andri-Frangois Bourbeau
> > Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
> > University of Quibec
> > 555 University Boulevard
> > Chicoutimi, (Quibec)
> > CANADA G7H 2B1
> > 418-545-5011 Ext 5259
> >
> > At Nature's Will Inc.
> > 3801 Rang St-Martin
> > Chicoutimi, (Quibec)
> > CANADA G7H 5A7
> > 418-543-2888
> > bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
> > --

--
Sincerely,
Barent
> How about the question of moss growing on the north side of trees, for instance. What do people think of that?

> It's fine, as long as you're in the Northern Hemisphere and not in the tropics and it's wet enough to have moss.

Barrel cactus tends to lean toward the south too. Again with the same caveats as the moss.

The Tahitians that first sailed to Hawaii used stars and wave motion.

You all get serious, I'm gonna have to do some reading. I've got a book in storage called "The Navigators" It's about the polynesian methods of
navigating. Some of the best pics of the stick and shell charts they used that I've found.

And I want to know how an astrolabe works! Can I build a crude one?

If it's like a sextant, you need time too, sundials anyone?

Andre, am I out of bounds yet?

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------

Merv Martin       *              *               *
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com     *     *            *   |
| www.midtown.net/~merv      *               *          |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |

------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sat Dec 21 20:25:46 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id DAA06435; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 03:08:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id DAA08772; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 03:08:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 03:12:40 EST
Received: from butthead.globecomm.net (butthead.globecomm.net [207.51.48.13]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id DAA08769 for ; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 03:08:00 -0500 (EST)
Received: from merv.midtown.net (merv.midtown.net [205.162.100.197]) by butthead.globecomm.net (8.8.4/8.8.0) with SMTP id DAA04391 for ; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 03:11:51 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 03:11:51 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <199612220811.DAA04391@butthead.globecomm.net>
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.4
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 851260902.039
From: eaten_by_limestone@CLIFFHANGER.COM (merv martin)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
eaten_by_limestone@CLIFFHANGER.COM
Subject: Re: primitive direction finding
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Hi

Fascinating. figured I'd hit the religious side too, but haven't seen that...yet.

Chris, Andre, yes, I have had experience dowsing, both watching and doing. I can't say that it works all the time. Therefore Andre, i agree with the scientific side. I just have a problem explaining why it _did_ work those times it worked for me.

My step father, who'd be grinning from ear to ear if he'd pulled a fast one on ya, says very seriously that he can dowse water with a bronze welding rod. I don't doubt him a bit. Personally, water has never really worked for me, but an underground wire especially with electricity running through it pulls the rods down very strongly. Just not every time. I don't know how to explain the times that work or what's different when it doesn't work.

And yes Andre, I have a very deep and abiding respect for the Great Randi! There's a lot of pure bull out there, just to make a buck. I like what he's doing.

The only explanation that I've read/heard that might have a possibility of being true is that the subconscious or unconscious mind really knows the answer that you're looking for and that dowsing is a way for it to communicate with you. So your own mind is what's controlling the stick, rod or pendulum your dowsing with. Nothing supernatural, just a method of communication.

Andre, for your "flame", a question, did Schroedinger's cat care? :) :) :)

Take Care All
Merv

p.s. Andre, how's your back???
M

---Time flies like an arrow ---------------------------------------------
| Merv Martin * * *
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * * *
| www.midtown.net/~merv * *
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages)
------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 23 08:08:29 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA11746; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 22:55:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA11853; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 22:55:01 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 22 Dec 1996 22:59:34 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA11850 for
Harmon Seaver wrote:

> "Primitive" direction finding wasn't all that primitive. If you look
> into archeoastronomy, you'll find that pre-Conquest peoples in both
> North, South, and Central America had extremely accurate observatories
> all over the place. They clocked the movement of stars, planets, sun and
> moon, had buildings and whole communities arranged on lines to
> correspond with various orbits, holes in buildings where the sun shone
> thru only on the equinox, etc. The precision of their work often
> astounds modern day astronomers.
>     Since they had no magnetic compass, they didn't orient so much
> north/south/east/west as toward where the sun appeared at equinox and
> solstice.
>     Which reminds me -- today is the Winter Solstice.
>     
> --

There is a great site for archaeoastronomy at:
http://indy4.fal.cc.mn.us/~isk/stars/
I also have reprints of an article written by Jim Miller on the
so-called medicine wheel of the Mandan that has an excellent
illustration showing its various alignments with constellations,
villages and more for $3.00, available from TRIBE. Just write the
address below.

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/orienta1.htm (16 of 22) [10/22/2003 6:59:40 PM]
bmanrich@IAMEIRCA.NET wrote:
>
> BKP wrote:
>
> > Howdy,
> >
> > I'm a soldier in the US Army, stationed with a National Guard unit in
> > Virginia. We do a lot of direction finding, land navigation, and I would
> > be very interested in discussing this.
> >
> > I suppose that one of the first ways of navigating was to follow a stream
> > bank, up and down stream, to get somewhere. Still recommended for those
> > lost and unhurt to simply follow a stream down and continue until you
> > meet up with someone which is inevitable. We also look to the sun for
> > direction.
> >
> > Following some streams here in QuÈbec would sometimes lead you to a 1000 mile
> > trek without seing
> > anythin until the artic ocean! Also, many places here are height of land where one
> > creek flows...
> into the atlantic and another to Hudson's Bay and another to the Artic. So I'm not so sure about
> the follow the creek method. Also, following creeks here usually means you have to walk in alder
> (Alnus spp) swamps which makes going very rough, especially on creeks that wind and wind and wind
> around bend after bend.
> >
> > The sun and stars are indeed the safest orienteering methods.
> >
> > I must ask though, are we talking about methods used by primitive peoples
> > or methods using low tech skills? Won't always be the same. Interested
> > in hearing from other members of the group.
> >
> > Both subjects are interesting. However, I think you're opening up a very big can of worms, (we
> > could write a whole book on the subject). Maybe more specific questions will help the rest of us
> > answer.
> >
> > How about the question of moss growing on the north side of trees, for instance. What do people
> > think of that?
> >
> > Best regards,
> >
> > AndrÈ-FranÅois
> >
> > --
> > Surviving at nature's will...
> >
> > Dr AndrÈ-FranÅois Bourbeau
> > Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
> > University of QuÈbec
> > 555 University Boulevard
> > Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
> > CANADA     G7H 2B1
> > 418-545-5011 Ext 5259
> >
> > At Nature's Will Inc.
> > 3801 Rang St-Martin
> > Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
> > CANADA G7H 5A7
> > 418-543-2888
> >
> > bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
> >
> > You're toying with us aren't you? I have seen moss growing on many sides of trees, very unreliable. More reliable plant signs are the growth of mature trees seems to grow thicker and toward the south. Long standing grasses may lay in the direction of prevailing winds. But all plant signs are not to be considered as reliable as sun and constellation signs.
> 

http://www.uqac.uqquebec.ca/PleinAir/orienta1.htm (18 of 22) [10/22/2003 6:59:40 PM]
Three simple things I know of....
First and most obvious is to look at the sky and clouds. No equipment needed but it helps to have some knowledge of cloud formations, etc.

Second, you can make a cheap barometer by stretching a very thin skin (bird crop maybe?) over a small container. Could use pottery for the vessel or a bark container that is sealed with hide glue or pine pitch to make it airtight. (What you are after is something like a canning jar with a condom or balloon stretched over the mouth and tied in place.) Glue a small piece of grass in the center outside of the flexible *drum* (small stick, straw)

Place the assembly somewhere that it won't get bumped and rig up a fixed pointer that is perpendicular to the grass needle and almost touching it. As the air pressure rises and falls you can see the difference between the two pointers. Keep a log of the relationship between the actual weather and your *weather station*

Third item for primitive meteorology could be a wind vane. Large turkey tail feather would make a dandy vane, but some carving may be in order set up a good bearing for the vane to rotate on. Another option would be to make a windsock out of that thin material used on the barometer. Windsock would be my choice because it indicates both wind direction and velocity in one package.

We could resort to the *weather rock* that was used when I was a Boy Scout. It was extremely accurate, but did not have much advanced prediction. Anyone remember those?

P.S. I think our own skin surface is a pretty good indicator of relative humidity.

Hope this helped.

fTreading Softlyf

MaxWarhawk@aol.com
No web page yet, like wisdom, it's under construction.. :-)

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Thu Jan 16 11:07:26 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA21297; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 18:32:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.4.8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA08182; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 18:30:57 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
I would like to hear some ways of primitive weather predicting
(this list is great keep it up men)

jsublett@nemonet.com
I like your weather station.

> We could resort to the *weather rock* that was used when I was a Boy Scout.
> It was extremely accurate, but did not have much advanced prediction.
> Anyone remember those?

If rock is wet, it's raining
If rock is dry, it's not.
If rock has a shadow, it's sunny
If rock sticks to fingers, it's freezing

Is this the one you mean?

Still Stuck
Merv

--- Time flies like an arrow -----------------------------------------------
  | Merv Martin    *       |
  | eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * * *    |
  | www.midtown.net/~merv * * |
  | www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |
  --------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---
merv martin wrote:

> The mining of clay the formation and firing of pottery wouldn't be of
> immediate necessity in a survival situation, but I think shortly it would be
> a mighty nice convenience(sp?). Maybe even a good barter.
>
> Andre, Would this be a good topic? Should it maybe be held for a bit, it
> could be a big one.
>
> Merv

---Time flies like an arrow -----------------------------

Merv Martin * * * 
eaten_by_limestone@CLIFFHANGER.COM * * * * 
www.midtown.net/~merv * * *
www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages)

---Fruit flies like a banana---

It sounds like a great subject to me. Pottery is not as hard to produce
in a survival situation as many think. Although, it does require
 gathering usable clay (usually easier found than most realize), proper
 tempering (sand, burned shell; 25%), proper construction (Pottery being
 used for cooking must be more carefully formed than artsy pottery), it
does take a 4-7 days at least of drying time before it can be fired,
proper pre-heating and at least two firings. I'd be glad to discuss this subject in more detail.

Because of the time needed pottery would definitely be a pursuit for a long term camp. Short term it is more practical to use other methods of cooking, which would also be a great subject for discussion. As far as boiling or cooking a stew, like you would use pottery for can be accomplished by hot rock cooking in a wooden container produced by burn & scrape methods or a rawhide container that is suspended over hot coals (It does drip though. If you hot rock cook in it it does not drip) or line a pit with a rawhide and hot rock cook in it (Make sure you use a fresh hide to do this, right off of the animal. This method also cooks any remaining flesh clinging to the hide into the stew, where it won't be wasted.)

-----------------------------------------------
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA

X-Mozilla-Status: 0010

From - Mon Dec 23 10:14:55 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA18586; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 21:36:35 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA16688; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 21:36:06 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 21:40:39 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA16685 for ; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 21:35:58 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.44 (srv4s24.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.44]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id VAA26398; Mon, 23 Dec 1996 21:39:13 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE53C5.12B8@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 09:41:25 +0000
X-UIDL: 851396638.011
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
merv martin wrote:
>
> The mining of clay the formation and firing of pottery wouldn't be of
> immediate necessity in a survival situation, but I think shortly it would be
> a mighty nice convenience(sp?). Maybe even a good barter.
> 
> Andre, Would this be a good topic? Should it maybe be held for a bit, it
> could be a big one.
>
> Go for it Merv!

I suggest dividing the thread into smaller portions, for example:

Selecting clay  
Preparing clay  
Drying clay pots  
Making coil clay pots  
Making formed clay pots  
Firing pots in fire  
Firing pots underground

Etc.

Like I mentioned in my previous post on threads, let's try to keep
subject headers matching content. The best way to do this is to discuss
very specific topics.

Thank you, Merv, and don't hesitate to discuss. That's what we're here
for!

André

--
----------------------------------------------------------
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau  
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits  
University of Québec  
555 University Boulevard  
Chicoutimi, (Québec)  
CANADA G7H 2B1  
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.  
3801 Rang St-Martin  
Chicoutimi, (Québec)  
CANADA G7H 5A7
Since someone asked about producing pottery. I thought I might send out a few notes on the subject in parts over a period of time. I'll break them down in categories as Andre suggested so he can keep track of the threads for future reference. I thought I'd start with a general overview of a primitive pottery construction sequence. I have to credit Steve Watts with this nice organization of notes on this sequence. Steve is a good friend of mine and an excellent primitive skills instructor. Extremely knowledgeable. I consider him my mentor.

The sequence below is referenced in a primitive, anthropological matrix but is still very relevant to producing pottery in a survival situation. We are talking pottery for use as a cooking or eating vessel not as art. Pottery is great to cook in. It transfers heat very quickly to the contents of the pot and even allows you build up flame around a pot to cook in. Normally, flames are not used to cook with, coals are, due to flames' inconsistent temperature vs. coals consistent temperature. Cooking is another subject, but is definitely one we ought
to cover sometime in the future.

PRIMITIVE POTTERY CONSTRUCTION SEQUENCE
By Steve Watts (1989)
1. OBTAIN CLAY (Creek or river bank, bottom, etc.)
2. PROCESS
   If fresh, remove large rocks and organics, add water, if needed, wedge, knead, remove lumps. If dried, pound with mortar, reconstitute, let settle, let dry (if too wet), wedge, knead, remove lumps.
3. ADD TEMPER
   Sand, grit, shell, grog (broken pottery), etc. 1/5-1/3, knead, wedge.
4. VESSEL CONSTRUCTION
   Moulding, modeling, slabbing, coiling, welding, stretching/thinning, smoothing, malleting, etc.
5. SURFACE TREATMENTS
   Smoothing, stamping, burnishing, cord marking, brushing, cob impressing, punctating, incising etc.
6. INTERIOR TREATMENTS
   Smoothing, burnishing.
7. DRYING
   3-10 days, depending on conditions.
8. PRE-FIRING
9. FIRING
10. USE
   Cooking, storage, transportation, burial, processing, eating, etc.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive living skills. Check out our home page for more information.
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Dec 27 22:45:48 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicil.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA18085; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:59:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA10650; Fri, 27 Dec 1996 22:57:56 -0500 (EST)
Since someone asked about producing pottery. I thought I might send

---snip

Cooking is another subject, but is definitely one we ought
to cover sometime in the future.

Benjamin Pressley

I've read/heard that some kinds of pottery can be poisonous to use for
cooking. Is there anything to this, and if so, how can you tell what you're
using?

Fred
beavis.globecomm.net (8.8.4/8.8.0) with SMTP id XAA15611 for
; Sun, 29 Dec 1996 23:28:36
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Sun, 29 Dec 1996 23:28:36 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <199612300428.XAA15611@beavis.globecomm.net>
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.4
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 851985941.125
From: eaten_by_limestone@CLIFFHANGER.COM (merv martin)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
eaten_by_limestone@CLIFFHANGER.COM
Subject: Re: Pottery Overview
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>>Since someone asked about producing pottery. I thought I might send
>   ---snip
> >Cooking is another subject, but is definitely one we ought
> to cover sometime in the future.
> -----------------------------
> >>Benjamin Pressley
> >I've read/heard that some kinds of pottery can be poisonous to use for
> cooking. Is there anything to this, and if so, how can you tell what you're
> using?
> >Fred

Pottery _can_ be poisonous. Glazes can be poisonous. It depends on how you
put it all together. You're not likely to find lead in the clay you gather
because lead is a lot heavier than the constituents of the clay and would
have sunk deeper in the soil.

Example, if you use a lead glaze you can get lead poisoning. Of course if
you use gummite for glaze the pot will glow in the dark for easy finding
too! (So will you as gummite is uranium, U235.)

Benjamin may have more on this, but I think that this is what you're
referring to Fred.

Take Care and be sure your pots don't glow in the dark! :) :) :) :) 
Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------
|          Merv Martin                            *    * |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com   *    *    * |
| www.midtown.net/~merv                  *    *    * |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |
Since someone asked about producing pottery. I thought I might send

---snip

Cooking is another subject, but is definitely one we ought
to cover sometime in the future.

Benjamin Pressley

I've read/heard that some kinds of pottery can be poisonous to use for
cooking. Is there anything to this, and if so, how can you tell what you're
using?

Fred

Pottery _can_ be poisonous. Glazes can be poisonous. It depends on how you
put it all together. You're not likely to find lead in the clay you gather
because lead is a lot heavier than the constituents of the clay and would
have sunk deeper in the soil.
Example, if you use a lead glaze you can get lead poisoning. Of course if you use gummite for glaze the pot will glow in the dark for easy finding too! (So will you as gummite is uranium, U235.)

Benjamin may have more on this, but I think that this is what you're referring to Fred.

Take Care and be sure your pots don't glow in the dark! :) :) :) :)

Merv

I believe you hit the nail on the head---we had some pottery at one time that had been made in Mexico. As I recall, the pieces looked like they would make good bean pots, but somebody advised against using them for cooking. Also, I do remember that they had some glazed decorations on them. Thanks for jogging my memory.

Fred
merv martin wrote:

> > >>Since someone asked about producing pottery. I thought I might send
> > >
> > > ---snip
> > >
> > > Cooking is another subject, but is definitely one we ought
> > > to cover sometime in the future.
> > > ----------------------------------
> > > Benjamin Pressley
> > >
> > > I've read/heard that some kinds of pottery can be poisonous to use for
> > > cooking. Is there anything to this, and if so, how can you tell what you're
> > > using?
> > >
> > > Fred
> > >
> > > Pottery _can_ be poisonous. Glazes can be poisonous. It depends on how you
> > > put it all together. You're not likely to find lead in the clay you gather
> > > because lead is a lot heavier than the constituents of the clay and would
> > > have sunk deeper in the soil.
> > >
> > > Example, if you use a lead glaze you can get lead poisoning. Of course if
> > > you use gummite for glaze the pot will glow in the dark for easy finding
> > > too! (So will you as gummite is uranium, U235.)
> > >
> > > Benjamin may have more on this, but I think that this is what you're
> > > referring to Fred.
> > >
> > > Take Care and be sure your pots don't glow in the dark! :) :) :) :)
> > > Merv
> > >
> > ---Time flies like an arrow -------------------------------
> > | Merv Martin  *  *  *
> > | eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com  *  *  *
> > | www.midtown.net/~merv  *  *
> > | www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages)
> > ----------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---
>
> The pottery I will be discussing does not use glazes. It is functional
pottery that can be made from clay found and fired in a camp fire. I
hope everyone saw my previous post, though that it is possible that
there may be poisonous elements in the clay you gather. the only way to
be 100% sure is to have it chemically analyzed. But neither I nor anyone
I know has ever had any problems with this. I have cooked in pottery and
also cooked squirrel, fowl and fish in sticky mud or clay and have never
worried about it and have never got sick. I'm not downplaying the
importance of this concern, just stating that I or no one I know has
ever had any problems with it. To thine own self be true.
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

Also Check Out Ted Baileyís Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 30 05:56:03 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA00025; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 11:17:39 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA01980; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 11:17:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 11:22:00 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id LAA01977 for ; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 11:17:13 -0500
X-UIDL: 851985941.159
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
fred clark wrote:

> >>>Since someone asked about producing pottery. I thought I might send
> >>> ---snip
> >>>
> >>Cooking is another subject, but is definitely one we ought
> >>>to cover sometime in the future.
> >>>-------------------------
> >>>Benjamin Pressley
> >>
> >>I've read/heard that some kinds of pottery can be poisonous to use for
> >>cooking. Is there anything to this, and if so, how can you tell what you're
> >>using?
> >>
> >>Fred
> >
> >Pottery _can_ be poisonous. Glazes can be poisonous. It depends on how you
> >put it all together. You're not likely to find lead in the clay you gather
> >because lead is a lot heavier than the constituents of the clay and would
> >have sunk deeper in the soil.
> >
> >Example, if you use a lead glaze you can get lead poisoning. Of course if
> >you use gummite for glaze the pot will glow in the dark for easy finding
> >too! (So will you as gummite is uranium, U235.)
> >
> >Benjamin may have more on this, but I think that this is what you're
> >referring to Fred.
> >
> >Take Care and be sure your pots don't glow in the dark! :) :) :) :)  
> >Merv
> >
> >---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------
> >|             Merv Martin       *              *               |
> >| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com    *     *            *   |
> >|         www.midtown.net/~merv     *               *          |
> >|    www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages)     |
> >------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---
> >
> >I believe you hit the nail on the head---we had some pottery at one time
> >that had been made in Mexico. As I recall, the pieces looked like they
> >would make good bean pots, but somebody advised against using them for
> >cooking. Also, I do remember that they had some glazed decorations on them.
> >Thanks for jogging my memory.
> >
> >Fred
You bring out a good point. NEVER cook in a bought piece of pottery unless you have bought it from someone who has made it for utilitarian purposes, i.e. safe to cook in. Even buying pottery from the Catawba people who are one of the people that still practice the art of producing pottery in this primitive manner, should be questioned. For they produce their pottery in most cases to sell to the tourists who will not be using it to cook in. At very least, pottery improperly prepared for cooking purposes will not hold up under fire used in cooking. It is safest to make your own, if you are going to cook in it, however, if anyone wishes to purchase pottery I can recommend a source. I can also recommend a safe source of clay in Bethune, SC. He sells clean clay, ready to use for $4.00 for 25 lbs. (Inquire about shipping costs). I have used it many times. It fires well and I have cooked in pottery made from it. Anyone interested in this clay can contact: Bethune Pottery, Rt. 2, Bethune, SC, Phone: (803) 334-8346.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Tribe_Gathering.html

Also Check Out Ted Baileyís Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Prim_cal_events.html
When searching for clay you are looking for a type of soil that is plastic when moist. Look in places like stream banks, road cuts (sides of a hill exposed), even river bottoms. A good initial test for whether what you think is clay will have the elasticity needed is to roll out a long snake, then make it into a circle, pinch the circle closed, then hang it on your finger and bounce it gently. If it will do all these things without falling apart, you probably have some good clay.

To clean the clay, add enough water till you have a slurry. Let it set for 20-30 seconds, allowing the heavier stones to settle. Then carefully pour off the thinner clay solution into another container (you may need to do this everal times). Then set the slurry aside for several days. The heavier clay will sink to the bottom and the liquid may be drained off.

Clay may be stored moist or dry. If you store it moist wrap it in plastic and store in a cool, dark, dry place. If you allow it to dry then you can store it and reconstitute as needed by crushing it up fine and adding water till you get the right consistency.
Hi Ben (and everyone else too),

I experimented for a whole summer with a research assistant with short
term clay pots (trying to get from gathering clay to cooking in a pot
within a couple of days). Very limited success.

Any thoughts anyone might have on this would be appreciated. Ben, how
would you handle acquiring clay very quickly? Any ways you know of to
speed up the process?

AndrÈ

Benjamin Pressley wrote:
> > When searching for clay you are looking for a type of soil that is
> > plastic when moist. Look in places like stream banks, road cuts (sides
> > of a hill exposed), even river bottoms. A good initial test for whether
> > what you think is clay will have the elasticity needed is to roll out a
> > long snake, then make it into a circle, pinch the circle closed, then
> > hang it on your finger and bounce it gently. If it will doo all these
> > things without falling apart, you probably have some good clay.
> > > To clean the clay, add enough water till you have a slurry. Let it set
> > for 20-30 seconds, allowing the heavier stones to settle. Then carefully
> > pour off the thinner clay solution into another container (you may need
> > to do this everal times). Then set the slurry aside for several days.
> > The heavier clay will sink to the bottom and the liquid may be drained
> > off.
Clay may be stored moist or dry. If you store it moist wrap it in plastic and store in a cool, dark, dry place. If you allow it to dry then you can store it as needed by crushing it up fine and adding water till you get the right consistency.

Dr. André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA     G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA  G7H 5A7
418-543-2888
bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
> term clay pots (trying to get from gathering clay to cooking in a pot within a couple of days). Very limited success.
>
> Any thoughts anyone might have on this would be appreciated. Ben, how would you handle acquiring clay very quickly? Any ways you know of to speed up the process?
>
> AndrÈ

Benjamin Pressley wrote:

> When searching for clay you are looking for a type of soil that is plastic when moist. Look in places like stream banks, road cuts (sides of a hill exposed), even river bottoms. A good initial test for whether what you think is clay will have the elasticity needed is to roll out a long snake, then make it into a circle, pinch the circle closed, then hang it on your finger and bounce it gently. If it will doo all these things without falling apart, you probably have some good clay.
>
> To clean the clay, add enough water till you have a slurry. Let it set for 20-30 seconds, allowing the heavier stones to settle. Then carefully pour off the thinner clay solution into another container (you may need to do this everal times). Then set the slurry aside for several days. The heavier clay will sink to the bottom and the liquid may be drained off.
>
> Clay may be stored moist or dry. If you store it moist wrap it in plastic and store in a cool, dark, dry place. If you allow it to dry then you can store it and reconstitute as needed by crushing it up fine and adding water till you get the right consistency.

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

This would definitely be a subject worth looking into. I personally have not tried and am not aware of ways to shorten time to the length of time you mentioned. The important thing for a successful firing is that all the moisture be dried out of the formed pot. Any moisture, the pot
explodes or falls apart. I suppose it depends on the humidity in your area as to how fast the pot dries. It is difficult to tell when all the interior moisture is out, that's why I give it plenty of time to dry, just to be sure. I will check with some more experienced potters and pose this question to them and pass on anything I find out. Meanwhile, if anyone on the list knows of a way to shorten drying time, let me know.

The other key factor in a successful firing is to take plenty of time pre-heating the pot. Move it in slowly, closer and closer, little by little to the fire. Also keep any wind from blowing directly onto it (build a suitable windbreak or dig a pit to fire it in.). Wind will cause a spall to pop off or the pot to crack. Get a good color change before you put it in the fire. BUT, I'M GETTING AHEAD OF MYSELF AND WILL COVER THIS SUBJECT IN DETAIL REAL SOON. Let me know if you have anymore specific questions or if you need the information on the complete process any sooner. I just thought I'd give it out little by little to organize the threads and to stimulate input from others.

------------------------------------------------------------------------
NOTICE, I SHORTENED MY ADDRESS JUST A TAD. I DO WANT TO FURNISH PLENTY OF CONTACT INFORMATION, THOUGH. IN CASE ANYONE WANTS TO WRITE OR INQUIRE ABOUT ANYTHING TRIBE OR I HAVE TO OFFER. LET ME KNOW IF I CAN BE OF SERVICE!

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Fri Jan 10 21:33:57 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA02939; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 22:20:03 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA06608; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 22:17:46 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 22:22:29 EST
Received: from emout20.mail.aol.com (emout20.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.46]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA06605 for
; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 22:17:35 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout20.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0) id WAA23000 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Fri, 10 Jan 1997 22:02:38 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852992560.028
From: Ggoltz@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Ggoltz@AOL.COM
This post will serve as a partial intro (more later as time permits) and a request.

I live in north-central Minnesota and conduct archaeological and paleoenvironmental research. Much of my time is spent on researching and replicating various technologies used by Native peoples of the region (primarily prior to European contact). My most significant speciality is indigenous ceramics. For the past 15 or so years, I have been researching and replicating these technologies. My goal has been to attempt to replicate the various technologies in as close a manner to that exhibited by the archaeological record as possible, using the same materials as would have been available.

In the process, I have made several hundred vessels of all sizes and styles, and have used many of them for cooking and processing. I can say that these ceramics are amazingly sturdy and functional.

Anyhow, enough of that for now. The Request:

An archaeologist colleague with a similar background in this ceramic technology and I are submitting a proposal to the Minnesota Historical Society (MHS) press to write a comprehensive book on the subject (there is no income involved for either of us - MHS Press is non-profit and mainly concerned with book sales covering costs). The question that they have is, is there sufficient interest in this subject to make this a viable project?

Both my colleague and I think there is and we really see the need to spread this information around, hence our desire to do the book. To our knowledge, there is little published info out, and based on our combined 30 years of detailed research, much of the existing information is misleading or inaccurate (for example, has anyone really tried to produce a ceramic vessel 40 centimeters in diameter with 3 to 4 millimeter thick walls out of glacial clays using a paddle and anvil? Believe me, you will only end up with a pile of clay.)

It would seem to me that folks in this group may have enough interest in the subject to comment on this proposal.

A brief and general contents of the book would include:

- General background of ceramics - types, characteristics, dates, etc.
- Materials (clays and temper) - procurement, processing, etc.
- Chapters on: Early coil built ceramics, Late Woodland fabric container supported ceramics, and Missippian shell tempered ceramics. Each of these chapters would have information on the archaeological evidence, vessel characteristics, research on the technology, detailed description of the technology, tools used including fabrics and weaving, and any other relevant data.
- Firing - methods, materials, temperatures (as measured by modern equipment)
- Use of vessels - cooking and processing, storage, durability, waterproofing,
The plan is to have it well illustrated with black and white photos and drawings. We would like to have enough technical content to be of use to the archaeological community, but also keep it understandable by the general public. You should be able to read it, and with a little practice, make good functional clay pots. Although the subject content will focus on the region that is now Minnesota, it will be applicable to much of eastern and central North America. The subject has absolutely no similarity to ceramics of southwestern US.

I would like to include comments of interest in the subject with our proposal. Thus, if you have an interest in the subject, or any other comments (hopefully positive) I would appreciate it if you could e-mail directly to me (please don't clutter up the list) at ggoltz@aol.com. I also would appreciate details of any other existing published information on the subject. Thanks in advance for any help, and I will keep the group posted on whether or not this thing flies.

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655
FAX 218-682-3358
Subject: Digging clay
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

I was always told not to use clay that I dig up for water or eating vessels because of a high lead content in the clay.

boldrjak@computer-services.com

Heaven help us when God's tears of sorrow are dried by the heat of his anger.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Jan 13 21:56:41 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id JAA28745; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 09:25:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA06440; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 09:24:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 09:22:14 EST
Received: from emout11.mail.aol.com (emout11.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.26]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id JAA06432 for; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 09:23:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout11.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0) id JAA12799 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 09:28:05 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853252283.000
From: Ggoltz@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Ggoltz@AOL.COM
Date: Tue, 14 Jan 1997 09:28:05 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970114092803_1176478396@emout11.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Digging clay
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

In a message dated 97-01-13 23:57:14 EST, you write:
>
> > I was always told not to use clay that I dig up for water or eating vessels
> > because of a high lead content in the clay.
> > boldrjak@computer-services.com
> >

What part of the world is this where you have soil with a high lead content? It certainly is not the normal situation. If it is, don't eat the plants either.
At 09:28 AM 01/14/97 -0500, you wrote:
> In a message dated 97-01-13 23:57:14 EST, you write:
> 
> >> I was always told not to use clay that I dig up for water or eating vessels
> >> because of a high lead content in the clay.
> >> boldrjak@computer-services.com
> >>
> >> What part of the world is this where you have soil with a high lead content?
> >> It certainly is not the normal situation. If it is, don't eat the plants
> >> either.
> >
> >Grant Goltz
> >
> >Well there used to be alot of lead mining here in Kansas. I've heard more
> than one person say it, but it could be just alot of wind.
boldrjak@computer-services.com

Heaven help us when God's tears of sorrow
are dried by the heat of his anger.

Stephen Passwater wrote:
>
> I was always told not to use clay that I dig up for water or eating vessels
> because of a high lead content in the clay.
>
This is kind of a repeat, but you probably wasn't around when I put this out, so...Most concerns of toxic material in earth dug clay is unfounded. The only way to be 100% sure if clay is safe is to have it analyzed. I, personally, have never worried about it and know plenty of other people who dig and make their own cooking vessels from clay and do not know of a single incident of toxicity in the clay. However, don't just go on my experience, always, to thine own self be true. If you would like some excellent clay that you can buy that I know is safe,
because I've bought a lot from this guy and made cooking vessels from it and used them, write: Bethune Pottery, Rt. 2, Bethune, SC, Phone: (803) 334-8346. He sells it for $4 for 25 pounds, You'll have to discuss with him, though, about shipping costs.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Finding versus buying clay:
The area I live in has soil with an incredibly high clay content. I planted a tree in my backyard and dug through 3' of the toughest digging you can imagine. Then I looked at the clay, and gave it the 'turd' test. I wet it and rolled it into a long turd. It didn't break when I held it by one end. I decided what the heck. I gathered some, screened out the bigger chunks, ground it all down on a matate, and added sand.
for tempering (I've heard 50% to be the right amount, but I found it too much sand, about 1 part sand, 3 clay worked best. I mixed it with water to a good consistency and shaped it using hands wet with water. I made a couple of functional pots using the coil method. I fired them in the next campfire and was quite pleased with the results. I tried to replicate this on a survival trip. Every pot broke in the firing. Lesson: the pottery gods were angry? My guess is that the drying process was insufficient, and the moisture was too high in the clay when I fired it. Anyone else have any ideas?

Thanks
Kevin

Ben Wrote:
>I agree with your conjecture. One, the pottery has to be very dry before firing. Two, preheating is very important. Slowly move the dry pottery toward the fire, rotate it frequently. When you have a significant color change throughout then build your fire up on it. I like firing mine at least twice. In other words build the fire
up over the pottery, let it almost die down then build the fire up again. Then, let it cool down just as slow. If convenient fish it out of the ashes the next morning. Cautions: Don't let wind hit the pot prefiring or cooling down. Don't let flame touch the pot while prefiring.<

Great tips! Thanks Ben. I think I took them out of the fire in too much of a hurry, and there was a bit of a breeze. Actually, in my haste I took out one of the plates, set it on the ground, reached in with the tongs and grabbed a bowl and as I was lifting it out, dropped it on the plate and broke them both! Cheez! did I feel like an idiot. Everything I made in that batch either broke or exploded except a spoon. Live and learn. Preheating makes great sense in a situation like my first pot where it rained the whole week leading up to the firing. Thanks.

Kevin

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Sun Jan 12 20:47:53 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA13119; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 14:03:14 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA16741; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 14:02:21 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 14:00:28 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id OAA16737 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 14:02:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.157]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA102 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 13:58:33 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D943FF.363C@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 14:05:19 -0600
X-UIDL: 853163066.007
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Pottery
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Continuing the pottery thread, I began. It is good to see that we recently had someone recently join the group with, what sounds like,
quite a bit of knowledge in this area. I look forward to their input and anyone else's.

I last discussed choosing and preparing clay. I don't know remember if I mentioned in that last thread that if you buy clay for making functional pottery for cooking in, etc. be sure to by earthenware clay not stoneware clay. The reason being that stoneware clay needs a higher temperature to fire than a campfire can produce (there may be ways to up the temperature artificially in the wild. I'd have to look into that one.) Anyway, your average open fire is at 1300 degrees Farenheit, at best and very variable. Stoneware needs 1500-2000 degrees Farenheit.

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sun Jan 12 20:48:19 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA13559; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:18:35 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA17445; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:17:18 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:15:26 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA17441 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:17:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.157]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA143 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:13:27 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D9558C.38DA@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:20:12 -0600
X-UIDL: 853163066.023
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Pottery
References: <32D943FF.363C@perigee.net> <32D8D9ED.1A5E@ix.netcom.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Kevin wrote:

> Finding versus buying clay:
> The area I live in has soil with an incredibly high clay content. I
> planted a tree in my backyard and dug through 3' of the toughest digging
> you can imagine. Then I looked at the clay, and gave it the 'turd'
> test. I wet it and rolled it into a long turd. It didn't break when I
> held it by one end. I decided what the heck. I gathered some, screened
> out the bigger chunks, ground it all down on a metate, and added sand
> for tempering (I've heard 50% to be the right amount, but I found it too
> much sand, about 1 part sand, 3 clay worked best. I mixed it with water
> to a good consistency and shaped it using hands wet wet with water. I made
> a couple of functional pots using the coil method. I fired them in the
> next campfire and was quite pleased with the results. I tried to
> replicate this on a survival trip. Every pot broke in the firing.
> Lesson: the pottery gods were angry? My guess is that the drying
> process was insufficient, and the moisture was too high in the clay when
> I fired it. Anyone else have any ideas?
> Thanks
> Kevin

I agree with your conjecture. One, the pottery has to be very dry before
firing. Two, preheating is very important. Slowly move the dry pottery
toward the fire, rotate it frequently. When you have a significant color
change throughout then build your fire up on it. I like firing mine at
least twice. In other words build the fire up over the pottery, let it
almost die down then build the fire up again. Then, let it cool down
just as slow. If convenient fish it out of the ashes the next morning.
Cautions: Don't let wind hit the pot prefiring or cooling down. Don't
let flame touch the pot while prefiring.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
In a message dated 97-01-12 14:08:41 EST, Benjamin Pressely wrote:

<< Continuing the pottery thread, I began. It is good to see that we recently had someone recently join the group with, what sounds like, quite a bit of knowledge in this area. I look forward to their input and anyone else's.

I last discussed choosing and preparing clay. >>

I joined too recently to see any of the earlier pottery stuff, so please excuse me if I repeat info already covered by someone else. I will try to do a series of posts on various aspects of the subject. This first will be finding and procuring clay. I will confine all discussion to non comercial sources of materials. If any of this gets too lengthy, give a yell.

For starters, what do we really mean by clay? This depends on your perspective, be it geologist, engineer, farmer, construction contractor, or potter. My original college training, and much of my "real Job" career was as a soil scientist, so I will draw on that background to relate to the stuff we are interested in for pottery.

Technically, "clay" is a soil particle less than 2 microns (.002 mm) in diameter. The soil texture type (different use of the term than soil particle) called "clay" is material that contains generally more than 40 or 50 % clay sized particles (depending on the % of sand and silt sized particles).

What we need for pottery is neither of these. The best natural clays for the type of pottery we are dealing with contain from 30 to 40 % clay sized particles, with the remainder hopefully being half or more sand sized particles (a dominance of silt creates a rubbery or "cheesey" material which doesn't hold together). In soil science terms, these would be called "sandy clay", "sandy clay loam", or "clay loam".

Now this may sound like useless technical information, but I include it for good reason - to help you locate clay sources (at least in the US). Much of the US is covered by soil survey reports done by the USDA Natural Resource Conservation Service (formerly Soil Conservation Service). These reports are available on a county basis - check libraries, or look in the yellow pages.
for Agricultural Extension Service to track these down. The reports will have maps of soil types and descriptions of the soils. Look for soils with the texture terms I mentioned. If you read the descriptions, you will get info on how deep below the surface the good layers are and about how thick.

IMPORTANT NOTE: don't just go by the name READ THE DESCRIPTION. Something may have a name such as "Chester sandy loam", but the description may show a sandy clay loam layer deeper in the soil.

Surface soils are rarely useable, but good exposures, either natural or the more common roadcuts should be easy to find and will allow a quick examination of the soil.

Finer textured soils including "silty clay loam", "silty clay", or "clay" are useable, they just require more temper (more on this next time) added to make them useable. Coarser soils such as "loam", "silt loam", "sandy loam", or "silt" are not useable.

OK, what if you don't have access to soil survey information? In the US, you may still be able to get enough information from a county extension agent. Just explain what you are looking for - use the soil texture terms mentioned above. Otherwise, use the following tips:

- In non-arid regions, look for areas with medium to fine textured (not sandy) geologic deposits. The process of soil formation will have removed clay particles from surface layers and caused them to accumulate deeper in the soil, resulting in a zone of clay enrichment usually beginning 1 to 3 feet below the surface. This is what you are looking for. It is frequently darker and brighter colored than the layers above or below. It is usually not too thick (a foot or two is common). If you have geologic deposits that are naturally fine textured, you probably don't need to worry about soil formation.

- In arid regions, naturally occurring geologic deposits can usually be found that are useable. Soil formation will not have done the concentration for you.

- To test the material, moisten it to a workable consistency (spit on it) and roll into a coil about 1/8" in diameter with your fingers (make sure it is not too dry). If it stays together, slowly bend it into a "U" shape. If it bends without breaking or only cracks a bit (still stays in one piece) you have OK stuff. If it slightly cracks, it may be useable as is. If it doesn't crack at all and seems very plastic and workable, you will need to add some kind of temper.

With a bit of research and poking around, useable clay can usually be found in most areas. The nature and quality will vary from region to region, and probably accounts for some of the differences in technology, vessel style, and amount of pottery used by native peoples. A prime example of this is the contrast between SW U.S. pottery and that of the eastern woodlands.

More later

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655
I agree with your conjecture. One, the pottery has to be very dry before firing. Two, preheating is very important.

While it is certainly interesting to read how to find clay and make pots, under a survival conditions, who has the time?

Isn't this why so often game was coated in wet clay (or mud) and then toss onto the open fire?

Here at home, we have from-the-store clay pots we can soak in water and then cook in. Or take a brown grocery sack, oil it and bake a bird, fish etc.

But in the bush, pots making skill would be handy, if you were stuck in the same spot for a longer time. Otherwise...muddy the meat and cook it:

rich, b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
In a message dated 97-01-12 14:40:26 EST, Kevin wrote:

> My guess is that the drying
> process was insufficient, and the moisture was too high in the clay when
> I fired it. Anyone else have any ideas?

Most likely. Any trace of moisture will make them go off like popping popcorn. You cannot air dry all of the moisture out. The preheating is absolutely needed to drive out the chemically bound water. If you preheat well and still have the problem, your clay may not be tempered enough. You need to get the clay content down to around 35 percent, 40 at most. If you start with some real sticky stuff, that may be 75 % or so, you almost have to mix it half and half. As long as you can get it to stay together enough to form and dry, it will fire OK. Another common problem is having the vessel too thick. It then becomes very difficult to drive all of the moisture out by preheating.

If you still have problems after these tips, let me know.
Grant Goltz

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sun Jan 12 20:49:59 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA15629; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 21:38:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA19832 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 21:36:44 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.124]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA144 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 21:33:14 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D9AE8F.7873@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 21:39:59 -0600
X-UIDL: 853163066.080
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Pottery
References: <199701130043.SAA14541@ns2.iamerica.net>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

bmanrich wrote:

> While it is certainly interesting to read how to find clay and make pots, under a 
> survival conditions, who has the time? Isn't this why so often game was coated in wet 
> clay(or mud) and then toss onto the open fire? Here at home, we have from-the-store 
> clay pots we can soak in water and then cook in. Or take a brown grocery sack, oil 
> it and bake a bird, fish ect. But in the bush, pots making skill would be handy, if 
> you were stuck inthe same spot for a longer time. Otherwise...muddy the meat and cook 
> it:)
> >
> > rich, b-man
> >
> > RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975 !
> > "Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"*
> > Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM,Monroe, LA 71201
I agree. When I started this thread I made that point exactly to the person who asked about it. Pottery is definitely for a long term camp. There are many methods of cooking without a container. I could tell you of many I have experienced. Oh, by the way, don't use pottery at home for cooking. Most is not made to stand up to the temperatures of cooking. Some also have poisonous glazes. Even pottery bought from the few Native American peoples that still sell it should be questioned for most of them make it for the tourists for sitting on a shelf.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

In a message dated 97-01-12 19:49:39 EST, Rich Harrison wrote:
> While it is certainly interesting to read how to find clay and make pots,
> under a survival conditions, who has the time?
> >
> > Isn't this why so often game was coated in wet clay(or mud) and then toss
> > onto the open fire?
> >
> > Here at home, we have from-the-store clay pots we can soak in water and
> > then cook in. Or take a brown grocery sack, oil it and bake a bird, fish
> > etc.
> >
> > But in the bush, pots making skill would be handy, if you were stuck in
> > the same spot for a longer time. Otherwise...muddy the meat and cook it:)

To eat meat you don't need pots. You can put anything from a frog to a moose on a spit and eat it off the fire. Two things happen with pots, which would make me want to make a pot first off for survival: One, you can utilize all kinds of vegetation which would be marginally useful or not at all useful in the raw state (remember how many hours gorillas take to fulfill their fuel requirements on raw vegetation??). This makes it possible to expand the nutrition universe by at least 300 or more percent. You can include all kinds of leafy and root crops which would be only marginally eatable, or inedible, raw. Most hunter-gatherers depend about 80% on the vegetation which women gather and only a small percent on the meat which men get (this is reality, not some dream world). Meat protein contains all the amino acids which one needs plus fat, which is lacking in vegetation, so it is highly prized in non-western diets. However, you certainly can, and can more easily, live on vegetation---particularly if you cook it and thus make it more digestible to the human system.

Second, only long cooking, particularly in the presence of acid, will leach calcium from bones. You can't get the max effect of calcium by only eating barbeque. This might not be a problem for males, but if you define survival to include not just yourself, but for the perpetuation of us all, especially for more than a few days, calcium is a must. Women who are pregnant need it, infants being weaned need it, old women who are the wisdom of the tribe need it. Cooking in pots provides it.

Now, if you are in a contrived "survival" situation where you are seeing if you can "make it" for a week, the reality is that you probably don't even need to concern yourself with food, except for your own creature comforts. Your primary concern is to replace bodily fluids. In a real situation where you have no idea how long you may have to subsist, I would want to have as many potential long term skills in my bag of tricks as possible. The ability to manufacture such a useful item as ceramic pots sure beats cooking in a rusty tin can. And, BTW, you can even boil your water in a clay pot to sterilize it. Sure beats iodine.

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655
In a message dated 97-01-12 21:44:53 EST, Benjamin Pressley wrote:

> Oh, by the way, don't use pottery at home
> for cooking. Most is not made to stand up to the temperatures of
> cooking. Some also have poisonous glazes. Even pottery bought from the
> few Native American peoples that still sell it should be questioned for
> most of them make it for the tourists for sitting on a shelf.

HOLD EVERYTHING, THIS IS CRAZY.

Pottery made following the technology of indigenous North American cultures from natural clays is perfectly useable and safe to use. First of all, there are no glazes. If you make it yourself, you know that, and if you are using tourist trinkets, you are probably on the wrong list.

Second, if properly made, it will stand up to most anything. I have a pot that I have been cooking in since 1988. I have made plaster molds from the pot for casting replicas. It has spent at least two winters outside (have you ever experienced a northern Minnesota winter?). It has been loaned out for lectures, knocked about in trunks of cars, and subjected to more abuse than I can recount. It is as good as new. I have another pot that accidently spent a winter outside, right side up with leftover food in it. I discovered it in the Spring melting out of a snowbank and filled to the top with ice. That was the Spring of 1993. I still cook in that pot.

Properly made and fired pots from natural clays can be used on a gas kitchen
stove with every bit of confidence that you can give to Corning ware.

Let me recount a bit more of my own experience with these remarkable items. My first cooking attempts with this pottery were done very gently. The literature is filled with references to such things as thermal shock, fragility, and the like. It is often stated that pottery was probably not transported because it would break, and a whole lot of other nonsense. All of this is based on theoretical stuff generated by mostly middle class urban folks - the kind of people that typically go into archaeological research.

Now, don't get me wrong. I would be the last to criticize the archaeological profession, after all, I am a member of that community. But the fact is that a lot of long standing myths have been perpetuated simply because almost nobody has done the hands-on research to find the real answers.

As I was saying, I started out very gently with my pots. I started each cooking with cool water and built up the fire gradually. Over time, I got braver, since the pots were suffering no ill effects. I finally "let it all hang out" one day, and fried some meat in a pot, got it good and sizzling brown over a hot fire. Next, I added a handful of onions, and after a bit, dumped in a quart of cold water. No problem! BTW that was 1989 and it was the pot mentioned above that I made in 1988.

On another occasion, I was asked to produce a pot for a museum display in Saskatchewan. The kicker was that they wanted it to look like it had been excavated as pieces and glued back together. No problem, I thought, just will cost a bit more than a good one. When the fireing fire burned down, I removed the pot hot, hoping for some good dunting cracks (cracks from the rim caused by rapid differential cooling). I got one short one. After cooking up a good mess of fat, water and other nice things in it to "age" it, I set about to break it into pieces, inserting a screwdriver into the crack and twisting it sideways. The crack opened 1/4", but got no longer. Only when I used two screwdrivers and "leapfrogged" my way down the crack, was I able to finally break the pot into two pieces. I could have probably used that cracked pot for years with no problem. The crack had sealed after about 15 minutes of cooking, being clogged by burned food residue.

The point of this long discourse is simply to point out the myths surrounding the indigenous Woodland ceramic ceramics of North America. This, perhaps points out the even greater need to pass along this information, since nobody seems to have much factual knowledge.

As I said earlier, for other than a short term "boy scout" adventure a good ceramic pot would be one of my first survival priorities. One squirrel can make a BIG pot of stew, and it's kind of nice to be able to sit around and watch the pot boil, rather than scrounging for the next rabbit. One might also take a lesson from the archaeological record. The leavings of Paleo and Archaic hunters are pretty slim in most areas. With the advent of pottery in the Woodland period, populations began a rapid increase. Perhaps the feeding of hungry mouths became a much easier task.

Hope I haven't offended any body, that is definitely not my intent.

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655
> One might
> also take a lesson from the archaeological record. The leavings of Paleo and
> Archaic hunters are pretty slim in most areas. With the advent of pottery in
> the Woodland period, populations began a rapid increase. Perhaps the feeding
> of hungry mouths became a much easier task.

Grant,
While I agree that pottery added to the lives of Paleo tribes, I believe that you are reading too much into the "archeological record". The fact is that paleo tribes had baskets some sealed with pine pitch that was used for cooking, and even if they didn't as seen by their use by Plains and other Indian tribes in the historical record, an animal stomach or skin pouch can be used for cooking by setting it up on a tripod filling it with water and food, and then dropping heated rocks into it. Most of these items do not survive as well as pottery over time, but that doesn't mean that non-pottery users suffered from the lack of pots. Other than that great post

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
Temper is the introduction of foreign matter to the clay for the purpose of stopping microscopic cracks from continuing into bigger cracks. Have you ever drilled a hole in your car windshield to stop a crack from growing bigger? Temper is introduced in clay before forming a pot for that purpose, for when pottery is fired the entire pot is expanding and contracting and is under some incredible forces.

What is used for temper? Good choices are fine sand, crushed stone, burned shell, old broken pottery (called grog) and plant material (The earliest pottery temper in North America was Spanish Moss. Plant material is the least best of the tempers named.). Broken pottery cannot, incidentally, be recrushed and reconstituted for clay because it is no longer clay, it is vitrified. Fine material is best, but not too fine. For example, don't use real fine beach sand, use sand that has larger particles, but pick out any really big pieces.

Temper should be added to the clay, approximately, as follows: 1/5 to
1/4 temper to clay or 1 to 3. Now, I'm going to give you a real scientific way to measure out the temper, that Steve Watts gave to us that has worked consistently for me. Knead and roll out clay into a pizza about half inch thick, sprinkle with good quartz sand, pick out the big pieces (It should be well covered but only as much as will cling to the clay, not a thick layer of sand.), now roll it up and pinch the ends shut into a burrito, now squeeze and knead until well mixed throughout. I hope my unscientific approach doesn't offend anyone, if anyone wishes to give a more scientific explanation for the more scholarly among us, please do so. I, personally, like explanations that don't require a measuring stick or measuring cup. I hope some of you do. I just don't carry such measuring devices in my survival kit. I use a similar approach when I am making primitive weaponry for someone, for example, the length of their arm or their height in relation to the weapon being used.

You can temper as much clay as you wish to use or keep a bag marked as tempered clay for storage, if you need to store a quantity of it. Under ideal conditions, like at home, keep your tempered clay same as your fresh clay.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Jan 13 21:06:52 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA23459; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 18:13:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA00615; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 18:12:29 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 18:10:36 EST
Received: from emout11.mail.aol.com (emout11.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.26]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id SAA00611 for ; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 18:12:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout11.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0) id SAA02128 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 18:16:22 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853250488.056
From: Ggoltz@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Ggoltz@AOL.COM
Date: Mon, 13 Jan 1997 18:16:22 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970113171148_1958430777@emout11.mail.aol.com>
meant this to go to the group also

Grant
> ---------------------
> Forwarded message:
> Subj:    Re: Pottery
> Date:    97-01-13 12:27:16 EST
> From:    Ggoltz
> To:      chriss@nidlink.com
> > In a message dated 97-01-13 03:16:55 EST, you write:
> > > Native American Technologies have a website?
> > >
> > Yes, but I haven't mentioned it much on this list, since it seems not the
> > place to be "commercial". However, just for interest it is:
> > http://members.aol.com/ggoltz/index.htm
> > I must apologize that it at present very plain and in need of updating and
> > all of the links are not up, only ceramics and paleoenvironmental
> > modeling.
> > Hopefully will be fixing that in the next few weeks and adding some
> > interesting stuff.
> > You may also want to check out:
> > http://members.aol.com/nminn/index.htm for some of the other things
> > happening
> > around here. Has a few good photos of our archaeological field school
> > where
> > we teach Ojibwe Culture, including many traditional Native skills. It too
> > will be fixed up and updated in a few weeks.
> > Have fun
> > Grant Goltz
> Native American Technologies
> P. O. Box 121
> Longville, MN 56655
> >
In a message dated 97-01-13 14:46:16 EST, MAILER-DAEMON@aol.com (Mail
Delivery Subsystem) writes:
In a message dated 97-01-12 23:51:51 EST, Phil wrote:

> I read in a museum that the death rate went wway down in North America
> when people discovered how to make clay pots, for cooking.
> Can't remember why, though.

> Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

What it probably said was more along along the lines of there was the
beginning of a major population increase. The reason was that pottery
greatly expanded the easily available food base, primarily because it made
processing things like starchy vegetables and seeds and nut oils quite
simple. Thus, it allowed a major cultural revolution, if you will, in the
subsistence structure, making it much easier to feed more people. In
short,
food became less of a limiting factor in population size.

Certainly, stone boiling in bark, hide, or other containers was probably
practiced, but comparing that to the ease and flexibility of cooking in
ceramic pots is like comparing night to day. Try making maple or birch
syrup
by stone boiling, for example – yech! what a mess.

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655
Grant

meant this to go to the group, too.

---

Forwarded message:

Subj:  Re: Why pottey?
Date:   97-01-13 12:27:08 EST
From:   Ggoltz
To: goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

In a message dated 97-01-12 23:51:51 EST, Phil wrote:

> I read in a museum that the death rate went wway down in North America
> when people discovered how to make clay pots, for cooking.
> Can't remember why, though.
>
> Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

What it probably said was more along along the lines of there was the
beginning of a major population increase. The reason was that pottery
greatly expanded the easily available food base, primarily because it made
processing things like starchy vegetables and seeds and nut oils quite
simple. Thus, it allowed a major cultural revolution, if you will, in the
subsistance structure, making it much easier to feed more people. In short,
food became less of a limiting factor in population size.

Certainly, stone boiling in bark, hide, or other containers was probably
practiced, but comparing that to the ease and flexibility of cooking in
ceramic pots is like comparing night to day. Try making maple or birch syrup
by stone boiling, for example - yech! what a mess.

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
I read in a museum that the death rate went way down in North America when people discovered how to make clay pots, for cooking. Can't remember why, though.

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu
In a message dated 97-01-11 10:25:04 EST, you write:

<< I think I met your colleague years ago on a sabbatical leave. He was making upside down pots out of coils in a parabolic shape. Am I right on this? What's his name?

To answer your request: I think there is a major need for information on making and firing pots out of native clay and especially on how to fire them outdoors without modern means. Very little on that as far as I know, but tons on modern stuff.

I have experimented for a whole summer trying to get FAST clay pots made (within a day or two). Very limited success. I'm sure any information you could post on this subject would be very very appreciated.

>>

Andre,

Thanks for the reply. You have obviously met my colleague, Michael Budak. He manages the Grand Mound historic site for MHS. Besides ceramics and a whole range of other experimental archaeology skills and teaching, he is an avid atlatl thrower.

I will try to put together a series of short posts (don't want to overload the system) on ceramic technology to do over the next few weeks (or months) if you think such a thing is of enough interest and appropriate.

I remember my first attempt at primitive (I really don't like that term, since the technology is far from that) pottery, in fact I still have the fired pieces in a bag somewhere in my lab! (yes, pieces, it completely exploded) The main trick is to not use too sticky of a clay (helps to add sand or other temper) and be sure that the vessel is COMPLETELY DRY. Warming it for a half hour or so by the fire before tossing it in is a good idea. Once in the fire, I cover it (them) with a layer of small wood and let it rip. Fireing is usually done in about a half hour.

While I'm here, just a few more bits of info. I do have a web page (currently terribly outdated - will be updating in a few weeks and will include a gallery of western Great Lakes ceramics) at http://members.aol.com/ggoltz/index.htm if you care to check out a bit of what I am into. We (archaeologist, Dr. Christy A. H. Caine; Ojibwe Elder, Sharon McKenna; and I) also teach an archaeological field school for Hamline University each summer. It is unique in that we teach two courses, one of
which is actual archaeological field methods –three days a week, and the
other, Ojibwe culture –two days a week. The students learn a wide range of
traditional skills and teachings which put the archaeology into a perspective
that few students get exposed to. You can find a bit of last year's info on
this at http://members.aol.com/nminn/index.htm. Again, this will soon be
updated.

I will try to gradually post some of this for the interest of the group. In
the meantime, feel free to pass on the web site info if you think anyone
might be interested (not trying to promote myself, just make info available).

Thanks for organizing this group, and am looking forward to shareing as much
information as possible with the members.

Grant
Anyone who hasn't checked out Wilderness Way magazine might want to. My friend Steve Hulsey has a real nice site and Wilderness Way has some really great information. This one of the magazines I write for and I highly recommend it. He also publishes Primitive Archer magazine. There is an article at this site on direction finding, pretty basic, but good, although I'm not too sure about his reference about moss growing on the side of a tree nearest the equator. I really like the worm calling article there, though. I'm going to have to try this. A way of bringing worms to the surface of the soil by vibration. Anyway check it out:
http://www.pioneerpc.com/wildernessway/

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE
Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for
June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over,
camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive living
skills. Check out our home page for more information.
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html

Hello,
To those that do not know about this page, please give it a look see. I
think you will like it. This is the place to explore, discuss, and exchange
information on matters pertaining to history from the stone-age to the turn
of the century. It is also intended to be a place where you can find
information on various primitive technologies such as ancient methods of
firemaking, flintknapping, and what is often referred to as "buckskinning"
crafts. This is a great site. Here is the URL
http://www.geocities.com/CollegePark/4201/index.html

Merry Christmas

Gary
Earlier someone was trying to remember a uconn web site. I believe what you want is:

www.lib.uconn.edu/NativeTech/.

Steve
Hi, I'm Wanita Sears. Found out about this group from the knapper list. Sorry for the semi intro. It's hard to pin down my hubby, Joel for the computer other than to look at the messages. He is a knapper and spent much of his boyhood in the woods learning survival skills. The medicinal plant threads interest me on this list. Haven't been able to contribute much due to working on our home page the last few weeks. I will include it in our signature. The messageboard is not quite operable yet. I have Tara's permission to link to Native Tech at Uconn. That link is on the stone tool page but if you would rather go right there the URL is.

http://www.lib.uconn.edu/ArchNet/Topical/Ethno/NativeTech/NativeTech.html

Best wishes in '97,
Joel & Wanita Sears

At 06:23 PM 12/31/96 -0500, you wrote:
>Earlier someone was tryong to remember a uconn web site. I believe what you want is:
>www.lib.uconn.edu/NativeTech/.
>
>Steve
>
>
BEAR MOUNTAIN TRADERS
"In the Spirit of Woodland Ways"

Traditional Stone Tool Making
Natural Herbal Heating Pads

Three Sisters Messageboard

http://www.tiac.net/users/wsears/bearmountaintraders.html
Sorry, I forgot to put in the URL for the American Indian Ethnobotany Database http://www.umd.umich.edu/cgi-bin/herb It is well worth dropping by. You'll be sorry if you don't.

Gary
Sorry Andre, I didn't tape it, but the bottom line to the programs is the fact that these forest dwelling cultures alive today are probably the last generation to live in this manner in this area. Forest cutting, mining (contamination of the water by mercury), and agribusiness (cattle and farming) are about to sweep the viable forest from the face of the earth.

I would say that survivalist in the future will have a very difficult time at best with the competition for the diminishing wildlife, plants, and water.

As Tom Brown Jr. suggests in his on line interview (AOL - sorry I don't have the date), the survivalist of the future will have to seek out the most inhospitable terrain he can find in order to avoid the onslaught of food seekers.

Sorry about the air of doom, but I can see it coming.

JW
>the survivalist of the future will have to seek out the most
>inhospitable terrain he can find in order to avoid the onslaught of food
>seekers.

I agree up to a point, You will still have only a small percentage of
people catching and making full use of the resources at hand. It will be
those that are willing to learn the old methods and keep them alive that
will teach those that will survive.  So called primitive methods work
because their ancestors learned and proved their methods in the labratory
of nature. Failed experiments didn't survive into the next generation.

JB
James E. Burdine wrote:

> > the survivalist of the future will have to seek out the most
> > inhospitable terrain he can find in order to avoid the onslaught of food
> > seekers.
>>
> > The most inhospitable terrain will be your back yard. Most metropolitan areas have
> a three day supply of food available for sale. When the electricity goes, you have
> the supplies in your kitchen and the gasoline in your car (250 - 400 miles or less in traffic, lots
> to traffic). That wont get most of us out of harm's way and everything we take for
> granted wont be accessible without electricity to pump it, prepare it, store it, etc. If you
> survive the 48 hours, then your primitive skills need to make the most of what is available to
> you - your own backyard.
Hello Primitive Skills people (including my favorite Botanist's Christopher and Delores Nyerges),

Along that Ethnobotany thread (thanks for starting that thread, BTW), I started searching Ted Bailey's spiraling website links (Thanks Ted!) and was delighted to "find" a place that I hadn't traveled to before:

The Ethnobotany CafÈ

http://countrylife.net/ethnobotany/

You can search for the scientific names of commonly known plants, check Native American food and medicinal plants, post e-mail specific plant queries and arrange sale or trade of flora...and much more. Looks like a pleasant place to visit and have a Mesquite cappuccino. I could almost smell bread baking in the kitchen. Please check it out.

Merry Christmas Eve,

Chris Smith

AndrÈ and Jim Burdine and others,

Enjoyed your discussion on Indian plant toxicology. Don't know if any of these could be put on blowgun darts or placed in a watercourse for
fishing, but this should really help your research. I believe you asked for the scientific terms for common plant names AndrÈ, and Jim you may be researching Cherokee poisons. This seems to accomplish both.

Searching the Native American medicinal plant database at the Ethnobotony CafÈ website, I found a page listing Amerindian plants, used for their poisonous qualities, apparently. They are listed by tribe and are well cross-referenced. They're listed by their scientific names and tribal users. Click on any one of them and common names, referenced reading and a description presents itself.

Indian plant poisons
http://probe.nal.usda.gov:8300/cgi-bin/webace

Even more interesting to me was the full database (Related Links page) of 80,000 world plants used for food and medication (including antidotes for plant poisons).

http://countrylife.net/ethnobotany/

The database Search Engine was unfamiliar to me and had far more features than my VCR, but I was delighted to see that (with some fumbling and mumbling), I could do useful work. There is a help link.

I enjoyed my time in this enormous database - hope this helps.

Merry Christmas,

Chris Smith
In a message dated 96-12-30 20:49:37 EST, tbailey writes:

<< Richard Burrill in Sacramento, California sells a book about ISHI. He sent me a copy in exchange for a boomerang last Fall. He has a WWW page that has videotapes about ISHI for sale. I didn't see the book for sale on the web page, but you can send Richard email inquiries at: RBurrill@WorldTouch.com or visit his WWW page at:

http://worldtouch.com/Anthro/supplements.html >>

Thanks for the scoop. I think I recall the book ISHI (posted previously by others) had a picture of him working a hand drill. If the films show that also, it would be a big help to anyone wanting to learn the technique. One of the things that helped me after a couple of years of failed attempts was watching a quick spot on aboriginal Africans working a hand spindle on a special hosted by (I think) Charles Curalt.

John Waltz

Please Adam, could you post the references for these books you have which many of us might not be aware of? (Author, title, year of publication, publisher)

This would be much appreciated. Thank you for your post and welcome to the group.

Alright, i found only two of my collection.
Merry Christmas
Adam

MATURITY: the downfall of adulthood.

Here is a web page thought you may be interested in. Good pics of plants for medicinal use...

Sherri
http://chili.rt66.com/hrbmoore/Images/JPEGs.html

This is the homepage of the above address and has many interesting things on herbs and plants.
>This is the homepage of the above address and has many interesting
>things on herbs and plants.

That's a great link, Sherri. I will add it to the primitive technology
home page at: http://ic.net/~tbailey/Primitive.html Thanx, Ted

Ted Bailey          | email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      | Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106  | Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970   | Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:   http://ic.net/~tbailey/
Wim Vanhauwaert writes,

> Hallo,
>
> Does anybody know the book "Knife Throwing Sport .. Survival .. Defense"
> I have found (only) the title in the magazin "The National Knife Magazine".
> Could anybody give me an address where I can buy it, ISBN, comments on the
> book, publisher, author, ...

Matthew Rapaport's Thrower website has an extensive book and video page on
throwing and slinging things. The ISBN-address-review are listed (and pasted
below for you) but the price and shipping costs aren't there. Check the website
page for the full list of titles. This should help:

http://www.crl.com/~mjr/books.html

Knife Throwing for Sport, Survival, and Self Defense
Blackie Collins
Pub. (?) Knife World Publications. Box 3395, Knoxville, TN 37927
ISBN 0-940362-03-1

Very small book. OK for beginner maybe, but does not illustrate enough styles,
only one.

-------------------

Chris Smith

For thrower, send a HELP command to:
Jim Merlini wrote:

> Are the "slings" mentioned in these several e-notes what my cohort once called a "David sling"? You know: two leather thongs and a leather pouch?
> M:

Yes. Yes and Yes. Suggest you sling by Thrower's slinging page:

http://www.crl.com/~mjr/sling.html

Chris
Check out Native Tech site

http://www.lib.uconn.edu/ArchNet/Topical/Ethno/NativeTech/NativeTech.html

Joel Sears
Bear Mountain Stoneworks

At 06:29 PM 12/4/96 +0000, you wrote:
> Try van Buren (1971?) Arrowheads.
>
> Cheers, Shirley
>>
>> Anyway, for what it's worth. Anyone else got an interesting source
>> book for shapes?
>>
>> Craig
>> bakerc@hq1.ksc.nasa.gov
>>
>

From - Sun Dec 8 02:25:28 1996
Received: from majordomo.iastate.edu (majordomo.iastate.edu [129.186.1.10]) by
cic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA26441 for ; Sat, 7 Dec 1996
13:49:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from majordom@localhost by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) id
MAA08652 for knapper-outgoing; Sat, 7 Dec 1996 12:30:35 -0600
Received: from pop-1.iastate.edu (pop-1.iastate.edu [129.186.6.61]) by
majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA08647 for ; Sat, 7 Dec 1996
12:30:32 -0600
Received: from echo.i-link.net (echo.i-link.net [199.172.8.2]) by pop-1.iastate.edu
(8.7.3/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA01281 for ; Sat, 7 Dec 1996 12:30:31 -0600 (CST)
Received: from houston-1-5.i-link.net by echo.i-link.net (AIX 3.2/UCB 5.64/4.03)
id AA24113; Sat, 7 Dec 1996 12:30:21 -0600
X-Authentication-Warning: majordomo.iastate.edu: Processed from queue
/var/spool/majordomo/knapper
Message-Id: <32A9B8EE.FA5@i-link.net>
Date: Sat, 07 Dec 1996 12:35:27 -0600
Here are some more knapping sites if anyone is interested. This first one is not quite finished, but the guy knapped with Crabtree, so he must have some pretty good knowledge on the subject. Once it is finished, it may prove helpful to many on the list.

http://www.ucalgary.ca/~dthanna/flintknap.html

http://www.lib.uconn.edu/NativeTech/stone/index.html

Also, concerning posts that inquire about knap-ins, Whittaker's book has a long list in the back of what appears to be yearly knap-ins across the country. If anyone is interested that doesn't have the book, I'll post them (just as soon as I complete my FINAL for my archaeology theory class). Let me know if you are interested.

Nothing runs contrary to nature,
Only to what we KNOW of nature.

\/
/  \ 
/    \ 
/      
/  Russ  
(______)

Bonjour,

Voilà quelques références des revues de technologie primitive :

**PRIMITIVE ARCHER**  
P.O. Box 209  
Lufkin, TX 75902-0209  
1 year (4 issues) Canada is US$24  
Je suis disposé t'envoyer les copies des articles qui seraient susceptibles de t'intéresser, puisque je dispose des 15 numéros anciens (je peux t'envoyer la liste des articles)

**BULLETIN OF PRIMITIVE TECHNOLOGY**  
P.O. Box 905  
Rexburg, ID 83440  
1 year (2 issues) Canada is US$20  
C'est un must (que tu dois connaître certainement).  
Je dispose également de tout les anciens numéros (et je peux envoyer la liste des articles)

**WILDERNESS WAY**  
P.O. Box 203  
Lufkin, TX 75902-0203  
1 year (4 issues) Canada is US$ 39  
Encore une fois, je peux t'envoyer sur simple demande la liste des articles, puisque je dispose de l'entièreté des numéros.

**PRAIRIE WOLF**  
John and Gery MCPHERSON  
P.O. Box 96  
Randolph, KANSAS 66554  
Très belle série de petites publications sur les thèmes de la cuisine primitive, du feu et des cordages, primitifs, du tannage des peaux primitif, des récipients primitifs, arcs et flèches primitifs, propulseurs primitifs, chasse au cerf...  
Je dispose de l'entièreté des publications, je peux donc te faire parvenir la copie des fascicules dognes d'intérêt.

Autre ressource très intéressante,  
**TRIBE**  
P.O. Box 20015  
Charlotte, NC 28202  
Phone (704) 827-0723  
Tribe vend une superbe série de planches didactiques au sujet de :
Bark covered shelter
Burn and scrape bowl
Emergency firemaking kit
Building a debris shelter
Twisting two-ply cordage
Primitive fishing rigs and spears
Simple survival bow and arrow
Chippewa kitchen
Handy fire starters
Stone tools
Tools for drilling
Bone awls
Primitive/Survival knives
Making and hafting a stone axe
Making and using an atlatl
etc ...

J'ai reçu une publicité, mais je ne dispose pas encore de l'entièreté de leurs fiches et de leurs publications.

FIELD GUIDE TO PRIMITIVE LIVING SKILLS (3rd edition)
de Thomas J. Elpel's
Šdité par Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, MT 59747-0691

Et également NORTHERN BUSH CRAFT, de Mors L. Kochanski
Chez Lone Pine Publishing (Canada ?)

A titre personnel, je dispose d'une bonne bibliographie au sujet des modes prêhistoriques et ethnographiques de production du feu, et je peux t'envoyer des copies des kits de feu Marcassite/Silex/Amadou qui sont attestés en Belgique depuis 14.000 BP.

Surtout, il ne faut pas hésiter à me demander une copie des articles intéréssants. Je sais que l'abonnement à ces revues coûte très cher. J'ai toujours privilégié les Échanges d'informations, qui sont bien plus constructifs quand on correspond avec des passionnés.

A bientôt sur le NET.

Pascal Chauvaux

From - Tue Dec 17 09:09:27 1996
Received: from majordomo.iastate.edu (majordomo.iastate.edu [129.186.1.10]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA24748 for ; Mon, 16 Dec 1996 20:21:34 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from majordom@localhost) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) id TAA19227 for knapper-outgoing; Mon, 16 Dec 1996 19:09:24 -0600
Received: from pop-3.iastate.edu (pop-3.iastate.edu [129.186.6.63]) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA19222 for ; Mon, 16 Dec 1996 19:09:21 -0600
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by pop-3.iastate.edu (8.7.3/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA18895 for ; Mon, 16 Dec 1996 19:09:20 -0600 (CST)
I recently returned from an interesting research event that I thought I'd tell everyone about. Scott Jones teaches primitive skills at his school, Hofunee Programs in Athens, GA. His school is registered as a research site. He recently held an event to study the impact fracture of points made in the Archaic Stemmed Point tradition and document manufacturing failures. Participants had to make and haft several stemmed Archaic (Savannah River) points each into a foreshaft, make an atlatl dart on site and then cast at various targets until the point broke. Stone materials used had to be material other than obsidian, preferably quartz, cherts and some novaculite, material similar to the material found used in these type points.

The point was traced on a bag before hafting then the broken pieces were collected and it was recorded on each bag how many times it was thrown, what target it was broke on, as well as who the knapper/thrower was. Targets included a deer carcass (raunchy..whew!), several large rocks and a wooden stump.

There were some really nice breaks! We all had a great time. Who would have thought making a point and then watching it blow to bits on a target could be such fun. But, beyond having fun, this was an event with a purpose that I think will bear out some valuable information when all the results are studied, logged and evaluated. Events like this give us all better understanding when we find those broken points archaeologically. Events like this are also valuable in bridging the gap between primitive technologist and archaeologist. I for one hope to see other events like this one with similar goals.

I'm not sure when Scott will be publishing his results, but I'll pass it on how to acquire his report when it is available. If anyone is interested in Scott Jones' research and other classes he holds, write him or give him a call at: Hofunee Programs, P.O. Box 2446, Athens, GA 30612, Phone: (706) 743-5144. Tell him Benjamin Pressley from TRIBE told you about him. ---Benjamin (benjamin@perige.net)
Hi All!

I just ran across the Three Rivers Archery web page at:

http://www.3riversarchery.com/index.htm

It's a pretty cool page and they have some really neat knapping stuff. I'm getting a few friends to go in on a big order and was just wondering if anybody on the list had done business with them. Also, does anyone happen to know about laws about importing animal parts (antler & sinew). I'm in Canada, eh?

Tim
For those of you into IRC chats, there is a Tracker channel on the Undernet called #Trackers. I haven't been on yet but plan to soon. I'm told there is usually always someone there to chat with about Tracking & Tom Brown Jr.

Is there something similar for this group? Like #Primitive??

"Touch the Earth, Love the Earth, Honour the Earth...Rest Your Spirit In Her Solitary Places." -Henry Beston

Jack Paul   email: jack@ckd.berks.pa.us
PGP Key ID: 0xB783577D   The PGP key can be found on these sites:
Chickadee Home Page:  http://www.kd3bj.ampr.org/~jack/ckd.html
Howdy,

I just wanted you all to know that Benjamin has an incredible article in the January, February issue of the Backwoodsman Magazine. He covers primitive weapons in a way that would answer most of the questions we've been discussing recently. His illustrations are excellent and very descriptive. If you don't know where to get Backwoodsman you can call and talk to Lynne Richie at 719 783 9028 and get a copy. I know they are out of town for a couple of weeks (getting out of the Colorado snows!) but they'll be back.

Mention my name (if it doesn't pain you too much :>) or Benjamin's as they're friends of ours.

Happy reading!

and Way to go Benjamin!

Ron Hood
Get a giggle, Check us out!
Ron Hood Ed.D.
Sherri Wrote:

Does anyone know of one of those wilderness
> schools that is held for young boys that tries to straighten them out?

Hi Sherri,
For wilderness treatment programs check out this homepage:
http://www.natwc.org/
Also check out the best, Larry Dean Olsen at Anasazi Foundations:
ANASAZI Foundation, P.O Box 171, Buhl, ID 83316, Phone: (602)474-3445

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Rob Chatburn wrote:
> Can you tell us something about Rabbitstick. I've been meaning to go for
> several years. What type of facilities are there.
> > How is the planning and structute if any?
> >
> Rob

Rob, I'd be glad to tell you little bit about the Rabbitstick Rendezvous. It's held near Rexburg, Idaho every September. The site is on private land and is just beautiful. At night you can hear the owls hoot and the elk bugle. Last fall, on the 1st day, everything came to a standstill while we watched a flock of about 30 or so pelicans cruise the river in search of lunch.

Some of the best primitive skills instructors and practitioners in North America come to share their expertise. The best thing about it is that it is short on lecture and long on hands-on and practical experience. The only problem is that there simply is not enough time to do everything that you want to do. It forces you to select the projects that are most important to you at the time and follow 'em through.

The first day the instructors do their "advertising" of their classes so that you can select your "course of study." The schedule is posted on the bulletin board so that you can refer to it at any time.

A partial list of subjects has been: Rabbitsticks (of course), brain tanning (both primitive and modern methods), plant identification & uses, self bows, atlatls, finger & card weaving, felting, knapping (flint & obsidian), drum making, twining & net making, tule reed boats, making moccasins, medicine/peace pipes, making and firing pottery, spoon carving and the list goes on and on. The important thing is to pace yourself so
you don't try to do too much in too short of time.

When the week is over, you have new tools/toys (is toys a forbidden term?), great experiences, and best of all, new friends!

As far as accommodations go, you have a number of options. You can bring your tarp, tent, tipi, or tin tipi (camper) and camp out or you can stay in town at a motel. It's wise to be prepared for ALL types of weather. Last fall it rained the first three days, but that didn't dampen or slow down a thing. Everyone came pretty much prepared.

There is a community breakfast and dinner each day. Volunteers help the staff prepare and clean up. After dinner there's a drawing for stuff that the instructors have donated. At night there's a campfire, drumming and singing.

The Rabbitstick isn't the only primitive rendezvous, though. BOSS also holds "Wintercount Rendezvous" near Phoenix in February. Tribe (see Ben Pressley in the group) holds "The Tribe Gathering" in June in North Carolina. "Rivercane Rendezvous" is in the spring in Georgia, "Northern Lights" is in BC, Canada in June or July, and Earth knack has "The Gathering" in June in Colorado. There's more I am sure, but that's what comes to mind at the present.

That's about it in a nutshell. I hope this typed meandering has been helpful. Thanks, FP
I just discovered a new web page made by Dean Pritchard of Boise, Idaho. Actually, it is under construction, but has some great gif art already. The page has darts, arrows, axes, knives, etc. that Dean makes. He is also an atlatl thrower and his email address is: Atlatlist@aol.com

Perhaps the most intriguing thing I noticed on his page is that he makes knife blades out of recycled beer bottles. Note the following passage:

"The knife features a unique blade which is created from recycled beer bottle glass. This glass is remelted in a ceramic kiln to produce a blank which is then hand-flaked in the same manner as obsidian. The outcome is an attractive amber blade which is carefully hafted to a fire-treated wood or antler handle with hidden adhesive and a wrapping of artificial sinew. The knife has an average blade length of 8 inches and a handle of 6 inches."

My question is: Does beer bottle glass have good properties for knapping and does it have similar strength/toughness properties of other popular natural materials? Has anyone else tried doing this? What a wonderful way to recycle if it works!

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970  || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:  http://ic.net/~tbailey/
In-Reply-To: 
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:39:41 -0400
To: thrower@dfw.net
X-UIDL: 852391024.001
From: "Ted E. Bailey"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET
Subject: Re: New Web Page with darts, axes, knives, etc.
CC: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> I just discovered a new web page made by Dean Pritchard of Boise, Idaho.
> Actually, it is under construction, but has some great gif art already.
> The page has darts, arrows, axes, knives, etc. that Dean makes. He is also
> an atlatl thrower and his email address is: Atlatlist@aol.com

Whoops, I forgot to post his web page.

http://members.aol.com/atlatlist/homepage/html/wstoneag.htm

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106  || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970   || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:   http://ic.net/~tbailey/

From - Tue Jan 14 03:42:23 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA29567; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 10:48:20 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA07286; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 10:47:33 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 10:45:40 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id KAA07283 for
; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 10:47:22
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.58 (srv1s7.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.58]) by
chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id KAA15384 for
; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 10:50:52
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DABCDC.4E8E@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Mon, 13 Jan 1997 22:53:16 +0000
X-UIDL: 853257700.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
Chris Smith wrote:

> AndrÈ. What went into getting your trappers license? Tests? Bite marks? Scratches?
> Thanks alot,

Hi Chris,

The QuÈbec ministry of natural ressources forces QuÈbec residents to follow courses before obtaining hunting permit or trapping permit. The trapping license course is offered by the "Association des trappeurs du QuÈbec" and consists in 45 hours theory plus a couple days out in the field. It is rather simple, with content such as biological data on all the fur bearing animals, how to prepare furs for sale, track and scat identification, types of legal traps etc. There is next to nothing on primitive stuff (it's illegal). Basically it's a course to get the piece of paper which then lets you go out and learn for real.

Cheers,

AndrÈ the mouse trapper.

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1
Thanks for the background on the trappers licensing in Quebec. Sounds like the hunter safety and mine safety courses I've needed to take in the U.S. If a couple people near me hadn't died from Hanta virus, I'd ask you for your rodent recipes. Might be better than bug bits.

While I'm meandering, are you getting any Lyme's disease from deer ticks up your way? Most of the people in my wife's family (in wooded upstate New York) have contracted it and needed long IV runs of antibiotics.

Take it easy (I am),

Blazo
In a message dated 97-01-10 19:34:13 EST, you write:

<< seer7@Mailhost@DNACO.NET (Sherri) >>

An outdoor wilderness survival school for wayward kids is the Anasazi Project in Mesa Arizona. Phone number is 602-892-7403.

Good Luck

From - Thu Jan 2 05:44:28 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA13668; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:56:15 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA17216; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:52:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 14:57:26 EST
Received: from rand.nidlink.com (rand.nidlink.com [205.219.220.1]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA17213 for Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:52:40 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.34 (pm1-5.nidlink.com [205.219.220.34]) by rand.nidlink.com (8.8.4/8.6.9) with SMTP id MAA15095; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 12:01:51 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32CC0568.7F3A@rand.nidlink.com>
Date: Thu, 02 Jan 1997 11:58:48 -0700
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Tom Brown
References: <00011B02.3356@radian.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

I've been reading about Tom Brown on the list and wanted to point out

http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/tracker.html

There's also information for subscribing to their list:

"Subscribe to the TRACKERS List Server and share with other tracker students

(For the subject of the message type "subscribe")

(If you ever decide to unsubscribe mail trackers-d-request@muskoka.net but use the word "unsubscribe" as the subject)"

-- Chris

From:  Thu Jan 2 05:44:15 1997
Received: from dfw-ix1.ix.netcom.com (dfw-ix1.ix.netcom.com [206.214.98.1]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id OAA13481 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 14:26:05 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.92.177.104 (sjx-ca71-40.ix.netcom.com [207.92.177.104]) by dfw-ix1.ix.netcom.com (8.6.13/8.6.12) with SMTP id LAA02893; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 11:29:29 -0800
Message-ID: <32CBA4C0.704@ix.netcom.com>
Date: Thu, 02 Jan 1997 12:06:24 +0000
From: Kevin
Reply-To: KSREEVE@ix.netcom.com
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01E (Macintosh; U; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: True tracks newsletter
References: <32CB0784.57AA@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>>Kevin wrote:

I have been taking classes from Tom Brown for the past 6 years, and for the past three years have edited his newsletter "True Tracks."<<

>>Hi Kevin, I would like to hear more about this newsletter. Where can we get it, what is the content, etc.

Thanks,

AndrÈ<<

If you call the Tracker School at (908) 479-4681 and request to be added to the mailing list, they will send you a course ctalog and you will
automatically get True Tracks. (Snail-mail - P.O. Box 173, Asbury New Jersey, 08802) True Tracks is the school newsletter. It is about 16 pages long, comes out (approximately) twice a year, and contains short articles by the school instructors on various elements of school philosophy and skills, information about new classes, updates on events around the school. You can see previous editions on-line at the school's website. The URL is http://members.aol.com/trackerinc/index.html

One of the things I am going to be doing this coming year is reformat True Tracks into more of a magazine. We will call for articles on primitive skills and philosophy to be submitted. We will accept advertising, we may publish a networking section. So if you want to get published, watch here. I will make more announcements later in the year.

Hope that helps.
Kevin
If you have received this email message and you do not subscribe to the thrower, rang_list or Primitive Skills email subscription services; and you do not want future notices about boomerang related products, tournaments, and other information, please send me an email message and I'll remove you from my email database. If you do have an interest in boomerangs, please read further.

This is just a short note to let boomerangers know that I spent several hours updating all the boomerang software disks. A complete list of all software can be found at the following URL:
http://ic.net/~tbailey/Boomerang/Shareware.html

Some of the software highlights include:

1: Three complete books about boomerangs with drawings, photographs, etc. These three books are out of print classics that are required reading for anyone who is interested in boomerangs. Every photograph and drawing from the original text is included. These books are available in MS Word 2 (readable with higher versions too) format for DOS/Windows and MS Word 5 (and above) format for Macintosh. Other word processing applications may be able to open these files as well, but I can't guarantee anything. The three boomerang books include:

Michael Hanson's Book: "The Boomerang Book"
John Mauro's Book: "An Introduction to Boomerangs"
Herb Smith's Book: "Boomerangs; Making and Throwing Them"

All three of these books have been replicated with the permission of the copyright owners and I have been granted a license to distribute these files to you as shareware. That means that your only charge is my fee to copy and mail it to you. You may not market these files commercially to others.

2: The boomerang databases have been updated as of 1 January 1997. Some of the more popular files include:

a comprehensive bibliography of boomerang literature
an updated listing of collectable boomerangs with a full description of physical characteristics and collectable value
two comprehensive databases of: USA (1700+) and Overseas (1300+) throwers. This includes everything from addresses to phone/fax/email. This is an excellent source of information for finding other throwers in your city/state/country and for organizing local boomerang throws. You may not use these files for commercial purposes.

Please don't ask for database files in Mac, DOS or WIN formats. These are operating systems, not applications. The available Mac/DOS/Win file formats are listed on the web page mentioned above. Most word processing, spreadsheet and database applications can read the generic tab-text format or can import files from one of the other formats listed. Word Processing and Spreadsheet applications have only limited sorting capability. A database program is preferred for using these files. The files were created using Macintosh MS Works 4.0 and then translated to the other formats.
There are a lot of other software goodies too. Sorry, but I cannot email these files to you, even if you are related or my best friend. You need to order them through the mail. If you live in the USA or Canada and want a printed copy of the software list mailed to you, send me your postal address by email. As a January special, current Boomerang News (paid through issue #33 and beyond) subscribers are entitled to receive their disks without a shipping charge. Orders received after 1 February 1997 will require shipping unless ordered with other boomerang products. You can subscribe to Boomerang News through the instructions on the web page: http://ic.net/~tbailey/Boomerang_News.html New subscribers will receive a 10% discount coupon on Boomerang Man products.

Thanks for taking the time to read this. - Ted Bailey

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 | Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970   || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:    http://ic.net/~tbailey/

From - Wed Jan 15 00:40:11 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id JAA07981; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 09:04:44 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA19318; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 09:03:32 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 09:01:37 EST
Received: from crystal.iac.net (crystal.iac.net [199.6.32.156]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id JAA19312 for
; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 09:03:19
-0500 (EST)
Received: by crystal.iac.net id OAA11757; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 14:07:27 GMT
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853348824.042
From: gordonse@IAC.NET (Sharon Gordon)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, gordonse@IAC.NET
Message-ID: <19970115114007.OAA11757@crystal.iac.net>
Subject: Wilderness Way Journal
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Wed, 15 Jan 1997 09:07:27 -0500 (EST)
X-Mailer: ELM [version 2.4 PL25]
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Does anyone on the list get the Wilderness Way Journal? From reading the info on their website, it looked as though it
would be very helpful for primitive skills learning.

In October, I sent off for Volume 2 issues 1 and 3 to get a sample to check them out. According to the back of my check, they had it by Oct 24 when they cashed it. I tried emailing them from their website not to long ago as well but haven't heard anything.

Does anyone know anything about their situation or schedule? Anyone got these issues or any others and want to talk about the interesting articles?

Sharon
gordonse@iac.net

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA11015; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 15:59:48 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA23786; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 15:59:20 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 15:57:22 EST
Received: from binky.capnet.state.tx.us (binky.capnet.state.tx.us [141.198.136.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA23778 for ; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 15:58:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from s_bridge.rehab.state.tx.us by binky.capnet.state.tx.us; (5.65v3.2/1.1.8.2/13Nov95-1025PM) id AA14874; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 15:08:36 -0600
Received: from ccMail by rehab.state.tx.us (SMTPLINK V2.10.08) id AA853369305; Wed, 15 Jan 97 14:54:09 cst
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853362608.001
From: EDDIE.STARNATER@rehab.state.tx.us
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
    EDDIE.STARNATER@rehab.state.tx.us
Date: Wed, 15 Jan 97 14:54:09 cst
Message-ID: <9700158533.AA853369305@rehab.state.tx.us>
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Wilderness Way Journal
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Sharon,
I have subscribed to WW since the first issue. I find it interesting, informative, way to short and to long between issues :)
It only comes out quarterly. I know they are always looking for articles as well. Steve Hulsey is the Editor/Publisher and also publishes Primitive Archery
Does anyone on the list get the Wilderness Way Journal? From reading the info on their website, it looked as though it would be very helpful for primitive skills learning.

In October, I sent off for Volume 2 issues 1 and 3 to get a sample to check them out. According to the back of my check, they had it by Oct 24 when they cashed it. I tried emailing them from their website not to long ago as well but haven't heard anything.

Does anyone know anything about their situation or schedule?
Anyone got these issues or any others and want to talk about the interesting articles?

Sharon
gordonse@iac.net

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Jan 15 08:15:41 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA12107; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 17:32:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA25113; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 17:28:30 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 17:26:33 EST
Received: from cybersys.mercy.org (cybersys.mercy.org [205.225.34.178]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA25107 for ; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 17:28:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from default by cybersys.mercy.org with smtp (Smail3.1.28.1 #2) id m0vkdsA-00000gC; Wed, 15 Jan 97 14:31 PST
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID:
X-UIDL: 853368000.000
From: "Mark D. Ball"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mball@MERCY.ORG
To: ,
Subject: Re: Wilderness Way Journal
Date: Wed, 15 Jan 1997 14:31:07 -0800
Sharon, I just last week called Wilderness Way Magazine and ordered a subscription as well as back issues. They told me to expect 6 weeks for the current issue and 4 weeks for the back issues. I got the impression that they are alive and well. Their phone # is 409-632-8746, and they're in Texas (2 hr. time difference). Good luck.

Mark D Ball
Plastic Surgeon
Redding, CA
mball@mercy.org

----------
> From: Sharon Gordon
> To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
> Subject: Wilderness Way Journal
> Date: Wednesday, January 15, 1997 6:07 AM
>
> Does anyone on the list get the Wilderness Way Journal? From reading the info on their website, it looked as though it would be very helpful for primitive skills learning.
>
> In October, I sent off for Volume 2 issues 1 and 3 to get a sample to check them out. According to the back of my check, they had it by Oct 24 when they cashed it. I tried emailing them from their website not to long ago as well but haven't heard anything.
>
> Does anyone know anything about their situation or schedule? Anyone got these issues or any others and want to talk about the interesting articles?
>
> Sharon
> gordonse@iac.net
>
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA14027; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 21:29:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA27290; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 21:28:20 -0500 (EST)
Received: from arthur.INS.CWRU.Edu (arthur.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.215]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA27285 for
Does anyone on the list get the Wilderness Way Journal?

Sharon

Yes Sharon, I have every issue but the first. I had no trouble getting the subscription started. I think the articles are for the most part written by amateurs, but usually interesting and informative. In particular, I like the series by John and Geri McPherson (and a 14 year old neighbor boy) entitled "Naked Into the Wilderness" in which they are describing in installments a simulated trip into the wilderness with nothing but the cloths on their backs (could not use for anything but covering) and the knowledge in their heads. This adventure starts with Volume 1, Issue 4.

Rob

Robert Chatburn, RRT
Director/Respiratory Care
University Hospitals of Cleveland
Instructor/Dept. of Pediatrics
Case Western Reserve University
(216) 844-7930
rlc6@po.cwru.edu
Sherri Wrote:

>Does anyone know of one of those wilderness
>schools that is held for young boys that trys to straighten them out?

Sherri,

You might try SUWS Adolesence at: 714-895-0923. If that number is out-dated then try the Idaho field office at 208-886-2565.

My wife and I both worked at SUWS and some of the other programs. Not all adolescent programs are created equal, and kids have died on the trail out of pure negligence. SUWS is very safe; all the instructors wear radios, so backup personel can be there in minutes on ATV's or with a helicopter if necessary. Also, the school gives training sessions before every expedition, covering survival skills, counseling techniques, etc.

The business did change hands recently, but I would expect the same quality. Larry Olsen helped with this program before starting Anasazi.

Please note that none of these programs are cheap. You can expect to pay $5,000 or more for a 3 week expedition. Sometimes insurance covers the cost.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
E-mail us your postal address for information on our three books.
From - Tue Jan 14 04:25:34 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA01764; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 16:00:15 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA11753; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 15:59:35 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 15:57:41 EST
Received: from kirk.dnaco.net (kirk.dnaco.net [206.150.232.3]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA11749 for
; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 15:59:24
-0500 (EST)
Received: from sherri (uhura-12.dnaco.net [206.150.232.112]) by kirk.dnaco.net
(8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA28992; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 16:03:24 -0500
(EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199701142103.QAA28992@kirk.dnaco.net>
Date: Tue, 14 Jan 1997 16:05:17 -0500
From: Sherri <"seer7@Mailhost"@DNACO.NET>
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, "seer7@Mailhost"@DNACO.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0Gold (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tomelpel@3RIVERS.NET
Subject: Re: youth rehab programs
References:
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Tom Elpel wrote:
>
> Sherri Wrote:
>
> I will pass this on to Glenn.  I am afraid tho that these will be more
than he can financially afford.  THis is the sad part.  The kids that
need these type of things most are "outpriced".  hummm...perchance there
is a need for low income type of primitive rehab that rescues our
average everyday kids.  This would help to re-direct their
destructiveness in to a positive direction.  Most of our kids that are
in trouble are either bored and/or unable to have any purchasing
power...unconnected.  My son is 25 but I would have loved to send him to
one of these when he was younger.  But I am rambling....thats for your
imput.  I will pass it on.

smiles,
Sherri

> You might try SUWS Adolesence at:  714-895-0923.  If that number is
> out-dated then try the Idaho field office at 208-886-2565.
>
My wife and I both worked at SUWS and some of the other programs. Not all adolescent programs are created equal, and kids have died on the trail out of pure negligence. SUWS is very safe; all the instructors wear radios, so backup personnel can be there in minutes on ATV's or with a helicopter if necessary. Also, the school gives training sessions before every expedition, covering survival skills, counseling techniques, etc. The business did change hands recently, but I would expect the same quality. Larry Olsen helped with this program before starting Anasazi.

Please note that none of these programs are cheap. You can expect to pay $5,000 or more for a 3 week expedition. Sometimes insurance covers the cost.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
E-mail us your postal address for information on our three books.

From - Thu Jan 16 11:07:40 1997
Received: from mailgate.execpc.com (root@mailgate.execpc.com [169.207.16.5]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA22627 for ; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 21:43:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from kzin.execpc.com (kzin.execpc.com [207.67.17.38]) by mailgate.execpc.com (8.8.4/8.8.3) with SMTP id UAA01769 for ; Thu, 16 Jan 1997 20:52:26 -0600
Date: Thu, 16 Jan 1997 20:52:26 -0600
Message-Id: <199701170252.UAA01769@mailgate.execpc.com>
X-Sender: winged1@mail.execpc.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Light Version 1.5.2
Mime-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
X-UIDL: 853470086.005
From: Heidi
Subject: **find aee website
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id VAA22627
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="iso-8859-1"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

At 11:48 PM 1/11/97 +0000, you wrote:
> Heidi wrote:
>>
>>
>> I didn't know that you had a doctorate in education. I assume you have
>> heard of the association for experiential education then? they also have a
>> web page site that is excellent.
>>>
>> Hi Heidi,
>
> Please send the location for this site if you can... I was a member for
> many years back in the 80's. Would like to look at it and see what has
> changed since...
>
> Thanks,
The AEE web site can be found at http://www.princeton.edu/~rcurtis/abee.html

I really like the type of people this organization attracts. So, if you were involved with this organization in the 80s have you met Bert Horwood? I have a feeling you know him? I've just hooked up with AEE the last year or so... so I don't know much about the internal organization. I went to the International Conference in '96 and got hooked! It was awesome. It was the first time I felt I could bump elbows with professionals who weren't stuck up high on that academic pedistal. They were all *real* people. I learned more at that conference than I had in all my schooling to become a special educator.

Trying to stay warm in the WI winter storms ;)

~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
flowin' in the river of life,
  Heidi, Student Advocate
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

From - Fri Jan 17 23:54:21 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
  chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA27382; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:28:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
  poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA14872; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:27:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
  with SMTP; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:25:09 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by
  poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id MAA14863 for
    Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:26:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.124]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with
  SMTP id AAA109; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:22:51 -0500
X-UIDL: 853606174.043
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jonesmr@VNET.IBM.COM
Subject: Re: Colorado Wild edible help
References: <32DFC51D.76A6@perigee.net>
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id
  MAA14866
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
Mike Jones wrote:

> I have recently subscribed to this list and think that there is a lot of
> good information that is passed around. I have been serious about
> learning wilderness survival skills for the last three years and because
> of that interest, I have my scout troop working towards a week long
> wilderness survival high adventure this summer. We are based in
> Longmont which is just northeast of Boulder 15 miles.
>
> One of the areas that we need the most help on is with wild edibles. I
> have Peterson's guide and a Rocky Mountain guide but am interested in
> still more sources of information. If anyone would be willing to do a
> field trip or know of someone that would like to do a field trip with
> either my whole troop or just myself and the other scoutmasters I would
> really appreciate it. Sometime in May or June would probably be best
> for a field trip as our trip is currently planned for the third week (snip)

I'm sending you a rather lengthy list. I hope you find someone near you.
I have marked the ones that are a little higher priced with a $ sign. They are worthwhile, though. Most of them have plant knowledge, some as indicated, specialize in plant knowledge. Also check out the publication below, Wild Foods Forum. Vickie Shufer is editor and can help you find someone also. I would also contact Christopher Nyerges at Survival Services below. He is one of the best out your way on plants. Let me know how else I can help!

PRIMITIVE, SURVIVAL AND WILDERNESS LIVING SKILLS TEACHERS:

Barry Keegan, Pathways School, 6 Heather Lane, Elmsford, NY 10523,
Phone: (914) 592-8961

He and his partner, Anthony Follari are two of the most skilled people I have met. They communicate well and their experience in the field is apparent. Write for a full schedule of their classes.

Bear Thistle, Jim & Gloria Robbins, P.O. Box 429, Dudley GA 31022,
Phone: (912) 676-4120

Jim and Gloria teach many primitive skills. Primitive drilling techniques, stone carving, basket making, bag weaving and much more. They also sell custom made jewelry.

$ Boulder Outdoor Survival School, Inc., P.O. Box 1590, Boulder, CO 80306, Phone: (303) 444-9779

B.O.S.S. has much to offer In primitive and survival skills workshops from a week to 27 day long hands-on training. Write for a schedule of classes and products they have available. They are also a good resource to connect you with some particular craftsman, book or resource you may be having trouble locating. Dave Wescott is director and is well known for his contributions and and skills in primitive and survival technologies. He organizes Rabbit Stick Rendezvous and is editor of the Bulletin of Primitive Technology.
Camp Antiquity, Ken Sherron, 131 Ranch Dr., Ponca City, OK 74601, Phone: (405) 765-3722
Training camps in primitive skills. Regular courses include 5 day intensives in brain tanning, flint knapping, friction fire making and cordage. Classes usually run Monday through Friday. Weekend classes by appointment. Family oriented. Drugs and alcohol prohibited.

Errett Callahan, Piltdown Productions, 2 Fredonia Ave., Lynchburg, VA 24503
Errett Callahan specializes in and conducts workshops in flintknapping, primitive skills, archery, etc. and sells stone knives, flintknapping supplies and a starter set for the beginning flintknapper, complete with instructional flashcards. Catalog available. He is very renowned worldwide as an exceptional experimental archaeologist. He is founder of the Society of Primitive Technology.

Eustace Conway, Turtle Island Preserve, Rt.1, Box 249B, Triplet, NC 28686, Phone: (704) 872-7972
Native American Culturalist. School programs, teacher workshops and Museum presentations available on various Native American skills. Braintan hides for sale. Brochure available.

Flintworks, Scott K. Silsby. 6604 Placid St., Falls Church, VA 22043, Phone: (703) 533-0056
Scott is the best teacher and tool maker, when it comes to greenstone tools. He also teaches workshops in flintknapping, bow and arrow making and sells greenstone and greenstone tools.

Hawk Hurst, E.A.R.T.H. Programs, Silver Water Retreat, Hawk's Hoops, 2511 Bald Fork Rd., Todd, NC 28684, Phone: (910) 385-1401
Rainsticks, Bamboo, Gourds and instruments, such as, drums, rattles and flutes, for sale. Hawk Hurst has workshops to offer that allow you to create and build your own drum, flute, rattle and rainstick. They also have E.A.R.T.H. Programs (Earth Awareness programs/Re-experiencing Tribal Heritage), Primitive Skills Summer Camps for ages 7-12, Wilderness Weekend Survival Treks and Family Camp Weekends. Hawk and his wife Ayal now conduct classes at beautiful Silver Water Retreat A 214 acre site with waterfalls, a refuge for all plant and animal life. Silver Water Retreat offers examples of low Impact, environmentally appropriate technology, environmental skills and many programs through the educational center. It is also a place of seclusion for peaceful retreats and encounters while one explores their own personal creativity. Plans also include a replicated village of primitive shelters from around the world and a community of people to live on site permanently as part of the program and goals they envision.

HOFUNEE Southeastern Indian Programs, Scott Jones, P.O. Box 2446, Athens, GA 30612, Phone: (706) 743-5144
Scott has some very good workshops in various primitive skills. He has appeared on TV on such programs as Earthmatters and Earthnet. He is very skilled and very entertaining. He also sells rivercane for blowguns and arrows.

Jeff Holshouser, 8535 Bringleferry Rd., Salisbury, NC 28146, Phone: (704) 639-9082
Jeff teaches some excellent workshops on flintknapping, especially...
for those just starting out in flintknapping. He also collects artifacts and sells casts of originals and will do other replication.

Jim Lowery, Earth Skills/dirt times, 1113 Cougar Court, HC 2, Box 8132, Frazier Park, CA 93225, Phone: (805) 245-0318
Jim directs a variety of primitive skills classes and tracking. Also ask about their great little newsletter that focuses on tracking, wilderness skills and nature awareness. It comes out quarterly and focuses on the Southern California area, but has some good information that would be good for any area. Not only do they have articles on tracking, they also have articles on many primitive technologies. Back issues are available and a catalog. Subscription Price is $12.50 ($15.00 International)

Jim Riggs, Contact: Lucille Housley, Malheur Field Station, HC72, Box 260, Princeton, OR 97721, Phone: (503) 493-2629
Specializing in primitive technologies and living skills. Workshops available, write for schedule and locations.

Jim Roberts, 111 W. Trinity Ave., Durham, NC 27701, Phone: (919) 688-1430
Cross cultural percussionist, hand drum teacher, drum maker, instructional tapes for sale.

John C. Campbell Folk School, Brasstown, NC 28902, Phone: 1-800-FOLKSCH
School specializing in various folk and ancient skills and crafts. Catalog available.

John McPherson, Prairie Wolf P.O. Box 96, Randolph, KS 66554, Phone: (913) 293-5310
Workshops available in various primitive living skills. Books and videos for sale.

John White, Ancient Lifeways Institute, Michael Hollow Rd., Michael IL 62065, Phone: (618) 576-9255
Educational center specializing in Midwestern Native American life and skills 300 years ago.

Keith Grenoble, 1012 Madison Lane, Falls Church VA 22046
Keith is very skilled in many different primitive living skills. He is an excellent, good natured patient teacher.

Linda Runyon, Wild Foods Co., Inc., 13239 W. Shadow Hills Dr., Sun City West, AZ 35375, Phone: (602) 933-8675
Linda Runyon knows edible and medicinal wild plants. Linda learned from the Iroquois people while living in the Adirondack wilderness for 13 years. She was once on Ripley's Believe It or Not TV show for feeding 200 people a banquet from harvesting a 10 foot square of yard for 15 minutes a day for three weeks! Wild Foods Classes every Wednesday, 7-9p.m.

Living History Workshops, The Berkeley Museum, 950 Story Landing Rd., Moncks Corner, SC 29461, Phone: (803) 899-5101, Contact: Mark Butler
Mark Butler is the program director and has classes in many different primitive skills to offer.
Mountain' Mel Deweese, Learn To Return/Survival Experience Reaction Education/Nature Knowledge, 1825 Linden St., Grand Junction, CO 81503, Phone: (303) 242-8507

Mel is very highly skilled in many primitive and survival skills. He knows more ways to start a fire without matches than anyone I know. He has trained Navy SEAL's and various military personnel in tropic, desert, arctic, mountain and woodland conditions. He is featured on one of the Woodsmoke videos, Fire III. He is not only a good teacher, but is also very entertaining.

Musselshell Traders. Paul & Snowbird Dinsmore, HCR 67, Box 11, Mosby. MT 59058, Phone: (406) 429-7828

Teaches Northwest Coastal Native American (Colville, Kootenai, Blackfoot, Cree) tanning method. Wet scrape, smokes, then brains hides. Also sells finished hides and trades 7 scraped hides to 1 finished hide.

Nature & Vision Tracking School, Charles Worsham, RFD 4, Box 446 Thomas Rd., Madison Heights, VA 24572, Phone: (804) 846-1987

If you're looking for classes in tracking Charles Worsham is one of the best. He teaches animal and man tracking. Write for brochure.

Kathleen & Preston Roberts, Rt. 1, Box 200-A, Hays, NC 28635, Phone: (910) 957-3459

Two very skilled and gifted teachers of primitive skills. Preston is also a fine braintanner and makes buckskin clothing.

Steve Watts, Schiele Museum of Natural History, P.O. Box 953, Gastonia, NC 28053, Phone: (704) 866-6912

Director of Southeastern Native American and Aboriginal Studies Program at Schiele Museum. Write for schedule of workshops available in various aboriginal skills with emphasis on the Southeastern Native American. Replicator of Southeastern pottery, points, etc.

Steven 'Snow Bear' Taylor, Yonah Earthskills, Rt. 5, Box 396, Hayesville, NC 28904, Phone: (704) 389-9336

Specializing in primitive and pioneer living skills, edible, utilitarian and medicinal wild plants, tracking, stalking, nature awareness, storytelling, music and primitive cooking. Available for contract work. Brochure available. Co-organizer and founder of annual Earthskills Workshop/Rivercane/ Falling Leaves Rendezvous in Unicoi State Park, Helen, Georgia.

Survival Services, Christopher Nyerges, P.O. Box 41834, Los Angeles, CA 90041, Phone: (213) 255-9502

Wild food outings. Classes in survival. Products.

TACACHALE Programs, Sam Lawson & Ann Gill-Lawson, 871 Willis Lane, Dublin, GA 31021, Phone: (912) 274-9008

Té Tachachalei means éto light a new firei. They teach ancient principles and practices through material culture, primitive skills, legends, stories and southeastern ethnohistory in order to bring new understandings in environmental and cultural studies.

The Chapman Log House Building School, Don & Bonnie Chapman, Rt. 8, Box 739, Mooresville, NC 28115, Phone: (704) 663-5080

Don Chapman is a log home builder, artist and historian. He teaches
traditional Appalachian log home construction techniques.

Tony Breda, The Swimming Turtle, 1322 Dalton Rd., Towson, MD 21234, Phone: (410) 882-9339
Tony offers classes in edible wild foods, aboriginal daily skills (primitive cooking, hide tanning, shelter construction, etc.), primitive tool making, native fishing techniques (spears, nets, traps, etc.) modern wilderness survival, primitive pottery and basket making, Living with the Earth (survival campouts). Classes at various locations in Maryland, Virginia, Yukon and Great Britain. Also makes and sells great dugout canoes suitable for museums or for using.

TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, Phone: Benjamin Pressley (704) 827-0723, E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
Visit us on the Internet: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
TRIBE is an organization dedicated to bringing together people interested in primitive technologies on a regional basis and providing a medium whereby knowledge and resources may be shared with one another. This is accomplished through the regional newsletter, TRIBE, the annual primitive skills event, TRIBE GATHERING and co-operating with, co-operating with and promoting primitive skills teachers and practitioners of primitive technologies.

TRIBE has a year long schedule of workshops and classes in many primitive, outdoor and survival skills and crafts. We handle some of the best primitive skill instructors in the country. To find out about our exciting schedule request free TRIBE Information Packet or check out a sample of the newsletter only $2.50.

TRIBE also offers a service to any primitive, outdoor or survival skill teacher or practitioner that wishes to teach. TRIBE offers their service as a staff, provides promotional literature, advertising, provides students and collects all fees. The guest instructor receives their required fee and TRIBE charges 20% over the guest instructor's required fee. This money pays for expenses of this service and the rest goes back into the organization for future expenses to benefit primitive skill practitioners everywhere who know of and benefit from TRIBE.

Willow Winds, Jim Miller, Director, 962 F-30 West, Mikado, MI 48745, Phone: (517) 736-3487
Jim is an experienced braintanner and offers workshops in braintan and many other primitive skills. He has replicated items for the movies, such as Dances With Wolves, Thunderheart and others. He has braintan buffalo and elk hides available for sell.

Workshops In Primitive Living Skills For Children And Educators, Jeff Gottlieb, 57 Westgate Rd., Massapequa, NY 11762, Phone: (516) 232-2903
Abo Replicas: Shelters, Tools, Games and Toys/ Natural Creations: "Wild" Baskets, Rattles, Fiber Art Jeff has many programs to offer adults and children and is very qualified. Here are some of his offerings: Life Zones of Planet Earth/ Primitive Technology/ The Deer People/ Wilderness Survival/Ancient Days and Native Ways/ Stories From the Earth Write for price list. "I look at survival and aboriginal living skills as a way to get closer to the Earth, which supports us all as a mother cares for her children. I teach in order to help people reconnect with the web of all life." --Jeff Gottlieb.

THESE MAGAZINES, NEWSLETTERS AND ORGANIZATIONS ARE ALSO A GOOD RESOURCE
WITH A LOT OF GOOD INFORMATION TO OFFER AS WELL AS WHERE PEOPLE ADVERTISE CLASSES:

Backwoodsman Magazine, P.O. Box 627, Westcliffe, CO 81252, Phone: (719) 783-9028
"The Magazine for the 20th Century Frontiersman Specializing In Trapping, Woodslore, Survival, Gardening, Muzzleloading and Homesteading". A great all around magazine! $15.00 per year. $28.00 for 2 years.

Backwoods Home Magazine, 1257 Siskiyou Blvd., #213, Ashland, OR 97520, Phone: (805) 647-9341
A really great magazine on all aspects of self reliant living; home building, alternative energy sources, farming/gardening, health, environment, etc.

Boomerang News, Ted E. Bailey, P.O. Box 6076, Ann Arbor, MI 48106
News on Boomerangs, Rabbit sticks from around the world. $10.00 per year ($12.00, Canada. $20.00 Overseas).

Bulletin of Primitive Technology, Society of Primitive Technology, P.O. Box 905, Rexburg, ID 83440, Phone Voice/FAX: (208) 359-2400
More than a magazine, the official bulletin of the Society of Primitive Technology. The most highly technical, yet understandable, magazine on various primitive technologies I have ever read. Contains articles by all the big names in these technologies. Join the Society and order their back issues while you can at $10 per issue. Free classifieds for members. $25.00 year. Subscription price includes annual PrimitiveTechnology Newsletter.

Coltsfoot, Rt. 2, Box 313A, Shipman, VA 22971
A bi-monthly newsletter published in appreciation of wild plants. Contents include articles on edible and medicinal plants. Subscription Rate: $10.00 per year (Sample Issue: $2.00)

dirt times, Published by Earth Skills, 1113 Cougar Court, HC 2, Box 8132, Frazier Park, CA 93225,
Phone: (805) 245-0318, Editor: Jim Lowery
Great little newsletter that focuses on tracking, wilderness skills and nature awareness. It comes out quarterly and focuses on the Southern California area, but has some good information that would be good for any area. Not only do they have articles on tracking, they also have articles on many primitive technologies. Back issues are available and a catalog. Subscription Price is $12.50 ($15.00 International)

Herbal Voices, 3936 Mt. Bliss Rd., East Jordan, MI 49727
A quarterly newsletter for plant crafters. It has articles on medicinal plants, edible plants and many other plant related topics. They are also forming a network for people who use herbs. Subscription Rate: $12.00 per year

Journal of the Great Lakes Primitives, George Hedgepeth, Editor, G-3450 South Linden Rd., Suite 119, Flint, MI 48507
Newsletter on various primitive skills and activity focusing on activity in the Great Lakes area. $10.00 per year

Michigan Flintknapperís Newsletter, Robert Love, 8185 Kiowah Trail,
Pinckney, MI 48169
The newsletter of the Michigan Flintknappers about flintknapping. $10.00 per year.

Pathways, The Newsletter of the National Association of Therapeutic Wilderness Camps, NATWC, 174 Underwood Farm Rd., Cleveland, GA 30528
This an organization that is a network of camps that uses wilderness living skills as a tool to reach troubled youth with a therapeutically sound, non-punitive approach. They hold an annual conference and have such distinguished members on their board, such as Larry Dean Olsen (ANASAZI Foundation, Outdoor Survival Skills). $25.00 per year or join their organization with full benefits for $40.00 (Individual), $30.00 (Full-time student).

Pow-Wow Listing, John Blackfeather and/or Lynette C. Jeffries, 511 Latimer St, Hillsborough, NC 27278, Phone: (919) 732-8512
A one page newsletter that lists Pow-wows going on all over. Subscription price is three self addressed stamped envelopes. send to address indicated,

Pow-Wow Trails, P.O. Box 1188, Long wood, FL 32752-1188
Extensive listings of Pow-Wows and articles. Subscription Price: $12.00 year--I 2 issues

Prehistoric Antiquities & Archaeological News Quarterly, Dept. 301, Box 53. N. Lewisburg, OH 43060
Prehistoric artifacts for sale and trade, articles on current archaeological findings and research, calendar of events for meeting, auctions and shows, books and supplies. To Subscribe: Sample, $5. 1 Year Subscription (4 issues). $20 (Canada $4. Sample, $6)

Primitive Archer, P.O. Box 209, Lufkin, TX 75902-0203, Phone: (409) 632-8746.
This magazine is dedicated to the primitive bowyer, hunter and archer. They deal strictly with wooden bows, not compounds, not artificially laminated. Articles on choosing bow woods, flintknapping, constructing bows, tales of hunting and hunting how-to with primitive bows, romance of the bow and primitive hunt, arrow making, resources... just about anything having to do with primitive bow and arrow making, hunting or archery. They also have a bowyer's help line, network exchange of tips and information and opportunities to trade hunts. Subscription price is $16 per year. Canada $24, Foreign $31. Published quarterly.

The Caretaker Gazette, 1845 NW Deane St., Pullman, WA 99163-3509, Phone/FAX: (509) 332-0806, E-mail: garydunn@pullman.com Here is an idea worth considering. How would you like to have your housing provided by a landowner and live rent-free with no mortgage obligations? It is possible as a property caretaker. There is an increased demand for property caretakers across the U.S. watching over someoneis property in their absence and in some cases on nature retreats, ecological preserves, camps, national and state forests. Thea Dunn is doing a great service and has researched this field and has began a publication called The Caretaker Gazette. If you are interested, this newsletter is worth receiving. Subscription Price: $15.00 (6 months, 3 issues), $24.00 (1 year, 6 issues), $44.00 2 years, 12 issues).
Recently, Lou Becker, Ron Rappaport, George Hedgepeth and Jim Gilligan organized a group called the Michigan Atlatl Association. They have a great newsletter to offer that will keep you informed about the many atlatl and primitive skills events going on in the Great Lakes area. Lou Becker had the idea of starting an atlatl association in Michigan and they already are planning a boar hunt and some patches with their great looking logo on them. They will be networking with many other groups like TRlBE. It's great to see people getting together and networking, so we can support one another. If you're interested in joining send $10.00 dues to: Lou Becker, President, 5940 Urban Dr., East China, MI 48054, Phone: (810) 765-4623.

The C.R.O.W. Call, P.O. Box 187, Bogota, NJ 07603, Phone: (201) 48& 0446

The quarterly newsletter for Children Respecting Our World, A fine newsletter that deals with many environmental issues and just general respect for the earth. They are also an organization that teaches primitive skills and holds an annual rendezvous. Well written and entertaining. Subscription Price is $10.00 per year.

The Food Insects Newsletter, Florence V. Dunkel, Ph.D., Associate Professor, Editor, Dept. of Entomology, Room 324, Leon Johnson Hall, Montana State University, Bozeman, MT 59717-0302, U.S.A. Phone: (406) 994-5065. FAX: (406) 994-6029.
E-mail: UEYFD@MSU.OSCS.MONTANA.EDU

This is the first newsletter I've ever seen dedicated to eating insects! That's right, I said, eating insects. Great newsletter that contains recipes on preparing insects as food like Hot Mealworm Appetizers, Mealworm Cookies, Mealworm Canapes, Marinated Termite Queens, Bee Larvae Dip, Chocolate Covered Crickets, Locust Brochettes. Makes me hungry! They actually sponsor insect tasting feasts for the public. The newsletter comes out March, July and November and costs $5.00 per year (Back issues: $1.50).

The Flintknapperís Exchange, 278 W. 8th St., Peru, IN 46970
A clearinghouse for knappers. Bi-monthly newsletter. Subscription Rate: $12.00 per year.

The Wild Foods Forum, P.O. Box 61413, Virginia Beach, VA 23462
Wonderful bi-monthly newsletter dealing with wild, edible and medicinal plants. Articles, recipes, resources and reviews. Vickie Shufer is the Editor and she and her staff do a great job. You will definitely want to check this one out. Sample copy: $2.00. Annual Subscription: $15.00. International: $16.50.

TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, Phone: (704) 827-0723, E-Mail: tribe@perigeecom
Visit us on the Internet: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Founded by Benjamin Pressley and Robert Likas. A newsletter for anyone who is interested in what is going on in primitive technologies on a regional basis. Free classifieds to members. Presently only $10.00 per year for 4 Issues ($14.00 for countries other than U.S.), a minimum, non-profit cost to cover printing and postage. $3.00 for a sample issue. Also allows members to print biographies of themselves, wishes to contact others of like interests in their area, needs for raw
materials, workshops, products for sale or trade, anything of interest to the practicing primitive may be printed, primitive skills schools and events, articles, humor and much more.

TRIBE also handles many primitive skills instructors and has a year long schedule of classes and workshops in a variety of skills and crafts for anyone interested in primitive, outdoor, aboriginal, Native American and survival skills and crafts. For a complete listing of these workshops request the FREE INFORMATION PACKET.

The annual TRIBE Gathering is a weekend of learning primitive skills with some of the best instructors in the country. Held annually every year on the second weekend of June. A hands-on, family oriented learning experience for the serious primitive technologist as well as anyone interested in primitive skills.

Wilderness Way, P.O. Box 209, Lufkin, TX 75902-0203, Phone: (409) 632-8746
Internet Home Page: http://www.pioneerpc.com/wildernessway/

Steve started Primitive Archer magazine, and now also publishes this magazine with articles on many primitive skills. He is also attempting to support it with subscriptions alone so that display ads will not dominate article space and offer free advertising in back to subscribers. Subscription Price: $18.00 (U.S., Domestic), $39.00 (Canada), $49.00 (Foreign)

CLUBS/ORGANIZATIONS:

American Knife Throwers Alliance, c/o Bobby Branton, 4976 Seewee Rd., Awendaw, SC 29429, Phone: (803) 928-3624
Competitive knife throwing and newsletter. Membership: $25.

Great Lakes Primitives, George Hedgepeth, Editor, G-3450 South Linden Rd., Suite 119, Flint, MI 48507. Internet Homepage: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/GLP.html
Newsletter on various primitive skills and activity focusing on activity in the Great Lakes area. $10.00 per year.

Michigan Atlatl Association, 7273 Hamburg Rd., Brighton, MI 48116, Phone: (810) 231-2314
Internet Homepage: http://ic.net/~tbailey/Primitive/MAA.html
Recently, Lou Becker, Ron Rappaport, George Hedgepeth and Jim Gilligan organized a group called the Michigan Atlatl Association, They have a great newsletter to offer that will keep you informed about the many atlatl and primitive skills events going on in the Great Lakes area. Lou Becker had the idea of starting an atlatl association in Michigan and they already are planning a boar hunt and some patches with their great looking logo on them. They will be networking with many other groups like TRIBE. It's great to see people getting together and networking, so we can support one another. If you're Interested in joining send $10.00 dues to: Lou Becker, President, 5940 Urban Dr., East China, MI 48054, Phone: (810) 765-4623.

Michigan Flintknapperís, Robert Love, 8185 Kiowa Trail, Pinckney, MI 48169
A group of flintknappers and primitive technologists that meet regularly and hold annual events. They are donation supported. To maintain membership you must be actively contributing to the group in
some way or by contributions, suggested, $10.00. They have a fine news letter for all members and contributors to their group.

The National Association For Interpretation, P.O. Box 1892, Fort Collins, CO 80522, Phone: (970) 484-8283, FAX: (970) 484-8179

If you are an educator and/or prehistoric/historic interpreter, NAI is an organization you may want to be a part of. An organization that provides a medium of communication for American Indian interpretation, environmental education, resource-heritage tourism, Africa-American experience and many others. They also provide services such as a newsletter (NAI News), Annual National Interpreterís Workshop, jobs in interpretation, a guide to suppliers of services and resources, training opportunities, membership directory and much more.

Society of Primitive Technology, P.O. Box 905, Rexburg, ID 83440, Phone Voice/FAX: (208) 359-2400

A network and magazine that is more than a magazine, the Bulletin of Primitive Technology. The most highly technical, yet understandable, magazine on various primitive technologies I have ever read. Contains articles by all the big names in these technologies. Join the Society and order their back issues while you can at $10 per issue. Free classifieds for members. ($25.00 year). Subscription price includes Primitive Technology Newsletter.

The World Atlatl Association, Inc., Leni Clubb, P.O. Box 56, Ocotillo, CA 92259
Internet Homepage: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/WAA.html

The World Atlatl Association organizes many events and keeps records of atlatl use, such as distance of spear thrown by atlatl (now over 848 feet!). They also publish a newsletter with archeological data and modern day accounts of hunts and contests with the atlatl A great organization and resource for the modern day mammoth hunter. Annual membership dues are $10.00.

United States Boomerang Association, USBA Membership, c/o Tom Tuckerman, 55 Barrett Rd. #333, Berea, OH 44017

The USBA is a non-profit corporation dedicated to fostering all aspects of the sport of boomeranging: competition, science, art. You are invited to become a part of a growing international sport, to accept the physical and intellectual challenge of the returning boomerang. The boomerang, a stone age tool, with its complex aerodynamics remains relevant in modern times. Membership in the USBA is only $10 per year and entitles you to 4 issues of Many Happy Returns, the Informative USBA newsletter, with up-to-date information on competitions, technology, design, personalities, resources, collectibles and more. Also, qualify for entry into tournament thrower rating system. Send checks and money orders made out to USBA.

------------------------------------------------------------------------
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
Hi all,

A couple weeks ago I posted some wet-scrape resources. I mentioned that Steven Edholm and Tamara Wilder had a book out on Wet-scrape, but did not have the title or other information on it. I've since received a flyer in the mail. The book is called "Wet-Scrape Braintanned Buckskin: A practical Guide to Home Tanning and Use" ISBN 0-9654965-4-6 pr send $17.95 plust $3.00 postage to Paleotechnics, Box 876, Boonville, CA 95415.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
United States Boomerang Association, USBA Membership, c/o Tom Tuckerman, 
55 Barrett Rd. #333, Berea, OH 44017

NO. NO, NO!

THE ABOVE ,long ago, out of date. THE correct and long-current address:
USBA P.O. BX 182, 
DELAWARE, OH 43015.

ATTN. Gregg Snouffer.

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"*
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG....sent anywhere!
*"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

From - Sat Jan 18 20:37:04 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by 
chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA08117; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 23:40:47 - 
0500 (EST)
Received: from ns2.iamerica.net (ns2.iamerica.net [205.173.248.33]) by 
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA19998 for 
; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 18:36:20
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [205.173.249.56] (ias_ppp0147.iamerica.net [205.173.249.56]) by 
ns2.iamerica.net (8.6.13/950817.04ccg) with SMTP id RAA12702 for 
; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 17:41:19
-0600
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199701172341.RAA12702@ns2.iamerica.net>
Subject: Re: Colorado Wild edible help
Date: Fri, 17 Jan 97 17:40:22 -0600
X-UIDL: 853606174.096
From: bmanrich
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bmanrich@IAMERICA.NET
To: "dr. A.F. BOURBEAU"
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="US-ASCII"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> 
> >
> >United States Boomerang Association, USBA Membership, c/o Tom Tuckerman, 
> 55 Barrett Rd. #333, Berea, OH 44017
> NO. NO, NO!
> 
> THE ABOVE ,long ago, out of date. THE correct and long-current address:
> USBA P.O. BX 182, 
> DELAWARE, OH 43015.
>
> ATTN. Gregg Snouffer.
>
> RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
> "Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"*
> Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
> FREE CATALOG....sent anywhere!
> *"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.
> >>>>> bmanrich@iamerica.net<<<<

Mark D. Ball wrote:
>
> Ben, thanks for responding to my question about brain tanning. I like the
> idea of stretching the hide with the knees. I am still uncertain, however,
> about how deep to dry-scrape on the hair side. When you have scrapped off
> the shiny epidermis, should the base of the hair follicles still be
> visible? I thought I had gotten the epidermis off, but I still had hair
> follicles visible in the hide. Should I have kept going? I've never seen
> it done, and it's hard to tell from the descriptions I've read.
>
> Mark D Ball

Mark: There's a book out on dry scrape brain tanning that I found to be an excellent resource. It's called Blue Mountain Buckskin by Jim Riggs. It Costs $12.00. Write him at 72501 Hiway 82, Wallowa, OR 97885 The Book is very well written and Jim has a great sense of humor. You'll find it answers a lot of questions. Even ones you haven't thought of yet!

There was a question of how do you get brains. Supposedly, each animal comes with enough brains to tan its own hide, but friends of mine that do a lot of brain tanning get pork brains out of the meat section at the grocery store (you might have to hunt a bit. Not all stores may carry it).

Keep on Truckin'

FP
>snipped IAW Andre's instructions:
> Upon the mention of fire making, one fellow said that he had discovered
> FOX FIRE and that he had gathered enough to read in the dark....While I
> have certainly heard the term "fox fire", I'd never known its properties.

Fox Fire is the luminescent rotting wood often found in the forest, at
least here in the south. I have often seen it, sometimes in quantities
large enough or bright enough to be useful for performing light requiring
tasks, but not often. It is not a fire starter, and I have never heard
it referred to in reference to actual combustion. You may have heard of
the Fox Fire books (a series of 10 I think) which are interviews
conducted by high school students, mostly of "experienced" people in the
Rabun county area of North Carolina. I have the books, great info and
reading, ISBN: 0-385-07353-4, 0-385-02267-0, 0-385-02272-7,
0-385-12087-7, 0-385-14308-7, 0-385-15272-8, 0-385-15244-2,
0-385-17741-0, 0-385-17744-5, and 0-385-42276-8. The series (of
books, I think that there were magazines or articles earlier than
that) started in 1973. Unfortunately, the editor and founder of the
group was convicted of child molestation and ended his relationship with
the group 2-3 years ago (I think).
Long post but I could talk more about the books, as to your original question, I think that foxfire (correct spelling) is interesting but of limited practical use.

--

Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

From - Tue Jan 21 02:47:02 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA22890; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:11:48 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA12239; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:10:54 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:08:05 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA12228 for
; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:09:47
-0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.166]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA102 for
; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:02:30
-0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E43383.6DA7@perigee.net>
Date: Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:09:55 -0600
X-UIDL: 853818488.040
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Austro-Italian Mountain Man
References: <199701191852.TAA25590@termsrv.kitz.netwing.at>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Alexander J. Pirchl wrote:
>
> Does anyone know where I can get the latest information about the
> "Iceman".
> This was the name given to the 5300 year old corpse found in the Alps
> between Italy and Austria. Of particular interest to me was the report of
> his grass jacket. Anyone have any idea about how it might have been
> constructed?
>
> The mummyfied corps of the stone-age hunter, who is lovingly called "Oetzi"
> (because he was found on a glacer in the Oetztal) was found not very far
from where I live (about 2 hours drive). There is much material available about him here in Austria because the local interest, but it's unfortunately all in german, but I'll do a little research about him and the numeros tools found with him (especially his weapons) and post it to the group. If you have any additional questions please contact me, and I'll see what I can do!

Greetings,

Alexander J. Pirchl

Jochbergstr. 6
A-6370 Kitzbuehel

I keep a file on the iceman and would be interested in anything you have to pass along, I don't read German, though. Thanks! Along the same lines, how about all those caucasian corpses found well preserved even down to the cloth clothing on the Chinese border! I know this isn't recent news but Discover magazine had some awesome photo coverage of these corpses.

------------------------------------------------------------------------
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Tue Jan 21 02:47:07 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA23119; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:42:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA12444; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:39:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:37:57 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA12440 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:39:34 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.166]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA62 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:35:12 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E43B26.D6F@perigee.net>
Date: Mon, 20 Jan 1997 21:42:30 -0600
X-UIDL: 853818488.043
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
If anyone has the name, address, phone, etc. of good tracking teachers (good strong physical tracking skills, no hocus-pocus) please pass them on to me (private e-mail, please) I have very few tracking teachers in my list of resources. I'd be glad to share the sources I know of. They need not be well known, just good at what they do and willing to share their skill. I'd particularly be interested in any teachers on the east coast of the U.S. I know about Charles Worsham in Virginia. I have recently been hearing about Mark Warren in Georgia. Anyone know anything about Mark? Any other teachers of tracking?

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:  TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
> > love to hear more about animal habits which would make their capture
easier in survival situations.
> > However, I would ask everyone to please respond to those aspects dealing
> > with non-physical tracking skills off-line. I insist.

AMEN!

From - Tue Jan 21 02:47:17 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA23977; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 00:00:40 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA13164; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 23:58:02 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU (pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU [128.205.35.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id XAA13161 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 23:57:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: (goetz@localhost) by pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU (8.7.5/8.6.4) id AAA17682; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 00:01:51 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
I took a weekend class from Paul Rezendes, author of "Tracking and the Art of Seeing" (ISBN 0 944475 29 9), an excellent tracking book that has tons of great pictures (he's a wildlife photographer) and is much more fun to read than Murie's book. I recommend both the book and the classes.

He takes a group of 8-16 people on a semi-random walk through the woods near his home. He or his assistant may have gone out earlier that day to look for something interesting. He points things out and answers questions as he goes. For example: Stunted hemlocks, crazy twisted beeches (oak? already I'm forgetting), cut-off oak and hemlock branches, curious two-by-two tracks in a straight line, scraped bark on the less-steeply sloped side of a white oak, and little cashew-shaped scat, all of which indicate browsing by porcupine. How you can study the branching pattern of mountain laurel and hemlock to get a history of deer population over the last five years. Pits where great trees once stood -- a tree falls out of its grave, not into it, and the pit remains long after the tree has disappeared. How coyote, otter, and weasel like to leave their scat in prominent places. That scat diameter is more indicative of species than length or volume. Debris piles and stash holes of red squirrels. Bare patches under hemlock trees used by deer bucks to announce their presence in mating season. Small clipped-off buds on blueberry bushes that tell you how many rabbits are about. He also told us what not to look for: wintergreen, partridgeberry, and red cedar are not mammal food and tell us little about deer or rabbit populations. We saw so much scat I'm amazed I could ever walk through the woods without coming back with shit on my shoes.

Walking with Paul leads me to believe that seeing what is in the wilds is not a matter of increasing your "awareness", but of knowing what to look for.

He wasn't really interested in tracking down animals. He doesn't study minute details of tracks to try to follow a trail. He just needs a few tracks to tell him that a fisher was here yesterday evening, and he knows what the fisher was probably doing. He says the way to find animals, whether you are a hunter or a nature photographer, is not to know where an animal has been, but where it is going to be. Once he has looked over the patterns in the woods he can predict with reasonable accuracy who will be where when.
After the classes I took a walk in the Catskills, looking for any of the
things he had pointed out. I was excited to find a strange, tubular brown
scat, composed of woody bits in some sort of brown leafy wrapper.
Paul says that scat scent is often the best clue to its origin, and it
proved so in this case -- what I had was a stomped-on soggy cigar.

If you know someone who knows these sorts of things,
then of course you don't have to go all the way to Massachussetts.
I suppose you could gain similar knowledge from taking walks with anyone
who spent a lot of time observing nature. But for those of us not lucky
enough to know any such person, Paul's classes are great.

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

Paul Rezendes
Bearsden Rd., Star Route,
South Royalston MA 01331
508 249 8810
www.windfall.com/users/bdwilson/rez/rez.html
If anyone has the name, address, phone, etc. of good tracking teachers (good strong physical tracking skills, no hocus-pocus) please pass them on to me (private e-mail, please) I have very few tracking teachers in my list of resources. I'd be glad to share the sources I know of. They need not be well known, just good at what they do and willing to share their skill. I'd particularly be interested in any teachers on the east coast of the U.S. I know about Charles Worsham in Virginia. I have recently been hearing about Mark Warren in Georgia. Anyone know anything about Mark? Any other teachers of tracking?

Charles Worsham is the best by far. Tom Hanratty is another good tracker but he is in Wisconsin. He runs Medicine Hawk Wilderness Skills in Milwaukee (414)482-8722. Tom teaches animal tracking classes and classes on "forensic tracking" (using tracking skills in crime scene analysis etc.) also as he is a former medical examiner for Milwaukee County.

To go a bit further a field I have heard good things about Jim Lowry in California and a guy named John Stokes, although I don't have addresses or numbers for either. I can get them and post them on the list. Another good tracker on the east coast is Paul Rezendes. I believe he is located in New York (but I could be wrong about this). Paul is the author of "Tracking and the Art of Seeing". He is a photographer by trade. Another tracker that comes to mind that I would recommend is James Halfpenny. Jim is the dean of "scientific trackers" and the author of "Mammal Tracks of North America". He's good. Sorry I don't have addresses for any of these people other than Charles Worsham. For those interested, his address is:

RFD 4, Box 446 Thomas Rd.
Madison Heights, VA 24572

Mark

From - Wed Jan 22 00:33:20 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA02797; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:47:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA23907; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:45:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
  with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:44:03 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA23899 for
  ; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:45:47 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.122]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA105 for
  ; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 20:41:45 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E5801D.4F33@perigee.net>
Mark Zanoni wrote:
(snip)

> To go a bit further a field I have heard good things about Jim Lowry in
> California and a guy named John Stokes, although I don't have addresses
(snip)

Jim Lowery's address is:
Jim Lowery, Earth Skills/dirt times, 1113 Cougar Court, HC 2, Box 8132,
Frazier Park, CA 93225,
Phone: (805) 245-0318
Jim directs a variety of primitive skills classes and tracking. Also
ask about their great little newsletter that focuses on tracking,
wilderness skills and nature awareness. It comes out quarterly and
focuses on the Southern California area, but has some good information
that would be good for any area. Not only do they have articles on
tracking, they also have articles on many primitive technologies. Back
issues are available and a catalog. Subscription Price is $12.50 ($15.00
International)

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Most seeds purchased for consumption will not germinate. The seed companies have hybridized their varieties until only their farms can plant and harvest germinating seeds. If you buy seed corn and plant it, the corn you harvest will not germinate. There are some natural seed companies that may be able to help you. Try herbnet:

http://www.herbn.net/university.html

Maybe others will know more of this.

--

   RACCOON
   ^.....^  
(==o=o==)  
:::(  o  ):::
:::(  o  ):::

Mike Andreasen
mailto:mikea@maf.mobile.al.us

On beautiful Mobile Bay on the Alabama Gulf Coast
>If anyone has the name, address, phone, etc. of good tracking teachers
>(good strong physical tracking skills, no hocus-pocus) please pass them
>on to me (private e-mail, please) I have very few tracking teachers in
>my list of resources. I'd be glad to share the sources I know of. They
>need not be well known, just good at what they do and willing to share
>their skill. I'd particularly be interested in any teachers on the east
>coast of the U.S. I know about Charles Worsham in Virginia. I have
>recently been hearing about Mark Warren in Georgia. Anyone know anything
>about Mark? Any other teachers of tracking?
>
>------------------------------------------------------------------------
>Check out Del Hall at

Nature Awareness School
PO Box 219
Lyndhurst, VA 22952
(540) 377-6068

He has a great school just off the Skyline Drive. He teaches survival
skills, nature observation, tracking, native philosophies, edible plants,
tanning, and log cabin building. Highly recommended.

Rob Chatburn

From - Wed Jan 22 00:35:01 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA04531; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:13:21 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA26524; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:12:44 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:10:17 EST
Received: from arthur.INS.CWRU.Edu (arthur.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.215]) by
> Not to open Pandora's Box, but,
> If anyone has been to Jon Young's school, would you mind emailing me
> personally? It is nearby and I am wondering about his classes. I would
> love to hear about your experience.

I just finished listening to Jon Young's tape series "Seeing Through Native
Eyes". The sound quality was not good and there was not a lot of specific
information. But perhaps even better, it contains a very good plan for self
study complete with suggested readings. The benefit of a good teacher is
that they can suggest what to value and pay attention to and what to avoid.
And they can suggest exercises that save a lot of trial and error time. The
tape series offers this.

Rob Chatburn

From - Wed Jan 22 03:48:26 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca (poste.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA09271; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 14:41:29 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA02968; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 14:40:43 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 14:38:47 EST
Received: from emout05.mail.aol.com (emout05.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.96]) by
poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id OAA02961 for
; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 14:40:24
-0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout05.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0)
id OAA09296 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca; Wed, 22 Jan
I've taken a couple of classes with Paul Rezendes. He's from Western Massachusetts. He is good at sign tracking, and is self-taught. He doesn't put much faith in aging tracks, micros and macros, etc. He's most comfortable around the Quabbin it seems.

In a message dated 97-01-26 00:01:24 EST, you write:

> Does anybody know of some remedies for Nettle (Urtica spp.) stings. I know
> Jewelweed (Impatiens capensis) is a good remedy, but it does not grow in
Chickweed (Stellaria media) cream is very effective. This is made by combining about 50 grams of the fresh herb with 150 grams of emulsifying wax (this is made by combining oil or fat with water into an emulsion, best done slowly in a blender or something similar - like making mayonaise), 70 grams of glycerine and about 80 ml of water. Heat it all up and simmer for about 3 hours, then strain through a jelly bag. Put in small jars and store in the refrigerator.

For most effective relief, this treatment can be combined with an infusion of 5 grams (dried herb) of each of the following: Nettle (Urtica dioica), Heartsease (Viola tricolor), and Calendula (Calendula officinalis) in 750 ml of water taken regularly during the day. Or: A decoction of 5 grams of the root of each of the following: Dandelion (Taraxocum officinale), Yellow dock (Rumex crispus), and Burdock (Arctium lappa) in 750 ml of water. Drink 2 cups a day.

This all sounds kinda complex, but if you really have a problem with the nettle rash....

This book is an excellent source of information and I would highly recommend it to any seriously interested in herbal remedies and the like. Although it is a bit pricey ($40.00), it has more info than a handful of cheaper books combined.

BTW, for those interested in medicinal plants, check out the "Medicinal Plants of Native America Database" at:


This and a bunch of other interesting plant info is at the National Agricultural Library of the USDA.

Once you get to this site hit the "query" link. At this point I would recommend doing the "Fuzzy Search" option. You will have to select the MPNADB database (and/or some other ones) and hit "search" to get an input form.

This is an enormous database with everything cross-linked. It may seem too complicated at first glance, but play around a bit - there are tons of info there.

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655

From - Mon Jan 27 19:21:34 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.3/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA27084 for ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 19:05:42 -0500 (EST)
Kevin Bennett wrote:
> According to the book "Ethnobotony of the Thompson Indians" by Nancy J
> Turner et Al (Published in 1970 by the Museum of British Columbia) the
> tribes in this region used the plant as follows:
> 
> BTW, does any one know if Nancy J Turner is still around? I'd love to ask
> her some questions about her work.Kevin,
If you have that book by Nancy Turner, hold on to it. They are out of
print and very
hard to find. They are re-releasing some of her books by different
publishers, but it
is slow work.
Nancy teaches at the University of Victoria in Victoria British
Columbia. I will look
into getting an address or email address for her.....stay tuned.
Mark

"What is here is elsewhere.
What is not here is nowhere"

-Vishvasara Tantra

--------------
Kevin,
Nancy Turner's email address is: nturner@uvic.ca
--
Postal Paranoia: the reluctance to post questions or comments due to the fear of having one's THREAD BIT OFF! (boo, hiss, sick pun) OK, OK, I just couldn't resist.

Actually, this silly posting pun may be quite appropriate given the content of recent discussions........

Hello one and all. I've been an observer of this list for a couple of weeks and feel it's about time to apply the humble introduction.

Basically, I have no formal wilderness training and have little to offer beyond the ENTHUSIASM of a kid, the THEORIES of many, and RESPECT for all

To be honest, I feel like a thief, sitting back enjoying the discussions and picking up some choice little tidbits. My only boast of outdoor knowledge is that I have learned many things from the Great Queen Mother Earth herself, who in my humble opinion has no mentor, nor competitor.

Hopefully I will be able to contribute something in return for the abundant harvest of information.

Anyone here built Tepees? Many aspects of them are quite appealing (to me) They are natural, functional, portable, comfortable.... I have a good story about shelters but will save it for later.

Thank you all for your posts and participation. And a special thanks to Andre for providing the Primitive-Skills-Group list info via the knapper. (seems that knapper traffic has fallen off greatly though, you agree? : )

ff Wisdom, like a web page, is always under construction ff :-)
HOWARD BARKER wrote:
>
> I have used sphagum moss a couple of times but only the sanitized kind right of
> off a tree limb. it does have a tendency to leave some residual particles of
> plant matter behind. haha but it seems to get the job done and i believe it has
> medicinal values. does anyone know of any???

I've heard of it being used to dress and pack wounds, although I can't
say I've tried it. The Indegenous folks in this area used
sphagnum to pack baby diapers. It absorbs moisture better than
most sponges I've seen.

Another non-medicinal use is for insulating shelters. It's especially
effective as an insulator after it's dry, though. I have found this to
be extremely useful, especially in regions like mine where ground debr
of any quality is scarce or non-existant at certain times of the year.

Mark
Well Dave, A Survival shelter that I can recommend is kinda difficult to explain. I'd have to draw it for you. But it's a round shelter, it's walls are stacked walls, with four poles going up in the center which surrounds the fire pit. Bracing the poles are beams tied around the top of the poles. Now. Put long poles all around on top of the stacked walls to for the roof leaving enough room for a smoke hole. Then put slabs of brark or whatever on top of the logs, and gather up a huge amount of leaves and brush and pile it on.

It should be twelve feet wide from the inside of the stacked wall to the
other inside side. (Say that five times fast:-))
   My friends and I made one and has kept us warm whenever we camp out in it in the winter, and cool in summer.
   Any question please feel free to ask!

   Joe Schilling .'

From: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca on Tue, Jan 21, 1997 10:29 AM
Subject: survival shelter
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca

howdy primitives

   Can anybody recommend a survival shelter that will provide protection from the elements, warmth, hold 6-8 persons and by assembled in a day. Would this be as simple as building one extra large debris hut? Ideally this shelter should be built in any season. I am looking for this shelter to be built in May. Looking forward to hearing these responses. Benjamin, great article on primitive cooking.

   Dave McMullen
   mcmullen@paprican.ca

---------- RFC822 Header Follows ----------
Received: by smtpmac.bah.com with ADMIN;21 Jan 1997 10:29:06 U
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73])
    by booz-mail.bah.com (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id KAA06258 for
         ; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 10:22:47 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12])
    by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA15991; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 09:55:13 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
    with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 09:53:15 EST
Received: from paprican.ca (paprican.ca [198.168.7.11]) by
MCMULLEN David wrote:

> howdy primitives

> Can anybody recommend a survival shelter that will provide
> protection from the elements, warmth, hold 6-8 persons and by
> assembled in a day. Would this be as simple as building one extra
> large debris hut? Ideally this shelter should be built in any season.
> I am looking for this shelter to be built in May. Looking forward to
> hearing these responses. Benjamin, great article on primitive cooking.

> Dave McMullen
>mcmullen@paprican.ca
My opinion: For a group of this size, I would make a bark tipi or a bark hogan with a fire in the middle. I don't believe in debris huts (see next post).

AndrÈ
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1
I just don't believe in debris huts. Can someone try and convince me?

The theory behind a debris hut is that you create insulation around your body. The only insulating material in the world is trapped air. Granted, a debris hut will work in a nice dry environment with lots of debris which create a lot of airspaces. Even so, it will take one person many hours to make even a moderately functional model. That's too long! Also, when wet, I'm sorry, but there is no air in water, and in my experience, a debris hut will only work if you make it while it is dry out and it doesn't start raining bad enough to soak it through. Once it is wet, it contains hardly any air, therefore no air space, therefore no insulation.

When it is wet and cold out, there is no way that I've ever been able to stay inside a soaking wet debris hut without freezing to death. Seems to me there are much better shelters available, and that staying dry is the absolute priority in survival.

Also, in real survival situations, you never have more than an half hour or so of daylight available.

Furthermore, moreover and in addition, what do you do when there is no debris, when there's just a bit of snow on the ground etc. Seems to me
that debris huts have been way over-emphasized as a useful survival shelter.

Shelters in general is too big a subject for one thread, so I'm looking here just to discuss the merits (or dismerits) of debris huts. Does anyone have any data on debris huts? Please state condition of debris, weather before and after construction, type of clothing used etc.

BTW, I was just kidding about the convincing part. I'm just trying to learn about a technique I know very little about...

Thanks for your help,

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca /
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec /0000\0/0000\ 555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvX______\
My experience with the debris shelter is in 15 degree farenheit temperature with about 6 inches of snow accumulation. I know you Canadians and Rocky Mountain people laugh at that snow accumulation! Anyway, I tested this shelter under the conditions stated with jeans and a T-shirt and it performed very well. However, I agree with you, it took way too long to construct, took a lot of effort and would be my choice only if I could not do better and/or if there was plenty of debris to build it, easily accessible. I had about 24 inches of debris on the exterior and had the interior stuffed with dry leaves that I packed it full with and packed down 3 times before I crawled in. I have not tested this shelter in a down pour but I have heard that it does not shelter from rain, it soaks through. I would love to hear from some people's experience what their favorite emergency shelter is.

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> I just don't believe in debris huts. Can someone try and convince me?
>
> The theory behind a debris hut is that you create insulation around your
> body. The only insulating material in the world is trapped air.
> Granted, a debris hut will work in a nice dry environment with lots of

From - Wed Jan 22 00:33:31 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA03289; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 21:53:30 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA24779; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 21:50:57 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
    with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 21:49:03 EST
Received: from bort.mv.net (bort.mv.net [192.80.84.6]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca
(8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA24776 for
; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 21:50:43
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.22.5.23 (knh-1-03.mv.com [207.22.5.23]) by bort.mv.net
(8.8.3/mem-951016) with SMTP id VAA24457; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 22:44:41
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E54841.7FD4@virtualmountain.mv.com>
Date: Tue, 21 Jan 1997 22:50:41 +0000
From: Bruce
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bc@VIRTUALMOUNTAIN.MV.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
Subject: Re: Debris huts???
References: <32E44F5C.39CC@saglac.qc.ca> <32E57A6C.1279@perigee.net>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> I just don't believe in debris huts. Can someone try and convince me?

> snip!

I'm a firm believer it making what fits the environment/location/weather/time/etc. and am not stuck on one design. I've had good luck with debris type huts (I prefer to call them squirrel nests) and variations on them, plus other types of shelters.

If the material is there, and the time, I'll make a debris hut. I have used very wet leaves once while in a downpour, and was soaking wet while making one, but when it was done and I crawled inside and took off my wet clothes, I was warm. It was above freezing for that one. I had mostly cotton on (jeans, t-shirt, wool sweater and a nylon jacket) The coldest I've been in one overnight was -10f. I didn't have the door well made and it leaked cold air the whole night, but I was able to sleep for most of the night, and make it warmer by the 2nd night. I was wearing wool pants/shirt/jacket/hat/mitens. I just used debris (the fluffiest dry leaves I can find, or grass and ferns) for inside, and stuff it completely so I have to jam myself in. It may take 5+ minutes to wiggle my way back in with the toes pointed.

They do take awhile to make, and I find that no matter how well I build it, it takes 2--3 nights before I am truly warm. After that it is only every few days that I have to add more debris, plus dry it out, etc. I'll also add bark to the outside when I have it thick enuff. The big tradeoff is that I don't have to waste energy gathering more wood to keep me warm all night in a bark shelter. I have also heated football sized rocks and brought in as a space heater (keeping it away from the debris!) for really cold nights, or when I wasn't able to make it as well as needed for the temperture. Also used heated rocks in thatched huts.

I have built them after dark, but it's much slower. Another method is to make a big leaf pile (or pine needle) and just crawl inside that. With
some bark and/or hemlock boughs on top, it'll stay pretty dry and get you thru the night in a pinch. I learned a good method of gathering the debris while I was a kid from watching my pet skunk. He used to "borrow" any clothes left lying on the floor, and would gather these up and take downstairs to his nest behind the dryer. He would gather up as much clothes as he could in his front paws, and then pull them backwards to his nest. I adapted this for debris gathering. I get down on all 4's, gather up as big of a pile in my arms, and then scooting backwards and raking them towards me, I can usually keep the pile the same size (if not bigger) by the time I get back to the shelter and then toss it on. Also a forked stick as a rake helps a lot and saves your fingers!

A way to increase the amount of trapped air is to alternate 6-8" of debris, 6-8" of small branches, more leaves, more branches, more leaves, etc. This also helps to make the bedris go farther. Just makes sure that all the holes are filled, and after a few days and a couple of rains, you'll need to patch it up. The last layer of leaves that I put on is about 1'+ and when I patch it up, just use debris after that.

if there is snow deep enough for a snow tunnel, then I'll make one, or just jump into a snowback, enlarge a hole big enough to sleep in, line the bottom with a foot of boughs, and cover the top with limbs/boughs/bark etc. It's a bear making a debris hut with 6" of snow on top of solid frost! When I was a kid we used to make a long fire and then rake it to one side, make a browse bed and sleep on the heated area with reflectors all around (see Hood's Woods www page for a better way of doing this).

I have also made thatched huts, but they take a while, so stopped trying to get one done the first day out. IF you find yourself lost where it's been logged, a log hogan/cabion may be doable quickly with bark/debris/mud/grasses to fill in the cracks. A Leanto with a fire and reflectors can also work. Again, the more debris piled on, the better, both for holding in the heat and keeping dry. I'll make a browse bed and use debris for my blanket (or a thatched grass mett/sleeping bag). Also a small entrance opened out to a fire with a big reflector behind it and to the leanto to trap in the heat. Sleeping long ways to the fire is warmer. Always gotta pay attention to the fire once you start adding debris! That's when I'll switch to...
rock heaters. I find my leanto's usually end up as a debris hut anyways (or my debris hut starts out looking like a leanto :--)  

All in all, it comes down to location. If you have lots of firewood and little debris, it makes the choice for you. (and vice versa). I have been in more situations where I knew I could make a fireless shelter where my body heat does the work, versus getting a fire started for sure, and having to make that important first choice correctly, I'll usually go for a good thick squirrel nest over a fire.

Benjamin Pressley wrote:
> My experience with the debris shelter is in 15 degree farenheit temperature with about 6 inches of snow accumulation. I know you Canadians and Rocky Mountain people laugh at that snow accumulation! Anyway, I tested this shelter under the conditions stated with jeans and a T-shirt and it performed very well. However, I agree with you, it took way too long to construct, took a lot of effort and would be my choice only if I could not do better and/or if there was plenty of debris to build it, easily accessible. I had about 24 inches of debris on the exterior and had the interior stuffed with dry leaves that I packed it full with and packed down 3 times before I crawled in. I have not tested this shelter in a down pour but I have heard that it does not shelter from rain, it soaks through. I would love to hear from some people's experience what their favorite emergency shelter is.
> After one is properly made, it will remain dry! I make mine with a min. of 3' of debris on the outside (4'+ for -20f and colder). Wet, dry, it doesn't matter much, just make it thick. I have been inside during flashfloods (6" rain over night) and stayed dried. If not made well, you will get wet. Some bark on top will also help keep it dry. I have one I made a few years back, and it still remains dry inside, even though I haven't done any maintance on it for a year. I've slept in 20F dressed in just socks/jeans/wool shirt and been too hot. After taking off the wool shirt down to a
t-shirt, taking off socks and propping open the door a bit I slept very well. The key is finding the perfect location, since that is half the battle of making one. (or anything). They can't be made in all conditions, but what can?

What else are people making? I'm all for a better, faster shelter (these can take up to 1/2 day or more to make), and I have been known to sleep in a bush once or twice wishing I had a better shelter made :-(

Bruce Carroll
Virtual Mountain
New Hampshire
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> Shelters in general is too big a subject for one thread, so I'm
> looking here just to discuss the merits (or dismerits) of debris huts.
> Does anyone have any data on debris huts? Please state condition of
> debris, weather before and after construction, type of clothing used
> etc.

Ah, Debris huts. Well, I've slept in 'em many times with many different variations. Some simple, basic rules:

1) never sleep in one with your dog, or at least a dog that likes to kick your door in.
2) it usually takes a couple of nights to work out the kinks (i.e. find and fill all the nasty little draft holes, water pathways etc.)
3) there is usually always something that will work in a pinch if oak leaves or the equivilant aren't available, but there are exceptions as far as time of year and locations
4) they can indeed keep you dry in a drenching rain storm and will keep you warm if you build it right.
5) it does take considerably more time to build a good one than 1/2 hour (although there are folks that claim it can be done in this time). Usually takes me about 3.

Other things that I have learned and tricks that help are:

Layering: If you are in an area where there is not a lot of good insulating material, a layers of sticks followed by smaller layers of what debris is available improves the
insulating capacity of the materials you do have. Oak leaves or grass (preferably hollow stemmed) make the best insulation hands down! Followed by other types of hardwood leaves with pine needles taking a distant last place.

Other materials will work in a pinch. I have slept in a debri insulated with sphagnum moss and small layers of leaves, sticks and pine needles. I was warm with a light shirt on, but then the temp. never dipped to far below 60F that night. I did take the precaution of covering the moss with slabs of birch bark to elevate the sponging (and thus drenching action). I stayed dry and warm through a drenching downpour that soaked other people in tents. Another material that probably would work as a supplemental material in a pinch would probably be dried cattail leaves. I personally have not tried this, though.

There are times when there is simply nothing available to insulate with, or at least very little. A stint spent in the Wind River Range in Wyoming required Wickiup type shelters and fires. There just was nothing but sparse grass and very sparse and small evergreen needles. We found ample supplies of dead, punky wood that seemed to work adequately for a Wickiup, but I just couldn't imagine trying a debri hut. Maybe if it was stuffed with live pine branches...although...it didn't look to inviting at the time.

Size is critical. Think very cozy sleeping bag, not tent. If you have an aversion to cramped spaces this is definately not the shelter for you.

A good door is important in most instances. I keep my opening very small (just barely big enough to crawl in) and usually use a combination of a debri plug and a shirt or jacket if I have one.

My cold record is 21F with a light shirt and a sweat shirt on. Things were tolerable as long as my silly dog didn't knock my door plug in (she didn't care as the debri usually fell on top of her), however there were very irritating mini drafts that needed to be plugged.

I have never used debri that was already wet. I would imagine that using
the layering technique I described above you could create enough dead air space to keep you from freezing to death. I think I would try it if getting a friction fire going was out of the question, however if I had other options I can't imagine I wouldn't take them.

I have friends that claim they slept in these things naked in temperatures in the teens and were hot. One friend had a woven grass "sleeping bag" inside one at 20 degrees and had to come out he was so hot. He says he slept on the ground then with only the grass bag and was warm. I wasn't there to see it, so I can't verify it.

Well, that's my 2 cents. Other takers?

Mark
Andr'e wrote:

Shelters in general is too big a subject for one thread, so I'm looking here just to discuss the merits (or dismerits) of debris huts. Does My vote goes to trash the debris, if for nothing other than comfort. Or I should say lack there of.

If you have enough time and dry material to make a good debris hut, you have enough time to build something better. I had one experience about 25 years ago in what I call a debris hut.

The month was June. High temp about 70°F and low 45°F. About 12 Boy Scouts went on a mini survival trip. Could not take food or matches. Could take a knife and sleeping bag. Of course all us MEN left the bags and brought only the knife. (being the prepared scout I was, I promptly smuggled in beef jerky and red licorice, boy, it never tasted so good!) Anyway, we paired up and built an elaborate leanto, 8 ft x 8 ft and 3 ft high. This we completely packed with dry leaves, mainly oak. Build time about three hrs. Come bedtime we retired to the hut and wormed in, short sleeves and all. My partner came completely unglued after about 2 minutes, where I myself could have probably stayed in the hut another 15 or 20 seconds, but there no hut left to stay in. All the little spiders and ticks took their toll.

We
exploded from the hut and were left with nothing but a scattered pile of sticks and leaves. Total destruction time: about 5 seconds. We hauled some of the bigger pieces of wood to the main fire pit and found every kid on the trip sitting by the fire already. We really didn't outlast them, we just built our hut pretty far from the fire pit.

Next day we built a small "dome" using mostly remnants from the first hut. We put leaves on Top and on the SIDES only. We cleared the floor of all debris and put down a layer of dry grass (foxtail type) about 10 inches thick. We actually got a couple hours sleep. Short sleeves didn't go well with the comfort factor.

Later in life I've built similar structures and camped in them down to 23 below. Of course I took the sleeping bag at that temp, but all things equal, the wigwam type shelter is far more comfortable (to me) and takes about the same time to build.

fTreading Softlyf MaxWarhawk@aol.com
This is a multi-part message in MIME format.

-----=_NextPart_000_01BC07DC.FA74F620
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit

> From: MCMULLEN David
> To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
> Subject: survival shelter
> Date: Tuesday, January 21, 1997 1:58 AM
> howdy primitives
Can anybody recommend a survival shelter that will provide protection from the elements, warmth, hold 6-8 persons and be assembled in a day. Would this be as simple as building one extra large debris hut? Ideally this shelter should be built in any season. I am looking for this shelter to be built in May. Looking forward to hearing these responses. Benjamin, great article on primitive cooking.

Dave McMullen
mcmullen@paprican.ca

Dave I just drew this picture of a 6-7 person all season shelter. I was going to do it for my web page eventually, but your message got me motivated.
I apologize to those who dislike image attachments, this was the only way to show what this shelter looks like. You can load the image with any graphical Web Browser.

All Good Medicine,
Marc Besse
mbesse@accessone.com

------=_NextPart_000_01BC07DC.FA74F620
Content-Type: application/octet-stream; name="shelter.gif"
Content-Transfer-Encoding: base64
Content-Description: shelter (GIF Image)
Content-Disposition: attachment; filename="shelter.gif"

R0lGODlh7gJmAfcAAAAAAAACAAACAgCAggICBAAABAEBBAMCRwFBxAUFBSTDhgYEBwceEBgYGBgeHicSDiUhGCULHiYjJj0NDDo1FS0pJUMpHTQpIjktKST1HEg1HTYzMUIzK0oxKUQ7NlUYF1Y5HFNHCVA6lk5CLvHPHJlZGMvBDPUlKQ1JKQlPKOVpOPU9PTvPKSlpSQlSSmsgFwFwFwOJ3BPMwTEmPlSPG1XGRWVX4xIxtaL3ddPndbT4s0JHgPZhcAKeYcC2pKV1rZn1rSIBqXJBqPo9rTZBpXox2Y6FpQqd4R6NrrVJKVJ5xZKtyXp2ZqmGZNdIKsJzUrtzWtB9BvlwZbd/ZcZ1ZdR8XtaMOsaMXL2FZaIY9eURMmN2W1M9icZYJ8eZiHgKufdayTicF8dsKMe8GYc72ZiM6DcycyNSUaOz29CueMyWjdqZc9+af7ulj8+niOreOCmjc2ul0iyg9+3jubFlbauq9C4r+S7p+XAtEDKvOXYwufY0uzq3/81C/9sEPqgCvqgLPq5Kfu2YPq2b/m4fzJHv7LX/fBoFp01PnAmffOnFqgfOpxJ7f7bRZ/af/aqffOxffWpfWrf/Yp/erffOxffWtf/WtffWqFwXxvveuffWzv3FzPzpM/vqPvvrSPzrVPvZT//v
a//nc//rd//vg//vLP/voP/vrf/evf/nvffexvezfxfnxv/eyve1vvyv/nzvvn1v/v1vfe3vf

4ANmoA8sQAnOKQ42oALo0AmoAHkoA7Mi40oQHSxvGMLpfuwRY0wRC+YARkI1HY0A7hgyDQ4Av4
5hY27A7JA+kkaA/WwBauhBZCwIuS4AtcwR10QQQ9uWALWlQZywB12UAo2wA2SIaVoQAnQu4JEQ/mAG
ikAEsAuAALhMKekAIPKAK0oAzSndUuOAIKAc5mqG0mAcE6GmAc1sAkCAmQaJJsAnpoAmnIAG
luw2EBhrGDO0OAd8qANYcAJPMbK9cAPdWqsANesAClEMnmAICMn4Ke/qANYs8p1kALMoA9
8GAO1OAEyEALSm0OvkAASU/ycIEKygeAeiChLMaItsBKmib47MEKlkX6YOAHwE+CJqgACoffhig
EqAh+uqg9MqCWI37vKx9z0WhWoYrnkAeKuAXR1C4duCI7EU7mAVFoaGmMeEd2AGdOWHgc/OIMv
EOaVAmOgKUADAMxZsBIXAABNPBiYGUt/po3SJaIm7TClDrNBnySM2rjJvWANeQjxSgDezgWkgA
Eidg3uxA55BAajiJRBBBOBA65IgD3CjArJDK/BAnpwAZBGhDsZAh+EJMLysg4UrRi71LALiyhDopA
DmTgCRcgDhsD2hBh2qD2vhp05GDAvaRvxvA5h7ztBnt6dwGc/2EMtDzPAJRQnDBnLhQWcv5Gog
CygACWlDnkAucCnEU5mBDagAZZAAnd5JB0QuncQgC4AdoYACdhnB4DeXmoAW4Q8G6QA+Iq8kOa
DT5qC6Kg0bYgDpSgC6gxYoADzhACiQgLApjRC7gj6CRCmaAA86kD9qAg7sGt5DuczgWSAwAzA
JAgOxAmgr14CPQveEg7eQFZmYNkwaAa0IgieiwAmAdwIeYKbKwa/8I4awyJ3ms4Aq90NkgxA
QE1amZPavyIUosijJbVoMkRhtIiWmMdo0LUCgaw79zCQA/s4QbIAFL3U5q4Ah6YGOMwEG0bomyY
MqT0xYrW1gT2AhGYGdsoAQOZgGQQAQVqY44eqpbipUrDaGn24Epd0A000AY8pkqy1LcyXwugDmg
qDNIAI12AAPc4asoJgI16RwjqCA40oAsAmAEyAISAKAIAyAAG+wA4UYJW+1WdIAAmcgBMMOQRo
wQwaBQ0eYAbesguz4ALuIAK0wJv/+/vM7JAAO6GA00tIONuCVkmBgsAEdMC5zEC6gw0AecXLMGx
uqAN2uAXxTo/XA00KBC5M5WBT1X/0E0YQJLXOFarTcjcqVQPECERJrCTemDzKAekAGLoAEekAE
s0GSuQnYTCgsPsA0QMAdhEAEyFIPeAPEACAFraFDotHxUgVDgoBFKzBmKKEEsgxyYADWkoIufkK
YiBRMnUAIpEd6tGACDLKRsDzhAkLxtNA50AOqAkteD5sM5IAKLMTRRmAdiUNAsAI6GDeMAGH8GAP
aoAEeqAJLKU9tsAIBCUNNYnd8wAPVghAkgKfuyAKy1IDpkrAroTECMqgBPlqiRZSC/kgqho4ABcJS
/FY0raLF1VINBgg/CgIM3YoDw0ObCiiADtbyFyR3bPyCgyA12g7YJngDQriehehBrogZq4j
Fyj9kh9DNzBBdCjPLAHU7WY1wqAzwGbCR0AvmWb/fAY1ZABFeA66JNNElrXzdAZDr40BTaff7g
R0zAAvi6hajAqhogBzznAiqmgCgBA6G6q4e4h4b4xgb/+/BEq4WhR12BSgCrABeqCJcQgEXQhdJ6A
wdGhC5DgC4aa7SADkkgAwIFoziFjBokjADYtBwAgkmYkIbu7hFhRDb7gbeSGep8JHuBhDnpq
C7agEKepe4f1QYZRdWRECFosU/saygFoIy7h/SwAvwJFifgQQOANyqw6G0ARWUBDrwArsQAclyqAg
AA6oAojpqYNQnFOyPy0p4RyQRM2y0oQmg7uUwIcCqg+4AvEoM4Ur1DmoD406UREnQYA7kAPQW
pqysJw7mYAKogA06QA6UXaQcQA7QyAig0QjGQRaKAAoawAzUQAXCpw6RC+kIAKXYB+VOQIiics
Sgx6oQsQ48by4M/YpQ0Cjwmg8wBKSqgjwP2sTynsNskr1eVvBwPtqWNINq2kD+U+FpsakXyWHS
YCTEll2Aa2r9y1jgwqlh5dwBLa7giEzy+QgEelwAQwApuIA/U1GPaoCTV/gwWAUSALVMAMKAD
ja1M+zYoSMJKx1SJRENzkApJaqMYAIiANqCMc5QG6BZgcUEgBLKvMBcbzED1emAbzCAGmEDEsEdW
F1M0ngAOKMEOqAOXgkJwJ0N65kAlBG4y1dDldCDofLwIuAuk+BzjyloGA1niwJ0BC+vrq7x7C
1mAKsuAgf8E0p07uwDJkksQQPOEy9wCCUTp6gBBAABhGifFLSDKbEOMgQ7l4EHiAchIA17aACTO
TACpx0laYeQJnOAjBAmUMCAHCGofFPkk7aiCedmWDDGphmGVCetWHuUIMPKAKpmALMA2MjABKyOB
0EdKTM/0HGUE82BR0CC1/vQaJ6OTDexg4ptVAdhIoATCBjA9gLBNQ8qC07Aa6DbgRB84E
Gs1HCpBfLZgCBT8/xgdIRAF/Og+abACHJVAe5hgRGYAGJWI8XrAedE4jaNljV/UrEbo1XUtAZQW
AYy11wNREHo0vP6aq+G1kAzgNhBGCaDSSAwGwCGDyACLNQgBUogyB4t03kVwpgx4hC7BAvbg
dpNgBXpgCftTADqUB1xgy7T3eUzXNRgKSsB1i3XrQjXmOBbVhAc3JgBmgOC2I7dnqADIA1soL
t0TMihsxxsPvIwxnPH0r6mryb9m3SdV0n/hXZ9qaZe2H2z4gard2v2mBo/PgfytqbgNyNg4YZBw
cGgDmdF8T6R8VF2hB3iz4cPe3GJ6Fuow69rP2Ce2t7tZfJEN5jIDKM6JMvLbCgNuUlsiuSHxU
8VfEwG+8U+H/Al6eBvhrpxbOmi6FqDwC5KUeRd96uYcQcwhH1+YaJdglcv9W8veGe/D0Pwi0Uf
A/f9v/niAWJc2hmTaH4g0jw1HdrquUJoYrdcO3y8hcYUhtmVa/QA63Xfj141iv8AZM8TePf
EOheKtCvotMu5LZobu2+0LcW6yPAXoLo8TJNwTuxk4LYdtc+KniH4wFcv4Xa141ivxfmpnt6jrf9a2
kcOwJgKx8LCXzPnmiyvJcRkxjRTuchCQ5yo0Pxc8HeJD+yN4po138c6LpWsanct293Hf8lactT5C
m7tyI338vInmWnpn1RUV7caAbVDH1F443vi7tvA954r8L6Z2qA0uf2po16rM19YFWE8UHDSkEYDB
gRuAV22qQDznwNqfxsJ8x6Vc6h8WdfPxi0BrlLXXXWzhboXS4pT812rQu27bsfKE5YAhVJO+Ob+
3vlp8VvHviKz8A+JofAXhXwtFtaPny6df30p8x5oE5TEnEcDocrngcD824F5/Z+GNM8VfGxwh
q/y+Cni34e31lg8W61rGqWkm1wWoseEe2ihRmjZpVbaQouNnIKtIy9npV/4u+CPj3xvB3ngfx8
4x8K+KdXufEFhf8AhrT2ubm2uJmXzeeLdhVAC7yM4y251iAlVhz4mEn+/FY/E7QvFMEN4/8A
AGkSvcaha+XJbXzall1rtF1WGYRhmQyQFO3GNOfoXWP2gr/0+AfdRt8WqR40XKsENh1+vwDjMiuf
1SCKJZ5Z57hQDE86irHFefAUXrvt5ct74f8ACnJj/u/hv8ZPi4m0x+ztc8eI4s/DttG8lxaxQ2c
0Vuj92mdXXKBQQOFLGNOz/snVf+GpFl7c/sy9/tb/hX/ANK+wq3j2j/Aoz9nleXjd3fLtxnPGM
0AegeBnd/wCeco8d6D4m+y/ZP7X023ves/mv/ACvnn97mA3Y3yzgZx0Fe8A7V2qgX98KPAhGdHn+
zat4x1K28NWUopija6fEnmkglUMSyruVWYFqGMQ8jrgfGxaXvH8HvBdjFW01rd23h+whngmJkSR
OtugZGU8qIWIIPrIzLx/wDDqG4wftAPbeMtJIN/PBH5FSCGzhHtoV7o7neGVAGlIwNIIw+HIr
ijGC24Ah8LehofHf+010eiaf3tXofjxy2mnrns+xJXt5pUepJQI7U+zAj5Sd0jlTQnu3Z/wCob
3v8Aum3/ALkq54tfs2+D9C8FXHif4T6DNhpHjPQZy9V0ySK6euLozPawMX1LSGUoxAO1QuS4EQ7S
PWAFQdurftT2Jh/J/AIR/wDbz4bRp517zTHt573zwl+zSH1vmV780esR9uA9Dj1/mqv/ZsDy/9
011vx+8M6z4x+DXIjw34evJrXVL2xItZ2epAmoksCytcHTESTgCQ5ym8g/+zbpQq6t/wwALK/T
TL2w+2fEDVbu1+0WNH8D+vS1tcUrsHDDIODG10Hxv0bxdq3gpbjwFjzW3iPsB6DU7G3F20EGOG
JstazlSNUIhsLKC2zLAmgDn2/AIXLpWayeF7E+IPw8rZ+FdJt/wDiWaiP7GW60qG+LQB5w2r
JDtkJCjkEHaocYyQ+I/Bywa+Bun6h8N9W/td/b+E+tiDw/LqOe6fpsl1uOJHIDxsRjkZ0OZA28M
QxZLuN8evE1rpzdFqXwE+Jqa/b+dGbWz003VkwQlwDJcjYXLRGQMnAHABP3/GMC电路/BK4gs
dM8Pwa63jJvGkhHiA2N2FsBrt2pbcOmoCTlgflQn7OF/+eUA2lz8WvF/w2/sjXnrXvp8GFHSW2w67
02mPwyXdvpv2/vrUxsGuNjZGGC5UqoJe1n4h8AC3tV8T6xbat4h0X4s+DdIto71PEVxbw31xet
sL5jkcJDCgj3FWGzgBPksWznRP70823216H4Y/2a0zw1ftcxCVNUN8VFeYoBDTPte1cIK10xy6
qu6I52sQF37zvjpjoF0fxyN1njd/DDLX8RVCa23kLiroC1U0ulyx7ftEU9srIjex5DlpNwU7RRuA
ZYwDoPgx8UffF7pFxH0jUb7TPIFpqgITNqmiMoXXdliiiCRKyKPL8s7AwyduGKn4wbT4z+
LHjTwxaevJdPVX58GX/i833vt4F/s21J37H2s97kXAXGrDA66dzb+++vpvgPonjLQ/HfxRuF+G9
14Cvic02xudB04gT6VHBFNEQ89qojGSjTGNsmHJACOC1ef/ABExBeDx14YN0/WPX2/Elv8TZv0tj
f6dprWum/bxZ2NdNuRuki796DKHxNQ5UlTQD2D4g+OPI1rPirw18MPBdjD4W8VnandelEUa7qN00V3
Hotvrv2SRxL92418wGPNOCUmCY3M4jtFv8H4gk6rD4tPESU0/hXb2kVpIrwrR57
eeBDhvVAGVYOWHLbi5xJcHoHd+HPirw8X740m8cS2Pha18L+KLKyEk9+wDh3vLcLHmp2MvJDAHA
ycBmeK74x/4S74rFDQfHi154UPwvD4V8GRXUVHDrdo0o61cXUASUmLQ4jK3G5K8FtTZAdZrbo
sF34j65450nSfGN140qF20wCtpFpkFsJCygHRAQhEKLk5LSxjAO9egf5+MfEni3wh
From - Wed Jan 22 00:35:06 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA04572; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:20:37 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.3.7) with SMTP id BAA26615; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 01:19:36 -0500 (EST)
Received: from pulm1.accessone.com (pulm1.accessone.com [198.68.191.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA26615 for
The old saying where I live is "If you don't like the weather wait ten minutes". A friend and I where hiking on a long day hike in the Cascade mountains one spring day when a fast moving storm overtook us. We were 8 miles in and had no way of returning in the storm. The storm hit fast it brought 70mph winds with hail. We would have probably died of exposure if we tried to hike back in the storm. There is no way in hell we could have constructed a debris hut. I have found that in a survival situation sometimes it is just not feasible to construct these shelters in time. The solution was to find a stand of low growing Silver Fir and Cedar Trees. Round up as much debris and line the base of the trees with the debris and climb in. This makes an excellent first need survival shelter. The storm passed as quickly as it came and we decided to hike out before dark. Both my friend and I where prepared for wet weather, but you add the wind and
hail stones in and you have a dangerous combination. On our way out it was already getting dark and we came across a unprepared family stripped down to their underwear shivering around a fire the father had made. Their clothes where all completely soaked. This fire did not seem to help them much because the wind was stripping away all the heat from the fire. We attempted to give some helpful information to the man about some simple survival techniques. He was not interested in listening, the classic I know what I am doing syndrome. I always wonder to this day if the family made it out OK. My friend and I found shelter before we got soaked and hiked out toasty warm. We used very little energy to build our shelters and got in them quickly before the worst of the storm hit. Sometimes the simplest shelter can make a big difference. I think this type of shelter is often overlooked but they work well for me.

All Good Medicine,
Marc Besse
mbesse@accessone.com
On Tue, 21 Jan 1997, Marc Besse wrote:

> toasty warm. We used very little energy to build our shelters and got in
> them quickly before the worst of the storm hit. Sometimes the simplest
> shelter can make a big difference. I think this type of shelter is often
> overlooked but they work well for me.

True, I have made the quickie shelters along this line; find a good
spruce (tight, fairly low branches, and nothing *too* unpleasant
underneath), make a bed with more spruce branches and sleep more or less
well for the night.

Another quick way to build a shelter is to build a structure out of
whatever is available (usually dead wood and "second rate" -- the good
stuff goes into the bed -- spruce boughs), and then covering it with moss
(the kind that grows in thick mats om rocks, "armoured" with blueberry
"bushes" [1]). This moss is virtually waterproof, at least I've have slept
dry in some fairly good downpours.

If you have the time and inclination you can first cover the shelter with
a thick layer of spruce boughs, and use the moss as a water- and
windproofing shell.
I have slept well in such (unaugmented) shelters wearing a fairly thick wool shirt and hat at app. 40F/5C, no fire or hot rocks.

On the question of debris huts; the only possible materials around here I have discovered is reeds and cattails, both of which pretty much requires getting wet to gather.

/Par

[1] Around here blueberry is a low (12-18") "bush" that grows just about everywhere in the pine forrests. As is lingonberry and some others, whose latin names I can't recall at the moment. All do a good job aromouring this moss until you can roll off thick blankets from the boulders, lug them to our shelter and roll them out; "instant shelter".

--
Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
Life is complex. It has real and imaginary parts.

From - Wed Jan 22 00:36:33 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA07128; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 10:01:08 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA29235; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 09:57:12 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 09:55:18 EST
Received: from binky.capnet.state.tx.us (binky.capnet.state.tx.us [141.198.136.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id JAA29225 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 09:57:01 -0500 (EST)
Received: from s_bridge.rehab.state.tx.us by binky.capnet.state.tx.us; (5.65v3.2/1.1.8.2/13Nov95-1025PM) id AA03181; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 09:06:51 -0600
Received: from ccMail by rehab.state.tx.us (SMTPLINK V2.10.08) id AA853952391; Wed, 22 Jan 97 08:52:53 cst
I am a real fan of the debris hut, but as was mentioned earlier, circumstances and area dictate the most suitable shelter. I stayed in a debris hut at TB's "back to back" for 2 weeks this past year when hurricane Bertha came through. I admit I had 1 small drip which was quickly and easily patched. Temperatures were not very cold, but the hut was very comfortable. Careful smudging helps to eliminate the presence of any previous residents :) I used the layering technique. Total construction time was only a couple of hours 2-3. In other circumstances where I would not be out long, or the weather fair, I doubt I would build one (applying the conservation of energy principle. I would seek alternative shelter suited to the terrain. Don't get me wrong, if I could be out for more than a day or 2, and the conditions were right (no snow here in Texas to deal with) then this would be my shelter of choice.

When teaching survival skills for the general public, I teach the debris hut as primary. It does a couple of important things for a "lost" person. 1. It anchors them to a specific area making them easier to find (hug a tree). 2. It helps psychologically since they can now "feel more secure". 3. It is easier to rely on for that extra measure of time to be "found" than relying on that person having practiced fire & shelter skills. 4. It is easy to remember what to do under stress.
Comments?
eddie

From - Wed Jan 22 00:52:25 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA08280; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:33:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA01027; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:29:29 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:27:34 EST
Received: from mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com [204.180.128.166]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA01014 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:28:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.11.182.16] (ip16.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.16]) by mule0.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id MAA14934; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:31:39 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 09:34:30 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mbesse@ACCESSONE.COM
X-UIDL: 853955189.000
From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: Re: Debris huts???
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
The only experience I’ve had with debri type shelter was during a year we decided to camp without benefit of a tent. We stacked dead leaves into a platform large enough to support our sleeping bags. Then we piled more dead leaves on top of the sleeping bag leaving only the opening to wriggle into. Even though the night time temp dropped below freezing we were very warm. I think even a canvas, or blanket bag would have kept us warm under the same circumstances, Oh I almost forgot the old fashion army "rubberized" poncho we pegged over the whole mess to waterproof and wind proof the whole thing.

Jim Burdine
LV, NV
jburdine@pipeline.com
My experience with debris huts has been mixed. Personally I felt that the debris hut is over emphasized. The optimal time to complete one in fall is 1-1.5 hours by yourself. In September (when there are little leaves on the forest floor) it could take as many as 4 hours to make one. In general I have found that 3 feet of insulation on top of the shelter is sufficient for above freezing weather wearing a T-shirt and shorts. In freezing weather the thickness will easily go to 5-6 feet.

Another thing I will swear by is to stuff to inside to overflowing with leaves. This is the only way to provide enough internal insulation. A good door is essential also. I have gone overnight at 8 degress celcius in a rainstrom with heavy winds in 1 foot of insulation in only a t-shirt and shorts. The wind ripped through the shelter but I did not get wet.

I can usually find dry insulating material underneath logs or thick piles of leaves. I always try to place dry material inside of the hut and wet material on top. Even if wet material is used inside, I have found that body temperature will usually dry it out a little. Of course in an evergreen forest one will have trouble finding enough debris to build a shelter. Green boughs can be used,
but you must double all thicknesses. In a pinch you can always stuff your clothes with leaves. This will usually help a little with insulation. I think the main aspect of the debris hut is not comfort but mainly to allow you to survive the night.

Dave Mcmullen
mcmullen@paprican.ca
from rain, it soaks through. I would love to hear from some people's
experience what their favorite emergency shelter is.

an overhung concavity in the side of a rock or cliff with a small fire in
front, facing across the wind rather than away from the wind.

Bill B.
Tom,

Could you give some more details?

Thanks,

John Wiedenheft
Norwich CT

--
wiedenheftj@asme.WEB.AOL.COM

>> Also, I once hated sleeping by a fire and putting wood on it all
>> night, but then I designed a pit shelter with a hot coal bed under it where
>> I could sleep in shorts and a t-shirt without a blanket or any insulation,
>> or even a door. These take 3-4 hours to construct and can be used
>> continuously. Now that I know I can be warm when I want to, I find that I
>> do not mind the discomfort of putting wood on a fire all night; in fact, I
>> kind of enjoy it.

John,

I have decided not to send along my entire treatise on shelters (16
pages, 20 photos), but I will inform the group when it gets published in a
magazine. As for pit shelters with coal beds, here is the generic form:

Dig a grave, long enough for your body, plus a foot or so extra,
and deep enough so you can lay down, but can bend your knees without
touching the ceiling (I like lots of roll-over room). Then dig down
another 6-8 inches for the hot coal bed. Digging takes about 2 hours with
a stick. Start a fire in the pit and burn hot for 1-3 hours, depending on
soil moisture (burn time not included in total construction time). A hot
coal bed on the surface will produce steam when the dirt is put back on it, but in a pit shelter you can cover the coals with the now-dried dirt from the pit walls. The dirt puts out the coals, what you want is the hot mass of the ground. This covered, put a roof of sticks/logs across most of the top, except for a narrow doorway at one end. Cover the roof with debris to fill the cracks between the sticks, then cover with earth. Properly constructed you can sleep in shorts and a tee-shirt, without ever closing the door, down to about 20 degrees F. A coat draped over the hole is sufficient for a door if necessary. For successive nights, fill with debris (an underground debris hut), or make the pit extra wide and bring in a row of football sized hot rocks along one side.

There are unlimited variations on the pit shelter, hybrids with other shelters, some partially above ground, door at the end instead of straight up. Utilizing natural pits can significantly reduce the dig time. My favorite is to move into a pit created where a tree has fallen over, pulling a plug of earth out with it's roots. (This can only be done in damp weather, otherwise the fire may enter the roots of the tree and emerge days or weeks later.) Also herbs can be placed on the floor of the scout pit for a medicinal steaming.

A tip for debris-hutters with not enough debris: In dry soil build a hot coal bed in your hut site while you are gathering materials for the hut. In wet soil just bake the surface of the ground and sweep away the coals.

I had a nice campout this last weekend with my 6 and 7 year old daughters. We hiked up into the mountains and made a regular hot coal bed (with wool blankets) in the dry sand under an overhanging rock. The moonlight was beautiful.

These skills do leave impacts. Please think before you dig. Do not construct pit shelters in a green meadow. Instead use gravel bars along rivers (watch your water line!), or uncolonized soils below the forest canopy. You should not be able to tell you were ever there when you are done. Also remember that forest fires cost $millions to extinguish. The bill goes to the person who starts them...

Always Peace,
Debris do work, that is if they are constructed correctly. Yes is does take a little more time but I have slept in them in very cold weather...yes even in the rain. Making a grass matt to insulate you from the ground will help alot. The shelter must be packed completly with leaves, grass's, ect. The heat from your body will dry the material close to your body and it will keep you from getting hypertherma. I agree that they sometimes can be uncomfortable but they will keep you alive in a survival situation.
On Thu, 5 Dec 1996, Bill Blohm wrote:

> How do you compare it against the Super Leatherman? I especially like the
> locking mechanism for the various blades.
> 
> Bill B.

I haven't worked with the Super Leatherman yet, the earlier ones having left a bad taste in my mouth, however, I can say this for the SOG. Its blades are held in place by a tempered, bent piece of steel which is part of the grip. I have not had any problems with them flexing or sliding or unlocking, and if I did, I would simply take a file and pliers and carefully adjust the fit of the (easily modified) mechanism. To date, I've not had to do this, while using my SOG in the field on my car and around the office... And using it at my workbench when someone swiped my needlenose. I give them a pretty rough workout, and they haven't needed replacement yet.

Coyote John

---

For thrower, send a HELP command to:
MY CAMPING KNIFE SET

When I was growing up, and even after I was grown, it was common knowledge among Western hunters and outdoorsmen that "a huntin' knife with a four-inch blade is dang well big enough." It was also well known that a man didn't need more than one knife for all his camping chores.

There was a touch of belligerence in those opinions. I think that we were reacting against any hint of flamboyance in our hunting gear, because we were the real Western manly types, and we didn't go huntin' except to lay in our winter meat, by #@&*! No Hollywood showoff Bowie knives around our camps!

I lived and roughed it by that ethic for more years than I care to count. At the same time, I indulged a fancy for owning (not using!) various big and exotic kinds of knives. I collected or made quite a number.

Over the course of many years, as I hunted less (I don't hold with killing animals when you don't have to) but spent more time in the out-of-doors, I found increasing need for specialized cutting tools. Sometimes I was inconvenienced by having only a small belt-knife in my gear; sometimes I faced real emergencies. Gradually it began to soak into my skull that

a) four-inch blades are NOT always enough, and
b) you need more than one kind of knife when out in the wilderness.

The above is now common knowledge among outdoorsmen West, East, and everywhere else, and I suspect that a man who made a point of getting by with only one small knife would be considered kinda peculiar, even a bit of a showoff.

When you're at home, you can hoard tools to your heart's content, if not your wallet's, and it's not a bad idea to do so. Many a time I've faced a fixup or handycraft dilemma and exclaimed "If I ONLY had a pot-fid! WHY didn't I buy that scrimgag riffler when I had a chance?" Then I add one or two #@&*!s and head for the hardware store.
But on a backpack or even a canoe trip, things are different. You can take only a minimum number of tools. Every ounce has to be justified. You must weigh the chances of needing a particular implement against the burden of lugging it wherever you go. You must face the fact that some things can't be improvised.

Experience has taught me to pack a basic set of four knives on wilderness trips. If I don't take all four, I face the possibility of needing one (badly) that I don't have. I seldom require a tool that these four don't supply. But these I need:

1) A Swiss army knife
2) A Finnish puukko
3) A Buck Special
4) A kukri

The Swiss Army Knife

This is cheating a little, because Swissies are small tool kits, not just knives. That's right, I'm cheating a little. When I first went camping with a Swiss army knife, I thought, What the heck, maybe this little thing will come in handy. At the end of the first four days, I'd used every implement on it, in earnest. Any make or model of Swiss army knife big enough to include scissors and tweezers is adequate. I can get along out in the woods without hobby saws or magnifying glasses, but I've got to have those awls, scissors, tweezers, and so forth.

Like any combination tool, the Swiss army knife is a compromise, but it's sturdy enough to answer most purposes. Also, those two small blades can be sharpened and honed to delicate razor edges and kept for fine work that bigger knives can't do.

Because it's often used to prepare food, and may have to do service in minor surgery, it's important to keep a Swiss army knife clean. I soak mine frequently, with all the blades open, in hot soapy water, finishing with a rinse in boiling water. Then I sun-dry it, still open, to discourage bacteria.

Needless to say, I carry my Switzer on a three-foot leather thong lanyard that never leaves my belt. That way, I always have my best tool close at hand.

The Finnish Puukko

Finnish what? "Small belt-knife" translates the word puukko nicely, and a nice little tool it is. The Finns and Lapps have been toting knives through the subarctic wilderness since before there was iron, and
they've worked out a nearly perfect pattern for a utility knife and scabbard. Mine is a slightly modernized version adapted for mass production by Tapio Wirkkala, the Finnish designer. It was made in two models by the Hackmann company, and sold well until, for some reason, it was discontinued in December of 1987. It has a three and one-quarter inch blade with a straight back. The cutting edge features a subtle combination of straight and curved portions which suit it to slicing, skinning, and chipping. If you can't get an example of this dandy little Hackmann, invest in one of the many similar puukkot imported from Finland.

The knife is carried in the full-length open-throat leather scabbard characteristic of Finnish knives -- even Wirkkala couldn't improve on that design, except to substitute a hardened nylon liner for the traditional bone. The beauty of this type of scabbard is in its simplicity: no keeper to fumble with, just drop your knife in when you're done with it. Because the handle of the knife and the mouth of the scabbard have matching tapers (always design your knife and scabbard as a unit), gravity is enough to seat the knife securely; mine has never dropped out. The scabbard originally came with a twisted thong belt-loop. Time and use eventually wore that away, and I replaced it with a foot of leather thong, one end tied firmly to the scabbard and the other end knotted in a loop. When I need my puukko with me, I simply slip the loop down through my belt, pass the scabbard through the loop, tug the thong tight, and thar she be.

Like all old-time Westerners (and Finns), I carry my knife behind my right hip with the scabbard tucked in the pocket of my jeans. This is far and away the safest place to wear a knife. When I want to use the knife, I start it out of the scabbard with thumb and forefinger; many puukkot even have a German silver horsehead on the pommel to assist in drawing it this way.

I must do fifty percent of my camp chores with my lovely little Finnish belt-knife.

The Buck Special

Everybody wants to own a Buck knife. Everybody should. Buck makes just about the best line of folding and belt knives in the U.S., if not the world. However, I've always found one fault with most of their models: the handles are too small in diameter. This is the weakness of practically all American hunting knives of the older generation, and was my father's chief complaint about the Marble, Western, and other brands we carried -- that and the cheapness of the scabbards.

Wellsir, Buck has fixed all that. Their Special has a six-inch blade and a generous,
gently finger-notched
handle that together suit it to just about any job a medium-sized knife can do. The
thick spine of the
blade gives plenty of strength, especially for woodworking, while the deeply hollow-
ground edge cuts
efficiently and can be sharpened to a keenness that does your heart good.

Because I'm picky, I'm not entirely satisfied with the shape of the Special's blade:
the last two inches of
the edge curve steeply upward to an almost flamboyantly raised point. Mr. Buck no
doubt intends this for
skinning; well, maybe you could use it for that in a pinch, but as you and I know, a
skinning knife is a
specialized tool, and needn't find a place in your gear if you're not going hunting.
If the point was located
nearer the centerline of the blade, this would be a handier knife for certain kinds
of fine work; but I'm not
yet ready to hold a $40 dollar knife against a grindstone, so I'll continue to use it
as is.

The guard of the Special is just big enough to prevent your hand from slipping onto
the blade, and not so
big as to interfere with your work. The handle is made of that lovely black synthetic
that Buck has used
for many years. This can get slippery in use, but because the handle is fairly large
and well-contoured,
you won't lose control.

The scabbard is a heavy leather proposition with a big snap keeper. The bead or cut-
strip is made of a
rubbery synthetic. Because the blade of the knife flares slightly at the beginning of
the curve, there's a
pronounced hangup at the mouth of the scabbard just before the knife is fully drawn;
it takes a deliberate
effort to pull the Special all the way out, or to resheathe it. This is a dandy safety
feature and I'm all for it,
but it makes this an awkward knife to carry behind your hip. For that reason, I
usually haul my Buck in
my gear rather than carry it around on my belt.

Perhaps someday I'll 1) modify the blade and 2) build a full-length throated scabbard
for it; the pommel is
the familiar single-lobed shape that would suit the knife perfectly for drawing from
a Finnish-style sheath.

Take care of a Buck knife and your great-grandchildren will still be using it.

The Kukri

What in the Sam Hill is a feller from Wyoming doing with a chopper from Nepal?
Answer: using it to clear
brush, cut grass, freshen blazes, trim poles, gather fir tips for bedding, fell good-
sized trees if necessary,
and do a lot of other things that an ordinary slasher will do only half as well. I've
even been known to turn
it over and drive tent pegs with the back of the blade, an unwise procedure with most
knives, but one
that's never damaged any of my kukris one bit.

A good kukri is much safer and more efficient than a hatchet, and smaller and more versatile than a machete. It's no accident that the British Army and the RAF issue kukris for jungle service.

I'll admit that I first tried one because I'm partial to exotic blades, but now a kukri seems as homey as a coffee-pot on my camping trips, and almost as vital.

Some knife-makers in the U.S. currently offer their idea of a kukri for sale, and while these may be good designs, the price is wrong. Indian-made kukris are available at modest cost from mail order outlets in this country, or you can send one dollar to the folks at Doon Steelworks in Dehradun, India (that's all the address you need; the Indian Postal Service is wider awake than ours) and receive their catalog. It lists several models of kukri for staggeringly low prices.

Doon may still be able to offer you a World War One-era Indian Army surplus kukri. If so, order two, one to hang on the wall as an antique, the other to polish up and carry on wilderness journeys. These are big kukris with thirteen-inch blades, the best ones can be beautifully balanced and finely ground; after seventy-odd years, the edges are still keen. Equally important, the hardwood handles are large and well proportioned. They did these things right, in the days of the Raj.

Alternatively, my choice for a packing kukri is the ordinary modern enlisted man's model, preferably with a wooden rather than a horn handle. This is a hefty enough knife for almost any job: a foot long in the blade and over a pound in weight.

The heavy-duty imported kukris frequently offered in this country are a bit too bulky for my arm, and the edges are not ground for efficient cutting. If you acquire one of these, consider regrinding the blade to remove a LOT of metal. Be prepared also to reshape the handle, since these are often crude and over-large. In the main, the modern Indian-made heavy-duty kukri gives the impression of being more raw material than finished knife.

I carry my kukri lashed to my pack, never on my belt; the scabbards are light but bulky, and too much trouble to wear. (They look a tad Hollywoody, too.) In camp, the sheathed kukri can stay with my pack or travel with me when I walk into the timber to cut a pole. For safety, I keep that heavy, sharp blade sheathed unless I'm actually swinging it.

The handle of the modern enlisted man's kukri is a bit small in diameter (that old shortcoming!) and may
tire your hand and/or become slippery with extended use. A good trick in this case is to wrap the handle with a strip of towel. This will increase the diameter for better control, cushion your hand against shock, and soak up sweat without growing slick.

Besides Those Knives

When I was a boy, we all learned this lesson early: A dull knife is no knife at all. During hunting season, every male in Big Horn, Wyoming sported a shaven left forearm from testing the edge of his knife, except my father, who was left-handed and therefore kept his north forearm smooth.

If I'm travelling farther than the mouth of the driveway, I take a pocket carborundum stone with me. This is very light and very small, and many people would find it inadequate for keeping blades sharp on a hiking trip. After a lifetime of use, I've learned to make do with these little stones by using them frequently to touch up an edge, rather than for heavy-duty sharpening of a badly dulled knife. In other words, I've learned that I have to maintain my cutting tools.

The same kind of attention should be given to your scabbards, since a knife and its sheath are in fact a unit. Examine your scabbards frequently, looking for wear and damage. Dress the leather the way you'd dress your boots. Give particular attention to your scabbard's security; if it doesn't seem capable of keeping your knife snugly at home, improvise or make repairs on the spot. If your knife-sheath lacks an efficient keeper, don't hesitate to tie the knife in place with twine or thong; it's better to put up with a little inconvenience of this sort than to reach for a blade that's lying on the ground miles down the trail.

But don't overdo the quest for security with your belt-knives. A lanyard for this type of tool is a bad idea, first because it constantly gets in the way of your work, and second because, if a tethered knife slips out of your hand or scabbard, it at once becomes a swinging, whirling lethal menace.

A wrist-loop, however, can be very handy, because it allows you to release your knife without having to put it down -- a labor-saving wrinkle when you're cleaning fish or cooking. But don't carry your belt-knife in an exposed scabbard with the wrist-loop attached. Sooner or later, a branch will get caught in the loop and hook the knife right out of the scabbard, and you'll walk off and leave it dangling in the wind, perhaps in the middle of a tangle of chokecherry bushes where Jim Bridger himself could never find it.

With the four tools described above, I'm equipped with a suite of small implements including two delicate
blades for fine tasks, a handy light knife for the majority of chores, a robust
medium blade for rough jobs,
and a powerful whacker to deal with the drastic stuff. I know that these aren't
enough to deal with Mom
Nature's ultimate tricks; nothing man-made can do that; but I feel ready to face the
old girl with a smile
and a few tricks of my own.

From - Tue Dec 10 01:26:12 1996
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA28091 for ; Sat, 7 Dec 1996
18:33:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.165]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET
(Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA143
for ; Sat, 7 Dec 1996 18:32:36 -0500
Message-ID: <32AA0D91.2BF0@perigee.net>
Date: Sat, 07 Dec 1996 18:36:33 -0600
X-UIDL: 850155814.001
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
Subject: Re: Paratool
References: <32A7EBDA.D2E@saglac.qc.ca> <32A7B638.5F54@perigee.net>
<32A88896.3738@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr. A. F. Bourbeau wrote:
>
> Thanks again Ben, if you could get that Paratool address, it would be
greatly appreciated.
>
> I noticed from some of your answers a wee bit of "tension"? I hope my
last message cleared that up, and again, I agree with you, we're only
here for fun and to learn things! When I said "convince me", I was just
using that word for discussions sake, I do not need real convincing,
maybe bad choice of words.
>
> Again, sorry about the way my name request came through, but it was a
personal message, not on the group, so I wouldn't worry about it.
>
> Your friend,
>
> AndrÈ

Yes, your last message cleared that up. I guess I took you wrong on your
use of the word 'convince' and I may have been a little tense because I
read those notes after your personal note about your name. I hope you
got my response to your note before this one. I guess I took 'convince'
as a little over inflated ego (I can't stand that kind of person! A good
teacher is also a good student, in my book.), sorry I took it wrong. Thanks for sending the note to me personally. I'm glad you asked though, many people would not bother to check, when most disagreements could be settled if people were just straight and honest with each other in a respectful way. I say only good things about you. Peace my friend.
---Benjamin (benjamin@perigee.net)

P.S. Smoky Mountain Knife Works address is P.O. Box 4430, Sevierville, TN 37864, Phone: 1-800-251-5150. I believe their catalog is free.

From - Wed Jan 15 00:39:20 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA06126; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 01:29:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA17638; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 01:28:24 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 01:26:32 EST
Received: from ki.se (mbox.ki.se [130.237.207.77]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA17635 for
; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 01:28:10
-0500 (EST)
Received: by ki.se id AA07585 (5.67a/IDA-1.5 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca); Wed, 15 Jan 1997 07:33:26 +0100
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Wed, 15 Jan 1997 07:33:24 +0200 (METDST)
X-UIDL: 853348824.010
From: Par Leijonhufvud
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
Par.LeijonhufvudLABTEK.KI.SE
Subject: Re: KMn04
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
In-Reply-To: <199701142220.OAA09466@ns2.qnet.com>
Message-ID: 
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from QUOTED-PRINTABLE to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id BAA06126
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; charset=ISO-8859-1
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

On Tue, 14 Jan 1997 diogenes@survival.com wrote:

> experience with it I NEED to issue a word of warning.

As Ron points out you can do yourself some serious damage with this stuff (as is possible with knives, axes, slings, etc). But used properly (fraction of a teaspoon of KMn04 [1] and sugar mixed dry as powders, used in the open, not in a container) it is a harmless firestarting booster. Anything else is evolution in action.
> It is extremely sensitive to detonation and may even self-detonate.

Not as mixed crystals, made up on the spot. Then it is highly combustive, not explosive.

> Just thought you should know. I suggest we avoid discussing explosives. Sam is sooo paranoid.

Slinging handgrenades does *not* upset your uncle?

/P"r

[1] The lower case "n" is important; it is potassium, manganese (Mn) and oxygen (O). If email supported it the 4 should be a subscript.

--
Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
"Do the Atheists Really Think the Egyptians could have built great monuments like Stonehenge without the help of God!?"
- alt.atheism.satire
All first aid organizations (St Johns Ambulance, Red Cross etc) recommend carrying a pair of rubber gloves to protect oneself against infectious diseases when treating casualties.

They also make good water carriers (as do condoms) or emergency pee-buckets for that late night urination when it's 40 below and you don't want to leave the warmth of your shelter, or in the case of a laid up casualty, when they can't leave the shelter.

In an emergency they make good, surprisingly strong lashing. Hey, and maybe you could even make a sling out of them :-)

From - Sun Jan 12 20:48:08 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA13472; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:03:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA17311; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:03:20 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:01:24 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA17302 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:03:03 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.157]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA135 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 14:59:30 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D95247.4D@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 15:06:15 -0600
X-UIDL: 853163066.017
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Survival Kits
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Here is an interesting thread to get started, I hope. What would you or do you put in a survival kit? In my book, there are three survival kits a really prepared person should have, one for the side on a belt or
otherwise attached to you in case you lose all your other gear, one for
the trunk of your vehicle with enough basic supplies for 2 people and
one for the home. Obviously, one would allow for more 'luxuries' than
the other, respectively. So, anyone interested in contributing to this
thread please specify which kit you are contributing to. I would like to
see us start with the first one, the pocket survival kit (This kit
would be limited to basic items that could fit in a container no larger
than an average fanny pack, preferably smaller). I will also sometime
in the near future provide my list as well as the list of a couple of other
people I know that was sent to me by a friend of mine who sent out a
questionnaire to some pretty experienced and skilled individuals. Let's
don't be afraid to critique some of the items people name, ask for
explanation or suggest a substitute item (be nice). I for one will be
compiling a list of input from all of our experience. I know Andre will
also keep a file stored for our index.

Speaking of Andre. I really tripped out on this guy one day at a
restaurant (and at the same time was very impressed), here in Charlotte,
NC, as he and another friend got talking about survival items they had
on them. I think Andre won. I was amazed at how many useful items he had
in his billfold alone! So, I'm looking forward to Andre's input on this
thread, and all of you!

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sun Jan 12 20:49:12 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA15013; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 19:52:46 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA18953; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 19:52:01 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from crl.crl.com (crl.com [165.113.1.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca
(8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA18944 for
; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 19:51:17
-0500 (EST)
Received: by crl.crl.com id AA18657 (5.65c/IDA-1.5 for
primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca); Sun, 12 Jan 1997 16:45:38
-0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 16:45:38 -0800 (PST)
On Sun, 12 Jan 1997, Benjamin Pressley wrote:

> Here is an interesting thread to get started, I hope. What would you
> or do you put in a survival kit?

You can go on forever on this one. Many lists have been circulated on the
usenet over the years. I have a collection of them (lists that is). Much
overlap is to be expected, but you can get a good statistical view of
what most people consider most important by sorting items by their
appearance in multiple lists.

When I put together a kit, I think food, water, shelter, clothing, fire,
and communications. In theory (for me), the kit should be completely
self-sufficient. That is, you shouldn't have to pick up *anything* from
your environment. Though in practice, this is not usually the case, you
can get pretty close.

Let me start at level ONE. I am very interested in what Andre has in his
wallet. I have no survival gear in my wallet although there is usually
enough paper in there (not money) to make decent kindling.

I usually wear a hat. One of my hats has a pocket in it, and in others I
make a pocket in a sweat band. In the pocket, I carry one of those little
credit card tool kits. There is a magnifying lense (fire), and a working
if simple compass, knife, and a few other things. It isn't very good,
except for the knife, but it is convenient. If I don't have one of those
hats, I can put the thing in my wallet.

I always carry my keys. On my key-chain there is a small SAK, a
screwdriver (flat and phillips), and a magnesium block fire starter with
an integral sparking rod. In some other pocket, I'm almost always
carrying a folding knife with a 2.75 to 3.5 inch blade, one of those
clip-ons that opens with one hand.

So before I pick up anything else, I have 3 knives, a fire starter, and a
few other odds and ends. I usually wear pants with cargo pockets, and
into these (if I go for a walk in the woods), I will toss 50 feet of
parachute cord, electrical tape, sometimes my folding slingshot and a film
can filled with 1/2" ball bearings, along with a few granola bars, and
one or two of those mylar survival-rescue blankets.

The next level up I will cover in another post. I can go one of two ways,
or both. I have a day-pack style jump kit always at the ready. I also have
a vest with lots of pockets into which I can stuff just about everything I
usually keep in the pack, making room for lots more stuff in the pack. I
My minimalist survival kit is a Victorinox Swiss Army knife (huntsman model with saw) in the official knife case. The case is a little larger than the knife so that a Doan magnesium firestarter just exactly fits in along side the knife. I then put a small hole in the case and string a chain through it and the hole in the firestarter so it won't get lost when the knife is in use.

Doan Mach & Equipment Inc
PO Box 21334
South Euclid, OH  44121

or item # MAG787 in Brigade Quartermasters catalog (800) 338-4327
In general I agree on your 3 levels of classification. In practice I tend to subdivide the first class into two categories, the "don't-leave-home-without-it" and the pocket kit. The pocket kit does take
up space (fits - barely - in a jeans pocket, but I tend to fill my pockets fairly well anyway), so it gets left at home much of the time on a day to day basis.

Don't-leave-home-without-it:

Swiss army knife
Doan type magnesium/sparker steel
Silva "SERE" button compass
Cord (5-6 feet thin and strong cord)
Waxed paper (sold as charcoal lighters, works like birchbark)
Bandaids
Sharpener (usually)

Pocket kit (a leather roll up case):

Knife (small lockback knife)
Doan type magnesium/sparker steel
Silva "SERE" button compass
Cord (10 feet thin and strong cord)
Waxed paper (sold as charcoal lighters, works like birchbark)
Bandaids
Butterfly closures
KMnO4 (potassium permanganate)
Small "Cycalume" staff (the app. 1" version)
Water putification tabs (5-6)
Plastic bag (freezer baggie 2 qt type)
Adhesive repair tape
Wire saw (better than nothing...)
3 snares (home made, rabbits, birds, etc)
Matches (waterproofed)
Al foil (so so mirror for signaling, fishing lures, etc)

/Par

--

Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se

Capital Punishment: when the government taxes you to get capital, in order to go into business in competition with you, and then taxes the profits on your business in order to cover its losses.
A Thot?
So much talk lately on these magnesium fire starters. --
Could folks post their approximate cost and sources?
Would help one and all.
Don

>knife so that a Doan magnesium firestarter just exactly fits in along side
>the knife. I then put a small hole in the case and string a chain through
>it and the hole in the firestarter so it won't get lost when the knife is
>in use.
X-Sender: rlc6@pop.cwru.edu (Unverified)
Message-ID: 
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Mon, 13 Jan 1997 12:23:35 -0400
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, drsim@PCISYS.NET
X-UIDL: 853250488.022
From: rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU (Rob Chatburn)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU
Subject: Re: Survival Kits
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> What did the magnesium fire starter cost?

>>My minimalist survival kit is a Victorinox Swiss Army knife (huntsman model
>>with saw) in the official knife case. The case is a little larger than the
>>knife so that a Doan magnesium firestarter just exactly fits in along side
>>the knife. I then put a small hole in the case and string a chain through
>>it and the hole in the firestarter so it won't get lost when the knife is
>>in use.
>>
>>Doan Mach & Equipment Inc
>>PO Box 21334
>>South Euclid, OH  44121
>>
>>or item # MAG787 in Brigade Quartermasters catalog (800) 338-4327
>>

I believe it is $4.95. The best 5 bucks you can spend on survival equipment.

Also, you can check out Brigade Quartermasters at www.brigade.com

Rob

Rob Chatburn, R.R.T
Director/Respiratory Care Dept.
Rainbow Babies & Childrens Hospital
11100 Euclid Ave.
Cleveland, OH 44106
(216) 844-7930
FAX: (216) 844-5246

From - Mon Jan 13 21:06:00 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA20568; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 12:16:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca 132.212.12.12) with SMTP id MAA26249; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 12:16:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
> So much talk lately on these magnesium fire starters. --
> Could folks post their approximate cost and sources?
> Would help one and all.

Hi Don

A magnesium firestarter is the first thing in my pocket whenever I leave the house. I carry matches and a BIC lighter as well, but these things tend to fail at the wrong time (when you're wet and cold).

The mag firestarter works even when wet (you just dry it off!) and is so reliable and simple that even a criminally inept fire maker like me can use it.

They cost about $8, weigh nothing and are about 1 inch by 2.5 inches by .2 inch is size. You can pick them up at most outdoor stores.

I can make sparks using a knife/axe and a hard rock if I have the right conditions (you know - indoors), but nothing beats the mag for reliability.

The key though is to know how to use it. Banging away at the thing making pretty sparks does you no good it you don't have tinder to catch them. The best two tinders I've been shown (and use frequently) are Old mans beard (also known as witches hair) a type of lichen found on evergreen trees, and, even better, shaved resin soaked wood. I shave the wood into a fluffy ball of resiny wood. One strike of the mag firestarter works 3 out of five times.
The old man's beard only works when it's dry, so this is one of my favorite summer tinders. The resin wood works all the time. I was taught two ways to find dry resin soaked wood - even if it's rained for a week - firstly, a naturally dead evergreen stump (naturally dead as opposed to having been hacked down by a logger). When a tree dies, its "blood" drains down to its base. As the tree rots and eventually topples, you're left with a punky stump that is just dripping resin.

The second place (one that I prefer to avoid because it scars the tree) is a cat-face. This is a part of a living tree that has been damaged such that the wood shows through the bark. To protect its injury, the tree creates a "scab" of resin over the wound. With a sharp knife and a baton it's very easy to shave off a two to three inch piece of the wood in the cat-face.

BTW except when I'm feeling lazy or it's very wet out, I rarely use the magnesium part of the firestarter - just the flint. I don't often find I need the "boost" given by the burning metal. (it burns WHITE hot).

Regards

Kevin
I'm similarly interested in this thread. Here's my fanny pack one:

This fanny pack is no larger than the usual fanny pack, but has one added feature I really like: the top unzips to pull out a full-sized upper compartment complete with straps, thus creating an emergency knapsack with the fanny pack as a bottom, zippered compartment. I got one by happenstance, and have regretted ever since not getting one or two more.

The contents:

- compass
- three slings (unless my kids have swiped one again;-)
- two D carabiners
- one other carabiner, not a D
- an 8 (you know, that piece of rappelling gear shaped like an 8 with a larger O on the bottom, useful for belays)
- two 25' lengths of parachute cord, with the strings in the middle
- a webbing loop, big enough to be usable as a swami seat if necessary
- a Fisherman's Swiss Army knife
- salt tabs
- aspirin
- rubber gloves
- a knife with fork and spoon built in (sentimental)
- sewing kit
- bouillion cubes in an empty film canister
- H2O proof match tube with strike anywhere matches plus striker
- small first-aid kit (bandages, gauze, ointment, tape)

Hmmmmm. I know there's a couple other things, I'll have to go empty it out completely. I've never dug in all the way since I first put it together!

Bill B.
Not sure if it was you, but someone wanted to include KMNO4, I was wondering why and what is it used for?

Gary Lowell
Salem, OR

At 03:46 PM 1/13/97 -0700, you wrote:

The contents:
> 
>compass
>three slings (unless my kids have swiped one again;-)
two D carabiners
one other carabiner, not a D
an 8 (you know, that piece of rappelling gear shaped like an 8
> with a larger O on the bottom, useful for belays)
two 25' lengths of parachute cord, with the strings in the middle
a webbing loop, big enough to be usable as a swami seat if necessary
a Fisherman's Swiss Army knife
salt tabs
aspirin
rubber gloves
a knife with fork and spoon built in (sentimental)
sewing kit
bouillion cubes in an empty film canister
H2O proof match tube with strike anywhere matches plus striker
small first-aid kit (bandages, gauze, ointment, tape)
>
>
Hmmmmm. I know there's a couple other things, I'll have to go empty it out completely. I've never dug in all the way since I first put it together!
>
>Bill B.
>

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Just remembered some more things in my fannypack one:

survival "space" blanket
firestarter, custom made
coupla baggies
TP

Something else triggered this recollection. The firestarter is one that you should be able to get most anywhere, probably for free. Go to any dental lab that makes dentures and ask them if they'd mind saving the squeezed out excess materials from when they cure them. What they do is they mix up this acrylic-like material out of powder and liquid, put it in the cavity, close up the flask, put them in a vise, and squeeze the vise shut. As it shuts, it closes up the flask tighter and tighter, thus squeezing out the excess material. They then trim off this stuff and toss it. My dad used to cut this off and roll it up like kids do with clay, making a rough cylinder about 1/2" to 3/4" diameter in the thickest part, about 3" to 4" long. They stink, but they light readily and burn slowly. This coupled with a good spark and some light tinder should give one plenty of time to start up a fire. If they don't want to roll it up, then just ask them to dump it in a bag instead of in the trash, no problem. Don't let them boil it with the flasks, you want the material before it's cured by boiling, just air-cured.
If worse comes to worse, swipe someone's dentures after the plane crash or whatever. (All you maggot eaters out there, be warned. Nothing, and I mean NOTHING will prepare you for the disgust that will churn your stomach if you get a really, really dirty denture! Shudder!)

Bill B.

Posting this to the list in case anyone else is also confused about this item in my kit:

> Rubber gloves?

Yep, Phil, rubber gloves. No, not for rectal exams. They make great emergency cold-weather protection for your hands. They seal in the heat that would otherwise be lost thru thin gloves or fingered gloves by providing a heat barrier between your hand and the outside sock, glove, or whatever. I pack rubber as they'll be re-useable, but you could also use those plastic gloves such as come in women's perm or hair coloring kits.

Bill B.
On Mon, 13 Jan 1997, Gary Lowell wrote:

> Not sure if it was you, but someone wanted to include KMNO4, I was
> wondering why and what is it used for?

Nope, it was me.

Multiple uses:

* Firelighting. If I happen to have sugar available somehow (mix some up, and it will ignite very easily)

* Water purification. Mix one or two crystals with 1 qt of water. Probably not the best way (healthwise) in the long run, but if I truly don't trust the water and can't cook it for some reason...

* Disinfectant. Add a bit more to the water. Will turn your skin a beautiful purple color...
* Supposedly you can make signals with it; make a strong solution and spread it on snow.

* Stain everything I own purple :-)

/Par

--

Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se

Capital Punishment: when the government taxes you to get capital, in order to go into business in competition with you, and then taxes the profits on your business in order to cover its losses.

Gary

In the Pacific NorthWest
Not sure if it was you, but someone wanted to include KMNO4, I was wondering why and what is it used for?

Nope, it was me.

Multiple uses:

* Firelighting. If I happen to have sugar available somehow (mix some up, and it will ignite very easily)
* Water purification. Mix one or two crystals with 1 qt of water. Probably not the best way (healthwise) in the long run, but if I truly don't trust the water and can't cook it for some reason...
* Disinfectant. Add a bit more to the water. Will turn your skin a beautiful purple color...
* Supposedly you can make signals with it; make a strong solution and spread it on snow.
* Stain everything I own purple :-)

Par

--
Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se

Capital Punishment: when the government taxes you to get capital, in order to go into business in competition with you, and then taxes the profits on your business in order to cover its losses.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
> KMN04 is used in the Medical field to cure Athalete Foot and other fungal
> infections. I have also been told when mixed with other Chemicals, it will
> also make things go BOOM! I found all this out yesterday from a friend of
> mine. Hope it will be of some help to all of you.
>
>                                                      Gary
>                                                      In the Pacific NorthWest

A small pile of KMNO4 will ignite with a few drops of antifreeze from your
car's radiator.

Rob

Robert Chatburn, RRT
Director/Respiratory Care
University Hospitals of Cleveland
Instructor/Dept. of Pediatrics
Case Western Reserve University
(216) 844-7930
rlc6@po.cwru.edu

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Potassium permanganate (KMnO4) can also sterilize water. Add enough so the water turns very light pink.
In a message dated 96-12-31 09:22:19 EST, you write:

<< do any of you know of a web site about tanning hides  
  jsublett@nemonet.com >>

Yes: http://www.pioneer.com/wildernessway/
There is also Native tech at uconn.edu but I don't have the address available just now. I think you can get it through wildernessway

John Waltz

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/tannihi1.htm (2 of 80) [10/22/2003 7:00:05 PM]
> In a message dated 96-12-31 09:22:19 EST, you write:
> 
> **<< do any of you know of a web site about tanning hides**
> 
> **jsublett@nemonet.com >>**
> 
> **Yes: http://www.pioneer.com/wildernessway/**
> 
> **pioneer@tcac.com**
> 
> You can get the URL for Native Tech and several other primitive technology
> pages at the URL: http://ic.net/~tbailey/Primitive.html

Ted Bailey

P. O. Box 6076
Ann Arbor, MI 48106
Ph: (313)-971-2970
Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/

---

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Jack Sublette wrote:

> do any of you know of a web site about tanning hides
> jsublett@nemonet.com

I don't know of any web sites but I will be glad to mail you some really great info. Just help me cover my costs. $7.00 (If you're in the U.S.) ought to do it. Write my snail mail below. I'll send you my book and some info on Paul Dinsmore's wet scrape, smoke before braining method.
I also recommend the following books:

Blue Mountain Buckskin by Jim Riggs
Braintan Buckskin by John & Geri McPherson
Braintanning, The Sioux Way by Larry Belltz

From - Tue Dec 10 21:49:48 1996
Received: from majordomo.iastate.edu (majordomo.iastate.edu [129.186.1.10]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA21890 for ; Tue, 10 Dec 1996 02:23:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from majordomo@localhost) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) id BAA12004 for knapper-outgoing; Tue, 10 Dec 1996 01:05:40 -0600
Received: from pop-1.iastate.edu (pop-1.iastate.edu [129.186.6.61]) by majordomo.iastate.edu (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA11999 for ; Tue, 10 Dec 1996 01:05:37 -0600
Received: from kim.teleport.com (kim.teleport.com [192.108.254.26]) by pop-1.iastate.edu (8.7.3/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA03496 for ; Tue, 10 Dec 1996 01:05:30 -0600 (CST)
Received: from ip-salem1-22.teleport.com (ip-salem1-22.teleport.com [206.163.117.24]) by kim.teleport.com (8.8.3/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA09641 for ; Mon, 9 Dec 1996 23:05:12 -0800 (PST)
X-Authentication-Warning: majordomo.iastate.edu: Processed from queue /var/spool/majordomo/knapper
Date: Mon, 9 Dec 1996 23:05:12 -0800 (PST)
Message-Id: <1.5.4.16.19961209230457.1ba778ce@mail.teleport.com>
X-Sender: garyl@mail.teleport.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Light Version 1.5.4 (16)
Mime-Version: 1.0
To: knapper@iastate.edu
From: Gary Lowell
Subject: Re: Leather Pads
Sender: owner-knapper@iastate.edu
Precedence: bulk
Reply-To: knapper@iastate.edu
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Hi Gerry,

Point your Web browser to this webpage and you will get some great information on Tanning that hide you have. Some of the best Tanning information I have seen on the Web. Here is the URL http://www.lib.uconn.edu/NativeTech/tanning/tanning.html It is about TANNING THE INFIRM WAY A Description of the Pre-smoking Method of Brain Tanning by Paul and Snowbird Little Spear. I hope you will enjoy this information as I did and it works great. Give it a try.

Merry Christmas and a Chippin New Year!

Gary

At 08:35 PM 12/9/96 -0600, you wrote:
> I have a deer skin and want to make leather pads for knapping
> and have not found an easy or quick way to remove the hair from
> the skin. If you know of a way to do this I would like the
> information.
> 
> Thanks
> Jerry
> 
>
Gary Lowell wrote:

> Hi Gerry,
> 
> Point your Web browser to this webpage and you will get some great
> information on Tanning that hide you have. Some of the best Tanning
> information I have seen on the Web. Here is the URL
> http://www.lib.uconn.edu/NativeTech/tanning/tanning.html  It is about
> TANNING THE INFIRM WAY A Description of the Pre-smoking Method of Brain
> Tanning by Paul and Snowbird Little Spear. I hope you will enjoy this
> information as I did and it works great. Give it a try.
Merry Christmas and a Chippin New Year!

Gary

At 08:35 PM 12/9/96 -0600, you wrote:
> I have a deer skin and want to make leather pads for knapping
> and have not found an easy or quick way to remove the hair from
> the skin. If you know of a way to do this I would like the
> information.
>
> Thanks
> Jerry

Paul Dinsmore came out to the East coast for us and did a class for us here at TRIBE on the pre-smoke method used by the Northwest Coastal primitive people. His method is very effective and comparable to other methods of braintanning. He had some excellent tips for speeding up production also. He also sells braintan cheaper than anyone I have ever seen: $10 per sq.ft. or 7 fully scraped hides for one finished hide. I don't know if he still offers that deal. But if anyone ever needs his address, let me know. Paul is a good guy to know and a good resource. I don't want to get into a big braintan thing on this list since it isn't about braintanning. But if anyone is interested e-mail me personally and I can furnish information and/or answer questions for you on braintan. There was a great write-up in the latest issue of the Bulletin of Primitive Technology, by the way. ---Benjamin Pressley (benjamin@perigee.net)
I would be happy to salt(?) and ship them to anyone willing to pay the shipping. Don in Colorado Springs, Colo.

Don,

Thanks for the offer. I'd be very interested in a hide for tanning. If they are still available, please reply directly to me:

sean_clemenza@radian.com
Sean Clemenza  
Davis, CA  

Do you have to do anything to the hides to remove the salt before beginning? I have never tanned before but am interested in starting.  

Thanks  

Robert Wade  

Robert Wade  
email: rwade@mindspring.com  
102 Piedmont Circle * Maryville TN  37803  
423-681-8733 * Fax: 423-681-0958  

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011  
From - Fri Jan  3 08:29:53 1997  
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA11003; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 19:57:02 -0500 (EST)  
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA25880; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 19:55:49 -0500 (EST)  
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 20:00:25 EST  
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA25874 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 19:55:40 -0500 (EST)  
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.108]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA120; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 19:52:31 -0500  
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca  
Warnings-To: <>
Robert Wade wrote:

> I would be happy to salt(?) and ship them to anyone willing to pay the
> shipping. Don in Colorado Springs, Colo.

> Don,
> Thanks for the offer. I'd be very interested in a hide for
tanning. If they are still available, please reply directly to
me:

  sean_clemenza@radian.com

Sean Clemenza
Davis, CA

> Do you have to do anything to the hides to remove the salt before
beginning? I have never tanned before but am interested in starting.
>
> Thanks
Hose them off well and even soak them for a couple of hours. They will respond just fine to the rest of the process.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Tue Jan  7 08:36:14 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.sgglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA08952; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 17:42:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA12933; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 17:41:04 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 17:45:40 EST
Received: from chic.sgglac.qc.ca (chic.sgglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id RAA12924 for ; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 17:40:52 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 204.19.37.68 (srv1s17.sgglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.68]) by chic.sgglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id RAA00907 for
In the name of the primitive skills group, a warm welcome is issued to Mr. and Mrs. Veilleux of Ottawa who just joined us. Happy to have you aboard!

veilleux@NETCOM.CA wrote:

> My husband and I, as well as some friends, are presently brain tanning some deer and beaver hides. Any tips on sources for hides would also be appreciated.

I think the very best source for hides is your local small time butcher. Try to find out who butchers moose or deer during hunting season for hunters. They will sell you all the hides you want. Going price in Chicoutimi is $5 for a moose quarter. I put an add in the Chicoutimi
paper asking hunters to call me if they had a hide instead of throwing it away, and I received so many calls that I ended up with 90 free moose hides! I've still got many nailed up to my barn walls awaiting to be transformed into useful items.

For furs such as beaver, wolf or any other so called fur bearer, fur auctions are your best bet. There are some in your area. Call "L'association des trappeurs du QuÈbec" for the dates, which are coming up soon, usually in late February. I got bear skins for 10$ last year. Often, you can get skins that are damaged at a very very low cost.

> We are looking forward to sharing ideas and information with everyone.

Thank you, and so are we looking forward to sharing with you!

AndrÈ
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

From - Tue Dec 31 22:32:37 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA06109; Wed, 1 Jan 1997 10:25:37 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA11613; Wed, 1 Jan 1997 10:24:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA11610 for ; Wed, 1 Jan 1997 10:24:40 -0500 (EST)
To add to Ben's dry scrape post and Tom's wet scrape post, here's this from the north: cold scrape.

Here, my Indian friends would never even think of any other way of scraping and preparing a hide. After cutting off the hair as in the wet scrape method, the basic process is to get the skin good and wet, stretch real tight and put it outside at a temperature of -20 degrees Celsius or colder. Then a scraper (usually an axe head to which is attached a long perpendicular handle) is used to pull off scrapes of skin which look a little bit like very thin wood shavings coming off with a hand plane or spoke shave.

This process is repeated until the skin is of uniform thickness everywhere. The rest of the process resembles the wet scrape method.
The following video documents the entire process very accurately. You should be able to obtain it from the University of Quèbec through inter-library loan if you can't find it elsewhere.

AUTEURS(S): +The Trust for native american cultures and crafts, prod Vaillancourt, Henri, real Todd, Crocker, cpde
TITRE(S): *Indian hide tanning
COLLATION: 35 min : son., coul.
NOTE(S): . - Offert sur videocassette 1/2 po (VHS)
TYPE DE DOCUMENT: Videocassette VHS

Hope this helps,

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÂois Bourbeau, Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Quèbec, 555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Quèbec) G7H 2B1 (418) 545-5011 Ext 5259

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan 3 08:29:55 1997
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA11051 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:02:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.108]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA111 for ; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 19:59:17 -0500
Message-ID: <32CDBAEB.30FB@perigee.net>
Date: Fri, 03 Jan 1997 20:05:31 -0600
X-UIDL: 852340436.000
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> To add to Ben's dry scrape post and Tom's wet scrape post, here's this
> from the north: cold scrape.
>
> Here, my indian friends would never even think of any other way of
> scraping and preparing a hide. After cutting off the hair as in the wet
> scrape method, the basic process is to get the skin good and wet,
> stretch real tight and put it outside at a temperature of -20 degrees
> Celsius or colder. Then a scraper (usually an axe head to which is
> attached a long perpendicular handle) is used to pull off scraps of
> skin which look a little bit like very thin wood shavings coming off
> with a hand plane or spoke shave.
>
> This process is repeated until the skin is of uniform thickness
> everywhere. The rest of the process resembles the wet scrape method.

> The following video documents the entire process very accurately. You
> should be able to obtain it from the University of QuÈbec through
> inter-library loan if you can't find it elsewhere.

> AUTEURS(S): +The Trust for native american cultures and crafts, prod
> Vaillancourt, Henri, real Todd, Crocker, cped
> TITRE(S): *Indian hide tanning
> EDITION: Greenville, N.H. : The Trust for native american cultures and
> crafts, c1981.
> COLLATION: 35 min : son., coul.
> NOTE(S): . - Offert sur videocassette 1/2 po (VHS)
Hope this helps,

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÄois Bourbeau, Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec, 555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec) G7H 2B1
(418) 545-5011 Ext 5259

Man, I'm glad you shared that. I always wondered how they did hides in the frozen climates. Boreal skills is definitely an area I mean to learn more about one day. I don't have anything but book knowledge on that subject.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Tue Dec 31 21:36:27 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA04537; Wed, 1 Jan 1997 02:05:05 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA10715; Wed, 1 Jan 1997 02:01:30 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
Hide Tanning (wet-scrape)

Status: U

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

>Warnings-To:
>Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
>Date: Tue, 31 Dec 1996 21:28:02 -0600
>From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
>Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
>MIME-Version: 1.0
>To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
>Subject: Re: tanning hides
>Status: U
>
>Jack Sublette wrote:
do any of you know of a web site about tanning hides
jsublett@nemonet.com

I don't know of any web sites but I will be glad to mail you some really great info. Just help me cover my costs. $7.00 (If you're in the U.S.) ought to do it. Write my snail mail below. I'll send you my book and some info on Paul Dinsmore's wet scrape, smoke before braining method.

I also recommend the following books:
Blue Mountain Buckskin by Jim Riggs
Braintan Buckskin by John & Geri McPherson
Braintanning, The Sioux Way by Larry Belltz

Benjamin Pressley

Hi,

The three publications listed by Benjamin Pressley cover "dry-scrape" brain-tanning. If you are interested in "wet-scrape", we sell the video "Tanning Spirit" by Melvin Beattie for $40 (includes postage).

Dry-scrape typically uses a sharp blade to dehair the hide while it is stretched tight in a rack. The hide is usually stretched soft in the rack also. Wet-scrape uses a dull blade to dehair the hide while it is draped over a beam. Wet-scraped hides are usually pulled soft (kind of like pulling taffy), and the hides are not put in a rack at all. Dry-scrappers and Wet-scrappers don't necessarily see eye-to-eye. Each camp tends to think theirs is the better way. You will have to decide that for yourself.

I have written extensively on wet-scrape in my Field Guide to Primitive Living Skills, available for $20 (includes postage). Most of the hide-tanning section appeared as a two part article in BackHome magazine last year. A new book is out by Steve Edholm and Tamara Wilder (also wet-scrape), which is supposed to be excellent, but I do not currently have the name of the book, or their address.

You can reach me at:
tomelpel@3rivers.net

Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, MT 59747-0691

For Visa/Mastercard orders, call us at 1-406-685-3222.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel, HOPS

>
On Wed, 1 Jan 1997, Tom Elpel wrote:

> Dry-scrapers and Wet-scrapers don't necessarily see eye-to-eye. Each camp
> tends to think theirs is the better way. You will have to decide that for
> yourself.

Thank you for the distinction. When two groups disagree like this, it
usually means that each technique has some advantages, and some drawbacks,
possibly under different conditions (weather?), or when different skill
levels are involved, time constraints, characteristics of the resulting
hide, etc. I assume you and others understand both techniques and perhaps
would be willing to discuss the trade-offs.

I am also interested in what you do with the hide *after* the hair is
removed. This is not the end of the tanning process is it?

matthew rapaport     Philosopher/Programmer at large     KD6KVH
mjr@crl.com     In God we trust. All others we monitor!     quine@dfw.net

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
matthew j. rapaport wrote:

... Thank you for the distinction. When two groups disagree like this,
it usually means that each technique has some advantages, and some
drawbacks...possibly under different conditions (weather?), or when
different skill...etc.I assume you and others understand both techniques
and perhaps would be willing to discuss the trade-offs. I am also
interested in what you do with the hide *after* the hair is removed.
This is not the end of the tanning process is it?

-----------------------------------------

I for one have come to peace with both worlds and don't get in
arguments about it. As you say, there are advantages and disadvantages
to both. Doing dry scrape requires very sharp tools and requires near
perfect conditions as far as humidity. The hide has to get dry before it
can be wet scraped. It has been theorized by some that dry scrape may
have just been used for thinning a hide. Most hide tanners I know that
do a lot of hides every year will tell you that the dry scrape method
produces a softer hide. I, myself, notice a slight difference, but
mainly when I smoke a hide before braining. The hide does not seem to
break as soft when you smoke first. I hope I'm not setting up for an
argument on this, I'm sure it can be debated.

Maybe, I'll just avoid the controversial stuff and stick with the
advantages I have found in both methods. I use both, interchangeably.
The thing I like best about wetscrape is that everything can be done on
the fleshing beam (fleshing, scraping). You don't have to punch holes
around the perimeter of the hide, you don't have to string up the hide
and stretch it out, re-tighten and re-tighten, etc., etc. You can also
use dull tools on wetscrape, no constant tool sharpening. If you use a
beam like Paul Dinsmore uses made from various diameters of PVC pipe you
can vary the surface to accomodate stubborn areas. You can use a dull
draw knife or a bar mounted with handles on each end. Now, I'm not just
trying to sell wet scrape here. When I teach students I start them out
learning dry scrape. Dry scrape allows you to study the hide a little
closer so you see everything that needs to be removed. You don't miss as
much as you do when you wet scrape.

You also asked what follows de-hairing. Whether wet or dry scrape you
have to remove a layer of epidermis on both sides. If you have a good
fleshing tool, if your stretching the hide in a rack (a la dry scrape)
it can remove this epidermis or scarf skin during the fleshing process.
That's the flesh side. On the hair side their is also a layer of
epidermis to be removed. It is best to do this right the first time, for
left over epidermis, particularly on the hair side, hinders good brain
penetration and is very unsightly (nothing more embarrassing than someone
coming up and stripping some left over epidermis off your just finished
shirt leaving a white spot under the smoked hide. Of course, that never
happened to me. Hah!).

After thoroughly fleshing, de-hairing and scraping, the hide is ready
to be brained. I mix my brains in a blender because the more thoroughly
liquidated the more efficient the tanning solution. You can just mash
them up by hand, though. It is also a good idea to mix them in warm
water. Some people prefer actually 'cooking' them in the water, just
don't boil them or actually cook them. Use just enough water to cover
the hide. Now, Paul Dinsmore has illustrated to us that you can actually
use one pound of brain to 5 gallons of water if you pre-smoke. The smoke
is like an enzyme that strips the glues from the hide therefore allowing
more efficient penetration of the brains. There are also many other
methods of stripping these glues. There is an excellent article on this
in the latest Bulletin of Primitive Technology.

You then soak the hide in the brains about 15 minutes, working and
wringing the hide in the solution. You then take the hide out and
thoroughly wring it out using a fence rail and a stick or whatever
works. Wringing is very important to good brain penetration. Soak and
wring several times within an hour. It shouldn't take longer than this
for a good braining. You can tell when you have good brain penetration
when you can stretch the hide on any part of the hide in any direction
and it stretches 2-3 inches. The brains also bleach the hide out white
and it is also at this time that any left over epidermis will show up
yellowish and any missed hair follicles will look like pepper all over
the hide.

Now, what really gets that hide soft? Breaking it. You can hang it up
a short while depending on how dry it is. Don't hang it in the sun,
though and don't let it dry out completely anywhere. Dry spots will be
hard spots. When it is still real damp it is time to pull it (break it).
You have to keep that hide moving till it is completely dry. If you
don't have time to stay with it, then bag it up and put it in the
freezer. Some people do this anyway, the expanding ice helps to break
it. If you do this, don't let it completely thaw shake the ice out of
it. It freeze dries it, gets a lot of the water out. Don't worry the brains have did their work, if you did a good job braining it. The way I like to break it is across my knees while sitting. Just put your knees together, stretch the hide over your knees, then spread your legs while keeping the hide tight across your legs, stretching the hide as your legs spread apart. Keep moving the hide around in circles and doing thid till completely dry.

The hide must be protected from getting wet at this point or it will harden up and have to be re-brained. To waterproof the hide...before I go any farther I should explain that term, waterproof. Water proof in this context does not mean water repellent, it means it will keep it from getting hard spots when wet. To waterproof the hide you must smoke it. Just get a good bed of coals laid in a pit and then throw rotten, punky wood on it and keep the flames smothered out. This can be done in a smokehouse (just throw a metal plate over the pit) or smoke can piped up through the hide by a series of pipes proceeding from something like a trash can that is smothering out the flames. The series of pipes being a stovepipe, followed by a tube of canvas, followed by a tube formed from the hide itself and suspended over a limb to hold it all up. There are also wilderness, primitive methods of doing this, I'll be glad to discuss. The hide does have to be smoked on both sides thoroughly. You can smoke it as long as you want to get it as dark as you want provided you keep it from getting too much heat. It is animal organic material like meat and will cook and be ruined as far as usefulness as material. Smoking also insect proofs the hide and bacteria proofs it. You can wear a shirt made from smoked hide and sweat all you want and it will never retain a body odor! This is also useful in hiding your body odor when hunting.

I know this was lengthy but there is no short answer to this question. The best way is to learn it from someone. I can probably recommend someone in your area, just let me know what your area is. I will be conducting a class in Charlotte, NC to anyone interested April 4-6, if anyone is interested. The class is filling up fast, though. I would also be glad to mail a bunch of information on both methods for anyone intersted, including the Dinsmore method of smoking before braining and sketches of his fleshing beam. Also included will be my book on dry scrape. I would appreciate $10 to cover the costs, though
(that is in the U.S. Anyone else inquire). Just write me at my snail mail below. Hope this helps! If you have any specific questions let me know.

------------------------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Wed Jan 15 08:15:37 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA12045; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 17:25:25 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA25047; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 17:23:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 17:21:25 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id RAA25042 for ; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 17:23:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.41 (ppp041.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.41]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id RAA10923 for ; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 17:26:35 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DC6B1D.2BBE@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Wed, 15 Jan 1997 05:29:01 +0000
Bill Blohm wrote:

> At what point do I depart from standard tanning methods?

Hi Bill,

Making rawhide means just what the word says: Raw Hide. This means you
don't do anything to it!

Just scrape off every little bit of meat on the flesh side on a fleshing
beam or other standard ways.

Then cut off the hair, and when it's short, scrape it off with a sharp
scraper. Lots of work, this part. Now you have rawhide.

Bernard Mason, in the book Camping & woodcraft, states that "Salt ruins
it for rawhide". Preserve your skin by drying or by freezing. I dry
mine by nailing them to the barn walls. Once dry, they last for years,
and when I need a piece fo rawhide, for example for tying my dogsled.
uprights to the skins, I just soak a piece, cut it into strips, and use.

You can soak the hide in water, or water and ashes, or water and all sorts of other junk if you want to remove the hair more easily. After a while, the hair will fall out.

Note, however, that when you use the water soak method, even if you use a stream with running water over your skin, you are beginning the rotting process of the skin, which will make it less resistant.

For making really good and strong rawhide, as for making snowshoes, indians here NEVER soak the skin, because the leather is much weaker.

To thin down the skin to even thickness, indians here stretch out the wet skin on a stretcher and put it out to freeze at -20 degrees or lower. They then use a scraper which looks a bit like an axe to which is attached a long perpendicular handle, and use it to shave off layers from the flesh side until the skin is the proper thickness.

In warmer climates, you do the same thing, but dry scrape it to thickness. Note that the toughest part of the skin is on the hair side, and you don't usually scrape that side, except what is necessary to remove the hair bristles.

For drums, you will find cowhide too thick, I think!

Good luck with your project.

AndrÈ
--
Surviving at nature's will...  
Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1
Halp!! I'm kind of in a hurry to gather this info, so turning here first.
It looks like I'll have a recently skinned cowhide coming in. I'd like to tan it, no problem there, but I have a need for some rawhide. I'm not sure how to go the rawhide route as opposed to a fully tanned hide with the hair still on (or off as the case may be).

At what point do I depart from standard tanning methods? (no brains (um, I know that's risky to say, but I mean not using brains in the tanning solution...awwww you know what I mean!;-))

What do I do different to get a good piece of rawhide out of the hide? (I'm looking to use it for some projects such as making a bodhran (a type of frame drum))

End use is envisioned as follows, taking advantage of rawhide's structure: wet, pull tight over the drum frame, let dry for a tight, snug drumhead

Pointers, info, just about anything other than the obvious no-brainer jokes very welcome at this point.

Bill B.
bblohm@boi.hp.com

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA11176; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 16:13:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA24022; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 16:11:58 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil (vixen.nrlssc.navy.mil [128.160.52.117]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA24009 for ; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 16:11:35 -0500 (EST)
i belive all you need to do is get it clean, flesh and hair, and thats it. a "raw hide". some "sanding" may be in order if you need a uniform thinkness or thiness as the case may be.

but there are a bunch of folks on here with more experience, and i'll sure they will help.

------------------------
Name: H. Carter Mesick
E-mail: hmesick@goldinc.com
Date: 01/15/97
Time: 15:06:00
------------------------

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Bill Blohm wrote:
Halp!! I'm kind of in a hurry to gather this info, so turning here first.

It looks like I'll have a recently skinned cowhide coming in. I'd like
to tan it, no problem there, but I have a need for some rawhide. I'm
not sure how to go the rawhide route as opposed to a fully tanned hide
with the hair still on (or off as the case may be).

At what point do I depart from standard tanning methods? (no brains (um,
I know that's risky to say, but I mean not using brains in the tanning
solution...awwww you know what I mean!;-))

What do I do different to get a good piece of rawhide out of the hide?
(I'm looking to use it for some projects such as making a bodhran (a type
of frame drum))

End use is envisioned as follows, taking advantage of rawhide's structure:
wet, pull tight over the drum frame, let dry for a tight, snug drumhead

Pointers, info, just about anything other than the obvious no-brainer jokes
very welcome at this point.

Bill B.
bblohm@boi.hp.com

Scrape, dry and go no further. You have usable rawhide. When your ready
to use it, just resoak it, stretch it over your drum frame, secure and
let dry. As far as braintanning cowhide, as far as I know it can't be
done. I know a guy in Michigan that has tried to braintan and he says it
is the only mammal he has tried to braintan that would not take to
brains.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
   chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA10834; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 15:46:02 -
   0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
   poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA23584; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 15:44:17 -
   0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
   with SMTP; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 15:42:19 EST
Received: from booz.bah.com (booz.bah.com [156.80.3.3]) by
   poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTPI d PAA23578 for
 ; Wed, 15 Jan 1997 15:43:59
   -0500 (EST)
Received: from 156.80.41.25 ([156.80.41.25]) by booz.bah.com (8.8.4/8.7.5) with
   SMTP id PAA16219 for ; Wed,
   15 Jan 1997 15:37:57 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DCFA0A.35E6@bah.com>
Date: Wed, 15 Jan 1997 15:38:50 +0000
X-UIDL: 853361402.001
From: Joe Schilling
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Schilling_Joe@BAH.COM
Organization: Booz Allen & Hamilton
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Macintosh; U; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Question????
X-URL: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Primskill.html
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Hey Folk! First timer here, so a little about myself. Tracker student, know buckskinning, bow-making, and among other things. Practice my skills almsot daily and vary them a bit day to day.

Now my question is: Does anyone know different hide tanning techniques besides other than chemically. What I'd like is something that can tan a hide like braining? Though I've heard Ivory soap does something like that?

Let me know, and thanks!!!!

Joe Schilling....;-)
Hey Joe what's wrong with brain-tanning? You can use a cow brain from the market. I've heard a lot about trying to get around the old way and I think the key may be in the lecithin. Lecithin is in the brain material supposed to make the hide soft. One fellow I heard of used crisco and lecithin but if memory serves me it didn't work very well. Too smelly or something. happy tannin'

BARUCH Attah Ba HaSHEM HaAdonai Y'shua HaMashiach

Howard N.V. Barker
B-YT51 266-2085
MAILSTOP 39-KM
There are some good books on brain tannin you might find in the library. One I believe is called Blue Mountain Buckskinning. You might also check the www.

BARUCH Attah Ba HaSHEM HaAdonai Y'shua HaMashiach
Howard N.V. Barker
B-YT51 266-2085
MAILSTOP 39-KM
MCMULLEN David wrote:

> Do you think that the system you described for smoking meats could be
> used to smoke brain tanned hides. If so what would the modifications
> be.
>
> Dave McMullen
> mcmullen@paprican.ca

Hi Dave,
Absolutely, the system works perfectly for smoking hides. You just lay them horizontally on the rack at the top of the tent, and then turn them over once in a while. You can also make the tent roof out of a skin or two, and they get smoked at the same time as the meat!

Cheers,

André

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Quèbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Quèbec), Canada G7H 2B1

From - Tue Jan 7 05:25:48 1997
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic [204.19.37.2]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA00676; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 18:14:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id RAA15198; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 17:39:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA04790; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 17:30:41 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.quebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA04785 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 17:30:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from emout15.mail.aol.com (emout15.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.41]) by poste.uqac.quebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id RAA04785 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 17:30:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: by emout15.mail.aol.com (8.6.12/8.6.12) id RAA10029 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 17:34:30 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852675708.033
While this wasn't designed for turkey hides, the process may be adaptable. At least you can tan your hide and eat it too.

This comes from the book "Our Boots, an Inuit Women's Art" by Jill Oakes and Rick Riewe.

"Eider, murre, and other bird skins were used for stockings and over slippers when caribou skins were unavailable. ... Silatik Meeko provided a detailed description of the techniques employed by women on the Belcher Islands."

"Hunters bring back the eiders whole for the women to process. After the birds are allowed to partially thaw so the skin can be easily loosened from the meat, the wings and legs are taken off. The skin is sliced around the bill, another cut is made about halfway down the neck, and the head is pulled through this last incision. According to Meeko (1989):

"I hold the bill in my mouth, grasp the skin at both sides of the neck, and peel the skin down towards the tail. The skin ends up being inside out. After removing excess blood and fat from the skin, I turn it right side out and rub it in snow until the feathers are clean."

The long neck skins are tied together in groups of two, hung over a line outside, and allowed to freeze-dry overnight. Then the skins are turned with the flesh side to the outside to dry for about a day. When the skins are partially dry, the loose surface fat is chewed and pulled off, and the fat embedded in the skin is removed by an action similar to sucking on a baby bottle. Meeko also said that:
"Beginners quickly learn not to suck too hard, as you can pull the feathers right through the skin into your throat, but if you suck too gently, the skin becomes moist. It takes about two hours to prepare one skin until it feels dry. My throat becomes red and sore after sucking off fat for several hours, until I get used to it. I often gain weight from swallowing some of the fat while preparing bird skins."

Like I said, you may have to make a few adaptations, but it may be an alternative to subsisting on bugs!

Have fun.

Grant Goltz
Native American Technologies
P. O. Box 121
Longville, MN 56655

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan  7 05:24:47 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA28036; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 12:53:01 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA02592; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 12:50:24 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 06 Jan 1997 12:55:06 EST
Received: from slip-3.slip.net (slip-3-barrnet.slip.net [204.160.88.17]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA02588 for ; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 12:50:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from woodruff-sawyer.com [204.162.170.22] by slip-3.slip.net with smtp (Exim 0.57 #1) id 0vhJFJ-00047Y-00; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 09:54:01 -0800
Received: from pc67 by woodruff-sawyer.com (AIX 3.2/UCB 5.64/4.03) id AA107942; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 09:51:52 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/tannihi1.htm
I've taken a few skills classes from a group called the Miwok Archaeological Preserve of Marin at Pt. Reyes National Seashore north of San Francisco, and I think I recall hearing that the Coast Miwok used to tan pelican skins. You might be able to e-mail for more info to:

MAPOM2255@aol.com

--John
Benjamin Pressley wrote:

> Has anyone had any experience tanning a turkey hide? If so please let
> me know. Please be detailed. Natural, primitive or modern methods are
> welcome.
Ben, you always come up with the greatest questions!

In the Belcher Islands, way up north, the Inuit people one year saved their lives when the caribou did not migrate, by making coats out of tanned goose skins. I saw such a coat at the Yellowknife museum in the Northwest territories when I was up there researching on sabbatical leave one year.

The skins were cut in a rectangle, and the feathers remained on the skin to make an incredibly beautiful coat which was obviously very warm. I'm not sure about this, but I believe the skins were simply removed, meat and fat scraped off, then stretched out to dry. They are thin skins and simple manipulation would soften them. Judging by the color of the inside of the coat I saw, I would say that the skins were also smoked in a similar way as other hides.

I know this doesn't help much, but it's a start for experimentation!

André
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Quèbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Quèbec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Sun Jan 5 23:15:29 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA22863; Sun, 5 Jan 1997 19:04:35 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA02693; Sun, 5 Jan 1997 19:03:19 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sun, 05 Jan 1997 19:07:30 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by
Has anyone had any experience tanning a turkey hide? If so please let me know. Please be detailed. Natural, primitive or modern methods are welcome.

------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Tue Jan  7 05:26:02 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA01962; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 21:47:12 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA05767; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 21:45:00 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 06 Jan 1997 21:49:40 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTPT id VAA05759 for
; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 21:44:47 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.93]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail Server v1.1) with SMTP id AAA111; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 21:41:06 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32D1C766.E6F@perigee.net>
Date: Mon, 06 Jan 1997 21:47:50 -0600
X-UIDL: 852675708.041
From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, CAGrean@AOL.COM
Subject: Tanning Turkey Hides
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
Thanks, for the response from CAGrean. I do want a method where it will stay soft. I think you may be on the right track, though, with using reptile tanning kits. That's kind of what I was thinking. There has got to be a way, though, without commercial bought kits. They tanned duck hides in the 18th century U.S. and made possibles bags with them. I've seen them in sketchbooks, but no explanation how they did it? Anybody have any leads on how they did duck hides? Maybe it would treat similarly. Thanks for not thinking me INSANE!

---------------------------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan  7 05:26:30 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA03203; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 01:21:32 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA06647; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 01:15:56 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 07 Jan 1997 01:20:36 EST
Received: from ns2.qnet.com (ns2.qnet.com [207.155.33.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA06644 for ; Tue, 7 Jan 1997 01:15:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from Quantum.qnet.com (palm00-02.ca.qnet.com [207.155.33.32]) by ns2.qnet.com (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA13953; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 22:19:30 -0800 (PST)
Benjamin,

I've been following this thread with interest because I made a Grouse Hat which still works (though it is a bit ratty and missing quite a few feathers) after 10 years. I've also tried it with other birds... just for the giggles.

> Anybody have any leads on how they did duck hides? Maybe it would treat similarily. Thanks for not thinking me INSANE!

As they say, insanity is a state of mind... I think we share it. This is what I did.

With the grouse, I used the hot rock trick to cook the bird. When the bird was finished the skin slid off as it is supposed to do. I ate the bird. I turned the bird skin inside out and stitched the neck, wings and legs closed with gut from the bird and a needle made from bird bone. Nothing fancy. I filled the inside out bird skin with sand, till it was stiff. This made it easy to scrape the hide with another piece of bird bone. The sand protected the feathers. After it was scraped I used a borax/salt solution to wash the
I'm going to drop the narrative at this point and just go to the steps.

Let the skin dry for two days. It will feel starchy and appear to be semi-transparent. The feathers will be visible. Bathe the dry skin with a 50/50 mixture of glycerin and alcohol (the stronger the better Taquila is no good, everclear is ok and Isopropyl (sp?) works) don't drink the mixture. Rub the liquid into the skin until it begins to soften (I've been using the Alcohol/glycerine soak mix on snake skins for years. It works great with no other processing...... well.... pull off the fat with your fingers first!).

If you want to, soak a rag in the mixture and wrap the skin. That will keep the mixture in contact with the skin for a longer period of time. When the skin feels fairly supple, open up your appendage holes and let the sand drain out. Carefully turn the skin back to the way it was when it was hatched. Now you can cut or wear the feather bag. It will remain fairly soft. If it stiffens just use the mixture again.

I've done this with quail, which is problematic since the skin is so thin, and even with a few sparrows (hacky sack sparrows). Give it a shot....

Incidentally, the sand trick is similar to the technique used to shrink heads... but that's another topic.

I'm anxiously awaiting other ways to perform this useless miracle.

Peace,

Ron Hood

Visit Hoods Woods at

http://www.survival.com/~diogenes/

It's good for a laugh......
Regarding tanning turkey hides. Does anyone feel confident enough to
attempt it for a person who has inquired of me in Los Angeles, CA? He apparently has money and says that money is no object and has a plan to make some money if he can find someone to tan several turkey hides for him. I hope this doesn't sound like an advertisement. I just can't think of a more qualified group to offer this opportunity to than all of you. E-mail me personally if anyone is interested and I will answer questions and give you contact information. I sounds like it could be lucrative for someone. I know our group isn't about money, but we all can use all the green we can get when we can get it. Thanks for the assist.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
I don't think you can really tan a turkey hide but assuming that you want to preserve the skin with the feathers on I recommend the following;

Skin the bird with an exceptionally sharp knife and try to keep it as complete as possible (I think you will run into some major problems around the tail and wings.

Clean off as much fat as possible (corn meal works well in soaking up oils and fats in liquid form, just dust it on, let it absorb and clean it off.) Carefully clean off blood and viscera from the feathers with mild soap. You can preen the feathers after the skin dries so don't fuss over them too much.

Tack the flensed and cleaned skin with the fleshy side up to a board. Tack edges every 1/2 inch or so to hold the shape of the skin as it dries but don't stretch it out too much (bird skins are very elastic).

Cover the skin with table salt and borax (about 5 parts salt to 1 part borax) the borax will sort of sanitize the whole thing and prevent bacterial growth. The salt will draw out all the moisture left in the skin, and you may have to put a new application on as the first gets saturated. Keep the whole mess in a cool, well ventilated spot for a couple of weeks and the skin will be dry sort of like rawhide.
I did this with a porkypine and it worked real well, the whole thing deteriorated in about three years so if you want to keep the skin longer (I was just using the quills so I removed them) you may want to try a snakeskin tanning solution sold by Tandy Leather, most Taxidermy suppliers sell quick-tan kits too. Try Van Dykes (they have an 800 no. I think. Good luck

CAG
Hi all,

A couple weeks ago I posted some wet-scrape resources. I mentioned that Steven Edholm and Tamara Wilder had a book out on Wet-scrape, but did not have the title or other information on it. I've since received a flyer in the mail. The book is called "Wet-Scrape Braintanned Buckskin: A practical Guide to Home Tanning and Use" ISBN 0-9654965-4-6 pr send $17.95 plust $3.00 postage to Paleotechnics, Box 876, Boonville, CA 95415.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
A few years ago I brought home a blacktailed deer from a hunting trip, and I turned the skin into rawhide which I later used to back a wood bow. I made the rawhide as follows:

1) Stretched hide on frame using parachute cord
2) Air-dried for several days
3) Scrapped the hair off with a home-made scrapper.
4) Scrapped the "membrane" off the inner surface
5) Sanded the surfaces

This was quite thin and quite beautiful, but the base of the hair was still visible as dark "dots" on the surface of the rawhide since I had not soaked the hide to get the hair out. I wondered whether I had scrapped that side enough, but I was afraid to scrape it further for fear of damaging it.

Anyway, I went on to cut long strips from the center to use on the bow, which worked beautifully, even though the bow had a "5 o'clock shadow". I took a wash-cloth-size piece of the rawhide to experiment with brain tanning, using the deer's brain:
1) Steam the brains in a pot on the stove
2) "Squish" the brain to a paste with my hands
3) Spread the paste on the rawhide and work until soft
4) Work the skin over a rope stretched between 2 trees, pulling and stretching it as hard as I could, re-applying brain solution when it began to get dry until I had used all the solution.

When I was done, the skin was very stiff and seemed to be somewhere between rawhide and buckskin.

Now, my question is this: Why did I not get nice, soft, white buckskin?

I have wondered if I was not aggressive enough with the scrapping of the hair side of the skin, preventing good penetration of the brain solution. Maybe I stopped the stretching process before it was completely dry. I would appreciate any suggestions the group might have.

Mark D Ball
Plastic Surgeon
Redding, CA
mball@mercy.org

From - Sat Jan 18 06:48:30 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA05948; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 15:41:30 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA25284; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 15:39:09 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA25277 for ; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 15:38:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.115]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail
Mark D. Ball wrote:

> (SNIP)
> Now, my question is this: Why did I not get nice, soft, white buckskin?
> I have wondered if I was not aggressive enough with the scrapping of the hair side of the skin, preventing good penetration of the brain solution. Maybe I stopped the stretching process before it was completely dry. I would appreciate any suggestions the group might have.

It's hard to say. You may have overcooked your brains. I don't cook them at all. I just add water to the liquified brains that is hot to just about the point I can't hold my hands in the water. You also may not have done a good enough job scraping. It isn't as essential that you...
scrape the flesh side as well as you need to scrape the hair side as far as brain penetration goes. You must remove that shiny epidermis and membrane that appears on the hair side as well as its equivalent on the flesh side. You also need to do more than just smear the brain solution into the hide. You need to get that hide in the solution, work it into it, take it out and wring it thoroughly several times within a one hour period, depending on how good a penetration you are getting. The way to test if you have good enough penetration of the brains is to stretch the hide in all directions. If it has good penetration it should significantly stretch as you pull it. To get a good pull put your knees together, stretch the hide over your knees, then spread your knees apart, pulling the hide while doing this. Turn it around several times while doing this. This is also the process I recommend you should try for pulling (breaking) a hide dry. Which is the other thing you could have done wrong. You need to keep a hide pulling until it is completely dry. Don't let it fool you. To test for places where moisture is hiding feel for cold spots on both sides. If you can detect moisture, keep pulling. The advantage to pulling it on your knees in this manner as opposed to putting it in a rack and breaking it with a paddle is several fold: 1) You don't have to put it back in the rack after taking it down. In fact, you can just trim it out of the rack. 2) You can quit if you get tired, just fold it up, bag it up and throw in the freezer. When you take it out don't thaw it completely, just enough to shake the ice out of it. You are freeze drying the hide when you do this and the ice expansion does some breaking to the hide.

Now I have been assuming dry scrape in the above. If you were dry scraping make sure your tools were good and sharp and your hide is thoroughly tightened up in the rack and thoroughly dry before you scrape it. If you were wet scraping, make sure you soaked the hide in water long enough for it to swell enough that the layers kind of 'float' so you can clearly see the layers you need to scrape, so you do a thorough job of scraping. Hope this helps.

--------------------
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
I just have a question in general about brain tanning. I've seen it done and seen the results, but nobody has ever told me where you get the brain. Do you kill the animal yourself and split the skull open? (makes the most sense to me)
Ben, thanks for responding to my question about brain tanning. I like the idea of stretching the hide with the knees. I am still uncertain, however, about how deep to dry-scrape on the hair side. When you have scraped off the shiny epidermis, should the base of the hair follicles still be visible? I thought I had gotten the epidermis off, but I still had hair follicles visible in the hide. Should I have kept going? I've never seen it done, and it's hard to tell from the descriptions I've read.

Mark D Ball
Plastic Surgeon
Redding, CA
From - Sat Jan 18 20:37:04 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA08117; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 23:40:47 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA27065; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 23:38:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 23:36:58 EST
Received: from mail.utah.uswest.net (mail.utah.uswest.net [207.108.169.245]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA27062 for
; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 23:38:36 -0500 (EST)
Received: from LOCALNAME (dialup70.utah.uswest.net [207.108.169.70]) by mail.utah.uswest.net (8.6.12/8.6.12) with SMTP id VAA21654; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 21:42:38 -0700
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E1C1A6.5A42@mail.utah.uswest.net>
Date: Sat, 18 Jan 1997 22:39:34 -0800
X-UIDL: 853680812.012
From: "Ferrell A. Peterson"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, fepeters@UTAH.USWEST.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02E-US202 (Win16; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mball@MERCY.ORG
Subject: Re: Brain Tanning
References:
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Mark D. Ball wrote:
>
> Ben, thanks for responding to my question about brain tanning. I like the
> idea of stretching the hide with the knees. I am still uncertain, however,
> about how deep to dry-scrape on the hair side. When you have scrapped off
> the shiny epidermis, should the base of the hair follicles still be
> visible? I thought I had gotten the epidermis off, but I still had hair
> follicles visible in the hide. Should I have kept going? I've never seen
> it done, and it's hard to tell from the descriptions I've read.
>
> Mark D Ball

Mark: There's a book out on dry scrape brain tanning that I found to be
an excellent resource. It's called Blue Mountain Buckskin by Jim Riggs.
It Costs $12.00. Write him at 72501 Hiway 82, Wallowa, OR 97885 The
Book is very well written and Jim has a great sense of humor. You'll
find it answers a lot of questions. Even ones you haven't thought of
yet!

There was a question of how do you get brains. Supposedly, each animal
comes with enough brains to tan its own hide, but friends of mine that do
a lot of brain tanning get pork brains out of the meat section at the
grocery store (you might have to hunt a bit. Not all stores may carry
it).

Keep on Truckin'

FP
Neal,

Cow or Pig brains work great. Go to this URL
http://www.lib.uconn.edu/NativeTech/tanning/tanning.html and you will learn
a great deal about Brain Tanning and some other great stuff on tanning.

I hope this information will be of help to you and others that like to Tan. 
Good luck and I wish you well.

Gary

Things turn out best for people who make the best of the
way things turn out

http://www.open.org/gary/fishinhole.htm  IRC #fishinhole  (Undernet)
At 04:26 PM 1/18/97 +0000, you wrote:
>I just have a question in general about brain tanning. I've seen it
>done and seen the results, but nobody has ever told me where you get
>the brain. Do you kill the animal yourself and split the skull open?
>(makes the most sense to me)
Mark D. Ball wrote:

> Ben, thanks for responding to my question about brain tanning. I like
> the idea of stretching the hide with the knees.

Just a couple of thoughts from my own experience. Some hides require
much more than this though and in fact I have had to brain and stretch
several hides more than once to get them to break. I do all my
stretching at this time in a rack and use a variety of tools of
varying sizes to work the hide. The toughness of the hide seems to vary
based on several factors—time of year the deer was killed (summer and
spring hides are much thinner and easier to work than fall or winter
hides), size of the animal (although this theory breaks down also at
times). There are those that argue that buck hides are tougher to tan
than doe hides. I have not necessarily found this to be the case. I've
seen some mighty thick and tough doe hides in my day. I am still uncertain, however,

> about how deep to dry-scrape on the hair side. When you have scrapped
> off the shiny epidermis, should the base of the hair follicles still be
> visible?

Sometimes they are, but I have not found this to have a tremendous
impact on outcome of the tanning process. Every hide varies greatly.
Sometimes there is just no accounting for why a hide does what it
does. In my process I do do some light scraping while I am stretching to
get off any flecks of remaining epidermis and to begin buffing out the
> I thought I had gotten the epidermis off, but I still had hair follicles visible in the hide. Should I have kept going?

I think whether you continue scraping or not depends more on the thickness of the hide than anything else. You can scrape through. I usually play this one by ear. One thing I know, though, is that I have less of a tendency to leave hair follicles on the hide if I am able to scrape the hair and epidermis off in one single phase of the process. Where there tends to be situations like this is when the hair has slipped out previous to scraping, but this is no hard and fast rule either.

> I've never seen it done, and it's hard to tell from the descriptions I've read.

The classes on tanning that I teach have at times offered "grief counseling" to those who have tried to do this from a book :-) . I mostly think that the bulk of the books on the market might serve better as smoking materials than reading materials. I speak from experience on this too, having attempted several hides using several processes I found in books before apprenticing with a tanner in my area.

Keep at it, though! Believe it or not this process is possible and the results blow every other tanning method I have ever seen out the window, without exception.

Happy tanning,

Mark Zanoni

> Mark D Ball
> Plastic Surgeon
> Redding, CA
> mball@mercy.org
Neal McSpadden wrote:

> I just have a question in general about brain tanning. I've seen it done and seen the results, but nobody has ever told me where you get the brain. Do you kill the animal yourself and split the skull open? (makes the most sense to me)
>
> Yes, sometimes I do take the brain out of the deer whose hide I am tanning. In general, one brain will do 2-4 hides, depending on the method of braintan you are using. As far as brain use goes though you can use any kind of brain. I just as often buy the frozen pork brains in the frozen foods section of my grocery store. Once, at a demo at a national park, I ran out of brains and could not find frozen anywhere and used the canned variety in gravy. It worked just fine, but was a little more expensive.

--------------------------
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Tue Jan 21 02:47:01 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA22784; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 20:55:36 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA12138; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 20:54:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 20:52:16 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA12129 for
Mark D. Ball wrote:
>
(snip) I am still uncertain, however,
> about how deep to dry-scrape on the hair side. When you have scrapped off
> the shiny epidermis, should the base of the hair follicles still be
> visible? I thought I had gotten the epidermis off, but I still had hair
> follicles visible in the hide. Should I have kept going? I've never seen
> it done, and it's hard to tell from the descriptions I've read.
>
Some hair follicles go deeper than others. Mainly you want to remove the
shiny epidermis. This will allow for brain penetration. It will not affect how well it is brained. It may affect how it looks, though depending on how visible and prominent the hair follicles are. It is a judgment call. Try to go as deep as you can and try to get past them but watch how much you are thinning your hide. If you're thinning your hide more than you wish it is time to stop. There is one point that it is very evident how much the hair follicles are going to show. When it is brained the hide will be milky white. At this point any hair follicle that are going to show on the finished product will look like like a 5:00 shadow or pepper all over the hide. Not to fear. Get it on a fleshing beam and work on those areas a little more. Any hair follicles that are left after the hide is smoked, depending on how dark you smoke it, will kind of look like a dirty patch. You're still not lost. You can soak the hide even after it's smoked and take it to the fleshing beam, re-brain it, re-break it and then smoke it again, if needed.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Thu Jan 23 11:35:21 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA19803; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 15:01:37 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA15684; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 14:58:32 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 14:56:35 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id OAA15662 for ; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 14:57:05
Someone gave me this explanation on tanning bird hides from a book. It is an OK book, except for their "primitive tanning" chapter. The author knew absolutely nothing about braintan. I did like the section at the back, though, that contained many formulas for tanning solutions. I thought I'd pass it along (following sig.). Incidentally, I never heard from anyone yet that might be interested in tanning some turkey hides for someone I know for the money.

------------------------------------------------------------------------
Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Tribe.html
TANNING BIRD SKINS

One of the most gratifying projects the home tanner can embark upon is the tanning of bird skins. They can be used for wall trophies, preserved so the feathers can be used later for fly tying or feather pictures, or used for decorations on clothing and hats. To my way of thinking, the tanned and mounted skin of a game bird in full plumage is a fine trophy.

Skinning the Bird

Some of the bird skins that can be tanned are those of pheasants, ruffed grouse, wood ducks, and mallard drakes. Birds, like animals, skin most easily before the body heat has left them. Before you start skinning, plug up the mouth, nostrils, and vent with tufts of cotton to keep body fluids from staining the feathers during the skinning process. Then select a sharp knife with a point and make a slit from bottom beak to the vent, using your fingers to spread the feathers ahead of the knife. Many birds have a part between the feathers at this location and if you follow this line you will be cutting it in the center. Don't cut into the meat of the breast, but cut just through the skin by pushing the knife point ahead of the cut.

Once this first slit is made you can start working the skin off away from the cut on each side. Do this with your fingers by grasping the skin in one hand and pushing on the meat with the other. Continue separating the skin from the meat, working as far as possible down the sides of the breast and toward the tail. Work the skin off around the legs and down toward the back, always pushing the meat away from the skin rather than pulling on the skin.

Once you get to the leg joints, cut them off at the knees and continue to push the tips of the fingers around the leg skin until the legs are free. There is very little fat between the skin on the bird's back and the bone, and so it is the hardest to remove. In some cases it might be necessary to push the knife point between the skin and the bone.
to free the skin, but care must be exercised. If a cut is made it can be sewed up to keep the feathers from protruding inside. When you get to the tailbone just cut it off and leave it on the skin. You also have to cut the gut off at this point. Use your fingers to push the meat away from the neck bones until your fingers can get all the way around it. When you reach the head, cut the neck and invert it, and then you can use the tip of the knife to cut the skin loose, using great care around the ears and eyes. Sever the beak mandibles at the head and leave the beak on the skin.

The wings are extremely hard to skin out in some birds, but they are also the most attractive part; therefore, whatever care is taken in removing the wing skin will be rewarded. I have had good luck by pushing the skin outward from the wing muscles until the wing joint is reached and severing the wing joint at this point. Usually the meat of the last joint will dry without putrifying and loosening the feathers. If you don't care to take a chance on this, inject formaldehyde with a hypodermic needle into the meat of the wing. On extra large birds, make slits under the wings and scrape away as much flesh as possible.

Tanning the Skin

It is not advisable to immerse a bird skin since the tanning fluids will mat and dull the feathers in most cases. It is better to scrape away the flesh from the skin as much as possible, and then tan it with a paste. Borax alone will keep the bird skins from rotting if they are kept in a dry place, but an alum tawing mixture will tan it very well.

Make an alum mixture by combining 1/2 pound of aluminum sulfate and 1/2 pound of salt. Add enough water to make a paste, stir it very well, let it set for one hour, and then thickly coat the flesh side of the bird skin. Cover it with a plastic sheet and let it set for two days. This will probably tan the skin, but to be on the safe side scrape off the first coat and apply a second coat. Let this stand covered for two more days, then remove the covering and let the paste dry on the skin. Scrape it off to finish the tan.

Sometimes it is desirable to tan only the breast of the bird for a wall trophy, especially when the feathers will be used for fly tying or millinery. Skin out the bird's breast by running the knife across the point of the breast and forward under the bird's wings to the neck.
will cut out a section which will include nearly all of the breast feathers. Tan the breast by stretching the feather side down on a board; then coat the flesh side with the alum paste.

If you don't intend to keep the skin more than a few weeks it only has to be dried to keep very well.

From - Mon Jan 27 18:59:26 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA08789; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 18:47:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA19190; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 18:46:24 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 18:44:28 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA19187 for ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 18:46:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.92 (ppp092.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.92]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id SAA22522 for ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 18:49:39 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32ECF931.5B50@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Mon, 27 Jan 1997 18:51:29 +0000
X-UIDL: 854409322.0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@Saglac.Qc.Ca
Organization: Au Gré de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Hide Tanning
Joe Schilling wrote:

> Okay. Last time I asked this question about hide tanning, I was
> reffered to a Primitive skills page. But I know all about brain
> tanning. The question I have is this.
> Does anyone know how to get a hide to a brain tanned texture WITH
> OUT using brains? Where I live now brains of all types are gone. Trust
> me, I've asked the butchers and meat shops but to no avail. (Though I
> recieved quite a few interesting looks and questions.:-))
> Anyway, if anyone can help me out let me know, or at least where i
> can special order brains.

Hi Joe,

I've seen indians in the northwest territory use Ivory soap instead of
brains in exactly the same manner as the braintan method. That should
get you on your way.

Check out the film "Indian Hide Tanning" by Henri Vaillancourt for an
explanation on this.

Good luck with your project...

AndrÈ
From - Mon Jan 27 19:18:51 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA08931; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 19:03:34 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA19372; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 19:00:22 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 18:58:29 EST
Received: from unix.newnorth.net (unix.newnorth.net [205.212.60.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA19366 for
; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 19:00:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from marknq.newnorth.net (rhin-cs7-5.newnorth.net [205.212.60.205]) by unix.newnorth.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id TAA17985; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 19:04:56 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32ED400A.AA8@unix.newnorth.net>
Date: Mon, 27 Jan 1997 17:53:46 -0600
X-UIDL: 854410525.000
From: Mark Zanoni
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MarkNQ@UNIX.NEWNORTH.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Schilling_Joe@BAH.COM
Subject: Re: Hide Tanning
References: <32EC98DA.253F@bah.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
Joe Schilling wrote:

> Okay. Last time I asked this question about hide tanning, I was
> referred to a Primitive skills page. But I know all about brain
> tanning. The question I have is this.
> Does anyone know how to get a hide to a brain tanned texture WITH
> OUT using brains? Where I live now brains of all types are gone. Trust
> me, I've asked the butchers and meat shops but to no avail. (Though I
> received quite a few interesting looks and questions.:-))
> Anyway, if anyone can help me out let me know, or at least where I
> can special order brains.
>
> Thanks!
>
> Joe Schilling

Joe,

I've heard of people using "Joy Dishwashing Liquid" to tan hides. A
friend of mine who spent time in Alaska says this is is how lots of
folks in the "bush" get hides tanned. Joy contains lanolin, which I
suppose is the active ingredient that does the job.

Another one I have heard of, but not tried is "Neats Foot Oil". I don't
know how this stuff is made but, it may have lanolin and other similar
chemicals in it in similar amounts to animal brains. It would certainly
be worth a try, huh?

Hope this helps,

Mark Zanoni
Sorry, I too would like to have a source for crooked knives. I know of a museum who purchased some replicas, but I'll have to find out where.

I make my own crooked knives from old files or old sawblades, because I use them a lot when I make birchbark canoe ribs and planking. I find the commercial crooked knives too long for comfortable leverage, and I don't usually like the angle of the handles. This is a very personal tool, and you will get sore real quick if it doesn't fit your hand just right.

AndrÈ
I have read about something called a "crooked knife," a combination drawknife/gouge/all-purpose trail knife. I am in possession of C. Keith Wilbur's very clear instructions for making one, but I am not a blacksmith. So I wonder if there is anywhere I can
simply buy a "crooked knife."

Thanks!

--David Weinstock
Middlebury, Vermont

I heard that they used to be available through Hudson's Bay Outfitters in
Canada. That may be in error. Andre or any of the list members in Canada or Alaska, have you seen any of these available? I understand that before the coming of the Europeans that beaver tooth crooked knives were made.

JB

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 30 05:50:44 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id VAA22077; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:17:05 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA13531; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:15:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:20:33 EST
Received: from alpha.esper.com (alpha.esper.com [204.71.4.24]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA13528 for ; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:15:44 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [204.71.4.45] (ppp13.esper.com [204.71.4.45]) by alpha.esper.com (8.6.12/8.6.12) with SMTP id VAA11215; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:18:32 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:18:32 -0500
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, dweinsto@PANTHER.MIDDLEBURY.EDU
X-UIDL: 851985941.041
From: fclark@ESPER.COM (fred clark)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, fclark@ESPER.COM
Subject: Re: Crooked knife
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> I have read about something called a "crooked knife," a combination
drawknife/gouge/all-purpose trail knife. I am in possession of
>C. Keith Wilbur's very clear instructions for making one, but I
>am not a blacksmith. So I wonder if there is anywhere I can
>simply buy a "crooked knife."
>
>Thanks!
>
>--David Weinstock
>
>Middlebury, Vermont

There's a mail list called "theforge" whose members are mostly blacksmiths. Some of them are knife makers, and might be able to help you if you can provide information about what a "crooked knife" looks like.

To subscribe, you can reach them at:
listproc@wugate.wustl.edu

Send this message:

subscribe theforge

Hope this helps.

Fred

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 30 05:50:54 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA22146; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:37:10 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA13639; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:36:00 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:40:37 EST
Received: from milo.cfw.com (milo.cfw.com [205.219.240.6]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA13635 for ; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:35:52 -0500 (EST)
Received: from stn12.cfw.com by milo.cfw.com; (5.65v3.2/1.1.8.2/12Dec95-0403PM) id AA17753; Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:44:17 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32C6046A.9A7@cfw.com>
Date: Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:40:58 -0800
X-UIDL: 851985941.045
From: BKP
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, parslowb@CFW.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02E-KIT (Win16; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: Re: Crooked knife
References:
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

James E. Burdine wrote:
>
> I have read about something called a "crooked knife," a combination
> drawknife/gouge/all-purpose trail knife. I am in possession of
> C. Keith Wilbur's very clear instructions for making one, but I
> am not a blacksmith. So I wonder if there is anywhere I can
> simply buy a "crooked knife."
> >
> >Thanks!

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/toolskn1.htm (5 of 35) [10/22/2003 7:00:08 PM]
> --David Weinstock
> Middlebury, Vermont
>
> I heard that they used to be available through Hudson's Bay Outfitters in
> Canada. That may be in error. Andre or any of the list members in Canada
> or Alaska, have you seen any of these available? I understand that before
> the coming of the Europeans that beaver tooth crooked knives were made.
> 
> If you are speaking of what I am thinking of, Russell still makes this
> knife (aka Green River Knives). It is merely a skinning knife with an
> exaggerated curve to the blade which gives it a lot of belly so that long
> skinning strokes can be taken. I think that I have seen them for sale in
> the Dixie Gun Works Catalog (Union City, TN) I will check and report to
> the group if there is any interest.
>
> --
> Sincerely,
> Barent
> Duty, Honor, Country

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
> If you are speaking of what I am thinking of, Russell still makes this
> knife (aka Green River Knives). It is merely a skinning knife with an
> exagerated curve to the blade which gives it a lot of belly so that long
> skinning strokes can be taken. I think that I have seen them for sale in
> the Dixie Gun Works Catalog (Union City, TN) I will check and report to
> the group if there is any interest.
> --
> Sincerely,
> Barent
> Duty, Honor, Country

Some Green River skinning knives are on the Jason Townsend and Sons
website. They are 18th and 19th Century reenactor suppliers. You can
get a Green River Buffalo Skinner or a Heavy Skinner blade blank and
cutlery rivets and walnut handle slabs, all for under $15 (not counting
the hacksaw and sandpaper or equivalent you'd need). These knives look
like a steel boomerangs. Take a look and see if that's the "Crooked
Knife." Loads of all kinds of neat stuff. I like their Throwing Knife,
their Leaf Shaped Spear Point and their wrought iron flint stiker.

Jason Townsend and Sons, Inc.

http://www.jastown.com/newhome.htm

Chris Smith
Check out Kestrel Tool
Route 1, Box 1762, Lopez, WA 98261 (360) 468-2103
crooked knives, ades, carving knives, hide scrapers, and northwest style
carving class. The Kestrel tools that I have used are best available.

David Weinstock wrote:
> I have read about something called a "crooked knife," a combination
drawknife/gouge/all-purpose trail knife. I am in possession of
> C. Keith Wilbur's very clear instructions for making one, but I
> am not a blacksmith. So I wonder if there is anywhere I can
> simply buy a "crooked knife."
> Thanks!
I don't know for sure, but here are several blacksmiths you can inquire

to. Arrowhead Forge is probably your best bet:

 Arrowhead Forge, R.R. 1, Box 25, Wilmot, SD, Phone: (605) 938-4814

 Many hand forged items; knives, various iron and steel items
 blacksmith made.

 Bell & Co. Traders, 6030 Anton Rd., Madisonville. KY 42431, Phone:
 1-800-844-5421

 Four Winds Traders, P.O. Box 9677, Pittsburgh, PA 15226-0677

 Great River Blacksmith Shop, Keith R. Johnson, & Sons, Rt. 2, Box 213C,
 Bemidji, MN 56601,
 Phone: (218) 751-9433. FAX: (218) 751-9433

 RVíís Fire -N- Five, P.O. Box 8019-56, Blaine, WA 98230

 Centaur Forge, 117 N. Spring St., P.O. Box 340, Burlington, WI
 53105-0340, Phone: (414) 763-9175

------------------------------------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net

TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE
 Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for
 June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over,
 camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival
 and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more
 information.

TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Tribe.html

Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Tribe_Gathering.html

Also Check Out Ted Baileyís  Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills
Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/Prim_cal_events.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
BKP wrote:
>
> James E. Burdine wrote:
> >
> > >I have read about something called a "crooked knife," a combination
> > >drawknife/gouge/all-purpose trail knife. I am in possession of
> > >C. Keith Wilbur's very clear instructions for making one, but I
> > >am not a blacksmith. So I wonder if there is anywhere I can
> > >simply buy a "crooked knife."
> > >
> > >Thanks!
> > >
> > >--David Weinstock
> > >Middlebury, Vermont
> >>
> > I heard that they used to be available through Hudson's Bay Outfitters in
> > Canada. That may be in error. Andre or any of the list members in Canada
> > or Alaska, have you seen any of these available? I understand that before
> > the coming of the Europeans that beaver tooth crooked knives were made.
> >
> > JB
>
> If you are speaking of what I am thinking of, Russell still makes this
> knife (aka Green River Knives). It is merely a skinning knife with an
> exaggerated curve to the blade which gives it a lot of belly so that long
> skinning strokes can be taken. I think that I have seen them for sale in
> the Dixie Gun Works Catalog (Union City, TN) I will check and report to
> the group if there is any interest.
> --
> Sincerely,
> Barent
> Duty, Honor, Country

Sorry, Barent, that's not a crooked knife (well it is, but not the kind we are talking about). A traditional crooked knife is one which has a curve on the flat side of the blade, and a handle at almost a 45 degree handle. This permits using it as a one handed drawknife without the tip catching in the wood, and also using the curve as a gouge.

This knife was (and still is) a very important tool for the indians from around there who use it for whittling anything from snowshoe frames to pegs for pegging birch baskets etc.

AndrÈ

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA     G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA     G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Dec 30 05:55:15 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id DAA28477; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 03:53:35 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id DAA01147; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 03:51:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from emout01.mail.aol.com (emout01.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.92]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id DAA01142; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 03:51:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by emout01.mail.aol.com (emout01.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.92]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id DAA01142 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 03:51:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: by emout01.mail.aol.com (8.6.12/8.6.12) id DAA22222 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Mon, 30 Dec 1996 03:55:25 -0500
In a message dated 96-12-29 15:32:20 EST, you write:

> I wonder if there is anywhere I can
>> simply buy a "crooked knife."
>>
>>> Thanks!
>>>
>>> --David Weinstock
>>> Middlebury, Vermont

Crooked knives are available from Highland Hardware, they have an 800 number
that you can get by calling the 800 information number (1800-555-1212) They
are a reliable mail order firm

CAG
Smokey Mt. Knife Works catalogue sells em!!

At 06:50 PM 12/28/96 -0500, you wrote:
>
> I have read about something called a "crooked knife," a combination
drawknife/gouge/all-purpose trail knife. I am in possession of
>C. Keith Wilbur's very clear instructions for making one, but I
>am not a blacksmith. So I wonder if there is anywhere I can
>simply buy a "crooked knife."
>
> Thanks!
>
> --David Weinstock
> Middlebury, Vermont

--
From: don simmons
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, drsim@PCISYS.NET
Subject: Re: Crooked knife
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Smokey Mt. Knife Works catalogue sells em!!

At 06:50 PM 12/28/96 -0500, you wrote:
>
> I have read about something called a "crooked knife," a combination
drawknife/gouge/all-purpose trail knife. I am in possession of
>C. Keith Wilbur's very clear instructions for making one, but I
>am not a blacksmith. So I wonder if there is anywhere I can
>simply buy a "crooked knife."
>
> Thanks!
>
> --David Weinstock
> Middlebury, Vermont

From - Thu Nov 21 20:49:36 1996
Received: from dfw.net (root@dfw.dfw.net [198.175.15.10]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca
(8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id VAA29993 for ; Wed, 20 Nov 1996 21:01:55 -0500 (EST)
Received: by dfw.net (4.1/SMI-4.1)
    id AA17495; Wed, 20 Nov 96 18:25:59 CST
Received: from india.midtown.net by dfw.net (4.1/SMI-4.1)
    id AA17352; Wed, 20 Nov 96 18:23:46 CST
Received: from merv.midtown.net ([205.162.100.197]) by india.midtown.net
    with SMTP (IPAD 1.4g) id 1468400 ; Wed, 20 Nov 1996 16:23:20 -0800
X-Sender: merv@midtown.net
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.4
Mime-Version: 1.0
To: thrower@dfw.net
X-UIDL: 848584029.009
From: merv@midtown.net (merv martin)
Subject: Tempering
Date: Wed, 20 Nov 1996 16:23:20 -0800
Message-Id: <199611202123.1468400@india.midtown.net>
X-Loop: thrower-request@dfw.net
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Reply-To: thrower@dfw.net
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
Hi. Just a bit of blacksmithing I learned while growing up. If you need to
know the tempering range and colors of a particular piece of iron or steel,
heat and hammer out a 1/4" square rod of it about 12 " long (Lengths are
really up to you, 12 " is a good starting place). Then spreading your coals
so that you get a gradual increase in heat on the rod, heat the rod so that
it shows a range from no color to bright spitting white (burned). Quench as
you plan to do for this metal (Water, salt water, oil or sand it makes a
difference in how fast the metal is cooled). Now remembering about where
the different colors were, lay the rod across your anvil and break it (a two
pound sledge is good for this). You will end up with things like this.
White spitting area, the metal breaks easily. Bright yellow, the metal
breaks but not as easily. All the way back to no color where the metal has
the same resilience as it originally had. Somewhere in the color bands
you'll find the combination of hardness and ductility you need.

Enjoy
Merv

---Time flies like an arrow-----------------------------------------------
| Merv Martin       *     *       |
| merv@midtown.net   *     *       |
| www.midtown.net/~merv  *     *  |
| www.gldb.com/htm/MAM08604.htm (Free Web Pages) |
-------------------------------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---

For thrower, send a HELP command to:

From - Sun Jan 12 20:48:55 1997
Received: from crucible.inmind.com (root@crucible.inmind.com [204.176.24.14]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA14717 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997
18:53:21 -0500 (EST)
Received: from chudson.inmind.com (dial107-79.inmind.net [204.177.107.79]) by
crucible.inmind.com (8.7.5/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA03047 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997
20:01:50 -0500
Received: by chudson.inmind.com with Microsoft Mail
id <01BC00BA.D3D993A0@chudson.inmind.com>; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 19:00:07 -0500
Message-ID: <01BC00BA.D3D993A0@chudson.inmind.com>
X-UIDL: 853163066.043
From: "Charles E. Hudson"
To: "bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA"
Subject: Re: Canadian source for crooked knives
Date: Sun, 12 Jan 1997 18:59:00 -0500
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id SAA14717
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr. Bourbeau:

You asked a couple of weeks ago about a canadian source for crooked knives. I'm sorry
its taken me so long to get back to you but I only just got around to reading the
Crooked Knives thread.
You can obtain these from:

Iroquois Publishing and Craft Supplies, Ltd.
R.R. #2, Ohsweken, Ontario, Canada NOA 1M0
Phone: 905-765-4206

They do not take credit cards. All prices in catalog are in $CN but on mail order they trade $US and $CN as the same. (penalty for US buyers).

Their catalog listing for crooked knives reads as follows:

CROOKED KNIVES This traditional Woodlands indian carving tool is not found easily today. To remedy this scarcity these have been custom made from old files to our specifications. Used to hollow bowls, spoons, masks. In northern Canada they are known as 'canoe knives' for their value in working wood components in canoes. Available already hafted so you can begin carving immediately, or without handle for craftsmen who want to fashion their own custom grips

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blade Only</td>
<td>$ 9.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hafted</td>
<td>$12.95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regards,

From: Marc Besse
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mbesse@ACCESSONE.COM
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mbesse@ACCESSONE.COM
Subject: Finding Iron Ore
Date: Sun, 2 Feb 1997 22:01:27 -0800
X-Msmail-Priority: Normal
X-Priority: 3
X-Mailer: Microsoft Internet Mail 4.70.1155
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=ISO-8859-1
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: 195b6a69b4350ed70f49a222b1676a1e
I was just reading a post from Merv Martin and I wanted to throw my two cents in. Iron Ore can be collected in and around streams the same way the miners paned for gold. The fine black dust left in the pan towards the top is usually fairly decent Iron Ore. As for locating the stuff, I have found it in the same places you would find Iron Pyrite (Fools Gold) and Gold.

Thanks Merv,
if you have any information about small survival based Iron Ore smelting I would be very interested in hearing from you. How do you melt the stuff without a crucible? Or better yet how do you build a makeshift crucible?

All Good Medicine,
Marc Besse
mbesse@acessone.com

Pyrite is iron ore (Iron sulfide). I have smelted it with a magnifying glass!

Matt Schoeffler
Nature & Nurture
There was an episode on New Explorers - public tv - in which old time smelters in Africa demonstrated the craft. The process took several hours, appeared exhausting and was said to be very smelly, but worked. For bellows, a leather or rawhide membrane was placed over what looked like a huge clay pipe and the pipe inserted into the smelter. Sticks were attached to the membranes and pulled and pushed rapidly. Instead of coke, charcoal was used. The end product: a hoe.

Matt Schoeffler
Nature & Nurture
On Sun, 2 Feb 1997, Marc Besse wrote:

> I was just reading a post from Merv Martin and I wanted to throw my two
> cents in. Iron Ore can be collected in and around streams the same way the
> miners paned for gold. The fine black dust left in the pan towards the top
> is usually fairly decent Iron Ore. As for locating the stuff, I have found
> it in the same places you would find Iron Pyrite (Fools Gold) and Gold.
> 
> Thanks Merv,
> > if you have any information about small survival based Iron Ore smelting I
> would be very interested in hearing from you. How do you melt the stuff
> > without a crucible? Or better yet how do you build a makeshift crucible?
> >
> > All Good Medicine,
> > Marc Besse
> > mbesse@accessone.com
> 
> you can make a crucible from clay that will hold up fairly well, just be
> sure to dry and fire it thoroughly first. in one of the older national
> geographic magizines, 1978?? there was an article on smelting by native
> peoples in africa. they did not us a crucible, but let the smelted iron
> run out onto the ground. afterwards they forged out the refined iron into
> quite nice spear heads. i will look for the article.
At Fort Williams in Thunder Bay, Ontario, the primitive lathe bearings are made from greased leather.

I can't imagine that making a lathe in a primitive context would be possible without metal, or that the effort expanded would be worthwhile, but I would love to be proved wrong. Interesting thought, though.

André

The foxfire books also mention smelting ore. Now, I don't remember how exactly to make coke. But for the sake of a space filler and to start the search I think it's coal that has been burnt in the absence of oxygen, like charcoal. Coke and iron ore mixed in a dirt and clay kiln can be fired and (I'm trying to remember how it was done in those books. Mine are in storage) a fairly good steel results. Also meteoric iron has been valued for a long time.

Now the only form of iron ore I know of can be found around Shasta Lake. It's a dark rusty black rock with rust colored veins. (sorta). Very heavy and pulls a compass needle. I don't know where to mine it. This stuff is right on the beaches.

I believe you can build a forge in sand. I know that a brick forge can be fired with charcoal. Just takes a bit longer to build heat.

You'll need a couple of pounding rocks. Probably best to use iron ore for an original hammer and anvil.

What kind of tolerance would you need on the bearings for you lathe? How about tools?

Take Care
Merv

Merv Martin
merv@midtown.net
www.midtown.net/~merv
Taper Engineer, Coprolite Extrusions Inc.
Wood turners used to use springy saplings to drive lathes. I've seen books that refer to this, but haven't been able to find one that has diagrams for building one.

I asked about this on a woodworking list. One of the editors of American Woodworker emailed me and suggested I check out the October 1996 issue which had plans for a bungee foot-powered lathe. I got this issue and it has a wonderful example.

This example led my thinking off in two directions.
1) Suppose your camping survival equipment included some bungee cords. How could you rig up a lathe that doesn't require the 20 sets of lag screws, carriage bolts and foundation bolts involved in the bungee lathe?

2) Suppose there aren't any available bungee cords. Has anyone seen detailed descriptions of the sapling version?
With either version 1) or 2) does anyone have suggestions for using a knife as the only turning tool? Or perhaps more useful and interesting...any ideas on knapping some turning tools? For the first most useful objects tools that could make bowls/cups would probably be the most useful. Beyond that, I'd be interested in other creative items as well.

Once beyond minimal survival, but very primitively done, I'm also finding wild furniture to be very interesting. This is made from peeled or unpeeled limbs. Daniel Mack, the leading maker of this furniture uses 6-7 tools to make this sort of furniture, but after having read two of his books, it looks to me as though they could all be made with only a knife. If you had a knife and saw, you could really make faster headway though. Mack is quite good at using the natural branches of the limbs to achieve his functional and design goals.

Daniel Mack's books are Making Rustic Furniture(1992) and The Rustic Furniture Companion (1996). In addition to the functional aspects of the info in these books, I also enjoyed them for expanding that part of my thinking that focuses on creatively using what is available.

I hope also to see a copy of Green Woodworking by Mike Abbott (1989) which has been suggested to me. It has info on footpowered lathes, and may have more clues about the sapling powered ones.

I'd be interested in hearing from anyone who has tried any of the primitive turning or has ideas about innovatively knapped tools that might work or who has other thoughts about combining these skill areas.

Sharon
gordonse@iac.net

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Feb 5 19:46:56 1997
Return-Path: 
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA18897 for ; Wed, 5 Feb 1997 13:32:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA05513; Wed, 5 Feb 1997 12:58:56 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
good post sharon,

i can see the possibility of the use of sapling, bows, counter weights, etc.  but what i would be curious about are the bearings, and how one could make a "primitive" bearing, or head and tail stocks.

a flint/chert edge lashed into a stick should make a fair cutter, but i would think it would dull rather quickly, and require frequent edge retouching.

on a labor basis, i would also wonder how cup and bowl manufacture would compare to the burn and scrape method.

being able to turn out straight shafts, for arrows, atalatl darts, might be a real plus.

also the idea suggest the possibility of a horizontal boring mill with a flint tipped cutter.

Name: H. Carter Mesick
E-mail: hmesick@goldinc.com
Date: 02/05/97
Time: 11:47:38

From - Wed Feb 5 19:47:02 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA23355 for ; Wed, 5 Feb 1997 13:57:08 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA05806; Wed, 5 Feb 1997 13:17:33 -
Sharon, et al:

This is just a creative idea, I do not know how practical it may be. Please let me know what you think. First, I was taught a primitive vise for if, say, you are working on a bow. What you do is carve a waist-high notch in a standing sapling that is slightly more narrow than the riser/handhold of the bow you are working on. You bend the sapling to open the notch wider, insert the bow, release the sapling and then, perhaps, attach a rope to the top of the sapling and tie it off to another tree or stake it to keep the notch closed tightly.

My creative idea is to use a sapling at each end of the lathe piece to hold it. Maybe with a soapstone bearings greased with fat or wax. Then use a third sapling, cut down and stripped, that has a notch in it like above, but is balanced and attached to the work piece as a fly-wheel.

```
/     \  
|      | 
--|-----|--
|    |   "fly-wheel" sapling attached to work.
|    | It is balanced and perhaps weighted.
|    | It is notched and lashed to the work.
```

rope secures two saplings
1) Attach sapling to work piece and attach any end bearings
2) Bend standing saplings away from each other to allow insertion of work piece
3) Tie standing saplings together to hold work firmly
4) Spin the "fly-wheel" and let its inertia spin the lathe

I wonder if it could work?

---------------

Best Regards,

Bo Gulledge
Graduate Student in Computer Science, University of South Florida
WebMaster for the following home pages:
  Tom Brown, Jr's Tracker School
    Official Home Page:  http://members.aol.com/trackerinc/
    Unofficial Page: http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/tracker.html
  Earth-Heart http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/earth-heart.html
  EarthWalk NW, Inc. Frank and Karen Sherwood's Skills Classes
    http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/earthwalknw/

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Feb  5 23:06:45 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA24041 for ; Wed, 5 Feb 1997 22:54:55 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA10715; Wed, 5 Feb 1997 22:14:49 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 05 Feb 1997 22:12:54 EST
Received: from brown.videotron.net (brown.videotron.net [205.151.222.70]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA10712 for ; Wed, 5 Feb 1997 22:14:49 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.86 (ppp086.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.86]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with SMTP id WAA15600 for
hmesick@GOLDINC.COM wrote:

> good post sharon,
> i can see the possibility of the use of sapling, bows, counter weights,
> etc. but what i would be curious about are the bearings, and how
> one could make a "primitive" bearing, or head and tail stocks.
>
> on a labor basis, i would also wonder how cup and bowl manufacture
> would compare to the burn and scrape method.

At Fort Williams in Thunder Bay, Ontario, the primitive lathe bearings are made from greased leather.

I can't imagine that making a lathe in a primitive context would be possible without metal, or that the effort expanded would be worthwhile, but I would love to be proved wrong. Interesting thought, though.

André
> This example led my thinking off in two directions.
> 1) Suppose your camping survival equipment included some
> bungee cords. How could you rig up a lathe that doesn't
> require the 20 sets of lag screws, carriage bolts and
> foundation bolts involved in the bungee lathe?

1. I suggest you look at designs for primitive pottery wheels.

2. But, wood is much tougher than wet clay. I'm surprised you can
build a bungee-powered lathe. I've worked a lathe, and the force I
had to apply was remarkable. I wouldn't expect any primitive lathe
to be very effective. I don't know what you're going to use as a
cutting surface if not steel; I think a stone tool would break
in about a second. Also, wood chips fly off at high
velocity, so I would not even consider constructing a lathe unless
I had my survival high-impact plastic goggles along. Maybe you
could make some slit-based eyewear, like Eskimo ice goggles.

It's a worthwhile effort. I'm just playing devil's advocate.
hmesick@GOLDINC.COM wrote:

> good post sharon,

> i can see the possibility of the use of sapling, bows, counter weights, 
> etc. but what i would be curious about are the bearings, and how one 
> could make a "primitive" bearing, or head and tail stocks.

> a flint/chert edge lassed into a stick should make a fair cutter, but i 
> would think it would dull rather quickly, and require frequent edge 
> retouching.

> on a labor basis, i would also wonder how cup and bowl manufacture would 
> compare to the burn and scrape method.

> being able to turn out straight shafts, for arrows, atalatl darts, might 
> be a real plus.

> also the idea suggest the possibility of a horizontal boring mill with a
Aversion of the sapling powered lathe was in use until very recent
times, in fact may be still in use, in the beech woods around High
Wickham. There was a type of itinerant tradesman called a bodger who
set up an ad hoc lathe in the woods. There were two dead centres and
a cord attached to a tall sapling and wound around the piece being
turned and then to a pivoted pedal. Pressure on the pedal rotated
the piece for cutting and the sapling pulled back resulting in reverse
rotation. With this primitive gear supplies of turned chair
components were produced for the chair making industry centred in High
Wickham. I cannot offer references but the methods have been
described in the past in Woodworker magazine published in UK and in
English books on wood turning.

--
Alexander MacLennan sandymac@sandymac.demon.co.uk
Sharon Gordon wrote:

> Wood turners used to use springy saplings to drive lathes.  I've seen books that refer to this, but haven't been able to find one that has diagrams for building one.
>
> I asked about this on a woodworking list. One of the editors of American Woodworker emailed me and suggested I check out the October 1996 issue which had plans for a bungee foot-powered lathe. I got this issue and it has a wonderful example.
>
> This example led my thinking off in two directions.
> 1) Suppose your camping survival equipment included some bungee cords. How could you rig up a lathe that doesn't require the 20 sets of lag screws, carriage bolts and foundation bolts involved in the bungee lathe?
>
> 2) Suppose there aren't any available bungee cords. Has anyone seen detailed descriptions of the sapling version?
>
> With either version 1) or 2) does anyone have suggestions for using a knife as the only turning tool? Or perhaps more useful and interesting...any ideas on knapping some turning tools? For the first most useful objects tools that could make bowls/cups would probably be the most useful. Beyond that, I'd be interested in other creative items as well.
>
> Once beyond minimal survival, but very primitively done, I'm also finding wild furniture to be very interesting. This is made from peeled or unpeeled limbs. Daniel Mack, the leading maker of this furniture uses 6-7 tools to make this sort of furniture, but after having read two of his books, it looks to me as though they could all be made with only a knife. If you had a knife and saw, you could really make faster headway though. Mack is quite good at using the natural branches of the limbs to achieve his functional and design goals.
>
> Daniel Mack's books are Making Rustic Furniture (1992) and The Rustic Furniture Companion (1996). In addition to the functional aspects of the info in these books, I also enjoyed them for expanding that part of my thinking that focuses on creatively using what is available.
>
> I hope also to see a copy of Green Woodworking by Mike Abbott (1989) which has been suggested to me. It has info on footpowered lathes, and may have more...
I'd be interested in hearing from anyone who has tried any of the primitive turning or has ideas about innovatively knapped tools that might work or who has other thoughts about combining these skill areas.

Sharon
gordonse@iac.net

There was info on sapling powered lathes in one of the Foxfire books. As far as assembling the equipment you would use standard woodworking tricks such as dovetail notches and mortise/tenon construction. Use wood pegs as nails/screws.

--
Robert L. Cox, Jr. - President
Nuisance Wildlife Control Services
Express Private Process Service
P.O. Box 5582, Towson, MD 21285
Email: robertlcox@sprintmail.com

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Feb 6 10:01:24 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA29886 for ; Wed, 5 Feb 1997 23:24:14 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA11198; Wed, 5 Feb 1997 22:32:47 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 05 Feb 1997 22:30:52 EST
Received: from u2.farm.idt.net (u2.farm.idt.net [169.132.8.11]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA11190 for ; Wed, 5 Feb 1997 22:32:32 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mx0-166.lit.intellinet.com (mx0-166.lit.intellinet.com [207.13.34.175]) by u2.farm.idt.net (8.8.5/8.8.5) with SMTP id WAA21701; Wed, 5 Feb 1997 22:35:59 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32F96C1A.818@mail.idt.net>
Date: Wed, 05 Feb 1997 21:29:01 -0800
From: Terry Hayhurst
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tah1319@idt.net
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Win16; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, gordonse@IAC.NET
Subject: Re: Primitive turning
References: <3.0.32.19691231190000.00a40c90@iac.net>
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Sharon Gordon wrote:
> Wood turners used to use springy saplings to drive lathes.
> I've seen books that refer to this, but haven't been able
> to find one that has diagrams for building one.
> Foxfire Book 2 pages 164-171 has the info you seek. There are lots of BW
pictures and a line drawing showing details. Here in the Ozarks of
Arkansas many craftsmen still use these. I think The Ozark Folk Center
in Mt. View, AR may have more info I will see what I can find out.

Grizz

At 11:49 AM 2/5/97 -0500, you wrote:
> Wood turners used to use springy saplings to drive lathes.
> I've seen books that refer to this, but haven't been able
to find one that has diagrams for building one.
>
I asked about this on a woodworking list. One of the
editors of American Woodworker emailed me and suggested
I check out the October 1996 issue which had plans for
a bungee foot-powered lathe. I got this issue and it
has a wonderful example.
>
This example led my thinking off in two directions.
1) Suppose your camping survival equipment included some
bungee cords. How could you rig up a lathe that doesn't
require the 20 sets of lag screws, carriage bolts and
foundation bolts involved in the bungee lathe?
>
2) Suppose there aren't any available bungee cords.
Has anyone seen detailed descriptions of the sapling
version?
>
With either version 1) or 2) does anyone have suggestions
for using a knife as the only turning tool? Or perhaps
more useful and interesting...any ideas on knapping
some turning tools? For the first most useful objects
tools that could make bowls/cups would probably be the
most useful. Beyond that, I'd be interested in other
creative items as well.
>
Once beyond minimal survival, but very primitively done,
I'm also finding wild furniture to be very interesting.
This is made from peeled or unpeeled limbs. Daniel Mack,
the leading maker of this furniture uses 6-7 tools to
make this sort of furniture, but after having read two of
his books, it looks to me as though they could all be made with only a
knife. If you had a knife and saw, you could
really make faster headway though. Mack is quite good
at using the natural branches of the limbs to achieve his
functional and design goals.
>
Daniel Mack's books are Making Rustic Furniture(1992)
In addition to the functional aspects of the info in
these books, I also enjoyed them for expanding that part
of my thinking that focuses on creatively using what
is available.
>
I hope also to see a copy of Green Woodworking by
Mike Abbott (1989) which has been suggested to me.
It has info on footpowered lathes, and may have more
clues about the sapling powered ones.
>
I'd be interested in hearing from anyone who has tried
any of the primitive turning or has ideas about innovatively knapped tools
that might work or who has
other thoughts about combining these skill areas.
>
Sharon
Roy Underhill has authored several books with information on early lathes and wood working. 'The Woodwrights Shop' and 'The Woodwright's Work Book' both have information on treadle lathes. Also check out any information you can find on 'bodgers'. These were the craftsmen who turned out early turned chair parts. They worked in a camp in the forest and turned the wood green. I recall an article on them a few years ago in one of the woodworking magazines, maybe Fine Woodworking or Woodworking Journal.

John

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Feb  7 00:31:02 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA20557 for ; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 21:48:53 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA22906; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 21:22:25 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 06 Feb 1997 21:20:29 EST
Received: from zen.dayton.net (zen.dayton.net [199.218.243.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA22903 for ; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 21:22:14 -0500 (EST)
From: bmonagh@DAYTON.NET
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bmonagh@DAYTON.NET
Received: from orac.dayton.net (orac.dayton.net [199.218.243.1]) by zen.dayton.net (8.7.1/8.7.1) with SMTP id VAA31456; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 21:39:06 -0500
Date: Thu, 6 Feb 1997 21:26:17 -0500 (EST)
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Subject: Re: Primitive turning
In-Reply-To: <199702052158.QAA12513@pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; charset=US-ASCII
X-UIDL: d51e9671e37b155d5dcfebbf1b5b5e17
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

On Wed, 5 Feb 1997, Phil Goetz wrote:

> > How could you rig up a lathe
>
I wouldn't expect any primitive lathe to be very effective. I don't know what you're going to use as a cutting surface if not steel; I think a stone tool would break in about a second. Also, wood chips fly off at high velocity, so I would not even consider constructing a lathe unless I had my survival high-impact plastic goggles along. Maybe you could make some slit-based eyewear, like Eskimo ice goggles.

I saw an 1800's lathe in a woodwright's shop at a reenactment village that seemed to work rather well. I don't recall all the details of it, but it used a sapling above the work and a foot-operated treadle below it to spin the wood (foot treadle spun the wood and bowed the sapling and sapling sprang back to help pull the treadle back on the up stroke, helping to keep the wood spinning). As best I can recall, a leather strap connected the sapling and treadle, with a wrap or two around the wood stock, and I think the wood was supported by/spinning on two points made of iron. The wright used iron cutting tools; the spinning wasn't particularly high speed—wood shavings covered his hands and wrists, but weren't flying around...

-gem

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Thu Feb 6 10:02:20 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA20332 for ; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 02:45:36 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id CAA13390; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 02:20:09 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Thu, 06 Feb 1997 02:18:13 EST
Received: from u2.farm.idt.net (u2.farm.idt.net [169.132.8.11]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id CAA13387 for
; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 02:19:41 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mx0-062.lit.intellinet.com (mx0-062.lit.intellinet.com [207.13.34.71]) by u2.farm.idt.net (8.8.5/8.8.5) with SMTP id CAA09742 for ; Thu, 6 Feb 1997 02:23:41 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32F9A195.3474@mail.idt.net>
Date: Thu, 06 Feb 1997 01:17:09 -0800
From: Terry Hayhurst
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tah1319@idt.net
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Win16; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: [Fwd: Re: Mettalurgy (Split off of Primitive turning)]
Content-Type: message/rfc822
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
merv martin wrote:

> The foxfire books also mention smelting ore. Now, I don't remember how
> exactly to make coke. But for the sake of a space filler and to start the
> search I think it's coal that has been burnt in the absence of oxygen,
> like charcoal. Coke and iron ore mixed in a dirt and clay kiln can be fired
> and (I'm trying to remember how it was done in those books. Mine are in
> storage) a fairly good steel results.

Foxfire Book 5 covers ironmaking in the southern US.

The simplest process is making wrought iron. This was done by "cooking" the iron ore in a small open furnace called a bloomery. The bloomery was made of stone, fired with charcoal and blown upon with a bellows. Impurities would burn off and the iron would then be hammered. The iron would be heated and hammered several times until the slag was evenly distributed. The resulting slab of wrought iron was known as a "bloom". I do not know where the name came from or what it means. Furnaces of this type were used quite a lot early in the US but were replaced by cold blast furnaces later on. Here in the southern US mostly charcoal was used until after the Civil War. The making of wrought iron, while unknown in the Americas until Europeans, is a primitive skill skill although I don't know if it is the guidelines of this group. I am sorry if it is not.

Grizz
From: "Mark D. Ball"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mball@MERCY.ORG

Subject: Hide glue

Just after I joined the list last week, there was a post that asked about making hide glue from rawhide, and I don't think I've seen a response. I'm sorry I don't remember who asked, but it was from someone who had tried it using a "chew bone".

I have made hide glue successfully with rawhide trimmings from a deer skin as follows:

Place the shredded bits of hide in a crock pot, add water to cover, and cook for 24 hr. Pour off the liquid (which was pretty thin at this stage) through cheese cloth, and place it in a shallow pan. Simmer this until it is reduced in volume and has attained a consistency of thin warm syrup. You got glue!

If you are not going to use it immediately, you can pour it into a clean glass jar and let it cool. It will keep for a few days in the refrigerator. If you need to keep it longer, pour the liquid glue onto a cookie sheet with a lip, so it's about 1/4" deep, and chill (or just let it cool at room temp.). It will turn into gelatin. Slice this into little cubes about 1/4" square, scatter on a cookie sheet so they are not touching, and let air dry. Mine dried over night with the help of a little fan. Now you've got little amber chips that will keep for years. I've still got some in a jar that I occasionally rehydrate (all small amount of
water and warm) and use. It is 4 years old. I tested its strength gluing 2 squares of fir together, applying a C-clamp, and allowing it to dry for a week (that is more time than you need to let it dry). I could not separate the pieces of wood with my hands, and when I used wrenches to twist them apart, the wood gave, but not the glue. It's strong stuff.

I haven't used "chew bone" for this, but I don't know of any reason that it should not work.

Hope this is helpful.

Mark D Ball
Plastic Surgeon
Redding, CA
mball@mercy.org

If you want a shortcut to hide glue, and want to glue something in a hurry, use plain knox gelatin mixed to the same consistency as hide glue. This is from THE TRADITIONAL BOWYERS BIBLE

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
you might want to try sewing with a boar's bristle or a piece of horse hair. all you have to do is double over the bristle or hair and wax the ends so that they stick together (you can also use pine pitch) and form an eye on one end. thread your cordage through the eye and push the hair through a hole punched with an awl. I think you will find this much easier than just trying to push the cord itself through the hole. I have used this technique myself and find it works very well. -ketil

From - Sat Dec 21 03:30:29 1996
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTF id PAA02824; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 15:13:56 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA06030; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 15:13:56 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 15:18:30 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTF id PAA06027 for ; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 15:13:50 -0500 (EST)
I just read in an eskimo book by Fred Bruemmer that eskimo people used
to make bone needles from the wing bones of seagulls or snow geese.
Anyone have any idea precisely which bone of the wing was used? Anyone
actually tried sewing with a bone needle?

Thanks for any answers you might have.

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

--

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Sat Dec 21 05:49:25 1996
Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTPT id PAA02980 for ; Sat, 21 Dec 1996 15:33:37 -0500 (EST)
I just read in an eskimo book by Fred Bruemmer that eskimo people used
to make bone needles from the wing bones of seagulls or snow geese.
Anyone have any idea precisely which bone of the wing was used? Anyone
actually tried sewing with a bone needle?
>
Thanks for any answers you might have.
>
--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÃois Bourbeau

Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA    G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA    G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

Somewhere during my readings I saw an illustration on the making of a bone
needle, but I forget exactly where I saw it. Aparently two methods were used
however. Percussion smashing the bone into splinters then polishing the
splinter and drilling a hole to hold the thread/sinew. The other method is
graving the bone, drilling a hole and polishing the needle with sandstone
or some other fine abrasive. If I find my source I'll send you the name of
the source.

JB
> Speaking of wing bones and their uses. I just read that small bid wing
>bones were used to inject some indian meds as they are hollow inside.
> >
> What kind of meds did they inject? - Ted

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970  ||  Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:  http://ic.net/~tbailey/

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Speaking of wing bones and their uses. I just read that small bid wing bones were used to inject some indian meds as they are hollow inside.

Gary

At 05:54 PM 12/21/96 -0500, you wrote:
>I have taken wing bones of turkey, split them and sharpened one end that I
>then used as an awl. After punching the hole, I then inserted my cordage or
>sinew.
>
>I would like to know more about bone needles.
>
>I will introduce myself later. I feel that this list serve will prove to be
>very informative from what I have read (especially from Andre) so far.
>
>Jim W.
I've often tried making needles but they are never sharp enough or fine enough to do real work. That's why I was so excited by noting that bird wing bones were used. Are they harder and sharper? I've got to get myself a chicken... nothing like trying it!

Would there be a big difference between a chicken and a seagull wingbone?
Why did they mention seagulls and geese versus partridge or ptarmigan which were just as plentiful?

AndrÈ

---

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÅois Bourbeau

Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of QuÈbec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

---

Probably because of the relative size of the goose and seagull in relation to the other birds. Larger birds, bigger wing bones, stronger splinters.
Actually I think an awl is used to make the holes and the needle carries the thread. It wasn't until metal tools came along (and the glover's needle) that the awl wasn't needed so much any more.

JB

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow
| Merv Martin | * | * |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com | * | * |
bmanrich@IAMERICA.NET wrote:
>
> I just read in an eskimo book by Fred Bruemmer that eskimo people used
> to make bone needles from the wing bones of seagulls or snow geese.
> Anyone have any idea precisely which bone of the wing was used? Anyone
> actually tried sewing with a bone needle?
>>
> Thanks for any answers you might have.
>
> AndrÈ
>
> --
>
> Surviving at nature's will...
>
> Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
> Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
> University of QuÈbec
> 555 University Boulevard
> Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
> CANADA G7H 2B1
> 418-545-5011 Ext 5259
>
> At Nature's Will Inc.
> 3801 Rang St-Martin
> Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec)
> CANADA G7H 5A7
> 418-543-2888
>
My experience of sewing with bone needles: I usually construct a bone needle from harder bone, like leg bone of deer. I suppose any bone would do, though, that you can grind down flat or small enough in diameter where you don't have a huge hole left in the material you are sewing. Before grinding, though, drill your hole for receiving the thread first, then grind the bone down around it. The reason for this is that the needle will split if you try to drill it after you make a needle. Better to grind it while you have plenty of bone than to spend all that time grinding to only have it split on you when you drill it.

However, the method I use most for sewing in a survival, primitive situation is to grind a bone to a point and use it as an awl. Use the awl to pierce a hole in the material to be sewn and then feed your thread or thong through the hole. You make your thread pointed in the case of a thong to make this easier. Bird bones (particularly wing bones) work well in this application for use as awls. Any bone will work, though as will a sharpened stick or a sturdy thorn.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Snail Mail:
TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC 28202
James E. Burdine wrote:

> >stalking (animals and birds, not people! ;-),
> >
> >Bill,
> >Stalking people, especially if they are aware that you are going to stalk
> >them can be a great learning tool; -)
> >JB

It sure can! I play a game with my students every year. It goes like this. Suppose I'm the runner. I wear a pair of boots with distinctive soles, (cross country shoes with a cross on the sole), and the rules are that I'm not allowed to take them off or cover them with anything. We do this when there is only a few inches of snow on the ground. I get a couple of hours head start. Then the stalker (or stalkers) have to follow my trail to the end.

Now you can get good at this. In the last couple of years, I've yet had
a student be able to stalk me, (and sometimes I can't stalk my better students).

There are a lot of tricks at this game (walking backwards, climbing trees and having them bend over to 20 feet further etc), and it's a lot of fun. People are brilliant, much more so than animals, which is why they are so difficult to track.

AndrÈ, "smarter than the average bear", hi,hi,hi.

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H 2B1

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Fri Jan  3 08:30:07 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chici.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA11221; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:23:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA26136; Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:22:25 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 03 Jan 1997 20:27:02 EST
Received: from relay.ic.net (HELO ic.net) (152.160.101.1) by relay.ic.net with SMTP; 4 Jan 1997 01:24:30 -0000
Received: from [152.160.99.8] by ic.net with smtp (Smail3.1.28.1 #6) id m0vgKpm-003GbvC; Fri, 3 Jan 97 20:23 WET
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID:
In-Reply-To: <199701031547.JAA00670@ns2.iamerica.net>
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Fri, 3 Jan 1997 20:22:03 -0400
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bmanrich@IAMERICA.NET
From: "Ted E. Bailey"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET
Subject: Re: Stalking people game
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>>> Stalking people
>THE MOST DANGEROUS GAME....
>
>What a fantastic story for a 12year old to discover. Sorry, I do not
>remember the author. There were several movies based on this story.
While most of the older readers of this list have probably read, maybe some of the younger members have not.

I remember reading this as a short story in a SBS soft cover book back in the seventh grade. About 10 years ago, I found a videotape of an old movie with the same name, same theme, but different characters. I think the film was made in the 1930s. I think the fainting/screaming female actress was Faye Wray of King Kong Fame. If anyone wants to know the title, date, etc, I can dig out my videoarchives and look it up.

Perhaps a much better movie with a man hunting theme was called "The Naked Prey", starring Cornell Wilde. The story took place in the 1800s when a hunting safari upset the natives by not giving gifts for passing through their territory. All the great white hunters were captured and tortured to death. On Cornell Wilde was given a chance. They stripped him down to naked and gave him a running head start. Then 5+ seasoned warriors with weapons took off after him. He not only had to elude them, he had to survive off the land and make it back to a European settlement. This is one of the best movies I have ever seen. Violence? Yes! But not upsetting like the garbage you see on TV cop show. Your heart will pound through the whole movie like a caffeine rush. If you like this kind of movie, go rent it at your local video store.

Ted Bailey          || email to: tbailey@ic.net
P. O. Box 6076      || Editor of "Boomerang News"
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services
Ph: (313)-971-2970  || Fax: (313)-761-3632
Internet Address:  http://ic.net/~tbailey/
Without reference to the book or various movies on the subject, I have got to tell you that nothing will get your adrenalin (sp?) going faster than this. In the army we use laser to tag each other with, not exactly primitive, but an excellent learning experience. If you have any survival instinct at all you learn to be alert at all times and to use teamwork to get all things done while maintaining security. I particularly like the idea of the rabbit and the fox (we already use this as a running and biking training enhancer but its just a flat out chase) for tracking and stalking. This idea will be used by me in the near future.  thanks

--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Tracking & primitive skills

I know the best trappers in Québec. These guys are also scientific biologists and do research for the ministry of natural resources. For example, they have put collars on hundreds of wolves in Parc des Laurentides and have been following their movements. They do research on how trapping can be used to actually augment the faunal capacity of an area. Roland Lemieux of Québec took over a trapping area 25km square and augmented his fur catches of fox from 1 to over 30 per year over a 10 year period. All of his other captures have seen similar jumps. His trapping area is now at a peak which he can maintain year after year.

Roland knows animals better than anyone I have ever met. He and his research team have studied animal tracks and scats scientifically and have published a great deal of material and videos on these subjects (all in french, sorry). I have spent time in the woods with Roland, exchanging survival tricks for trapping and tracking knowledge. Everything he has shown me is measurable, repeatable, understandable, and perfectly logical. Anyone can learn it.

Before I read the Tom Brown thread and looked at the Tracker archives, I thought what I had been learning with Roland Lemieux and through books such as "Field guide to animal tracks" was what learning tracking was all about- studying animal tracks and feces to learn about their habits. Now I realize that there is another dimension to tracking which many people practice, which refers to improving the individual’s capacity to be "at one" with nature. This other dimension to tracking is a spiritual one which involves psychology and individual belief systems. We have all agreed not to discuss these issues.

Therefore, in accordance with the guidelines set forth by this group, I would ask everyone to limit tracking discussions to physical tracking skills. For example, to find out if there are muskrats in a small stream, you can look on rocks or logs which are sticking up out of the water. If there are muskrats, you will find scats there. The number of scats on the rocks or logs will give you a vague indication of how many muskrats there are in the area. Muskrats dig holes in banks which sometimes go to the length of 80 feet. This information makes us aware of the futility of digging for musrats in survival situations. I would love to hear more about animal habits which would make their capture easier in survival situations.

However, I would ask everyone to please respond to those aspects dealing with non-physical tracking skills off-line. I insist.

Thanks for reading,

André
I think that this all belongs in the category of becoming native to a place. From past observation you know the behavior of a creature, you know where he is likely to be at a given time, and can form a plan around that familiarity. The sometime nature of game availability forces one to use as much of that animal as possible. You know what materials to build a shelter from, and what materials to make cordage from, because you know the nature of the materials in your area, and what properties are needed for what you need. I would think that tracking is also such a skill, that would be needed in one way or another if you are hunting with primitive weapons that do not put animals down immediately. The Bushmen of Africa hunt with poisoned arrows, allegedly depend on their tracking skills to find game since no venom works immediately. I guess it depends on what you call tracking. If an understanding of animal behavior counts as tracking as much as the scuff marks and foot prints of game, then all primitives tracked one way or another. As far as the penetrating nature of stone points, they have been found to have better penetrating and wounding capability than steel.
So much so that what some mistakenly call bird points are actually big game points.

Jim Burdine
LV, NV
jburdine@pipeline.com

From - Tue Jan 21 02:45:58 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMT id MAA18230; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 12:00:07 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA06311; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 11:59:08 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 11:57:13 EST
Received: from unix.newnorth.net (unix.newnorth.net [205.212.60.10]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA06306 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 11:58:53 -0500 (EST)
Received: from marknq.newnorth.net (rhin-cs2-6.newnorth.net [205.212.60.176]) by unix.newnorth.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id MAA15472; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 12:14:09 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E3A2D3.56E8@unix.newnorth.net>
Date: Mon, 20 Jan 1997 10:52:35 -0600
X-UIDL: 853818488.002
From: Mark Zanoni
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MarkNQ@UNIX.NEWNORTH.NET
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.01 (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, parslowb@CFW.COM
Subject: Re: Tracking and Primitive Skills
References: <32E39D39.746F@cfw.com>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

BKP wrote:
>
> Mark,
>
> I submit that, due to the pervasive influence of man on the planet, it is practically impossible for any of us (are Canadians an exception?) to experience the "paleolifestyle". It seems to me that animal and plant life have been so drastically altered by man that emulating or reproducing the lifestyles of aboriginal inhabitants of even 250-300 years ago is impossible.
>
> I agree that tracking is a necessary adjunct skill to use of the weapons.
However, one can argue that one must be able to properly identify, process, manufacture, use, track, process animal product, manufacture, and use in order to survive using these primitive methods of equal importance. Like a chain that is only as strong as the weakest link, each task must be performed successfully in order for the individual (more likely at least a small group) to survive.

I both agree and disagree with you. I don't believe that perfection or complete re-creation of paleo lifestyles is possible. I don't practice these skills in order to do that. However there are scientists who base theories on skills practice and they do so without taking into consideration the total package. Further, I have a hard time seeing how it is possible to even understand and incorporate the skills we do practice successfully without understanding how the natural world works. Tracking, in my opinion, is much, much more than reading footprints. It is a total crash course in the "language of nature" and involves an understanding and familiarity with natural systems (not just animals) that goes way beyond anything I have yet encountered. It would seem to me that going off into the woods without it, would be a lot like learning to drive without an understanding of traffic laws, road signs or the English language. It would be possible to do, but the chance of making a mistake, getting hurt or gettin lost would be a whole lot greater. It also makes the process of wilderness living an adventure with your friends and relatives rather than a struggle in an unknown world.

That is what makes this list so interesting for me, the diverse and numerous skills and methods for accomplishing the many tasks. I am not saying that I agree or disagree with you just that I feel as I have stated. I think that this would be a good thread as it goes to the root of what and why of the list.

I agree Barent. Thanks for your thoughts and input.

Mark Zanoni
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> I know the best trappers in Québec. These guys are also scientific
> biologists and do research for the ministry of natural resources. For
> example, they have put collars on hundreds of wolves in Parc des
> Laurentides and have been following their movements. They do research
> on how trapping can be used to actually augment the faunal capacity of
> an area.

Sounds like I would love to meet these guys.

> Everything he has shown me is measurable, repeatable, understandable,
> and perfectly logical. Anyone can learn it.

Tracking and its attendant skills are that way. All the visual
perception techniques and methods of seeing tracks in difficult ground
covers work and there are logical reasons for why they do. Those
same techniques can be applied in locating animals in cover (or in trees
:-)) and the methods are teachable and reproducible. Learning tracking
also involves learning about the animals you are tracking, getting a
visual picture in your mind of how they move and how they live. This
same process can be applied to learning about other aspects of
nature-plants trees and their relationships, geography and geology etc.
etc. A good archeologist (did I spell it right?) or a good geologist is
just a good tracker. They are tracking cultural or landform patterns,
but the process is essentially the same.

> Before I read the Tom Brown thread and looked at the Tracker archives,
> I thought what I had been learning with Roland Lemieux and through
> books such as "Field guide to animal tracks" was what learning tracking
> was all about- studying animal tracks and feces to learn about their
> habits. Now I realize that there is another dimension to tracking
> which many people practice, which refers to improving the individual's
> capacity to be "at one" with nature. This other dimension to tracking
> is a spiritual one which involves psychology and individual belief
Andre', there is no reason why we need to touch on the spiritual aspects of tracking to talk about how the practice of this skill affects a persons relationship with the natural world. In fact, the "shifts of conciousness" I'm talking about may indeed have perfectly rational explainations. I would argue that it is the same kind of thing that athletes, artists, musicians etc. go through when they do their thing. There is no great mystery to it. It involves a total process of complete immersion and involvement in the natural system requiring both right and left brain types of activity. I'm sure, actually, that it is not all that dissimilar from the process your trapper friends use, as it involves gathering information and knowledge, constructing theories, proving or disproving the theories, solving problems etc. etc. It is in short a process of total natural world education and acclimatization.

> We have all agreed not to discuss these issues.

Like I said, there is no real need. The mystical is there, but you are right to argue that it is primarily an individual thing. The skills either teach it themselves or they don't depending on the perspective the practitioner is coming from. What I am advocating is not necessarily of that nature.

> Therefore, in accordance with the guidelines set forth by this group, I would ask everyone to limit tracking discussions to physical tracking skills. For example, to find out if there are muskrats in a small stream, you can look on rocks or logs which are sticking up out of the water. If there are muskrats, you will find scats there.

Not a problem, Andre'. This is all part of the package I'm talking about.

> love to hear more about animal habits which would make their capture easier in survival situations.

Is this the only aspect of tracking we can deal with? Why are we limiting our discussion to this one small part of this skill? We don't do the same for any other skill we talk about. Are visual perception techniques, methods of seeing and interpreting tracks over various groundcovers, reading trails, runs and sign, track pattern analysis, animal behavior and life habits etc. etc. off limits too?

> However, I would ask everyone to please respond to those aspects dealing with non-physical tracking skills off-line. I insist.

As I've pointed out, I think we need a more defined and workable definition here. Maybe it's just where I'm coming from but I have a hard time often figuring out what a non-physical skill actually is. "Spirit tracking" is certainly non-physical, although there are folks that argue that it is based on understanding of the physical. My response here, though, is simple- since I can't do it, I won't talk about it. Hows that? There are some aspects of tracking that require some shifts in perspective- i.e. visualization or role plays of animal movements for pattern and track analysis, visual perception techniques or other larger
awareness questions— that are certainly physical and are vitally important to the process of tracking, but may skirt the edges here a bit. I want to talk about this stuff for the same reason I want to discuss variations in bow or handdrill technique, hide tanning, plant uses etc.

Mark Zanoni

James E. Burdine wrote:
> I guess it depends on what you call
> tracking. If an understanding of animal behavior counts as tracking as
> much as the scuff marks and foot prints of game, then all primitives
> tracked one way or another.

My point exactly.

> As far as the penetrating nature of stone points, they have
> been found to have better penetrating and wounding capability than
> steel. So much so that what some mistakenly call bird points are
> actually big game points.
Without a doubt a good obsidian point has incredible penetrating capacity. My point was, though, is the difference all that great that learning to "flute" a point would lead to total destruction of a species, especially given the reality of predator/prey relationships, energy expenditures etc.? An ancient hunter would still have to find and approach the prey. No matter how big a mammoth is, I can't believe it would be all that easy, but a person would never know that, unless they were out there in the woods trying it (obviously not on mammoths, but on other species).

Mark Zanoni

From - Tue Jan 21 02:46:27 1997

> energy expenditures etc.? An ancient hunter would still have to find and
> approach the prey. No matter how big a mammoth is, I can't believe it
> Well, didn't NAT. GEO. do an article on how ancient man hunted large game?
> As I recall, it was not one person, but a whole BUNCH who would finally
downed the animal.

Anyway, if I ever have to use some of the survival skills this list
presents... I know I'll leave the mammoths, elephants, and such alone:)

b-man, rich
Hi Y'all

Good post Mark Z.!

For the purposes of this group, I'd like to work out a broad definition of "tracking". Much of what has been discussed about the topic has been done without an understanding of what tracking represents in our various interpretations. I hope we can come to some consensus.

A place to start;

Tracking; following evidence of the passage of some person, animal or thing either by physical evidence left behind or by other existing physical
phoenomena such as sight, sound, smell or vibration.

One thought. Our "brains" are incredibly complex organs. As we all know the brain has a way of processing stimuli that we are not consciously aware of. Often this stimuli is below some sensory awareness threshold but will manifest itself as a "feeling". I practice and teach techniques for enhancing our awareness of these subliminal stimuli. This is not "spirit tracking".

Ron Hood
"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"

Ron Hood

I took a weekend class from Paul Rezendes, author of "Tracking and the Art of Seeing" (ISBN 0 944475 29 9), an excellent tracking book that has tons of great pictures (he's a wildlife photographer) and is much more fun to read than Murie's book. I recommend both the
book and the classes.

He takes a group of 8-16 people on a semi-random walk through the woods near his home. He or his assistant may have gone out earlier that day to look for something interesting. He points things out and answers questions as he goes. For example: Stunted hemlocks, crazy twisted beeches (oak? already I'm forgetting), cut-off oak and hemlock branches, curious two-by-two tracks in a straight line, scraped bark on the less-steeply sloped side of a white oak, and little cashew-shaped scat, all of which indicate browsing by porcupine. How you can study the branching pattern of mountain laurel and hemlock to get a history of deer population over the last five years. Pits where great trees once stood -- a tree falls out of its grave, not into it, and the pit remains long after the tree has disappeared. How coyote, otter, and weasel like to leave their scat in prominent places. That scat diameter is more indicative of species than length or volume. Debris piles and stash holes of red squirrels. Bare patches under hemlock trees used by deer bucks to announce their presence in mating season. Small clipped-off buds on blueberry bushes that tell you how many rabbits are about. He also told us what not to look for: wintergreen, partridgeberry, and red cedar are not mammal food and tell us little about deer or rabbit populations. We saw so much scat I'm amazed I could ever walk through the woods without coming back with shit on my shoes.

Walking with Paul leads me to believe that seeing what is in the wilds is not a matter of increasing your "awareness", but of knowing what to look for.

He wasn't really interested in tracking down animals. He doesn't study minute details of tracks to try to follow a trail. He just needs a few tracks to tell him that a fisher was here yesterday evening, and he knows what the fisher was probably doing. He says the way to find animals, whether you are a hunter or a nature photographer, is not to know where an animal has been, but where it is going to be. Once he has looked over the patterns in the woods he can predict with reasonable accuracy who will be where when.

After the classes I took a walk in the Catskills, looking for any of the things he had pointed out. I was excited to find a strange, tubular brown scat, composed of woody bits in some sort of brown leafy wrapper. Paul says that scat scent is often the best clue to its origin, and it proved so in this case -- what I had was a stomped-on soggy cigar.

If you know someone who knows these sorts of things, then of course you don't have to go all the way to Massachussetts. I suppose you could gain similar knowledge from taking walks with anyone who spent a lot of time observing nature. But for those of us not lucky enough to know any such person, Paul's classes are great.

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

Paul Rezendes
Bearsden Rd., Star Route,
South Royalston MA 01331
508 249 8810
www.windfall.com/users/bdwilson/rez/rez.html

From - Tue Jan 21 02:47:42 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
diogenes@SURVIVAL.COM wrote:

> Hi Y'all

> Tracking; following evidence of the passage of some person, animal or
> thing either by physical evidence left behind or by other existing
> physical phoenomena such as sight, sound, smell or vibration.

This is a good definition to begin with. I think it covers most of the
bases I can think of off-hand. There are also other aspects that may or
may not be covered here and they involve analysis and interpretation of
sign or tracks to get a feel for what the animal is doing, how its
moving or other similar things. Again, these are physical things and can
be determined from such things as change in gait or in changes in
pressure on the walls, floor or horizon of the track (again, the
unmentionable teacher and other aboriginal trackers talks of macro and
micro pressure releases. The micros are things I can see sometimes but
can't interpret to save my life. There is also some controversy
surrounding interpretive inconsistancies between TB and Australian
aboriginal trackers. Therefore, I'd just as soon leave these alone. The
macros on the other hand have verifiable physical reasons for why they
are as they are. This seems like fair game to me.
One thought. Our "brains" are incredibly complex organs. As we all know the brain has a way of processing stimuli that we are not consciously aware of. Often this stimuli is below some sensory awareness threshold but will manifest itself as a "feeling". I practice and teach techniques for enhancing our awareness of these subliminal stimuli. This is not "spirit tracking".

I agree and feel that this aspect is at least as important as some of the other more obvious aspects of this art. Visualization is another aspect of tracking that is related here, as it has to do with feeding the subconscious mind and role playing certain aspects of an animal's movement, an important aspect of interpretation.

Thanks Ron!

Mark Zanoni
(good strong physical tracking skills, no hocus-pocus) please pass them on to me (private e-mail, please) I have very few tracking teachers in my list of resources. I'd be glad to share the sources I know of. They need not be well known, just good at what they do and willing to share their skill. I'd particularly be interested in any teachers on the east coast of the U.S. I know about Charles Worsham in Virginia. I have recently been hearing about Mark Warren in Georgia. Anyone know anything about Mark? Any other teachers of tracking?

Charles Worsham is the best by far. Tom Hanratty is another good tracker but he is in Wisconsin. He runs Medicine Hawk Wilderness Skills in Milwaukee (414)482-8722. Tom teaches animal tracking classes and classes on "forensic tracking" (using tracking skills in crime scene analysis etc.) also as he is a former medical examiner for Milwaukee County.

To go a bit further a field I have heard good things about Jim Lowry in California and a guy named John Stokes, although I don't have addresses or numbers for either. I can get them and post them on the list. Another good tracker on the east coast is Paul Rezendes. I believe he is located in New York (but I could be wrong about this). Paul is the author of "Tracking and the Art of Seeing". He is a photographer by trade. Another tracker that comes to mind that I would recommend is James Halfpenny. Jim is the dean of "scientific trackers" and the author of "Mammal Tracks of North America". He's good. Sorry I don't have addresses for any of these people other than Charles Worsham. For those interested, his address is:

    RFD 4, Box 446 Thomas Rd.
    Madison Heights, VA 24572

Mark

From - Tue Jan 21 05:26:23 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id QAA00167; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 16:38:24 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA20758; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 16:36:39 -0500 (EST)
Received: from chic1.saglac.qc.ca (chic1.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id QAA20751 for poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA20758; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 16:36:39 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA20758; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 16:36:39 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.51 (ppp051.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.51]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id QAA04795 for poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id QAA20751 for ; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 16:39:51 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E4492C.3D62@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Tue, 21 Jan 1997 04:42:20 +0000
X-UIDL: 853883529.000
Here in my area, trappers always use apples or carrots as muskrat bait. I was wondering if anyone knows what natural baits could also be used, especially in late fall or early spring. Thanks.

BTW, thanks to Phil Goetz for his recent post on the tracking course he took and to everyone else who have done a better job than I could at orienting this subject of interest. I'm sorry if I overreacted at Mark's insistence that this subject be discussed. I was suffering from the old French saying "Chat èchaudè craint eau froide" which translates to "Cat which has been scalded is now afraid of cold water". Tracking as defined is obviously a very valid subject for this list, since it pertains to "How-to" information on a useful skill.

Thanks to everyone for your excellent contributions. I'm sure I speak for all when I say that your lengthy and informative posts are much appreciated. Keep up the good work.

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

\/_00000/_

Dr AndrÈ-Francois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca /
/ Ä 
/Ä /
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Quebec /
/000\0/000\\
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Quebec), Canada G7H2B1
/vv/vvX_____\
I can vouch for the quality of Jim Lowrie's and Mary's program, I have taken several of their courses and have recieved a lot from them.

Allan Lauchlan
alauchlan@igc.apc.org
kb6cwo@aol.com
I can vouch for the quality of Jim Lowrie's and Mary's program, I have taken several of their courses and have received a lot from them.

Allan Lauchlan
alauchlan@igc.apc.org
kb6cwo@aol.com

One of my teachers knows him well and speaks very highly of him also. I also thought that the newsletter he publishes is one of the best I have seen. It tends to focus on his area in California in terms of plants, local history etc. but has had some great tracking articles. One in particular contained a picture of tracks that were found in some kind of soft rock that were obviously made a very long time ago by an adult and a child. The pressure releases were still there in the tracks and the question was asked: what were they doing when these tracks were made (in terms of body major body actions etc.)? Did anyone see that? More specifically, did anyone figure the puzzle out? I'm still working on it but friend claims he has figured it out.

Mark Zanoni
Back in 1992, Jim Riggs wrote an excellent article on the history, construction and use of the Paiute deadfall in the Bulletin of Primitive Technology 1992:1(3):38-46. The photos and line drawings alone are worth the effort to get a reprint. What I found most interesting was Riggs' analysis of the traditional "figure 4" trigger configuration compared to his modified near horizontal lever position. He summarized the pros (+) and cons (-) of each in a sidebar thus:

****CONVENTIONAL WISDOM****
HIGH ROCK ANGLE
- Longer falling time when tripped, thus more time for quarry to react and escape
- Less % of quarry's body likely to be under rock
- More tenuous, unstable contact between rock and lever
- Taller fencing materials required
+ Bait stick is shorter, choice of suitable materials is broader
+ Friction contact between bait stick and rock is potentially easier to achieve

POST (ie, upright stick) POSITIONED UNDER ROCK
- When tripped, rock can begin its fall but actually land atop lever and post and remain upright
- Tripped rock can begin to flip lever and post away but because of its high angle and thus sluggish star, only knocks them over, often resulting in base of post remaining
under front of rock thus blocking its complete fall

DIAGONAL "FIGURE 4" LEVER POSITION
- Requires a carved "no slip" coupling between top of post and underside of lever
- As mentioned above, high rock angle means less contact area between lever and rock resulting
in less stable set
+ Cordage does not tend to slide up post

******RIGGS' SUGGESTED SET*******
LOW ROCK ANGLE
+ Quick falling time when tripped. Rock to quarry contact almost immediate with little time to escape
+ Quarry must be mostly under rock to reach bait, especially with adequate fencing
+ Potentially broad and stable contact area between lever and rock
+ Shorter fencing material required
+ Bait stick normally must be longer, thus strong spine more critical
- Friction contact between bait stick and rock can be more difficult to achieve

POST POSITIONED IN FRONT OF ROCK
+ Rock cannot abort its fall by landing on top of upright post
+ Rock nearly always flips lever and post beyond path of its fall

HEAR HORIZONTAL LEVER POSITION
+ Specifically shaped coupling between top of post and underside of lever can be advantageous
+ Increases surface contact between top end of lever and rock so more stable set
- Cord may want to slide up post (Normally corrected by roughening post surface or slightly adjusting angles between lever, cord, and post.

To add credence to these ideas, there is a photo in the book Survival Arts of the Primitive Paiutes (Margaret M. Wheat, University of Nevada Press, Reno) that shows a deadfall set exactly as Jim suggests. Also, the upright looks to be at a 45 degree angle rather than perpendicular to the ground.

Rob

Robert Chatburn, RRT
Director/Respiratory Care
University Hospitals of Cleveland
Instructor/Dept. of Pediatrics
Case Western Reserve University
(216) 844-7930
rlc6@po.cwru.edu
Bruce Carroll wrote
> making traps = (approx 20 -30 min for a figure 4 or Pauite type trap with ideal wood)

I've built dozens of figure 4's (none for real). The kids like to set them up in the livingroom with cusions as dead falls. I've always wanted to talk to someone whos had success with this trap. Do you find it lethal? Have you had much success with this particular trap (or for that matter has anyone else?) If so what are some of the secrets (mine always seem so slow, and its difficult to get enough weight on top)

Kelly Harlton
Hi Kelly

We use figure 4's to take marmot, gophers, squirrels (after we've determined that there are no protected species in the vicinity) rabbits and just about everything else that flies, crawls, jumps and represents food. They work very well when correctly set.

There are several carving tricks we use to "sensitize" the triggers. I'm a little at a loss for a way to describe them. We will be showing the entire process in an upcoming video. Meanwhile. To speed the drop of your deadfall it is good to place the grounded end of the weight on a pivot/bearing surface of some sort. A heavy rock or log tends to dig into the ground. This slows the fall of the weight. Place another bearing under the upright to keep it from digging into the ground. The proportions of the figure four need to be proper for the trap to activate correctly. A good test of the proportions: The "set" with a trap will throw all of the pieces free of the weight.

Many of the books show a Figure four with "bait". Eat the bait yourself and try this. Cut the trigger notch in the upright so it is close to the ground. Run a trench in the ground with your finger, where the trigger will be. The trigger should only be about 1cm above the ground. Place small twigs, grass etc. over the trigger. The animal will trigger the trap when it walks through. This is called a "treadle" trigger. To ensure that the animals feet are in the right place at the right time, we use "timing sticks" to put them there.

The VC used these on us with good effect. Essentially they just placed a log, stone, body or some such obstruction in the path. You naturally alter your stride to step over the object. This places your foot in the right place at the right time. Animals are equally vulnerable to this.
Almost all of our figure fours are made with willow and discarded after they've been successful. Animals smell the crushed gook on the traps. Once you know the carving tricks it takes about five minutes to fashion a good figure four from one piece of willow.

If you are trying for larger game..... coyotes and feral dogs come to mind. You may have trouble lifting the deadfall. In this case you can build a pile of stone on a primary rock once the trap has been set.

Our figure four sets are running about 25% at the moment. This means that if you have good sets in four locations, one of your traps will be successful.

Snares are another story.

Then there are foot traps.

and twitch ups.

and my favorite (Naturally) the Hood Lunch Launcher. (a student named it after I invented it.... I gave him an "A" in the course.)

BTW. We don't make much pottery as the soil is often too poor. Jungles, Sierra, etc. We cook in the animal skins. They are much easier to tote around, serve as hats, water buckets and just about anything else you need a bag for. The Tubatulabu cooked in baskets that also served as backpacks. Go figure.

Ron Hood

>I've built dozens of figure 4's (none for real). The kids like to set them up in the livingroom with cusions as dead falls. I've always wanted to talk to someone whos had success with this trap. Do you find it lethal? Have you had much success with this particular trap (or for that matter has anyone else?) If so what are some of the secrets (mine always seem so slow, and its difficult to get enough weight on top)
>
Kelly Harlton
>
Dr. Ron Hood
P.O. Box 383
Lake Hughes, CA, 93532
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"
> I've built dozens of figure 4's (none for real). The kids like to set
> them up in the livingroom with cushions as dead falls. I've always
> wanted to talk to someone whos had success with this trap. Do you find > it lethal?
> Have you had much success with this particular trap (or for 
> that matter has anyone else?) If so what are some of the secrets (mine 
> always seem so slow, and its difficult to get enough weight on top)

A great way to practice the triggering aspects of figure fours and 
piaute traps is on your pets. I have one of those plastic milk carton 
boxes that you can steal from behind the grocery store (not that I did) 
and use it as the deadfall. I trapped my cat fifteen times in a row one 
night using pepperoni as bait. (I never said my cat was smart) It 
helped me work out angles and weights and trigger elements. Also my 
daughter's pet gerbil (I know - illegal in CA) was regularly getting 
out of the cage and escaping into the kitchen. I used a Tupperware tub 
upsidedown with a piaute and some grain as bait. Caught her everytime. 
Used a very tiny version mind you, only lifting the tub about two 
inches, but it is a dynamite trap! Practice with lots of stuff, but you 
don't even have to kill to get some good experience. Most pets fall for 
it everytime and all you do is piss them off a bit. (My cat was always 
indignant, but came back in for more ten minutes later)

Kevin

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Jan 13 21:06:05 1997
Kelly Harlton wrote:

I've built dozens of figure 4's (none for real). The kids like to set them up in the living room with cushions as dead falls. I've always wanted to talk to someone who had success with this trap. Do you find it lethal? Have you had much success with this particular trap (or for that matter has anyone else?) If so what are some of the secrets (mine always seem so slow, and it's difficult to get enough weight on top)

I've had great success in winter trapping rabbits. The best set was several boards nailed together making a rectangular shaped piece about 2' x 3' which was then weighed with stones, maybe, 3 times a rabbit's weight. The trigger was carved from appropriately sized sticks. I think I mainly used sassafras. I used apples with peanut butter as bait and sprinkled cider around the trap. I know, it's not pure survival, but I was just a kid and I caught lots of rabbits!

Another thing, a few years back in the Journal of Primitive Technology there was a discussion about the configuration of the trigger sticks with the Paiute trap. Seems that the trigger is faster if the diagonal is nearly horizontal rather than at 45 degrees like the figure 4. If this is not making sense, I can post the original description from the journal.
Kelly Harlton wrote:
> I've always wanted to talk to someone whos had success with this trap.  
> Do you find it lethal?

Does pretty good job on squirrels. My experience is that with bigger
animals that require more weight on the deadfall, a paiute is a better choice.

> Have you had much success with this particular trap (or for that matter > has anyone else?) If so what are some of the secrets (mine always seem > so slow, and its difficult to get enough weight on top)

What are you using for a deadfall? Have you tried making a pathway for the deadfall by pushing 2 sticks into the ground on either side for support (be careful that there aren't places on the sticks that the weight can hang up on).

Figure 4s can be "hair triggered" fairly easily by playing around with the angles on the notches and setting them just on the tip. Also, avoid live materials in the winter time as they do freeze up on you. I learned this the hard way by having a "magical, bionic" snowshoe hare snatch bait from several traps without tripping them and then breaking the deadfall in two on the one that he did trip. This embarrassing fiasco has lead to a string of northwoods legends about 10 foot tall "killer hares" :-). Needless to say, we tried a different approach next time, but hey, that's how you learn, right?

Another hint is to make sure you have a solid "wompin'" surface under the deadfall such as a rock or other solid object. I've never tried it, but I would imagine that having their head puched into soft sand, mud or snow by a deadfall would do nothing but irritate a potentially trapped critter (and who wants to piss off a 10' tall, killer rabbit, right :-))

Happy trappin',

Mark Z.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Mon Jan 13 21:08:08 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA26615; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 01:02:27 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA04042; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 01:01:25 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 00:59:31 EST
Received: from india.midtown.net (india.midtown.net [205.162.100.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id BAA04031 for ; Tue, 14 Jan 1997 01:00:59 -0500 (EST)
Received: from merv.midtown.net ([205.162.100.197]) by india.midtown.net with SMTP (IPAD 1.51) id 2491400 ; Mon, 13 Jan 1997 22:05:35 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: merv@midtown.net
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.4
MIME-Version: 1.0
There's been mention of a "paiute" trap similar to the figure four here. Is this the one that uses a bit of cordage? If not, I've got pictures of another to put up on my web page. It's from "Survival Arts of the Primitive Paiutes" by Margaret M. Wheat ISBN 0-87417-048-6.

Someone asked about cordage. Peek at http://www.midtown.net/~merv/mropwalk.htm There's a couple of ideas there.

And again, if there's anything that needs web space, I can move stuff around and set it up at midtown.net. I would like to see a deadfall, especially figure four, and snare or maybe just a general trapping page attached to this primitive skills group. I'd need pictures, sketches, etc. I _do_ draw flies, but I'm _not_ an artist.

Merv

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------
| Merv Martin * * * |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * * * |
| www.midtown.net/~merv * * * |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |
| -------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---
Hi AZ,

To catch a snowshoe hare here in Quebec (probably the same elsewhere), find a trail and walk BESIDES it until you find a spot where the trail narrows between two trees so the animal has no choice but to follow that spot. Set your wire snare so the loop is such a size that your closed fist fits through it. Set it three fingers above the ground.

Some tricks:

Rub the wire around a branch before making the loop and it will stay round much more easily.

On moon nights, place the snare under evergreen trees so it is in the shadows.

Light a piece of birchbark under your snare to darken it.

Place your new snare wire in a warm oven for a couple of hours to tarnish off the brightness.

A very fine dry twig placed vertically under the snare will prevent the animal's head from going underneath.

A dry stick placed at a 45 degree angle a couple of inches above the snare (as if it had fallen there), will prevent the animal from jumping over the snare.

Wrap the other end of the snare wire around a branch at least two times for strength, and fairly close to the loop. You know it's right when
you move the snare a couple of inches and it springs back into place. The easiest way to do this is to wrap the snare around a dead branch while you are standing and then to stick the branch in the snow or ground besides the trail.

Now without snare wire, it's much more difficult...

Hope this helps, it's a start.

André

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (Québec), Canada G7H 2B1

Jack Sublette wrote:
>
> dose anyone know of any websites that tell how to make traps, deadfalls
> or snares, can you recomend any books on this subject for catching food.
Jack,

Check out Wilderness Way Online. They have placed some of their nicely illustrated magazine articles on the internet. For instance here are the particular page addresses for:

"Finding Direction"

http://www.pioneerpc.com/wildernessway/direction.html

"Snares"

http://www.pioneerpc.com/wildernessway/snares.html

.................................................................

-- Chris

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Another good source for trapping info is a magazine called FUR,FISH,GAME they have several advertisers that sell nothing but traps, and trapping
info, most of it modern, but some of the older stuff is in there also. There was one advertiser that sold reprints of the older trapping guides including snares. Also Ragnar Benson's books SURVIVAL POACHING and LIVE OFF THE LAND IN THE CITY AND COUNTRY both published by Paladin press. Paladin press also publishes a book called INTO THE PRIMITIVE that is a guide to trapping for survival. I don't have a copy, and have never actually held one, but it is supposed to have primitive trap building. Paladin's catalog is available for $2 at P.O.Box 1307-7a1; Boulder, Co. 80306 or 1-800-392-2400 for the USA and Canada. They also have a web site at http://www.paladin-press.com and no I don't work for Paladin;-), but they do have some interesting selections.

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com

From - Sat Jan 18 06:48:07 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA04781; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 12:17:11 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA23965; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 12:16:11 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 12:14:04 EST
Received: from sun.3rivers.net (sun.3rivers.net [208.136.177.1]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA23955 for
; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 12:15:47
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [208.136.181.47] (3s47.3rivers.net [208.136.181.47]) by
sun.3rivers.net (8.8.3/8.6.12) with SMTP id KAA11296 for
; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 10:19:54
-0700 (MST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Sat, 18 Jan 1997 10:19:54 -0700 (MST)
X-Sender: tomelpel@mail.3rivers.net
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853608571.003
From: tomelpel@3RIVERS.NET (Tom Elpel)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tomelpel@3RIVERS.NET
Subject: RE: The Art of Nothing: Traps
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>>What other ideas does the group have about nothing?
>
>Tom, I have nothing to say except that I liked your article and will
>print it to show friends. Also, I liked the chopsticks idea and

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/trappin1.htm (14 of 30) [10/22/2003 7:00:15 PM]
I have not yet done a lot of work with "no-carve-'em traps", but so far I have had results comparable to what I was getting with conventional traps (+/- 15%). (I haven't focussed too much on trapping yet.) My experience is limited to deadfalls, and I simply pick up and stack sticks and rocks in unstable forms (each one is different). It is helpful to have some prior experience with regular traps so you understand what needs to occur. I have found that this "non trap" method saves a lot of time that is otherwise expended manufacturing, transporting, and repairing traps.

I've been systematically working back through each skills area over the last few years, and do not expect to focus on traps again for another two or three years, but when the time comes I will do a very thorough study of the non-trap idea, and will certainly publish the results in some form.

Meanwhile, input would be greatly appreciated from everyone.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
I have not personally trapped muskrat so take what follows with that in mind:

Muskrat are primarily vegetarian. In the marshy areas of the southeastern US their primary food is cattail, bulrush and other marsh plants. Cattail seems to be the predominant favorite. They will eat the stems, leaves and rootstocks of these marsh plants.

I was taught, and found it to be true in my experience, that you look and see what plants in an area are an animal's favorite but there are not many more of which that are left in reach or in range of the animal. Here is where your tracking skills come into play: knowing how to track an animal to its feeding areas, what its chews characteristically look like, examine its scat, etc. Once you know they have a preferred food that is getting harder for them to obtain, you harvest some of it for them, nice little animal trapper that you are, and place it in a very convenient place for them to munch, i.e. use it for bait.

---------------

Best Regards,

Bo Gulledge
Graduate Student in Computer Science, University of South Florida
WebMaster for the following home pages:
   Tom Brown, Jr's Tracker School
      Official Home Page: http://members.aol.com/trackerinc/
      Unofficial Page:http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/tracker.html
   Earth-Heart http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/earth-heart.html
   EarthWalk NW, Inc. Frank and Karen Sherwood's Skills Classes
      http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/earthwalknw/
Bo Gulledge wrote:

> I have not personally trapped muskrat so take what follows with that in mind:
>
> Muskrat are primarily vegetarian. In the marshy areas of the southeastern US their primary food is cattail, bulrush and other marsh plants. Cattail seems to be the predominant favorite. They will eat the stems leaves and rootstocks of these marsh plants.

> I was taught, and found it to be true in my experience, that you look and see what plants in an area are an animal's favorite but there are not many more of which that are left in reach or in range of the animal. Here is where your tracking skills come into play: knowing how to track an animal to its feeding areas, what its chews characteristically look like, examine its scat, etc. Once you know they have a preferred food that is getting harder for them to obtain, you harvest some of it for them, nice little animal trapper that you are, and place it in a very convenient place for them to munch, i.e. use it for bait.

> 

> ---------------

> Best Regards,

> Bo Gulledge

Hi Folks - I'm new to the list. Regarding rat trapping, most of it is done with no bait at all. Muskrats wear trails that are easily visible and dig den holes in the banks of waterways/ponds/lakes. They are easy to catch by placing traps in travel lanes. Baiting does work though. Just about any vegetable matter is good with corn on cob, apple, and carrot being my favorite baits. I do nuisance wildlife control work as a sideline and about the only time I bait is when the customer wants the animal caught alive in a box trap.

--

Robert L. Cox, Jr. - President
Andr'e wrote:

>Here in my area, trappers always use apples or carrots as muskrat bait.
>Was wondering if anyone knows what natural baits could also be used,
especially in late fall or early spring. Thanks.

I also would very interested in such baits. Here in the Midwest we use
either carrots, or my personal favorite, parsnips. How do you lure in some
critter whose diet consists of tree bark? (softwoods) I personally think
the food-bait is a tough case. Would scent from other rats be natural?
Unless someone posts otherwise, I think the best bet for trapping 'rats' in
a survival situation would be to rely on run or blind sets. Probably
50% of rats taken aroon here are in blinds.

I know this didn't help, but I had to reply because it is a great question.
Most other "trappable" animals would be attracted by some sort of natural
lure.
I have baited an area before also to get an idea of what an animal is eating. I drive pointed sticks in the ground with the bait on them, several different kinds of bait on different sticks. I observe after awhile what bait was munched and bait my traps with this. I must confess, though, that I still have a lot to learn when it comes to trapping. I'd love to spend some time with some trappers.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Bo Gulledge wrote:
>
I have not personally trapped muskrat so take what follows with that in mind:

Muskrat are primarily vegetarian. In the marshy areas of the southeastern US their primary food is cattail, bulrush and other marsh plants. Cattail seems to be the predominant favorite. They will eat the stems, leaves and rootstocks of these marsh plants.

I was taught, and found it to be true in my experience, that you look and see what plants in an area are an animal's favorite but there are not many more of which that are left in reach or in range of the animal. Here is where your tracking skills come into play: knowing how to track an animal to its feeding areas, what its chews characteristically look like, examine its scat, etc. Once you know they have a preferred food that is getting harder for them to obtain, you harvest some of it for them, nice little animal trapper that you are, and place it in a very convenient place for them to munch, i.e. use it for bait.

Best Regards,

Bo Gulledge
Graduate Student in Computer Science, University of South Florida
WebMaster for the following home pages:
  Tom Brown, Jr's Tracker School
  Official Home Page: http://members.aol.com/trackerinc/
  Unofficial Page:http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/tracker.html
  Earth-Heart http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/earth-heart.html
  EarthWalk NW, Inc. Frank and Karen Sherwood's Skills Classes
     http://www.csee.usf.edu/~gulledge/earthwalknw/
Hi all,

The reason I am so interested in muskrat habits is that this particular animal is without doubt one of the most important survival foods. It is extremely abundant just about anywhere, fairly large, and especially, it is fairly fat and therefore calorific. This animal is near the base of the food chain and not too intelligent. Sounds like all the criteria for survival food...

Any further tips or tricks on capturing this animal in survival situations would be appreciated, as would be references.

André

PS I much prefer eating the musk part of the animal rather than the rat part. Many students will eat them when I call them swamp rabbits and won't eat them when I call them rats. They are delicious, by the way.

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of Québec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, Quévèbec, Canada G7H2B1

From Wed Jan 22 06:56:26 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA11720; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 18:31:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA06507; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 18:29:15 -0500 (EST)
Received: from mailgate21 (mailgate21-hme0.a001.sprintmail.com [205.137.196.52]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA06502 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 18:29:02 -0500 (EST)
Received: by mailgate21 (SMI-8.6/SMI-SVR4) id PAA19590; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 15:30:39 -0800
Received: from sdn-ts-031mdrelrp04.dialsprint.net (206.133.14.71) by
Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> Hi all,
>
> The reason I am so interested in muskrat habits is that this particular
> animal is without doubt one of the most important survival foods. It is
> extremely abundant just about anywhere, fairly large, and especially, it
> is fairly fat and therefore calorific. This animal is near the base of
> the food chain and not too intelligent. Sounds like all the criteria
> for survival food...
>
> Any further tips or tricks on capturing this animal in survival
> situations would be appreciated, as would be references.
>
> André
>
> PS I much prefer eating the musk part of the animal rather than the rat
> part. Many students will eat them when I call them swamp rabbits and
> won't eat them when I call them rats. They are delicious, by the way.
>
> --

Andre, You WOULD NOT enjoy eating the musk part!!

Actually regular old rats are good for food too. They were esteemed here
in Baltimore, Md at Fort McHenry during the war of 1812 by the prisoners
of war. Cats, Rats, & Dogs Cookbook was written here during that time as
well. (Hahahahahaha!!) Just kidding! However during wartime sieges all
over the world, the common rat, cat and dog have provided nourishment to the hungry. I've never eaten a common rat (and hopefully never will), but I have eaten muskrat often and enjoy it. It is pretty plain so I normally eat it ground up in a curry. Never have tried barbecuing yet though, will be soon.

It is a very stupid animal in general and is suckerEd in by just about every trick in the book. Most of my trapping is done with conibear traps set in their "runs" in the water or near their den holes. They do build large vegetation mound dens, but they also dig holes into the banks of waterways. (Beaver do the same thing). The easiest way of catching them in a survival situation would probably be with a snare set in their runs. Their runs can be found under ice by looking for bubble trails under the ice. I'm not sure of this, but if you stalked up VERY carefully to a vegetation mound and thrust a spear into it you might hit one in it's den - probably take a good amount of pure luck to be successful though. Any book on trapping would give you many ideas as to what could be done in a survival/primitive situation.

TTFN,
--
Robert L. Cox, Jr. - President
Nuisance Wildlife Control Services
Express Private Process Service
P.O. Box 5582, Towson, MD 21285
Email: robertlcox@sprintmail.com

From - Wed Jan 22 07:44:49 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA12216; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:34:57 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA07006; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:33:08 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:30:09 EST
Received: from emout12.mail.aol.com (emout12.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.38]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id TAA06995 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:31:50 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout12.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0) id TAA21934 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:35:45 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853980033.001
From: NatnNurt@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, NatnNurt@AOL.COM
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:35:45 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970122191718_-1946022922@emout12.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Muskrat question?
I haven't tasted them, but, boiling lab rats, in skeletal preparation makes a smell like bacon
Matt Schoeffler

From - Wed Jan 22 07:44:48 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id TAA12213; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:34:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA07010; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:33:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:30:22 EST
Received: from ns2.iamerica.net (ns2.iamerica.net [205.173.248.33]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA06998 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 19:32:03 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [205.173.251.60] (ias-ppp0851.iamerica.net [205.173.251.60]) by ns2.iamerica.net (8.6.13/950817.04ccg) with SMTP id SAA01202 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 18:36:58 -0600
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199701230036.SAA01202@ns2.iamerica.net>
Subject: Re: Muskrat question?
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 97 18:36:36 -0600
X-UIDL: 853980033.000
From: bmanrich
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bmanrich@IAMERICA.NET
To: "dr. A.F. BOURBEAU"
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="US-ASCII"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> 
>> Any further tips or tricks on capturing this animal in survival
>> situations would be appreciated, as would be references.
I NEVER had to trap for fur, but my Dad and Uncle leased land in South LA
to trappers many years ago. If they had not served during WWII(they'd
have become very, very rich selling raw fur for mil. use.)

Even in the 50s mink, muskrat, coon, were trapped. I've enjoyed my share
of muskrat meat...dark. But teenagers will eat just about anything.

As for eating the musk part....Andre' you were joking, for sure!

As I recall m'rat traps were not baited, and were placed along travel
paths(as has been stated already).

Neutra(not spell right,sorry) were a big problem and tended to force the
m'rats out...these could also be eaten; I never did. They were/are considered a "trash" animal (to the fur trappers).

b-man, rich

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN
Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
"*Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

Return-Path:
Received: from mailgate21 (mailgate21-hme0.a001.sprintmail.com [205.137.196.52]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.3/8.8.2) with SMTP id SAA12404 for; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 18:33:45 -0500 (EST)
Received: by mailgate21 (SMI-8.6/SMI-SVR4) id PAA19590; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 15:30:39 -0800
Received: from sdn-ts-031mdrelrp04.dialsprint.net(206.133.14.71) by mailfep2-hme1 via smap (KC5.24) id Q_10.1.1.6/Q_18422_1_32e6a2f9; Wed Jan 22 15:30:01 1997
Message-ID: <32E6A32B.5682@sprintmail.com>
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 18:30:51 -0500
From: ROBERT COX
Reply-To: robertlcox@sprintmail.com
Organization: Express Private Process Service
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
Subject: Re: Muskrat question?
References: <32E57D24.64E9@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-UIDL: 2dd53648b2de27e0cc3fd13d397f2270
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:
>
> Hi all,
>
> The reason I am so intested in muskrat habits is that this particular animal is without doubt one of the most important survival foods. It is extremely abundant just about anywhere, fairly large, and especially, it is fairly fat and therefore calorific. This animal is near the base of the food chain and not too intelligent. Sounds like all the criteria for survival food...
>
> Any further tips or tricks on capturing this animal in survival situations would be appreciated, as would be references.
>
> AndrÈ
>
> PS I much prefer eating the musk part of the animal rather than the rat part. Many students will eat them when I call them swamp rabbits and...
won't eat them when I call them rats. They are delicious, by the way.

Dr André-François Bourbeau  mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca

Andre, You WOULD NOT enjoy eating the musk part!!

Actually regular old rats are good for food too. They were esteemed here
in Baltimore, Md at Fort McHenry during the war of 1812 by the prisoners
of war. Cats, Rats, & Dogs Cookbook was written here during that time as
well. (Hahahahahaha!!) Just kidding! However during wartime sieges all
over the world, the common rat, cat and dog have provided nourishment to
the hungry. I've never eaten a common rat (and hopefully never will)
, but I have eaten muskrat often and enjoy it. It is pretty plain
so i normally eat it ground up in a curry. Never have tried barbecuing
yet though, will be soon.

It is a very stupid animal in general and is suckered in by just about
every trick in the book. Most of my trapping is done with conibear traps
set in their "runs" in the water or near their den holes. They do build
large vegetation mound dens, but they also dig holes into the banks of
waterways. (Beaver do the same thing). The easiest way of catching them
in a survival situation would probably be with a snare set in their
runs. Their runs can be found under ice by looking for bubble trails
under the ice. I'm not sure of this, but if you stalked up VERY
carefully to a vegetation mound and thrust a spear into it you might hit
one in it's den - probably take a good amount of pure luck to be
successful though. Any book on trapping would give you many ideas as to
what could be done in a survival/primitive situation.

TTFN,

--

Robert L. Cox, Jr. - President
Nuisance Wildlife Control Services
Express Private Process Service
P.O. Box 5582, Towson, MD 21285
Email: robertlcox@sprintmail.com

From - Thu Jan 23 11:34:14 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA12951; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 21:04:25 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id UAA07864; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 20:58:33 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 20:56:40 EST
Received: from emout05.mail.aol.com (emout05.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.96]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id UAA07859 for
; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 20:58:20 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout05.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0)
id VAA23009 for Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Wed, 22 Jan
1997 21:02:14 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: MaxWarhawk@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, MaxWarhawk@AOL.COM
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 21:02:14 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970122191113_-1979573100@emout05.mail.aol.com>
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Muskrat Acquisition
MIME-Version: 1.0
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id UAA07860
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id VAA12951
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=unknown-8bit
UAA07860
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

André wrote:

> The reason I am so interested in muskrat habits is ..........
> Any further tips or tricks on capturing this animal in survival situations would be appreciated, as would be references.

If the rats are fairly abundant in the area you're working, I have a method that has worked for similar game.

Ironically, I stumbled upon this technique because I was NOT in a wilderness area. The area was away from town, but was subject to many hikers and walkers. A small feeder creek ran into the Mississippi river and I had seen fresh mink tracks there. (at the time, 20 yrs ago, mink brought in a pretty good price)

So I wanted to:

1. Place a trap that wouldn't be seen by dozens of people.

2. Use a drowning set for reason of item # 1 and out of humane concerns.

I have used drowning sets for all local water-dwelling furbearers (coon are trickier to drown) Usually the weight of the trap is enough to drown the smaller critters i.e. rats, mink.

What I did was set a snare (metal one, sorry) in a prime run area. To it I tied a rock about the size of a softball. After two days I had a fine mink waiting for me in about 3 ft of water, out of life and out of sight!

Even with natural chordage, this application should work for rats.

> the food chain and not too intelligent. Sounds like all the criteria

True, the rat is lowly, but quite interesting. One buddy of mine hooked one ice-fishing and had it come thru the hole into his small tent. He has had a different outlook on the rats ever since. He also has some nice souviniers (scars).
Good day,

Treading Softly  MaxWarhawk@aol.com

From - Thu Jan 23 11:34:27 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA13576; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:20:44 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA08564; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:19:24 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:15:24 EST
Received: from cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu (cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.216]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA08530 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:17:04 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [129.22.220.4] (dialin004.REMOTE.CWRU.Edu [129.22.220.4]) by cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu with ESMTP (8.7.6+cwru/CWRU-3.0) id WAA16062; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:21:09 -0500 (EST) (from rlc6@pop.cwru.edu for )
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: rlc6@pop.cwru.edu
Message-ID: 
In-Reply-To: <32E57D24.64E9@saglac.qc.ca>
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 21:57:46 -0400
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: Rob Chatburn
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU
Subject: Re: Muskrat question?
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id WAA13576
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="iso-8859-1"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

AndrÈ wrote
  >The reason I am so intested in muskrat habits is that this particular
  >animal is without doubt one of the most important survival foods. It is
  >extremely abundant just about anywhere, fairly large, and especially, it
  >is fairly fat and therefore calorific. This animal is near the base of
  >the food chain and not too intelligent. Sounds like all the criteria
  >for survival food...
  >
  >A while back someone asked about about Ragnar Benson's books. In his LIVE
OFF THE LAND IN THE CITY AND COUNTRY he says "Muskrats, despite the name,
are excellent eating. They can be caught in quantity, the skins are used to
make vests or gloves, and the flesh consumed with relish. They are
definitely my favorite small game 'eatin critter' "

I am wondering if the fat of the muskrat will supply the essential fats
that, say, rabbits cannot. Anyone knowedgable on the survival sources of these essential fats?

Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

From - Thu Jan 23 11:34:54 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chili.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id GAA16030; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 06:39:11 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id GAA10856; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 06:37:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 06:35:29 EST
Received: from ns2.iamerica.net (ns2.iamerica.net [205.173.248.33]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id GAA10853 for ; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 06:37:13
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [205.173.251.45] (ias_ppp0836.iamerica.net [205.173.251.45]) by ns2.iamerica.net (8.6.13/950817.04ccg) with SMTP id WAA18237 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:30:10
-0600
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <199701230430.WAA18237@ns2.iamerica.net>
Subject: Re: Muskrat question and nutria?
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 97 22:29:11 -0600
From: bmanrich
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bmanrich@IAMERICA.NET
To: "dr. A.F. BOURBEAU"
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="US-ASCII"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> I wonder if nutria are as good as muskrat? Maybe the Boomerang man would
> know.

NO, I can't say I've ever eaten. BUT......my local pastor(when much
younger) Yea, it;s nutria...now I remember...

Asked me if these were ok to eat. I told me sure. He went and shot a
bunch, left 6 GIANTS on my back steps....looked like super-sized rats.
Fortunately they had gotten still and my wife trashed them.

Now to be discouraged, he served a meal to all the surrounding priests
one night, called it his BAYOU DINNER. One priest was not amused, once
he discovered he was eating nutria. yea, and my priest-friend sent a
couple to the bishop(who did enjoy them).

Not much about survival(in the wild), but maybe of some humor, none the
less.

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/trappin1.htm (29 of 30) [10/22/2003 7:00:15 PM]
If it is acceptable to anyone here who traps or hunts, I would pay the postage for animal heads to be sent here--I would use them for preparing skulls for nature demonstrations.

I'd appreciate any replies.

Matt Schoeffler
NaturesNurture
NatNurt@aol.com
This is off the Thrower subject, but I've got
25 cents worth of remarks on hunting and gathering
life, and I want to pass them on.

I forget which 18th.-century philosopher described
early man's life as "Solitary, nasty, brutish,
and short," but he was only repeating the accepted
wisdom of that day.

Now we know a little more about Stone Age living.
Nasty, brutish, etc. -- well, no doubt sometimes.
But solitary? Never! As far back in time as we can look,
we find humans living in groups, and with the exception
of the orangutan, there are no other great apes that live as solitaries.

Even the most accomplished Stone Age hunter, even in
country that was full of game, would have a hard time
feeding himself without companions. While the women
and children were gathering plant food (and sometimes bopping
a rabbit or possum that came handy), the men were out
in groups, collaborating on the hunt for big game. Sometimes, the whole
band would cooperate to drive game. I can recall how much
easier it was to hunt deer, even with rifles, if one or two
men slowly moved through the brush, pushing the animals
gently (they don't taste good if they've been frightened) past
another one or two men who had taken a stand downwind.
Collaboration, not solitary striving!

All this is just to say that primitive survival entirely on
your own is a much tougher proposition than surviving
in a band of forty to sixty people.

For thrower, send a HELP command to:

From - Fri Jan 3 00:27:19 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA02525; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:41:39 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA20418; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:40:25 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 02 Jan 1997 21:39:59 EST
Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id VAA20385 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:35:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [38.12.224.195] (ip195.las-vegas2.nevada.pub-ip.psi.net [38.12.224.195]) by mule1.mindspring.com (8.8.4/8.8.4) with SMTP id VAA25818 for ; Thu, 2 Jan 1997 21:38:55 -0500
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Thu, 2 Jan 1997 18:40:54 -0700
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 852312242.002
From: jburdine@PIPELINE.COM (James E. Burdine)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM
Subject: any time any where?
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

People is people, even with the knowledge of how to make everything you need to survive from scratch, you still have to add the psychological aspect. "Do I want to survive? Am I flexible enough to apply my knowledge even though all of my food stocks are destroyed, many of my family and friends killed, my way of life ripped apart?" Many people just cannot accomodate misfortune on such a grand scale, nature mercifully takes them out one way or another. Technology has tampered with natures way of survival in her element. We encourage people with defects to live by artificially giving them what nature did not. Civilization and community also allow us to support the weaker elements in our communities, the old, the sick, etc. In any mass catastrophy most of them will die, no matter how knowledgable they are. Harsh? Yes? We tend to glamorize the native peoples of America because they were well adapted to their environment, better in fact than most of the invaders from Europe. Still people is people, shock numbs the mind for a while. You still have to jump start your head and look beyond what happened to what you need. That's what this group is all about. Knowledge will make a difference and can affect your psychology. Knowing
that you can build some sort of effective shelter without a Home depot, 
start a fire without a match, find food with out an Albertsons or Piggly 
Wiggly, defend yourself without Smith and Wesson, can make the difference 
in your confidence level. Some people can choose to go naked into the 
wilderness, and survive quite well. Yet if you took them forcibly from 
their families and community, stripped them naked and dropped them miles 
away form any community or support, not knowing what happened to their 
families would they be able to get their head on straight soon enough to 
make use of the knowledge they have? Probably, but maybe not. 
Well enough of this. Just my two cents worth. 

JB

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com

> Would anyone care to venture a guess on how many acres of southern
> woodland would be required to support a family of four living
> as hunter-gathers. Some of yall have some knowledge of other
> culture living close to h/g style, and might could venture a guess.
> 
> > So, to live in a "primitive" life style, sans agriculture,
> > how many acres does it take?
> 
> Good question. Depends greatly on the territory. In the north around Hudson Bay, it is a very large figure, somewhere between 10 and 100 square miles per person. I get this from the book _Strangers Devour the Land_.

One figure I have heard for wolves is 10 square miles per wolf. This figure comes from studies in northern climates, since there are very few wild wolves left south of Canada. The figure might be smaller for humans since they are omnivorous, or it may be bigger since humans are bigger, and cannot digest as large a percentage of any animals they kill.

Phil goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

From - Sun Jan 12 20:48:50 1997
Received: from bort.mv.net (root@bort.mv.net [192.80.84.6]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA14691 for ; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 18:45:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.22.5.45 (knh-1-25.mv.com [207.22.5.45]) by bort.mv.net (8.8.3/mem-951016) with SMTP id SAA12787; Sun, 12 Jan 1997 18:48:41 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32D78CB9.5165@virtualmountain.mv.com>
Date: Sat, 11 Jan 1997 12:51:05 +0000
X-UIDL: 853163066.041
From: Bruce
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Welcome to Bruce Carroll + question
References: <32D5DBFE.570@saglac.qc.ca>
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Dr AF Bourbeau wrote:

> I am so pleased to find out that I'm not the only one who often becomes a starved wanderer on this type of outing. Thanks for being so honest Bruce, your experience concurs with mine. And you are so right in that last sentence.

> Question: RE: First few survival days. Could you describe your typical activities and how long they take for the first few days of these trips you do (only clothing & knife)? Anyone else care to tackle this one? This interests me greatly, and many others I'm sure.

I have yet to have a "typical" primitive day on an outing, but I'll give average (and wishful thinking) times for each.
day 1: get lost :-) This is the easy part. If I go out in the morning, I'll use
track an animal
for awhile. Along the way I'll pick up anything that may be useful (throwing stick,
plants/rocks/materials for traps, etc). At the Adv. Standard Survival TBjr course,
Tom mentioned
to make a travois to carry all of this stuff. He also mentioned to pick off a few
squirrels/small
game along the way. I'll keep my eyes out for a good shelter location (water source
nearby, good
debris, high and dry, good firewood, etc). Once found (could be 1/2 day to find),
I'll start
making a debris hut (4-8+ hours). If it's warm weather, I'll make it just to get
thru the night,
and then start on fire. If it's gonna be a cold night, I'll just concentrate on the
shelter and do
the fire the next morning. Usually after dark, I'll have the shelter in good shape,
and a stack of
firewood and rocks that I found while making the shelter, and will start on the tipi
style fire.
If I was able to find something like a mullein stalk, I'll do a handdrill. If not,
I'll make a
wood bow fire drill, and then make cordage (4-8+ hours). I once made enuff cordage
from cattails
in about 4-6 hours. It broke 3 or 4 times before I got a coal. The original length was
42 feet
long, and then I doubled it 3 or 4x for strength. I haven't tried my belt, shoelace
or piece of
clothing yet, but they would be an option if needed to speed up the time involved. If
I get the
fire going this night, I'll start burning some bowls out of pine logs, so I can boil
water. Tom
mentioned making dirt mounds to channel the wind to "blow" the bowls, so you could
concentrate on
making traps. I get very parched if I have to blow them by mouth and have no water (I
once got
very dehydrated doing this with a cool beaver log (not to be confused with a
"steamer"). I thought
it would make an awesome looking bowl. It turned out to be a hardwood, and it was
very hot
outside. My mouth felt like a lump of dry wood chips by the time I was done blowing
it) The beaver
bowl now resembles a chipmunk canoe and my daughter uses it for her dolls and floats
them down one
of our streams! I did get it so I could finally rock boil water in it. If I find a
large birch
tree (or similar) I'll make a bark basket for boiling water. With pine, I can get a
good size bowl
for water and stews in about 2 hours. If the fire is going, and I got some small
game or plants,
I'll eat. if not, time for bed...

day 2: If I got all of the above done (uusually not), then I'll start setting traps.
In the
morn, go around and lick dew (or sop up in a bandana or tshirt). Usually I'm just
getting a fire
about now if I have to make cordage. I'll finish making the bowls to boil the water
(even if I found a spring or a seep) and trap sticks. Also some snares if I have lots of cordage plants. Most of this day is spent adding more debris to the shelter, getting the fire/bowls, cordage and traps sticks done. Also finding wild edibles, or making teas when I need a break from other camp duties. I can usually (well, most of the time) have a fire by day 2, a great shelter, some food, and start to get good water. If there is a good supply of tall grass or ferns, I'll make mats, sleeping bags, coats, door for shelter, if needed.

day 3: Collect morning dew. Finish anything not done above and set a trap line (or another if I set one yesterday) around noon. I have just returned from being a vegetarian for almost a decade to eating meat, so this part is new to me. I have tried to just live off plants, but have realized that you can't. I've been practing my throwing stick, and getting good, so I'll now incorporate this and traps into my outings. Start working on a "shed" or work room. This is either a separate dwelling, or an extension to the debris hut. By now, life should be a party (but I'm usually not there yet). Day 3 is where I start to have a good supply of water, start to eat more and start exploring. Each time I got out I'll keep my throwing stick with me for food, keep picking up plants/rocks for knapping, etc. I'll start to check my traps 1x day around noon and keep setting a new trap line, until I have about 4 good lines out there. In theory, all I have to do from now on is to spend 2--3 hours a day checking the traps, going hunting with the stick and the rest is free time. Some day I'll make it this far by day 3! IF the weather is nice, then the above outline can be followed fairly close. If it's raining, then I'll spend a lot of time in the shelter or work room making things, or resting to conserve energy. At least there is plenty of water! This could push the whole schedule back several days depending on weather. If it's black fly season, then it's really difficult!

Approx times for making stuff:

- Shelter = 8-12 hours (best time is about 4 hours for summer shelter)
- Fire = 4-12 hours (best time is about 2 hours w/hand drill, 1 hour if I have brought cordage)
- Bowls = 2-4 hours (best time is about 2 hours with ideal wood for a stew sized bowl)
- Birch bark bowl = 30 min.
- Making traps = (approx 20 -30 min for a figure 4 or Paiute type trap with ideal wood)

Hope this is helpful. I don't have it down 100%, and there is always some unexpected
variation
(like no plants for cordage easily found, falling thru ice, etc) but each time out makes it easier
the next time. The first few times were very difficult, and I thought that the last
day would
never come (or I bailed and came out early). One time after getting dehydrated, I got extremely
upset when my wife dropped a waterbottle and alittle bit spilled. We were only 5 min. from our
house and just going for a walk in the woods, but after going without for so long, you really
appreciate it more when you have it and realize how precious it really is.

Bruce Carroll
Virtual Mountain
New Hampshire

From - Fri Jan 17 23:54:10 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id LAA27013; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 11:43:04 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA14412; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 11:40:44 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 11:38:50 EST
Received: from VNET.IBM.COM (vnet.ibm.com [199.171.26.4]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id LAA14409 for
; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 11:40:30
-0500 (EST)
Received: from BOULDER by VNET.IBM.COM (IBM VM SMTP V2R3) with BSMTP id 0088;
Fri, 17 Jan 97 11:44:00 EST
Received: by BOULDER (XAGENTA 4.0) id 4702; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 09:30:58 -0700
Received: from tracker (localhost [127.0.0.1]) by tracker.penn.boulder.ibm.com
(AIX4.2/UCB 8.7/8.7) with SMTP id JAA16916 for
; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 09:29:35
-0700 (MST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32DFA8BB.41C6@vnet.ibm.com>
Date: Fri, 17 Jan 1997 09:29:34 -0700
X-UIDL: 853606174.040
From: "Mike Jones"
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jonesmr@VNET.IBM.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.01 (X11; I; AIX 2)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Colorado Wild edible help
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
Hi,

I have recently subscribed to this list and think that there is a lot of good information that is passed around. I have been serious about learning wilderness survival skills for the last three years and because of that interest, I have my scout troop working towards a week long wilderness survival high adventure this summer. We are based in Longmont which is just northeast of Boulder 15 miles.

One of the areas that we need the most help on is with wild edibles. I have Peterson's guide and a Rocky Mountain guide but am interested in still more sources of information. If anyone would be willing to do a field trip or know of someone that would like to do a field trip with either my whole troop or just myself and the other scoutmasters I would really appreciate it. Sometime in may or June would probably be best for a field trip as our trip is currently planned for the third week in July. I am also interested in any other field guides that are skewed towards identification and uses for this area.

We are planning on about 50% of our food coming from foraging. Part of the equipment list for each boy is going to a sock full of whole grains and legumes. We hope to catch fish and also setup non-lethal snares. As leaders we will have a small supply of spices, meat, flour and honey to supplement the food. For example if the boys set up a snare or deadfall on a run and an animal triggers it (the snares will be designed so that the loop will break as it tightens and the deadfalls will have a stopper stick) then they will get some meat to throw in their evening stew. A few of the boys have caught trout by hand and all of them have at least touched a trout and made an attempt at catching one.

Also if anyone has good methods for cooking without pots, I would be interested in seeing some posts about them. I have done ashcakes, tortillas on hot rocks and raosting on a stick but have not tried any pit steaming or things like that. We will be taking one big pot along with us but I would like to do at least one day without using the pot.

Thanks.

Mike Jones
jonesm@vnet.ibm.com

From - Fri Jan 17 23:54:45 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA27517; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:45:27 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA15182; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:44:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:42:02 EST
Received: from sun.3rivers.net (sun.3rivers.net [208.136.181.36]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id MAA15154 for
; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 12:43:44 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [208.136.181.36] (3s36.3rivers.net [208.136.181.36]) by
Hi all,

I am sending you this article in the hopes of starting a thread of discussion about "nothing". The rest of my letter is posted at the end of the article.

The Art of Nothing
by Thomas J. Elpel

Westerners who first met the Shoshonean bands of Indians in the Great Basin Desert typically described them as being "wretched and lazy". Many observers remarked that they lived in a total wasteland and yet seemed to do nothing to improve their situation. They built no houses or villages; they had few tools or possessions, almost no art, and they stored little food. It seemed that all they did was sit around and do nothing.

The Shoshone were true hunter-gatherers. They spent their lives walking from one food source to another. The reason they did not build houses was because houses were useless to them in their nomadic lifestyle. Everything they owned they carried on their backs from place to place. They did not manufacture a lot of tools or possessions or art, because it would have been a burden to carry.

We often expect that such primitive cultures as the Shoshone must have worked all the time just to stay alive, but in actuality these were generally very leisured peoples. Anthropological studies in different parts of the world have indicated that nomadic hunter-gatherer type societies typically worked only two or three hours per day for their subsistence. Like the deer and other creatures of the wild, hunter-gatherer peoples have nothing more to do than to wander and eat.

The Shoshone had a lot of time on their hands only because they produced almost no material culture. They were not being lazy; they were just being economical. Sitting around doing nothing for hours on end helped them to conserve precious calories of energy, so they would not have to harvest so many calories each day to feed themselves.

Today many of us westerners find ourselves fascinated with these simple cultures, and a few of us really dive into it to reproduce or recreate the primitive lifestyle. In our typical western zeal we get right into it and produce, produce, produce. We work ambitiously to learn each
primitive craft, and we produce all kinds of primitive clothing, tools, containers, and art, and just plain stuff. True hunter-gatherer cultures carried all their possessions on their backs, but us modern primitives soon find that we need a pickup truck just to move camp! In our effort to recreate the primitive lifestyle we find that we have ironically missed our mark completely-- that we have made many primitive things, but that we have not begun to grasp the true nature of a primitive culture. To truly grasp that essence requires that we let go, and begin to understand the art of doing nothing.

Understanding the art of nothing is a somewhat challenging concept for us westerners. When we go on a "primitive" camping trip, we take our western preconceptions with us. We find a level spot in a meadow to build our shelters, and if a site is not level then we make it so. Then we gather materials and start from scratch, building the walls and roof of a shelter. We do what we are accustomed to; we build a frame house on a surveyed plot in the meadow. Then we gather materials and shingle our shelter, regardless of whether or not there is a cloud in the sky, or whether or not it has rained at all in a month.

Part of the reason we act this way stems from our cultural upbringing. Another part of it is simply because it is easier for those of us who are instructors to teach something rather than to teach nothing. It is much easier to teach how to make something than to teach how not to need to make anything. The do-something approach to primitive skills is to make everything you need, while the do-nothing method is to find everything. For example, the do-nothing method of shelter is to find shelter, rather than to build it. Two hours spent searching for a partial shelter that can be improved upon can easily save you two hours of hard-working construction time, and you will usually get a better shelter this way. More so, the do-nothing method of shelter is to look first at the incoming weather, and to build only what is needed. If it is not going to rain then you may be able to do-nothing to rain-proof your shelter. Then perhaps you will only need to put your efforts into a shelter that will keep you warm, instead of both warm and dry.

There are many things, both small and large, that a person can do, or not do, to better the art of doing nothing. This can be as simple as cupping one's hands to drink from the stream, instead of making and carrying a cup, to breaking sticks to find a sharpened point, rather than using a knife to methodically carve out a digging stick. Hand carved wooden spoons and forks are do-something utensils that you have to manufacture, carry, and worst, that you have to clean. But chopsticks (twigs) are do-nothing utensils that do not need to be manufactured or carried, and you can toss them in the fire when you are done.

Henry David Thoreau wrote of having a rock for a paperweight at his cabin by Walden pond. He threw it out when he discovered he had to dust it. This is the very essence of a do-nothing attitude.

The do-nothing approach to primitive skills is something that you do. Doing nothing is a way of saving time and energy, so that you can finish your daily work more effectively. One thing that I have found through the years of experimental research into primitive skills, is that there is rarely enough hours in a day to complete all of a day's tasks. It is difficult to go out and build a shelter, make a working bowdrill set, set traps, dig roots, make bowls and spoons, and cook dinner. Hunter-gatherer societies succeeded in working only two to three hours per day, yet in our efforts to reproduce their lifestyle we end up working all day.
Doing nothing is an approach to research; it is a way of thinking and doing. For instance, I do a lot of timed studies of various primitive skills: i.e.: how long does it take to construct a particular shelter? How much of a particular food resource can I harvest per hour? Can I increase the harvest using different gathering techniques? One thing I have noted is that it is only marginally economical to manufacture common primitive deadfall traps. It is time intensive; it adds weight to carry, and the traps often have short life-spans. The do-nothing alternative is to use whatever is at hand, to pick up sticks and assemble them into a trap, without even using a knife. Preliminary tests of this "no-method" have produced results equal to conventional, carved and manufactured traps, but with a much smaller investment of time.

Primitive hunter-gatherer type cultures were very good at doing nothing. Exactly how well they did this is difficult to determine, however, because doing nothing leaves nothing behind for the archaeological record. Every time we find an artifact we have documentation of something they did; yet the most important part of their skills may have been what they did not, and there is no way to discover what that was by studying what they did.

Nevertheless, what you will discover for yourself, as you learn the art of doing nothing is that you are much more at home in the wilderness. No longer will you be so dependent on a lot of tools and gadgets; no longer will you need to shape the elements of nature to fit our western definitions. You will find you need less and less, until one day you find you need nothing at all. Then you will have the time on your hands so that you can choose to do nothing, or even to go do something.

Hi all, (letter continued)

After many years of trying to do something in primitive skills I realized that maybe I was going about it all wrong--that the essence of primitive living was to endeavor to do nothing. I used to have lots of primitive possessions to display around my shelters and office when I was doing lots of something, but now they are wearing out and not being replaced, because of this new direction in primitive skills. I am discovering that as my skills improve I have less and less to show for it. One idea that is not included here is the "sticks bow" an instant bow made from a bundle of small-diameter sticks (I read about in a flyer from John and Gerry McPherson.) What other ideas does the group have about nothing? Any advice would be greatly appreciated. Thanks.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, Montana 59747

Send your postal address for info on our 3 books.
>True hunter-gatherer cultures carried all their possessions on their backs, but us modern primitives soon find that we need a pickup truck just to move camp!

On May 11th my wife, two daughters (aged 2 and 5) and I are embarking on a 12 month walkabout to Hong Kong, Malaysia, Thailand, Vietnam, Indonesia, Australia and New Zealand.

One of our primary concerns is what to take and how to carry it. We have finally decided that I'll carry the youngest in a kiddie-carrier and my wife will carry our possesions. We've limited ourselves to just 40 litres of backpacking space. Needless to say, our possesions will be meagre at best (one shirt each, one pair of pants each, undies, rain gear, medical kit). Instead of bows and spears, we'll be armed with Mastercard and Visa.

Not quite the hunter gatherer of old, but I'm intrigued to find out how we'll manage with so few material items.

> The reason they did not build houses was because houses were useless to them in their nomadic lifestyle. Everything they owned they carried on
their backs from place to place.  
They did not manufacture a lot of tools or possessions or art, because it would have been a burden to carry.

Interestingly, all of our hard earned household possessions (furniture, beds, electric can-opener and so on) have become an encumbrance to us. What we used to think of as a desirable item, we now consider a pain in the butt that we somehow have to ditch or store.

>few of us really dive into it to reproduce or recreate the primitive lifestyle.  
>In our typical western zeal we get right into it and produce, produce, produce.

One of the reasons we chose to bug out of Canada is to establish a lifestyle of time-richness, rather than material richness. Clearly this lifestyle is only temporary and is somewhat artificial but I think the experience will be very rewarding.

I worry a little about the kids - safety, health and education, but one of my favorite sayings is "If you want to bring up extraordinary children, you have to give them an extraordinary childhood", so I'm now putting my money where my mouth is.

This list server and the teachings of a number of people have given me the confidence that I can survive most things. I can now light a fire with very little effort (12 months ago, my idea of fire lighting was a tyre and a gallon of gas), I've take a wilderness first aid course so that I can deal with most medical disasters that may strike, I know how to establish a make shift shelter, purify water and gather food. So although I may never actually live the life of a pre-contact native indian, at least some of their wisdom has been passed on to me so that I can better enjoy and explore the modern world, and perhaps experience a glimpse of the time-richness of their life style.

Good thread Tom!

Regards

KB

From - Sat Jan 18 00:01:53 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id SAA00674; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 18:51:39 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA20127; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 18:50:45 -0500 (EST)
Received: from ns2.iamerica.net (ns2.iamerica.net [205.173.249.56]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 18:48:51 EST
Received: from ns2.iamerica.net (ns2.iamerica.net [205.173.248.33]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id SAA20123 for ; Fri, 17 Jan 1997 18:50:33 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [205.173.249.56] (ias_ppp0147.iamerica.net [205.173.249.56]) by ns2.iamerica.net (8.6.13/950817.04ccg) with SMTP id RAA15521 for
On May 11th my wife, two daughters (aged 2 and 5) and I are embarking on a 12 month walkabout to Hong Kong, Malaysia, Thailand, Vietnam, Indonesia, Australia and New Zealand. WHICH REMINDS ME OF THE YOUNG COUPLE (years ago) WHO WROTE TO ME FOR MY BOOMERANG catalog. They expressed that when they married and moved to Alaska, they wanted to do everything as primitive as possible. They thought a boomerang would be the perfect primitive hunting tool.

Along with my catalog, I sent a letter and told them straight-out that even with modern gear, they would have a tough time surviving in Alaska.

A walkabout is certainly exciting, but with such young kids to care for.... we'll be armed with Mastercard and Visa. <

During the Gulf War, I was really surprised by some of the mail I received. Troops placing Christmas orders directly from the battle fields and using their credit cards... Credit Cards on a Battle Field....? Modern warfare had come a long, long way!

rich, b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG....sent anywhere!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

From - Sat Jan 18 06:48:05 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA04782; Sat, 18 Jan 1997 12:17:11 -0500 (EST)
We often expect that such primitive cultures as the Shoshone must have worked all the time just to stay alive, but in actuality these were generally very leisured peoples. Anthropological studies in different parts of the world have indicated that nomadic hunter-gatherer type societies typically worked only two or three hours per day for their subsistence. Like the deer and other creatures of the wild, hunter-gatherer peoples have nothing more to do than to wander and eat.

Just out of curiosity, if the true hunter-gatherers left little or no archaeological record, how is it certain that they only worked 2-3 hours per day?

Neal McSpadden

Neal,

The most scientific study I am familiar with regarding labor in hunter-gatherer cultures was conducted with the !Kung people in Africa in the 60's. Less formal observations of the Great Basin Paiute Indians in the 1800's and of the Australian aborigines seem to confirm the "laziness" of true hunter-gatherer societies. I highly recommend reading Peter Farb's 1968 book "Man's Rise to Civilization (as shown by the Indians of North America from primeval times to the coming of the industrial state)" (I thought some of my books had long titles!!!) Anyway, Farb's book is a really well written perspective on cultural evolution.

I would like to make a note of clarification: The !Kung work 2-3
hours per day for "subsistence" (food). The average person in our culture spends considerably *less* time working for food and much more time working for everything else. (I spent a lot of time developing this idea in my "Field Guide to Money", and no, "Money" is not a misprint.) When all work is factored in (cooking, shelters, tool-making etc., the !Kung work approximately a 40 hour week, BUT please note that when all our work is factored in (cooking, shopping, commuting, cleaning house, doing laundry etc.) we moderns average about 80 hours of work per week.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, MT 59747-0691

E-mail your postal address to us for information about our books.

From - Sun Jan 19 22:33:00 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id KAA17553; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 10:23:28 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA05316; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 10:22:17 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 10:20:24 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id KAA05309 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 10:22:06
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.54 (ppp054.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.54]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id KAA10100 for ; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 10:25:35
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E29FEF.403D@saglac.qc.ca>
Date: Sun, 19 Jan 1997 22:27:59 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: [Fwd: Re: survival trip]
Content-Type: multipart/mixed; boundary="----------2A61773B3BF6"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

This is a multi-part message in MIME format.

----------2A61773B3BF6
Par Leijonhufvud wrote:

> I would like to ask you some question on the trip you
described in your intro [1]:

> I conducted two major trips, one was a 31 day experiment in 1984 where
> I
> was dropped by helicopter on the 50th parallel without food, without
> fire, without tools, without shelter- just the light clothes on my ba-
> ck.
> That was a pretty rough trip, details of which are to be found in a b-
> ook
> I wrote about the experience entitled "Surviethon au Gr=E9 de la Natu-
> re"-
> sorry, only available in french for now. The book is a day by day
> report on the trip, to which was added a scientific report on various
> subjects studied during the experiment.
We had a "Hypocrit bag" in which there was a radio for emergencies only, along with camera, dictaphones, weigh scale and other scientific equipement not to be used during the experiment for survival purposes.

> 2. Where there any scientific writeup other than the book you mention > (could you give me full bibliographic details on that one?)? I'm thinki= ng > of things such as nutritional status, resources utilized, etc.

I have not published anything in English on this yet. Some details can be found in the film "Man of the Wilderness", KEG Productions, 1231 Yonge Street, Toronto, Ontario.


> 3. What were the organizational aspects of the trip (where you famillia= > r > with the area, had someone else checked out the area, etc.)?

We selected our area blindfolded by tossing a dart on a map. No previous knowledge of the area whatsoever. Trying to simulate reality. We also selected our gear by randomly choosing the 6th individual which we stopped on a street corner and using clothing and possessions he had on him: $19 68cents, a comb, a wallet with credit cards and id, 5 keys, a baseball cap, a t-shirt, a sweater, an unlined windbreaker, a belt, a pair underwear, a pair of jeans, one pair socks, light hiking boots. No fire, no tools.

In particular I would be interested in if you were picked up at the end of the period, or if you made your own way home.

It was agreed that it would be a 31 day trip staying in the same place.

> The reason I am asking is that we are a few friends here in Sweden who want to carry out some trip of that type, i.e. fully independent "survival problem solving", but are concerned regarding the safety issues, as well as wondering about what organisational setup might be best.

I would never recommend conducting a trip without a "Hypocrit bag". This bag should contain a radio, first aid, sleeping bag, tent, tools, fire etc. It should be sealed properly with a once-only seal so you can prove to others (and especially yourself) that you were successful.

[1] By the way, I'm new to this list, and thus a bit uncertain on the local etiquette; is it suggested that all subscribers post a brief bio to the list?

By all means, Par, do send us an intro if you wish. I will store it in the archives which should be ready by the end of the month.

Andr=E9
Tom's post on this brought back old memories, a scene in a movie that I've always thought very profound...

I was but a young lad of 15 or so when the movie _Lawrence of Arabia_...
came out. A good flick, but too long and slow for me at the time. Nevertheless, there was a scene I've never forgotten, and crops up from time to time...

The young junior officer Lawrence (Peter O'toole) demonstrates a trick he plays with a match. He lights the match, holds it vertically, and then grasps the matchstick between thumb and forefinger (of the other hand). He slowly works his fingers up the matchstick until his rising fingers meet the descending flame, and he snuffs it out. One of the other junior officers watching tries it out. "Ouch!" he says, "that hurts!"

"Yes" says Lawrence

"What's the trick?" asks the junior officer

Lawrence smiles and replies "not to mind."

Surely there has got to be something of that in all of you. It is one thing to practice tanning or fire starting, or even cooking bugs in your back yards, but the determination to practice such skills together in the wilderness, away from the comforts of your homes is something that has been nagging at me since I encountered this group. I am fascinated by all of the discussion (technical and philosophical), but I am aware that even when I go camping (I'm speaking of modern backpacking, not primitive living or wilderness survival) if things get uncomfortable (usually cold and/or wet) I find myself thinking "why did I come here?"

Interesting, and not judgmental. I'm curious if the real practice of subjecting yourselves to considerably more discomfort (like Andre's 31 days in the wilderness) demands a mental attitude that renders such questions as "why did I come here" inconceivable, and indeed like Lawrence, the trick is "not to mind."

matthew rapaport     Philosopher/Programmer at large        KD6KVH
mjr@crl.com    In God we trust. All others we monitor!  quine@dfw.net

From - Tue Jan 21 02:47:16 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicli.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id XAA23898; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 23:47:34 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA13086; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 23:45:48 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 23:42:54 EST
Received: from pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU (pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU [128.205.35.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMT id XAA13081 for
; Mon, 20 Jan 1997 23:45:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: (goetz@localhost) by pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU (8.7.5/8.6.4) id XAA17588;
Mon, 20 Jan 1997 23:49:45 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853875768.003
From: Phil Goetz
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Message-ID: <199701210449.XAA17588@pollux.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Subject: Re: The Art of Nothing: hours
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tomelpel@3RIVERS.NET
Date: Mon, 20 Jan 1997 23:49:44 -0500 (EST)
In-Reply-To: from "Tom Elpel" at Jan 18, 97 10:19:58 am
X-Mailer: ELM [version 2.4 PL25]
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

> We often expect that such primitive cultures as the Shoshone must
> have worked all the time just to stay alive, but in actuality these were
> generally very leisured peoples.

Mark Twain described the Shoshone as the most miserable people in the
world. I don't know what their lives were like, but they lived in
a desert. I suspect that wood, bone, and maybe even stone and clay were in
short supply.
Would they have chosen to live so possession-free if they had a choice?
Does anybody know more about them?

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu
Subject: Re: Mark Twain/Shoshone
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

>>We often expect that such primitive cultures as the Shoshone must >>have worked all the time just to stay alive, but in actuality these were >>generally very leisured peoples.
>
>Mark Twain described the Shoshone as the most miserable people in the >world. I don't know what their lives were like, but they lived in >a desert. I suspect that wood, bone, and maybe even stone and clay were in >short supply.
>Would they have chosen to live so possession-free if they had a choice? >Does anybody know more about them?
>
>Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu

Phil,

Many western observers described the Shoshone bands as "wretched". They were observed to sit all day in the shade of a tree without doing anything to improve their situation—a terrible vice by western standards.

Mark Twain wrote in 1861: "(The Diggers) produce nothing at all, and have no villages, and no gatherings together into strictly defined tribal communities—a people whose only shelter is a rag cast on a bush to keep off a portion of the snow, and yet who inhabit one of the most rocky, wintry, repulsive wastes that our country or any other can exhibit. The Bushmen and our Goshoots are manifestly descended from the self-same gorilla, or kangaroo, or Norway rat, whichever animal—Adam the Darwinians trace them to."

The Shoshoneans lacked the technology to exploit their environment in a "more respectable" way, otherwise they probably would have, even if it meant working more. As it was, they practiced sitting in the shade as a means to conserve precious calories of energy. They were the original couch potatoes. My aim is not to replicate their experience (I can be a couch potato at home any time), but to achieve a level of caloric efficiency where I have the freedom to explore nature relatively unburdened, without having to work every waking moment to support myself (the "Happy Wanderer" thread again).

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, MT 59747
tomelpel@3rivers.net
>Interesting, and not judgmental. I'm curious if the real practice of
>subjecting yourselves to considerably more discomfort (like Andre's 31
>days in the wilderness) demands a mental attitude that renders such
>questions as "why did I come here" inconceivable, and indeed like
>Lawrence, the trick is "not to mind."
>
>matthew rapaport

Matthew,

You are certainly right about not-minding discomfort. I was
surprised to discover while teaching that I was perfectly comfortable even
while my students were not. This was not a matter of skills ability. I am
simply used to camping on steep slopes, using a rock for a couch, and
ignoring small swarms of mosquitoes. Beginning primitives have a
surprisingly difficult time adjusting to a campsite where there is not a
level place to stand, but those are some of my favorite sites.

Also, I once hated sleeping by a fire and putting wood on it all
night, but then I designed a pit shelter with a hot coal bed under it where
I could sleep in shorts and a t-shirt without a blanket or any insulation,
or even a door. These take 3-4 hours to construct and can be used
continuously. Now that I know I can be warm when I want to, I find that I
do not mind the discomfort of putting wood on a fire all night; in fact, I
kind of enjoy it.

Last, I notice after being out of the primitive loop, that there is
a significant impact upon returning to it. It takes a few days of being
out there to climatise to the lifestyle.
Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, MT 59747-0691
Send your postal address by private e-mail (not to the group) for information about our books.

From - Thu Jan 23 11:35:19 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id OAA19773; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 14:59:16 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA15640; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 14:52:44 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA15632 for ; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 14:50:46 -0500 (EST)
Received: from zippy.radian.com (zippy.radian.com [129.160.16.4]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id OAA15632 for ; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 14:52:44 -0500 (EST)
Received: from ccsmtpgate.radian.com (ccsmtpgate.radian.com [129.160.224.126]) by zippy.radian.com (8.6.12/8.6.5) with SMTP id NAA01577; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 13:56:00 -0600
Received: from ccMail by ccsmtpgate.radian.com (IMA Internet Exchange 2.03 (Beta 6) Enterprise) id 00023742; Thu, 23 Jan 97 13:55:21 -0600
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
MIME-Version: 1.0
Date: Thu, 23 Jan 1997 11:52:10 -0600
Message-ID: <00023742.3356@radian.com>
From: Sean_Clemenza@RADIAN.COM (Sean Clemenza)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Sean_Clemenza@RADIAN.COM
Subject: Re[2]: Modern Primitives
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
CC: MManzano@AOL.COM
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Description: cc:Mail note part
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Here is a portion of the original e-mail sent to the Trackers list.

Sean Clemenza, Davis, CA
sean_clemenza@radian.com

>Date: Tue, 1 Oct 1996 10:33:39 -0400
>From: MManzano@aol.com
>To: trackers@muskoka.net
>Subject: Re: CBS News wants our help
regarding groups that *live* a primitive lifestyle. I didn't know of any
off hand, but apparently, CBS would like to do a story on them! I think
this would be a great way to further spread knowledge of Native American
or Aboriginal ways via modern technology as we have done with this e-mail>

Martha Manzano

John Wall wrote:

A few months ago some guy saying he was a teevee producer (I think that's what
he said) e-mailed the Tracker list for info about how to contact people living a
primitive lifestyle. Just wondered if anyone on this list knows this guy, or
has talked with

--John

What is his name?

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

From - Wed Feb 10 08:33:31 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id NAA29215; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 13:22:14 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id NAA23877; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 13:19:54 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 13:18:01 EST
Received: from enaila.nidlink.com (enaila.nidlink.com [205.219.220.23]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id NAA23874 for
; Fri, 24 Jan 1997 13:19:43
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 205.219.220.33 (pm1-4.nidlink.com [205.219.220.33]) by
enaila.nidlink.com (8.8.5/8.7.3) with SMTP id KAA12284; Fri, 24 Jan
1997 10:27:51 -0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E8F0CF.FD9@nidlink.com>
Date: Fri, 24 Jan 1997 10:26:38 -0700
X-UIDL: 854135966.016
From: Chris Smith
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@NIDLINK.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.0 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, w6@WOODRUFF-SAWYER.COM
Subject: Re: Going Semi-Primitive
References:
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
John Wall wrote:
>
> The "happy wanderer" seems to have been unable to emerge from his mythic realm, but I wonder if anyone has considered what a "minimum income" would be to do some happy wandering in today's world, assuming you'd do a certain amount of unauthorized wild-food-gathering.... Would $100/month do it? Any fairly recent ex-wanderers out there with some savvy?
>
> --John

A higher tech version of low priced wandering is addressed in the book:

"Living Aboard your RV"
Janet Groene and Gordon Groene
Ragged Mountain Press, 1986
250 pgs, $15.95 postpaid from:
13311 Monteray Ave.
Blue Ridge Summit, PA 17214
1 (800) 262-4729

How to cope with problems like banking, mail delivery, medical care, vehicle licensing, telepone, where to park, etc. A lot less expensive than home ownership or apartment rental. Tells how to do it.

Chris
John Wall wrote:
>
> The "happy wanderer" seems to have been unable to emerge from his mythic realm, but I wonder if anyone has considered what a "minimum income" would be to do some happy wandering in today's world, assuming you'd do a certain amount of unauthorized wild-food-gathering.... Would $100/month do it? Any fairly recent ex-wanderers out there with some savvy?

This is fairly easy to calculate, since just about the only ongoing concern in that situation is food. Once you have spent the initial money on axes, traps, clothing, medicine etc, you only have to buy food staples. You need approximately 50 lbs of food staples per person per month. I have worked as a chef and food administrator for years (long time ago), and have conducted intensive research on food for outdoor expeditions. From what I have learned, this amount of food will carry you through even if you don't have any other food sources. You should buy flour, rice, salt, baking powder and some type of lard. Nature will give you the variety, but at least your survival will be assured.

If you don't want to rough it that much, other food stuffs can be added. If you want, I can send you or post a list of 25 basic staples with which any modern food dish can be concocted if you know how to cook.

With enough food and good health, wandering becomes a delight, because you have strength and energy to improve your situation from day to day. A good medicine cabinet is also important. Again, I could provide a list of what's in my medicine pack for long term walkabouts or expeditions, but you can get that from other sources as well.

It should be fairly easy to buy all you need for walkabout purposes for $100 per day if you so decide to go that route, once initial investments have been made for basic tools and clothing.

Happy wandering,

André

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca      /\00000/\      / Ä \    / Ä \

http://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/walkabo1.htm (27 of 37) [10/22/2003 7:00:18 PM]
$100/day?!? It this right, or did you mean $1.00/day or $100/month?  This seems very high, would our hypothetical Happy Wanderer have to run in and knock off an occasional bank to make ends meet, or does s/he just come from a 'well-established' family? ;)

Sean Clemenza
sean_clemenza@radian.com

PS - Thank you all for your insight and input.

> It should be fairly easy to buy all you need for walkabout purposes for >$100 per day if you so decide to go that route, once initial investments >have been made for basic tools and clothing.

> AndrÈ
Chris Smith wrote:

> 
> > John Wall wrote:
> > 
> > > The "happy wanderer" seems to have been unable to emerge from his mythic realm, but I wonder if anyone has considered what a "minimum income" would be to do some happy wandering in today's world, assuming you'd do a certain amount of unauthorized wild-food-gathering.... Would $100/month do it? Any fairly recent ex-wanderers out there with some savvy?
> > >
> > > --John
> > 
> > A higher tech version of low priced wandering is addressed in the book:
> > 
> > "Living Aboard your RV"
> > Janet Groene and Gordon Groene
> > Ragged Mountain Press, 1986
And might I suggest "Travels with Charley" by John Steinbeck, haven't read it yet, someone just sent me email about it. It's about someone who travels around living in a pickup camper. I am thinking about doing this out of a small trailer. Another book on the subject is Freedom Road, by (I think) John Hough.

--

Robert L. Cox, Jr.  - President
Nuisance Wildlife Control Services
Express Private Process Service
P.O. Box 5582, Towson, MD 21285
Email: robertlcox@sprintmail.com

In a message dated 97-01-24 16:31:41 EST, you write:

<< It should be fairly easy to buy all you need for walkabout purposes for $100 per day if you so decide to go that route, once initial investments
have been made for basic tools and clothing.

A current news item thread pertinent to this discussion is the Theodore Kazinski (aka alleged unibomber) story. Kazinski has been quoted as saying (proudly) that it is possible to live on $150 a year. (I am pretty sure of this figure). He lived about as primitively as one can, once he constructed a shack in which he could live and store half a dozen necessary primitive typewriters.

John Waltz
Belle Mead, NJ

From - Thu Feb 11 15:29:06 1993
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id VAA09964; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 21:07:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA05894; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 21:05:10 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 21:03:16 EST
Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic.saglac.qc.ca [204.19.37.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id VAA05891 for ; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 21:05:00
-0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.86 (ppp086.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.86]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with SMTP id VAA26824 for ; Sat, 25 Jan 1997 21:08:29
-0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <2B7A659F.3700@videotron.ca>
Date: Thu, 11 Feb 1993 14:41:35 +0000
X-UIDL: 854245143.000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au Grè de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Re[2]: Going Semi-Primitive
References: <00024D10.3356@radian.com>
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id VAA05892
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id VAA09964
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
VAA05892
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Sean Clemenza wrote:

>
> $100/day?!? It this right, or did you mean $1.00/day or
> $100/month?
> 
> It should be fairly easy to buy all you need for walkabout purposes for
> $100 per day if you so decide to go that route, once initial investments
> have been made for basic tools and clothing.
> 
> OOPS! My mistake, of course I meant $100 per month...

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will... o /
\0000/\

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca / Ä\ /Ä \ Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec /
/0000\0/0000\ 555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1 /vvvvvx______\
Hi everyone,

Sorry for the delay in posting this information on 25 basic food staples for walkabouts which I had promised several days ago. I forgot that I had to translate it first, and also that I had to reformat the Exel file for this media. Anyhow, here it is, finally.

I will be pleased to answer any questions related to this. The data herein presented is based on research conducted over a period of 12 years where I was responsible for planning thousands of expeditions from 10 to 54 days in duration for summer camps in northern Ontario and Québec.

A chef can prepare just about any modern recipe using the 25 ingredients listed below. Hope this makes your less than primitive walkabouts more enjoyable!

Cheers,

André

Note: you may have to widen your Netscape window to view the table correctly, and you also have to use a monospaced font such as Monaco or Courier.

------------------------------------------------------------------------

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Food staples for walkabouts (after first few days of fresh food)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>© 1996  Dr  A. F. Bourbeau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight%</th>
<th>Gram/men/day</th>
<th>G/women/day</th>
<th>G/ado/day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Starches</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Flour</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Noodles</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Rice</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Oatmeal/other grains</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Potato flakes</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Beans</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total starches</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>405</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Veggies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Dried vegetables</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Fresh onion</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Tomato paste/powder</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total veggies</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Dairy prod</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Dried/fresh/frz eggs</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Milk powder</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Fresh cheese</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Cheese powder</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total dairy products</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Meats</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Dried/smoked meats</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Salted meats</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Canned/frozen meats</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total meats</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Nuts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed nuts</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peanut butter</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total nuts</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Fats</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butter/margarine</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lard or shortening</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total fats</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Sweets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown/white sugar</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jam/marmalade</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semi-sweet chocolate</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asstd juice powders</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total sweets</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Fruits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed dried fruits</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total fruits</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRAND TOTAL</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilocalories</td>
<td>3600</td>
<td>2800</td>
<td>4000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Condiments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coffee</th>
<th>Spices</th>
<th>Salt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tea</td>
<td>Spices:</td>
<td>Salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon juice</td>
<td>Cinnamon</td>
<td>Curry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baking powder</td>
<td>Curry</td>
<td>Chili</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dried yeast</td>
<td>Dried mustard</td>
<td>Assorted herbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornstarch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soya sauce</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicken base</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beef base</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example of how to use this table: 10 day trip with two men, one woman

To calculate flour needs, add (180*2) + (140*1) = 500 mult X 10 days = 5000 grams or 5kg (or 5*2.2=11.1 lbs) of flour

Notes:

The quantities suggested are sufficient for trips where no other food is available. The quantities can be reduced by the amount to be gathered in the wilds. However, the amount of food which it is possible to gather in the wilds is always overestimated. This can cut a trip short, so do not guess at your realistic food gathering capacity.

Do not mix fruits together before packaging. Instead, place in tall narrow bags in layers for variety as the trip progresses, starting with smaller items on bottom. Example, layer raisins, dates, apricots, pears, apples. That way you start the trip eating apples, then apples & pears, then pears, then pears & apricots, then apricots, then apricots & dates, then dates, then dates & raisins, to finish the trip eating raisins only. The same formula applies to juice powders, whole-wheat/white flour,
nuts, herbs, and oatmeal/other grains.

Long and wide egg noodles will do for noodle dishes and will double for spaghetti or lasagna, and when broken into small pieces, for macaroni or soup noodles.

Fresh onions will last for months if left unwrapped in a mesh bag. Chefs will tell you that browned onion is the most important basic flavor in cooking, and dried onion just doesn't work to give that homemade taste.

Fresh eggs will keep for months if left in the shell, even in summer.

Milk powder is very important for nutrition. You don't have to drink it. Add it to breads, bannock, cheese dishes, cakes etc.

Fresh cheese will keep for a long time if wrapped in cloth saturated with baking soda. Waxed cheese and old cheese also last a long time. Moldy cheese is still good if you cut off the mold.

Dried salami and pepperoni last a long time, as do some old fashioned cured hams and bacon. They will last even longer if wrapped in cloth saturated with vinegar. Pemmican and beef jerky are great.

Salted meat is either salt pork which makes great dishes when cut into small pieces and fried with onions as the start to various meals, or salted fish, which are added to rice or noodles.

Canned meat should be in oil, such as tuna fish, for maximum calories per weight.

Fat can be used for deep frying while there is a lot, for making donuts, fish batter, fruit fritters etc., as long as it is strained after each use. When there isn't enough left for deep frying, use for frying or add to cakes, breads, bannocks, oatmeal etc.

The proportions of the different items are the suggestions of the author and will work out if a typical outdoor menu is followed. Midway through the trip and again near the end, an evaluation of proportions consumed vs proportions at-the-start will permit the cook to modify his menu accordingly. To a certain extent, the user may wish to modify item proportions within one category or even within multiple categories by adding and subtracting identical amounts.

The advantages of this system as opposed to pre-packaging meal by meal are twofold:

1. You can pack food for the entire trip in a couple of hours and leave.
2. You have complete cooking liberty: "What do you feel like having tonight?"

Of course, you have to know how to cook when you use this system. But when you do, it feels so much more like living out there rather than bringing city food with you.

Happy wandering!

--

The above material is copyrighted. You can use it freely for your personal use. The reference source must be included when the text is cited or used for other purposes. Thank you.

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau
Professor of outdoor pursuits
University of Quèbec
Chicoutimi, (QC)
G7H 2B1

From - Mon Jan 27 08:21:40 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id IAA03801; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 08:15:17 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id IAA12981; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 08:14:13 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 08:12:14 EST
Received: from brown.videotron.net (brown.videotron.net [205.151.222.70]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id IAA12972 for ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 08:13:58 -0500 (EST)
Received: from 207.96.219.46 (ppp046.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.46]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.3/8.8.2) with SMTP id IAA01937 for ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 08:18:09 -0500 (EST)

X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32EBF33A.57C1@videotron.ca>
Date: Mon, 27 Jan 1997 00:13:46 +0000
X-UIDL: 854371172.002
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Going Semi-Primitive
References: <2B78CFD7.5595@saglac.ca>
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from 8bit to quoted-printable by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca id IAA12973
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id IAA03801
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
IAA12973
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

John Wall wrote:
>
> You should buy flour, rice, salt, baking powder and some type of lard.
>
> Andre, I was surprised you didn't include beans in there. Aren't beans necessary to
> mix with the rice to get all your proteins? Or do you figure you'll get enough meat
You are right, John, you would have to include some kind of protein and also other nutrients to live forever on this diet. Otherwise you would get scurvy from lack of vitamin C and other diseases.

You would, however, have no problems with this diet for a period of at least 2 months if you were healthy to start off with, even if you had no supplements whatsoever. Of course, these 4 items would have to be supplemented with plants and meat obtained on the trail for long term survival.

I assumed that those experienced enough to be able to live out there with $100 a month would be able to trap etc.

Please see my post on 25 basic staples for a complete balanced diet for long term less-than-primitive walkabouts.

Cheers,

AndrÈ
From: Phil Goetz
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, goetz@CS.BUFFALO.EDU
Message-ID: <199701080127.UAA14124@hydra.cs.Buffalo.EDU>
Subject: Re: Grapevines (age)
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, 102151.2157@COMPUSERVE.COM
Date: Tue, 7 Jan 1997 20:27:43 -0500 (EST)

I was in Zion NY with Bruce Kershner coring trees, and we cored a large
(6" diameter) grapevine. Bruce counted 120 rings. I think that's unusual,
but my point is that they don't spring up overnight.

Calling the stuff that flows out "water" is a rather liberal use of the term.

Phil Goetz@cs.buffalo.edu
RE:
> Other methods of gathering water in moderate climate areas that work
> better than a solar still: Cut a grapevine high then low about six foot
> in length. Water will pour into your mouth. You can acquire about 1/2
> pint from this length if you cut it off again when it gels over. You cut
> it high first, otherwise the plants defense mechanism, capillary action,
> draws it back up before you can drain it.

This one is easy to do, but I hope no one will do this -- ever! Reason
being the damage done to the forest ecosystem. Those grapevines are the
7th layer in a 7-layer forest; providing food for birds in the upper
canopy. Cutting one at its base for a drink of water is almost like
cutting a 100 foot tree to make a toothpick. But good to know
nevertheless.

Gene Monaco and East Tennessee Permaculture
PO Box 11851, Knoxville, TN  37939
(423) 457-4354
EFMonaco@compuserve.com

From - Tue Jan  7 05:26:06 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (root@poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by
chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA02104; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 22:07:46 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA05891; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 22:04:33 -
0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Mon, 06 Jan 1997 22:09:13 EST
Received: from mail.PERIGEE.NET (mail.perigee.net [206.229.254.8]) by
poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.7.6/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA05884 for
; Mon, 6 Jan 1997 22:04:21
-0500 (EST)
Received: from benjamin ([206.229.254.93]) by mail.PERIGEE.NET (Netscape Mail
Eugene F. Monaco wrote:

> RE:
> > Other methods of gathering water in moderate climate areas that work
> > better than a solar still: Cut a grapevine high then low about six foot
> > This one is easy to do, but I hope no one will do this -- ever! Reason
> > being the damage done to the forest ecosystem. Those grapevines are the
> > 7th layer in a 7-layer forest; providing food for birds in the upper
> > canopy. Cutting one at its base for a drink of water is almost like
> > cutting a 100 foot tree to make a toothpick. But good to know
> > nevertheless.
> > ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
> > Gene Monaco and East Tennessee Permaculture
> > ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

To me, it depends on how abundant they are. There is no shortage of grapevines where I live in North Carolina. I use them for lots of things. I am careful not to gather things though that I don't see a lot of in an area. And, of course, in a genuine survival situation, I suppose it would not matter. You can die without water in less than a week.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan  7 05:26:00 1997
Much like the thread on the use of explosives for fishing, the purpose of this list is the spread of knowledge. Obviously there would be no need for this action if there were any other source of water. On the other hand, in a true survival situation, I wouldn't hesitate to use any knowledge I had to survive. There are some basic rules for foraging one of them is never wipe out every last plant in one area. If there is only one plant, leave it. If there is a field of it, don't take all of what you need from just one area. Take a little from several different parts of the field. Last of all take only what you need. I know that I am just restating what others already know, but I don't want this list to fall to political correctness rather than the spread of knowledge, much of it forgotten otherwise. I believe that someone else mentioned husbandry. For that reason your post is valuable.

Jim Burdine
LV, Nv
jburdine@pipeline.com
Well, if you have a good knife, you can make traps for food & clothes; a
bow; build a survival hut etc.  The plastic will make sure you have
water.  It is possible to do this and make it as long as one thinks
clearly and knows the right skills and does not panic.

> See?

Sherri

If you're planning on living off the water from a solar still,
I suggest you try it at home first.  In my experience you need about
4 stills per person, and you need a shovel and a waterproof container
to use it.

Phil Goetz
Phil Goetz wrote:

> > Sherri
> >
> > If you're planning on living off the water from a solar still, I suggest you try it at home first. In my experience you need about 4 stills per person, and you need a shovel and a waterproof container to use it.
> >
> > Phil Goetz

I'd just like to add my comments on solar stills. They are highly over rated. The areas that they work best in are areas where water can be acquired much easier by other methods. Plus they require so many implements to construct. The better use of solar stills is purification of urine for drinking. Normally, you do not drink urine, it will dehydrate you. It can be purified, though, by placing a container of it in the pit beside the collecting container. The sun's rays will evaporate it and condensate it in a purer form into the collecting container. This may have to be done a couple of times and of course, only as a last resort. I have not tried this but I know someone who has. I just haven't been in a situation where I was that desperate yet and can't bring myself to experiment with it. You understand.

Other methods of gathering water in moderate climate areas that work better than a solar still: Cut a grapevine high then low about six foot in length. Water will pour into your mouth. You can acquire about 1/2...
pint from this length if you cut it off again when it gels over. You cut it high first, otherwise the plants defense mechanism, capillary action, draws it back up before you can drain it.

Succulent plants chewed and spit out. Dew collected on a cloth in the early morning. Ground water dug to a water table close to the surface and strained through a cloth. Of course, there are many other methods and different climates require specthere own special collecting methods.

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net

Information On TRIBE:
Snail Mail:
TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA
E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net
TRIBE Homepage:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

From - Tue Jan 21 02:47:33 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id EAA25095; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 04:49:05 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id EAA14255; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 04:48:42 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 04:45:43 EST
Received: from ns.waonline.com (ns.waonline.com [208.192.52.129]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id EAA14246 for
; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 04:47:23
-0500 (EST)
Received: from rees (Cust39.Max19.Seattle.WA.MS.UU.NET [153.34.44.39]) by ns.waonline.com (8.7.3/8.7.3) with SMTP id BAA08851 for
; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 01:49:18
-0800 (PST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32E46ECE.5B4B@waonline.com>
Date: Mon, 20 Jan 1997 23:22:54 -0800
X-UIDL: 853875768.012
From: Rees
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, reesrees@WAONLINE.COM
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02E-KIT (Win95; U)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Clean water
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

I am a recovering Mr. Gadget hiker. When I hike I still use my water filter pump. I've heard mention of pills and potions and the like for purifying water. My question:
How do you tell if a stream is 'clean'? (Short of seeing dead fish floating by.) When you need water, do you judge a water source with a set of natural indicators (like types of plants growing there)? I guess it helps to talk to others who are familiar with the area. I just have this fear of Giardia, or such, leaving me blind. (Or worse. Dum-dum-de-dum...) I know it is a basic question, and maybe silly, but I just can't figure it out.

Love & Health,
Rees

---

Rees wrote:
I've heard mention of pills and potions and the like for purifying water. My question: How do you tell if a stream is 'clean'? (Short of seeing dead fish floating by.) When you need water, do you judge a water source with a set of natural indicators (like types of...
> plants growing there)? I guess it helps to talk to others who are familiar with the

You can't tell. Also, a recent article in Backpacker indicated that ALL water sources they tested in the wilds had Giardia or other debilitating organisms.

--

RACCOON

^.....^

(==o==o==)

:::( o ):::

:::( o ):::

Mike Andreasen
mailto:mikea@maf.mobile.al.us

On beautiful Mobile Bay on the Alabama Gulf Coast

From - Wed Jan 22 00:33:39 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTM id XAA03863; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:10:24 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id XAA25357; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:08:13 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:06:21 EST
Received: from arthur.computer-services.com (arthur.computer-services.com [206.101.249.129]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTM id XAA25351 for ; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 23:08:01 -0500 (EST)
Received: from computer.computer-services.com (pml_12.computer-services.com [207.49.196.204]) by arthur.computer-services.com (8.7.4/8.7.1) with SMTP id WAA08500; Tue, 21 Jan 1997 22:08:37 -0600
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Tue, 21 Jan 1997 22:08:37 -0600
Message-ID: <19970122220408.WAA08500@arthur.computer-services.com>
X-Sender: boldrjak@computer-services.com
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Light Version 1.5.2
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, reesrees@WAONLINE.COM
From: Stephen Passwater
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
boldrjak@COMPUTER-SERVICES.COM
Subject: Re: Clean water
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

At 11:22 PM 01/20/97 -0800, you wrote:
> I am a recovering Mr. Gadget hiker. When I hike I still use my water filter pump. I've
> heard mention of pills and potions and the like for purifying water. My question: How

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/water1.htm (9 of 52) [10/22/2003 7:00:23 PM]
>do you tell if a stream is 'clean'? (Short of seeing dead fish floating by.) When you
>need water, do you judge a water source with a set of natural indicators (like types of
>plants growing there)? I guess it helps to talk to others who are familiar with the
>area. I just have this fear of Giardia, or such, leaving me blind. (Or worse.
>Dum-dum-de-dum...) I know it is a basic question, and maybe silly, but I just can't
>figure it out.
>
>Love & Health,
>Rees
>
>One thing that can be a clue is that water cress (the little green plants in water that taste like a mild radish) only grows in pure water. I was taught this as a kid. Can anyone tell me if this is true or not. It always seemed to work for me. This was in the Ozarks where water cress is plentyful. Or at least used to be. Wish I was there again.

boldrjak@computer-services.com

Heaven help us when God's tears of sorrow are dried by the heat of his anger.
Rees wrote:
> My question: How
do you tell if a stream is 'clean'? (Short of seeing dead fish floating
> by.) When you
> need water, do you judge a water source with a set of natural indicators
> (like types of
> plants growing there)? I guess it helps to talk to others who are
> familiar with the
> area. I just have this fear of Giardia, or such, leaving me blind.

If you can find a mountain spring coming out of the earth, and there is
not a lot of lush growth around it (which might attract rodents), it MIGHT
be safe. Best bet is to consider all sources unsafe. And Giardia is not the
only boogyman. I once got Campylobacter (spelling?) from water I had
treated but not long enough. I thought I was going to die for about 5 days
and after that I was afraid I wouldn't. Christopher Nyerges
(http://home.earthlink.net/~nyerges/) has a great booklet entitled Testing
Your Outdoor Survival Skills. In there is a thorough analyses of all types
of water treatment schemes. The best is bet is to fill a one-ounce clear
glass, wide mouth jar with about 8 grams of USP-grade resublimed iodine
crystals (available at your local pharmacy). Make sure the lid is hard
plastic (bakelite). When you need to treat water, fill your one ounce bottle
with some of the water and shake vigorously for about a minute (creating a
saturated solution) and then pour this water (not the crystals) into the
water supply to be treated. If you keep your iodine bottle at body
temperature, 10 milliliters of the saturated iodine solution will treat
one liter (1.06 quarts) of water. Whatever you do, don't try to use a
plastic bottle to store the crystals. I did that and found that the iodine
diffused through the plastic and corroded everything in the drawyer I had
it in, including a good knife. Ron Hood also demonstrates this procedure in
his video #3 on survival kits.

Rob Chatburn
Hi all,

Regarding the query about clean water I have snipped another couple pages from my Field Guide to Primitive Living Skills... which is copyrighted material, but you may print it off for personal use.

...I break my gaze away from the birch tree, and tune in for a moment to the sounds of the water falls. This place always makes me thirsty. It is not so much that I need water, but that I need to drink in the beauty of this place. I reach for the drinking cup on my belt.

The cup is copper, including a copper handle. On the opposite side from the handle is a mountain lion cast in silver with a gold head. I panned the gold in junior high and made the cup in a high-school jewelry class. I loosen my belt, remove the cup, and dip it into the stream to bring up the cold, clear water.

I drink, but then remember an incident from a mile or so upstream from here. I was camping with some friends and they taught me something very interesting about water and people.

On that occasion I dipped my cup into the stream as now, and I savored the cool creek water. My reverie was broken though as one of the guys noticed me drinking the water and hollered, "You actually drink that stuff?!" He was horrified at the thought.

"It is some of the best water I've ever had." I answered, surprised that he was surprised. I have gotten by on some pretty murky stuff in the past; I have literally drank from a cow track in the mud where everything was coated with a heavy white crust of alkaline. No, this mountain water was just plain good.

About a half hour later it was my turn for shock. This same individual opened up his fly and urinated two feet from the edge of the stream and twenty feet upstream from where I had previously been drinking.

Since that time I have noticed that people who do not drink the water are more likely to not respect the water. I have also noticed that people who are fearful of the water are sometimes psychologically less comfortable in the wilderness as a whole. For these reasons, and because the water tastes so good, I generally encourage people to leave their filters and tablets at home and savor the water. But ultimately that is a decision you have to make for yourself.
Giardia

When I say I encourage people to drink the water I have to admit that I am a little biased. Roughly 30% of people have no symptoms from giardia, and after ten years or so of drinking assorted muck I would say that I am included in that 30%. Someone who has been affected by giardia will likely give you different advice.

The one thing that I can say for certain about the effects of giardia is that those who have had it talk about it years afterward, long after medication has killed the critters. I personally will never forget the immortal words a fellow student on a 26 day trip in 1984. We were all getting together and sharing our individual stories after three days of solo. Several people "got hit" with giardia, and one man told us, "I could shoot farther out the back than I could the front."

Giardia itself is a one-celled protozoan which attaches itself to the lining of the small intestine, and multiplies rapidly in the nutrient rich environment. The organism can pass through the digestive tract as a cyst with a protective, thick wall. It may remain viable in cold water for more than two months, and an infected host is capable of expelling millions of cysts each day.

Symptoms include severe diarrhea, stomach cramps, and sulfurous belching. Symptoms typically occur one to four weeks after ingestion. Antacid and diarrhea medications can both mask the diagnosis and hinder treatment. The commonly prescribed drugs are quinacine hydrocloride and metronidazole. Treatment takes ten days or more. According to a Montana Department of Health and Environmental Sciences pamphlet on giardia, "Fatalities directly attributed to giardiasis are rare." How comforting.

The problem of giardia has dramatically increased in the past thirty years or so. It is uncertain if the giardia is a newcomer to the back country or if people are simply more educated about the disease now than before.

It is also possible that by drinking sterilized city water people's immune systems have weakened so that they are more susceptible now to the effects of giardia, as well as other water borne bacteria.

For example, I think that many people in our community of Pony are quite adapted to drinking unsterilized water. Many of the springs and wells of the community are little more than glorified creek water, routed through a few feet of dirt. In some houses it is not uncommon to find a tiny creatures swimming about in a fresh glass of water. My great aunt once had her water tested, and she was told that it was contaminated with high levels of cloriform bacteria. She was told she should treat the water and she replied, "Well, we've been fine for the last twenty years; I don't see why we need to start treating it now." My neighbors lived without a well for twelve years. They and their two children drank almost nothing but creek water during that time and were fine. From my observations I suspect that susceptibility to water borne bacteria has a lot to do with how strong your immune system is. In any case, giardia is in our streams and lakes to stay, and it is your choice whether or not to treat your water.

If you choose to treat your water there are many ways to do so, including filtering, tablets, or boiling. Filters are typically either bulky, slow, or expensive. Boiling is a hassle and gives the water a burnt flavor. Tablets give the water a nauseous taste and can be harmful if used over an extended time period. Renee and I only used tablets once. We brought some iodine tablets on our walk across Montana. The one time we used them was to flavor the water at Two Dot, Montana because the alkaline
town water tasted worse than the iodine tablets.

The one water purification treatment I do recommend is a product called "Aerobic 07". The product is a concentration of stabilized oxygen in water. It has approximately 1,000 times the normal oxygen content of water. A few drops in your water will kill all anaerobic bacteria, which cannot live in an oxygen environment. The product is made by a company called "Good for you Canada". It should be good for you too, and it is available in many camping supply stores.

I hope this helps answer your questions...

If you would like more info on my books, just e-mail your postal address directly to me (not the group).

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Box 691
Pony, MT 59747-0691
406-685-3222
tomeelpel@3rivers.net
Tom, thanks for your story about giardia. I think I'm lucky enough to be in that 30% who don't get it as well, since I've been drinking with impunity for so long. A couple of questions, though, which you might know the answers to: can the immunity "wear off" as it is known to do with poison oak? And, I once collected a bottle full of clear mountain water, only to wake up the next day with a bottle full of skeeters doing the backstroke. I wonder if giardia cysts de-encyst and become visible to the naked eye, or is it always microscopic??

--John

From - Wed Jan 22 03:48:00 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA08493; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:54:04 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA01353; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:51:16 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:49:20 EST
Received: from emout13.mail.aol.com (emout13.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.39]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id MAA01344 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:51:01 -0500 (EST)
Received: (from root@localhost) by emout13.mail.aol.com (8.7.6/8.7.3/AOL-2.0.0) id MAA24609 for primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:55:11 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-UIDL: 853956389.000
From: Ggoltz@AOL.COM
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Ggoltz@AOL.COM
Date: Wed, 22 Jan 1997 12:55:11 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <970122124849_102583247@emout13.mail.aol.com>
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: Re: Clean water
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

In a message dated 97-01-21 23:19:31 EST, you write:

> One thing that can be a clue is that water cress (the little green plants in water that taste like a mild radish) only grows in pure water.

I wouldn't trust this. It grows in cold water (often spring fed), but that is not necessarily potable. I have seen it growing thickly in a stream southwest of Minneapolis which flowed through some highly developed suburbs and past industrial plants. I would not even think of drinking that water!
Giardia is a bacteria and would not be visible as individual organisms to the naked eye

Matt Schoeffler
Mike Andreasen wrote:
>
> Rees wrote:
> > I've
> > heard mention of pills and potions and the like for purifying water. My
> question: How
> > do you tell if a stream is 'clean'? (Short of seeing dead fish floating by.)
> When you
> > need water, do you judge a water source with a set of natural indicators (like
> types of
> > plants growing there)? I guess it helps to talk to others who are familiar with
> the
> >
> > You can't tell. Also, a recent article in Backpacker indicated that ALL
> water sources they tested in the wilds had Giardia or other debilitating
> organisims.

Mike is right! You absolutely cannot tell just by looking. Here in
northern Québec, most water is Ok to drink, as long as it's not
stagnant. But I sure got sick once last summer.

Basically, if you HAVE to drink water without purifying, big lakes are
better than small, fast flowing streams better than slow, and don't
drink water where there are human beings living upstream. Usually it is
much safer to wait, even if you're a little thirsty, for rainfall, which
will usually be safe to drink (if pollution isn't too severe).

To purify, many chemicals will work, usually from your first aid kit.
Iodine, peroxide, and other wound cleansers work, about 1-2 drops per
quart. Chlorine bleach also works, as does soap of any kind in small
quantities. Too much, you get sick from the chemical, too little, from
the water.
The very best bet, and by far the safest, is boiling. The rule seems to be 5 minutes + 1 minute per 1000 ft elevation above sea level. However, just bringing to a rolling boil and waiting for several minutes will kill off just about any micro-organisms.

In survival situations, rock boiling in wooden bowls or other methods previously described of boiling are very important. A sardine can in a pocket is a most valuable addition to survival pocket gear because of the clean water obtainable by boiling.

Hope this helps,

AndrÈ

--
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr AndrÈ-FranÁois Bourbeau mailto:bourbeau@videotron.ca
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits, University of QuÈbec
555 University Blvd, Chicoutimi, (QuÈbec), Canada G7H2B1

From - Wed Jan 22 04:15:40 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id PAA09881; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 15:43:38 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id PAA04114; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 15:36:37 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 15:34:41 EST
Received: from booz.bah.com (booz.bah.com [156.80.3.3]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id PAA04108 for;
       Wed, 22 Jan 1997 15:36:23 -0500 (EST)
Received: from smtpmac.bah.com (smtpmac.bah.com [156.80.9.67]) by booz.bah.com (8.8.5/8.7.5) with SMTP id PAA20001 for
       ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 15:40:14 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID:
Date: 22 Jan 1997 15:44:30 U
X-UIDL: 853966607.000
X-Mailer: Mail*Link SMTP for Quarterdeck Mail; Version 4.0.0
Content-Type: text
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

I think the reason the "primitives" were Imune(SP?) to parasites was that the fact that their bodies were used to it or developed a tolerance to it. I to am tolerant to a certain extent since I drink from rivers wehn I'm
about. But I have contracted some water born sickness a few times. Mostly because I failed to realize a beaver set up came further upstream.

The one thing I've noticed about the human body is how it adapts. A good case in point is poison ivy and oak. You've may of gotten it like crazy as a kid, but as an adult you're body is very tolerant. Or course I may be wrong.

Joe Schilling.

From: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca on Wed, Jan 22, 1997 3:25 PM
Subject: Re: water cress
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca

Giardia is everywhere, and even mountain springs that seem to be bubbling up from the living rock are not necessarily safe.

On the other hand, primitive peoples were commonly afflicted with parasites, lice and other delights of the great outdoors. How did they handle it? Should one slip up and contract a waterborne disease, how to survive?
To purify, many chemicals will work, usually from your first aid kit.  Iodine, peroxide, and other wound cleansers work, about 1-2 drops per quart.  Chlorine bleach also works, as does soap of any kind in small SILVER is one key to keeping water potable.  Copper will keep algae from forming, as well.

I have a water jug I keep at my shop(you'd think that in the Big City, a fellow would have running water, ect...but I did not want to replumb the bldg. so I have a plastic, 2liter bottle, filled with water).

I drink directly from bottle, and discovered that after a few days, water developed a bad taste, ect.  I dropped a dime in, and have had the water stay good for 2wks, and longer. Algae will grow, only where the water is Not.

So, my tip is to keep a silver coin in your canteen, ect.

b-man, rich

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere!
*"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.

From - Thu Jan 23 11:34:28 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id WAA13574; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:20:44 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA08569; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:19:34 -0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:15:28 EST
Received: from cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu (cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.216]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id WAA08534 for ; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:17:06 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [129.22.220.4] (dialin004.REMOTE.CWRU.Edu [129.22.220.4]) by cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu with ESMTP (8.7.6+ cwru/CWRU-3.0) id WAA16067; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:21:13 -0500 (EST) (from rlc6@po.cwru.edu for )

X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: rlc6@pop.cwru.edu
Message-ID:
In-Reply-To: <32E58237.1481@saglac.qc.ca>
References: <32E46ECE.5B4B@waonline.com> <32E5ACE9.2808@maf.mobile.al.us>
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: Rob Chatburn
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU
Subject: Re: Clean water
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 8bit
X-MIME-Autoconverted: from quoted-printable to 8bit by chic1.saglac.qc.ca id WAA13574
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="iso-8859-1"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

André wrote:

> The very best bet, and by far the safest, is boiling. The rule seems to be
> 5 minutes + 1 minute per 1000 ft elevation above sea level. However,
> just bringing to a rolling boil and waiting for several minutes will
> kill off just about any micro-organisms.

In the health care industry, a common process for disinfecting equipment is pasteurization (basically a hot water soak). I have a technical bulletin from a company that sells equipment for this purpose. It contains a graph of temperature and time-to-kill for several organisms. You might be able to get a copy by contacting the company

Olympic Medical
5900 First Ave So
Seattle, WA 98108
800-426-0353
ask for Information Bulletin TDT-FL1A(C03)

Warning: I do not know if it is still in print or even if the company still exists.

A few data points on the graph:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organism</th>
<th>Water Bath Temperature</th>
<th>Time to Kill</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eserichia coli</td>
<td>150F, 65C</td>
<td>&lt; 5min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmonella typhi</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brucella species</td>
<td>140F, 60C</td>
<td>10 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diplococcus pneumoniae</td>
<td>130F, 54C</td>
<td>10 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</td>
<td>140F, 60C</td>
<td>20 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staphylococcus aureus</td>
<td>150F, 65C</td>
<td>30 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fungi, yeasts, molds vegatative cells</td>
<td>145F, 63C</td>
<td>30 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human virus (most species except hepatitis)</td>
<td>140F, 60C</td>
<td>30 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIDS virus</td>
<td>135F, 55C</td>
<td>30 min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rob Chatburn
*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
>On the other hand, primitive peoples were commonly afflicted with parasites, lice and other delights of the great outdoors. How did they handle it? Should one slip up and contract a waterborne disease, how to survive?

According to Jon Young, Giardia was imported with the Europeans and their cattle. Perhaps Native Americans did not have water problems beyond what pollutants they could see.

Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

From - Thu Jan 23 11:34:45 1997

Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA14973; Thu, 23 Jan 1997 02:02:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id WAA08544; Wed, 22 Jan 1997 22:17:28 -0500 (EST)
>According to Jon Young, Giardia was imported with the Europeans and their cattle. Perhaps Native Americans did not have water problems beyond what pollutants they could see.

The main vector for Giardia, right now in the US is beaver according to the Center for Disease Control in Atlanta, Georgia. Basiclly there is no clean water. Can you tell for sure that a beaver didn't poop upstream? Even if it looks like a spring, did it insurge (dissappear/go underground) and then resurge (reappear) where you are?

BTW, If you know of any streams like this I'd really like to know about them. Private email may be best for this. I'm a caver.

Center for Disease Control in Atlanta
http://www.cdc.gov/
Fascinating site!

Merv
---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------
| Merv Martin * * * | eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * * * |
| www.midtown.net/~merv * * | www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |
------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---
I drink directly from bottle, and discovered that after a few days, water
developed a bad taste, etc.
I dropped a dime in, and have had the water stay good for 2wks, and
longer. Algae will grow, only where the water is Not.

So, my tip is to keep a silver coin in your canteen, etc.

Well, the dime would have to be pretty old in order to be made of silver...
For the last 30 years or so dimes have been made by sandwiching a middle
layer of copper between two outer layers of copper-nickel alloy.

John Wiedenheft
Norwich CT

wiedenheftj@asme.WEB.AOL.COM
> Tom, thanks for your story about giardia. I think I'm lucky enough to be
> in that 30% who don't get it as well, since I've been drinking with
> impunity for so long. A couple of questions, though, which you might know
> the answers to: can the immunity "wear off" as it is known to do with
> poison oak? And, I once collected a bottle full of clear mountain water,
> only to wake up the next day with a bottle full of skeeters doing the
> backstroke. I wonder if giardia cysts de-encyst and become visible to the
> naked eye, or is it always microscopic??
> 
> --John

John,

I have heard that there are different strains of giardia all over
the world (Montazuma's revenge, Trotskies, etc.), and people that are
adapted to a local variety will react to a foreign strain when they travel.
Otherwise I do not know if resistance to giardia will wax and wane with
the other ups and downs in a person's immune system. What would
antibiotics do to a person's immunity?

As for poison oak, the potency of the plant varies throughout the
season, as does a person's reaction to it. Peter Bigfoot (Reevis Mountain
School, Roosevelt, Arizona) claims to build an immunity to poison ivy (Rhus
radicans--I think we're talking about the same plant here) by EATING the
green leaves in the spring before they are too potent. This is
 corroborated by author Hyatt Verrill in Wonder Plants and Plant Wonders
(1939). Extreme caution is advised here, because a reaction to the plant
could cause your throat to swell shut...oops?

As already noted in another post, giardia is always microscopic.

Always Peace,

Thomas J. Elpel
Hollowtop Outdoor Primitive School
Pony, Montana
>> I drink directly from bottle, and discovered that after a few days, water
>> developed a bad taste, ect.
>> I dropped a dime in, and have had the water stay good for 2wks, and
>> longer. Algae will grow, only where the water is Not.
>>
>> So, my tip is to keep a silver coin in your canteen, ect.
>
>Well, the dime would have to be pretty old in order to be made of silver...
>For the last 30 years or so dimes have been made by sandwiching a middle
>layer of copper between two outer layers of copper-nickel alloy.
>
>Yes, but copper in water has been shown to act as a disinfectant. At the
hospital, we used to put "copper wool" in the heated humidifiers of our
mechanical ventilators to stop bacterial growth. (Chris, do you remember
this?) In the old days humidifiers used to be prime vectors for nosocomial
(hospital acquired) pneumonia because patients would cough contaminated
secretions into the ventilator tubing and it drain down into the humidifier
that was a nice, warm, wet breeding ground. Nowadays, everything is
designed differently and there is not so much of a problem. But I do
remember reading an article on the bactericidal effects of copper back in
the '70s.

Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

From - Mon Jan 27 08:14:30 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chicl.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id CAA02367; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 02:27:33 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id CA12076; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 02:25:36 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 02:23:42 EST
Received: from epix.net (grape.epix.net [199.224.64.22]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id CA12070 for ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 02:25:26 -0500 (EST)
Received: from bobs-computer (lwby-69ppp192.epix.net [199.224.69.192]) by epix.net (8.7.6/8.7.5) with SMTP id CA05091 for ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 02:27:04 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32EC57A3.63A4@epix.net>
Date: Mon, 27 Jan 1997 02:22:11 -0500
From: Bob Barr
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rebarr@EPIX.NET
Organization: Woods Wisdom
X-Mailer: Mozilla 3.01Gold (Win95; I)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Re: Clean Water
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

I've been out of town for a couple of days so if any of this is a repeat I'm sorry (I tried to read all the posts on clean water)
I got Giardia this summer from eating uncooked cattails from a pond in New York State. I did a fair amount of research and this is what I found:

1. Giardia is not a bacteria (Tom Epel's description is right in his post). This means that what ever you use to kill bacteria WON'T work!!!! I called several manufactures of antibacteria soaps and none of them would kill Giardia, it will only wash it off. One of the companys only sold to hospitals! If one of them says it will ask them to put it in writing (which they will for bacteria) and they change their tone. According to the Pa. Dept of Health, who called me once the doctor reported my case, there are only two ways to deal with Giardia. Boiling water and a good water filter designed to filter out Giardia. Chlorine has to be in direct contact with it for over 20 minutes to kill it,
that's why they don't recommend it. Iodine will not kill it.

2. It can live with only cold water for 3 months.

3. It is carried by the fecal matter of any animal (including humans) and some birds that come in contact with the water source, not just beavers.

4. It is highly contagious, 40%-60% of children in day care schools have it! All it takes is one child to get it and the rest is easy to figure out with kids in diapers.

5. All surface water should be considered to have Giardia. The earth acts like a filter so wells generally are not a problem.

6. It only takes one drop of contaminated water to make you sick.

7. It is too small to see with the naked eye.

8. Many people can have Giardia and show NO symptoms. However these people are now carriers and could effect others.

9. It needs water to survive so any surface that has a chance to dry will be safe.

The thing that worked really well for my diarrhea was black walnut hull tincture. It was better than any of the over the counter drugs I took. I had it for a month and a half before I went to the doctor and found out what I had, so I tried many things. I really feel the tincture would cure Giardia. My mistake was I didn't take the tincture enough, the treatment with drugs takes 10 days and after one and a half months I just wanted to get better! One table spoon of the tincture stopped the diarrhea for me for a couple of days.

Hope some of this will help. I'm no doctor so please do your own research, your body may be different than mine.

Walk in Balance,
Bob Barr
Hey Ron, Bob Barr wrote

> Giardia is not a bacteria (Tom Epel's description is right in his
> post). This means that what ever you use to kill bacteria WON'T work!!!!

> According to the Pa. Dept of Health, who called me once the doctor
> reported my case, there are only two ways to deal with Giardia. Boiling
> water and a good water filter designed to filter out Giardia. Chlorine
> has to be in direct contact with it for over 20 minutes to kill it,
> that's why they don't recommend it. Iodine will not kill it.

You recommend iodine to treat water. What do you think about this? Could
the Pa. Dept. of Health be thinking of treatment with tincture of iodine
from a medicine kit (reportedly not very effective)?

Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

---

From: Rob Chatburn
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU
Subject: Re: Clean Water
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Hey Ron, Bob Barr wrote

> Giardia is not a bacteria (Tom Epel's description is right in his
> post). This means that what ever you use to kill bacteria WON'T work!!!!

> According to the Pa. Dept of Health, who called me once the doctor
> reported my case, there are only two ways to deal with Giardia. Boiling
> water and a good water filter designed to filter out Giardia. Chlorine
> has to be in direct contact with it for over 20 minutes to kill it,
> that's why they don't recommend it. Iodine will not kill it.

You recommend iodine to treat water. What do you think about this? Could
the Pa. Dept. of Health be thinking of treatment with tincture of iodine
from a medicine kit (reportedly not very effective)?

Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*

---
Howdy!

>Hey Ron, Bob Barr wrote

I was enjoying the discussion...... and tried to stay out of it. There is no way I can give this one a brief shot so I'll just copy some of the material I've collected. I can post a more complete attachment if you'd like..... here we go.

>>>Giardia is not a bacteria (Tom Epel's description is right in his post). This means that what ever you use to kill bacteria WON'T work!!!!

>>>According to the Pa. Dept of Health, who called me once the doctor reported my case, there are only two ways to deal with Giardia. Boiling water and a good water filter designed to filter out Giardia. Chlorine has to be in direct contact with it for over 20 minutes to kill it, that's why they don't recommend it. Iodine will not kill it.

>>>You recommend iodine to treat water. What do you think about this? Could the Pa. Dept. of Health be thinking of treatment with tincture of iodine from a medicine kit (reportedly not very effective)?

Enjoy..... I have more information

Back-country water treatment to prevent giardiasis.
Jerry E. Ongerth, PhD, PE, Ron L. Johnson, Steven C Macdonald, MPH, Floyd Frost, PhD, and Henry H. Stibbs, PhD


Copyright 1989 AJPH 0090-0036/89$1.50 [used without permission]

Abstract

This study was conducted to provide current information on the effectiveness of water treatment chemicals and filters for control of Giardia cysts in areas where treated water is not available. Four filters and seven chemical treatments were evaluated for both clear and turbid water at 10°C. Three contact disinfection devices were also tested for cyst inactivation. Filters were tested with 1-liter volumes of water seeded with 3x10^4 cysts of G. lamblia produced in gerbils inoculated with in vitro cultured trophozoites; the entire volume of filtrate was examined for cyst passage. Chemical treatments were evaluated at concentrations specified by the manufacturer and for contact times that might be expected of hikers (30 minutes) and campers (eight hours, i.e., overnight). Two of the four filter devices tested were 100 percent effective for Giardia cyst removal. Of the other two filters, one was 90 percent effective and the other considerably less effective. Among the seven disinfection treatments, the iodine-based chemicals were all significantly more effective than the chlorine-based chemicals. None of the chemical treatments achieved 99.9 percent cyst inactivation with only 30-minute contact. After an eight-hour contact each of the iodine but none of the chlorine preparations
achieved at least 99.9 percent cyst inactivation. None of the contact
disinfection devices provided appreciable cyst inactivation. Heating water to
at least 70C for 10 minutes was an acceptable alternative treatment.

---AND---

NASA water purification recommendations......

Some folks don't like carrying filters, and still don't mind boiling their
water. To be entirely safe, water should be boiled at least five minutes.
Giardia is killed in less than a minute at 176 F (80 C), well under the
boiling point. Bacteria and viruses last longer, but are probably killed
in less than five minutes at 190 F (88 C). Some types of virus may last
longer; nobody knows for sure. At 10,000 feet water boils at 194 F (90 C);
above this altitude boil water about an extra minute for each 1000 feet.
Note that it's safe to make pasta using untreated water.

If you have neither the time, nor the fuel, nor the inclination to boil,
iodine is equally effective. After 15 minutes (30 minutes for cold water),
a sufficient dose of iodine kills all bacteria and viruses. Some protozoa
take longer to kill; studies have shown giardia lasting for several hours.
Shaking your water bottle may help, but it's always best to wait longer.

One readily-available choice is Potable-Aqua tablets. Dissolve one tablet
per liter of water (two tablets for cloudy water) and wait. The problem
with iodine tablets is that they degrade upon contact with moisture, so
keep that bottle dry, and discard it upon returning home. Another choice
is a bottle of PolarPure (elemental iodine). Add the number of capfulls
recommended by the thermometer on the bottle. For travel in wet or humid
areas, PolarPure is a better choice than Potable-Aqua.

Avoid halazone and Clorox, because chlorine is volatile, slow to disinfect,
and works differently against protozoa and viruses at various pH levels.
It also reacts with organic compounds to form carcinogenic chloramines.
Iodine is not highly toxic, and in fact is an essential ingredient of
human nutrition. However, continuous ingestion of large doses may cause
health problems, particularly for people with thyroid problems.

The accepted concentration for iodine disinfection is 8 milligrams per
liter, but this is mostly to get rid of protozoan parasites. A good way
to reduce overall iodine consumption and minimize that iodine flavor is
to filter first, then use a low concentration of iodine to get rid of
bacteria and viruses. For this, a concentration of .5 mg/L is deemed
adequate, so one capful of PolarPure or one Potable-Aqua tablet should
disinfect around 16 liters of lightly filtered water. Various inexpensive
ceramic filters with 1 micron pores are fine for removing protozoa.

----AND----

The water quality association says;

A common waterborne protozoan that forms cysts and is resistant to
disinfectants such as chlorine and ultraviolet light. Giardia can be removed
by filters that capture all particles of four microns and greater in size.

Does that help? I have more if you'd like. Iodine crystals, in a 1 oz
bottle, as shown in my video number 3 and mentioned previously, remain
effective portable treatments. Boiling and filtration is best.
Seeya!

Ron Hood

"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"
Dr. Ron Hood

http://www.survival.com/~diogenes

"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Tue Jan 28 10:28:18 1997
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA11602; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 00:11:28 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA21670; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 00:09:55 - 0500 (EST)
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 00:08:00 EST
Received: from india.midtown.net (india.midtown.net [205.162.100.2]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTF id AAA21664 for ; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 00:09:29
-0500 (EST)
Received: from merv.midtown.net ([205.162.100.197]) by india.midtown.net with SMTP (IPAD 1.51) id 6220700 ; Mon, 27 Jan 1997 21:14:42 -0800
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
X-Sender: merv@midtown.net
X-Mailer: Windows Eudora Version 1.4.4
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rebarr@EPIX.NET
From: merv@MIDTOWN.NET (merv martin)
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, merv@MIDTOWN.NET
Subject: Re: Clean Water
Date: Mon, 27 Jan 1997 21:14:42 -0800
Message-ID: <199701280214.6220700@india.midtown.net>
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

Great Post!!!!!!!

> I got Giardia this summer from eating uncooked cattails from a pond in
> New York State. I did a fair amount of research and this is what I
> found:
> ------snip------
> 3. It is carried by the fecal matter of any animal (including humans)
> and some birds that come in contact with the water source, not just
> beavers.

I think I'm the one that posted the info about beaver. My info says only
that the beaver is the main vector. I may have not been clear enough about
this. You're info is definitely correct. It can exist in _any_ fecal matter.
I don't know that I could even say some birds. I don't know why any bird would be affected differently than another. I could use any info on this that anyone else has.

I've also not been able to get a definite yes or no about fish. It may be right there, but I've not seen it. Sure seems that they'd be a likely candidate with the temp range that Giardia can survive in.

I don't know what it needs for nourishment.

Merv

p.s. I think we need to check one of Ron's brown streamers too.

---Time flies like an arrow ------------------------------------

| Merv Martin * * |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * | * |
| www.midtown.net/~merv * | * |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) |

------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Wed Jan 29 15:23:02 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.3/8.8.2) with ESMTP id UAA25512 for ; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 20:56:15 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA03428; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 19:53:13 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id TAA03418 for ; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 19:52:56 -0500 (EST)
Received: from [129.22.220.40] (dialin040.REMOTE.CWRU.edu [129.22.220.40]) by cornelius.INS.CWRU.Edu with ESMTP (8.7.6+cwru/CWRU-3.0) id TAA25617; Tue, 28 Jan 1997 19:57:05 -0500 (EST) (from rlc6@po.cwru.edu for )
X-Sender: rlc6@pop.cwru.edu
Message-ID:
In-Reply-To: <2.2.32.19970128044011.0076ae8c@ pop3.av.qnet.com>
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Date: Tue, 28 Jan 1997 07:59:33 -0500
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: Rob Chatburn
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU
Ron,

Your post on water purification procedures was helpful because it was based on some experimental data. My question is, how do you arrive at the dose of saturated iodine solution to purify a given quantity of water. Are there data relating quantity, time, volume, and temperature or are your (and Nyerges') recommendations guestimates?

Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
for a LOT of folks in Colo.

Don

At 08:28 AM 1/27/97 -0500, you wrote:
> Hey Ron, Bob Barr wrote
>
>> Giardia is not a bacteria (Tom Epel's description is right in his
>> post). This means that what ever you use to kill bacteria WON'T work!!!!
>
>> According to the Pa. Dept of Health, who called me once the doctor
>> reported my case, there are only two ways to deal with Giardia. Boiling
>> water and a good water filter designed to filter out Giardia. Chlorine
>> has to be in direct contact with it for over 20 minutes to kill it,
>> thats why they don't recommend it. Iodine will not kill it.
>
>
> You recommend iodine to treat water. What do you think about this? Could
> the Pa. Dept. of Health be thinking of treatment with tincture of iodine
> from a medicine kit (reportedly not very effective)?
>
>
> Rob Chatburn
> *Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
Rob,

> Your post on water purification procedures was helpful because it was based > on some experimental data. My question is, how do you arrive at the dose of > saturated iodine solution to purify a given quantity of water. Are there > data relating quantity, time, volume, and temperature or are your (and > Nyerges') recommendations guestimates?

I can't speak for Chris. He may have other information than that from which I worked. First, experiential data for what it's worth. To date I've led @ 6,000 persons into the mountains on multi day excursions. To date we have had 4 cases of symptomatic Giardiasis with lab verification. Most of these cases were mild. None of these people used iodine. I emphasize the use of purification/filtration. Crystalline Iodine is the preferred method for water purification because of its dependability, cost, portability and ease of use.

We used iodine crystal purifiers provided by the military during my time in the middle east, Vietnam, and Central America. I used the system exclusively in my own travels to most of South America, Asia, India, Pakistan and Northern Africa. I've been ill on a few occasions but I attribute this to the accidental ingestion of polluted water (swimming, bathing, ice, falling into a gutter while in a drunken stupor etc.). I have enjoyed parasitic infestations which cannot be killed by anything less than a blowtorch or a shotgun. I love travel. Giardia is so innocuous...... Try picking worms from a watery high speed brown steam water splattered on the floor and seat of a taxi in Bangladesh. Even I won't eat THOSE worms......

Now for a tiny bit of "Science".

Memo from the Centers from Disease Control:
GIARDIASIS
GIARDIASIS: By Dennis D. Juranek, Chief, Epidemiology Activity
Parasitic Diseases Branch
Division of Parasitic Diseases
Centers for Disease Control

> Disinfection of water with chlorine or iodine is considered less reliable than boiling for killing > Giardia. However, it is recognized that boiling drinking water is not practical under many > circumstances. Therefore, when one cannot boil drinking water, chemical disinfectants such as > iodine or chlorine should be used. This will provide some protection against Giardia and will > destroy most bacteria and viruses that cause illness. Iodine or chlorine concentrations of 8 mg/liter > (8ppm) with a minimum contact time of 30 minutes are recommended. If the water is cold (less > than 10 deg C or 50 deg F) we suggest a minimum contact time of 60 minutes. If you have a > choice of disinfectants, use iodine. Iodine's disinfectant activity is less likely to be reduced by > unfavorable water conditions, such as
dissolved organic material in water or by water with a high pH, than chlorine.

Below are instructions for disinfecting water using household tincture of iodine or chlorine bleach. If water is visibly dirty, it should first be strained through a clean cloth into a container to remove any sediment or floating matter. Then the water should be treated with chemicals as follows:

**IODINE**

Tincture of iodine from the medicine chest or first aid kit can be used to treat water. Mix thoroughly by stirring or shaking water in container and let stand for 30 minutes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tincture of Iodine</th>
<th>Drops* per Quart or Liter</th>
<th>Clear Water</th>
<th>Cold/Cloudy Water**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2%</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

** Very turbid or very cold water may require prolonged contact time; let stand up to several hours or even overnight.

The crystalline iodine bottle holds @ 30 ml of saturated iodine solution. With around .25ml tincture per Liter of clear water and .5ml per liter cloudy water considered to be an acceptable concentration, it seemed safe to assume that even with an extremely low saturation point a fluid volume 60 times that recommended should contain enough iodine to kill.

Is it poisonous to humans in these concentrations? It depends upon your physiology, the contents of your stomach (iodine water is a test for starches, sugars etc. and will turn an interesting color in their presence. They will also neutralize iodine) and other factors. I have never had a problem. Some folks may. They should not use iodine based water killers.

Finally,

The current study showed that none of the chemical treatments could inactivate more than 90 percent of cysts with 30 minutes of contact time at 10°C. At both 30 minutes and eight hours of contact time, the iodine-based disinfectants inactivated a higher fraction of cysts than did the chlorine-based products. All methods inactivated a lower percentage of cysts in cloudy or turbid water than in clear water. All disinfectants performed better with eight hours of contact time than with 30 minutes. Only the iodine-based compounds inactivated 99 to 99.9 percent of cysts within eight hours of contact time for both turbid and clear water. As observed by Jarroll, et al (5), the 2 percent tincture of iodine was less effective than the other iodine preparations with 30 minutes of contact time, but it was as effective as the others at eight hours. Comparison of our results with those of Jarroll, et al (5), is complicated by differences between test conditions used. However, our results generally indicate more stringent requirements for effective inactivation of Giardia cysts. Differences between cyst populations used in the two studies could account for the observed differences, even though both were G. lamblia. Cysts produced in our trophozoite-gerbil system had consistently high intrinsic viability (>80 percent), excysted efficiently when fresh (80 to 90 percent), and have appeared more resistant to halogen disinfectants than reported previously (Ongerth J.E.: unpublished).

Back-country water treatment to prevent giardiasis.

Jerry E. Ongerth, PhD, PE, Ron L. Johnson, Steven C Macdonald, MPH, Floyd Frost,
PhD, and Henry H. Stibbs, PhD

Rob, you also wrote:

> Are there
> data relating quantity, time, volume, and temperature or are your (and
> Nyerges') recommendations guestimates?

Hell Rob, I don't know. I think they work. But then, I'm just guessing. Ask
Chris..........

Take care,

Ron
"The worst drummer can silence the sweetest song"
Dr. Ron Hood
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 30 09:46:16 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id AAA01021 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:42:22 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA15633; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:13:57 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX)
with SMTP; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:11:59 EST
Received: from babar.INS.CWRU.Edu (babar.INS.CWRU.Edu [129.22.8.213]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AAA15630 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:13:41
-0500 (EST)
Received: from [129.22.220.68] (dialin068.REMOTE.CWRU.Edu [129.22.220.68]) by babar.INS.CWRU.Edu with ESMTP (8.7.6+cwru/CWRU-3.0) id AAA00501; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:17:48 -0500 (EST) (from rlc6@po.cwru.edu for 
)
X-Sender: rlc6@pop.cwru.edu
Message-ID:
In-Reply-To: <2.2.32.19970129053940.00a4f890@ pop3.av.qnet.com>
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"
Date: Wed, 29 Jan 1997 11:14:15 -0500
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
From: Rob Chatburn
Reply-To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, rlc6@PO.CWRU.EDU
Subject: Re: Clean Water
X-UIDL: 6046322980c31ffe8b9cd1be2f3d6e4a6
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/water1.htm (38 of 52) [10/22/2003 7:00:23 PM]
Ron,

Your experience and the CDC recommendations for use of iodine are good enough for me. Still I am trying to understand the subtle differences. For example, for clear water the recommendation is 0.25 mL of 2% tincture per liter of water. A tincture is uses alcohol as solvent as opposed to water in the system you describe. You would think that a saturated solution with alcohol might hold a different concentration of iodine than water. This is probably splitting hairs but...

> I think they work. But then, I'm just guessing. Ask
> Chris........ (Nyerges)

I did. He told me to use 10 mL of saturated aqueous solution per liter. That's 40 times the CDC recommendation for a 2% tincture. No doubt there is a very wide range between the minimum effective concentration and the LD50 - that is the dose that is lethal to 50% of test subjects ;-

I really do not have a problem with all this. You would not believe the amount of pharmacological guestimation that goes on in hospitals. Maybe it's not worth discussing further.

Thanks for the info.

Rob Chatburn

*Knowledge is no substitute for wisdom.*
On Thu, 30 Jan 1997 NatnNurt@aol.com wrote:

> Many better water filters use a solid activated charcoal filter. Apparently, crushed activated charcoal allows for water to form channels and pass without being filtered. I have heard that aromatic ring compounds can be introduced to the water if using plain charcoal.

The formation of channels under these conditions is something I know a bit about (not that I'm and expert), since the same effects are a problem with liquid chromatography. The way to avoid them is to

1. pack the material carefully to avoid cracks, etc. The ideal is to make a slurry and then pouring it into the "column". I have never tried this in real life, but it *might* work with crushed charcoal. The problem is to create a suitable outlet-filter to void all of your charcoal to flow out of the container (spagnum?).

2. avoid at all costs to pour the water directly on the charcoal bed. Use a prefilter (a wad of spagnum, for example).

3. One you have used the filter and allowed it to dry, cracks might have formed in the charcoal.

This is a theoretical discussion, and I do not know which of these are important in creating an effective water filter. When I make them I have always used a top wad of sphagnum, as well as one in the bottom. First time I think of the effects of drying out, thought. Might or might not make a difference.

> Activated charcoal is created under heat and pressure. Does anyone know if one can create an activated charcoal block by placing mud or clay over charcoal and baking it in a campfire? Seems that might be a solution to providing a slow-drip charcoal filter in the bush.

There is one, it was developed by, if I am correctly informed, Stefan Kallman while he was working for the Swedish defense research org. (FOA). It is made in, e.g., an old beer- or softdrink can, with the top removed, and the bottom perforated. I suppose natural containers could be used instead, even thought left behind beer-cans are far to easily available in many wilderness areas :-(.

* Start with a layer of sphagnum moss in the bottom. About an inch or so should be enough.

* Add a mixture of partially humified peat (the lower, pale brown, reaches of sphagnum bogs) and cruched charcoal. About half the cans volume of this.
* Add a top layer of sphagnum. At least another inch.

* A layer of small pebbles (say 1/2" diameter) on top.

* Rinse the filter with a few volumes of water before "use". Don't overdo it, the capacity is supposedly something on the order of 20-30 times the filters volume.

The idea is that the sphagnums effects (bacteristatic, chelates metals, etc), the well known effects of charcoal, and the fact that peat is (partly) activated charcoal is all combined. It has, so I'm told, been proven good enough to turn sewage into potable water, but I haven't seen the lab data on this myself.

/Par

--

Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
"You need the Computing Power of a P5, 16 MB Ram and 1 GB Harddisk to run Win95. It took the Computing Power of approx 3 Commodore 64 to fly to the moon. Something is wrong here, and it wasn't the Apollo."

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 30 09:46:26 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id BAA04365 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 01:18:51 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id AAA16164; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:52:41 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (MX V4.2 VAX) with SMTP; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:50:46 EST
Received: from emout10.mail.aol.com (emout10.mx.aol.com [198.81.11.25]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id AAA16159 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 00:52:30 -0500 (EST)
X-UIDL: 8bd5b6026debc2564c6dd6cac6747131
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0011
Many better water filters use a solid activated charcoal filter. Apparently, crushed activated charcoal allows for water to form channels and pass without being filtered. I have heard that aromatic ring compounds can be introduced to the water if using plain charcoal. Activated charcoal is created under heat and pressure. Does anyone know if one can create an activated charcoal block by placing mud or clay over charcoal and baking it in a campfire? Seems that might be a solution to providing a slow-drip charcoal filter in the bush.

Matt Schoeffler
Nature & Nurture

Hi Rob,

Just to clear up a few technical points......

> You would think that a saturated solution with
> alcohol might hold a different concentration of iodine than water. This is
> probably splitting hairs but...
Absolutely! (not splitting hairs..... I mean water and alcohol DO have different levels) FYI the following excerpt............

"Iodine occurs as bluish black plates that are soluble in alcohol but only slightly soluble in water (0.03%). Tincture of iodine contains 2% iodine and 2% sodium iodide in alcohol. Strong iodine solution contains 5% iodine and 10% potassium iodide in water. Iodine is precipitated by starch."

"The fatal dose of iodine and iodoform is estimated to be 2 Gm. (30gr). Fatalities have not been reported from iodochlorhydroxyquin or iodide poisoning."

(Handbook of Poisoning: diagnosis and treatment; Robert Dreisbach, MD, PhD (LOCC nr76-78901))

> No doubt there is a very wide range between the minimum effective concentration and the LD50—that is the dose that is lethal to 50% of test subjects ;-

The author didn't seem to equivocate on the lethality... no LD50 for this guy.!

>I really do not have a problem with all this. You would not believe the amount of pharmacological guestimation that goes on in hospitals.

Absolutely nothing personal Rob...... I do believe it ...... that sort of "guestimation" killed my mother.

I guess we've hammered the iodine topic pretty well. Wadda ya think? Thanks for the great book list! I bet that will find it's way into several bibliographies.......

Ron

Rabid Ron Hood
http://www.survival.com/~diogenes
"Wisdom is earned... Man is my dad SMART!"

X-Mozilla-Status: 0011

From - Thu Jan 30 21:06:48 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (poste.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.11.73]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA11721 for ; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 12:53:28 -0500 (EST)
Received: from vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca [132.212.12.12]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA21733; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 12:12:53 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with SMTP id MAA21733; Thu, 30 Jan 1997 12:12:53 -0500 (EST)
X-ListName: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Warnings-To: <>
Errors-To: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Received: from poste.uqac.uquebec.ca by mule0.mindspring.com (mule0.mindspring.com [204.180.128.166]) by poste.uqac.uquebec.ca (8.8.4/8.7.3) with ESMTP id MAA21727 for
> Did anyone think of using bleach? (SP) I've tried it and it seemes to work.
> Just a thought.
>
> Joe Schilling

Joe,

The problem with chlorine to sterilize water with is the tendency of chlorine to combine with some organic organisms to create carcinogenic compounds.

Jim Burdine
LV, NV
jburdine@pipeline.com
Many better water filters use a solid activated charcoal filter. I just received a catalog showing the SWEETWATER brand of water filter. Designed for backpacking, it filters and has a removable iodine cart (to handle up to 90 gal). Claims to eliminate: giardia, crypto, bacteria, herbicides, pesticides. Iodine eliminates threat of virus.

Well guys who are active camper/packers know about this stuff, anyway. But with all the talk about how much iodine to use...maybe a special cart. is what is the safest way to "iodinize" water.

Just my 2 cents.

rich, b-man

RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975!
"Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!"
Boomerang Man 1806 N 3rd Room EM, Monroe, LA 71201
FREE CATALOG...sent anywhere!
"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying.
Hello All,
A few comments on this thread:
The use of a hole extending into the water table to source potable water probably has some merit providing certain assumptions are considered;
1. The labor intensity, the filtration rate, the lack of portability make this method more suitable for static circumstances in which the user is going to be in one area for a day or so.
2. IN GENERAL dirt is dirtier than water but makes a better filter than water. The filtering aspect of soil comes at a cost of seeding the filtrate with more stuff to filter. Odds will favor that unwanted stuff will exceed filtration ability of the soil unless additional filtration is provided.
3. The micron level and biocidal activity needed for 100% microbe elimination is probably not practical with field expediant methods (short of boiling).
The best you can do is try for maximal minimalization and weigh that roll of the dice against the level of certainty that you will die of thirst in less than 5 days

Par's information on a peat-charcoal-sphagnum filter is well founded. I would propose a twist on the "old beer can component. Is not a hole in the ground an "old beer can" stripped of it's layers of tecnology? Why not line the hole with the peat-charcoal-sphagnum filter. Consider the surrounding soil a pre-filter. Or perhaps line the hole with water impermeable clay and connect it to the stream with a peat-charcoal-sphagnum filled channel and cut the soil filter out of the loop.

How many of you have drank from a free flowing stream and not suffered? I imagine a lot of you have been less than totally cautious and that the actual incidence of illness is relatively low. Without a doubt, even a mild diarrhea may be catastrophic in a true survival scenario. However, on the continuum between naked survival and warm cozy technology, the affordabilty of mistakes has an inverse relationship with the number of options we have in preventing
them.
I propose that it may be more important that we arm ourselves with knowledge
and concepts than specific skills. It will be the synthesis of solutions from
available resources in the face of recognized risk that is the key to survival. Understanding that water seeks its own level, that giardia is a
micron sized killer, that if I don't drink for 3-5 days I will die, that if
I shit more than I drink for 7-10 days I will die, that if I look around me I
can use what I know about water and giardia to cut my risk by half, and
doing so will expand my window by a factor of four, that at any time my number can
come up on the dice and lightning will kill me in my debris hut.
The peat-charcoal-sphagnum filter in a great idea...........IF you can find
peat and sphagnum and charcoal.

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Return-Path:
Received: from 207.96.219.40 (ppp040.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.40]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with SMTP id WAA01464 for ; Fri, 7 Feb 1997 22:33:45 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32FBAE22.71CD@videotron.ca>
Date: Fri, 07 Feb 1997 22:35:14 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Subject: water charcoal filters
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: 2d61c1863306184fa1c2c86c2719d916
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

Date: Tue, 12 Nov 1996 06:28:47 +0200 (METDST)
From: Par Leijonhufvud
To: trackers@muskoka.net
Subject: Re: water filter
Message-Id:
Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; CHARSET=US-ASCII

On Mon, 11 Nov 1996, Kenneth H Keller wrote:

> Thx. for your water filter info. In what sense is this filter effective?

Lots of features:
1. The sphagnum moss have been found to chelate heavy metals (among other stuff; the Swedish army discovered that it can be used for cleaning up after NBC-attacks...).

2. The sphagnum moss is bacteriostatic (perhaps not at a clinical level, but it does still do something good towards the goal). Also remember; sphagnum is good for would dressings for this very reason.

3. The charcoal will, as others have pointed out, do a fairly god job against many pathogens, in addition to reducing some chemical pollutants.

4. The peat is also good in this respect, since it is partially "active charcoal", as used in many commercial water filters.

For those worrying about black "nasty" water: (1) it is not dangerous even if so, and (2) most of the loose charcoal will be removed when you "prime" the filter with a few volumes of water.

The Swedish army who discovered this filter has apparently tested it on raw sewage with drinkable water as the result. I haven't been brave enought to try it on anything like that, but I have drunk some fairly questionable water after using the filter.

Remember; the filter does have a limited lifespan, IIRC something on the order of 20-30 volumes.

/Par

--
Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
"If at first you don't succeed, destroy all evidence that you tried."

X-Mozilla-Status: 0000

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

From - Tue Feb  4 21:17:19 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from 207.96.219.56 (ppp056.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.56]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with SMTP id VAA15092 for ; Tue, 4 Feb 1997 21:12:11 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32F7A67E.11E9@videotron.ca>
Date: Tue, 04 Feb 1997 21:13:34 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Subject: water filter
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: 798319953d07041b88fe846ee24ab2ec
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0001
On Sun, 10 Nov 1996, Mike Andreasen wrote:

> Please illustrate. :)

To build a fairly good waterfilter you need sphagnum moss, peat and charcoal. In addition you need some sort of container. The proverbial choice is an old beer-can, but anything can be used that will hold water.

1. Start by making a number of small holes in the bottom of the container. Also remove the top of the can if that is what you are using.

2. Place a layer of sphagnum moss in the bottom of the container (app. 1").

3. Fill the can app. 2/3 with a mixture of crushed charcoal (not powder, just fine gravel-size) and peat.

4. Add some more sphagnum moss on top of the peat-charcoal layer.

5. Place a layer of small pebbles (1/4" or so) on top.

The filter is now ready for use. Gently pour water on top, collect in bottom. Let a couple of volumes of water flow through first before any is collected and used.

```plaintext
|                |                |
|                |                |
|                |                |
| 000000000000   | pebbles        |
| //////////////  | sphagnum moss  |
| XXXXXXXXXXXXX  |                |
| XXXXXXXXXXXX   |                |
| XXXXXXXXXXXXX  | peat and charcoal (50:50) |
| XXXXXXXXXXXX   |                |
| XXXXXXXXXXXX   |                |
| //////////////  | sphagnum moss  |
| //////////////  |                |
| 111111111111   | perforated bottom |
```

/Par

--
Par Leijonhufvud par.leijonhufvud@labtek.ki.se
"If at first you don't succeed, destroy all evidence that you tried."

X-Mozilla-Status: 0000

From - Sat Feb  8 19:24:15 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from 207.96.219.39 (ppp039.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.39]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with SMTP id TAA08544 for ; Sat, 8 Feb 1997 19:07:08 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32FCCF35.248A@videotron.ca>
Date: Sat, 08 Feb 1997 19:08:37 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Subject: water filter
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: 3752259bbc538798396da2c3a6a6345e
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0000

Date: Wed, 13 Nov 1996 19:53:27 +0000
From: Bruce
To: trackers@muskoka.net
Subject: Re: water filter
Message-ID: <328A2737.4360@virtualmountain.mv.com>
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit

Another I would add to the peat/charcoal/moss water filter (whether in a hole in the ground/beer can/bark/hollow log is sand. When I was designing the greywater system for my off the grid dome home that I was building last year (and still finishing :-)), a septic design engineer told me that 1 foot of clean sand will filter out raw sewar to pure water. I have been tinkering around with a hollow log, with a lattice of sticks and a grass mat in the bottom, topped with 1 foot of sand. On top of this log, is another hollow log that is a little wider (like a funnel) where you pour the water in. The 2nd log holds the water until it filters down thru the sand, and drips out into your burned out bwol/bark basket, etc. I think adding a layers of sand throughout the peat/charcoal/moss will make it even more efficient, and longer lasting, especially if the top layer is sand. You could hand scoop out this layer and replace it a needed, and most "goobers" from the unpure water will catch in this layer.

I talked with Tom about using sand as a filter (from his field guide to survival, where he mentions it very briefly without details on turning brackish swamp water into something resembling water) at the Back to Back last month, and he said he made it about 4 feet long, and still "boiled the hell out of it" afterward.

Sorry that I don't have any "scientific" data to back it up, but plan on playing with it more with combos of all materials. In a pinch I'd use
it, probably with in hole as the safest method.

Bruce

X-Mozilla-Status: 0001

X-Mozilla-Status: 0000

From - Sat Feb 8 19:24:16 1997
Return-Path:
Received: from 207.96.219.39 (ppp039.219.mtimi.videotron.net [207.96.219.39]) by brown.videotron.net (8.8.5/8.8.2) with SMTP id TAA09773 for ; Sat, 8 Feb 1997 19:14:31 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID: <32FCD0F0.7D22@videotron.ca>
Date: Sat, 08 Feb 1997 19:16:00 +0000
From: Dr AF Bourbeau
Reply-To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Organization: Au GrÈ de la Nature Inc./At Nature's Will Inc.
X-Mailer: Mozilla 2.02 (Macintosh; I; 68K)
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: bourbeau@videotron.ca
Subject: water filters
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
X-UIDL: 29729b8c7a2dd9f7e7f2011473415d7c
Status: U
X-Mozilla-Status: 0000

Date: Fri, 15 Nov 1996 22:14:15 -0500 (EST)
From: dave@brightleaf.com (Dave Kay)
To: trackers@muskoka.net
Subject: One more word on human scat, water, and filters
Message-ID: <199611160314.WAA30738@mailnfs0.tiac.net>
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"

Just wanted to second the motion not to defecate near water, and offer an opinion about filters. Humans are now very common carriers (even without symptoms) of giardia to other humans (and maybe to animals). For that reason, overnight camping is limited or prohibited around untreated water supplies like the Quabbin reservoir in Massachusetts, to minimize feces. Giardia is apparently not destroyed by being consumed by fish or other macroorganisms, just passed along or further incubated.

Currently wildlife like beaver are taking the rap ("beaver fever" being a very catchy term) and are being killed for fear of their introducing giardia, despite the fact that infections today are suspected of quite often being the result of human contamination.

Giardia is apparently a very hardy microorganism that even chlorination at typical water-treatment levels doesn't kill easily. It's also a very small
organism (1-5 microns) that typical soil filtration won't catch unless you use a few acres of it. (Sand pores being around 50-200 microns, pure silt and clay somewhere around 1-50, if I recall correctly. Nearly any natural mineral soil will be a mixture of these.) A filter using pure, uniform clay or silt might be effective, but the rate of water flow would be pretty puny, I think. (Which is why commercial micropore filters have pumps.) Survival filters, because they have lots of different materials in them, would have pores way in excess of the necessary size. I don't have any info on charcoal. Organic stuff like moss is much more porous.

Obviously, in a survival situation, you have to make some tough choices, but I think I would go first for collecting dew (not-pooped-on), as Tom suggests, or collecting from plant sources like grape vines. (Tom probably has some pretty strong feelings about giardia these days, as apparently that was laid him *very* low for a year or so!)

- Dave
Hi everyone,

I would appreciate all subscribed members of the primitive skills group to PLEASE SEND THE GROUP A SHORT TEST MESSAGE. This is the final test before going public. So far everything works just great!

André

----------------------------------------------------------
Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

----------------------------------------------------------

Hi everyone,

When we send messages to the group, there should now be a Reply-to line so replies can automatically be sent back to the group. If this is not working, please let me know.

Thanks to Matthew Rappaport for pointing this out.
Hi again all,

I would like to make a file which I could send to new subscribers which would be a compilation of all the introductions which are received from members when they subscribe. I think this would be a nice way of saying welcome and would make new members feel more at home.

I don't know if this would work, what do you think?

If this is a good idea, then maybe all of you could send me a short introduction about yourself to include in this file. The list could start off with the introduction of a few "group leaders". Ben Pressley has already indicated he would like to be one of the group leaders. How about others? Everyone who receives this message is invited to be group leader. The group leaders role would be to maintain the proper orientation of the group.

What do you think of this idea? Am I exaggerating again?

Thanks for your input,

Andr=E9
---

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Qu=E9bec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

On Fri, 20 Dec 1996, Dr. A. F. Bourbeau wrote:

> Hi everyone,
> 
> I would appreciate all subscribed members of the primitive skills group
> to PLEASE SEND THE GROUP A SHORT TEST MESSAGE. This is the final test
> before going public. So far everything works just great!
> 
> Hello... Here is my test. The reply-to function is working well, though I
notice that by default you Andre end up with a separate copy of the reply.

matthew rapaport     Philosopher/Programmer at large        KD6KVH
mjr@crl.com    In God we trust. All others we monitor! quine@dfw.net

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (3 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:41 PM]
Hello fellow primitives,

Here's the announcement which was sent to other groups in order to build our membership. Please communicate this information to anyone you know who might be interested.

Many thanks to Ted E. Bailey, Matthew Rappaport, and Benjamin Pressley for their kind help and support.

Regards,

AFBourbeau

NEW Primitive Skills Group! ANNOUNCEMENT!

The main purpose of this group is to provide a way by which all lovers of primitive skills can discuss various subjects related to wilderness ways.

We have chosen to call it the Primitive Skills Group because whether we are discussing primitive, wilderness or survival skills using some modern devices, we still draw our inspiration and basic knowledge from primitive people who have survived for thousands of years using only what nature provided. Primitive literally means 'first' or 'earliest', therefore primitive and survival skills are our common heritage. The purpose of the group is to share knowledge about this common heritage which can inspire us and comfort us today.

Topics which you are encouraged to discuss with other group members are:

1. All primitive wilderness living skills such as shelter, fire, cordage, primitive tanning, natural foods, primitive living, primitive rafts & boats, primitive direction finding, primitive trapping techniques, weapons for wilderness survival, primitive hygiene, protection from insects, primitive weather prediction, fighting cold, primitive medicine, traditional dog sledding, edible plants, primitive clothing etc.

2. Subjects related to modern realistic wilderness survival, such as surviving unexpected emergencies after airplane crashes, broken down snowmobiles etc.

3. Discussions about very specific environmental concerns related to the practice of individual primitive skills are also welcome.

Remember! This group is intended for fun, sharing and learning about primitive wilderness survival and living skills. All members will be asked to refrain from discussing topics related to specific religious, political or ethnic views.

Your participation in the discussions of the Primitive Skills Group would be appreciated by all other members!

To join the group send an E-mail with the following text in the main body of the message:

SUBSCRIBE PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP
Put nothing else in the message, not even a signature. Send the E-mail to:
listserv@uqac.uquebec.ca

After a short while you will receive a message saying that you have been successfully subscribed. Once you have subscribed, you can send a message or a question to the entire group by sending an E-mail to:
Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca

You will also receive messages or questions which any of the other members send to the group.

To unsubscribe, you must send an E-mail to listserv@uqac.uquebec.ca with the words
SIGNOFF PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP

in the body of the message (nothing else).

Looking forward to sharing primitive skills with you!

Best regards,

Dr AndrÉ-FranÉois Bourbeau
Professor of outdoor pursuits
University of Québec
List manager
bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

--

Archive-Date: Fri, 20 Dec 1996 20:54:57 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Fri, 20 Dec 1996 20:53:25 -0500 (EST)
Message-ID:
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="iso-8859-1"
Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable
To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
From: mmorin@saglac.qc.ca (Magella Morin)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, mmorin@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: FINAL TEST- please help

Here is the test of Magella

>Hi everyone,
>
> I would appreciate all subscribed members of the primitive skills group to PLEASE SEND THE GROUP A SHORT TEST MESSAGE. This is the final test before going public. So far everything works just great!
> >
> >Dr Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau
> Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
> University of Quebec
> 555 University Boulevard
> Chicoutimi, (Quebec)
> CANADA G7H 2B1
> 418-545-5011 Ext 5259
> 
> At Nature's Will Inc.
> 3801 Rang St-Martin
> Chicoutimi, (Quebec)
> CANADA G7H 5A7
> 418-543-2888
> 
> bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

How's this for short?!
Hi

Who all got here??????

Say, Doc Andre says we can discuss primitive direction finding, is that
dowsing?? :) :) :) :) :)

Cheers
Merv

---Time flies like an arrow -----------------------------------
| Merv Martin               *        * | |
| eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com *        * | |
| www.midtown.net/~merv        *        * | |
| www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) | |
------------------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---

Hi Merv!

Chris here. I've had some experiences with dowsing. Seen our dowsing
thread on Thrower (?), at:

http://www.crl.com/~mjr/findit.html

Could be flame bait & taboo subject: challenges the belief systems of
some and perhaps not enough in others. Maybe it's been that way since
Descartes and the dawn of the "Age of Reason" or some such - I dunno. I
use it and sometimes it seems to work. No flames (please) list
members. Sure it can be explained OR explained away, but a little voice
in the back of my mind keeps saying, "There are more things under heaven
and on earth than is in your philosophy, Horacio". Dowsing's
fascinating at least in a historical/contemporary context as a primitive
practice that's survived to the present time.
Any dowsing experiences, Merv? Maybe a possible use for that Christmas tree after the big day, eh?

Chris

Chris Smith wrote:
>=20
> merv martin wrote:
> >
> > Hi
> >
> > Who all got here??????
> >
> > Say, Doc Andre says we can discuss primitive direction finding, is that
dowsing?? :) :) :) :)
> >
> > Cheers
> > Merv
> >=20
> Hi Merv!
> >=20
> Chris here. I've had some experiences with dowsing. Seen our dowsing thread on Thrower (??), at:
> >=20
> http://www.crl.com/~mjr/findit.html
> >=20
> Could be flame bait & taboo subject: challenges the belief systems of
> some and perhaps not enough in others. Maybe it's been that way since
> Descartes and the dawn of the "Age of Reason" or some such - I dunno. = I
> use it and sometimes it seems to work. No flames (please) list
> members. Sure it can be explained OR explained away, but a little voic
> in the back of my mind keeps saying, "There are more things under heav
> and on earth than is in your philosophy, Horacio". Dowsing's
> fascinating at least in a historical/contemporary context as a primitiv
> practice that's survived to the present time.
> >=20
> Any dowsing experiences, Merv? Maybe a possible use for that Christmas tree after the big day, eh?
Hi folks,

Dowsing was definitely not what I had in mind by primitive direction finding, but I don't mind the subject for now. In fact, many survival books claim that such things can work. I've seen finding water by pendulum, witchhazel sticks, burying rocks, following spider web orientation, and all sorts of other weird unexplainable stuff.

Now, as a former semi-professional magician, I maintain that these things are all hocus pocus. My friend the Amazing Randi (Randall Swinge), who is Houdini's successor in magic circles, has offered $100,000 to anyone who could demonstrate something weird in seance sessions that he couldn't explain (put the trick to light). He has never had to pay up in the last 10 years since he offered the prize.

I will offer the same $100,000 to anyone who can find a jar of water buried in a field at random after multiple tries using any of the so-called water finding methods. The common answer I get is that the jar interferes. Ok, let's put the water in earthenware crocks. Surely that is easier to find than water deep down through granite etc. It is obvious to my scientific mind that these techniques were invented by someone to take advantage of unsuspicious people and earn a living without working. It is absolutely incredible, don't forget, the length to which a magician can go to obtain information which will credit him with "superhuman" capabilities. Some people are absolute geniuses with hidden technology which will blow your mind with it's impossibility. Others are absolute psychological geniuses.

I think the explanation to dowsing on the browser page is accurate:

"As it turns out, the dowser may do nothing more than stimulate the users' own subconscious knowledge of where he or she lost the knife. Of course since we are usually looking for knives or other implements that we have lost, this may be sufficient, especially if it works more or less consistently."

In fact, the same amount of time spent actually searching for the knife in a methodical manner would have found the knife at least as quickly.

Searching for lost objects in survival situations can become very important if not life threatening. I remember visiting one student in a survival simulation groping around in the dark to find his whistle to call it quits. "I lost my matches in the snow" says he. I patiently talked to him, found out where he had been, and told him to start searching methodically in the most likely spot. After a few minutes, he found his matches and did not "die".

I teach that the trick in searching for lost objects is never to search in the same place twice. Do it right the first time. Go very methodically and precisely so you can eliminate sections of ground definitely. You will eventually find it this way, it's only a matter of time. If you don't look methodically, you can search forever.

Sorry about the flame, couldn't help myself, you hit a sensitive nerve.

It doesn't matter how many times people tell stories of "it worked", until someone can demonstrate that "it works" in a repetitive way, it is
just blind luck.

Bury a knife somewhere at random in a sawdust pile 100 feet square, and you will never be able to find it repeatedly using dowsing, I guarantee that!

Just a stubborn scientist replying!

 Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois

---

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Qu=E9bec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

merv martin wrote:
> Hi
> Who all got here??????
> Say, Doc Andre says we can discuss primitive direction finding, is that
dowsing???: ) : ) :
> Cheers
> Merv
> ---Time flies like an arrow --
Howdy,

I'm a soldier in the US Army, stationed with a National Guard unit in Virginia. We do a lot of direction finding, land navigation, and I would be very interested in discussing this.

I suppose that one of the first ways of navigating was to follow a stream bank, up and down stream, to get somewhere. Still recommended for those lost and unhurt to simply follow a stream down and continue until you meet up with someone which is inevitable. We also look to the sun for direction.

I must ask though, are we talking about methods used by primitive peoples or methods using low tech skills? Won't always be the same. Interested in hearing from other members of the group.

--
Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

---

Chris Smith wrote:
> Hi
> >
> > > Hi
> > >
> > > Who all got here??????
> > >
> > > Say, Doc Andre says we can discuss primitive direction finding, is that
> > > dowsing???:)
> > >
> > > Cheers
> > >
> > Hi Merv!
> >
> Chris here. I've had some experiences with dowsing. Seen our dowsing
> thread on Thrower (?), at:
>>
> http://www.crl.com/~mjr/findit.html
> Could be flame bait & taboo subject: challenges the belief systems of
> some and perhaps not enough in others.  Maybe it's been that way since
> Descartes and the dawn of the "Age of Reason" or some such - I dunno. I
> use it and sometimes it seems to work.  No flames (please) list
> members.  Sure it can be explained OR explained away, but a little voice
> in the back of my mind keeps saying, "There are more things under heaven
> and on earth than is in your philosophy, Horacio".  Dowsing's
> fascinating at least in a historical/contemporary context as a primitive
> practice that's survived to the present time.
> Any dowsing experiences, Merv?  Maybe a possible use for that
> Christmas tree after the big day, eh?
> Chris

Dowsing as direction finding?  Means something different to me.  A nice
forked willow wand or a couple of coat hangers.  I think that it works
for some, not all, because of the electrical charge we all carry.

Sincerely,
Barent
Duty, Honor, Country

"Primitive" direction finding wasn't all that primitive. If you look
into archeoastronomy, you'll find that pre-Conquest peoples in both
North, South, and Central America had extremely accurate observatories
all over the place. They clocked the movement of stars, planets, sun and
moon, had buildings and whole communities arranged on lines to
correspond with various orbits, holes in buildings where the sun shone
thru only on the equinox, etc. The precision of their work often
astounds modern day astronomers.

Since they had no magnetic compass, they didn't orient so much
north/south/east/west as toward where the sun appeared at equinox and
solstice.

Which reminds me -- today is the Winter Solstice.

Harmon Seaver hseaver@northnet.net hseaver@csd.uwm.edu
BKP wrote:

> Howdy,
>  
> I'm a soldier in the US Army, stationed with a National Guard unit in
> Virginia. We do a lot of direction finding, land navigation, and I wou=
> ld
>  
> be very interested in discussing this.
>  
> I suppose that one of the first ways of navigating was to follow a stre=
> am
> bank, up and down stream, to get somewhere. Still recommended for thos=
> e
>  
> lost and unhurt to simply follow a stream down and continue until you
> > meet up with someone which is inevitable. We also look to the sun for
> > direction.
>  
> Following some streams here in Qu=E9bec would sometimes lead you to=
> a 1000 mile trek without seing=20
> anythin until the artic ocean! Also, many places here are height of land=
> where one creek flows=20
> into the atlantic and another to Hudson's Bay and another to the Artic. =
> So I'm not so sure about=20
> the follow the creek method. Also, following creeks here usually means y=
> ou have to walk in alder=20
> (Alnus spp) swamps which makes going very rough, especially on creeks tha=
> t wind and wind and wind=20
> around bend after bend.
>  
> The sun and stars are indeed the safest orienteering methods.
>  
> I must ask though, are we talking about methods used by primitive peopl=
> es
>  
> or methods using low tech skills? Won't always be the same. Intereste=
> d
>  
> in hearing from other members of the group.
>  
> Both subjects are interesting. However, I think you're opening up a very=
> big can of worms, (we=20
> could write a whole book on the subject). Maybe more specific questions =
> will help the rest of us=20
> answer.
>  
> How about the question of moss growing on the north side of trees, for in=
> stance. What do people=20

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (13 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:41 PM]
think of that?

Best regards,

André-François

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau

Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA  G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature’s Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA  G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

---

--

Archive-Date: Sat, 21 Dec 1996 13:15:51 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
From: bmanrich@iamerica.net
Message-ID: <32BB3A75.138A@iamerica.net>
Date: Sat, 21 Dec 1996 01:16:37 +0000
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
MIME-Version: 1.0
To: Primitive Skills Group
Subject: Double responses
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable

--Some of you might receive your own copy of messages you send to the primitive skills group twice for the next few days. This is because the system analyst at the university put a default reply-to address including the sender's original address too. This means you are getting your copy back from the Reply-to as well as back from the primitive skills group - 2 copies. I will have this fixed as soon as possible. Sorry for this minor inconvenience.

André

--

Surviving at nature's will...

Dr André-François Bourbeau

Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA  G7H 2B1
Greetings fellow primitives!

I think it would be nice, now that we have a few dozen members, for some of us to introduce ourselves. If you agree, you can send an intro about yourself to the group.

Might as well start by myself.

Hi everyone, my name is AndrÈ-FranÃ§ois Bourbeau and I'm a professor at the University of QuÈbec, Chicoutimi campus, where I teach outdoor pursuits in an adventure tourism bachelor's degree. This 3 year program is in french, so unfortunately much of the material I have developed will have to be translated before it is useful to many of you- sorry about that. I have been at the university for 15 years now, teaching courses such as winter camping, whitewater canoeing, wilderness survival, outdoor leadership, environmental awareness, philosophy of outdoor education and such. I also have research duties, and my field of interest is "coureur de bois" and wilderness survival. I did my doctoral thesis on how to write clear instructions for primitive wilderness survival techniques. Since then, my research methods have been largely experiential: basically, I put myself in simulated situations in order to learn about old ways and develop new knowledge.

I conducted two major trips, one was a 31 day experiment in 1984 where I was dropped by helicopter on the 50th parallel without food, without fire, without tools, without shelter- just the light clothes on my back. That was a pretty rough trip, details of which are to be found in a book I wrote about the experience entitled "Surviethon au GrÈE9 de la Nature". sorry, only available in french for now. The book is a day by day
report on the trip, to which was added a scientific report on various subjects studied during the experiment.

The other major trip I did was in 1988, a 40 day reconstruction of a trip along the fur trade route in the year 1838. All the materials used were authentic reproductions of the period's gear, including real birchbark canoes and even handsewn underwear. This trip is documented in a film by KEG productions of Toronto called "Man of the Wilderness" which has been translated into many languages and has been shown on many television networks around the world.

My main interests are in developing wilderness survival techniques for someone lost or downed in the boreal type forest. All ideas I find from other parts of the world I try to adapt to materials found here. For example, fire saws are possible with bamboo- I try to find materials to make it work here (haven't found any yet).

I am really looking forward to all the fine discussions I am certain will develop as the Primitive Skills Group grows. By the way, I am the list manager for the group, so any concerns you may have about the way the group functions can be addressed directly to me.

Finally, please note that I love hamburgers and french fries, but no ketchup.

Thank you,

André-François Bourbeau

PS I've attached some interesting links.

---

Surviving at nature's will...=

Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

At Nature's Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888

bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

----------258A33549C1
Content-Type: text/html; charset=us-ascii
Content-Disposition: inline; filename="survive.main.html"
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
SURVIVAL...
A Beginning

Many of the sites referenced below are busy and may not always respond. If you can not get through once, please try again.

DISCLAIMER

Do not venture into the wilderness without your staff!

Check in here for water purification!

One possibility for emergency electric power, and a do it yourself version.

Survival situations sometimes require some awareness of time!

Critical WEATHER data from the NOAA, the BBC, and CNN!

Some interesting information on the subject of MREs

We even have a line on survival feminine hygiene!

- Radio - Radio is the

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (17 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:41 PM]
survivors medium! It requires less infrastructure than any other technology able to span the globe at the speed of light with news and other information! Percon brings us a searchable frequency database. If you're in Northern California, check out the CAVE. Curt's Cyber Corner, has lots of links to clubs and resources throughout the U.S., and here's a cute compilation of stupid scanner tricks. Here is an extensive list of radio sources on the Internet from the folks at Javiation in England, and others from The American Radio Relay League, Paul Jones, Pete Costello, and SCAN-L from Peter Laws. Survivalist radio is also available. While you're listening, you might tune in to some unfamiliar lingo.

- Knives – A tool far more versatile in the end than any firearm! Here you will also find
your entry way to the
world of
throwing weapons,
crossbows, and other
primitive weapons!

- **MAPS** - I just
  know you appreciate and understand the value of
  good maps! Yes, the
  USGS is also a marvelous
  source of these invaluable aids, and there is this
  interesting demonstration
  of large scale
digitized mapping
  technology, and I have found nothing to beat this
  smaller scale
landform imaging
  of each U.S. State, unless it is these
  interactive map locators from
  mapquest, and
  mapblast!

- **SAR**, a marvelous Search and Rescue page from B.C.
  Canada, and a collection
  of
FEMA SAR sites.
  For SAR equipment, check these
catalogs.
Don't ignore the wealth of information American tax dollars provide through FEMA, the Federal Emergency Management Association. If the primary site is busy, here is an alternative that carries much of the same information. Finally, here is FEMA's international directory of disaster management services.

Don't forget this interesting mix of products and services at A&B Enterprises, an extensive on-line weapons catalog from KLOS, and an excellent natural survival page and magazine from Wilderness Way.

- Pointers to survivalism in the tradition of those prepared to defend themselves against all adversaries at all costs! This section includes Kurt Saxon's survival page, Dave Paxton's survival page, the Subrosa page, the Paul Revere Network, and Dave Fuestel's page on FedGov activities that may interest you.

- Long term storage and food supplies from: Walton Feeds, Live Oak Farms, Storable Foods, Survival Center, Product Source International, Mountain View Foods,
Secure Future,  
Happy Hovel Foods, and  
Patriot's Canteen.
Also this excellent entry point to  
permaculture for sustained  
food, shelter, and energy production. There is  
also this link to  
Christopher Nyerges'  
School of Self-Reliance  
with lots of pointers to information about edible plants and much more.

- You can see what the  
U.S. Dept. of Defense  
wants to tell you (remember who gave away the atom bomb? Hint, it wasn't  
the  
spies they blamed it on). Definitely look here for some pointers to other interesting  
military  
points of departure, and this page where you can help monitor  
the military activities of the  
U.N.

- Proper training is important! If you can't use  
what you've got,  
what good is it? Here are training camps from the  
Russian Combat Skills  
Federation,
Bratn & Williams Tactical Training, the Advanced Tactical Group, and our friends from Combat Technologies.
There are many more, but links on these pages will take you to all the rest. As I explore I will add more as well.

- **Religion** – The ultimate survival trip!

Here are some links to places that add an extra dimension to survival and survivalism.

- _THE GRAY NINETIES_, an online, shareware, post-apocalyptic survival novel and compendium of tips, tricks, and techniques all rolled into one. I have not yet read it, so I can not review it (coming soon to this spot), but its author, James W. Rawles has some interesting writing and experiential credentials for this kind of work.
• "**In Our Times**", an interesting survivalist magazine.

• A place to **practice** your new skills.

• Live long and prosper at the ultimate **Martial Arts** page, and browse through an interesting collection of martial arts weapons at **Little China Town**.

• **Beer!** Because surviving is thirsty work! Have at it.
WHAT'S NEW

- Find out what's going into the next issue of Wilderness Way in the Upcoming Articles.
- More articles have been added to the Feature Articles area.
- Hey, have you signed the Guestbook?

Great tips on how to survive in the wilderness without modern conveniences. From hide glue to authentic tipis you'll find just about anything in our Trader's Post. Want to submit a free ad yourself? Simply fill out our form.
Browse or read exciting Back Issues of Wilderness Way magazine. Living off the land, fire making, hide tanning, uses of medicinal plants and more. We've also included a cross-section of articles from past issues. Find these in the Featured Articles.

Find links to other exciting sites and get lists of primitive clubs across the world. Find it all in Smoke Signals.

Want to subscribe or order back issues? Visit Ordering.

Want to submit an article or letter to Wilderness Way? Stop by the Contact page.
Welcome to Ted Bailey's Home Page on Primitive Technology. My main interest is boomerangs and throwsticks. In the process of acquiring old throwsticks for my collection, I occasionally find other items that stimulate my interest in primitive weaponry. From this page, I hope to pass on information about some of these technologies and add links to other web pages that have a similar focus. You should link to this page and follow the instructions below:

**Get an email subscription to THROWER**

*thrower* is an email subscription service that brings people together who have an interest in anything that is thrown. This includes: boomerangs, atlatls, bolas, knives, chackra & slings. There is a heavy emphasis on knives, but start a thread on another topic and see what happens. If you have an interest in Primitive Technology, you need to subscribe to this email subscription service.

To subscribe, put **SUBSCRIBE THROWER** and nothing else in your message body and send to: **thrower-request@dfw.net** After subscribing, you can send messages to: **THROWER@dfw.net** Many thanx to **Matthew Rapaport** for setting up the *thrower* group.

**Get an email subscription to KNAPPER**

*Knapper* is an email subscription service that brings people together who have an interest in flintknapping. To subscribe, send email to **knapper-request@iastate.edu** with the words:

```
subscribe knapper [your email address here]
```

in the body, not the subject. (You don't need to put the brackets in there either... ;)

**Special Primitive Technology Links**

- [Calendar of Events](http://www.crl.com/~mjr/thrower.html)
- [Knappers Anonymous](http://www.crl.com/~mjr/pweapons.html)
- [Great Lakes Primitives](http://www.msstate.edu/Archives/History/scholarship/neolithic.art)
- [Tribe](http://www.dealsonline.com/origins/)
- [Wilderness Way](http://atlantic.evsc.virginia.edu/Julia/AW/meta.html)
- [atlatl](http://spirit.lib.uconn.edu:80/ArchNet/)
- [bola](http://www.msstate.edu/Archives/History/scholarship/neolithic.art)
- [chackrum](http://www.dealsonline.com/origins/)
- [sling](http://www.dealsonline.com/origins/)

You can also make links to the following Web Pages:

- NEOLITHIC WARFARE: [http://www.msstate.edu/Archives/History/scholarship/neolithic.art](http://www.msstate.edu/Archives/History/scholarship/neolithic.art)
- Archaeology Magazine: [http://www.he.net/~archaeol/](http://www.he.net/~archaeol/)
- Native Tech: [http://www.lib.uconn.edu/NativeTech/](http://www.lib.uconn.edu/NativeTech/)
- American Indian Ethnobotany Database: [http://www.umd.umich.edu/cgi-bin/herb](http://www.umd.umich.edu/cgi-bin/herb)
- School of Self-Reliance: [http://home.earthlink.net/~nyerges/](http://home.earthlink.net/~nyerges/)
supermarkets are closed long enough, I may want to fall back on some food finding skills for a while... I look forward to future conversations. matthew

slingshot. Better I round myself up, gaining some experience with traps! My real interest in bushcraft skills for now is not in wilderness living, but in living from the wing bones of seagulls or snow geese. Anyone have any idea precisely which bone of the wing was used? Anyone actually tried sewing with a bone needle? Thanks for any answers you might have. Andre=E9 -=20

>Surviving at nature's will... -=20  Dr Andr=E9=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau -=09  Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec -=20  555 University Boulevard -=20  Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259

>At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

>Surviving at nature's will... -=20 -Dr Andr=E9=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau -=09  Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec -=20  555 University Boulevard -=20  Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec)

>At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

>Somewhere during my readings I saw an illustration on the making of a bone needle, but I forget exactly where I saw it. Aparently two methods were used however. Percussion smashing the bone into splinters then polishing the splinter and drilling a hole to hold the thread/sinew. The other method is graving the bone, drilling a hole and polishing the needle with sandstone or some other fine abrasive. If I find my source I'll send you the name of the source.

---

---258A33549C1-- -----------------------------------------------
From: "Dr A. F. Bourbeau" Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BB7A41.191@sgalag.qc.ca> Date: Sat, 21 Dec 1996 05:48:49 +0000 From: "Dr A. F. Bourbeau" Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive-SKILLS-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Subject: Re: Blowguns References: Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable James E. Burdine wrote: <=3E>=20 To continue the discussion from the thrower list,=20 NOTE: For those who do not know the thrower list, it is a very good place=20 to=20 exchange=20 information about throwing weapons such as knives, tomahawks, atlatl, ar= rows, javelins, bolas,=20 slings etc. I am a member and find it extremely useful and interesting. > I've used blowguns for > some time. My favorite blowgun is a short 4 feet long and .625 interior > diameter. After reading Laubin's book and reading a few other sources I > tried to recreate the Cherokee darts.<=20 Would love to know more about > the references to these sources, Jim! Any = more=20 precision=20 information on making the blowgun, the mouthpiece and the darts > were = appreciated. > I don't > quite have the wind to send a > > two foot dart enough distance to be useful, but a 10 to 12 inch dart=20 rks=20 > out just fine. I also like paper cones as a bore > seal.=20 Anybody ever tried birchbark instead of paper cones? > Mostly, > other > than > target work I have little use for the sharp darts, I do use stun darts=20=20 > to chase cats in heat from beneath my window, and stray dogs from my > yard. What do you put on the end of your stun darts? > > Touch of the Bear > JB Thanks,=20 Andr=E9 =20 <=3E>=20 > Surviving at nature's will...=20 Dr Andr=E9=E9-Fram=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec=20 20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
Knife Throwing, and Throwing Knives

1997 AKTA sponsored Western States Contest Announcement!

Thrower is a mailing list dedicated to throwing weapons. This includes such things as:

- **Knives** (Hi-res graphic)
- **Stars** (Hi-res graphic), and other shuriken
- **Spears** and **Atlatls**
- **Axes**
- **Lariates**, and **Whips**!
- **Bolas**
- **Boomerangs**, and **Chakra**
- **Slings**
- **Waddies**

Thrower participants have, collectively, a wide range of experience with many **primitive weapons**. As it happens, knives occupy 90% of the discussion. We talk about **choosing** a knife, **making** them (including steel sources), **caring** for them, **throwing** (how to) as hobby, sport, for hunting/survival, as a facet of **martial arts/self defense** training, and even **finding** them when they're lost! There are several files to get (see below) covering such topics as stances, throws, grips, custom and off-the-rack knife makers, catalogs, books, and other resources like this unusual source of throwers from Jason Townsend & Son.
If you want to **SUBSCRIBE** to thrower, put **SUBSCRIBE THROWER** and nothing else in your message body. This mailing list is being run on **dfw.net** hosts. Check them out as an ISP, especially in the central Texas area. Say hello from me.

The links below will lead to many resources on the subject of knife throwing. Most of these links have parallel files that may be downloaded by subscribers to the thrower mailing list. These links provide much of the same resource to non-subscribers.

The text of **Custom** contains a list of by-hand knife makers that specialize in throwing knives. There is also a pointer to an atlatl maker.

The text of **Books** contains a list of book and video resources on the subject of knife throwing.

The text of **off-the-rack** contains descriptions of the knives I obtained from various mail-order catalogs. The Lee Larae **Knifecenter** has some of these on display here.

The text of **my custom knives** contains descriptions of the knives I own from the makers in the CUSTOM file above.

The text of **CATALOGS** contains a list of mail-order catalogs containing throwing knives and other throwing weapons.

My **TARGETS** contains a discussion of various target materials and target construction techniques.

A nice article on throwing INDOORS with **LIGHT KNIVES** by **Ed Sackett** covers implements, targets, and techniques. Enjoy!

An article about the **Master of the Blade**, Bob Karp, by **Gene Hauenstein** which first appeared in a 1996 issue of Tactical Knives Magazine.

Here is a short article about making a simple, indestructable **handle** for all steel throwing knives.

I have some pointers to **periodicals** that sometimes have articles or other information about knife throwing.

The **Garvin** text contains a few examples of throwing from Peter O'Donnell's Modesty-Blaise.
The American Knife Throwers Alliance, A.K.T.A. a club with a quarterly newsletter, some dues ($20/yr), that sponsors knife throwing competition including a national event annually. Best thing is that membership includes a nice patch, a 20% discount on Lowcountry Throwing Knives, and also a 10% discount on Harald Moeller's VIPER throwers!

Mail to mjr, goto the knife page, or to Survival!
We are on the Internet Yellow Pages.

---

The American Knife Throwers Alliance, A.K.T.A. a club with a quarterly newsletter, some dues ($20/yr), that sponsors knife throwing competition including a national event annually. Best thing is that membership includes a nice patch, a 20% discount on Lowcountry Throwing Knives, and also a 10% discount on Harald Moeller's VIPER throwers!

---

The American Knife Throwers Alliance, A.K.T.A. a club with a quarterly newsletter, some dues ($20/yr), that sponsors knife throwing competition including a national event annually. Best thing is that membership includes a nice patch, a 20% discount on Lowcountry Throwing Knives, and also a 10% discount on Harald Moeller's VIPER throwers!

---

The American Knife Throwers Alliance, A.K.T.A. a club with a quarterly newsletter, some dues ($20/yr), that sponsors knife throwing competition including a national event annually. Best thing is that membership includes a nice patch, a 20% discount on Lowcountry Throwing Knives, and also a 10% discount on Harald Moeller's VIPER throwers!

---

The American Knife Throwers Alliance, A.K.T.A. a club with a quarterly newsletter, some dues ($20/yr), that sponsors knife throwing competition including a national event annually. Best thing is that membership includes a nice patch, a 20% discount on Lowcountry Throwing Knives, and also a 10% discount on Harald Moeller's VIPER throwers!
Hunting with blowguns

Date: Sat, 21 Dec 96 20:08:38 -0600 From: bmanrich Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vxacha.uqac.uquebec.ca, garyl@TELEPORT.COM Subject: More Introductions Hi Everybody. I just subscribed to the Primitive Skills Group today. I found your introduction quite interesting. I was a Haight Ashbury hippie too and I just a year younger. Chris, did we meet in the Fillmore West over New Year's in 1968? Anyway, I am quite straight now. I even have short hair and I am an Engineering Manager. You now know what happened to all those hippies! My favorite hobby is boomerangs and throwsticks. I got into this primitive skills stuff as a young child growing up in Panama. The first toys I wanted my Mom and Dad to buy were the blow guns and shrunked heads that the Choco Indians sold at the border towns. I used to spend all my time in the jungle learning about the native animals and surviving on my own with minimal equipment. When I was 17, I left Panama and went to Arcata California to go to college. That was the beginning of my hippy days. 10 years later, I came out of the fog with a MS degree in Mechanical Engineering and I have been stuck in a middle class rut ever since. I throw boomerangs and put out a boomerang newsletter to keep me busy. I belong to the boomerang rang_list and the thrower email subscription group as well. I look forward to hear more about the other subscribers. Cheers. Ted Bailey email to: tbailey@ic.net P. O. Box 6076 Editor of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 Fax: (313)-761-3632 Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/
advanced survival start

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (34 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:41 PM]
advanced survival start

I should also let you know that I am a little blunt. A good diamond hone ought to fix you right up! Then again, maybe you prefer water...
stones. :-} Boy all of you guys sure excede my capabilities and experience... Would like to go camping with any one of you! My early hippie years, 69-73 (yes I was a late bloomer) were spent in the Adirondack Mtns. in the extreem northern tier of N.Y. State. Did a lot of camping there, and saw plenty of rock concerts in cities like Montreal, Albany N.Y., and Boston, but didn't get to the Fillmore. There was Winterland in S.F. when I arrived in 1973, but the rest of you were gone by then... Ted, thanks for the WEB pointer to this group. Have included it also in my primitive weapons page (http://www.crl.com/~mj/prweapons.html matthew rapaport Philosopher/Programmer at large KD6KVH mj@crl.com In God we trust. All others we monitor! quine@dfw.net) advanced survival start

Harrison, b-man > RICH HARRISON, B-MAN Giving Fast Personal Service Since 1975! > “Laissez Les Bon Temps Rouler!” > Boomerang Man

One very similar) natives would use a very long, thin blowgun, 12 or more feet long, and they would “snake” the BG thru the branches, getting stopped, hunter, pegged the bloke. I recall that the breath-power came from using the diaphram to help propell the dart.

On this same show or (or

Native tracked animal as it swung thru trees, high above, and when the game watched S.American natives hunt tree monkeys, using bamboo material BGs. Length: perhaps 6 to 8 ft. Dia. might have been 3/4” ID. Darts were dipped in poison, that attacked the money’s breathing muscles. Native tracked animal as it swung thru trees, high above, and when the game watched S.American natives hunt tree monkeys, using bamboo material BGs. Length: perhaps 6 to 8 ft. Dia. might have been 3/4” ID. Darts were
dipped in poison, that attacked the money’s breathing muscles. Still if I were to turn to gathered materials, I would probably make them much as the Cherokee, and Creek indians did with thistle down tied on with sinew or fiber cordage. If you are lucky enough to live in the Southeast there is river cane. Elsewhere you might turn to a straight sapling of another type of about one inch or so in diameter at its narrowest point. With the cane you bore your way through or grave and split then scrape out the sections, and then glue and bind together. With the sapling you will have to split lengthwise through the center and then scrape out your channel through the center in whatever diameter you want. I would advise a .50 inch inner diameter or perhaps slightly bigger. I have no local sources of cane, and so rely on neo-primitive sources such as the hardware shop for sources of hard copper, steel, or aluminum tubing.

For a mouthpiece I use either cane tips or stool leg tips and hot glue them into place. I rely on dowlng or bamboo skewers in about 1/8 inch in diameter and either tied on cotton or acrylic yarn to fletch the dart. The tips are scraped to a point, and will penetrate card board or other fairly soft targets. My sources of information for my blowguns studies are A SPORTING CHANCE by Daniel P Mannix (1967) AMERICAN INDIAN ARCHERY by Reginald and Gladys Laubin (1980) AIRGUN DIGEST both the first and second editions WOODSMOKE compiled by Richard and Linda Jamison (1994) has an article by Steve Watts titled “The Ultimate Weapon-The Southeastern Indian Rivercane Blowgun” They also have an article on the fire piston. BLOWGUNS THE BREATH OF DEATH by Michael D. Janich (1993 Paladin press) with a dramatic title but actually has a pretty solid description for the neo-primitive that wants to make a blowgun. I’ve seen Laubin’s book at local bookstores as a new release paper back. Neo-primitive is my own label for people using primitive techniques today but not necessarily with traditional materials.

JW wrote: > Hello all, I am very pleased to be a part of this group. I am a 23 year old veteran of the US Army currently serving with the Virginia National Guard and will retire in about 2 1/2 years. I am wondering if we are seeing a pattern develop here of the personality types that are interested in this subject? I was raised by both my own parents, Dad a forester and Mom a teacher and librarian, joined the Army out of high school, was a linguist working in intelligence, also served as a supply sergeant and in the infantry, was literate in Korean and Chinese, semi-literate in French, barely literate in English (especially after 5 years in Korea) and now the computer uru for my Brigade (if only they knew how little I really know). My hobbies include (when I can find the time): archery, hunting, shooting (modern and blackpowder), reloading, running (occupational), swimming, biking, computers, reading (voraciously), history (was my Brigade’s historian), and community service. I am now starting to build primitive bows (an outgrowth of my interest in archery, I have been hunting since I was 10) which lead to an interest in flintknapping (led to this list by post on knappers list), which has led to interest in the subjects this list should be exploring. Many thanks for starting this list. I hope to learn alot. Also, I would like to say that I don’t believe that there is such a thing as a stupid question. No questions, no answers. I should also let you know that I am a little blunt. (not that blunt, did that get sent, if so I apologize) No anger, just a little too straightforward sometimes. Tacless or so some have said. -- Sincerely, Parent Duty, Honor, Country
advanced survival start

basket or pocket. I have read that Indians would drive the grasshoppers across a field to another group of Indians waiting with dried grass in a

are high in nutritional content, like grasshoppers. Grubs are high in fat and nutrition. One thing to keep in mind in hunting any animal you are

your throat, like legs and wings. It is also best to remove the head in most cases. All wild meat should be cooked thoroughly, for wild animals contain

course this means having a knowledge of where the poisonous insects poison sacs are located. You also want to remove all parts that would hang in

It can only speak practically about insects in the U.S. however, it is my

found that M-80s and hand grenades were more effective means to catch fish and were probably more environmentally friendly as well. Ted Bailey

"tea" into a slow stream. For some reason, the "tea" is a toxin that prevents the fish from getting oxygen to their gills and they float belly up. I

upset. You can play with them in your hands if you do not crush them or eat them. The natives put them on a hot stone to make them mad, then,

small brightly colored flogs called: "Dedrobates" (sp?). They are also called "Poison Arrow Frogs" They exude toxins from their skin when they get

anyone know what poisons were used by primitive people and how >> the heck it was >> manufactured? >> In Panama, we have many species of

Bailey" Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET Subject: Re: Blowgun poisons >> >>Do you or

and got married > Ted, I was stationed at Galeta Island, on the pacific side of Panama, for 2 1/2 years. Did you hear the tale about the Cuna Indians kicking the Guardia > National's butt with blowguns? Seems that the powers that be in Panama wanted to annex the San Blas Islands. Well the Cunas were cool about it > but the Guardia Nacional started marching through the jungle to take the > Cuna's home (the San Blas islands) away. The Cuna Indians drove the Guardia > National out of the rain forest with nothing more than their blowguns. The > Guardia was very well equipped (m-14's, etc.) Poor Guardia. > >> >> The San Blas Indian women used to hide small blow guns in their Mola clothing and shoot the Spanish with poison darts hundreds of years ago. The Cuna have never been subdued by anyone. "White men" were not allowed to spend the night in their islands until 1957. When I was 17, I shipped out on a Merchant ship to the Far East with a 75 year old Cuna Indian. He was the medicine man and told me all kinds of neat stuff about the plants and animals in the jungles of Panama. I wish I had written it all down. That was almost 30 years ago and most of it has left me. >> >> Ya'll Take Care. Looks like a great bunch of crazys here. Hey, any of > you old hippies get to Mayday 1969, 1970 or 1971? Nope, Sorry - Ted Ted Bailey | email to: tbailey@ic.net P. O. Box 6076 | Editor of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 | Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 | Fax: (313)-761-3632 Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/
row across a field that they would light and roast them on the spot. I have not treated this, so I don’t know how practical it would be or if it even works. It could be hereyesy. ----------------------------------------------- Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.quebec.ca TRIBE Homepage: http://users.aol.com/tbpri3l/Tribe.html

---

---
advanced survival start

Just an introduction to anyone I haven't met yet. My name is Benjamin Pressley. I

To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
Subject: INTRODUCTION
Content-Type: text/plain

From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996

primitive direction finding wasn't all that primitive. If you look into archeoastrology, you'll find that pre-Conquest peoples in both North, South, and Central America had extremely accurate observatories all over the place. They clocked the movement of stars, planets, sun and moon, had buildings and whole communities arranged on lines to correspond with various orbits, holes in buildings where the sun shone thru only on the equinox, etc. The precision of their work often astounds modern day astronomers. Since they had no magnetic compass, they didn't orient so much north/south/east/west as toward where the sun appeared at equinox and solstice. Which reminds me -- today is the Winter Solstice. > > > > >

For thrower, send a HELP command to: hseaver@nortwest.net hseaver@csd.uwm.edu
From: Ralph Ray Craig wrote: Ralph Ray Craig wrote: On Dec 20, 3:53pm, SamWijJoe@aol.com wrote: > > > > > > For thrower, send a HELP command to: Hseaver@saglac.qc.ca > > > > > > 5011 Ext 5259 > > > > > > At Nature's Will Inc. > > > > > > 3801 Rang St-Martin > > > > > > Chicoutimi, (Quebec) > > > > > > CANADA G7H 5A7 > > > > > > 418-543-2888 > > > > > > Professor of Outdoor Pursuits > > > > > > University of Quebec=E99ec > > > > > > 555 University Boulevard > > > > > > Chicoutimi, (Que=E9bec) > > > > > > CANADA G7H 2B1 > > > > > > 418-543-5011 Ext 5259 > > > > > > At Nature's Will Inc. > > > > > > 3801 Rang St-Martin > > > > > > Chicoutimi, (Que=E9bec) > > > > > > CANADA G7H 2B1 > > > > > > 418-543-2888 > > > > > >bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

http://indy4.fal.cc.mn.us/~isk/stars/ I also have reprints of an article written by Jim Miller on the so-called medicine wheel of the Mandan that has references: <199612210617.BAA06855@butthead.globecomm.net> <32BC21CA.68F4@cfw.com>

http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html Snail Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 20015 Charlotte, NC 28202

http://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (45 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:41 PM]
teach primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. I write for several magazines like American Survival Guide, Backwoodsman and Wilderness Way. I co-founded an organization called TRIBE that now has members in 46 states, Canada, New Guinea and Guam. I publish a newsletter for TRIBE also that many of you will find interesting, I'm sure. We are a network that operates non-profit to connect people interested in primitive skills with resources and other people. I am skilled in many areas of primitive skills. Shelter building, fire making, water sources, some edible and medicinal plant knowledge (enough to get by), tools from stone, shell, bone and wood, braintanning animal hides, traps and snares, fishing technologies, cordage making, lighting methods, cooking without aid of modern utensils, and much more. Hunting Weaponry is particularly an interest of mine. I teach classes year-round and do a lot of demonstrations for schools, museums, etc. The particular weapons that my research has been in are slings, bols, atlatls, non-returning throwing sticks, blow guns. I will be glad to help out anyway I can with questions, etc. If you are interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills that I have please inquire. My skills are based on skills used by primitive people for thousands (more?) of years. If you want more information about our organization, TRIBE, check out: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html. Ted Bailey does this homepage for me. As I get more Internet/Web page savvy I plan on putting out a mini-newsletter for people interested. For now, check out that site and it will tell you more about what we have to offer. Well, enough for now. I’m looking forward to interacting with everyone in the Primitive Skills Group list. My thanks to Andre for getting it set up.------------------------------------------------------------------

Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca
TRIBE Homepage: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
Snail Mail: TRIBE
P.O. Box 20015
Charlotte, NC
28202

---------------

Archived Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:10:44 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE13ED.75BC@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:09:01 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uquebec.ca
benjamin@SAGLAC.QC.CA Subject: Re: primitive direction finding References: <199612200617.BAA06855@butthead.globecomm.net> <32BC21CA.68E4@cwf.com> <32BB394D.718F@lamerica.net> Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1
Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable

Dr Benjamin@PERIGEE.NET
MIME-Version: 1.0

To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: primitive direction finding

23:49:44 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: making fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

23:50:46 EST
Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca
Message-ID: <32BE1D47.6968@perigee.net>
Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:48:55 -0600
From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley)
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
Subject: Re: Fire

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (46 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:41 PM]
advanced survival start

know how to cord the fibers for strength, let me know. I don't know if I can explain it adequately, though, in this medium. I would be glad to send

very easy to make cordage from, green or dry (if not rotten). Scrape green leaves with a dull edge, like the back of your knife or pull leaf back and

backyard from > > which I understand some very good cordage can be made. Would I have to > > dry the leaves prior to attempting to separate the fibers? Yucca fiber wadded up and dried is a great wash cloth too! I bought one at an Indian village in Mexico (close to Tampas) and wish I'd bought a case! Try it both ways, drying first and not. As I remember the leaves are pounded on a metate, (Read as pounded just enough to crush the leaf and separate the fibers, no jackhammers allowed!) Then the fibers are separated and dried. Of course they are hung on previously dried yucca fibers

Now, save the sap for soap and shampoo (high saponin content), and if it starts to ferment, well save that too, for medicinal purposes only...of course! The point at the end of the leaf can be bent and pulled 'till it separates from the leaf except for a fiber that'll stay with it. Pull this fiber carefully back to the base of the leaf and you'll have a pretty good needle and a foot or two of thread. Saw this done in Mexico at a tequila factory tour and I don't remember whether to pull the point up, as the leaf grows, or down. I guess you'll just have to try this stuff. (I know, I know, tough assignment, but someone has to do it! :> ;>) ) You need to see the needle and thread to believe what the effect is. Take Care Merv -- Time flies like an arrow ----------------------------- | Merv Martin * * | | eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com * * * | | www.midtown.net/~merv * * | | www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html (Free Web Pages) | -----------------------------Fruit flies like a banana---

Yucca leaves are...a great wash cloth too! I bought one at an Indian village in Mexico (close to Tampas) and wish I'd bought a case! I've also been wanting to try this, but haven't gotten around to it yet. I've spoken to people who have done it, so it works, and apparently is quite > simple to use once you've got one that works. >=20 > I'll try to get my hands on the info and get back to you. Meanwhile, > anyone that is successful, let us know!! >=20 > I'm pretty sure Ben Pressley knows about this more than I do. >=20 > And=E9 THE MAN to talk to on fire pistol is my friend 'Mountain Mel' Deweese. He is pictured in the Woodsmoke videos doing this and I have personally seen him do it many times at our annual event, TRIBE Gathering. If you wish to contact 'Mountain' Mel: Mel T. Deweese, 1825 Linden St., Grand Junction, CO 81503, Phone: 970-242-8507. If you want to see the Woodsmoke video you can order it from: WOODSMOKE, Richard & Linda Jamison, 11401 Willow Hill Dr., Sandy, UT 84092, Phone: 801-571-1790. The video is entitled "Fire III" and also covers fire saw, fire thong and fire plow, price is $34.95+$3.50 S&H. They also have a book that discusses it entitled "WOODSMOKE: Collected Writings on Ancient Living Skills" for $15.95+$1.50 S&H. Fire pistol requires a very title pistol with a handle that is quickly inserted into and removed from a chamber that contains it that also hold a tiny bit of tinder (Usually a type of palm frond tendrils). Done correctly the forcing of the air molecules are caused to compress so rapidly that you virtually achieve spontaneous combustion or at least a glowing ember. Japanese commonly use brass cylinders of this type for lighting cigarettes. Mel used one carved from Buffalo horn.=n...... Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perige.net Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca TRIBE Homepage=20 http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html Snail Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 20015 Charlotte, NC 28202

I have forgotten who first brought this up, but, cordage is probably one of the more important products being used for rope, traps, bow string= s, > > lashings, clothing, etc... I have some yucca plants in my backyard from > > which I understand some very good cordage can be made. Would I have to > > dry the leaves prior to attempting to separate the fibers? Yucca

Yucca leaves are very easy to make cordage from, green or dry (if not rotten). Scrape green leaves with a dull edge, like the back of your knife or pull leaf back and forth over a limb. As all the 'green' (that's scientific, isn't it?) is removed you will be left with some really nice fibers to cord. Dry, it is only a matter of rubbing away the dried material. There are many varieties of yucca. Some stalks also contain a multitude of fibers in some varieties. If you don't know how to cord the fibers for strength, let me know. I don't know if I can explain it adequately, though, in this medium. I would be glad to send you an instructional drawing of mine, however, for $2 to cover copy, S&H. Just write me at below address, -----------------------------
Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richard P. Feynman

The American Physical Society

Richa...
Benjamin Pressley Okay Benjamin, Spill it!!! :) I'd hate to be accused of using carbide bombs on a primitive skills list so I _really_ need some info on natural fish poisons. Also do you have anything on the white camas lily (Camass zigadenus)? Merv ---Time flies like an arrow ---------------
| [ Merv Martin ] | [ eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com ] | [ www.midtown.net/~merv ] | [ www.rewards.net/mega/Martin4531.html ] |

--Plots to progress--
Archive-Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 02:07:33 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxxa.uquebec.ca From: CAGrean@aol.com Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxxa.uquebec.ca, CAGrean@AOL.COM Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 02:06:41 -0500 Message-ID: <961223020639.1888320882@emot03.mail.aol.com> To: primitive-skills-group@vaxxa.uquebec.ca Subject: Re: Cordage In a message dated 96-12-22 21:07:23 EST, you write: >I have some yucca plants in my backyard from which I understand some very good cordage can be made. Would you have to >dry the leaves prior to attempting to separate the fibers? > >In my limited experience with yucca it works best when dry. After drying heat the stalks or leaves to break them into fibers. Do you know how to twist the cordage? It is simple enough but I don't know if I can reduce it to writing. Let me know if you are interested.

--Plots to progress--
Archive-Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 02:09:53 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxxa.uquebec.ca From: CAGrean@aol.com Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxxa.uquebec.ca, CAGrean@AOL.COM Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 02:09:06 -0500 Message-ID: <961223020903.1654189926@emot10.mail.aol.com> To: primitive-skills-group@vaxxa.uquebec.ca Subject: Re: Fire piston In a message dated 96-12-22 21:17:19 EST, you write: >>I recently ran into an interesting site called the "History and Primitive >>Technology Page". They have a page about making fire with a tool called >>a >>"Fire Piston". I tried to make one, but so far have not been successful >>in >>making fire. Does anyone know ab Try Ellsworth Yeager's books, (most libraries) and it may help to know that they were used in polynesia for your research. CAG 08/12/96

--Plots to progress--
Archive-Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 02:51:03 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxxa.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE2C1B.251@rand.nidlink.com> Date: Sun, 22 Dec 1996 23:52:12 -0700 From: Chris Smith Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxxa.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM MIME-Version: 1.0 From: Chris Smith References: <32BB9646.5AD2@saglac.qc.ca> <32BE1D47.696B@perige.net> Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit In Panama, we have many species of small brightly colored frogs called: "Dedrobates".折尺青蛙手 Cascade

--Plots to progress--
Archive-Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 03:46:33 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxxa.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE3921.2D1@rand.nidlink.com> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 00:47:45 -0700 From: Chris Smith Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxxa.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxxa.uquebec.ca, eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com Subject: Re: Cordeage References: <199612230459.ZAAX19040@butthead.globecomm.net> Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii In that article, Wyatt Knapp writes: "The European version was discovered in the early 1800's in connection with the manufacture of air guns in France. It was noticed that when they were discharged in the dark the air guns gave off a light. Later tinder was ignored using the heat generated by charging the airgun." [Have you tried this? Is it practical? Anybody got an airgun and some tinder? Maybe a tinder holder for an airgun's business-end might be a clever add on. Direct the gas flow through a small inline turbine to fan the flame, maybe ramp up the flow with a narrowed exit outlet (auto needle valve if there's not too much flow resistance) -- hehe... somebody stop me!] The article summarizes the literature, adds more to Mel Deweese's fire piston story, shows plans, gives the Woodsmoke/Video contact info, tells where to get a ready-built fire piston from Bob Perkins at BPS Engineering, etc. Mention is also made of the fire poker and fire saw. If this isn't too far off-topic, what are those? Sorry about writing about you in the 3rd person, Wyatt. Nice site, great page. Chris

--- End of message --

--- End of message ---
Thanks, Chris

---

**Fire piston**

---

**Fire piston**

---
Fruit flies like a banana—It sounds like a great subject to me. Pottery is not as hard to produce in a survival situation as many think. Although, it does require gathering usable clay (usually easier found than most realize), proper tempering (sand, burned shell; 25%), proper construction (Pottery being used for cooking must be more carefully formed than artsy pottery), it does take a 4-7 days at least of drying time before it can be fired, proper pre-heating and at least two firings. I'd be glad to discuss this subject in more detail. Because of the time needed pottery would definitely be a pursuit for a long term camp. Short term it is more practical to use other methods of cooking, which would also be a great subject for discussion. As far as boiling or cooking a stew, like you would use pottery for can be accomplished by hot rock cooking in a wooden container produced by burn & scrape methods or a rawhide container that is suspended over hot coals (It does drip though. If you hot rock cook it in it does not drip) or line a pit with a rawhide and hot rock cook in it (Make sure you use a fresh hide to do this, right off of the animal. This method also cooks any remaining flesh clinging to the hide into the stew, where it won’t be wasted).
quoted-printable Ted Bailey wrote: >I found that M-80s and hand grenades were more effective >means to catch fish and were probably more environmentally friendly as = well. >=20 Ted, what's an M-80? I read that somewhere in Asia, again can't remember where, homemade=20 bombs made from corked bottles were used in the same way to catch fish. =20 Anyone know anything about this? I know it's highly illegal and would=20 never do it, just want to know for survival purposes. Andr=E9=20
Surviving at nature's will...=20 Dr Andr=E9-E9-Fran=E9=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

------------- Archive-Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 21:00:56 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE4A72.6262@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 09:01:38 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: The fire hole! Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Hey everyone, here's something new and exciting. I just about had an=20 orgasm when I read about this! Thanks to Ben Pressley for bringing it to my attention. Folks, please=20 20 try this one for me! (I can't because I broke my spine a couple of weeks=20 ago playing hockey. I'm well on my way to full recovery now, there will=20 20 be no permanent damage, the doc confirmed this yesterday, but I have to=20 20 wait at least two more months without doing any strenuous activity=20 whatsoever. Thanks to all who have shown concern...) BEN PRESSLEY WROTE: Andre, I'm just=20 sending this to you, you can send it to the rest of the group, if you want. I noticed in your intro to the primitive skills group that you mentioned you=20 20 had not found any firesaw material successful where you live. Try this, Barry Keegan and Mike Fairbanks came up with this one. Remember the New Guinea fire saw we played with at TRIBE Gathering with the bamboo strip and basswood hearth? Remember you came up with the idea to elongate the strip by using two other attached bamboo sections for handles? Well, Mike Fairbanks was one of the guys there that successfully made an ember, well later on he came up with the idea of taking the split open, wedged open hearth, made from any soft, dry wood in hand...stuff it full of=20 20 tinder, loosely...make a pinky sized impression in the tinder to receive the ember...take this hearth in hand and rub it up and down on a wedge of=20 20 any hardwood jammed into the ground vigorously...and if you are good as Mike or Barry, you'll have an ember in 10 seconds in the opening you=20 20 made in the tinder bundle! I may have sent you a copy of Barry's drawing on this in the stuff I sent you, if not let me know. It will also be in the=20 20 next TRIBE newsletter in March. Barry is ready to give up hand drill and bow drill for this method, he says it is so easy!---------------------
Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net BEN, let's find a name for this technique! How about the fire hole? =20 20 What does Barry Keagan or Mike Fairbanks call it? Cheers, Andr=E9=20 20 ----------------- Surviving at nature's will...=20 Dr Andr=E9-E9-Fran=E9=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

------------- Archive-Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 21:07:05 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE44E4.5309@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 09:07:48 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Welcome Benjamin Pressley Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable In the name of the group I would like to say Welcome! to my friend Ben=20 20 Pressley, and thank him for his introduction. Ben is one of the most knowledgable persons I know with regards to=20 20 primitive skills, and I am most delighted that he is with us. He=20 20 also=20 20 is a wealth of information concerning leads towards information he=20 20 lacks, seems to know everyone! Ben has also agreed to help me=20 20 manage this list, and is co-responsible=20 20 for the orientation we have given the group. Welcome Ben! Andr=E9=20 20 --------------------- Surviving at nature's will...=20 Dr Andr=E9-E9-Fran=E9=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

------------- Archive-Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 21:13:38 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE46DE.675F@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 09:14:22 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Group Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Following streams Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Ben Pressley wrote: >As far as following a stream, this probably works in most cases, but >be aware of following one in a mountainous area where two streams may run >together and into a hole in the ground and disappear. I was once lost and had to spend the night out >without gear because I=20 20 tried to follow a stream back to camp and took a wrong embranchement=20 20 where the Y in the stream had gone underground. To find my way back,=20 20 after going up and down the creek for miles to find my camp which was on=20 20 it's edge and never finding it, I finally decided to follow the creek IN=20 20 the creek, and that's how I found out about my mistake. Andr=E9=20 20 --------------------- Surviving at nature's will...=20 Dr Andr=E9-E9-Fran=E9=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

------------- Archive-Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 21:15:31 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE4F67.777F@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 18:16:07 -0700 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.COM.CA From: jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM Subject: Re: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca: Dr Andr=E9-E9-Fran=E9=E7ois Bourbeau >Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec >555 University Boulevard >Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) >CANADA G7H 2B1 >418-545-5011 Ext 5259 >At Nature's Will Inc. >3801 Rang St-Martin >Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) >CANADA G7H 5A7 >418-543-2888 >bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

------------- Archive-Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 21:22:02 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE4F67.777F@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 09:22:47 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Where to find caves Content-
I've been involved in wilderness survival pursuits since I was a kid in Scouts. I became an Eagle Scout at 16 and have been roaming the whole life. Just moved to Houston after being in Austin for 8 years. I'm pursuing a master's degree in archaeology, possibly a PhD after that.

<32BB5649.7F91@iamerica.net>  <32BF2225.6F98@i-link.net>

From: Chris Smith Reply-To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Fire plow and fire saw

At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Que=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259

Dr Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Que=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259

Surviving at nature's will...=20 Dr Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Que=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259

Greetings,

I am writing to you because I am a little bit worried, you see I have been reading the discussing list and I was wondering if there was any help you could offer me. I am 18 years old and I am going to be leaving for the bush in about 6 months. I am planning on doing a lot of survival stuff, like building a fire with a fire saw and a fire plow. I have been reading about these things and I was wondering if you could give me some tips on how to use them.

Thank you in advance.

Best regards,

Chris Smith

---

advanced survival start

Type: text/plain; charset=utf-8

http://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (53 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:41 PM]
think that I'd we'd fit in well back in > the day. That should do it for now. >> > > PEACE > > \ } > / > \ > / > \ / Russ > > ( _ ) > ) > ( > ( _ _ ) > > Welcome Russ, I'm sure I'll ask you questions from time to time. Sounds like you work for an oil company, right? In your work have you found any Native American artifacts, like knapped lithic projectile points, pottery shards, mummy's and the like? Any evidence of weaving or braiding discovered in your excavations? What tribes and cultures have you encountered in your 'time-travels' as an archaelogist? How's that for a start . I must be responsible for this old hippie thread. Sorry, I'm about as far from that as you can get now (though I'm the Godfather of a clown), it was way different, but that was another time. I also used to make 500 lb. napalm bombs and became a Marine - I guess my bio hasn't reflected perfect ticket-purchasing, but I try now ...(and that's my story and I'm sticking to it). I do hope no one feels they have to exchange old hippie stories. I'd rather crawl under the rug and die (ha). Glad to hear from you on this neat list. Chris

--- Archive-Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996
22:48:45 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE63B2.687D@ saglag.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 10:49:22 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglag.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM Subject: Re: Fire with guns References: Content-Type: text/plain; charset=is-885-9 -1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable James E. Burdine wrote: >&gt;20 &gt;[Have you tried this? Is it practical? Anybody got an airl...
buds of the Horse Chestnut in > Spring and the fruit of the Buckeye. The Rappahannock made their poison > by putting corneal into a tub and mixing it with fish brine and > allowing it to stand awhile. The poison in all cases was mixed into the > water in still places that were often still from damming up certain > parts of a stream. Men usually stood ready with bow and arrow, in case > the poison was not strong enough to thoroughly stupefy the fish, as > often happened. They were then gathered in baskets or speared as they > came to the surface. The Cherokee also used the > berries of polk sallet. > My experience has been with ground up black walnut hull and the > berries of polk sallet, though not extensive. I have a friend who uses > polk sallet berries extensively by mixing them in the water upstream of > a slow moving stream. As it washes downstream there are fish that > surface and float on top as if dead. I have another friend, Christopher > Nyerges, in California that uses the nuts of buckeye, the fresh > leaves > of the turkey meulein plant (mostly a Southwestern U.S. plant), the > crushed fruits of the wild cucumber or manroot (gourd family) and the > entire wooly blue curl plant (Trichostema lanatum). > Fish that has been poisoned is safe to eat, as I said earlier it only > knocks them out. Fish poisons work best in a still area of a stream > where fish are. You can also dam up an area. > > ------------------------------- Archive-Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996
I believe this applies to all mass-killing methods, it does a great deal of harm to the ecosystem that you use it in. What is the point of killing 1000 fish at the bottom of the water formation (lake, sea, stream, etc.), so you are getting a relatively low yield percentage-wise. Around 5-10% usually. Second, and this might be the only real effective method of fishing, you are killing a whole lot of fish that you won't eat. It just doesn't make sense. I've made fish with normal shotguns by placing tinder material in a heap enclosed by a fence of sticks driven into the ground or in a hole under a root (to prevent tinder pile from blowing away). Maybe this would work with airguns too?

Dr. Andrée-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi, (Québec) CANADA
G7H 2B1
418-545-5011 Ext 5259
At Nature’s Will Inc.
3801 Rang St-Martin
Chicoutimi, (Québec)
CANADA G7H 5A7
418-543-2888
bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

Surviving at nature’s will...
advanced survival start
00:09:20 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BF7327.32@perigee.net> Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996
00:07:35 -0600 From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
benjamin@PERIGEE.NET MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA Subject: Re: Fish
poisons References: <32BE7257.7126@saglac.qc.ca> Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Dr
AF Bourbeau wrote: >=20 > Ben, thanks for such a great post on fish poisons. I'd sure like to > have the scientific names of all the plants you
mention though, if you > have them. In different parts of the world, as you know, there can be > so many different names for the same plant or a
same name for so many > different plants as to make things very confusing. >=20 > Again, thanks. Looking forward to see if any of the plants you
mention > or botanical relatives of them could be applicable here in the north. >=20 > Andr=E9 > -- > ---------------------------------------------------------> Surviving at nature's will... >=20 > Dr Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau > Professor of Outdoor Pursuits > University of Qu=E9bec > 555
University Boulevard > Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) > CANADA G7H 2B1 > 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 >=20 > At Nature's Will Inc. > 3801 Rang StMartin > Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) > CANADA G7H 5A7 > 418-543-2888 >=20 > bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca > --------------------------------------------------------- Good point. Common names can be misleading. I wish I were more knowledgeable on scientific names. I'll do the best I can. Maybe I'll run these
plant names past my friend Christopher Nyerges. He is the plant expert and see if he knows the scientific names. I need to contact him anyway and
twist his arm to join our group. We're going to needa good plant person sooner or later. By the way, how many do we have in the group with
knowledge of medicinal and edible plants? Please step forward, so we can pick your brains from time to time. I do OK with plants and know enough
to survive, but there are so many I know that know so much more than me. ----------------------------------------------- Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca Snail Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 20015 Charlotte, NC 28202 USA E-Mail:
tribe@perigee.net TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. Check out our
home page for more information. TRIBE Homepage:=20 http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html
================================================================================ Archive-Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996
00:13:11 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE7781.3CB0@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec
1996 12:13:53 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIMEVersion: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Tinder for fire piston and flint & steel Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 ContentTransfer-Encoding: quoted-printable I have been communicating with Wyatt Earl who wrote the article on fire=20 piston and was asking him about
tinder other than charred cloth. Our=20 communications might interest some of you... here goes. Howdy Andr=E9! First, thank you so much for
your generous and kind appraisal of my fire piston article. It was a lot of work but very fun. I am glad that you brought up the question of the
shredded bark tinder that was mentioned in the article. I was reporting what John Rowlands said he used but in all my years of experimentation on
the subject of catching sparks I have never had any succes with the dry, finely shredded bark. In addition, no one who is into primitive tech. that I
have talked to has indicated success either. Ditto for mouse or birdnests. I have only had success with charred material. The only thing I have seen
that is uncharred that will catch and nurture a spark is a type of fungus that is sometimes found in birches or cherry trees and it is amazing to see.
Because of your question I am going to edit my article to indicate the above observations. I appreciate you input and look forward to further
conversations as well. It sure would be fun to make a living writing things like that firepiston article. Happy Holidays, Andre Hi Wyatt, You might
like to know that I have finally identified that birch fungus=20 you are talking about. It is sometimes called Chatoquin or Bearshit but=20 the
scientific name is Innonotus obliquus. It is indeed a fungus (at=20 first I thought it was a disease) but it is a white rot fungus rather=20 than a brown
rot like most rots we usually see. This white rot attacks=20 the wood lignum and cellulose differently than brown rot and is=20 responsible for
forming a material which is similar in many ways to=20 charred cloth. I am still looking into this and trying to find other=20 fungi or material
botanically related to Innonotus to try them out. =20 Maybe this will help you with the tinder issue and maybe you and others=20 can help pursue
this research further. Innonotus was also used medicinally in Russia, one source mentioned that=20 (can't remember off hand, but I did write it
down somewhere). For tinder, this stuff is indeed amazing. One very fine spark into it=20 and you can't put it out! However, I've noticed that if it
dries out=20 too dry, it no longer works. Much testing still to be done... Best regards, Andr=E9 PS We've got a great primitive skills group with
many very knowledgeable=20 leaders, you are very invited to join us! --=20 ---------------------------------------------------------- Surviving at nature's
will...=20 Dr Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20
Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA
G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca ---------------------------------------------------------================================================================================ Archive-Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996
00:17:39 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: MIME-Version: 1.0 Content-Type: text/plain;
charset="iso-8859-1" Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 22:16:21 -0400 To: primitive-skillsgroup@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA From: "Ted E. Bailey" Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLSGROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET Subject: Re: Fishing with bombs >Ted Bailey wrote: > >>I found that M-80s and hand
grenades were more effective >> means to catch fish and were probably more environmentally friendly as we= ll. >> >Ted. what's an M-80? An M80 is a very large firecracker. They float, so you have to weigh them down. We never used them in small streams, just the large rivers. They would
kill or stun fish at a range of about 10 feet. Great way to get bait for shark fishing. I really don't want to encourage this. I just wanted to make a
statement that it is an option if you are desperate for food and have small explosive devices. When I was a teenager, I lived in Panama and used to
work on merchant ships during the summer. In 1968, I took a trip on a Victory ship to Viet Nam. At the mouth of the Saigon River there is a port
called Cape Jacqu=E9s (sp?)= =2E Ships would anchor there overnight before making the trip up the river to Saigon. It was imperative that you did
not go up the river at night. The entire time we were waiting at the mouth of the river, small U.S. Army boats would circle the ship and throw a
hand grenade into the water every 10 - 20 minutes at random locations and intervals. This was done to stun any Viet Cong divers that would
approach ships to place explosives. That's all I know about fishing with explosives in S.E. Asia. - Ted Bailey Ted Bailey || email to: tbailey@ic.net P.
O. Box 6076 || Editor of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 || Fax: (313)-761-3632 Internet
Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/ ================================================================================ ArchiveDate: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 00:19:34 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: MIME-Version: 1.0 ContentType: text/plain; charset="us-ascii" Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 23:00:18 -0400 To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca From: "Ted E. Bailey"
Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET Subject: Primitive Technology Calendar For those of you
who did not know it, there is a calendar of Primitive Skills events at the following URL: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html Best,
Ted (another ex-hippie) Bailey Ted Bailey || email to: tbailey@ic.net P. O. Box 6076 || Editor of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom
Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 || Fax: (313)-761-3632 Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/
================================================================================ Archive-Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996
00:26:47 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE7AB5.401A@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec
http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (57 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:41 PM]


1996 12:27:33 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Fire piston and flint & steel tinder Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Just got another communication from Wyatt: Hello again... Upon further reflection we are talking about finely shredded bark as FIREPISTON tinder aren't we? My experiments were with flint and steel methods of firemaking & I've had no success with uncharred material. But I remember a conversation I had with Bob Perkins, an engineer who makes firepistons, and he said that over in the Asian areas where the fire pistons were in use they only found the fine "Hairlike fibres" of a certain kind of palm or bamboo frond would work. It was something indigenous to that area and it seemed that firepiston use was confined to places where it grew. Still I think an amendment to the article is in order so as to share the information. Thanks again, Wyatt --=20 ----------------------------- Surviving at nature's will...=20 20 Dr Andr=E9-E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca ---------------------------------------------------------- Archive-Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 00:40:14 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE7DDA.73D4@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 12:40:58 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Fire with guns Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Ben Pressley wrote: > I have made fire with a muzzle loading rifle by placing cloth or some other tinder in the barrel loosely and then firing it into the air. Sometimes it takes a couple of attempts, but it gradually comes down flaming. I have heard this could be done with a shotgun also if one carefully removes the shot in the shells down to the wadding and then firing it into the air. --=20 -------------------------------------------------- Hi all, I have developed (maybe re-invented, who knows) an easier way with a=20 muzzle loader that works very well. I just put a strip of cotton cloth=20 in the priming cavity, fill it with priming powder, and press the=20 trigger. Bang, fire everytime! With a shotgun, firing in the air just doesn't work! Not for me at=20 least. Another example of survival book exaggeration? I don't know,=20 but the only way I've been able to do it is by taking out the shot down=20 to the wadding, putting the bullet in the gun which is on the ground=20 with the tip slightly up pointing into tinder enclosed in some way and=20 to which the gunpowder from a couple of other shells has been=20 added, then shooting. I've yet never been able to make a fire with a rifle, and if someone=20 could do that, I would be impressed and would love to know how. Andr=E9=20 Surviving at nature's will...=20 20 Dr Andr=E9-E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca ---------------------------------------------------------- Archive-Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 01:00:20 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BE882E.1DA0@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 13:01:02 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Fishing with primitive bombs Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Neal McSpadden wrote: > > I just have a question about these methods of fishing. Why on earth > would you do it? I don't doubt the effectiveness or ease of the > methods, but there are many drawbacks which I think outweigh the > advantages. One, for the use of bombs/grenades/explosives, most of the > fish stay on the bottom of the water formation (lake, sea, stream, > etc.), so you are getting a relatively low yield percentage-wise. > Around 5-10% usually. Second, and I believe this applies to all > mass-killing methods, it does a great deal of harm to the > ecosystem that=20 > you use it in. What is the point of killing 1000 fish at once, > having > half of them spoiled, and then having none left for next spring > or > whatever. Not to mention that none of these are really a > primitive > > skill > > , but that's beside the point. > > -- > You are quite right Neal, these are > highly illegal practices which we would never do unless in a true survival situation. You are also right that we are off topic with the explosives > and grenades. I was trying to gain information on ways, if there are any, to make primitive bombs using just a bottle one might have and > primitive > materials. This my very well be impossible, but maybe not because of the pressure which builds up when the bottle which is attached to a rock > sinks. > That=20 > 20 what we are trying to research. I know that ecologically this is > absolutely unacceptable, unless we are in a life or death situation. > Drying > and smoking the 1000 fish might save your life during the winter. Please > take no offense to many of the issues which we discuss on > this > group > which > are unacceptable in real life. We are just trying to learn.=20 Some survival techniques we can only discuss and never try. Thanks, Andr=E9=20 --=20 ----------------------------- Surviving at nature's will...=20 20 Dr Andr=E9-E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Qu=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca ---------------------------------------------------------- Archive-Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 01:22:52 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32BF6F6.1B84@rand nidlink.com> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 22:24:06 -0700 From: Chris Smith Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Re: Fishing with Explosives Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit Hi Neal, I see you got on the list. Welcome! > I believe the fish with explosives thread started when Ralph (i think) mentioned that a couple M-80's might not be a bad idea to include > in a survival kit for last ditch fishing. Small and with a high > likelihood of obtaining significant calories. They are relatively small > as explosive charges go and damage to the ecosystem would be limited. > Fishing with dynamite is practiced sometimes in

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (58 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]
advanced survival start

Mexico, I can tell you ("Special Mexican Bait" it was called). I think, chemically speaking, a > small metallic Sodium canister might be the most environmentally > "friendly" type of explosive reaction. The water would get slightly > saltier temporarily and hundred of fish kills would be unlikely, up > and down a waterway (which no one here wants - hunters have a big interest > in Conservation as a lifestyle). On the downsize, DO NOT get metallic > Sodium wet, until you're really ready. I suppose I was thinking of a different type of explosive fishing. The fishing I've seen done with explosives used grenades and other high explosives that did massive damage to the environment and the fish. Although I think it would still be a last resort kind of thing. > Not Primitive, but I believe the topic can stray to modern survival > items that at least can be thrown into a backpack to edge one's bet. > However, there ARE backpack carried tactical nukes...I can see your > point about drawing the line somewhere. I admit, I'm addicted to > technology, as a recent widespread prolonged power outage taught me > recently with a couple days of 20 below (F) temperatures and lights > out. I'm here to learn from these luminaries. I'm filling up my hard > disk rapidly with all these topics I'm saving. > Technology helps :) --

http://www.clark.net/pub/ngami | | Nga Mi Son Phat Gia Quyen http://www.clark.net/pub/ngami/kf | | Director of Research @ http://www.hanwei.com | | the Han Wei HomePage

http://www.uqac.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (59 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]
American medicinal plant database (of the U.S.D.A.) at the Ethnobotany Cafe=E9 website, I found a page listing American plants, used for their poisonous qualities, apparently. They are listed by tribe and are well cross-referenced. They're listed by their scientific names and tribal users. Click on any one of them and common names, referenced reading and a description presents itself. Indian plant poisons=20=20http://probe.nalusda.gov:8300/cgi-bin/browse/mnadb=20 Even more interesting to me were the links to the full database (Related=20Links page) of 80,000 world plants used for food and medication (including antidotes for plant poisons - there were even antidotes for poison arrows!). http://countrylife.net/ethnobotany/ The database Search Engine was unfamiliar to me and had far more features than my VCR, but I was delighted to see that (with some fumbling and mumbling), I could do useful work. There is a help link. I enjoyed my time in this enormous database - hope this helps. Merry Christmas, Chris Smith

Archive-Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 08:27:54 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <328E97C.6782C@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 20:28:32 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Date: Thu, 26 Dec 1996 23:50:35 -0600 (CST) Message-ID: <3D71F.26162C1.2492F@saglac.qc.ca> Subject: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Testing-please disregard Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit

American medicinal plant database (of the U.S.D.A.) at the Ethnobotany Cafe=E9 website, I found a page listing American plants, used for their poisonous qualities, apparently. They are listed by tribe and are well cross-referenced. They're listed by their scientific names and tribal users. Click on any one of them and common names, referenced reading and a description presents itself. Indian plant poisons=20=20http://probe.nalusda.gov:8300/cgi-bin/browse/mnadb=20 Even more interesting to me were the links to the full database (Related=20Links page) of 80,000 world plants used for food and medication (including antidotes for plant poisons - there were even antidotes for poison arrows!). http://countrylife.net/ethnobotany/ The database Search Engine was unfamiliar to me and had far more features than my VCR, but I was delighted to see that (with some fumbling and mumbling), I could do useful work. There is a help link. I enjoyed my time in this enormous database - hope this helps. Merry Christmas, Chris Smith

Archive-Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 08:27:54 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <328E97C.6782C@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 23 Dec 1996 20:28:32 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Subject: Merv Martin wrote: >One of the basics to carry with you is the bark especially the inner bark (cambium) of the willow. White willow seems to be the best, but all have a chemical called salicine. It's the natural form of aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid). So whatever you use aspirin for can=20 substitute willow bark for. The leaves work too but are a different strength. I've used willow bark tea for aspirin on survival trips and it works,=20 but may irritate your stomach (no buffers like in store bought aspirin). =20 I would like more information on preparing this willow bark tea for aspirin on survival =20substitute wilow bark for. The leaves work too but are a different strength. I've used willow bark tea for aspirin on survival trips and it works,=20 but may irritate your stomach (no buffers like in store bought aspirin). =20 I would like more information on preparing this willow bark tea for aspirin on survival =20substitute wilow bark for. The leaves work too but are a different strength. I've used willow bark tea for aspirin on survival trips and it works,=20 but may irritate your stomach (no buffers like in store bought aspirin). =20 I would like more information on preparing this willow bark tea for aspirin on survival =
know what you find. Once we understand this, there may be 20 other materials we can find or create with similar proprieties. Andr=E9 --20  
------------------------------------------------------------------ Surviving at nature's will... --20 Dr Andr=E9-E=9F-E=70 Bourbeau =99 Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Que=E9bec 20 555 University Boulevard=20 20 Chicoutimi, (= Que=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin Chicoutimi, (= Que=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca  
------------------------------------------------------------------ Archive-Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 15:26:16 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca Message-ID: <32C20223.1FDE@perige.net> Date: Wed, 25 Dec 1996 22:42:11 -0600 From: benjamin@PERIGEE.NET (Benjamin Pressley) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive-Skills-Group@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca Subject: Fish Poisons Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii "To: Primitive-Skills-Group@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca From: visual01@ONRAMP.NET (visual engineering) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca, visual01@ONRAMP.NET SIGNOFF PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP

POTTERY OVERVIEW

Benjamin Pressley

---

I have been gathering some California buckeye seeds to roast them, having heard they were edible, and I also read that they are full of saponins which can be used to stun fish. I haven't tried it myself, and the seeds are still in the fridge. Buckeye does make great fire sticks, though, and it's a feast for the eyes as well. Aloha, --John

---


OBTAIN CLAY (Creek or river bank, etc.) 2. PROCESS If fresh, remove large rocks and organics, add water, if needed, wedge, knead, remove lumps. If dried, pound with mortar, reconstitute, let settle, let dry (if too wet), wedge, knead, remove lumps. 3. ADD TEMPER Sand, grit, shell, grog (broken pottery), etc. 4/5-1/3, knead, wedge. 4. VESSEL CONSTRUCTION Moulding, modeling, slabbing, coiling, welding, stretching/thinning, smoothing, malleting, etc. 5. SURFACE TREATMENTS Smoothing, stamping, burnishing, cord marking, brushing, cob impressing, punctuating, incising etc. 6. INTERIOR TREATMENTS Smoothening, burnishing. 7. DRYING 3-10 days, depending on conditions. 8. PRE-FIRING 9. FIRING 10. USE

Cooking, storage, transportation, burial, processing, eating, etc.

---

---

Hi Benjamin. As to your plants poisons: A few I will need to look up. I would be happy to provide you with an article about poisons and how to use them. White Camus Lily -- I have to look up, but I don't think we're dealing with anything rare here. In Calif. anyway, you're probably referring to Death Camas, Zygadenus sps. Otherwise, you'd need to tell me range so I know what area of the country you've found this in. I am unfamiliar with that common name. Devil's Shoestring: Again, this is a common name that I am not familiar with, and it could be a local common name. I suspect you might be referring to Hedera helix, common English ivy, whose leaves and berries contain glycoside hederagenin, which could cause death. A related plant-- probably in your neck of the woods, is Aralia spinosa, sometimes known as Devil's walkingstick, has berries that could kill if eaten in quantities. Could you be referring to that? [As far as Devil's Shoestring I found out it is actually Tephrosia virginia, a perennial herb and legume related plant-- someone asked about the Catawba people to treat rheumatism. It is also known as Goat's Rue. It grows in NC and SC from the mountains to the coast. The correct reference was found in Frank G. Speck's book, Catawba Medical and Curative Practices (1937). --Benjamin] Horse Chestnut and Buckeye are both the same thing: Buckeye, the Ohio state tree, and there is also a California buckeye. The genus is Aesculus, referring to the winged fruit in the genus. It is also known as Aesculus hippocastanum, whose leaves contain saponins which can be used to stun fish.

---

Thanks to Christopher for the help. He does have some excellent books on plants and a workbook on survival skills. Just check out his homepage for details. There are also some nice links there. And
if you're in his neighborhood he conducts some fine classes. I've been twisting his arm to get him to join us. He would be great to have for plant knowledge alone. He is also skilled in many other ways.------------------------------------------------------------------------------------- Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca Snail Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 20015 Charlotte, NC 28202 USA E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive living skills. Check out our home page for more information. TRIBE Homepage: http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/ Tribe.html Information On TRIBE Gathering: http://users.aol.com/tbpriml/ Tribe_Gathering.html==================================================================================================== Archive-Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 15:31:22 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqacebe.ca Message-ID: <32C204E8.580C@perigee.net> Date: Wed, 25 Dec 1996 22:54:00 -0600 From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive-Skills-Group@vaxcha.uqacebe.ca Subject: FAST, SURVIVAL BOW DRILL STRINGS Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Barry Keegan is a good friend of mine that wrote an excellent article in our TRIBE newsletter. He is a very skilled survival and wilderness living skills instructor. He wrote the following excellent article on the subject of making strings for bow and drill firemaking. I think you all will find it extremely informative. Also if anyone is in the NY area, check out his excellent classes. Information on contacting him follows his article.------------------------------------------------------------------------------------- ------ FAST, SURVIVAL BOW DRILL STRINGS Why Spend Time Fiddling With Your Bow? By Barry Keegan =A9Barry Keegan 1996 WHY BOW DRILL? The hand drill fire is the fastest means of making fire: if you must start from scratch. I found this to be true in arid environments or seasons of drought. New York State is far from being arid! After years of practicing the hand drill fire I have reached MY physical limitations. I was finally able to make hand drill fires with a spindie and fire board of very dry Mockernut Hickory (our most dense native wood) but I still couldn't make fire with a dump Mullein stalk spindle on a willow fire board. Using a bow drill to make fire is more reliable than a hand drill. Because of this climate, damp wood may be all that I have to work with. The problem, though, is finding a good bow drill string that won't take long to make or find! This was a lot of work and lead me to rediscover what can be used. WHY PLANTS? I limited my self to plant fibers because in a survival situation I can't always rely on animal products to be available for cordage material. For clarity=92s sake I will rank these bow drill strings in categories beginning with the most year-round available cordage and ending with the most specialized and seasonal ones. Tree bark, branch bark and root bark, roots, wood, stalk fibers, leaf fibers, vines and runners. TREE BARKS I will begin with tree barks because they are available when the ground is covered by even the deepest snow. Tree barks also happen to make some of the strongest cords and most of the good ones can be peeled at any time of year. I list tree barks in two categories: Branch barks and Root barks, because each behaves differently and are often handled differently. Branch Barks "Branch Barks" is the category of bark that comes from any part of the tree that is not a root. However, certain parts of the tree provide far stronger bark than others. Select a shoot or branch that is somewhat straight, preferably with no branches, scars, dead spots or any such flaws that interrupt the bark fibers. The branch should be about three feet long and at least 2" thickness to obtain enough bark for a cord. Avoid very tapered branches. Do pick a healthy branch, dying trees have dying bark and work about as good as they look. Knot holes in bark strings may cause separations that tear out during use. What kind of tree you use is of major importance. The strongest bow drill string of tree bark fiber in New York also happens to be one of the easiest to make. Mockernut and Pignut Hickory work better than other hickories and are my favorite choices! Peeling Bark As a general rule, May 1 through August 1 is peeling season: the time of year that bark peels easiest from trees! This is not a long season but farther south it may be longer. The Basswood tree has its own season which starts earlier and ends later than others. Basswood is the easiest to peel at any time of year. There are three methods that I know of to remove bark at any time of year. None of these methods are necessary during peeling season unless you have an unusually difficult branch. To obtain bark out of "peeling season", you may use pounding, split-separation or if we weren't trying to make a fire, we could use the fire to carefully roast or steam the bark off. I will begin by discussing the easiest of these methods and end with the most difficult. I will not discuss the roasting method for obvious reasons. Peeling In Season Cut or abrade off your branch of choice and remove any twigs or branchlets, if you have them. On the cut end try to peel the bark free, as if to begin peeling a banana. If it easily separates, and it should, examine the branch for knot holes or areas of removed twigs. You may want to use a sharp stone, scythe, or knife to score the entire length of the branch to make two or three bark strips of even width and as little taper as possible. This is the best way if you did have branchlets on your branch because you can make the cuts align with the branch scars. Holes in your bark strips are less of a problem if they are on the edge of the strip instead of the center. Careful peeling can produce good results without scoring if you peel both or all three sides at the same time. You need at least two feet of cord from this branch so go slowly and carefully. Watch for sticky spots! Knots can be very sticky. Pull the bark strip at a 35 degree angle or less from its branch to minimize the tapering tear. Pulling straight up (90 degrees) or back on itself (180 degrees) will drastically increase the taper or tear out. Sometimes rocking the strip back and forth as you pull on it can free up the bark at a sticky knot area. If it still sticks, consult the ponding section of this article for another way. Once in a while I find a branch that won't peel, even in peeling season! Trees can be as different as people are, so, if this happens, find another tree or at least a healthier branch. Peel your bark right away or store the branch completely under water until peeled. Elm bark may not peel the next day after it has been cut. Hickory may not peel after being cut three days before and is noted to stick in times of drought, especially on high hills. On the contrary, Basswood may still peel a month after being cut if it sat in a damp shady place. As a general rule, the youngest branch or shoot that gave the longest length in the shortest amount of time produces the best bark! Some trees like Aspens will give strong bark only on its one year old growth. Good luck finding long straight Aspen twigs that are big enough to provide enough bark to make a sturdy bow drill string. I had to peel 25 ordinary sized twigs to make mine! If a branch broke off about two years ago and a bunch of sprouts grew from that wound, there may be enough bark on one of these sprouts to make six bow drill strings. Arrow and basket makers purposely cut back Willows and other plants to force them to grow more suitable shoots for materials. This is called cuposing! The deer or a storm may have done some cuposing for you. If you know your trees well, i.e. Willows grow by water and deer go there a lot, you may find some choice sprouts growing from a broken "buck-rubbed" branch. Beaver love to eat Aspen! Pounding Bark "Out of Season" If the bark doesn't peel from your branch, find a smooth stone or smooth the bark off of a dead log, this will be your anvil. Then find a sturdy branch of wrist diameter for your pounding mallet. Break it to a one foot length. Scrape your anvil and mallet smooth of any protrusions that may injure the bark that you pound. Lay the branch across the anvil and begin pounding at the thick end of your branch. Pound till the branch separates on all sides. You need to strike hard, but not so hard that the bark gets crushed. Work down about six inches of the branch's length, pounding every inch or so on at least two of its sides. The branch does separate from the mallet side as well as the anvil side of each blow, if the strike is well centered. Once you get the feel for how much or little pounding is needed, you can pound the whole branch and then peel it, of course, going slowly to watch for sticky spots. Pound where it sticks till it pulls free easily. If you pull the bark hard past where it sticks you may leave the strongest part of your cord stuck to the branch as the bark tears out thinner. If it is close to peeling season and the bark sticks, you may score the bark before pounding. Little pounding is needed at this time to remove the bark. In mid winter you will have to pound the bark so hard that it will split where it wants and you will have to choose from what you are left with. At times you may have to pound so hard that the branch becomes
splinters! Hickory bark is very tough and can take a lot more beating than other "cordage grade" tree barks. Hickory and Basswood are the easiest branch barks to remove by pounding because they don’t crush easily under the mallet. Gentle mallet work can help remove the bark from Pawpaw, Elm (Slippery and American), Tulip Poplar and Willow. These barks are more delicate! Try working with one to three inch diameter branches because the bark is thicker on bigger growth and can withstand more mallet work. However, pounding becomes ineffective on branches that are more than three inches thick. You should have no problem obtaining at least one, hopefully two or three, full length bark strips from your branch. Even if the worst happens and your branch is in splinters, save those splinters and keep reading, you can still make a string!

Split - Separation In or Out of "Peeling Season" Once you have learned the split-separation peeling method you may never pound bark again! Now you can peel bark (if you haven’t already). This method of peeling may require a lot more practice than pounding but you will be able to peel bark from nearly all of the cordage grade trees at any time of year! Take your thumb-thick branch from a tree or bush by abrading half way through its top side. Then pull down on the branch so it splits and make the split run about two inches down the desired end of the branch. Then abrade the branch off. You need to split the whole branch in half. Any split-shoot basketry book or article will show you how to do this, but, basically you need to pull with equal pressure and angles on both halves of the split to guide the split down the stick. If one side becomes thicker, pull it at an increased angle to steer the split back to center. This is a faster way to make two equal sized strips without using a stone flake to score the branch. A branch that is thicker than a thumb may be split in three by splitting and pulling on all three splits at once or also split into four by halving the halves.

Remove bark by snapping the split stick near the center very slowly by bending it in both hands, pressing your thumbs on the bark side and bending away so it breaks down to the bark, revealing it. Next bend the break at a 35 degree angle so the wood that clings to the bark peels away from the bark. Then, if you’re a righty, hold the branch at the crack, in your left hand so it lays along your left arm down to your elbow and with your right hand, lift and pull away the wood from the bark. You want the branch to stay flat and taut. Just as if guiding a split, you need to pull on the wood part of the branch so it does all of the bending because it is much thicker than the bark. This should look like a backwards, small letter "y". If the branch cracks or breaks off, peel up the next section as you did the last, from where it broke off. Keep peeling it like this until all of the wood is removed from that half of the stick. Then flip the branch around so you are holding the peeled bark in your left hand and the stick part lays along your left arm, as before, and remove the rest of the wood from the bark. With practice this can be done in two or three minutes. You may lose some bark to splitting on its outer edges. This is less likely to happen if you split the branch into thirds or fourths because the flatter the bark lays on its branch, the easier it is to pull free. Imagine peeling masking tape from a wall compared to peeling it from a pencil which has been covered with a length-wise strip of tape and the edges wrap all of the way around. Remove the splinters from your bark strips by pulling the bark splinter at a 180 degree angle (back over onto itself). This causes it to intentionally tear out without tearing far at all. Woods that are flexible, like Willows (especially shrubs), will allow you to split a branch in half, third or fourth down along its growth ring(s) so the wood part of the branch is about as thick as the bark is. This makes it easiest to separate the bark without breaking the wood part as much. Butternut or White Walnut are too fragile to be pounded but may give strong cordage when peeled in this manner. Even in January it provides a strip whose strength compares to some Hickories. Do remove the outer bark when using Butternut, Mulberry, Osage Orange, Aspen or any bark that won’t twist without cracking the outer bark. Outer bark may be removed by scraping with a stone flake or by abrading it off on a gritty rock, but the fastest method leaves you with the strongest results: split-separation! Split the outer bark from the inner bark at one end by using a sharp edge or bend the bark so the outer part snaps away from you. Then peel up a section and split it in half as you would split a branch, by pulling with equal tension and angles on both halves. Root Bark I will discuss how to dig, find and select roots for cordage later in this article. How many branches are on your root is not as important for root bark as it is for root wood or branch bark strings. Hickory root bark is the strongest of the root barks. It is as strong, if not stronger, than its branch bark and is easier to remove. Hickory, Walnut, Osage Orange, Red Cedar and some of the Elms and Cherries have root bark that is much stronger than the wood part of their roots. With Mulberry, Black Locust, Willow, American Elm and Hemlock, their root barks and root-wood fibers can be equally as strong. I have found some variations of strength within species and environments. With the exception of Hickory, the root barks listed above share a unique characteristic unlike any other local plant fiber cordages: elasticity! A root bark bow drill string can stretch up to two inches when pulled tight. Because of its elasticity bow drill strings of root bark do not need to be as thick as those of branch bark. A thumb-thick root is overkill and a pinky-thick root is ideal. For an example of extreme strength I made a fire with a Hemlock tree’s root bark string, taken from a root which was half as thick as a pencil. The string itself was as wide as a strand of spaghetti. To remove root bark, first cut your root and remove its smaller branches. Hang the root over a branch and hold it by both ends as if you were using it to saw the branch. A branch with toothy bark is ideal but do remove any sharp protrusions that may cut the root or its bark. Buff through the root bark on one side by pulling the root in a back and forth sawing motion. As soon as you’ve exposed the wood core down the whole root’s length, pry the inner root gently out of its bark sheath.=20 Peel the bark from the root at the same 35 degree angle that you would to remove tree bark. Root bark peels easiest in bark peeling season. It peels almost as easily when out of season! You do not need to pound roots to remove their bark. Split-separation does work on roots but it’s not necessary. Walnut is one of the few root barks to remove by pounding from its brittle outer bark. Most of the root barks listed here may be used “as is” for bow drill strings. Root bark is a better choice than branch bark when it’s available.  

Barry Keegan and his partner Anthony Follari operate a school in Elmsford, NY called PATHWAYS that teaches a variety of primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. If you wish to contact Barry or would like a brochure of classes they have to offer, write or call: Barry Keegan, 6 Heath Lane, Elmsford, NY 10053, Phone: (914) 592-8961.  

Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca Snail Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 20015 Charlotte, NC 28202 USA E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information. TRIBE Homepage: 20 http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html Information On TRIBE Gathering: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html
trees. ------------ Chris Smith

===============================================================================
Archive-Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 15:31:57 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vax.cha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32C0EAB0.33B8@lagac.qc.ca> Date: Wed, 25 Dec 1996 08:49:52 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxha.cha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@lagac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Poaching and environmental concerns Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable

...
advanced survival start

anything about your plants but i have 3-4 books about australia bush foods which aboriginals have used for years, as a well as sas survival books

Hi, my name is Adam and i recently subscribed and was watching in the background. I am an aussie teen. I don't know much if to second your question, yes I've found all sorts of native artifacts, its pretty much a daily occurrence when we're out in the field. I also work in the lab were I do whatever has to be done. My main job in the lab though is the illustration of the artifacts for publication. I'm an archaeologist and an ARTAeologist I guess you could say. We find lichities and pottery, but no mummies down here. We do have the occasional burial, but rarely. No signs of weaving since this area of Texas has acidic sandy soil that pretty much dissolves everything that is not rock. As for my "time travels" as an archaeologist, those hopefully lay ahead of me. I've been doing this for a while now, but only for about the past four years professionally (that is, getting paid for it). That is why I'm pursuing higher degrees, otherwise I'm relegated to being a hired shovel bum. I have run several projects, but technically I don't get the credit since the law requires a master's degree to do so. Soon that will be taken care of. I did go to the Middle East for a while. You can find artifacts there all over the place (just walking down the road). I was chasing a herd of camels in the desert once and found an area where the wind had deflated some dunes. I found several flint cores, some pottery (that dated to around 200 B.C. from Syria), mussel shells from the ocean, and two hearts with burned bone in them. People have lived there for thousands of years so I guess is no surprise that there are artifacts everywhere. I even found an old net weight made of stone washed up on the beach. That is about as extensive as my travels go (oh yeah, I hung out in Amsterdam for a while ). Otherwise, I've just travelled all over Texas diggings sites. As for the tribes, that is hard to say. Most of the stuff is Archaic or Paleo so we have no idea who the tribes were that far back. Of course some of the upper layers have artifacts usually associated with the Karankawa, Cherokee, Apache, depending where you're at in the state. Other than that, I'm just the young hippie type trying to make a living by having a good time out in the woods looking for stuff. It's a pretty "groovy" job. Peace, Russ
advanced survival start

plant for fish poisoning. The scientific name is Eremocarpus setigerus. Hey, even I can come up with scientific names thanks to Chris's great

boulevard > chicoutimi, (quebec) > canada g7h 2b1 > 418-545-5011 ext 5259 >=20 > at nature's will inc. > 3801 rang st-martin >

--

seeds. has anyone else ever heard of such a thing? >

-jeff

that's a new one for me, jeff. thanks for the post, hope someone else can

0600 from: benjamin@perige.net (benjamin pressley) reply-to: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uquebec.ca subject: re: mullein as fish

aspirin-like stuff, although i imagine that would just cause throat pain instead of stomach pain! and the bark can also makes it taste a lot better. mint also works as a stomach-soother by itself. and i have also used red willow bark with the same effects. as for

parts? what strength does the tea need to be to correspond to an accurate dosage? is there a way to remove the bitterness? are there other ways

buffers like in store bought aspirin). i would like more information on preparing this too. is it really the inner bark that works or all of the living

bomboming' thread!! andre wrote: i've used willow bark tea for aspirin on survival trips and it works, but may irritate your stomach (no

how to cure squirrel pelts with table salt (sorry mom!?!?) i am really enjoying this group, although i was getting a little worried about the 'fish

about 7-8 years and have been interested in / practicing 'primitive' skills since my uncle taught me how to shoot a bow, bareback from a horse, and

archeologist, currently working in juneau ak. i have worked all over quite a bit of the western and midwestern us. i have been flintknapping for

kgb13@ptialaska.net (kenneth g. biddle) reply-to: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uquebec.ca, kgb13@ptialaska.net subject: re: willow bark as

aspirin (and an introduction) hey all, first let me introduce myself a little. my name is greg biddle, i'm an archeologist, currently working in juneau ak. i have worked all over quite a bit of the western and midwestern us. i have been flintknapping for about 7-8 years and have been interested in / practicing 'primitive' skills since my uncle taught me how to shoot a bow, bareback from a horse, and how to cure squirrel pellets with table salt (sorry mom!?!?) i am really enjoying this group, although i was getting a little worried about the 'fish bombombing' thread!! andre wrote: i've used willow bark tea for aspirin on survival trips and it works, but may irritate your stomach (no buffers like in store bought aspirin). i would like more information on preparing this too. is it really the inner bark that works or all of the living parts? what strength does the tea need to be to correspond to an accurate dosage? is there a way to remove the bitterness? are there other ways to ingest it other than tea? one way i found to 'buffer' the willow bark is to add a little bit of mint (especially peppermint leaves) to the tea - it also makes it taste a lot better. mint also works as a stomach-soother by itself. and i have also used red willow bark with the same effects. as for dosages, i usually follow the 'intuitive' rule of about one cup of tea every 4 hours or so until the problem goes away. and i have heard that willow bark can be smoked to ingest the aspirin-like stuff, although i imagine that would just cause throat pain instead of stomach pain! and the bark can be chewed - same stomach and taste problems, but this does work especially well for toothaches (yeah, go figure!) well, thanks for letting me put in my 2 cents - i'll be watching closely, as i think there is lots coming from this group for me to learn. greg

 EST sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uquebec.ca message-id: <32c01444.24c4@perige.net> date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 11:35:00 -0700 from: benjamin@perige.net (Benjamin Pressley) reply-to: Primitive-Skills-Group@vaxcha.uquebec.ca subject: Re: Willow bark as aspirin
advanced survival start
From: jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
jburdine@PIPELINE.COM Subject: Re: Fire with guns The main problem with springpiston airguns is that while being simple in operation they
can be easily damaged by dieseling. That causes damage to the springs and the piston seal. Also it would take a very special tender to be small
enough to pass down an airgun barrel and still hold together long enough to be found and then used for firestarting. I've tried the felt cleaning
pellets without success, and trust me DO NOT SHOOT TOWARD YOUR HAND AND TRUST THAT ANY PAD WILL STOP THE FORCE OF,
OR PENETRATION OF THE FELT PELLET. Forgive me for shouting, but benefit by one of my moments of supidity. Air rifles can be good, quiet
foraging tools for small game, but if you rely on it for small game hunting don't risk it for fire making. You will be encouraging conditions that
shorten the life of your tool. JB ================================================================================ ArchiveDate: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 16:13:20 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 08:30:13 -0500 From:
sean michael Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, sean@TTACS1.TTU.EDU Subject: archiving posts To: primitiveskills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM Message-ID: MIME-Version: 1.0 Content-Type: text/plain; charset="iso-8859-1"
Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable I just joined the list, and am finding that the posts are arriving individually, and, consequently,
cluttering up my email "In" box. Can someone tell me if there is a command to send that will result in the posts arriving as an archive or some other
compilation? Please help. Thanks. \\\// -(@ @)- -------------oOO--(_)--OOo------------------------------ Lurking in a blind spot=8A =8Asean
================================================================================ Archive-Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 16:13:27
EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: References: <1.5.4.32.19961224080814.006778b0@nlc.net.au>
MIME-Version: 1.0 Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii" Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 08:44:39 -0400 To: primitive-skillsgroup@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM From: "Ted E. Bailey" Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLSGROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET Subject: Re: Medicinal Uses Of plants (and edible) >Adam wrote: >> >> > By the way, how
many do we have in >> >>the group with knowledge of medicinal and edible plants? >> >> Hi, my name is Adam and i recently subscribed and was
watching in the >> background. I am an aussie teen. I don't know much if anything about your >> plants but i have 3-4 books about australia bush
foods which aboriginals >> have used for years, as a well as sas survival books on trapping, smoking, >> shelters and foods for all countries. >> >>
CYA > Please send Wichity Grubs ASAP - Ted Bailey Ted Bailey || email to: tbailey@ic.net P. O. Box 6076 || Editor of "Boomerang News" Ann
Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 || Fax: (313)-761-3632 Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/
================================================================================ Archive-Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 16:13:34
EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: References: <32BE7257.7126@saglac.qc.ca> MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset="iso-8859-1" Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 08:42:09 -0400 To: primitiveskills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET From: "Ted E. Bailey" Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLSGROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET Subject: Re: Fish poisons >Dr AF Bourbeau wrote: >> >> Ben, thanks for such a great post on
fish poisons. I'd sure like to >> have the scientific names of all the plants you mention though, if you >> have them. In different parts of the world, as
you know, there can be >> so many different names for the same plant or a same name for so many >> different plants as to make things very
confusing. One of my boomerang friends is a leading Canadian authority on botany. I think his job is to travel all over Canada and photograph all
the trees in their various states over the 4 seasons and then issue a reference book of some kind. I don't know if he has an interest in primitive
technology. I think he would be happy to answer an occasional question about plants such as what Andr=E9 has asked above. My friend's name is
Ken Farr. His email address is: kfarr@am.ncr.forestry.ca Tell him Ted Bailey said hi. Ted Bailey || email to: tbailey@ic.net P. O. Box 6076 || Editor
of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 || Fax: (313)-761-3632 Internet Address:
http://ic.net/~tbailey/ ================================================================================ Archive-Date: Fri,
27 Dec 1996 16:13:39 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: MIME-Version: 1.0 Content-Type:
text/plain; charset="us-ascii" Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 08:30:36 -0400 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA
From: "Ted E. Bailey" Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET Subject: Re: Fishing with primitive
bombs >Neal McSpadden wrote: >> >> I just have a question about these methods of fishing. Why on earth >> would you do it? I don't doubt the
effectiveness or ease of the >> methods, but there are many drawbacks which I think outweigh the >> advantages. One, for the use of
bombs/grenades/explosives, most of the >> fish stay on the bottom of the water formation (lake, sea, stream, >> etc.), so you are getting a relatively
low yield percentage-wise. >> Around 5-10% usually. Second, and I believe this applies to all >> mass-killing methods, it does a great deal of harm
to the ecosystem that >> you use it in. What is the point of killing 1000 fish at once, having >> half of them spoil, and then having none left for next
spring or >> whatever. Not to mention that none of these are really a primitive >> skill :), but that's beside the point. >> -- >You are quite right
Neal, these are highly illegal practices which we >would never do unless in a true survival situation. You are also right >that we are off topic with the
explosives and grenades. I was trying to >gain information on ways, if there are any, to make primitive bombs >using just a bottle one might have
and primitive materials. This my >very well be impossible, but maybe not because of the pressure which >builds up when the bottle which is
attached to a rock sinks. That's >what we are trying to research. > >I know that ecologically this is absolutely unacceptable, unless we are >in a life
or death situation. Drying and smoking the 1000 fish might >save your life during the winter. > >Please take no offense to many of the issues which
we discuss on this >group which are unacceptable in real life. We are just trying to learn. >Some survival techniques we can only discuss and never
try. > I do agree with the above comments. I originated the explosives issue, but I do not promote it. I was just comparing this method to fishing with
oxygen inhibitors. I'm not proud of everything I ever did. I was a teenager when I did these things and I didn't do it very often. I was more repulsed
by watching the indians poison streams. I prefer to fish with rod & reel. I was a great skin diver as well. Although I used a rubber powered spear
gun, I never used SCUBA gear. I would dive over 100 feet down and shoot fish up to 200 pounds and then drag them to the surface. I learned to hold
my breath for 2-3 minutes and special free diving techniques by reading the book "The Pearl Lagoon" That was a story about 2 California youths
who traveled to Polynesia with their Uncle. They learned to dive using instructions from Pearl divers. The instructions in the book were in fine detail
and they worked. In three months, I went from holding my breath for 30 seconds and diving 20 feet to holding my breath for 90 seconds and diving
60 feet. Over the next several years, I extended that significantly with practice. There is a whole new world under the sea and a great place to gather
food and useful materials. Are there any other divers in this group? Ted Bailey || email to: tbailey@ic.net P. O. Box 6076 || Editor of "Boomerang
News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 || Fax: (313)-761-3632 Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/
================================================================================ Archive-Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 17:09:50
EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 16:11:56 -0500 From: sean michael Reply-To:
PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, sean@TTACS1.TTU.EDU Subject: Hello? To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca,
tbailey@IC.NET Message-ID: MIME-Version: 1.0 Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii" Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7BIT References:
<32BE828E.1DA0@saglac.qc.ca> Hello, anyone out there? Please post info regarding receiving posts as a file vs. individually.
************************************************************************* Sean Michael Visiting Assistant Professor Dept. of Landscape
http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (68 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]


Well, I just did a little and Fish

---

Majella showed me how to dive for suckers using a lasso made from snare wire. He would catch a great place to gather food and useful materials. >Are there any other divers in this group? I was out last summer with my good friend Majella. detail and they worked. In three months, I went from holding my breath for 30 seconds and diving 20 feet to holding my breath for 2-3 minutes and special free diving techniques by reading the book "The Pearl Lagoon" That was a story about 2 California youths who traveled to Polynesia with their Uncle. They learned to dive using instructions from Pearl divers. The instructions in the book were in fine detail and they worked. In three months, I went from holding my breath for 30 seconds and diving 20 feet to holding my breath for 90 seconds and diving 60 feet. Over the next 20 several years, I extended that significantly with practice. There is a whole 20 new world under the sea and a great place to gather food and useful materials. >Are there any other divers in this group? I was out last summer with my good friend Majella Morin who is also an 20 member of this group. Majella showed me how to dive for suckers using a 20 lasso made from snare wire. He would catch a dozen before I could even get one. He used to feed his dog team with this impressive technique. I think that the holding your breath techniques might help someone fish for survival, and I certainly would like to hear more about it. And=9F --=20

---

Mullein as fish poison

---

The scientific name is Eremocarpus *setigerus*. Hey, even I can come up with scientific names thanks to Chris's great reference to the Ethnobotany Cafe! That is very possible though the guy who told me about using mullein was discussing the mullein that grows around here (Maine) when he talked about it. He said you just crush up some seeds and throw them in. I am trying an experiment with leaves as its darn hard to find mullein seeds this time of year. Leaves don't seem to work. I have a few seeds and may try them. The guy also said the seeds only stink the fish. They are paralyzed for a while. He cautioned that if I were to try it I should not do it on a sunny day or all the fish would die of exposure as they floated to the surface. Jeff -- "But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts is. A good part of her territory is already bare and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her villages generally are not so well shaded as ours." -Thoreau email: jstevens@cs.neu.edu home page: http://ecs.neu.edu/home/jstevens --
advanced survival start
taking game on a level that is nearly equal for the game in question. Modern guns, explosives, and techniques require very little knowledge on the

Status: U X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 Andre; I didn't post it to the group, mainly because I wasn't sure it was appropriate on a primitive skills group,

851631854.003 From: jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine) Subject: Re: Fishing with bombs Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii"

Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com Message-Id: Mime-Version: 1.0 Date: Thu, 26 Dec 1996 09:11:50 -0700 To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca X-UIDL: 

chic1.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTP id MAA09172 for ; Thu, 26 Dec 1996 12:06:15 -0500 (EST) Received: from [38.11.182.10] (ip10.las-

Fishing with bombs] Content-Type: message/rfc822 Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by 

GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive-Skills-Group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Subject: [Fwd: Fishing with bombs] Content-Type: message/rfc822 Received: from chic.saglac.qc.ca (chic [204.19.37.2]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTID id NAA00566 for ; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 13:14:54 -0800 (EST) 

Received: from mule1.mindspring.com (mule1.mindspring.com [204.180.128.167]) by chic.saglac.qc.ca (8.8.2/8.8.2) with ESMTID id LAA03150 for ; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 11:25:38 -0800 (EST) Received: from [38.11.182.4] (ip36.las-vegas.nv.pub-ip.psi.net [38.11.182.36]) by mule1.mindspring.com (8.8.2/8.7.3) with SMTP id QA09206 for ; Tue, 24 Dec 1996 16:24:53 GMT X-Sender: jburdine@pop.pipeline.com Message-Id: Mime-Version: 1.0 Date: Tue, 24 Dec 1996 08:26:27 -0700 To: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca X-UIDL: 851575464.002 From: jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine) Subject: Re: Fishing with bombs Content/text/plain; charaset=us-ascii Status: U X-Mozilla-Status: 0011 >I can't get over it! Where the heck do you come up with all these >references I have never seen!! >I've just been entered in the same subjects for quite some time. I've been looking for the old knowledge for some time. >-SURVIVAL POACHING is by Ragnar Benson and was published in 1980 by Paladin Press 303-443-7250 CaO is quick lime and can cause horrible caustic burns if spilled on wet flesh and not cleaned up immediately. When CaO is combined with water it reacts and becomes Ca(OH)4 or calcium hydroxide. When mixed with water it expands about three times in volume and gives off a great deal of heat. "Collect a number of clean gallon glass jugs. These must be glass and similar to those used for vinegar, wine or apple cider with a small neck and secure cap. Clean the jugs thoroughly and then dry them out till they are absolutely bone dry. No moisture can remain in the jug. You must have about five pounds of clean pea gravel for each jug. Five pounds is about two #6 peacans full. Dry this gravel over a low fire, and then pour it luke warm into the gallon jugs. There should be a good healthy inch of gravel in the bottom of the jug. At first it is advisable to test the gravel to see if it is heavy enough to sink the jug. Cork the glass up tightly and float it in a barrel or tub. There must be enough gravel in the jug to sink it without hesitation. Having done this, dry the jug again and carefully pour in one #6 peacan full of CaO in each of the prepared jugs. Replace the cap making sure the jug is sealed airtight. The explosive jug now can be stored safely until used. I usually take two or three of the jugs with me in the boat. They will arouse no suspicion until used. To prepare a jug for use, uncork it and hold its mouth just below the surface of the water. Allow about one quart of water to pour in cap until it quickly and let it sink to the bottom. Properly done, the jug will go off with a very nice blast in about one minute. The blast will kill fish just about on par with a one stick dynamite charge. Quickly collect the fish as they float to the top with a spear or net. I don't think it is advisable to use these lime bombs in less than five feet of water." There is a bit more mostly that the lime bombs will work at great depths where dynamic won't. I like Ragnar Benson's other book LIVE OFF THE LAND IN THE CITY AND COUNTRY 1982 also published by Paladin press. Touch of the Bear }
advanced survival start

part of the user to take game and if broken require specialized knowledge to repair or replicate. Primitive tools, on the other hand require more knowledge both of the materials themselves and the game they are to take. Generally they are quieter as well. Not that mass destruction was not practiced by our ancestors. Game drives either into a fenced off killing area or over a cliff was known to have been practiced nearly everywhere in the world in ancient times. The difference is that every part of the animal was used in the hunters community, surplus was dried and stored, and shared with other villages of the same people. I apologise for preaching. To answer your other question. Calcium carbonate CaCO3 is limestone same as simple lime you might add to your garden. Common limestone is heated to produce quick lime, or unslaked lime CaO. Once water is added to that it is slaked lime or calcium hydroxide Ca(OH)2. Quick lime is hard to find but not impossible, it is used in some capacity to clean outdoor toilets. I understand that it has been used by criminals to dispose of bodies. All of this info is from Ragnar Benson's book SURVIVAL POACHING. Biological poisons are the primitive man's form of explosive. A fish trap or tidal pool with small amount of effective toxin that stuns the fish makes sense for a community or even a single person that will die and smoke the surplus. For more info on preserving fish in primitive methods among other arts see SURVIVAL ARTS OF THE PRIMITIVE PAIUTES by Margaret M. Wheat University of Nevada press; Reno, Nevada 1967 ISBN 0-87417-048-6 It's a paperback approx. 11x14 inches and ran about $10 (U.S.) when I bought it. If you want to post the excerpt from Ragnar Benson's book along with this post to the group be my guest. I just wasn't sure it was appropriate. JB

---

EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: MIME-Version: 1.0 Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii" Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 16:20:48 -0700 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, thibluey@IC.NET From: jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM Subject: Swimming fish Hi Ted; I've heard about that sort of thing, and also heard of guys that still do dive in the old fashion going to great depths by holding onto a stone ballast until they get to the depth they want then letting go of the stone. That reminds me of another subject in a weird sort of way that says more about the way my mind works than I'd like to admit. IN THE LAST WHOLE EARTH CATALOG a guy by the name of Ben Masselink had a letter published on hand line fishing and a new twist he put on it he called swim fishing. He was using a Dos Equis reel(an empty Dos Equis beer bottle with fishing line on it) and a white feather jig. It was a hot day so he started swimming and dancing that jig along the bottom of the beach and started catching fish. Apparently he uses fins, mask and snorkel and is able to see the effect of the lure and where to put same in his words " The beauty of swim fishing is that you swim the water the boats can' t work. You also work ten times the water that a surf fisherman can because you present the lure parallel to the shore, fishing it all the way." He also comments at the beginning of his article "As you know, spin fishing (where the fishing line pays off the face of the reel) is a very old way of fishing. Even before the invention of the bottle or can, Indians fished in the spin off style using a kind of spin off shuttle. People throughout the world spin fish off bottles and cans." He recomends an Australian plastic reel that I've seen sold in the Into the Wind kite catalog. My own experience with hand line fishing has much tamer and without emerson. I' ve fished for trout, crabs, and crayfish at various times of my life. The biggest fish I' ve caught was a 15lb. carp with a length of line and a piece of corn(and released it) Touch of the Bear JE

---

EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: 32C37980.57BC@saglac.qc.ca Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 07:23:44 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: Primitive Skills Group Subject: Welcome Bob Jones & Robert Barthel Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable

---

EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: 32C38220.1AA2@saglac.qc.ca Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 08:00:32 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jstevens@CCS.NEU.EDU Subject: Re: Hello? References: Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable

---

EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: 32C3840E.3733@saglac.qc.ca Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 08:08:46 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca Subject: Re: Buckeye References: Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable

---

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (71 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]
--------- John Wall wrote: =>20 > This was 'Ishi's' favorite hand spindle material for fire making. I > take it that it is a good as Mullein. Do you > use it regularly? Are > you able to collect straight, dry shoots or do you > collect green > ones and dry them? =>20 > I didn't know it was 'Ishi's' > favorite, but now I'm even more excited > about buckeye. =>20 > I have yet to collect any mullein, so I can't compare them. I've > > seen mullein down around Santa Barbara, but not up here in > the SF > Bay Area. I suspect it's out there; I just haven't noticed it. > I've only been into primitive > skills since last May. Buckeye is a > tree, by the way, not a little plant like mullein. Did 'Ishi' use > very young saplings, or branches? I suppose it > would have been easy > to collect the seeds and grow saplings especially for this use?? =>20 > I collected all the buckeye I've ever used from a single > tree > situated between a creek and a road. It suffered winter storm > damage and I cut some logs from a large-diameter downed branch. I > > then cut the logs into spindles and fireboards, and have quite a > large stockpile. I've also used alder since it's a common wood, but > > alder's tougher to > get a coil with. The buckeye that I have > is great - the coals come quick and fast and long-lasting. =>20 > John =>20 > ----------------------------------------------------------

Surviving at nature's will...=>20 Dr Andr=9E-Fran=7Eois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuit University of Qu=E9=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Mart=20 nian Chicoutimi, (Qu=9E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

---

EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca Message-Id: <199612280128.UAA08810@amber.ccs.neu.edu> Subject: Bows Date: Fri, 27 Dec 96 08:44:00 +0000 From: Jeff Stevens Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca, jsstevens@CCS.NEU.EDU To: "Primitive Skills List" MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca Subject: Lumber for bow References: <199612280128.UAA08810@amber.ccs.neu.edu> Content-Type: text/plain; charset=US-ASCII Just thought I might start some discussion on bows. As a college student I am very excited that it is Christmas break and am spending as much time as I can working on skills. Amongst other things I have been working on is building an out of a sliver of maple and it is good to about thirty feet. I was wondering, does anyone have any experience with making a bow from store bought wood? The small bow I was shooting my cousin with was made of a cedar fence post. Seemed to work well. It looked like the outside was all one growth ring but it was hard to tell. Anybody ever just gone to the saw mill and bought a four foot length of cedar to make a bow? Thank you and I really enjoy this list. Anybody know the request address for the thrower list? Jeff = "But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts is. A good part of her territory is already bare and commonplace as much of our neighborhood, and her villages generally are not so well shaded as ours." - Thoreau email: jsstevens@ccs.neu.edu home page: http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jsstevens --

--------

 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca Message-Id: <32C38C50.88E@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Fri, 27 Dec 96 20:43:17 From: Dr. AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca Subject: Lumber for bow References: <199612280128.UAA08810@amber.ccs.neu.edu> Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Dr. Jeff Stevens wrote: =>20 > Just thought I might start some discussion on bows. As a college student I am very excited that it is Christmas break and am spending as much time as I can working on skills. Amongst other things I have been working on is building an out of a sliver of maple and it is good to about thirty feet. =>20 > I was wondering, does anyone have any experience with making a bow from store bought wood? The small bow I was shooting my cousin with was made of a cedar fence post. Seemed to work well. It looked like the outside was all one growth ring but it was hard to tell. Anybody ever just gone to the sawmill and bought a four foot length of cedar to make a bow? =>20 > Thank you and I really enjoy this list. Anybody know the request address for the thrower list? --- John Wall wrote: =>20 > >This was "Ishi's" favorite hand spindle material for fire making. I > >take it that it is a good as Mullein. Do you > >use it regularly? Are > >you able to collect straight, dry shoots or do you > >collect green > >ones and dry them? =>20 > I didn't know it was "Ishi's" > >favorite, but now I'm even more excited > >about buckeye. =>20 > I have yet to collect any mullein, so I can't compare them. I've > >seen mullein down around Santa Barbara, but not up here in > >the SF > >Bay Area. I suspect it's out there; I just haven't noticed it. > >I've only been into primitive > >skills since last May. Buckeye is a > >tree, by the way, not a little plant like mullein. Did "Ishi" use > >very young saplings, or branches? I suppose it > >would have been easy > >to collect the seeds and grow saplings especially for this use?? =>20 > I collected all the buckeye I've ever used from a single > >tree > >situated between a creek and a road. It suffered winter storm > >damage and I cut some logs from a large-diameter downed branch. I > >then cut the logs into spindles and fireboards, and have quite a > >large stockpile. I've also used alder since it's a common wood, but > >alder's tougher to > >get a coil with. The buckeye that I have > >is great - the coals come quick and fast and long-lasting. =>20 > John =>20 > >Surviving at nature's will...=>20 Dr Andr=E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau =09 Professor of Outdoor Pursuit University of Qu=E9=E9bec=20 555 University Boulevard=20 Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9=E9bec) CANADA G7H 2B1 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 At Nature's Will Inc. 3801 Rang St-Martin=20 Chicoutimi, (Qu=E9=E9bec) CANADA G7H 5A7 418-543-2888 bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

---

EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca Message-Id: <32C48C81.4F53@perige.net> Date: Fri, 27 Dec 96 20:57:05 - 0600 From: benjamin@Perige.net (Benjamin Pressure) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.quebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA Subject: Re: Poaching and environmental concerns References: <32C0EA80.33BE@saglac.qc.ca> Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Dr. AF Bourbeau wrote: =>20 > To follow up with Greg's worry about the fish bombing thread, I would > like > to address the issue of environmental ethics which has also been > aired by a couple of others since that subject has been discussed. =>20 > Please note that one of the purposes of this group is to conduct > research on wilderness survival techniques, and obviously any of the > primitive techniques > relative to the taking of animals are highly > illegal and often ecologically disastrous. We all know this! At the > same time, it is these > very techniques that are some of the most > important to know in case of > natural disasters or real survival > situations where you must obtain food > to survive. These subjects also > have historical significance, and as > such merit to be studied. =>20 > I say that knowledge of any of these > techniques does not at all mean > that people are going to use them. After reading some of the > torture > stories of the Iroquois prisoners, one does not go out > and try them on > their neighbors. I have no intention of going to blow up fish just > because I know now how. However, Alcan aluminum has > horrible lakes of > toxic wastes which are all red in color a few miles south of Chicoutimi=20 > , where they have been dropping their mess for the last > dozens of years. > I just might obtain permission and go and try a few bombs there! =>20 > Another example: I learnt lockpicking many years ago > and could now walk > into most peoples homes just as fast as if I had their key. That > doesn't mean I'm going to go and steal TV sets over the > weekend! But > how many times has that knowledge saved me and others who had misplaced > keys... =>20 > Here in Qu=E9=E9bec a bunch of 90 > poachers were apprehended this last fall. > They were taking moose illegally with all kinds of ingenious traps and > > snares of their own design. > These guys obtain their information from > > various places, but mostly from their own underground sources. > Knowledge of their ways will not turn an > honest citizen to a poacher. > But it may give you food in an emergency. =>20 > My point is that bad guys will be bad guys, and will get their info > > somehow no matter what. No amount of knowledge of bad ways will turn a > > good guy bad. =>20 > The purpose of our group is not to feed info to > bad guys. We are all > here because of our desire for learning and sharing primitive skills, > and some of these skills are definitely out of line for

http://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (72 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]
realistic use > outside an emergency. That doesn't mean we should not discuss them > here. >=20 > Last month I caught 7 mice at the cottage with a > figure 4 deadfall made > from 3 pieces of firewood and a cookbook. Nobody's going to beat me up > for doing that, and it helps me learn details of > trapping. There are > always honest ways to practice primitive skills. >=20 > All this to say that I think that poaching ways and fish bombing can be > discussed freely in this group. To me these should not be taboo > subjects. As long as subjects concerning the taking of animals continue e > to be > treated in the same respectful way it has been thusfar > (information regarding techniques), I do not have any problem > whatsoever. >=20 > At the same time, I agree wholeheartedly with the essence of Greg’s > concerns. I too would be concerned with statements of joy and pleasure > regarding > bunny bashing and blowing fish guts to smithereens. I don’t > think any of us here are stupid enough to crawl that low, and I’m sure > that if ever > anyone would try that kind of behavior, they would be > strongly reprimanded by the rest of the group. >=20 > Thank you everyone for reading this > and feel free to respond if you > wish. Just trying the best I can to provide a possible orientation on > this difficult topic. >=20 > Sincerely, >=20 > Andr=E9=E9 > -- > survival at nature's will.. >=20 > Dr Andr=E9-E9-Fran=E7ois Bourbeau > Professor of Outdoor Pursuits > University of Que=E9bec > 555 University Boulevard > Chicoutimi, (Que=E9bec) > CANADA G7H 2B1 > 418-545-5011 Ext > 5259 > At Nature's Will Inc. > 3801 Rang St-Martin > Chicoutimi, (Que=E9bec) > CANADA G7H 5A7 > 418-545-2888 >=20 > bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca > > > > > > > > > > > > I agree, The same tools that can heal can also kill. Other than eliminating > pests it is a responsible practice when, for example, testing trap triggers on our field trips that any animal life taken should be with the intention to > eat or for bait, even in practice. I have taught my children this as have others who have children that they teach how to use blowgun or bow > and > arrow. If they take life it had to be eaten (unless it was diseased, of course.). You can't get fanatical about this, perhaps, but, even a tree should not > be chopped on unless you have a purpose in taking it. For example, taking bark from a tree for a basket or cordage, kills the tree, you might as > well plan some uses for the rest of the tree also, even if it is only for firewood. We are to be good stewards with our resources as well as the > skills that have been trusted to us. > > > > Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.quebec.ca Snail Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 20015 Charlotte, NC 28202 USA E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net TRIBE does workshops, > networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in > Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living > skills. Check out our home page for more information. TRIBE Homepage:=20 http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html Information On TRIBE > Gathering: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html Also Check out Ted Bailey=92s Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and > Events: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html
I am wondering if we are seeing a pattern develop here of the personality types that are interested in this subject? I was raised by both my own parents, Dad a forester and Mom a teacher, and joined the Army out of high school, was a linguist working in intelligence, also served I am a 23 1/2 year veteran of the US Army currently serving with the Virginia National Guard and will retire in about 2 1/2 years. I am a 23 1/2 year veteran of the US Army currently serving with the Virginia National Guard and will retire in about 2 1/2 years. advanced survival start
years in Korea) and now the computer guru for my Brigade (if only they knew how little I really know). My hobbies include (when I can find the time): archery, hunting, shooting (modern and blackpowder), reloading, running (occupational), swimming, biking, computers, reading (voraciously), history (was my Brigade's historian), and community service. I am now starting to build primitive bows (an outgrowth of my interest=20 in archery, I have been shooting since I was 10) which lead to an interest in flintknaping (led to this list by post on knappers list), which has led to interest in the subjects this list should be exploring. Many thanks for starting this list. I hope to learn alot. Also, I would like to say that I don’t believe that there is such a thing as a stupid question. No questions, no answers. I should also let you know that I am a little blunt (not that blunt, did that get sent, if so I apologize) No anger, just a little too straightforward sometimes. Tactless or so some have said. Sincerely, Barent Duty, Honor, Country parslohw@CFW.COM

-------------------------------------- Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca Snail Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 56 Monroe, LA 71201 > FREE CATALOG.....sent anywhere! > *"Let the good times roll!" Cajun French saying. > >>>>>>

plants we have avail. that can > be used for pain/fever. =20 >

>From my earlier days in East Texas, I recall "devil's walking stick", not only did willow seems to be the best, but a I believe that dogwood bark was used for pain, as well. Would be > interesting to know just how many common plants we have avail. that can > be used for pain/fever. =20 >

>From my earlier days in East Texas, I recall "devil's walking stick", not only did willow seems to be the best, but a I believe that dogwood bark was used for pain, as well. Would be > interesting to know just how many common plants we have avail. that can > be used for pain/fever. =20 >

>From my earlier days in East Texas, I recall "devil's walking stick", not only did willow seems to be the best, but a I believe that dogwood bark was used for pain, as well. Would be > interesting to know just how many common plants we have avail. that can > be used for pain/fever. =20 >

>From my earlier days in East Texas, I recall "devil's walking stick", not only did willow seems to be the best, but a I believe that dogwood bark was used for pain, as well. Would be > interesting to know just how many common plants we have avail. that can > be used for pain/fever. =20 >

>From my earlier days in East Texas, I recall "devil's walking stick", not only did willow seems to be the best, but a I believe that dogwood bark was used for pain, as well. Would be > interesting to know just how many common plants we have avail. that can > be used for pain/fever. =20 >

>From my earlier days in East Texas, I recall "devil's walking stick", not only did willow seems to be the best, but a I believe that dogwood bark was used for pain, as well. Would be > interesting to know just how many common plants we have avail. that can > be used for pain/fever. =20 >

>From my earlier days in East Texas, I recall "devil's walking stick", not only did willow seems to be the best, but a I believe that dogwood bark was used for pain, as well. Would be > interesting to know just how many common plants we have avail. that can > be used for pain/fever. =20 >
I am awed by the many skills of those in the group. I come to the group with a deep interest in the topics and a desire to learn as much as possible. To this day I continue to sense the historical presence of the many who came before me as I walk a trail or cross a field. I am a beginning knapper.

Benjamin Pressley benjamin@PERIGEE.NET Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca Small Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 20015 Charlotte, NC 28202 USA E-mail: tribe@perigee.net TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information. TRIBE Homepage:

advanced survival start
livingroom > walls with bows, arrows, spears and other primitive artifacts. >=20 > Living in Charlotte I am fortunate to be near Ben Pressley and
the site > of the annual TRIBE gathering. I have known of TRIBE for several years > and have wanted to attend. We planned to do so this year but
a conflic= t > arose. But the family and I certainly will be there in 1997! >=20 > Thank you, Andre', for creating the list and drawing the group >
together. I have learned much already and look forwared every evening > to reading new posts from the members. >=20 > I wish each of you and
your families a safe and happy holiday. >=20 > Bob Jones > Charlotte, NC > writer@perigee.net Hello, Bob. It is good to have you aboard. Stay in
touch, neighbor. I look forward to meeting you at TRIBE Gathering 1997. You might even meet Andre (hint, hint). He came one year (1995).=20 ----------------------------------------------------------------------- Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca Snail
Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 20015 Charlotte, NC 28202 USA E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called
TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all
over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more
information. TRIBE Homepage:=20 http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html Information On TRIBE Gathering:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html Also Check Out Ted Bailey=92s Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and Events:
http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html
================================================================================ Archive-Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:38:22
EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32C495C2.6118@perigee.net> Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:36:34 0600 From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
benjamin@PERIGEE.NET MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET Subject: Re: Fire piston and flint
&steel tinder References: Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Ted E. Bailey wrote: >=20 >
>Upon further reflection we are talking about finely shredded bark as > >FIREPISTON tinder aren't we? My experiments were with flint and steel
> >methods of firemaking & I've had no success with uncharred material. >=20 > I can't remember where I read it, but the best tinder for fire
starting= is > shredded wasp nest. - Ted Bailey >=20 > Ted Bailey || email to: tbailey@ic.net > P. O. Box 6076 || Editor of "Boomerang News" > Ann
Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services > Ph: (313)-971-2970 || Fax: (313)-761-3632 > Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/ For fire piston,
"mountain' Mel Deweese is the only expert I know and he says he has only had success with tinder derived from a certain palm. I know that's a
vague reference, I'll try to find out the xact name of the palm. In the meantime anyone who wishes to contact Mel, can contact him at: Nature
Knowledge, 1825 Linden St., Grand Junction, CO 81503, Phone: 970-242-8507. As far as flint & steel, I have only had success with charred material
and an uncharred fungus from up in Canada that a friend of mine brought me at TRIBE Gathering. Amazing stuff. A small sliver catches a spark
and it glows and glows. Maybe Andre remembers the name of the fungus I'm talking about. George Hedgepeth brought it with him that year you
came to TRIBE Gathering. ------------------------------------------------------------------------ Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net Primitive-SkillsGroup@uqac.uquebec.ca Snail Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 20015 Charlotte, NC 28202 USA E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net TRIBE does workshops,
networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in
Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living
skills. Check out our home page for more information. TRIBE Homepage:=20 http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html Information On TRIBE
Gathering: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html Also Check Out Ted Bailey=92s Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and
Events: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html
================================================================================ Archive-Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:44:43
EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32C49740.7237@perigee.net> Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:42:56 0600 From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
benjamin@PERIGEE.NET MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jstevens@CCS.NEU.EDU Subject: Re: Mullein as
fish poison References: <199612272246.RAA06531@amber.ccs.neu.edu> Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding:
quoted-printable Jeff Stevens wrote: >=20 > >> Jeff Stevens wrote: > >> > > >> > Hi all, > >> > > >> > I just joined the list and have been reading
the thread on fish po= isons. > >> > I once met a guy who claimed he fished this way with crushed mulli= en > >> > (Verbascum ???) seeds. Has
anyone else ever heard of such a thing= ? > >> > > >> > -Jeff > >You may be talking about the turkey mullein plant. It is in the gourd > >family and
grows in the Southwestern U.S. Christopher Nyerges uses thi= s > >entire plant for fish poisoning. The scientific name is Eremocarpus > >setigerus.
Hey, even I can come up with scientific names thanks to > >Chris's great reference to the Ethnobotany Cafe! >=20 > That is very possible though the
guy who told me about using mullein wa= s > discussing the mullein that grows around here (Maine) when he talked > about it. He said you just
crush up some seeds and throw 'em in. I am > trying an experiment with leaves as its darn hard to find mullein seeds > this time of year. Leaves
don't seem to work. I have a few seeds and > may try them. The guy also said the seeds only stun the fish. They ar= e > paralyzed for a while. He
cautioned that if I were to try it I should > not do it on a sunny day or all the fish would die of exposure as they > floated to the surface. >=20 > Jeff
>=20 > -- >=20 > "But Maine, perhaps, will soon be where Massachusetts > is. A good part of her territory is already bare > and commonplace as
much of our neighborhood, and her > villages generally are not so well shaded as ours." >=20 > -Thoreau >=20 > email: jstevens@ccs.neu.edu >
home page: http://ccs.neu.edu/home/jstevens >=20 > -- Please keep me posted on your success. I have used common mullein in many applications
(Inhaling burning leaves for congestion relief, placing fresh leaves in shoes for soothing the feet, dried stalks for friction fire making, seed heads
dipped in bee's wax for torches, etc.), but not as a poison. ------------------------------------------------------------------------ Benjamin Pressley
benjamin@perigee.net Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca Snail Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 20015 Charlotte, NC 28202 USA E-Mail:
tribe@perigee.net TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering
is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive,
survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information. TRIBE Homepage:=20
Ted Bailey=92s Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and Events: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html
================================================================================ Archive-Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:53:21
EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32C49946.294B@perigee.net> Date: Fri, 27 Dec 1996 21:51:34 0600 From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca,
benjamin@PERIGEE.NET MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA Subject: Re: Buckeye
References: <32C3840E.3733@saglac.qc.ca> Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Content-Transfer-Encoding: quoted-printable Dr AF
Bourbeau wrote: >=20 > Does anyone know the scientific name for Buckeye that everyone is > talking about? We don't have it up here in northern
Qu=E9bec, and I'd > sure like to look it up. >=20 > Thanks >=20 > Andr=E9 >=20 > ------------- > John Wall wrote: > > > > >This was "Ishi's"
favorite hand spindle material for fire making. I > > >take it that it is a good as Mullein. Do you use it regularly? Are > > >you able to collect
straight, dry shoots or do you collect green > > >ones and dry them? > > > > I didn't know it was Ishi's favorite, but now I'm even more excited > >
http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (77 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]


about buckeye. -> I have yet to collect any mullein, so I can't compare them. I've -> seen mullein down around Santa Barbara, but not up here in the SF -> Bay Area. I suspect it's out there; I just haven't noticed it. -> I've only been into primitive skills since last May. Buckeye is a -> tree, by the way, not a little plant like mullein. Did Ishi use -> very young saplings, or branches? I suppose it would have been easy -> to collect the seeds and grow saplings especially for this use? -> I -> collected all the buckeye I've ever used from a single tree -> situated between a creek and a road. It suffered winter storm -> damage and I cut some logs from a large-diameter downed branch. I -> then cut the logs into spindles and fireboards, and have -> quite a -> large stockpile. I've also used elder since it's a common wood, but -> elder's tougher to get a col with. The buckeye that I have is -> great -- the coals come quick and long-lasting. -> -> -> -> John >20 -> -> -> -> --------------------------------------------- -> Surviving at nature's will... -> Dr And=-03-Fran=03-E70is Bourbeau > Professor of Outdoor Pursuits > University of QuÈ=Ébec > 555 -> University Blvd=01var > Chicoutimi, (Qu=Èbec) > CANADA G7H 2B1 > 418-545-5011 Ext 5259 >20 > At Nature's Will Inc. > 3801 Rang St=03-Martin > Chicoutimi, (Qu=Èbec) > CANADA G7H 5A7 > 418-543-2888 -> bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca -> Horse Chestnut and Buckeye are both the same tree; Buckeye is -> 20 state tree, and it is also a California buckeye. The genus is=20 Aesculus, referring to the glycocis esculin. ------------------------ Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.quebec.ca Snail Mail: TRIBE P.O. Box 20015 Charlotte, NC 28202 USA E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net TRIBE does workshops, networks, does an annual event called TRIBE Gathering and a quarterly newsletter. TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in primitive, survival and wilderness living skills. Check out our home page for more information. TRIBE Homepage: -> http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/ Tribe.html Information On TRIBE Gathering: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe_Gathering.html Also Check Out Ted Bailey=92s Calendar of Events for Primitive Skills Classes and Events: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Prim_cal_events.html
GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, tbailey@IC.NET Subject: Re: Lumber for bow
 >Jeff Stevens wrote: >> I was wondering, does anyone have any experience with making a bow from >> store bought wood? The small bow I was shooting my cousin with was made >> of a cedar fence post. >> >> Seemed to work well. It looked like the outside >> was all one growth ring but it was hard to tell. anybody ever just gone >> to the saw mill and bought a four foot length of cedar to make a bow? It has been 5+ years since I have made contact with Old Master Crafters. They supply all kinds of hardwood strips for laminating bows. I used to buy the wood to make boomerangs. I don't know if the address is still any good, but you can try: The Old Master Crafters, Inc. 130 Le Baron St Waukegan, IL 60085 ph: 312-623-2660 Ted Bailey || email: tbailey@i.net P. O. Box 6076 || Editor of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 || Fax: (313)-761-3632 Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/  

Benjamin Pressley wrote: >> Good point! Primitive people were surviving and feeding their families >> and sometimes other peoples' families. Some have the tendency to over >> romanticize primitive peoples hunting practices. But there are accounts >> of Native American tribes burning down entire forests in a circle just >> to chase the animals to the center of the forest so they could be >> slaughtered. There are also accounts of running entire herds of buffalo >> over a cliffside. In Southern Alberta, there is an Archaeological site (+ museum) called "Smashed-in-head-buffalo-jump" where the Native Americans (Native Canadians?) drove the Buffalo off of a 100 metre cliff in mass. Below, the cliff, the ground is solid broken bone fragments. I believe they did this at the onset of cold weather each year so that they had a plentiful supply of meat with natural refrigeration. It's a neat place to visit, but I wouldn't want to jump there. Ted Bailey || email: tbailey@i.net P. O. Box 6076 || Editor of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 || Fax: (313)-761-3632 Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/  

Fred E. Bailey wrote: >> To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@SAGLAC.QC.CA Subject: Re: Poaching and environmental concerns References: 32C0EAB0.33BE@saglac.qc.ca Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit I believe that I started this thread, and I apologize. I read much of thread late at night, and got the impression that some people were using the techniques being discussed. I've never been against the free exchange of knowledge for the sake of possibility of surviving, or simply the sake of knowing. Again, I apologize for any durress and use of bandwidth I may have caused.  

Ted Bailey wrote: >> I believe that I started this thread, and I apologize. I read much of >> thread late at night, and got the impression that some people were using >> the techniques being discussed. I've never been against the free >> exchange of knowledge for the sake of possibility of surviving, >> or simply the sake of knowing. Again, I apologize for any durress and use of >> bandwidth I may have caused. >>
I think that there are many people who have incidental experience with the methods described. My father, a forester, mentioned incidents he had experienced or his friends had experienced in the course of their duties. This would provide me with information albeit 2nd hand, that is reliable and reportable, but, I didn't have to break any laws or abuse the environment to acquire the knowledge. I just can't see any harm in passing along that information and in fact I think that it is good that we understand the results because we can identify such activity when we see the effects of it, otherwise, we might not recognize. I do not support poaching or abuse of the environment, but, I also do not support the PETA or Earth First approach. -- Sincerely, Barent Duty, Honor, Country

---

Jeff Stevens wrote: 
> > > > > Well, I just did a little test. Neither mullein seeds nor leaves see to => have any effect on fish. > > > > > Hi Jeff, > > > > > Please explain how you conducted your experiment. > > > > > This makes me think that we could go to a fish farm, put a couple of trout in a large bucket, then try the seeds to see if they work. Is > > > > > this what you did? > > > > > By the way, please confirm you were using Verbasum thapsi seeds and > > > > > hi. Thanks, > > > > > Andr=E9 > > > > > According to the descriptions in "Identifying and Harvesting Edible and Medicinal Plants" by Steve Brill (ISBN 0-688-11425-3) and "Indian Herbs=20 of North America => I placed several of the first year leaves (still green even after the <=e) in a old tea bag. I was sure to tear them up well. I placed them in a flask with water => > > I crushed up all the seeds I could get and placed them in the water directly. Ended up being about 15 and mullein seeds are small. I <=rushed up the se > > > > The guy who told me he fished with mullein seeds said he uses a teaspoon => of crushed seeds in a small frog pond size pond. With that concentration => it seems thi => > > > Right now I am going with Verbasum tawpsus doesn't work well for catch=ng fish. > > > > > But...... > > > > > To complicate things a bit more I have an old book that has a paragraph about fish poisons. The book was published in 1956. It is "Living off the <=e" by > > > > > This book quotes another book by the same author called "How to Build Y<=r Home in the Woods". It says referring to capturing fish: > > > > > One procedure is to use the leaves and stalks of the mullein or = fish weed, croton setigerus. The fish therein, momentarily narcotized, will float to => > > > It also mentions the soap plant (Chlorogalum pumilum) and southern = buckeye (Aesculus pavia). > > > > Now, turkey mullein is Eremocarpus setigerus yet the mullein refered to in this book is Croton setigerus. Anyone know if there was taxonomical = change between => > > > Danno.........Just thoughts... => > > > Jeff, thanks for the great post on this subject. You have a scientific <=mind, that's for sure, because I now feel the subject of Verbasum=20 thapsi as fish poison is almost closed. Perhaps one more experiment=20 using fresh seeds might be in order. Congratulations on the scientific names you provided, that helps a great=20 deal, especially since many of us are from different parts of the world. I will look at my botany references about Croton vs Eremocarpus as soon=20 as I can get to the University. => > > With regards to Bradford Angier, I have studied his books extensively => and my final judgment: to be taken with a grain of salt. I believe that <=b=20 he copied the majority of his information from other sources (I have=20 documented many direct sources of plagiarism without reference) and I am=20 convinced that he tried very little of what he speaks about. Therefore, <=b=20 it would be very possible that he misread or misinterpreted information=20 writes about. Keep up the good work, Jeff, and thanks for sharing with us! Andr=E9 > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > }
advanced survival start

---

**EST Sender:** owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca **Message-ID:** <32C6046A.9A7@cfw.com> **Date:** Sat, 28 Dec 1996 17:42:24 EST **Body:**

I do not have the web address right now, but you can get it by e-mailing at nativeway@bkbank.com. These guys have a good supply of primitive bow and arrow making and flintknapping supplies, as well as finished products.

---

**EST Sender:** owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca **Message-ID:** <1.5.4.32.1996122225050.0068880c0@ncl.net.au> **Date:** Sun, 29 Dec 1996 09:41:02 +1100 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM From: Adam Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, mills@NLC.NET.AU Subject: Re: Bushcraft books > You mentioned your bookshelf had a edition in Ron Edwards Bushcraft >series. Um, no i have found these two books collins gem published SAS SURVIVAL GUIDE in 1994 by jon wiseman and wild foods plants of australia by tim low published by angus and robertson 1992 Sorry cya

---

**EST Sender:** owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca **Message-ID:** <1.5.4.32.19961228224102.006662db4@ncl.net.au> **Date:** Sun, 29 Dec 1996 09:50:50 +1100 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca From: Adam Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, mills@NLC.NET.AU Subject: Plants for fish poisons Here are some fish narcotics straight from a book (SAS survival), Derris: Occur in se asia to australia. N/a to everyone but powder the roots and chuck it in soap plant: occurs in the usa in dry open scrubland. it ois a narrow grass like leaves with white star like flowers. crush the bulbous root and chuck in the water. I guess these are not the sci. names but its all i got. Cya Adam

---

**EST Sender:** owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca **Message-ID:** <1.5.4.32.19961228225050.0068888c0@ncl.net.au> **Date:** Sat, 28 Dec 1996 18:50:13 -0500 (EST) From: David Weinstock Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, dweinsto@PANTHER.MIDDLEBURY.EDU To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, mills@NLC.NET.AU Subject: Crooked knife Message-ID: MIME-Version: 1.0 Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; charset=US-ASCII I have read about something called a "crooked knife," a combination drawknife/gouge/all-purpose trail knife. I am in possession of C. Keith Wilbur’s very clear instructions for making one, but I am not a blacksmith. So I wonder if there is anywhere I can simply buy a "crooked knife." Thanks! --David Weinstock Middlebury, Vermont

---

**EST Sender:** owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca **Message-ID:** <1.5.4.32.19961228224102.006662db4@ncl.net.au> **Date:** Sat, 28 Dec 1996 20:01:58 EST **Body:**

C. Keith Wilbur’s very clear instructions for making one, but I am not a blacksmith. So I wonder if there is anywhere I can simply buy a "crooked knife." Thanks! --David Weinstock Middlebury, Vermont

---

**EST Sender:** owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca **Message-ID:** <1.5.4.32.19961228224102.006662db4@ncl.net.au> **Date:** Sat, 28 Dec 1996 20:13:05 -0500 (EST) From: JWither240@aol.com Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, JWither240@AOL.COM To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Subject: Re: Lumber for bow Another good supplier of primitive archery and flintknapping supplies is Native Way. Their Web address is: http://home.sprynet.com/sprynet/natvway Best Wishes, Jim W.

---

**EST Sender:** owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca **Message-ID:** <1.5.4.32.19961228224102.006662db4@ncl.net.au> **Date:** Sat, 28 Dec 1996 20:13:58 EST **Body:**

Another good supplier of primitive archery and flintknapping supplies is Native Way. Their Web address is: http://home.sprynet.com/sprynet/natvway Best Wishes, Jim W.

---

**EST Sender:** owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca **Message-ID:** <1.5.4.32.19961228224102.006662db4@ncl.net.au> **Date:** Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:03:58 EST **Body:**

You mentioned your bookshelf had a edition in Ron Edwards Bushcraft >series. Um, no i have found these two books collins gem published SAS SURVIVAL GUIDE in 1994 by jon wiseman and wild foods plants of australia by tim low published by angus and robertson 1992 Sorry cya

---

**EST Sender:** owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca **Message-ID:** <1.5.4.32.19961228224102.006662db4@ncl.net.au> **Date:** Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:28:31 -0400 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, JWither240@AOL.COM From: "Ted E. Bailey" Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, btairey@IC.NET Subject: Re: Lumber for bow >Folks might also try Native Way. Sorry I do not have the web address right now, but you can get it by e-mailing at nativeway@bkbank.com. These guys >have a good supply of primitive bow and arrow making and flintknapping >supplies, as well as finished products. The NativeWay URL is located on the following web page of Primitive Technology Links: http://ic.net/~btairey/Primitive.html Ted Bailey || email to: btairey@ic.net P. O. Box 6076 || Editor of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 || Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 || Fax: (313)-761-3632 Internet Address: http://ic.net/~btairey/

---

**EST Sender:** owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca **Message-ID:** <32C6046A.9A7@cfw.com> **Date:** Sat, 28 Dec 1996 21:40:40 EST **Body:**

Fred
0800 From: BKP Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, parslov@CFW.COM MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM Subject: Re: Crooked knife References: Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit James E. Burdine wrote: =3E =3E I have read about something called a "crooked knife," a > > drawknife/gouge/all-purpose trail knife. I am in possession of > > C. Keith Wilbur's very clear instructions for making one, but I > > am not a blacksmith. So I wonder if there is anywhere I can > > simply buy a "crooked knife." > > > > Thanks! > > > > --David Weinstock > > > > Middlebury, Vermont > > I heard that they used to be available through Hudson's Bay Outfitters in Canada. That may be in error. Andre or any of the list > > members in Canada > > or Alaska, have you seen any of these available? I understand that before > > the coming of the Europeans that beaver tooth crooked knives were made. > > > > If you are speaking of what I am thinking of, Russell still makes this knife (aka Green River Knives). It is merely a skinning knife with an exaggerated curve to the blade which gives it a lot of belly so that long skinning strokes can be taken. I think that I have seen them for sale in the Dixie Gun Works Catalog (Union City, TN) I will check and report to the group if there is any interest. -- Sincerely, Barent Duty, Honor, Country vim Pierce Sunshine Valley dweinsto@PANTHER.MIDDLEBURY.EDU To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, parslowb@CFW.COM Subject: Re: Crooked knife References: <32C6900CD.2B99@rand.nidlink.com> MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, Painsworth@AOL.COM Subject: Re: Crooked knife Message-ID: <32C6C959.10040@acm-exit161.mail.aol.com> Content-Type: TEXT/PLAIN; charset=US-ASCII Thank you all for your prompt responses on this hard-to-find tool. --David

---

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (83 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]
begin looking for it you can recognize it many places, along roadsides, being so tall, it’s hard to miss. I’ve only been into primitive skills since last May. Buckeye is a tree, by the way, not a little plant like mullein. I don’t know, but I would rather assume that he collected saplings while typical need little preparation especially for this use? I don’t know, but I would rather assume that he collected saplings while typically need little preparation especially for this use? I don’t know, but I would rather assume that he collected saplings while typical...
advanced survival start
advanced survival start

They are a reliable mail order firm CAG

Crooked knives are available from Highland Hardware, they have an 800 number that you can get by calling the 800 number (1800-555-1212) They are a reliable mail order firm CAG

Middlebury, Vermont Crooked knives are available from Highland Hardware, they have an 800 number that you can get by calling the 800 number (1800-555-1212) They are a reliable mail order firm CAG

http://www.auqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (86 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]
TRIBE Gathering is scheduled for June 12-15, 1997 in Charlotte, NC. Over 25 instructors from all over, camping, hands-on learning for anyone interested in this clay can contact: Bethune Pottery, Rt. 2, Bethune, SC, Phone: (803) 334-8346. 

> I have used it many times. It fires well and I have cooked in pottery made from it. Anyone be questioned. For they produce their pottery in most cases to sell to the tourists who will not be using it to cook in. At very least, pottery improperly buying pottery from the Catawba people who are one of the people that still practice the art of producing pottery in this primitive manner, should also, I do remember that they had some glazed decorations on them. > Thanks for jogging my memory. >=20 > Fred You bring out a good point. 

17:58:38 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <33C21C0.C16@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 30 Dec 1996 18:06:21 -0500 (EST) Message-ID: <199612302306.SAA27734@smest.usit.net> MIME-Version: 1.0 Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii" To: Primitive-Skills-Group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca From: Steve Skinner

Intro Hi everyone, I joined the Group last week and wanted to introduce myself. My name is Steve Skinner. I am 45 years old and live in a spiritual community in Summertown, TN, called The Farm. My wife, Susan, and I have just this summer become interested in primitive skills, so at this point I do not have much to contribute. However, I've really enjoyed the postings and the amount of information so far. For a living, my wife and I run a small business manufacturing ionizing radiation detectors. As a matter of fact, we use orange Fiesta Ware pottery to burn them in overnight because Uranium-235 is used in the glaze. It really lights up our detectors. Best to everyone, Steve Skinner

18:09:23 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: <32C75C0.C16@saglac.qc.ca> Date: Mon, 30 Dec 1996 06:10:08 -0500 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Subject: Re: archiving posts References:

Version: 1.0 To: Primitive-Skills-Group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca From: Steve Skinner

André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi,
Québec, Canada G7H 2B1
bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca

I plan on putting out some other good info, but I need to hear from everyone if there is a problem before I go through the trouble. ------------------------
Keep everyone posted with plenty of info including contact info. I would like to hear from the rest of the group as soon as everyone can let me know.

------------------------------------------ Surviving at nature's will... Dr André-François Bourbeau
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits
University of Québec
555 University Boulevard
Chicoutimi,
Québec, Canada G7H 2B1
bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca
------------------------------------------

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (88 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]
I use Mullein fire board and stalk. Suitable spindle pieces are about 10 to 20% of all stalks and other details. I have a hard time finding straight Mullein (Verbascum spp) here in the north. Also, do you have a reference to that Ishi book you mentioned? Thanks for sharing, great stuff! >>

---

Benjamin Pressley wrote:

Phil Goetz wrote:

I have a request about your mailings to primitive... I don't know what you're using to mail these out -- PINE? But all your mailings are sent as non-ASCII attachments. This makes them very hard to deal with for people who don't have -- I can't scroll them on the screen correctly, I can't save them to a file, I can't stop reading them when moving through my mail, even if I've seen the same message several times. And if I'm running X-windows, it brings the message up in a little window with font too small to read comfortably. Can you send ordinary ASCII mail? While you're at it, can you make your sig a little shorter? I have problems with my mailbox file growing too big. Is anyone else having similar problems like Phil mentions with my posts? I would hate to be posting this good info for nothing. If so please let me know.

Amyone have the phone # for Hudson's Bay Outfitters in Canada??

JWaltz@aol.com

---

Phil Goetz wrote:

Benjamin Pressley wrote:

I have a request about your mailings to primitive... I don't know what you're using to mail these out -- PINE? But all your mailings are sent as non-ASCII attachments. This makes them very hard to deal with for people who don't have -- I can't scroll them on the screen correctly, I can't save them to a file, I can't stop reading them when moving through my mail, even if I've seen the same message several times. And if I'm running X-windows, it brings the message up in a little window with font too small to read comfortably. Can you send ordinary ASCII mail? While you're at it, can you make your sig a little shorter? I have problems with my mailbox file growing too big. Is anyone else having similar problems like Phil mentions with my posts? I would hate to be posting this good info for nothing. If so please let me know.

Amyone have the phone # for Hudson's Bay Outfitters in Canada??

JWaltz@aol.com

---

Amyone have the phone # for Hudson's Bay Outfitters in Canada??

JWaltz@aol.com

---

I have a request about your mailings to primitive... I don't know what you're using to mail these out -- PINE? But all your mailings are sent as non-ASCII attachments. This makes them very hard to deal with for people who don't have -- I can't scroll them on the screen correctly, I can't save them to a file, I can't stop reading them when moving through my mail, even if I've seen the same message several times. And if I'm running X-windows, it brings the message up in a little window with font too small to read comfortably. Can you send ordinary ASCII mail? While you're at it, can you make your sig a little shorter? I have problems with my mailbox file growing too big. Is anyone else having similar problems like Phil mentions with my posts? I would hate to be posting this good info for nothing. If so please let me know.

Amyone have the phone # for Hudson's Bay Outfitters in Canada??

JWaltz@aol.com

---

I have a request about your mailings to primitive... I don't know what you're using to mail these out -- PINE? But all your mailings are sent as non-ASCII attachments. This makes them very hard to deal with for people who don't have -- I can't scroll them on the screen correctly, I can't save them to a file, I can't stop reading them when moving through my mail, even if I've seen the same message several times. And if I'm running X-windows, it brings the message up in a little window with font too small to read comfortably. Can you send ordinary ASCII mail? While you're at it, can you make your sig a little shorter? I have problems with my mailbox file growing too big. Is anyone else having similar problems like Phil mentions with my posts? I would hate to be posting this good info for nothing. If so please let me know.

Amyone have the phone # for Hudson's Bay Outfitters in Canada??

JWaltz@aol.com

---

I have a request about your mailings to primitive... I don't know what you're using to mail these out -- PINE? But all your mailings are sent as non-ASCII attachments. This makes them very hard to deal with for people who don't have -- I can't scroll them on the screen correctly, I can't save them to a file, I can't stop reading them when moving through my mail, even if I've seen the same message several times. And if I'm running X-windows, it brings the message up in a little window with font too small to read comfortably. Can you send ordinary ASCII mail? While you're at it, can you make your sig a little shorter? I have problems with my mailbox file growing too big. Is anyone else having similar problems like Phil mentions with my posts? I would hate to be posting this good info for nothing. If so please let me know.

Amyone have the phone # for Hudson's Bay Outfitters in Canada??

JWaltz@aol.com

---

I have a request about your mailings to primitive... I don't know what you're using to mail these out -- PINE? But all your mailings are sent as non-ASCII attachments. This makes them very hard to deal with for people who don't have -- I can't scroll them on the screen correctly, I can't save them to a file, I can't stop reading them when moving through my mail, even if I've seen the same message several times. And if I'm running X-windows, it brings the message up in a little window with font too small to read comfortably. Can you send ordinary ASCII mail? While you're at it, can you make your sig a little shorter? I have problems with my mailbox file growing too big. Is anyone else having similar problems like Phil mentions with my posts? I would hate to be posting this good info for nothing. If so please let me know.

Amyone have the phone # for Hudson's Bay Outfitters in Canada??

JWaltz@aol.com
long. Often you will find a suitably straight piece somewhere along a longer stalk so don't just look for 20 to 30 inch stalks, you'll be looking forever. I have been successful with stalks 18" long, but the longer, the better (easier). Split mullein stalks as fire board can be any diameter larger than at least 1.25 to 1.5 times the diameter of the spindle. The thicker the wall of the stalk you use for the fire board, the better. There is more "meat" in the material and therefore less chance of pushing or burning through before you get a coal going. Sometimes you can find one stalk which is tall enough to get both parts from but more often you need to use two separate stalks. Larger stalks serve best as boards, thinner (but not too thin) and straight stalks serve as spindles. The pith should be left in the board as it helps condition the spindle and I think helps produce a good powdery reservoir to heat up to ignition (smouldering coal) temperature. Start the spindle circle in it nearer one side or the other then cut the notch. Successful "holes" can be formed down in a row spaced every 3/4 inch or so. A used stalk board looks like a spent cap-gun roll of caps. Lastly, I use a piece of flattened wood (a wood fire board would work fine) to place the mullein fire board on top of and which the powder coal forms on. No tinder is necessary. Actually, tinder at the face of the notch packs and suffocates the coal powder. Too much pressure and too slow twirling of the spindle are two common errors which will defeat success. Take your time in developing calluses on your hands as well. You will need to get blisters and have to lance them, let them heal a bit and start again when they dry. Keep on trying. Good luck. Glad to help out.

---

Pascal Chauvaux
Pascal.Chauvaux@gate71.be

Ok, here's the gist of the post: Pascal and others in Europe and Switzerland especially, but they are in french. His group has specialized in making striking bats based on a very old one they discovered which is dated 400 BC. These bats are apparently quite different from the ones we know about. I have read about something called a "crooked knife," a combination to have a.png -all-purpose trail knife. I am in possession of a C. Keith Wilbur's very clear instructions for making one, but I am not a blacksmith. So I wonder if there is anywhere I can simply buy a "crooked knife." Thanks!

---

David Weinstock

I heard that they used to be available through Hudson's Bay Outfitters in Canada. That may be in error. Andre or any of the list members in Canada or Alaska, have you seen any of these available? I understand that before the coming of the Europeans that beaver tooth crooked knives in were made. If you are speaking of what I am thinking of, Russell still makes this knife (aka Green River Knives). It is merely a skinny knife with an exaggerated curve to the blade which gives it a lot of belly so that longer skinning strokes can be taken. I think that I have seen them for sale in the Dixie Gun Works Catalog (Union City, TN) I will check and report to the group if there is any interest.

Sincerely, Barent Duty, Honor, Country

Sorry, Barent, that's not a crooked knife (well skinning strokes can be taken. I think that I have seen them for sale in the Dixie Gun Works Catalog (Union City, TN) I will check and report to the group if there is any interest. Andre or any of the list members in Canada or Alaska, have you seen any of these available? I understand that before the coming of the Europeans that beaver tooth crooked knives in were made. If you are speaking of what I am thinking of, Russell still makes this knife (aka Green River Knives). It is merely a skinny knife with an exaggerated curve to the blade which gives it a lot of belly so that longer skinning strokes can be taken. I think that I have seen them for sale in the Dixie Gun Works Catalog (Union City, TN) I will check and report to the group if there is any interest.

------

http://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (90 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]
André-François Bourbeau  
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits  
University of Québec  
555 University Boulevard  
Chicoutimi, (Québec) CANADA G7H 2B1  
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

To clean the clay, add enough water till you have a slurry. Let it set for 20-30 seconds, allowing the heavier stones to circle, pinch the circle closed, then hang it on your finger and bounce it gently. If it will do all these things without falling apart, you probably have some good clay.

Heikki Chinook:

André-François Bourbeau  
Professor of Outdoor Pursuits University of Québec  
E9bec@uqac.ca  
2055 University Boulevard  
Chicoutimi, (Québec) CANADA G7H 2B1  
418-545-5011 Ext 5259

---=

---=

---=

---=

---=

---=

---=

---=

---=
PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca From: Kevin Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, KSREEVE@ix.netcom.com MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca Message-ID: "us-ascii" Date: Mon, 30 Dec 1996 20:54:50 +0000 (EST) Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii" Subject: advanced survival start Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit Archive-Date: Mon, 30 Dec 1996 20:54:50 +0000 From: Kevin Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, wildedu@VIANET.ON.CA unsubscribe Sweetgrass Farm --------------------- Archive-Date: Mon, 30 Dec 1996 20:19:59 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: "us-ascii" Date: Mon, 30 Dec 1996 08:20:45 +0000 From: Dr AF Bourbeau Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, "seer7@Mailhost"@dnaco.net unsubscribe References: <199612310109.UAA29903@vianet.on.ca> Content-Type: text/plain; charset=iso-8859-1 Message-ID: <199612310109.UAA29903@vianet.on.ca> Subject: unsubscribe From: "seer7@Mailhost"@dnaco.net Date: Mon, 30 Dec 1996 20:20:45 +0000 (EST) To: Primitive-Skills-Group@uqac.uquebec.ca From: bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca Content-Type: text/plain; charset="us-ascii" Subject: 22:48:41 -0800 >>From: "Lord Luinrandir, Son of Herne" >>Organization: The Silversmith of Brigid's Hammer Art Shop >>MIME-Version: 1.0 >>To: tbailey@ic.net >>Subject: knitting with water? >>X-URL: http://users.aol.com/tpbrml1/GLP.html >>I was told that it was possible to knap obsidian into arrowheads by >>heating the stone and dripping water on it. >>Share your knowledge about this with me? >>I am the Lapidary Instructor at Riverbend Art Center here in Dayton Ohio >>and would like to teach my students something new. >>"Lord Luinrandir Hersren http://www.dnaco.net/~thx-1138/ >Silversmith >Ted Bailey >>email to: tbailey@ic.net >>editor of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 >>Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 >>Fax: (313)-761-3632 >>Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/ >> >>PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca, bourbeau@saglac.qc.ca Subject: knitting with water? >>>From: "Lord Luinrandir, Son of Herne" >>Organization: The Silversmith of Brigid's Hammer Art Shop >>>MIME-Version: 1.0 >>>To: tbailey@ic.net >>>Subject: knitting with water? >>>X-URL: http://users.aol.com/tpbrml1/GLP.html >>>I was told that it was possible to knap obsidian into arrowheads by warming the stone and dripping water on it. >>>Share your knowledge about this with me? >>>I am the Lapidary Instructor at Riverbend Art Center here in Dayton Ohio >>>and would like to teach my students something new. >>>"Lord Luinrandir Hersren http://www.dnaco.net/~thx-1138/ >>Silversmith >>Ted Bailey >>>email to: tbailey@ic.net >>>editor of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 >>>Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 >>>Fax: (313)-761-3632 >>>Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/ 22:48:41 -0800 >>From: "Lord Luinrandir, Son of Herne" >>Organization: The Silversmith of Brigid's Hammer Art Shop >>MIME-Version: 1.0 >>To: tbailey@ic.net >>Subject: knitting with water? >>X-URL: http://users.aol.com/tpbrml1/GLP.html >>I was told that it was possible to knap obsidian into arrowheads by warming the stone and dripping water on it. >>Share your knowledge about this with me? >>I am the Lapidary Instructor at Riverbend Art Center here in Dayton Ohio >>and would like to teach my students something new. >>"Lord Luinrandir Hersren http://www.dnaco.net/~thx-1138/ >>Silversmith >>Ted Bailey >>email to: tbailey@ic.net >>editor of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 >>Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 >>Fax: (313)-761-3632 >>Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/ 22:48:41 -0800 >>From: "Lord Luinrandir, Son of Herne" >>Organization: The Silversmith of Brigid's Hammer Art Shop >>MIME-Version: 1.0 >>To: tbailey@ic.net >>Subject: knitting with water? >>X-URL: http://users.aol.com/tpbrml1/GLP.html >>I was told that it was possible to knap obsidian into arrowheads by warming the stone and dripping water on it. >>Share your knowledge about this with me? >>I am the Lapidary Instructor at Riverbend Art Center here in Dayton Ohio >>and would like to teach my students something new. >>"Lord Luinrandir Hersren http://www.dnaco.net/~thx-1138/ >>Silversmith >>Ted Bailey >>email to: tbailey@ic.net >>editor of "Boomerang News" Ann Arbor, MI 48106 >>Boom Sales & Info Services Ph: (313)-971-2970 >>Fax: (313)-761-3632 >>Internet Address: http://ic.net/~tbailey/
advanced survival start

Phil can counter the rifle's upward kick by pointing the closed channels down. It also provides a more intense flash out of the 4 remaining channels and out of the rifle into six narrow channels out to the side. You can also get flash suppressors with only 4 of the 6 channels open; I believe this is so you fire with a rifle if you put a flash suppressor on it. These hexagonal devices, which you find on the end of every M16, channel the flame that comes out of the barrel. It should work better. Problem is that threaded barrels are generally illegal in the US. And if you try to light a fire with guns To: primitive-skills-group@uqac.uquebec.ca, chriss@RAND.NIDLINK.COM Date: Tue, 31 Dec 1996 01:16:58 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca From: Tom Elpel Subject: Re: Dec 29th tv document on rainforest The cost is $17 plus $3 priority postage. Send check or money order to HOPS, Box 691, Pony, MT 59747 or use your Visa or Master Card and call 406-685-3222. Watch for more of Tom's writing in these publications: The Bulletin of Primitive Technology - 2 issues per year - Box 203 - Lufkin, TX 75902-0203. The Mother Earth News - 6 issues per year - Box 56304 - Boulder, CO 80323-6304. Questions? E-mail me direct at tomelpel@3rivers.net. Mailing lists are expensive to maintain, so please ask only if you are seriously interested. Below is a promotional for one of my books: Thomas J. Elpel's Field Guide to Primitive Living Skills Primitive living is a way of learning about nature by participating in nature. Instead of merely camping in the wilderness or passing through it, you can become part of the process. You discover nature by using it to meet your needs for shelter, fire, water, and food. Tom's guide will give you a direct, hands-on experience of the world around you. With this book you will have the opportunity to discover the thrill of staying warm and comfortable without even a blanket! Experience the magic of starting a fire by friction. Learn about the edible plants of the Rocky Mountain region and the techniques to process them, plus "primitive gourmet" cooking skills. Tan the hides you remove with the competition for the diminishing wildlife, plants, and water. As Tom Brown Jr. suggests in his on line interview (AOL - sorry I don't have the date), the survivalist of the future will have to seek out the most inhospitable terrain he can find in order to avoid the onslaught of food seekers. Sorry about the air of doom, but I can see it coming. JW
advanced survival start

day supply of food available for sale. When the electricity goes, you have the supplies in your kitchen and the gasoline in your car (250 - 400 miles or

buses which might be able to transport you to an airport! I hope this helps.

in order to avoid the onslaught of food > >seekers. > > The most inhospitable terrain will be your back yard. Most metropolitan areas have a three

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,

b) and, if you believe, double the amount of food you buy. It's better to be safe than sorry. As well,
The photograph shows a page from a document discussing primitive skills, particularly related to survival techniques. The text refers to various resources and discussions among group members, including books on Flintknapping and tanning hides, as well as practical advice on survival strategies. The page also includes a note on the use of firearms, expressing opinions on their role in primitive skills. The text is a mix of personal communications and information on resources available online. The document seems to be part of a larger discussion forum focused on survival and primitive skills, with members sharing tips and recommendations on various topics related to outdoor living and self-sufficiency.
advanced survival start

20:09:50 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.uquebec.ca Message-ID: MIME-Version: 1.0 Content-Type: text/plain;

http://www.uqac.uquebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (96 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]
advanced survival start

are in french. His group has specialized in making striking bats based on a very old one they discovered which is dated 400 BC. These bats tested them. He has offered to send me scientific articles on all of these experiments conducted in Europe and Switzerland especially, but they severely hard for a long time on flint & steel tinder. They found references to 15 types of fungi which were used for flint & steel tinder and

Pascal.Chauvaux@gate71.be

Ok, here's the gist of the post:

Pascal and others in France in archeological circles have worked

deprospérité à l'occasion de l'année nouvelle, à toi et aux membres de ta famille. Pascal Chauvaux >

SKILLS-GROUP. Mon anglais n'est pas assez bon pour le faire moi-même. Merci pour ton obligeance. Meilleurs voeux de santé et également t'envoyer un kit complet: marcassite, briquet en silex, amadou. Voila, jeespère que si des renseignements que je te pas une drille en bois). J'ai toutes les références des sites où on a retrouvé de la marcassite (paleo supérieur). Je peux faire la demande. Comme chaque année, le premier jour de l'année, je vais me promener au Cap Blanc Nez, au bord de la mer entre la ville de Le Tréport et la pointe de Seine. J'aime beaucoup travailler la production (préhistorique) du feu. Si tu as une idée de ce que tu pourrais faire en 1997, je suis intéressé. Les meilleures choses pour l'an 1997 sont les suivantes:

André, Merci de m'avoir indiqué le PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP ! J'ai rencontré quelques difficultés pour m'abonner, mais tout est bien maintenant. J'ai reçu déjà plus de 80 messages, et cela semble bien intéréssant. Un des domaines qui m'attire le plus est la production de feu. Nous avons, avec quelques amis d'une association archéologique de la région de Liège en Belgique, beaucoup travaillé la production (préhistorique) du feu. Si tu as une idée de ce que tu pourrais faire en 1997, je suis intéressé. Les meilleures choses pour l'an 1997 sont les suivantes:

jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM charset="us-ascii" Date: Tue, 31 Dec 1996 17:10:48 -0700 From: jburdine@pipeline.com (James E. Burdine) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca, jburdine@PIPELINE.COM Subject: Re: Fire with guns > Phil Goertz wrote: >> Problem is that threaded barrels are generally illegal in the US. >> They are? Please explain. I can think of several examples which are widely marketed (AR-15, Swedish M-96 & M-38, Winchester and Browning rifles equipped with B.O.S.S. device). This doesn't mean you are wrong, >> you might be ahead of the game on this. TIA. >> >> >> Sincerely, > Barent > Duty, Honour, Country This might be a regional thing. As far as I know there is no problem owning a weapon with screw threads cut onto the barrel end. What is regulated is the possession of a silencer. This isn't illegal to own but heavily taxed, and severely regulated. As long as it isn't illegal to own locally, you can work through your local sheriff's office and Class 3 dealer to obtain a class 3 tax stamp to own either a fully automatic weapon or a silencer. I fired enough full auto while in the army, and the only ones I thought were any good were tripod mounted, you could really reach out and touch someone, otherwise they were a waste of ammo. Silenced weapons on the other hand, well lets say I like them, but for a $300 tax stamp and all of the trouble you have while you own them (you must notify the BATF and all law enforcement agencies ahead of time before you are going through their areas when you are moving the weapon. If you are relocated by your company you better hope that silenced weapons are not illegal in that area, or you will have to find someone to store your weapon with) they may not be worth the trouble. Besides that, they really don't cut down the sound much more than you would experience with a rifle barrel and CB caps. My apologies for straying into non-primitive weapons as far as I have. JB

http://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (97 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]
I am using Netscape Navigator and I have seen other signatures longer than mine. I am just trying to keep everyone posted with plenty of... 

Phil

Is anyone to deal with for people who don’t have the same mailer — I can’t scroll them on the screen correctly, I can’t save them to a file, I can’t know what you’re using to mail these out — PINE? But all your mailings are sent as non-ASCII attachments. This makes them very hard to deal with for people who don’t have the same mailer -- I can’t scroll them on the screen correctly, -- I can’t save them to a file, I can’t stop reading them -- when moving through my email, even if I’ve seen the same message -- several times. And if I’m running X-windows, it brings the message up in a little window with font too small to read comfortably. -- Can you send ordinary ASCII mail? -- While you’re at it, can you make your sig a little shorter? -- I have problems with my mailbox file growing too big.

Benjamin Pressley

This is no question is a stupid one, so I’ll ask. “Striking Bats” is not a term I’m familiar with. Please define. As soon as I know what you are I’m sure I’ll be interested in your friend Pascal’s offer. Thanks.

- Benjamin Pressley

I am using Netscape Navigator and I have seen other signatures longer than mine. I am just trying to keep everyone posted with plenty of...
other good info, but I need to hear from everyone if there is a problem before I go through the trouble.

----begin forwarded message----

Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net Information On TRIBE: Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net TRIBE Homepage: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Archive-Date: Tue, 31 Dec 1996 21:22:38 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca Message-ID: <32C9D816.6A2C@perigee.net> Date: Tue, 31 Dec 1996 21:20:54 -0600 From: benjamin@Perigee.net (Benjamin Pressley) Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca, benjamin@PERIGEE.NET MIME-Version: 1.0 To: primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.ca, fclark@ESPER.COM Subject: Re: My mailings to primitive skills group References: Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit fred clark wrote: >>>Phil Goetz wrote: >>>>>>I have a request about your mailings to primitive... >>> I don't know what you're using to mail these out - PINE? But all your mailings are sent as non-ASCII attachments. >>> This makes them very hard to deal with for people who don't have the same mailer - I can't scroll them on the screen correctly, >>> >>> Is anyone else having similar problems like Phil mentions with your posts? >>Benjamin Pressley > Everything I've received from you has been perfectly readable. I'm using Eudora Light, which is free for anyone that wants to download it. With the storehouse of information that you've been providing, I hope you don't quit. >>

Fred I appreciate it, Fred. I do have some good info planned. Let me know anyway I can help.

-- Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net

-- end forwarded message--

---begin forwarded message---

Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net Information On TRIBE: Snail Mail: TRIBE, P.O. Box 20015, Charlotte, NC 28202, USA E-Mail: tribe@perigee.net TRIBE Homepage: http://users.aol.com/tbprim1/Tribe.html

Archive-Date: Tue, 31 Dec 1996 21:22:38 EST Sender: owner-primitive-skills-group@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca Message-ID: <199701010222.VAA26292@amber.ccs.neu.edu> Subject: ...Yet MORE on Fish Poisons... Date: Tue, 31 Dec 96 21:22:49 -0500 From: Jeff Stevens Reply-To: PRIMITIVE-SKILLS-GROUP@vaxcha.uqac.quebec.ca, jstevens@CCS.NEU.EDU Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit Kevin wrote: > Even though I regularly question the sanity of Bob Barr, in this case I happen to agree that the primitive skills group should consider some compromise. Andre's is no pleasure either for that matter, but that's just an opinion... >>

Matthew Rapaport

This could be your reader, and not Ben's mailer at all. >> This makes them very hard to deal with for people who don't have the same mailer - I can't scroll them on the screen correctly, >> >> >> Is anyone else having similar problems like Phil mentions with your posts? >>Benjamin Pressley > Everything I've received from you has been perfectly readable. I'm using Eudora Light, which is free for anyone that wants to download it. With the storehouse of information that you've been providing, I hope you don't quit. >>

Fred I appreciate it, Fred. I do have some good info planned. Let me know anyway I can help.

-- Benjamin Pressley benjamin@perigee.net

---end forwarded message---

https://www.uqac.quebec.ca/PleinAir/1996-12.htm (99 of 104) [10/22/2003 7:00:42 PM]
advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start

advanced survival start
Hi everyone, since we have received over 40 new subscriptions in the last couple of days, I am posting this introductorily to welcome...
My thanks to Andre for getting it set up, --Benjamin (benjamin@perigee.net or tribe@perigee.net) ------------------------------------
Matthew Rapaport Hello... Thank you to Andre for inviting me to participate. I am a classical arm-chair primitive! I enjoy a good camping adventure, and have had a fair number in my youth, but none for a decade or more now. Even these were not primitive living the likes of which our host has experienced, but rather late 20th century American style back-packing which means NOT that you use what is around you to make your way, but that you touch as little as possible. The object as much as possible is to leave the environment as untouched as possible while you pass through it. I am not a hunter, though I have fished (mostly in salt water). I know how to prepare fish and other sea food, but would like to learn to dress=20 game, even if I don't kill it. I do enjoy shooting with fire arms, and bows however, and could hunt if I had to do it, even with a slingshot. Better=20 I round myself out gaining some experience with traps! My real interest in bushcraft skills for now is not in wilderness=20 living, but in living more or less comfortably through a period of normal infrastructure and service disruption in my semi-urban environment, typically as a result of some natural disaster like an earthquake! Here what is important is having stocked the right materials in the right quantities in places that survive the initial disaster. If the supermarkets are closed long enough, I may want to fall back on some=20 food finding skills for a while... I look forward to future conversations.

Chris Smith Hello Skills Group, =20 A very big pleasure and opportunity to learn from and share with you all. These introductory things are always very painful for me, so I hope you don't mind me torturing myself a bit. My name's Chris Smith, I'm 48 and live in Coeur d'Alene (Core duh'Lane), Idaho, USA. That's near Canada and is a place of big lakes, rivers and forest woodland. I'm pretty happy, even when shoveling snow. I'd rather be in a hot springs than any other place on earth and that's why I live in Idaho. I still work irregardless, and have tended 'premie' babies, down to a 1/2 lb. that will fit in the palm of your hand. I'm a registered Respiratory Therapist with a perinatal/pediatric clinical specialty certification and have similar credentials for practice in Pulmonary Function Technology and Cardiopulmonary Technology. I've worked in the medical field for nearly 25 yrs, and I guess I've also worked with more knife and gunshot wound victims than most people. Not my cup of tea, anyway, my educational record is bizarre, with three 2 yr. Associate degrees and quite a few unrelated subjects. My transcripts read like: motorcycle repair, biochemistry, concrete, embroylogy, welding and mukluk making. If their was a degree program in Irreproducible Studies, I'd have my Masters. I've been politely and personally asked to immediately leave nice places by elk, moose, grizzly bear, rock slides, whizzing ball lightning and "the buzzing of the bee's" -- I'm not ashamed to tell you, I am trembling at the thought even now, which makes it all the harder to type. I can't rationally explain why I haven't died all the times I obviously should've, but whoever you are, I want to thank you personally - I recommend you highly to all. I've been a 60's Haight-Ashbury hippie, an American Marine with an Intelligence occupational specialty (I can't say much about that), have lived in a Zen monastery and used to be a fair rock climber. I still love my my old .45 and Ka-Bar Marine knife (well, it's true) and have a warm fuzzy feeling for shotguns, ancient cultures and the wrath of nature. I like handling bullwhips and throwing knives, tomahawks and axes. I'm a member of the Wild West Arts Club, a 600 member international stunt organization. I'm not all that good, but I do play. I've wanted to learn multi-strand braiding since I was a child and through the Thrower list have begun sling braiding which covers that nicely. Kind of a sportsman's paradise where I live, so if you asked me to speak you a fish, I probably could handle it. I've been fortunate to meet and sometimes carea few celebrities, including Groucho Marx, Carole King and one large hawk in particular. I have the highest respect for people like yourselves (I know what I'm talking about here) and appreciate your company and experience, which is considerable. Thanks.

Ted E. Bailey III Everybody. I just subscribed to the Primitive Skills Group today. I found Chris' introduction quite interesting, I was a Hight Ashbury=20 hippie too and I just a year younger. Chris, did we meet in the Fillmore West over New Year's in 1968? Anyway, I am quite straight now. I even have short hair and I am an Engineering Manager. Now you know what happened to all those hippies=20 My favorite hobby is boomerangs and throwsticks. I got into this primitive skills stuff as a young child growing up in Panama. The first toys I wanted my Mom and Dad to buy were the blow guns and shrunken heads that=20 the Choco Indians sold at the border towns. I used to spend all my=20 time in=20 the jungle learning about the native animals and surviving on my own with minimal equipment. When I was 17, I left Panama and went to Arcata California to go to college. That was the beginning of my hippy days. =20 10 years later, I came out of the fog with a MS degree in=20 Mechanical Engineering and I have been stuck in a middle class rut ever since. I throw boomerangs and put out a boomerang newsletter to keep me busy. I belong to the boomerang rang_list and the thrower email subscription=20 group as well. I look forward to hearng more about the other subscribers. Cheers. - Ted -----------------------------------------------
Alexander J. Pirchil About me: I live in Austria (Euro), particulary in Kitzbuehle in the Tyrolian mountains. I am 23 years old and married now for 1 1/2 years. I have always been fascinated by "primitiv" technology and weapons. Since=20 I was very small I have been toying around with knives, spears, blowguns, slingshots and slings. I also like all aspects of shooting, and owe quit=20 a number of firearms, but the power and accuracy one could get with=20 weapons made from the simplest components have never ceased to amaze me.=20 Survival is also a topic which I find very interesting, and the question of=20 another member of this list stated in=20 My favorite hobby is boomerangs and throwsticks. I got into this primitive skills stuff as a young child growing up in Panama. The first toys I wanted my Mom and Dad to buy were the blow guns and shrunken heads that=20 the Choco Indians sold at the border towns. I used to spend all my=20 time in=20 the jungle learning about the native animals and surviving on my own with minimal equipment. When I was 17, I left Panama and went to Arcata California to go to college. That was the beginning of my hippy days. =20 10 years later, I came out of the fog with a MS degree in=20 Mechanical Engineering and I have been stuck in a middle class rut ever since. I throw boomerangs and put out a boomerang newsletter to keep me busy. I belong to the boomerang rang_list and the thrower email subscription=20 group as well. I look forward to hearng more about the other subscribers. Cheers. - Ted -----------------------------------------------
Merv Martin Hi I'm Merv (Mervyn Martin). I was born in Red Bluff, California and lack=20 the strip between Izmir, Turkey and Taipei, Taiwan of=20 having been around the=20 world. I'm ex-Navy (14 years, that's how I got to travel) and now work, when I=20 can find it, as an Electronics Engineer in Sacramento, CA. What else, oh,=20 I'm 45 and have just taken on two more kids, a 15 year old boy and a 12 year=20 old girl. What a gluton for punishment (that makes five kids)!!! Ahh well,=20 I'm half adopted too and I like my step dad! I'm fascinated with anything I can do with my hands. In the past I've done well at being a survivalist with a knife, I say well, I gained weight. I'm a pretty good tracker and only scruple at=20 swallowing=20 uncooked bones. They're a bit scratchy (in and out). I can't say that I've tried grubs, but Caddis Fly larvae and Helgramities aren't bad. I've fished=20 with, but not eaten Stone Fly Larvae (Toebetters). Always wondered who'd get=20 the most bites. Salmon eggs aren't bad either, haven't tried frog eggs. I've got=20 a bit of. Use. Like to know how to build a rope walk (a=20 "machine" for the manufacture of rope). I'll need to dig out the text for=20 that,=20 it's an old Aussie book called "Bushcraft". Wow! Primitive Skills! Anybody wanna go fishing? Hook, Sear or=20 Trap???
BTW, the main reason I can gain weight on a survival test is that I know=20 the area and trap! Spinning cordage would be most important to=20 someone like=20 me. I've used mostly grasses and 1/4 to 1/2 inch thick. This stuff usually=20 will take a jack rabbit (1/2"). Whew, I'd better close for=20 now! Ya'll Take Care. Looks like a great bunch of crazys here. Merv eaten_by_limestone@cliffhanger.com
-----------------------------------------------
Barent Parslow Hello all, I am very pleased to be a part of this group. I am a 23 1/2 year=20 veteran of the US Army currently serving with the Virginia National Guard and will retire in about 2 1/2 years. I am wondering if we are seeing a pattern develop here of the personality types=20 that make a good survivalist. It seems like anyone in the 20-30 age group that wants to survive the initial disaster. If the supermarkets are closed long enough, I may want to fall back on some=20 food finding skills for a while... I look forward to future conversations.

Mark Bradner Hello group... I live in the Seattle, area, I've spent a large percentage of my 45=20 years backpacking and camping in the Pacific North West. So I guess primitive technologies have always interested=20 me. This year I have taken up floatninking, and I heard about your group from the knapper list=20 server. Mark Bradner
-----------------------------------------------

(occupational, swimming, biking, computers, reading (voraciously), history (was my Brigade's historian), and community service. I am now starting to build primitive bows (an outgrowth of my interest in archery, I have been shooting since I was 10) which lead to an interest in flintkne
Ben wrote (after the post from Pascal Chauvaux), Well, they say no question is a stupid one, so I'll ask. "Striking Bats" is not a term I'm familiar with. Please define. As soon as I know what they are I'm sure I'll be interested in your friend Pascal's offer. In flint & steel fire, it's the steel part! What's the english name? Andr=E9